

CBSE

2027

ENGLISH LANGUAGE & LITERATURE

CHAPTERWISE QUESTION BANK
21 Years (2026-2006) Solved Exam Papers

**Class
10**

Nodia

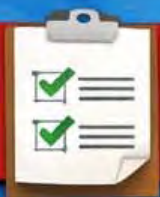


Scan QR for
Demo PDF

GET ALL STUDY MATERIAL **IN** ONE APP!



Textbooks



**Previous Year
Chapterwise Question Banks**



**30 Sets
Sample Papers**



Worksheets



DOWNLOAD NOW!

**SCAN &
DOWNLOAD**



GET IT ON
Google Play



CBSE 2027

ENGLISH

Language and Literature

CLASS 10

Chapter-wise Question Bank

Based on Previous 21 Year 64 Papers

NODIA

CBSE English Class 10 Question Bank
Edition March 2026
Published by :NODIA
An Imprint of NODIA EDITIONS LLP

Information contained in this book has been obtained by author, from sources believes to be reliable. However, neither NODIA nor its author guarantee the accuracy or completeness of any information herein and NODIA nor its author shall be responsible for any error, omissions, or damages arising out of use of this information. This book is published with the understanding that NODIA and its author are supplying information but are not attempting to render engineering or other professional services.

© NODIA EDITIONS LLP

MRP ₹600.00



This book is available on amazon and flipkart only and not available in market.

NODIA EDITIONS LLP

125, Sector 6, Vidyadhar Nagar, Jaipur 302039

Phone :+91 9024037387

email : mail@nodia.in

CONTENTS

Section A : Reading Skills

	CBSE Examination Paper 2026	5-14
	CBSE Examination Paper 2025	15-24
CHAP 1.	Discursive Passage	25-65
CHAP 2.	Case Based Factual Passage	66-110

Section B : Writing Skills and Grammar

CHAP 1.	Tenses	111-126
CHAP 2.	Modals	127-135
CHAP 3.	Subject-Verb Concord	136-143
CHAP 4.	Reported Speech	144-155
CHAP 5.	Determiners	156-168
CHAP 6.	Integrated Grammar	169-178
CHAP 7.	Formal Letter	179-193
CHAP 8.	Analytical Paragraph	194-207

Section C : Literature

First Flight – Prose Section

CHAP 1.	A Letter to God	208-225
CHAP 2.	Nelson Mandela - Long Walk to Freedom	226-244
CHAP 3.	Two Stories About Flying	245-267
CHAP 4.	From the Diary of Anne Frank	268-285
CHAP 5.	Glimpses of India	286-313
CHAP 6.	Mijbil the Otter	314-331
CHAP 7.	Madam Rides the Bus	332-348
CHAP 8.	The Sermon at Benares	349-363
CHAP 9.	The Proposal (Play)	364-381

First Flight – Poetry Section

CHAP 1.	Dust of Snow	382-392
CHAP 2.	Fire and Ice	393-401
CHAP 3.	A Tiger in the Zoo	402-412
CHAP 4.	How to Tell Wild Animals	413-421
CHAP 5.	The Ball Poem	422-430
CHAP 6.	Amanda!	431-441
CHAP 7.	The Trees	442-450
CHAP 8.	Fog	451-455
CHAP 9.	The Tale of Custard the Dragon	456-471
CHAP 10.	For Anne Gregory	472-480

Supplementary Reader : Footprints Without Feet

CHAP 1.	A Triumph of Surgery	481-493
CHAP 2.	The Thief's Story	494-506
CHAP 3.	The Midnight Visitor	507-519
CHAP 4.	A Question of Trust	520-530
CHAP 5.	Footprints without Feet	531-543
CHAP 6.	The Making of a Scientist	544-556
CHAP 7.	The Necklace	557-569
CHAP 8.	Bholi	570-583
CHAP 9.	The Book that Saved the Earth	584-596

NODIA

CBSE EXAMINATION QUESTION PAPER 2026

CLASS-X

ENGLISH (Language and Literature)

Time Allowed : 3 Hrs.

Maximum Marks : 80

General Instructions :

Read the instructions very carefully and strictly follow them :

(i) This question paper comprises **11** questions. **All** questions are compulsory.

(ii) This question paper contains **THREE** sections :

Section – A : Reading Skills

Section – B : Grammar and Creative Writing Skills

Section – C : Literature Text Book

(iii) Attempt questions based on specific instructions for each part.

SECTION-A

(20 Marks)

READING SKILLS

1. Read the following text:

10

- (1) Pancakes, a beloved breakfast dish across the world, has a surprisingly long and diverse history. Archaeological evidence shows that people were cooking pancake as food as far back as 30,000 years ago on hot stones and primitive griddles.
- (2) In ancient Greece and Rome, pancakes were made from wheat flour, olive oil, honey, and curdled milk. They were often served as a sweet treat during festivals or special occasions. In medieval Europe, pancakes became a popular dish during Shrove Tuesday, the day before Lent began. In France, thin crepes became a national delicacy, often filled with sweet or savoury ingredients. In Russia, blinis were made using buckwheat flour and served with sour cream or caviar. In Ethiopia, the spongy injera became a staple food, made from teff flour and used as both a plate and utensil. Similarly, in China, pancakes are often savoury while in Japan, fluffy “soufflé pancakes” have become a modern favourite.
- (3) The American version of pancakes, thick and soft, gained popularity in the 18th century. The use of baking powder made them light and airy, and they were often served with butter and maple syrup – a symbol of hearty comfort food. Over time, pancakes became a universal dish, symbolizing community and celebration. Whether sweet or savoury, thick or thin, every culture has found a way to adapt this simple food to its own taste and traditions.

- (4) India has its own rich tradition of similar dishes that have been enjoyed for centuries. Across the country, almost every region has a version of a pancake – whether sweet or savoury – made from grains, pulses, or rice. These Indian pancakes not only satisfy hunger but also reflect the diversity of India’s culinary culture. In South India, dosas and adai are the most famous forms of pancakes. Made from a fermented batter of rice and lentils, dosas are crisp and light, while adai is thicker and more filling. The fermentation process adds a unique sour flavor and makes them nutritious and easy to digest. In Kerala, the appam, made with fermented rice batter and coconut milk, is soft in the center and crispy at the edges. Moving north, we find the western style cheela, a simple and wholesome Indian pancake made from gram flour, spiced with onions, chillies and coriander. In Maharashtra, the thalipeeth is a multigrain pancake that uses flours like jowar, bajra and rice mixed with spices and vegetables. It is both flavorful and filling, providing a good balance of carbohydrates and proteins.
- (5) In the eastern parts of India, pitha is a traditional pancake made during festivals and special occasions. Varieties like patishapta in Bengal are sweet, filled with coconut and jaggery. In Assam and Odisha, pithas can be steamed, fried, or roasted, depending on the custom and region. In the western deserts of Rajasthan and Gujarat, people prepare chilla and handvo, which are savoury western pancake-like dishes baked in traditional ovens. These pancakes are a blank canvas for toppings, waiting for a splash of fruit or a scattering of condiments.

- (6) Today, pancakes continue to evolve with new recipes, from vegan and gluten-free varieties to those infused with fruits, oats, or even protein powder. Despite their many forms, they remain a timeless reminder of how food connects mankind through shared history and creativity. Each pancake tells a story of regional identity, food traditions and a deep love for food that brings people together. Pancakes are warm, edible hugs that are a perfect comfort on a bleak day.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above :

- I. In paragraph 1, what does the phrase 'has a surprisingly long and diverse history' mean? 1
- II. Complete the following with the correct option from the two given : 1
The uniqueness of the spongy injera, is that _____.
(A) it is both a savoury and a sweet
(B) it can be used for cooking and also for eating (Paragraph 2)
- III. How are American pancakes made light and fluffy? When did the American-style pancakes gain popularity ? (Paragraph 3) 2
- IV. State whether the following statement is True or False : 1
Every culture has adopted the pancake and tempered it with its own ingredients, flavour and taste. (Paragraph 3)
- V. The writer mentions 'fermentation process'. Based on the information given in the passage, which of the following pancakes are made from the fermentation process ? 1
(A) Dosa and appam
(B) Chilla and thalipeeth
(C) Blinis and soufflé
(D) Pitha and patishapta
- VI. Select the option that best explains the phrase about pancakes being, 'a blank canvas' (Paragraph 5) 1
(A) Like a painter starts with a blank canvas, a diner can get creative.
(B) Pancakes reflect the 30,000 old lineage of being the first food.
- VII. List any two points from the passage that support the statement, 'pancakes are a timeless reminder of how food connects people.' (Paragraph 6) 2

- VIII. Fill in the blank with the correct option from those given :** 1

In the line 'warm, edible hugs that are a perfect comfort on a bleak day' the phrase 'warm, edible hugs' refers to _____. (Paragraph 6)

- (A) comfort food that provides a sense of emotional security
- (B) the pancake that represents the history of the region
- (C) the choice of eating hot steaming pancakes
- (D) the food that gives you energy

Ans :

- I. The phrase means that pancakes have existed for thousands of years and have been prepared in many different forms across different cultures around the world.
- II. (B) it can be used for cooking and also for eating
- III. American pancakes are made light and fluffy by adding baking powder to the batter, which makes them soft and airy when cooked. They are usually served with butter and maple syrup, making them a popular comfort food. The American-style pancakes gained popularity in the 18th century.
- IV. True
- V. (A) Dosa and appam
- VI. (A) Like a painter starts with a blank canvas, a diner can get creative.
- VII. Two points from the passage that support the statement are as follows:
1. Pancakes connect mankind through shared history and creativity.
2. Each pancake reflects regional identity and food traditions that bring people together.
- VIII. (A) comfort food that provides a sense of emotional security

2. Read the following text :

10

- (1) Rate of Internet Reach in India : 2014-2024
The rate of internet reach in India rose over 52% in 2024 from about 14% in 2014. Although these figures seem relatively low, it meant that more than half of the population of 1.4 billion people had internet access that year. This also ranked the country second in the world in terms of active internet users.
- (2) Internet availability and accessibility
By 2021, the number of internet connections across the country tripled in urban areas because of a higher density of population, leading to an increase in the number of connections. However, despite of incredibly low internet prices, internet usage in India has yet to reach its full potential.

Lack of awareness about the internet in India persists, especially in rural areas and among women, driven by digital divide, infrastructure limitations, and a lack of perceived need for the internet. This hinders digital adoption, with many not knowing how to use the internet or even being aware of its existence. Targeted awareness campaigns and digital literacy programs are crucial to bridge this gap and ensure people understand and can benefit from the digital ecosystem.

(3) Digital living

Home to one of the largest bases of netizens in the world, India is abuzz with internet activities being carried out every moment of every day. From information and research to shopping and entertainment to living in smart homes, Indians have welcomed digital living with open arms.

Rate of Internet Reach in India		
S. No.	Year	Percentage
1.	2017	24.0
2.	2018	28.5
3.	2019	33.7
4.	2020	43.4
5.	2021	46.3
6.	2022	48.1
7.	2023	51.5
8.	2024	52.4
9.	2025	55.3

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above:

- I. What does the use of the term 'active internet users' convey? 1
 - (A) Active people who use internet
 - (B) Active people who use active internet
 - (C) People who use active internet
 - (D) People who use internet actively
- II. Select the option that is true for the **Assertion** and **Reason** given below : 1

Assertion : India is home to one of the largest bases of netizens in the world.

Reason : Lack of awareness and a tangible gender gap lie at the heart of the matter.

 - (A) Both the Assertion and the Reason are true and the Reason is the correct explanation of the Assertion.

- (B) Both the Assertion and the Reason are true, but the Reason is not the correct explanation of the Assertion.
- (C) The Assertion is true, but the Reason is false.
- (D) The Assertion is false, but the Reason is true.

- III. Identify the word that indicates that internet reach is comparatively low. (Paragraph 1) 1
- IV. Based on the table which of the following time period illustrates the maximum internet usage? 1
 - (A) 2017 to 2020
 - (B) 2023 to 2025
 - (C) 2020 to 2023
 - (D) 2019 to 2022
- V. From the passage identify one reason why there are less internet users among women ? 1
- VI. Fill in the blank with a suitable word given in brackets : 1
Infrastructure limitations _____ digital adoption. (impedes/spurs)
- VII. Complete the following with a suitable reason :1
An increase in the number of connections in urban areas is caused because of _____
- VIII. Which are the two ways to bridge the gap of digital unawareness ? 2
- IX. In the context of the last paragraph how does the author justify the statement, 'Indians have welcomed digital living with open arms'. 1

Ans :

- I. (D) People who use internet actively
- II. (B) Both the Assertion and the Reason are true, but the Reason is not the correct explanation of the Assertion.
- III. relatively
- IV. (B) 2023 to 2025
- V. Lack of awareness/digital divide (gender gap).
- VI. impedes
- VII. higher density of population
- VIII. Two ways to bridge the gap of digital unawareness:
 1. Targeted awareness campaigns
 2. Digital literacy programs
- IX. The author justifies the statement by showing that Indians widely use the internet for information, research, shopping, entertainment, and smart home living.

CBSE CLASS 12

Previous Year Solved Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or
Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English Core

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Mathematics

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Physics

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Chemistry

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Biology

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Physical Education

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Informatics Practice

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Computer Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Accountancy

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Business Studies

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Economics

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Entrepreneurship

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Legal Studies

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Applied Maths

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Hindi

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

History

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Geography

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Political Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Psychology

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Sociology

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

For other books PDF(NEET, JEE and CUET) visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 11

Previous Year Solved Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or
Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English Core

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Mathematics

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Physics

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Chemistry

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Biology

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Physical Education

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Informatic Practice

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Computer Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Accountancy

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Business Studies

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Economics

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Entrepreneurship

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Legal Studies

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Applied Maths

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Hindi

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

History

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Geography

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Political Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Psychology

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Sociology

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

For other books PDF (NEET, JEE and CUET) visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 10

Previous Year Solved Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or
Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English LL

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

English Comm

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Mathematics STD

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Mathematics Basic

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Social Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

IT (402)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

AI (417)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Data Science (419)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

हिंदी अ

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

हिंदी ब

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

संस्कृत

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

विज्ञान

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

सामाजिक विज्ञान

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

गणित मानक

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

गणित आधार

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

NEET Foundation Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

JEE Foundation Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

JEE Foundation Maths

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

For Olympiad Books Visit

www.lympiad.com

For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 9

Previous Year Solved Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or
Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English LL

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

English Comm

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

Mathematics STD

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

Mathematics Basic

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

Social Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

IT (402)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

AI (417)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

Data Science (419)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

हिंदी अ

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

हिंदी ब

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

संस्कृत

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

विज्ञान

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

सामाजिक विज्ञान

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

गणित मानक

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

गणित आधार

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

NEET Foundation Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

JEE Foundation Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

JEE Foundation Maths

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

For Olympiad Books Visit

www.lympiad.com

For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 8

Previous Year Solved Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or
Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

Mathematics

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

Social Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

हिंदी

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

संस्कृत

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

IT (906)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

AI (901)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

Data Science (911)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

Coding (910)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

विज्ञान

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

सामाजिक विज्ञान

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

गणित

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

NEET Foundation Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

JEE Foundation Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

JEE Foundation Maths

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

Olympiad Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

Olympiad Maths

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

Olympiad General Aptitude

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

For Olympiad Books Visit
www.lympiad.com

For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 7

Previous Year Solved Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or
Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Mathematics

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Social Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

हिंदी

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

संस्कृत

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

IT (906)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

AI (901)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Data Science (911)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Coding (910)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

विज्ञान

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

सामाजिक विज्ञान

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

गणित

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

NEET Foundation Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

JEE Foundation Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

JEE Foundation Maths

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Olympiad Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Olympiad Maths

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

Olympiad General Aptitude

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGPT.COM

For Olympiad Books Visit
www.lympiad.com

For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 6

Previous Year Solved Question Bank

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or
Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

Mathematics

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

Social Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

हिंदी

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

संस्कृत

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

IT (906)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

AI (901)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

Data Science (911)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

Coding (910)

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

विज्ञान

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

सामाजिक विज्ञान

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

गणित

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

NEET Foundation Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

JEE Foundation Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

JEE Foundation Maths

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

Olympiad Science

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

Olympiad Maths

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

Olympiad General Aptitude

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF



WWW.MCQGP.T.COM

For Olympiad Books Visit
www.lympiad.com

For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 5 and 4

Worksheets

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or
Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English 5th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Mathematics 5th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



EVS 5th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



हिंदी 5th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



गणित 5th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



EVS हिन्दी 5th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Maths 5th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Science 5th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Aptitude 5th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Aptitude 4th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



For Olympiad Books Visit
www.lympiad.com

English 4th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Mathematics 4th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



EVS 4th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



हिंदी 4th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



गणित 4th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



EVS हिन्दी 4th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Maths 4th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Science 4th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 3 and 2

Worksheets

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or
Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English 3th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Mathematics 3th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



EVS 3th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



हिंदी 3th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



गणित 3th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



EVS हिन्दी 3th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Maths 3th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Science 3th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Aptitude 3th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Aptitude 2th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



For Olympiad Books Visit
www.lympiad.com

English 2th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Mathematics 2th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



EVS 2th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



हिंदी 2th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



गणित 2th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



EVS हिन्दी 2th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Maths 2th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Science 2th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

CBSE CLASS 1 and KG

Worksheets

Click your Subject and Instantly get a free PDF or
Order the Hard copy from Amazon.

English 1th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Mathematics 1th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



EVS 1th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



हिंदी 1th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



गणित 1th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



EVS हिन्दी 1th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Maths 1th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Science 1th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Aptitude 1th

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Aptitude KG

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



For Olympiad Books Visit
www.lympiad.com

English KG

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Mathematics KG

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



EVS KG

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



हिंदी KG

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



गणित KG

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



EVS हिन्दी KG

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Maths KG

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



Olympiad Science KG

BUY IT ON
amazon

DOWNLOAD
FREE PDF
WWW.MCQGPT.COM



For other books PDF visit www.pdf.tube

SECTION-B (20 Marks)**GRAMMAR AND CREATIVE WRITING SKILLS****GRAMMAR**

- 3. Complete ANY TEN of twelve of the following tasks as directed : 10×1 = 10**

- I.** Fill in the blank with correct option to complete a message from Yogita to her friend Shobit : 1
Dear Shobit,
Let's meet at 5 p.m. for the rehearsal but I need to go home first as I _____ anything since morning.

(A) did not eat (B) had not eaten
(C) have not eaten (D) am not eating

Ans :

(C) have not eaten.

- II.** Read the given sentence from a self-help book. Identify the error and supply the correction in the given format : 1
To identifying your goal is the biggest step in your success story.

Error	Correction

Ans :

Error	Correction
identifying	identify

- III.** Yamini asked her friend Shifa, "Would you like to come for my birthday party tomorrow ?" 1
Report Yamini's question correctly.

Ans :

Yamini asked her friend Shifa if she would like to come for her birthday party the next day.

- IV.** Fill in the blank by choosing the correct option to complete a newspaper clipping : 1
The verdict is yet to come since the members of the jury _____ (is/are) divided in their opinion.

Ans :

are

- V.** Read Somil's request to his mother : 1
"Can you teach me to swim ?"
Report Somil's request by completing the following sentence correctly :
Somil asked his mother _____

Ans :

Somil asked his mother to teach him to swim.

- VI.** Identify and correct the error in the given line taken from a critical review of a recently staged play: 1

As a actor, Ravi Raj, is superior than any other contemporary actor.

Options	Error	Correction
(A)	an	the
(B)	is	were
(C)	than	to
(D)	other	another

Ans :

(C)

- VII.** Complete the given line from 'Rules and Regulations' section of a school diary : 1
Minimum 75% attendance is _____ to appear for the final examinations.

(A) recorded (B) mandatory
(C) secured (D) obtained

Ans :

(B) mandatory

- VIII.** Detect the error and supply the correction for the given newspaper report on a proposal by a Member of Advisory Board : 1
After the meeting it was obvious that most stakeholders would not support _____ proposals.

(A) this (B) that
(C) the (D) these

Ans :

(D) these

- IX.** Report the dialogue between a flight attendant and a passenger by filling in the blank : 1
Attendant : Did you have your dinner, sir ?

Passenger : Yes, thank you !

The flight attendant asked the passenger _____.
The passenger replied in affirmation and thanked him.

Ans :

if he had had his dinner.

- X.** Select the correct option to complete the given sentence from a memoir of your grandparent : 1
"When I was the team Captain, I _____ often organize get-togethers to develop bonding among the team mates."

(A) could (B) will
(C) shall (D) would

Ans :

(D) would

- XI.** Complete the given sentence about the reaction of a tourist to another, by selecting the correct option : 1

Yesterday you loved the spicy Indian curry, _____ you ?

- (A) hasn't (B) weren't
(C) did (D) didn't

Ans :

(D) didn't

- XII.** Read the conversation between a professional writer and a school student : 1

Student : What prompted you to become a professional writer?

Writer : My childhood library housed books of all kinds. I was fascinated with the compelling stories and wanted to create my own.

Report the student's question.

Ans :

The student asked the writer what had prompted him to become a professional writer. The writer replied that his childhood library had books of all kinds. He added that he had been fascinated by the compelling stories and had wanted to create stories of his own.

CREATIVE WRITING SKILLS

Note : All details presented in the questions are imaginary and created for assessment purpose.

- 4. Attempt ANY ONE from (A) and (B) given below :** 5

- (A) You are Roshni/Roshan, a concerned resident of Aryan Colony. There is a school inside your colony because of which there is traffic chaos and congestion during drop off and pick up timings. This has resulted in episodes of road rage as well as injuries to both students and residents. Write a letter to the Traffic Commissioner drawing his attention to the problem. Press on the urgent need to find solutions to reduce traffic congestion during peak hours.

Ans :

Aryan Colony
Sector 12
New Delhi – 1100XX
8 March 2026

The Traffic Commissioner
Traffic Police Headquarters
New Delhi – 1100XX

Subject: Urgent need to address traffic congestion near school in Aryan Colony

Sir/Madam,

I am writing to draw your attention to the severe traffic congestion in Aryan Colony due to a school located within the residential area. During drop-off and pick-up hours, the roads become overcrowded with vehicles, leading to chaos and frequent traffic jams. This situation has resulted in road rage incidents and poses serious safety risks to students, pedestrians, and residents.

The lack of proper traffic regulation and parking management worsens the situation. Immediate measures such as deploying traffic personnel, creating designated parking zones, and implementing strict traffic rules during peak hours are necessary to ensure safety and smooth traffic flow.

I request you to kindly look into this matter urgently and take appropriate action to resolve this issue.

Yours faithfully,

Roshni

OR

- (B) You are Arti/Ashok Shukla, a resident of Nirman Vihar, Karnal. You have witnessed the children of your locality taking charge of the neighbourhood clean up. They not only dedicated weekend mornings in cleaning parks but also put up posters spreading awareness of segregated waste management. This move has made the area an immensely pleasant experience for the residents. Inspired by your experience, write a letter to the editor of the Times of India sharing your views on the power of teenagers when it comes to community welfare. Add how their proactiveness for civic welfare adds to their wholesome personality development.

Ans :

Ashok Shukla
House No. 42, Nirman Vihar
Karnal – 132001
8 March 2026

The Editor
The Times of India
Karnal – 132001

Subject: Appreciating teenagers' role in community welfare

Sir/Madam,

Through the columns of your esteemed newspaper, I would like to highlight the inspiring efforts of teenagers in my locality, Nirman Vihar. These young individuals have taken the initiative to clean neighbourhood parks every weekend and have also displayed posters to spread awareness about waste segregation.

Their dedication has significantly improved the cleanliness and environment of our area, making it more pleasant for residents. Their proactive involvement not only benefits society but also helps in their personality development by instilling values such as responsibility, leadership, and social awareness.

Such initiatives prove that teenagers have the power to bring positive change in society. Their efforts should be encouraged and appreciated by everyone.

Yours sincerely,
Ashok Shukla

5. Attempt ANY ONE from (A) and (B) given below : **5**

(A)

Improvements in sports infrastructure with a focus on multi-purpose sustainable facilities as well as the integration of technology along with a grassroot centric approach is the key to bring Indian athletes on the world stage.

Write an analytical paragraph on the above statement in about 120 words, expressing your views on how improved infrastructure can help Indian athletes win accolades for the nation.

Ans :

**Role of Sports Infrastructure in India's
Global Sporting Success**

Improvement in sports infrastructure plays a crucial role in helping Indian athletes achieve success at the global level. Multi-purpose sustainable facilities provide athletes with proper training environments, modern equipment, and safe conditions to enhance their performance. The integration of technology, such as performance analysis tools and advanced coaching methods, helps athletes identify their strengths and improve their weaknesses. A grassroots-centric approach ensures that young talent from rural and remote areas is identified and nurtured from an early stage. This creates a strong foundation for future champions. Better infrastructure also boosts

athletes' confidence and motivation. Therefore, investing in modern sports infrastructure is essential for enabling Indian athletes to compete internationally and bring glory and accolades to the nation.

OR

(B) Read the following details about the characteristics of the Indian start-up ecosystem :

1. one of the most vibrant and largest in the world.
2. drives innovation across various fields.
3. brings unique solutions to major challenges both domestic and international.
4. has entered various fields - healthcare, e-commerce, agriculture.
5. supported by funding and government initiatives.

In about 120 words analyse the future of startups in India considering factors that have supported its growth in the country. Focus on aspects of the need, benefits, and support needed for these startups.

Ans :

**The Promising Future of India's
Start-up Ecosystem**

The future of startups in India is highly promising due to its vibrant and rapidly growing ecosystem. Startups are driving innovation across sectors such as healthcare, e-commerce, and agriculture by providing unique solutions to major challenges. Government initiatives, funding support, and programs like Startup India have encouraged entrepreneurship and created opportunities for young innovators. Startups generate employment, promote technological advancement, and contribute to economic growth. However, continued support in the form of financial assistance, mentorship, infrastructure, and simplified regulations is essential for their sustainability. Encouraging research, skill development, and investment will further strengthen this ecosystem. With proper support, Indian startups can expand globally and play a significant role in the country's development and competitiveness.

SECTION-C (40 Marks)
LITERATURE TEXT BOOK

6. Read the given extracts and answer the questions for ANY ONE of the two given :

- (A) We have, at last, achieved our political emancipation. We pledge ourselves to liberate all our people from the continuing bondage of poverty, deprivation, suffering, gender and other discrimination. Never, never, and never again shall it be that this beautiful land will again experience the oppression of one by another. The sun shall never set on so glorious a human achievement.

(Nelson Mandela – Long Walk to Freedom)

- I. What is the tone Nelson Mandela is UNLIKELY to have used in his speech? 1
(A) inspirational (B) assertive
(C) conflicted (D) direct
- II. According to Mandela, emancipation is not merely political. Elaborate. 2
- III. Fill in the blank with the correct word from the bracket : 1
Mandela's speech swings between references to the past and a _____ (bleak/promising) future.
- IV. With reference to the extract explain the sentence, "The sun shall never set on so glorious a human achievement." 1

Ans :

- I. (C) conflicted
- II. According to Mandela, emancipation is not merely political because true freedom also means ending poverty, deprivation, suffering, and discrimination. He emphasizes that people must be liberated from social and economic injustice to achieve complete and meaningful freedom.
- III. promising
- IV. This sentence means that the achievement of freedom and equality is so great that it will always be remembered and valued. It symbolizes hope, pride, and a future free from oppression.

OR

- (B) OOP : I haven't a clue. I've been to seven galaxies, but I've never seen anything like this. Maybe they're hats. (He opens a book and puts it on his head.) Say, maybe this is a haberdashery!
- OMEGA : (bowing low) Perhaps the Great and Mighty Think-Tank will give us the benefit of his thought on the matter.

THINK-TANK : Elementary, my dear Omega. Hold one of the items up so that I may view it closely. (Omega holds a book on the palm of her hand.) Yes, yes, I understand now. Since Earth creatures are always eating, the place in which you find yourselves is undoubtedly a crude refreshment stand.

OMEGA : (to Iota and Oop) He says we're in a refreshment stand.

OOP : Well, the Earthlings certainly have a strange diet.

(The Book that Saved the Earth)

- I. "Elementary, my dear Omega." What is Think-Tank's tone in the sentence ? 1
(A) patronising (B) admonishing
(C) ironic (D) sarcastic
- II. Why does Omega call Think-Tank great and mighty ? 2
- III. Fill in the blank with the correct word from the bracket : 1
After viewing the book closely, Think-Tank concludes that Earth creatures _____ (enjoy/dislike) eating food.
- IV. Why does Oop open the book and put it on his head ? 1

Ans :

- I. (A) patronising
- II. Omega calls Think-Tank great and mighty because he is their leader and they believe he is highly intelligent. They trust his intelligence and depend on his guidance to understand unknown things, even though his conclusions are often incorrect.
- III. enjoy
- IV. Oop opens the book and puts it on his head because he does not know what a book is and mistakenly thinks it might be something like a hat.

Read the given extracts and answer the questions for ANY ONE of the two given:

- (A) Some say the world will end in fire some say in ice.
From what I've tasted of desire
I hold with those who favour fire.

(Stanza 1)

But if it had to perish twice,
I think I know enough of hate
To say that for destruction ice
Is also great
And would suffice.

(Fire and Ice)

- I.** Complete the following suitably : 1
According to Robert Frost, fire refers to _____
- II.** Why does the poet believe both fire and ice can destroy the world equally ? 2
- III.** Fill in the blank with one word : 1
In the line “But if it has to perish twice”, ‘it’ refers to the _____
- IV.** Select the option with same rhyme scheme as lines in Stanza 1 : 1
- (A) They are all gone away,
The House is shut and still,
There is nothing more to say.
- (B) Tell me not, in mournful numbers,
Life is but an empty dream!
For the soul is dead that slumbers.
- (C) The dog chased the ball down the lane,
He ran with such incredible speed,
His tail was a blur, a joyful glee.
- (D) The Sun is high,
The clouds drift past,
In the blue sky which is so vast.

Ans :

- I. desire
- II. The poet believes both fire and ice can destroy the world because they symbolize destructive human emotions. Fire represents desire and uncontrolled passion, while ice represents hatred and cold indifference. Both emotions are powerful enough to cause destruction and end the world.
- III. world
- IV. (B) Tell me not, in mournful numbers,
Life is but an empty dream!
For the soul is dead that slumbers.

OR

- (B) Though to distinguish beasts of prey
A novice might nonplus,
The crocodile you always may
Tell from the Hyena thus :
Hyenas come with merry smiles
But if they weep they're crocodiles.
(How to tell Wild Animals)
- I.** What is the most likely reason the poet uses the word “nonplus” instead of confused ? 1
- II.** Explain the irony in the last two lines of the stanza. 2
- III.** Fill in the blank with one word : 1
The word ‘novice’ signifies a/an _____ person.

- IV.** What kind of atmosphere is created through these lines ? 1

Select the correct option :

1. humorous
2. mysterious
3. aggressive
4. confusing
5. fearful

Options :

- (A) 1 and 4
(B) Only 5
(C) 1, 2 and 3
(D) 4 and 5

Ans :

- I. The poet uses the word “nonplus” instead of confused to create a humorous and poetic effect, and to maintain the playful tone and rhythm of the poem.
- II. The irony lies in the reversal of natural characteristics. Hyenas are known for laughing, while crocodiles are associated with false tears. The poet humorously suggests that if hyenas cry, they are crocodiles, which creates a funny and ironic contrast.
- III. inexperienced
- IV. (A) 1 and 4

8. Answer ANY FOUR of the following five questions, in about 40–50 words each : $4 \times 3 = 12$

- I.** What is the important lesson of life that the boy learns from the loss of the ball ?
(The Ball Poem)

Ans :

The boy learns that loss is an unavoidable part of life. Losing the ball teaches him responsibility and emotional maturity. He understands that material things cannot always be recovered, and one must accept loss calmly. This experience marks his transition from childhood innocence to adulthood awareness and self-reliance.

- II.** What unexpected event does Valli face and how is it ironically significant for the little child ?
(Madam Rides the Bus)

Ans :

Valli unexpectedly sees a dead cow lying on the road during her return journey. Earlier, she had happily admired the same cow. This is ironic because the incident introduces her to the reality of death, contrasting her earlier excitement, and marks her emotional growth and deeper understanding of life.

III. Give a brief description of Anne Frank's family.*(From the Diary of Anne Frank)***Ans :**

Anne Frank's family consisted of her father Otto Frank, mother Edith Frank, and elder sister Margot Frank. Her father was loving and supportive, while she had a strained relationship with her mother. Margot was calm, intelligent, and obedient. The family lived in hiding to escape Nazi persecution.

IV. What was the cause of conflict between Natalya and Lomov ?*(The Proposal)***Ans :**

The conflict between Natalya and Lomov was caused by disputes over land ownership, especially Oxen Meadows, and later over whose dog was superior. Both were stubborn and argumentative. Their pride and possessiveness led to frequent quarrels, highlighting the theme of trivial conflicts in human relationships.

V. What is 'yellow hair' a symbol of in "For Anne Gregory" ? Discuss.*(For Anne Gregory)***Ans :**

'Yellow hair' symbolizes physical beauty and external appearance. It represents superficial attraction based on looks rather than inner qualities. The poem suggests that true love should be based on inner beauty and personality, not physical features, which are temporary and deceptive.

9. Answer ANY TWO of the following three questions, in about 40-50 words each : $2 \times 3 = 6$ **I. Describe the extraordinary behaviour of the furniture when the Halls entered the stranger's room.***(Footprints Without Feet)***Ans :**

When the Halls entered the stranger's room, the furniture began moving mysteriously. Chairs rose in the air and pushed them out, and the bedclothes attacked Mrs. Hall. This extraordinary behaviour happened because Griffin, the invisible man, was present and using his invisibility to frighten them away.

II. How does the statement "society must be protected from men like you" prove to be ironical in the story "A Question of Trust" ?**Ans :**

This statement is ironic because Horace Danby was actually a careful and non-violent thief who never harmed anyone. However, the woman he trusted was herself a clever thief who deceived him and escaped. Thus, Horace became the victim, showing that appearances can be misleading.

III. "The Midnight Visitor" illustrates that "Stereotypes are often misleading". Justify.**Ans :**

Ausable did not fit the stereotype of a secret agent, as he was fat and slow-moving. However, he proved intelligent and brave by outwitting Max using a clever trick. This shows that true ability lies in intelligence and presence of mind, not in physical appearance.

10. Answer ANY ONE of the following two questions, in about 100-120 words : 6**I. Examine the similarities and differences between the tiger in "A Tiger in the Zoo" and the dragon in "The Tale of Custard the Dragon".****Ans :**

The tiger and Custard the dragon both represent strength, but their circumstances and behaviour contrast sharply. The tiger is confined in a zoo cage, which prevents him from living freely and expressing his natural power. He feels restless, angry, and helpless. On the other hand, Custard is considered cowardly and is often mocked by others. However, when danger appears in the form of a pirate, Custard bravely kills him and saves everyone. The tiger symbolizes trapped strength, while Custard represents hidden courage. Thus, while both are strong creatures, the tiger suffers from captivity, whereas Custard proves his bravery through action.

II. "The Sermon at Benaras" and "For Anne Gregory", deal with the themes of 'love' and 'life'. Discuss.**Ans :**

"The Sermon at Benaras" and "For Anne Gregory" explore important aspects of love and life from different perspectives. In "The Sermon at Benaras", Lord Buddha explains that life is full of suffering due to human attachment and desire. He teaches that peace can be achieved through wisdom and detachment. In "For Anne Gregory", the poet highlights that human love is often based on physical beauty rather than inner qualities. He suggests that true love should

go beyond outward appearance. While Buddha emphasizes understanding life and overcoming sorrow, the poet stresses the importance of inner beauty in love. Both poems offer valuable lessons about human life and relationships.

11. Answer ANY ONE of the following two questions, in about 100–120 words : 6

- I.** Evaluate how “A Triumph of Surgery” is a lesson in thoughtful parenting.

Ans :

“A Triumph of Surgery” teaches that thoughtful parenting requires discipline, care, and responsibility. Mrs. Pumphrey loved her dog Tricki very much, but her excessive pampering made him lazy, unhealthy, and seriously ill. She overfed him and avoided exercise, which harmed his health. In contrast, Dr. Herriot treated Tricki with proper diet, exercise, and discipline. He did not give medicines but allowed Tricki to recover naturally through a healthy routine. This shows that true care involves making wise decisions for long-term well-being, not emotional indulgence. The story highlights that responsible parenting ensures proper growth, health, and independence rather than weakening the child through overprotection.

- II.** Evaluate how “The Necklace” critiques the obsession with appearances and social status.

Ans :

“The Necklace” critiques society’s obsession with appearances and social status through the character of Matilda Loisel. She was dissatisfied with her simple life and desired wealth and luxury to appear important. To impress others, she borrowed a necklace and lost it, leading her and her husband into years of poverty and hardship. Ironically, the necklace was fake, showing that her suffering was caused by her obsession with appearance rather than reality. The story teaches that valuing social status and external beauty over honesty and contentment can lead to unnecessary suffering. It emphasizes the importance of accepting reality and finding happiness beyond material appearances.

CBSE EXAMINATION QUESTION PAPER 2025

CLASS-X

ENGLISH (Language and Literature)

Time Allowed : 3 Hrs.

Maximum Marks : 80

General Instructions :

Read the instructions very carefully and strictly follow them :

1. This question paper comprises 11 questions. All questions are compulsory.
2. The Question Paper contains THREE sections -
Section A : Reading Skills
Section B : Grammar and Creative Writing Skills
Section C : Literature Textbook
3. Attempt questions based on specific instructions for each part.

SECTION-A (20 Marks)

(READING SKILLS)

1. Read the following text:

[10]

- (1) Education for Sustainable Development (ESD) is now high on the international agenda and ESD is seen as a way to encourage greater sustainable consumption and production, to counter the effects of climate change, address threats to biodiversity and provide more effective disaster risk reduction. Education for Sustainable Development is seen by UN as a lifelong process from early childhood to higher and adult education and goes beyond formal education. As values, lifestyles and attitudes are established from an early age, the role of education is of particular importance for children! ESD has often been associated with curriculum projects linked with recycling; energy and water conservation; pollution reduction and sustainable consumption - all developed to contribute towards achieving a more sustainable future.
- (2) Research from developmental psychology, longitudinal studies, social-cultural analysis, and neuroscience have all shown that it is in the early years that children have the greatest capacity to learn, and it is in these years that many of our fundamental attitudes and values are first put into place. Children are already investigating issues related to recycling, energy conservation, waste disposal and changes in their local environment. ESD in Early Childhood Care and Education (ECCE) is of great significance. The development of ESD and ECCE requires more

than just curriculum development. It provides the possibility of a transformational reconstruction.

- (3) UNICEF reports show that children under the age of eight represent the highest percentage of affected population in today's global emergencies. A UNESCO survey has shown that the ministries of education, environment and sustainable development in 97 UN member states identify poverty as the highest priority area to be addressed in achieving sustainable development. In fact, reductions in poverty and inequality are widely recognised as the priority in efforts to create a more sustainable world. At a global level, millions of children start school carrying the handicap that comes with the experience of malnutrition, ill-health and poverty. Yet, equitable access to high-quality pre-school programmes remain a problem in both rich and poor countries. Sustainable development projects that enable rapid progress in maternal health, child nutrition and survival already exist, even in some of the world's poorest countries. Linking health and education agenda has been recognised as extremely important.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above:

- i. Complete the following with a suitable explanation with reference to paragraph (1). [1]
ESD is now high on the international agenda because _____.
- ii. Based on the given passage, How does UN view ESD as a lifelong process? What are the critical areas of emphasis? (Paragraph 1) [2]

iii. List two curriculum projects that ESD (Education for Sustainable Development) has been linked with. (Paragraph 1) [1]

iv. Complete the following suitably: [2]
Many of our fundamental attitudes and values are put into plan in the early years as _____. (Paragraph 2)

v. Substitute the underlined word with the correct word from paragraph (2): [1]
ESD in Early Childhood Care and Education provides the possibility of transformational reconstruction.
(A) positive change
(B) power to reform
(C) negative impact
(D) creative

vi. What do UNICEF reports reveal about the vulnerability of children under the age of eight during global emergencies? (Paragraph 3) [1]
(A) UNICEF reports highlight the resilience of children under the age of eight during global emergencies.
(B) UNICEF reports indicate that children under the age of eight are rarely affected by global emergencies.
(C) UNICEF reports show that children under the age of eight represent the highest percentage of affected population in global emergencies.
(D) UNICEF reports suggest that children under the age of eight are primarily responsible for responding to global-emergencies.

vii. What remains a problem in both rich and poor countries? (Paragraph 3)
What has been recognised as crucial? [1]

viii. Complete the sentence with the correct response:
The writer's tone in the passage is _____. [1]

Ans :

- i. it's seen as a method to promote eco-friendly ways of consuming and producing goods, help slow down climate change, protect biodiversity, and reduce disaster risks effectively.
- ii. The United Nations views Education for Sustainable Development (ESD) as a process that starts when children are very young and continues throughout their lives, including higher and adult education. It goes beyond just regular school lessons. The main goals are :
 1. Teaching values, ways of living, and attitudes from an early age

2. Promoting eco-friendly consumption and production
3. Increasing understanding of climate change, protecting biodiversity, and reducing disaster risks effectively.

iii. 1. Recycling and conserving energy
2. Reducing pollution and promoting responsible consumption

iv. children are quick to learn and are already exploring environmental topics, such as recycling and waste management.

v. (A) positive change
The underlined phrase "transformational reconstruction" refers to making meaningful and lasting improvements. In paragraph (2), ESD (Education for Sustainable Development) in early childhood is described as helping shape values, attitudes, and lifestyles from a young age, leading to positive change. Hence, option (A) correctly matches the meaning.

vi. (C) UNICEF reports show that children under the age of eight represent the highest percentage of affected population in global emergencies. UNICEF reports reveal that children under eight are the most vulnerable during global emergencies. They make up the largest percentage of the affected population, facing serious risks to their health, safety, and development.

vii. Getting fair access to quality pre-school programs is still a challenge in both wealthy and less affluent countries. It's also been recognized as very important to connect health and education.

viii. informative and analytical

2. Read the following text : [10]

- (1) Electric vehicles (EV) market is growing rapidly all over the world. In India also the EV market has gained significant momentum. It has grown more after the implementation of FAME (Faster Adoption and Manufacture of Hybrid and Electric Vehicles) scheme in 2015 by Ministry of Heavy Industry and Public Enterprises.
- (2) Electric vehicles are solutions to be independent and free from imported energy resources. Electric cars can bring a major change to India in becoming self-sustainable. EV could also be the alternative to decrease carbon dioxide gas. Carbon dioxide from automobiles is one of the causes of air pollution.
- (3) An EV can be used for flexible load, for standardizing the grid with substantial share of fluctuating renewable energy generation. EV

emits 30-80% less greenhouse gas when compared with Internal Combustion Engine (ICE) vehicle. EVs do not consume any energy when it is stationary as compared to ICE vehicles where fuel is consumed when it is idle. EV is recognised as promising alternatives to vehicles and will potentially replace ICE vehicles in the near future.

- (4) The electric vehicles have low emissions, high efficiency and smooth operation. The energy consumption and emissions for plug in hybrid electric vehicles found that compared to gasoline vehicles there is 37.5% less energy consumption and 35% less greenhouse gas emissions. The government have started financial policies to encourage EV adoption; however, decision makers have to plan a long-term perspective to get them implemented efficiently.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above :

- i. What does the phrase 'gained significant momentum' in paragraph (1) tell us about the impact of EV market? [1]
(A) It is momentarily important
(B) It has developed very quickly
(C) It has gained profit
(D) It has to develop a significant market
- ii. Select the option that is true for the Assertion and Reason given below : [1]
Assertion : Electric vehicles can bring a major change to India.
Reason : It can bring India to becoming self-sustainable.
(A) Both the Assertion and Reason are true and the Reason is the correct explanation of the Assertion
(B) Both the Assertion and Reason are true but the Reason is not the correct explanation of the Assertion
(C) The Assertion is true, but the Reason is false
(D) The Assertion is false, but the Reason is true.
- iii. Give two benefits of using Electric vehicles over Internal Combustion Engine vehicles. [2]
- iv. With reference to the passage, the word 'idle' in paragraph (3) most nearly means _____. [1]
- v. How do electric vehicles contribute to diminishing a country's reliance on imported energy? [1]

- vi. Read the given prompt and select the correct option in the brackets to fill in the blank :
EV could be the alternative to _____ (enhance/reduce) the carbon dioxide gas emission. [1]
- vii. Give evidence from the passage to show that government is encouraging the use of Electric Vehicles. [1]
- viii. Complete the sentence suitably :
The result of the implementation of FAME (Faster Adoption and Manufacture of Electric vehicles) is _____. [1]
- ix. Complete the following with a suitable reason :
The long-term perspective by decision makers is to ensure _____. [1]

Ans :

- i. (B) It has developed very quickly
The phrase "gained significant momentum" means that the electric vehicle (EV) market has grown or progressed at a fast pace. It shows rapid development and increasing interest or activity in this sector.
- ii. (A) Both the Assertion and Reason are true and the Reason is the correct explanation of the Assertion
Electric vehicles (EVs) have the potential to bring a major change to India by reducing dependency on imported fuels and promoting clean energy. This supports the goal of making India self-sustainable. So, both the assertion and the reason are true, and the reason correctly explains the assertion.
- iii. 1. EVs produce 30-80% fewer greenhouse gases in comparison to ICE vehicles.
2. EVs do not use energy while stationary, whereas ICE vehicles continue to consume fuel when idle.
- iv. inactive
- v. Electric vehicles run on electricity, which can be produced locally from renewable sources. This means we don't have to rely as much on energy imported from other countries.
- vi. reduce
- vii. Financial plans have been put in place to encourage people to use electric vehicles.
- viii. the electric vehicle market in India is growing very fast.
- ix. in the long run, decision makers aim to put electric vehicles into practice effectively and have them widely accepted, helping to build a sustainable future.

SECTION-B (20 Marks)**(GRAMMAR AND CREATIVE WRITING SKILLS)****GRAMMAR [10]****3. Complete ANY TEN of twelve of the following tasks, as directed : [10×1=10]**

- i. Complete the newspaper report by using the correct form of the verb given in the bracket: [1]
He was a renowned business person. He _____ (purchase) a house in the city last year.

Ans : purchased

- ii. Fill in the blank by choosing the correct option to complete the concluding part of an article on 'Exploitation of Children'. [1]
It _____ (may/should/could) be our concerted effort not to employ children in industries and to save them from any kind of exploitation.

Ans : should

- iii. Read the given line and identify the error. Also provide with the correct word. [1]
Mobile phones has become an integral part of life.

Error	Correction

Ans :

Error	Correction
has	have

- iv. Take a look at the conversation between two friends Riya and Simran discussing a book that one of them has recently read. [1]

Riya : The book really caught my attention. It's called 'Eternal Echoes'.

Simran : Sounds interesting! I'll definitely add it to my reading list. Thanks for the recommendation! Select the correct option to complete the reporting of the above dialogue.

Riya told Simran about the book called Eternal Echoes that had captured her interest. Simran, in response, expressed that it _____ and mentioned that she would consider reading it.

- (A) sound interesting
(B) sounded interesting
(C) will be interesting
(D) was found to be interesting

Ans :

- (B) sounded interesting

In reported speech, the verb tense usually shifts back. Since Simran originally said, "Sounds interesting," it changes to "sounded interesting" in reported form to match the past tense of the narration.

- v. Select the option that identifies the error and supplies the correction for the line given below: [1]
He usually ate breakfast before he goes to school.

Options	Error	Correction
(A)	usually	always
(B)	ate	eats
(C)	before	after
(D)	goes	went

Ans : (B) Error - ate, Correction - eats

- vi. Report the dialogue between a teacher and a student by completing the sentence: [1]

Teacher : Good morning! Today, we're going to learn about the importance of trees. They play a vital role in our ecosystem. Can you think of any other reasons?

Student : I pledge to plant some trees this weekend.

The student understood the importance of trees and added that he _____.

Ans :

promised to plant a few trees over that weekend.

- vii. Identify the error and supply correction for the given sentence talking about importance of a 'Sound Sleep'. [1]

Sleep is important in maintain one's health and well being.

Use the given format for your response:

Error	Correction

Ans :

Error	Correction
in	to

- iii. Complete the given narrative, by filling the blank with the correct option: [1]

When they began to play it _____ to rain.

- (A) start
(B) started
(C) starts
(D) having started

Ans : (B) started

The sentence is in the past tense (“When they began to play”), so the verb in the second part should also be in the past tense. Therefore, “it started to rain” is the correct choice. Option (B) fits the sentence grammatically and logically.

- ix. Fill in the blank choosing the most appropriate option: [1]

The teacher distributed a piece of paper to _____ student.

- (A) few (B) all
(C) many (D) each

Ans : (D) each

The sentence refers to giving one piece of paper to every individual student. The word “each” is used when talking about individual members of a group. So, the correct sentence is: “The teacher distributed a piece of paper to each student.”

- x. Fill in the blank by choosing the correct option, to complete the line given below: [1]

Oral hygiene _____ be inculcated in children early in life. (should, would)

Ans : should

- xi. Complete the given sentence by selecting the correct option: [1]

The information given here _____ to all the products in this section.

- (A) apply (B) applied
(C) is applied (D) applies

Ans : (D) applies

The subject “information” is singular, so the verb must also be in singular form. “Applies” is the correct present tense verb that agrees with the singular noun “information.” Therefore, the correct sentence is: “The information given here applies to all the products in this section.”

- xii. Identify the error and supply correction for the following sentence. [1]

Be the changes you want to see in the world.

Use the given format for your response :

Error	Correction

Ans :

Error	Correction
changes	change

CREATIVE WRITING SKILLS [10]

Note : All details presented in the questions are imaginary and created for assessment purpose :

4. Attempt ANY ONE from (A) and (B) given below :

- (A) You are Raashi/Rahul of Simargarh, Himachal Pradesh. Write a letter in about 100-120 words to the Municipal Commissioner of the city drawing attention to the unattended condition of the public parks in your town. They are poorly maintained with garbage strewn and pools of stagnant water. Give suggestions on how the parks can be maintained. [5]

Ans :

House No. 12, Green Meadows,
Simargarh, Himachal Pradesh – 172xxx
Date: April 9, 2025

To,

The Municipal Commissioner,
City of Simargarh,
Simargarh, Himachal Pradesh

Subject : Request for Improved Maintenance of Public Parks

Respected Sir/Madam,

I am Raashi from Simargarh, Himachal Pradesh. I am writing to draw your attention to the poor condition of the public parks in our town. The parks are not maintained properly; garbage is strewn all over, and stagnant water collects in several areas. This not only spoils the beauty of our community but also poses health risks.

I suggest initiating regular cleaning drives, ensuring timely garbage collection, and installing effective drainage systems. Involving local residents in maintaining the parks could also help improve their upkeep.

Thank you for your prompt attention.

Yours faithfully,

Raashi

OR

- (B) You are Bela/Baloo of Palanpuri. You recently visited a ‘craft mela’. You were delighted to see the diversity of handicrafts, handlooms and cultural fabric of India. However, you were dismayed that not many people were there to encourage the artisans. Write a letter to the editor in 100-120 words, expressing your views on the situation and the need to support indigenous art and craft. [5]

Ans :

House No. 15, Shanti Nagar,
Palanpuri, Himachal Pradesh – 175XXX
Date: April 9, 2025
To,
The Editor,
Hindustan Times,
Palanpuri, Himachal Pradesh
Subject: Support for Indigenous Art and Craft
Dear Editor,

I recently visited a craft mela in our region and was delighted to see the diverse range of handicrafts, handlooms, and the rich cultural fabric of India on display. However, I was dismayed by the low turnout at the event, which left many talented artisans without the support they deserve. It is vital to encourage our local artists as they play a key role in preserving our heritage and promoting indigenous skills. I urge the community to attend such events and appreciate the unique craftsmanship, ensuring these valuable art forms thrive.

Yours sincerely,
Bela

5. Attempt ANY ONE from (A) and (B) given below :

- (A) Today, many projects in India are being initiated and implemented with the aim of transforming India into a digitally empowered society and economy.

[Digital India Program]

IT – Jobs

e – governance

e – Kranti Electronic Delivery of Services

Broadband for all – Urban and Rural

Information for all.

Write an analytical paragraph of 100-120 words based on the given information. [5]

Ans :

Digital India Program

The Digital India program is designed to build a society that is digitally advanced. It works step-by-step by first improving the physical infrastructure, such as expanding broadband connections to both urban and rural areas. Then, it introduces e-Governance systems, which make government services easier and faster for everyone to use. Lastly, the program focuses on creating IT jobs, helping to grow the economy by encouraging a knowledge-based industry. For example, e-Governance helps people access services

without long delays, and better broadband means that people in remote areas can enjoy the same opportunities as those in cities. Overall, this approach not only reduces the digital gap but also makes society more inclusive and boosts India's economic development.

OR

- (B) Read the given details of the different activities that interest children in the age group of 14-17 years.

- dance, music, art
- outdoor sports like cricket, hockey, basketball, soccer, tennis
- computer games
- net surfing
- social media

Analyse the details and write an analytical paragraph in about 120 words about the suitability of the given activities. Focus on factors like interest, physical, mental and emotional development, personality development, and suitability. [5]

Ans :

Teenage Activities and Growth

Engaging in various activities plays an important role in the overall growth of children aged 14-17. Creative activities boost their imagination, while sports improve fitness and build endurance, and digital activities enhance cognitive skills and quick reflexes. However, digital activities can sometimes lead to isolation or even addiction if not managed well. For example, sports help build physical stamina, arts develop patience, and gaming sharpens reaction speed. Overall, a balanced mix of creative, physical, and digital activities is key to ensuring that young people develop both mentally and physically, leading to well-rounded growth and better well-being.

SECTION-C (40 Marks)

(LITERATURE TEXT BOOK)

Read the given extracts and answer the questions for ANY ONE of the two given :

“Paper has more patience than people. I thought of this saying on one of those days when I was feeling a little depressed and was sitting at home with my chin in my hands, bored and listless, wondering whether to stay in or go out. I finally stayed where I was, brooding : Yes, paper does have more patience, and since I'm not planning

to let anyone else read this stiff backed notebook grandly referred to as a 'diary', unless I should ever find a real friend, it probably won't make a bit of difference."

(From the Diary of Anne Frank)

- i. In light of the excerpt, what can we infer about the speaker's emotional state? [1]
- ii. The narrator enhances the narrative technique of the extract by using : [2]
 - (A) descriptive language
 - (B) literary allusions
 - (C) humour
 - (D) reflective
- iii. Fill in the blank with the correct word from the bracket : [1]
The narrator doesn't plan to let anyone read her diary as she doesn't have any real _____. (friend/incidents)
- iv. Why does the narrator say that 'paper has more patience than people'? [1]
Ans :
 - i. We can tell that Anne was feeling very down, bored, and without energy. She was lost in thought and seemed quite sad.
 - ii. (A) descriptive language
The narrative effectively uses vivid descriptive language, allowing us to clearly picture her lonely state and the scene around her, which enhances our understanding of her emotions.
 - iii. friend
 - iv. Anne Frank believed that paper is more patient than people because it listens without judging. She felt that she could share her thoughts and feelings with paper, unlike people who might react negatively.

OR

- B. "He was silent, stupefied, in dismay, at the sight of his wife weeping. He stammered, "What is the matter? What is the matter?" By a violent effort, she had controlled her vexation and responded in a calm voice, wiping her moist cheeks, "Nothing. Only I have no dress and consequently I cannot go to this affair. Give your card to some colleague whose wife is better fitted out than I." He was grieved, but answered, "Let us see, Matilda. How much would a suitable costume cost, something that would serve for their occasions, something very simple?" She reflected for some seconds thinking of a sum that could ask for without

bringing with it an immediate refusal and a frightened exclamation from the economical clerk."

(The Necklace)

- i. What can we infer about Matilda's emotions and financial situation based on her husband's reaction and her response to not having a dress for the affair? [2]
- ii. Which of the following is NOT a reason for Matilda's distress in the extract? [1]
 - (A) She has no suitable dress for the affair.
 - (B) She is upset about her husband's reaction.
 - (C) She is worried about the cost of a suitable costume.
 - (D) The card did not bear her name.
- iii. What did Matilda suggest that her husband do with the card? [1]
- iv. In the given extract what does the term 'economic clerk' imply? [1]
Ans :
 - i. Matilda felt very upset and struggled to keep her emotions under control. She didn't have enough money to buy a nice outfit for the event, which made her feel sad. She was never happy with her life and always dreamed of living in luxury. This deeply upset M. Loisel.
 - ii. (D) The card did not bear her name.
Matilda is upset because she has no appropriate dress for the event and is worried about the expense of buying one. Her distress clearly stems from her appearance and financial worries. There is no mention of any issue with the invitation card bearing her name.
 - iii. Matilda advised her husband to give the invitation card to a colleague, as his wife would be more suitable to attend the event.
 - iv. The term "economic clerk" suggests that M. Loisel was careful with his spending because he earned only a small income.

7. Read the given extracts and answer the questions for ANY ONE of the two given: [5×1=5]

- A. Belinda giggled till she shook the house,
And Blink said Weeck! Which is giggling for a mouse,
Ink and Mustard rudely asked his age,
When Custard cried for a nice safe cage.
Suddenly, suddenly they heard a nasty sound,
And Mustard growled, and they all looked around.
(The Tale of Custard the Dragon)

- i. What inference can be drawn from the repetition of 'suddenly, suddenly' in the above extract? [1]
 (A) The scene shook the house
 (B) It highlights the swift assault
 (C) It emphasises that an unexpected noise was heard
 (D) It directs our notice to Mustard's growling
- ii. Despite its symbolism of captivity, what leads Custard to have a preference for staying in a cage? [1]
- iii. Select the option that applies the same rhyme scheme as the lines of the first four lines of the given extract: [1]
 (A) Through the telescope she saw a star
 which she thought was very far
 She stretched her hand
 and felt the crumple of the sand.
 (B) Through the telescope she saw a star
 She stretched her hand
 As it was very far
 But felt the crumple of the sand.
 (C) Through the telescope she saw a star
 Which she thought was very far
 Her hand she stretched
 But felt the crumple of the sand.
 (D) Through the telescope she saw a star
 Which she thought was very far
 Her hand she stretched afar
 But felt the crumple of the sand.
- iv. In the given extract,
 The difference between the other animals and Custard is that Custard behaves like a _____ (coward/dragon). [1]

Ans :

- i. (C) It emphasises that an unexpected noise was heard
 The repetition of "suddenly, suddenly" emphasizes that an unexpected noise was heard. Repeating the word quickly builds suspense and alerts the reader to a sudden interruption in the cheerful mood, drawing focus to the unanticipated sound. Thus, option (C) is correct since it highlights the surprise element in the scene.
- ii. Custard likes the cage because it makes him feel safe. As a shy dragon, he feels much more comfortable and protected inside, far away from any danger.

- iii. (A) Through the telescope she saw a star
 which she thought was very far
 She stretched her hand
 and felt the crumple of the sand.

Option (A) follows an AA BB rhyme scheme like the given extract. The first two lines end with "star" and "far," which rhyme, and the next two lines end with "hand" and "sand," which also match. This mirrors the pattern where alternate lines pair together with the same ending sounds.

- iv. coward

OR

- B. I sit inside, doors open to the veranda writing long letters in which I scarcely mention the departure of the forest from the house. The night is fresh, the whole moon shines in a sky still open...

(The Trees)

What atmosphere or mood is created by the language and imagery used in the above lines? [2]

Choose the option that correctly pairs the two different meanings implied by the use of 'open' twice in the extract: [1]

- (A) entry point - vastness
 (B) sharing a common space - great view
 (C) allowing access and vision - expanse of space
 (D) advantage - obstacles ahead

- iii. From the provided extract, what is conspicuously absent from the long letters the speaker is writing while they sit indoors with the doors open to the veranda? [1]

- iv. How does the poet describe the night? [1]
 1. dark, 2. frightening, 3. dense, 4. fresh, 5. bright
 Select the correct option:

- (A) 1 and 5
 (B) Only 3
 (C) 4 and 5
 (D) 2 and 4

Ans :

- i. The words and images used in the text set a calm and peaceful tone. Descriptions of a cool night, a bright moon, and an open sky make you feel free and relaxed. They also stir up feelings of nostalgia and deep thought.
- ii. (C) allowing access and vision - expanse of space
 The extract uses the word "open" in two ways. First, when it describes the doors as "open to the veranda," it means the doors are not closed, allowing access and a clear view. Second, when

it says “a sky still open,” it emphasizes the vast, expansive space of the sky. Option (C) accurately pairs these meanings.

iii. The letters hardly mention that the forest is disappearing. This implies that there is a gap or even a deliberate avoidance when it comes to talking about the loss of nature.

iv. (C) 4 and 5

In the extract, the poet describes the night as “fresh” and “bright.” The word “fresh” suggests that the air feels cool and clean, while “bright” comes from the shining full moon visible in an open sky. This creates a calm and uplifting mood.

8. Answer ANY FOUR of the following five questions, in about 30-40 words each: [4×3=12]

i. Every creature possesses a unique characteristic that defines it, and this trait is closely linked to its nature. This concept is beautifully illustrated in the poem “How to Tell Wild Animals.” Elucidate.

Ans :

1. Every animal is known for its special traits like the tiger’s roar or the leopard’s spots.
2. The poem shows how these features connect to the natural behaviors of the animals.
3. This way, learning about them becomes fun and very engaging.

ii. Pranjal seemed to have a different level of enthusiasm compared to Rajvir when they both saw the tree plantation. Justify.

(Glimpses of India)

Ans :

Pranjal had lived around tea gardens all his life, so he took them for granted and showed less excitement. Rajvir, seeing them for the first time, was fascinated by their beauty. This difference in familiarity led to their varied enthusiasm.

iii. In the poem “Dust of Snow”, the ‘hemlock tree’ and the ‘crow’ hold specific meanings. Elaborate on how these symbols are utilized within the context of the poem.

Ans :

The ‘hemlock tree’ and the ‘crow’ usually stand for sadness or gloom. Yet, in the poem, a crow shaking snow from a hemlock tree unexpectedly changes the speaker’s mood. This shows that even dark symbols can spark positivity and hope.

iv. In what manner did Lencho’s cornfield suffer damage? Did he hold any expectations of receiving assistance?

(A Letter to God)

Ans :

Lencho’s cornfield was severely damaged by a strong hailstorm that ruined his precious crops. Yet, he held firm belief that God would provide money to recover his lost harvest, showing his deep faith and high expectation for divine assistance indeed.

v. Engaging in discussions and disputes rarely leads to problem resolution. Support the statement with evidence from the text.

(The Proposal)

Ans :

In “The Proposal,” heated discussions worsen problems rather than solving them. The characters engage in quarrels over trivial issues, focusing on blaming each other instead of finding a real solution, which clearly shows that disputes rarely lead to effective resolution.

9. Answer ANY TWO of the following three questions, in about 40-50 words: [2×3=6]

i. Books play a significant role in shaping the personality of a person. In what way did a book cause a significant shift in Richard Ebright’s life?

(The Making of a Scientist)

Ans :

The book *The Travels of Monarch X* deeply influenced Richard Ebright’s life. It sparked his interest in science and inspired him to conduct real experiments. The book motivated him to work hard, stay curious, and eventually become a successful scientist, even contributing to research related to cell theory.

ii. Bholi is sent to school for an uncommon reason, leading to a distinctive twist in her story. Elucidate.

Ans :

Bholi is sent to school not out of concern for her education, but because her parents believe she is dull and no one will marry her. They think education may improve her chances. This unusual reason leads to a twist, as education empowers Bholi to stand up for herself later.

- iii. Fowler's disappointment arose when he laid eyes on Ausable. Rationalise the statement.

(*The Midnight Visitor*)

Ans :

Fowler's disappointment arose when he saw Ausable because he had expected a smart, action-packed secret agent, like in movies. Instead, Ausable was a fat, slow-moving man in a dull hotel room. This did not match Fowler's exciting image of a spy, making him feel let down at first.

10. Answer ANY ONE of the following two questions, in about 100-120 words:

- i. The inherent instinct for freedom is a fundamental trait in all living creatures. Justify this statement with reference to 'Mijbil the Otter' and 'A Tiger in the Zoo'. [6]

Ans :

The natural instinct for freedom is present in all living beings, as shown in 'Mijbil the Otter' and 'A Tiger in the Zoo'. In 'Mijbil the Otter', the otter is full of life, playfulness, and curiosity when free in its natural surroundings. It enjoys exploring and shows signs of happiness when not confined. On the other hand, in 'A Tiger in the Zoo', the tiger paces in his cage, angry and helpless. He is quiet and restricted, unable to express his strength or hunt like he would in the wild. Both stories highlight how freedom is essential for animals to live naturally and happily, proving that every living creature values its freedom deeply.

- ii. Both 'Nelson Mandela: Long Walk to Freedom' by Nelson Mandela and 'The Trees' by Adrienne Rich explore themes of transformation, Liberation and the power to change. Examine the commonality of themes in both the works. [6]

Ans :

Both 'Nelson Mandela : Long Walk to Freedom' and 'The Trees' highlight the themes of transformation, liberation, and the power to bring change. In Mandela's autobiography, the struggle against apartheid reflects the journey from oppression to freedom, showing how courage and determination can transform a nation. Similarly, in 'The Trees', the poem shows the silent yet powerful movement of trees breaking free from confinement, symbolising nature's fight for freedom and renewal. In both works, the idea of breaking away from control whether it's political oppression or physical restriction shows the deep

desire for freedom and the strength needed to achieve true change and transformation.

11. Answer ANY ONE of the following two questions, in about 100-120 words:

- i. Griffin was a lawless person even though he was a brilliant scientist. Discuss. [6]

(*Footprints without Feet*)

Ans :

Griffin was a gifted scientist who discovered how to make himself invisible, a remarkable achievement. However, instead of using his invention for good, he chose a life of crime. He stole money, set places on fire, and hurt people without remorse. His actions show that despite his intelligence, he had no respect for law or morality. He used his scientific knowledge to break rules and escape punishment, proving that brilliance without values can be dangerous. Thus, Griffin was indeed a lawless person who misused his talents for selfish and harmful purposes.

- ii. "The Book that saved the Earth" communicates the idea that misinterpretation of cultural disparities among different groups can lead to misunderstandings and disputes. From the play, discuss methods to prevent such confusion and conflicts, ensuring the preservation of peace and harmony. [6]

(*The Book that Saved the Earth*)

Ans :

"The Book That Saved the Earth" shows how cultural differences, when misunderstood, can lead to confusion and even conflict. In the play, Martians misinterpret a simple children's book as a serious threat, nearly starting an invasion. This highlights the importance of understanding and respecting other cultures. To prevent such misunderstandings, we should encourage open communication and learning about each other's beliefs, customs, and values. Promoting education, cultural exchange programs, and respectful dialogue can help build trust. Using translators or cultural mediators during international interactions can also reduce confusion. By being open-minded and empathetic, we can avoid conflicts and work together peacefully across cultures.

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

CHAPTER 1

DISCURSIVE PASSAGE

1. INTRODUCTION

A discursive passage consists of articles which present an opinion or a reasoned argument on a topic. It is a piece of writing where the writer rambles from topic to topic. The adjective discursive is often used to describe a speech or writing that tends to stray from the main point, but the word can also have almost the opposite meaning. Discursive can also be used to describe an argument based on reason instead of intuition, a writing that is well-argued and well reasoned. Also tending to depart from the main point or cover a wide range of subjects. While attempting a 'discursive passage' it is important to read through the passage, scan for details, and then answer the given questions.

2. POINTS TO REMEMBER

One should keep the following points in mind before answering the questions set on a given discursive passage:

1. Read the passage quickly to have some general idea of the subject matter.
2. Read the passage again and underline the important points.
3. Read the questions and try to know what has been asked.
4. Underline the portions where the probable answers may be available.]
5. Remember that the word limit must always be honoured and taken seriously.

3. SOME IMPORTANT EXAMPLES

Passage 1

1. Held every year on 21 May, UNESCO leads the celebration of World Day for Cultural Diversity

for Dialogue and Development highlighting not only the richness of the world's cultures, but also the essential role of intercultural dialogue for achieving peace and sustainable development.

2. A recent international emergency has proved the intrinsic value of the cultural and creative sector at generating social cohesion, educational resource or personal well-being in times of crisis. It has also underscored the sector's potential to generate economic growth, something which is too often underestimated.
3. With the adoption in September 2015 of the 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development by the United Nations, and the resolution on Culture and Sustainable Development adopted by the UN General Assembly in December 2015, the message of the World Day for Cultural Diversity for Dialogue and Development is more important than ever. The 17 Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) can best be achieved by drawing upon the creative potential of the world's diverse cultures and engaging in continuous dialogue to ensure that all members of society benefit from sustainable development.
4. Bridging the gap between cultures is urgent and necessary for peace, stability and development. Cultural diversity is a driving force of development, not only with respect to economic growth, but also as a means of leading a more fulfilling intellectual, emotional, moral and spiritual life. This is captured in the culture conventions, which provide a solid basis for the promotion of cultural diversity. Cultural diversity is thus an asset that is indispensable for poverty reduction and the achievement of sustainable development.

At the same time, acceptance and recognition of cultural diversity in particular through innovative use of media and Information and Communications Technologies (ICTs) are conducive to dialogue among civilizations and cultures, respect and mutual understanding.

6. In 2001, UNESCO adopted the Universal Declaration on Cultural Diversity. Next, in December 2002, the UN General Assembly, in its resolution 57/249, declared May 21 to be the World Day for Cultural Diversity for Dialogue and Development, and in 2015, the Second Committee of the UN General Assembly unanimously adopted the resolution on Culture and Sustainable Development, affirming culture's contribution to the three dimensions of sustainable development, acknowledging further the natural and cultural diversity of the world, and recognizing that cultures and civilizations can contribute to, and are crucial enablers of, sustainable development.
7. The day provides us with an opportunity to deepen our understanding of the values of cultural diversity and to achieve the goals of the UNESCO Convention on the Protection and Promotion of the Diversity of Cultural Expressions adopted on 20 October, 2005.
- iv. What is the tone of the writer in the given line from paragraph (4) ? Rationalise your response in about 40 words :
"Cultural diversity is an asset."
- v. The phrase 'bridging the gap' in paragraph (4) refers to :
 - (a) widening the differences
 - (b) connecting two disparate ideas
 - (c) supporting the bridging
 - (d) filling in the space between two connected things
- vi. In sets a-e below, identify two sets of synonyms.
 1. richness and poverty
 2. intellectual and moral
 3. reduction and promotion
 4. essential and intrinsic
 5. urgent and crucial

Answer the following questions based on the above passage :

- i. Based on the reading and understanding of the above passage, list 2 points to describe the purpose of UNESCO leading the celebration of World Day for Cultural Diversity for Dialogue and Development.
 - (a) _____
 - (b) _____
- ii. Select the option that corresponds to the meaning of the following sentence from para (2).
The recent international emergency has proved the intrinsic value of the cultural and creative sector at generating social cohesion, educational resource or personal well-being in times of crisis.
 - (a) the real worth of cultural sector at generating social cohesion during pandemics
 - (b) the real worth of creative sector at undermining the social cohesion during an international emergency
 - (c) questioning the real worth of creative sector at generating education resource during an international emergency
 - (d) highlighting the real worth of cultural and creative sector at generating social cohesion and educational resource during an international emergency
- iii. Based on your reading of the passage, examine in about 40 words how Sustainable Development Goals can be achieved.
- vii. Complete the sentence appropriately :
The Second Committee of UN General Assembly in 2015 adopted _____.

Options :
(a) 1 and 3
(b) 2 and 5
(c) 4 and 5
(d) 2 and 4
- viii. Complete the following sentence :
_____ is urgent and necessary for peace, stability and development.
Ans : _____ 2024
 - i. (a) To highlight richness of world's cultures.
(b) To play essential role of inter-cultural dialogue for achieving peace and sustainable development.
 - ii. (d) highlighting the real worth of cultural and creative sector at generating social cohesion and educational resource during an international emergency
 - iii. Sustainable Development Goals can be achieved by leveraging the creative potential of diverse cultures and promoting continuous dialogue to ensure societal-wide benefits. This involves drawing upon cultural diversity to address the 17 SDGs effectively.
 - iv. The tone of the writer in the given line is affirmative and assertive. The writer presents cultural diversity as an indispensable asset, emphasizing its significant role in driving

development, reducing poverty, and achieving sustainable development goals.

“Cultural diversity is an asset” asserts the positive value and importance of cultural variety. It implies that diverse cultures enrich society and contribute significantly to various aspects of life, such as intellectual, emotional, and economic growth.

- v. (b) connecting two disparate ideas
- vi. (c) 4 and 5
- vii. the resolution on cultural and sustainable development, affirming culture’s contribution to the three dimensions of sustainable development.
- viii. Bridging the gap between culture

Passage 2

1. Fossil fuels (oil, coal, and natural gas) are our most traditional sources for power generation. The energy that’s produced from any source other than fossil fuels is termed as alternative energy. Between the two sources, using alternative energy has a lower environmental impact.
2. We now know that alternative energy sources are the sources we use to supplement or even replace traditional energy sources used for power generation. You could almost say the same thing about renewable energy sources. But there is one subtle difference between the two. All renewable energy sources fall under the category of alternative energy sources, but it doesn’t work the other way around.
3. That’s because renewable energy sources are derived from naturally replenished sources or processes of Earth, such as the sun, wind, and water. We refer to these resources as renewable or sustainable since, unlike fossil fuels, this naturally occurring continual renewal makes them inexhaustible. However, alternative energy sources are exhaustible, and therefore not renewable. That’s the difference!
4. The equipment necessary to harness energy from alternative sources used to be so expensive that it wasn’t practical for consumer use. However, thanks to increased demand, more experienced energy developers, competitive supply chains, improved renewable technologies, and enhanced energy efficiency capabilities, that’s no longer the case.
5. When it comes to energy efficiency, the leader of the renewable energy pack is wind energy. Behind wind comes geothermal energy, hydropower, nuclear energy, and then solar power. Wind power

serves both individuals and entire communities. It is versatile, and can be produced from small-scale windmills or wind turbines on residential properties. It can also be produced from large-scale offshore wind farms in the ocean.

6. We generate geothermal power by tapping into underground reservoirs of hot water and steam. Geothermal electricity can directly heat and cool buildings. Generated from the energy of moving water, hydroelectricity (also known as hydropower) is produced when water behind a dam causes turbine blades to move as it flows through an intake. The turbine blades then rotate a generator to produce electricity that is sent to power homes.

Nuclear energy is created in the form of heat through the fission process of atoms. The initial fission process creates energy and triggers a chain reaction that repeats the process and generates more energy. In nuclear power plants, the heat that fission produces creates steam. The steam then rotates a turbine, which leads to the production of electricity.

8. Solar power most commonly refers to the use of solar cells to create energy. On a small scale, you may see a few solar panels on a house roof used to produce energy for just that one home. On a larger scale, you may see a solar farm used as a power plant to produce electricity for its consumers.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage :

- i. Which of the following statements best describes the difference between renewable energy sources and alternate energy sources?
 - (a) Alternative energy sources are more expensive than renewable energy sources.
 - (b) Renewable energy sources are inexhaustible whereas alternate energy sources could be exhaustible.
 - (c) Alternative energy sources are as renewable as renewable energy sources.
 - (d) Renewable energy sources are exhaustible but alternative energy sources are inexhaustible.
- ii. What is the tone of the writer in the given lines from para (4) ? Rationalise your response in about 40 words.

“However, thanks to increased demand, more experienced energy developers, competitive supply chains, improved renewable technologies, and enhanced energy efficiency capabilities, that’s no longer the case”.

iii. Complete the sentence appropriately :

In the past, alternative energy sources were not used much by the consumers because _____.

iv. The passage includes some words that are opposites of each other. From the sets (a) to (e) below, identify two sets of antonyms :

- (a) generate and produce
- (b) exhaustible and inexhaustible
- (c) subtle and versatile
- (d) power and energy
- (e) sustainable and exhaustible

v. Who is the leader of renewable energy pack and why?**vi.** Based on the reading of the passage, examine, in about 40 words, the difference between geothermal electricity and hydroelectricity.**vii.** What is the message conveyed by the passage ?

- (a) Only those energy sources should be used which are renewable.
- (b) Wind energy is a renewable as well as inexhaustible source of energy.
- (c) There are plenty of renewable energy sources that can be used to replace traditional energy sources.
- (d) Alternative energy sources are the emerging energy trends and are still evolving.

viii. State whether the following statement is True or False with reference to the given extract.

Hydroelectricity as a renewable energy source is used for residential as well as commercial purposes.

Ans :

2024

- i. (b) Renewable energy sources are inexhaustible whereas alternate energy sources could be exhaustible.
- ii. The tone of the writer in these lines from paragraph (4) is optimistic and informative. The writer acknowledges advancements in renewable energy technologies and the factors contributing to their decreased cost, indicating a positive outlook on the progress in the field.
- iii. In the past, alternative energy sources were not used much by consumers because they were often prohibitively expensive and lacked the efficiency and accessibility that they have now achieved due to advancements in technology and increased demand.

iv. (b) and (e)**v.** The leader of the renewable energy pack is wind energy. Wind energy is considered the leader because it is versatile, can be harnessed on various scales (from small residential turbines to large offshore wind farms), and has shown significant advancements in efficiency and accessibility in recent years. Additionally, wind energy has a relatively low environmental impact compared to other renewable sources like solar or hydroelectric power.**vi.** Geothermal electricity is generated by tapping into underground reservoirs of hot water and steam, utilizing Earth's internal heat. In contrast, hydroelectricity is produced from the energy of moving water behind dams, utilizing the kinetic energy of flowing water to turn turbines and generate electricity.**vii.** (c) There are plenty of renewable energy sources that can be used to replace traditional energy sources.**viii.** False. Hydroelectricity is primarily used for commercial purposes rather than residential ones.

Passage 3

1. Fossil fuels (oil, coal, and natural gas) are our most traditional sources for power generation. The energy that's produced from any source other than fossil fuels is termed as alternative energy. Between the two sources, using alternative energy has a lower environmental impact.
2. We now know that alternative energy sources are the sources we use to supplement or even replace traditional energy sources used for power generation. You could almost say the same thing about renewable energy sources. But there is one subtle difference between the two. All renewable energy sources fall under the category of alternative energy sources, but it doesn't work the other way around.
3. That's because renewable energy sources are derived from naturally replenished sources or processes of Earth, such as the sun, wind, and water. We refer to these resources as renewable or sustainable since, unlike fossil fuels, this naturally occurring continual renewal makes them inexhaustible. However, alternative energy sources are exhaustible, and therefore not renewable. That's the difference !

4. The equipment necessary to harness energy from alternative sources used to be so expensive that it wasn't practical for consumer use. However, thanks to increased demand, more experienced energy developers, competitive supply chains, improved renewable technologies, and enhanced energy efficiency capabilities, that's no longer the case.
5. When it comes to energy efficiency, the leader of the renewable energy pack is wind energy. Behind wind comes geothermal energy, hydropower, nuclear energy, and then solar power. Wind power serves both individuals and entire communities. It is versatile, and can be produced from small-scale windmills or wind turbines on residential properties. It can also be produced from large-scale offshore wind farms in the ocean.
6. We generate geothermal power by tapping into underground reservoirs of hot water and steam. Geothermal electricity can directly heat and cool buildings. Generated from the energy of moving water, hydroelectricity (also known as hydropower) is produced when water behind a dam causes turbine blades to move as it flows through an intake. The turbine blades then rotate a generator to produce electricity that is sent to power homes.
7. Nuclear energy is created in the form of heat through the fission process of atoms. The initial fission process creates energy and triggers a chain reaction that repeats the process and generates more energy. In nuclear power plants, the heat that fission produces creates steam. The steam then rotates a turbine, which leads to the production of electricity.
8. Solar power most commonly refers to the use of solar cells to create energy. On a small scale, you may see a few solar panels on a house roof used to produce energy for just that one home. On a larger scale, you may see a solar farm used as a power plant to produce electricity for its consumers.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage :

- i. Which of the following statements best describes the difference between renewable energy sources and alternate energy sources ?
 - (a) Alternative energy sources are more expensive than renewable energy sources.
 - (b) Renewable energy sources are inexhaustible whereas alternate energy sources could be exhaustible.

- (c) Alternative energy sources are as renewable as renewable energy sources.
- (d) Renewable energy sources are exhaustible but alternative energy sources are inexhaustible.

- ii. What is the tone of the writer in the given lines from para (4) ?

Rationalise your response in about 40 words.

"However, thanks to increased demand, more experienced energy developers, competitive supply chains, improved renewable technologies, and enhanced energy efficiency capabilities, that's no longer the case".

- iii. Complete the sentence appropriately :

In the past, alternative energy sources were not used much by the consumers because _____.

- iv. The passage includes some words that are opposites of each other. From the sets (a) to (e) below, identify two sets of antonyms :

- (a) generate and produce
- (b) exhaustible and inexhaustible
- (c) subtle and versatile
- (d) power and energy
- (e) sustainable and exhaustible

- v. Who is the leader of renewable energy pack and why?

- vi. Based on the reading of the passage, examine, in about 40 words, the difference between geothermal electricity and hydroelectricity.

- vii. What is the message conveyed by the passage ?

- (a) Only those energy sources should be used which are renewable.
- (b) Wind energy is a renewable as well as inexhaustible source of energy.
- (c) There are plenty of renewable energy sources that can be used to replace traditional energy sources.
- (d) Alternative energy sources are the emerging energy trends and are still evolving.

- viii. State whether the following statement is True or False with reference to the given extract.

Hydroelectricity as a renewable energy source is used for residential as well as commercial purposes.

Ans :

2024

- i. (b) Renewable energy sources are inexhaustible whereas alternate energy sources could be exhaustible.

- ii. The tone of the writer in the given lines from para (4) is positive and optimistic. The writer highlights various factors contributing to the increased adoption of renewable energy sources, suggesting progress and improvement in the industry.
- iii. In the past, alternative energy sources were not used much by the consumers because they were considered expensive and less efficient compared to traditional energy sources like fossil fuels.
- iv. (b) and (e)
- v. The leader of the renewable energy pack is wind energy. This is because wind energy is versatile, can be produced at various scales, from small residential windmills to large offshore wind farms, and it serves both individuals and entire communities. Additionally, wind energy is inexhaustible and renewable, making it a sustainable option for energy generation.
- vi. Geothermal electricity is generated by tapping into underground reservoirs of hot water and steam, while hydroelectricity is produced by harnessing the energy of moving water behind a dam. Geothermal energy utilizes heat from the Earth's interior, whereas hydroelectricity relies on the gravitational force of water flow.
- vii. (c) There are plenty of renewable energy sources that can be used to replace traditional energy sources.
- viii. True

Passage 4

1. Plastic pollution has become one of the most pressing environmental issues, as rapidly increasing production of disposable plastic products overwhelms the world's ability to deal with them. Plastic pollution is most visible in developing Asian and African nations, where garbage collection systems are often inefficient or nonexistent. But the developed world, especially in countries with low recycling rates, also has trouble properly collecting discarded plastics. Plastic trash has become so ubiquitous that it has prompted efforts to write a global treaty negotiated by the United Nations.
2. Plastics made from fossil fuels are just over a century old. Production and development of thousands of new plastic products accelerated after World War II. It transformed the modern age so much that life without plastics is unrecognizable today. Plastics revolutionized medicine with life-saving

devices, made space travel possible, lightened cars and jets — saving fuel and pollution — and saved lives with helmets, incubators, and equipment for clean drinking water.

3. The conveniences plastics offer, however, led to a throw-away culture that reveals the material's dark side : today, single-use plastics account for 40 percent of the plastic produced every year. Many of these products, such as plastic bags and food wrappers, have a lifespan of mere minutes to hours, yet they may persist in the environment for hundreds of years.
4. Most of the plastic trash in the oceans, Earth's last sink, flows from land. Trash is also carried to sea by major rivers, which act as conveyor belts, picking up more and more trash as they move downstream. Once at sea, much of the plastic trash remains in coastal waters. But once caught up in ocean currents, it can be transported around the world.
5. Millions of animals are killed by plastics every year, from birds to fish to other marine organisms. Nearly 700 species, including endangered ones, are known to have been affected by plastics. Nearly every species of seabirds eats plastics. Most of the deaths of animals are caused by entanglement or starvation. Seals, whales, turtles, and other animals are strangled by abandoned fishing gear or discarded six-pack rings.
6. The solution is to prevent plastic waste from entering rivers and seas in the first place, many scientists and conservationists — including the National Geographic Society — say. This could be accomplished with improved waste management systems and recycling, better product design that takes into account the short life of disposable packaging, and reduction in manufacturing of unnecessary single-use plastics.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage :

- i. Which of the following statements best describes the reason why plastic pollution has become one of the most pressing environmental issues ?
 - (a) Plastic trash collection systems have become inefficient or nonexistent.
 - (b) Rapidly increasing production of disposable plastic products overwhelms the world's ability to deal with them.
 - (c) Some plastics have a lifespan of mere minutes to hours, yet they may persist in the environment for hundreds of years.

- (d) The developed world, especially in countries with low recycling rates, has trouble properly collecting plastics.
- ii. What is the tone of the writer in the given lines from paragraph 2 ? Rationalise your response in about 40 words.
‘It transformed the modern age so much that life without plastics is unrecognizable today.
- iii. The passage includes some words that are opposites of each other. From the sets (a) - (e) below, identify two sets of synonyms.
- garbage and trash
 - starvation and strangled
 - disposable and reduction
 - persist and downstream
 - transformed and revolutionized
- iv. Complete the sentence appropriately :
The writer says that most of the plastic trash is found in the Earth’s last sink and the reason it is transported around the world is _____.
- v. Based on the reading of the passage, examine, in about 40 words, the downside of the convenience that plastic offers.
- vi. Complete the sentence appropriately :
According to conservationists, the two ways in which most of the deaths of animals are caused are _____.
- vii. Based on the passage, how can we contribute to the reduction of plastic waste ?
- by internationalising the waste management system
 - by minimizing the use of single-use plastics
 - by not abandoning fishing gear
 - by not using helmets made of plastic
- viii. State one reason why plastic pollution is most visible in developing Asian and African nations.
Ans : 2024
- (b) Rapidly increasing production of disposable plastic products overwhelms the world’s ability to deal with them.
 - The tone of the writer in the given lines from paragraph 2 is admiring. The writer acknowledges the transformative impact of plastics on modern life, emphasizing its ubiquity and indispensability.
 - (a) and (e)
- iv. The writer says that most of the plastic trash is found in the Earth’s last sink, and the reason it is transported around the world is ocean currents.
- v. The downside of the convenience that plastic offers is the creation of a throw-away culture, where single-use plastics, despite their short lifespan, persist in the environment for hundreds of years, causing pollution and harming wildlife.
- vi. According to conservationists, the two ways in which most of the deaths of animals are caused are entanglement and starvation.
- vii. (b) by minimizing the use of single-use plastics
- viii. One reason why plastic pollution is most visible in developing Asian and African nations is because garbage collection systems are often inefficient or nonexistent in these regions.

Passage 5

The words probiotics, prebiotics, and postbiotics may sound like variations of the same thing, but what a difference a prefix makes. The first is a category of health-promoting microbes. The latter two groups are types of beneficial molecules. But all three biotics are critical for supporting the community of microscopic organisms that live in the gastrointestinal tract, known as the gut microbiome. With both beneficial and harmful bacteria living in the human body, these diet-related factors — the biotics — help tip the balance in the positive direction. It is important to understand their differences, as you’ll see, because each of these factors serves a distinct purpose, even as they work together.

- Despite their importance for the gut microbiome, the health benefits of these ‘biotics’, which are present in certain foods or result from their metabolism, extend beyond the digestive tract. A growing body of scientific evidence has linked prebiotics, probiotics, and postbiotics, with improvements in metabolic diseases — including obesity and cholesterol abnormalities — depressive symptoms and poor sleep quality, among many other conditions.
- Besides promoting general gut health, consuming food rich in probiotics can improve irritable bowel syndrome and antibiotic-related diarrhea, prevent traveller’s diarrhea, produce vitamins and increase nutrient absorption, and decrease the risk of common infections. In fact, when consumed regularly, probiotics have been found to reduce the occurrence of upper respiratory tract infections (like the common cold).

4. Many different types of beneficial bacteria are considered probiotics. The most common ones include *Lactobacillus* and *Bifidobacterium*, of which there are dozens of strains. “You have to match what it is you’re concerned about with the probiotic you should use,” says Gregor Reid. Many different types of beneficial bacteria are considered probiotics.
 5. Some foods, such as yogurt, kefir, kimchee, and fermented soybeans and kombucha naturally contain probiotics. But here’s where things get complicated: not all fermented foods or yogurts contain probiotics, Reid says. As a consumer, a good starting point is to look for the phrase “contains live and active cultures” on the label; it’s even better if specific strains of bacteria are listed, because then you’ll know you’re getting the right stuff.
 6. Simply put, prebiotics are sources of food for those beneficial microbes — the probiotics. They are typically a form of carbohydrate or fiber that we don’t have the enzymes to digest. As a result, they move through the digestive tract to the intestine, where beneficial bacteria (probiotics) can feast on them.
 7. When you consume foods that are rich in probiotics and prebiotics, the microbes in your gut consume the undigestible prebiotic fiber and produce bioactive compounds called postbiotics. They are ultimately the endgame that we want — they affect how our gut operates and keeps the good bacteria there and the bad bacteria out.
- iii. Complete the sentence appropriately.
To get the right probiotic and to match it with your body’s requirement, it is important to see the label for ____.
 - iv. The passage includes some words that are opposites of each other. From the sets (a)-(e) below, identify two sets of antonyms.
 - (a) increase and decrease
 - (b) probiotic and postbiotic
 - (c) beneficial and harmful
 - (d) feast and fermented
 - (e) consuming and digestive
 - v. Complete the sentence appropriately.
The author wants to stress the fact that there is not just one type of beneficial bacteria considered as probiotic, in fact, some probiotics have ____.
 - vi. Based on the reading of the passage, examine in about 40 words, the importance of prebiotics for the human gut and how they are related to probiotics.
 - vii. As a consumer, if you want to pick a probiotic product, what is the most important thing to keep in mind ?
Pick the best answer.
 - (a) Any fermented product that contains probiotics.
 - (b) Checking the label for specific strains of bacteria.
 - (c) All products under “probiotics” section in a grocery store are safe to pick.
 - (d) Checking the label which clearly says “probiotics” is sufficient.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage :

- i. Which of the following statements best describes the author’s attitude towards probiotics ?
 - (a) Probiotics, prebiotics and postbiotics are variations of the same thing, with just a difference of a prefix.
 - (b) All fermented foods or yogurts naturally contain probiotics.
 - (c) All three biotics are equally important to support microscopic organisms that live in the gut microbiome.
 - (d) Only probiotics are important as they can improve irritable bowel syndrome and antibiotic-related diarrhea.
- ii. According to the writer, health benefits of all the ‘biotics’ extend beyond the digestive tract. Rationalise your response in about 40 words.
- iii. “Despite their importance for the gut microbiome, the health benefits of these ‘biotics’, which are present in certain foods or result from their metabolism, extend beyond the digestive tract.”
As per this statement from the passage, how relevant are the biotics’ for humans ? Pick the best answer.
 - (a) Their relevance has been proven by scientific evidence.
 - (b) Not very relevant as more study is needed.
 - (c) Their relevance cannot be generalised for everyone.
 - (d) Only probiotics are relevant for humans.

Ans :

2024

- i. (c) All three biotics are equally important to support microscopic organisms that live in the gut microbiome.
- ii. The writer emphasizes that prebiotics, probiotics, and postbiotics not only promote gut health but also have broader health benefits. Scientific evidence links them to improvements in metabolic diseases, depressive symptoms, sleep quality, and reduction in upper respiratory infections.
- iii. To get the right probiotic and to match it with your body's requirement, it is important to see the label for "contains live and active cultures" and specific strains of bacteria.
- iv. (a) and (c)
- v. The author wants to stress the fact that there is not just one type of beneficial bacteria considered as probiotic, in fact, some probiotics have dozens of strains.
- vi. Prebiotics are crucial for gut health as they serve as food for beneficial microbes (probiotics). These undigestible fibers ensure the growth and activity of probiotics, which in turn maintain a balanced gut microbiome and overall health.
- vii. (b) Checking the label for specific strains of bacteria.
- viii. (a) Their relevance has been proven by scientific evidence.

Passage 6

1. Life is like a roller coaster, full of twists, turns, and unexpected surprises. One important lesson we often encounter on this thrilling ride is avoiding the envy trap. But what exactly is the envy trap, and how can we learn to be content with our circumstances, no matter what they may be?
2. Imagine you're scrolling through social media, and you come across pictures of your friends on exciting vacations or enjoying the latest gadgets. It's easy to feel a pang of envy, wishing you were in their shoes. This is the envy trap – the cycle of comparing ourselves to others and feeling discontent with what we have.
3. Avoiding the envy trap begins with understanding that everyone's journey is unique. Just because someone else is on a dazzling adventure doesn't mean your own path is any less incredible. We each have our own story to write, with different highs and lows that shape who we are.

4. Being content doesn't mean settling for less; it means appreciating what we have while working towards our goals. It's like having a delicious laddoo – you enjoy each bite without constantly eyeing someone else's treats. Being content means finding joy in the present, even as we strive for a better future.
5. Think about a time when you achieved something you worked hard for, like acing a challenging test or mastering a new skill. That sense of accomplishment is part of being content. It's about recognising and celebrating our achievements, big or small, without letting comparison steal our joy. Moreover, contentment is like having a superpower – it shields us from the negative effects of envy. Instead of feeling bitter or resentful, we can genuinely celebrate the successes of others. Their victories become a source of inspiration rather than a cause for jealousy.
6. Another essential aspect of avoiding the envy trap is fostering gratitude. Take a moment each day to reflect on the positive aspects of your life. It could be the support of your family, the beauty of nature, or the simple pleasures like a good book or a warm cup of cocoa. Gratitude helps us focus on the abundance in our lives, making it harder for envy to creep in. Embracing contentment now will set the stage for a fulfilling journey ahead. Remember, it's okay to have goals and dreams, but let them fuel your passion rather than fuel comparison.
7. Avoiding the envy trap is a valuable skill that will serve you well throughout life. By learning to be content, you'll discover the true magic in appreciating the present while eagerly anticipating the adventures that lie ahead.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. Infer ONE likely purpose of the writer's choice of the opening line, "Life is like a roller coaster, full of twists, turns, and unexpected surprises."
- ii. What is the primary relationship between paragraphs 1 and 2 in the passage?
 - (a) Cause and Effect
 - (b) Problem and Solution
 - (c) Comparison and Contrast
 - (d) Concept and Exemplification
- iii. What lesson does paragraph 3 convey about individual journeys?
 - (a) Each journey is similar, emphasising shared experiences.

- (c) Exclusive paths define each person's characteristic narrative.
- (b) Similar accomplishments lead to a common destination.
- (d) Different perspectives hinder the understanding of personal stories.
- iv. Explain the analogy of enjoying a laddoo, 30-40 words. (Ref: paragraph 4)
- v. Complete the following analogy correctly, by filling the blanks correctly with words from paragraph 5.
shield : defence : _____ : envy
- vi. State whether the given statement is TRUE or FALSE. (Ref: paragraph 5) The author suggests a shift from a mindset of contentment to one where individuals genuinely celebrate the successes of others.
- vii. Quote the textual evidence from paragraph 6, that supports the following opinions about 'envy'.
- Envy will catch you unawares
 - Envy is quite sneaky
 - Envy stealthily gets a hold on you
- viii. Rationalise, in 30-40 words, why the writer uses of the phrase, "true magic", for the skill of inculcating contentment. (Ref: paragraph 7)
- Ans :** 2023
- i. The writer has used the given line to start the passage to engage the readers and hook them by creating a vivid imagery of a roller coaster.
- ii. (d) Concept and Exemplification
- iii. (b) Exclusive paths define each person's characteristic narrative
- iv Just as one savours each bite of a delightful laddoo without yearning for someone else's treats, cultivating contentment involves relishing our present moments and achievements, free from the grip of comparison and envy.
- v. contentment
- vi. False
- vii. "...envy to creep in"
- viii. The writer suggests that the ability to be content has a magical quality in positively shaping one's outlook and experience of life. This choice of expression emphasises the enchanting impact that contentment can have on an individual's overall well-being and perspective.

Passage 7

1. If you're like most kids, you may love snow. Not only can it get you out of school, but it's also fun to play with. Who doesn't love to sled and build snowmen? Snow can also be dangerous, too. You may have heard your parents talk about how difficult it can be to drive in snow. Car accidents aren't the only dangers created by snow. If you're ever skiing in the mountains, you'll want to be aware of avalanches. An avalanche is a sudden flow of snow down a slope, such as a mountain. The amount of snow in an avalanche will vary based on many things, but it can be such a huge pile that it can bury the bottom of a slope in dozens of feet of snow.
2. Avalanches can be caused by many things. Some of them are natural. For example, new snow or rain can cause built up snow to loosen and fall down the side of a mountain. Earthquakes and the movement of animals have also been known to cause avalanches. Artificial triggers can also cause avalanches. For example, snowmobiles, skiers, gunshots and explosives have all been known to cause avalanches. Avalanches usually occur during the winter and spring, when snowfall is greatest. As they are dangerous to any living beings in their path, avalanches have destroyed forests, roads, railroads and even entire towns.
3. Warning signs exist that allow experts to predict and often prevent - avalanches from occurring. When over a foot of fresh snow falls, experts know to be on the lookout for avalanches. Explosives can be used in places with massive snow build-ups to trigger smaller avalanches that don't pose a danger to people or property. When deadly avalanches do occur, the moving snow can quickly reach over 80 miles per hour. Skiers caught in such avalanches can be buried under dozens of feet of snow. While it's possible to dig out of such avalanches, not all are able to escape.
4. If you get tossed about by an avalanche and find yourself buried under many feet of snow, you might not have a true sense of which way is up and which way is down. Some avalanche victims have tried to dig their way out, only to find that they were upside down and digging themselves farther under the snow rather than to the top! Experts suggest that people caught in an avalanche try to "swim" to the top of the moving snow to stay close to the surface. Once the avalanche stops, do your best to dig around you to create a space for air, so you can breathe easier. Then, do your best to figure out which way is up and dig in that direction to reach the surface and signal rescuers.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. Complete the sentence by choosing an appropriate option :
Avalanche can be caused by :
(a) new snow or rain
(b) heavy winds
(c) high altitude
(d) global warming
- ii. Comment on warning signs exist which allow experts to predict avalanches in two sentences. Answer in about 40 words.
- iii. Mention two reasons which destroyed the natural scenery.
- iv. Select the option that conveys the opposite of 'massive':
(a) tiny (b) lengthy
(c) bulky (d) extensive
- v. The writer will agree with one of the given statements (paragraph 4):
(a) People caught in the avalanche can try to swim to the top.
(b) Put on an oxygen mask.
(c) Digging is not possible.
(d) Should not come close to the surface.
- vi. Select the option that corresponds to the following relation below :
You may not have an idea of which way is up and which way is down.
(a) The crowd will gather at Gate No. 1 and disperse from Gate No. 2.
(b) Due to the torrential rain, there was heavy flooding.
(c) The guest felt uneasy and uncomfortable watching the child's performance.
(d) The more the effort, the bigger the gain.
- vii. The major causes which do not trigger an avalanche:
(a) Earthquakes (b) Snow fall
(c) Rain (d) Plastic waste
- viii. Complete the sentence appropriately :
Explosives can be used in places -----
Ans :
- i. (a) new snow or rain
- ii. The warning signs that exist which allow the experts to predict the avalanches are earthquakes,

over a foot of new snow or heavy rainfall and the movement of animals.

- iii. The natural scenery is destroyed due to the avalanches that are caused by natural or artificial triggers.
- iv. (a) tiny
- v. (a) People caught in the avalanche can try to swim to the top.
- vi. (a) The crowd will gather at Gate No. 1 and disperse from Gate No. 2
- vii. (d) Plastic waste
- viii. with massive snow build-ups

Passage 8

1. The invention of the safety bicycle in the late nineteenth century transformed the world of cycling. While early versions of bicycles had been used in Europe since the seventeenth century, it was the safety bicycle with its lightweight hollow steel frame and equal-sized wheels that revolutionized the cycling experience.
2. This resulted in enhanced mobility for both men and women, allowing them to explore the countryside freely and travel between towns. Bicycles symbolised freedom, particularly for women, granting them self-reliable transportation and the ability to participate in recreational activities, like bicycle racing. The rise of bicycles also brought a shift in fashion, with more functional and relaxed clothing tailored specifically for cycling.
3. Bicyclists also became a political force. They played a significant role in the development of road maps, guiding riders along the best routes. They campaigned for better infrastructure to enhance their riding experiences.
4. Today, advances in technology, wearables, and complex data analysis have transformed sports science, particularly in endurance sports, like cycling. Cyclists can now gather vast amounts of data simply by using mobile apps to track their activities. This data not only encompasses exercise details, like its volume or intensity, but also external factors like the impact of weather on the physiological response of the athlete. Furthermore, technology has made it very easy to monitor performance-influencing data outside of training, such as heart rate or sleep quality, through various wearables and cost-effective mobile apps.

5. However, just because we are able to monitor so much information does not mean that it is useful for improving the sports performance of our athletes. In this sense, we believe that we must be critical while adopting any new technologies or trends in training. The first thing we should know is whether there is _____ scientific support for the use of that new gadget or wearable. For example, core temperature is of great importance in the mechanisms that produce fatigue and exhaustion in endurance sports. A few years ago, a device came on the market that estimated this measurement in a non-invasive way and we saw many top cyclists and runners wearing it. However, a study later showed it is an invalid device for measuring one's temperature.
6. Innovation in cycling has evolved from the invention of safety bicycles to technological advancements in sports science. Maximizing the potential benefits of these developments requires critical thinking to enhance the training and performance of modern cyclists. Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.
- iii. Complete the sentence appropriately by providing two distinct reasons in the blank below.
It can be said that the world of cycling has seen massive changes because _____.
- iv. Which of these is opposite to 'invalid' as used in paragraph 5?
(a) ethical (b) accurate
(c) authentic (d) trustworthy
- v. Using information solely from the passage, provide two distinct reasons to complete the sentence appropriately.
Bicycles can be seen as a symbol of empowerment because _____.
- vi. Imagine you are a sports scientist tasked with developing a new technological tool to aid cyclists in their training. Provide a brief description, within 40 words, of its specific features and why you chose to include them.
- vii. Select the option that shows the correct relationship between 1. and 2.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. What is the passage mainly about?
(a) How did the advancement of sports science impact the fashion industry?
(b) What were the primary societal changes brought about by the rise of bicycles?
(c) How did the invention of the safety bicycle contribute to the development of wearable technology?
(d) In what ways did early versions of bicycles differ from the safety bicycle in the late nineteenth century?
- ii. In which sentence does the author express uncertainty about the use of new technologies in training?
(a) "...advances in technology have transformed sports science" (paragraph 4)
(b) "This data not only encompasses exercise details but also external factors like weather." (paragraph 4)
(c) "...just because we can monitor so much information does not mean it is useful." (paragraph 5)
(d) "Maximizing the potential benefits of these developments requires critical thinking." (paragraph 6)
1. Cyclists were able to improve the accuracy of maps.
2. Cyclists became influential and campaigned for better infrastructure.
(a) 2 is a contradiction of 1
(b) 2 is independent of 1
(c) 2 is an example of 1
(d) 2 is the cause of 1
- viii. Below are statements from cyclists. Identify two statements that could be said by a cyclist in the late nineteenth century:
1. "I like having a personal coach on my wrist. It just told me how many calories I have burned so far!"
2. "It's quite a struggle riding up these steep hills on my heavy steel-framed bicycle."
3. "I feel so liberated whenever I hop on my bicycle. I didn't have freedom like this before!"
4. "Ugh, there is so much traffic ahead. And I feel so pressured to meet my performance targets every time I hop on a bike."
- Ans : 2023
- i. (b) What were the primary societal changes brought about by the rise of bicycles?
ii. (c) "...just because we can monitor so much information does not mean it is useful." (paragraph 5)

- iii. it transitioned from primarily using steel cycles to safety bicycles and saw technological advancements, like wearables in sports science.
- iv. (b) accurate
- v. they facilitated women's freedom to commute freely and easily between places and participate in recreational activities like bicycle racing.
- vi. The tool would offer customized training recommendations and plans, integrated GPS for improved navigation, analysis and feedback capabilities, and social features for connecting with fellow cyclists. This comprehensive approach would enhance cyclists' performance by providing tailored training opportunities and fostering a supportive community.
- vii. (d) survival 2 is the cause of 1
- viii. 2. "It's quite a struggle riding up these steep hills on my heavy steel-framed bicycle."
3. "I feel so liberated whenever I hop on my bicycle. I didn't have freedom like this before!"

Passage 9

1. As a high school student, studying poetry can be a rollercoaster ride. This journey is punctuated by moments of profound appreciation for simpler pieces and intermittent frustration with more complex works. Let's be real here - some poems are just plain confusing and no amount of re-reading seems to help decipher the intended meaning. The puzzlement that results from such instances can be both vexing and demotivating. If solving a riddle is what was intended, then playing Sudoku is a better option. One is led to ponder if obscurity was the goal.
2. Conversely, some pieces resonate with the reader's soul, stirring feelings of warmth, happiness, and connection to the world. Often, these compositions centre on themes that are universally understood, such as love, nature, or faith. Being able to actually understand what the poet is trying to say can feel like a little victory and is a welcome relief after grappling with more perplexing poetry.
3. Then there are poems that are emotionally charged; the ones that make the reader curl up in a ball and cry or jump up and down with joy. One is left in awe of the poet's ability to convey emotion through words. Let's not forget the downright weird poems. These are the ones that defy categorization and leave the reader to their own devices in attempting to interpret

meaning. The author's use of figurative language and unconventional imagery can create a sense of bewilderment that is either intriguing or off-putting. Regardless, the reader can appreciate the uniqueness of the work.

4. Despite the wide range of emotions and reactions that come with studying poetry, it can be a rewarding pursuit. Not only does reading poetry allow one to appreciate the artistic beauty of the written word but it also enables one to develop crucial critical thinking and analytical skills. The process of unlocking a poem's meaning can feel like cracking a code or solving a puzzle but the sense of accomplishment derived from mastering a challenging piece can be deeply gratifying. Finally, impressing an English teacher with a well-analysed poem can be a source of pride and validation.
5. Overall, studying poetry is like a box of mixed chocolates, you never know what you're going to get. But whether it's complex, emotional, simple, or just downright weird, there's always something to be gained from the experience. So, let's applaud all the poets out there, for making us laugh, cry, scratch our heads, and occasionally feel like a genius.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. Which of the following statements best describes the author's attitude towards studying poetry?
 - (a) Finds poetry to be a frustrating and meaningless endeavour.
 - (b) Believes that the emotional rollercoaster of studying poetry is not worth the effort.
 - (c) Recognizes the challenges of studying poetry but also acknowledges the rewards it offers.
 - (d) Feels that poetry is too obscure and abstract for the average person to appreciate.
- ii. What is the tone of the writer in the given lines from paragraph (1)? Rationalise your response in about 40 words.
If solving a riddle is what was intended, then playing Sudoku is a better option. One is led to ponder if obscurity was the goal.
- iii. Complete the sentence appropriately.
The author's use of vivid imagery in paragraph (3), such as "curl up in a ball and cry" and "jump up and down with joy", greatly affects the reader because _____.

iv. The passage includes some words that are opposites of each other. From the sets (a)-(e) below, identify two sets of antonyms:

- (a) intriguing and off-putting
- (b) deciphering and interpreting
- (c) appreciate and applaud
- (d) simple and challenging
- (e) emotions and feelings

v. Complete the sentence appropriately.

We can say that the author's tone becomes more neutral and objective when discussing weird poems, compared to other types of poetry because -----.

vi. Based on the reading of the passage, examine, in about 40 words, how studying poetry can be like exploring a new city.

vii. What is the message conveyed by Hina's experience, in the following case?

Hina spends hours trying to analyze a poem for her assignment and finally feels a sense of accomplishment and pride, once she understands.

- (a) Only those with natural talent for poetry should engage with it.
- (b) Persistence makes studying poetry a rewarding pursuit.
- (c) The study of poetry is guaranteed to impress others.
- (b) The efforts of studying poetry is inversely proportional to the rewards gained.

viii. State whether the following lines display an example of a simple/complex/emotionally charged/downright weird, poem.

The sun rises in the east,
A new day begins, a fresh start.
Birds chirp, nature wakes up,
A peaceful feeling in my heart.

Ans :

2023

- i. (a) Recognises the challenges of studying poetry but also acknowledges the rewards it offers.
- ii. The tone of the writer in the given line is sarcastic. Through the lines, the writer means to say that some poems are so confusing and difficult to understand as if the goal is to make the readers totally obscured. He says that solving a Sudoku puzzle would be more fun than such puzzled poems.
- iii. it simply beautifully conveys the emotions through words.

- iv. (a) intriguing and off-putting
(d) simple and challenging

v. the author acknowledges that the unique work of the weird poems can be appreciated by the readers, regardless of the fact that they can be either intriguing or off-putting.

vi. Studying poetry is indeed like exploring a new city. The sense of coming to terms with different personalities and the challenges of moving out, is similar to understanding different themes and styles of writing and deciphering complex meanings in each poem.

vii. (b) Persistence makes studying poetry a rewarding pursuit.

viii. Simple

Passage 10

1. The conquest of happiness has meant different facts to different generations. Our forefathers took pride in scholarship, a spirit of sacrifice and solicitude for the welfare of others. Gone are those days. Today we live only for ourselves. We are jealous of the advancement of our neighbours. We end up tense and unhappy.
2. The term 'happy' has a variety of meanings. It stands for the lucky, fortunate, content, glad or apt. Happiness lies within the mind of the individual. No amount of external wealth may be helpful in making him happy.
3. Our forefathers had lifestyles, very much different from those we have today. Their life was based mainly on the concept of 'Simple living and high thinking.' People were satisfied with whatever they obtained after working hard. Excessive material wealth did not mean much for them. They aimed at deriving mental satisfaction and enrichment from whatever they did.
4. The structural framework of our forefathers' families was different from those of ours. They lived in a cohesive joint family structure where they were happier than we. They cared for each other. The siblings grew up with their cousins. The bond of love which they shared cannot be easily found in the nuclear family of the day. The family provided an emotional cushioning effect against tension and stress. However, in the nuclear family, we are detached from the feelings towards our kith and kin. At times even the cousins do not recognise one another, when they happen to be self-centred. Disputes in the family may lead

to divisions. This may finally destroy the family psyche.

5. The joint family system provided a proper environment for the child to grow up. The value of respect, tolerance, responsibility, integrity, etc. were internalised in the child. In the long run, they became better human beings, compared to those in the present generation. Our forefathers felt happiest if their children became 'honest' human beings. But today we are happy only if we attain our coveted material ends. We are ready to resort to any means to attain that end. Our philosophy of life has turned out totally Machiavellian.
6. Our forefathers had a vision to make India the best. To attain their ambitions, they were ready to make all sorts of personal sacrifices. Their happiness lay in that of the millions of Indian brothers and sisters. On the other hand, today people are ready to migrate to the West, to enjoy a comfortable life. They run away from the evils of the Indian society without trying to remedy them. Often they become successful in foreign lands. But in the process, they become alienated from their motherland. The nostalgic feeling of their childhood and the relationship they left lingered on which cannot make them happy. Distance from their ailing parents is a worrying factor and keeps them perturbed. It is not easy for them to return, as their children will not be able to adjust to the Indian environment and the way of life. Thus, in our generation, tradition and modernity have intermingled to form our special system.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. What concept was our forefathers' life based upon?
 - (a) Satisfied with whatever they obtained after working hard.
 - (b) Simple living and high thinking.
 - (c) Excessive material wealth did not mean much for them.
 - (d) All of the above
- ii. According to the passage, state two aspects which bring out the difference between lives of our forefathers and today's generation. Answer in about 40 words.
- iii. Complete the sentence appropriately.
People are ready to migrate to the West because -----.

- iv. The passage includes some words that are opposites of each other. From the sets (a)-(e) below, identify two sets of antonyms :
 - (a) Sacrifice and solicitude
 - (b) Happy and unhappy
 - (c) Satisfaction and enrichment
 - (d) Joint family and nuclear family
 - (e) Perturbed and compared
- v. Complete the sentence appropriately.
People who migrate to foreign lands are ----- which makes them feel anxious and concerned.
- vi. Supply one point to justify the following. (Answer in about 40 words.)
The conquest of happiness has meant different facts to different generations.
- vii. The intermingle of modernity and tradition is shown by ----- .
 - (a) parents going to live at their children's place.
 - (b) children staying away from their families.
 - (c) children helping their parents or grandparents in using smart gadgets.
 - (d) None of the above
- viii. How does the joint family system make a child a good human being?
Ans : 2022
 - i. (d) All of the above
 - ii. The difference between the lives of our forefathers and today's generations are
 1. Forefathers lived a self-sacrificing life while today's generation lives a self-centred life.
 2. Forefathers would sacrifice anything for the nation while today's generation would leave the nation for a better and successful life.
 - iii. they want a comfortable and successful life away from evils of the Indian society
 - iv. (b) Happy and unhappy
(d) Joint family and nuclear family
 - v. distanced from their ailing parents
 - vi. The given statement is correct. This is seen when we compare our forefathers with today's generation. Our forefathers were happy in their nation under the joint family system. However, we do not find out happiness in the same system. We prefer living alone and in a different nation.
 - vii. (c) Children helping their parents or grandparents in using smart gadgets.

- viii. The joint family system teaches a sense of responsibility, integrity, tolerance and values to a child. An individual with such values grows up to be a good human being.

Passage 11

1. Corruption, terrorism, communal-ism, greed for power and wealth and the list of ailments that affect modern society continues. More than half the population of India is below the age group of 25 and the future of the country will only be bright if youngsters are equipped to deal with these ailments.
2. A child is a storehouse of potential and it is essential to nurture and develop these attributes from a very young age. Since they spend much of their time in school, the curriculum in school should be such that it enables children to understand, care and practise ethical values like respect, justice and civic sense. Education should aim to develop a sense of rights and duties as well as moral values like honesty, responsibility and respect for others.
3. Moral education should be directed towards enhancing a child's ability to critically analyse situations, make decisions, empathise with people and work in cooperation towards a common goal.
4. As a means of direct instruction to students, schools are very influential in the character development of a child and the methods of education affect the development of morally upright citizens who can bring about a much-needed change in the country.
5. The youth of today have to face many problems like drug abuse, violent behaviour and family issues. If they are not taught morals, they would fail to differentiate between good and bad values. Hence, they would be incapable of dealing with different types of issues. A sound moral base would help a child make the right decisions, especially in an era where the youth is increasingly coming under the negative influence of the media.
6. Schools in India have introduced moral education as part of their curriculum because they realise that morally sound citizens are the need of the hour. Since most children look up to their teachers as role models, it is most appropriate that they be the facilitators of moral values.
7. Thus, schools should focus more on the personality development of children since it is one of the most important responsibilities of a school. Schools should take the initiative to mould children into better human beings so that they can make the world a better place to live in.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. Select the option that conveys the message, "Morally sound citizens are the need of the hour."
 - (a) Moral citizens can only be possible by giving moral education to the mass population.
 - (b) Better human beings can make the world a better place to live in.
 - (c) Developing moral qualities is the only way to solve these social issues.
 - (d) Government should take major decisions about spreading moral education.
- ii. Why is it important to inculcate moral values since childhood? Answer in about 40 words.
- iii. Complete the sentence appropriately.
According to the given passage, schools are integral in the _____ of a child.
- iv. The passage includes some words that are similar in meaning to each other. From the sets (a)-(e) below, identify two sets of synonyms.
 - (a) Youth and youngsters
 - (b) Affect and equipped
 - (c) Nurture and develop
 - (d) Corruption and terrorism
 - (e) Behaviour and values
- v. Complete the sentence appropriately.
According to the passage, moral education helps children in _____, decision making, cooperation and _____.
- vi. Which moral values are important for children to learn?
- vii. What kind of problems are being faced by today's youth?
 - (a) Influence of social media.
 - (b) Violent behaviour and peer pressure.
 - (c) Drug abuse and family issues.
 - (d) All of the above
- viii. State a solution to the given problem.
Incapable of differentiating between good and bad, children would be unable to deal with everyday issues.

Ans :

2022

- i. (a) Moral citizens can only be possible by giving moral education to the mass population.

- ii. Children are the future of a country. They have to face many problems in life. They are under the constant negative influence of social media. If children are not thought morals, they would fort to differentiate between good and bad and would be incapable of dealing with different issues. So, it is important to inculcate moral values since childhood.
- iii. character development
- iv. (a) Youth and youngsters
(c) Nurture and develop
- v. critical analysis of the situation, empathy
- vi. Honesty, responsibility, respect for others and civic sense are some values that are essential for children to learn.
- vii. (d) All of the above
- viii. A solution to the given problem is a sound moral base which would help children

Passage 12

1. In the summer of 1967, when I was ten years old, my father caved into my persistent pleas and took me to get my own dog. Together we drove in the family station wagon far into the Michigan countryside to a farm run by a rough-hewn woman and her ancient mother. The farm produced just one commodity-dogs. Dogs of every imaginable size and shape and age and temperament. They had only two things in common: each was a mongrel of unknown and distinct ancestry, and each was free to a good home.
2. I quickly decided the older dogs were somebody else's charity case. I immediately raced to the puppy cage. "You want to pick one that's not timid," my father coached. "Try rattling the cage and see which ones aren't afraid."
3. I grabbed the chain-link gate and yanked on it with a loud clang. The dozen or so puppies reeled backward, collapsing on top of one another in a squiggling heap of fur. Just one remained. He was gold with a white blaze on his chest, and he charged at the gate, yapping fearlessly. He jumped up and excitedly licked my fingers through the fencing. It was love at first sight.
4. I brought him home in a cardboard box and named him Shaun. He was one of those dogs that give dogs a good name. He effortlessly mastered every command I taught him and was naturally well-behaved. I could drop a crust on the floor and he would not touch it until I gave the okay.

5. Relatives would visit for the weekend and returned home determined to buy a dog of their own, so impressed were they with Shaun-or "Saint Shaun," as I came to call him. Born with the curse of an uncertain lineage, he was one of the tens of thousands of unwanted dogs in America. Yet by some stroke of almost providential good fortune, he became wanted. He came into my life and I into his-and in the process, he gave me the childhood every kid deserves.
6. The love affair lasted fourteen years, and by the time he died I was no longer the little boy who had brought him along on that summer day. I was a man, out of college and working across the state in my first real job. Saint Shaun had stayed behind when I moved on. It was where he belonged. My parents, by then retired, called to break the news to me. My mother would later tell me, "In fifty years of marriage, I've only seen your father cry twice. The first time was when we lost Mary Ann"-my sister, who was stillborn. "The second time was the day Shaun died."
7. Saint Shaun was the companion of my childhood. He was a perfect dog. At least that's how I will always remember him. It was Shaun who set the standard by which I would judge all other dogs to come.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. Why does the writer say that he 'grabbed the chain-link and yanked on it with a loud clang'?
 - (a) Because all the other dogs didn't attract him.
 - (b) Because that was the standard procedure to select a dog.
 - (c) Because he wanted to pick the dog who was afraid of him.
 - (d) Because he wanted to see which of the dogs in that cage were timid.
- ii. "It was Shaun who set the standard by which I would judge all other dogs to come." What is the tone of the writer in the given lines from paragraph 7? Rationalise your response in about 40 words.
- iii. Complete the sentence appropriately.
The author's anointing his dog as 'Saint Shaun' is the ultimate honour he could bestow on his pet because _____.
- iv. The passage includes some words that occur as companions with each other. From the sets (a)-(e) below, identify two sets of word-companions.

- (a) unknown and distinct ancestry
- (b) dozen and so
- (c) age and temperament
- (d) size and shape
- (e) stayed behind and moved on

v. Complete the sentence appropriately.

For the author, Shaun became a benchmark for a good pet. It is evident from this statement- _____.

vi. Based on the reading of the passage, examine, in about 40 words, how the passage is as much a tribute to the author's dog as is to his father too.

vii. Select the option that corresponds to the underlined phrasal verb in the statement.

"In the summer of 1967, when I was 10 years old, my father caved into my persistent pleas and took me to get my own dog." (Paragraph 1)

- (a) He made his father succumb to his demand.
- (b) He made persistent demands on his father for a pet.
- (c) He consistently requested his father.
- (d) His father withstood his pleas.

viii. Complete the lines from a famous poem by supplying the missing word/words taking cue from the word given in brackets.

...Among the laurel bushes
And snagging goose-grass and rabbit holes,
I found what I _____ (forget), hidden
Under a wide oak

Ans :

2021

- i. (d) Because he wanted to see which of the dogs in that cage were timid.
- ii. Shaun mastered every command that the author taught him effortlessly and was a naturally well-behaved dog. He was extremely disciplined too. A dog like Shaun was the perfect companion anyone would like to have.
- iii. Shaun could convert anyone into a follower; even the author's relatives over for a short visit went away convinced that they wanted a dog like Shaun.
- iv. (b) age and temperament
(d) size and shape
- v. 'It was Shaun who set the standard by which I would judge all other dogs to come.'
- vi. The author's love for his dog is evident and so is his admiration for his father who taught him not only how to choose the perfect puppy but

developed as deep a bond with Shaun as the author himself so much so that he cried at his pet's death as if he had lost a loved one.

- vii. (a) He made his father succumb to his demand.
- viii. had forgotten

Passage 13

1. I know poverty and misery and I quite appreciate by personal experience what it is to be poor, what it is to have no clothes, what it is to have no books, what it is to struggle through life and what it is to walk through the streets without an umbrella, without conveyance along miles on dusty roads. I have been through it all and I can understand the difficulties that most of you graduates have to face today. I am speaking from a long experience of 60 years. Please do not imagine that all the 60 years are milk and roses. To be able to accomplish something, I want to tell you that you have to go through such experiences.
2. I admit success in life is not always to be intelligent or strong and it is to some extent a bit of a gamble, but those who get their minds right and those who know their job sooner or later, will sooner perhaps than later make their way in life. But they should not be disappointed if they do not, they have to face up to life and take it as they find it.
3. What I say is that the great things in life are not really great things in life. What I love is to enjoy the common things of life. I am happy that I am still able to sleep at night provided I have three miles walk in the evening. I am still able to enjoy a good lunch or a good dinner. I am still able to look at the blue sky and like it. I still like to walk in the open fields and like the smell of the Ragi or the Jowar.
4. We think that happiness consists of going to pictures and seeing thrilling films and technological dramas. Not at all, the great things in life are the God-given things which cost nothing. What you need is the desire to appreciate them. If you have your minds and hearts open, you have around you, things which give you joy. There is the butterfly jumping about in flourishing colours on all sides. Look at the the wonderful thing that God has given for our enjoyment.
5. We have to love nature and appreciate nature and appreciate the wonderful gifts of nature's marvellous ingenuity, resourcefulness and infinite variety. It is the same thing that has inspired me all of my life.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. How had CV Raman's childhood been difficult?
 - (a) He had to run on the streets.
 - (b) He never drank milk as a child.
 - (c) He had lived life as a poor.
 - (d) He had access to books only.
- ii. What is the greatest lesson being taught by C V Raman's speech? Answer in about 40 words.
- iii. Complete the sentence appropriately.
Life has been termed a gamble because _____.
- iv. The passage includes some words that are opposites of each other. From the sets (a)-(e) below, identify two sets of antonyms :
 - (a) Poverty and misery
 - (b) Sooner and later
 - (c) Ingenuity and infinite
 - (d) Intelligent and strong
 - (e) disappointed and happy
- v. Complete the sentence appropriately.
According to the author, the great things in life are _____.
- vi. What are the qualities from the passage that the author wants us to imbibe? Answer in about 40 words.
- vii. The writer says, "What I say is that great things in life are not really great thing in life."
State the tone with which the writer says so.
 - (a) Lively
 - (b) Disdain
 - (c) Humorous
 - (d) Factual

viii. What does the speaker love in life?

Ans :

2021

- i. (c) He had lived life as a poor.
- ii. The greatest lesson being taught by CV Raman's speech is that we have to love nature and appreciate nature and appreciate the wonderful gifts of nature's marvellous ingenuity, resourcefulness and infinite variety.
- iii. success in life is not always to be intelligent or strong.
- iv. (b) Sooner and Later
(e) Disappointed and happy
- v. the God-given things which cost nothing.

- vi. The great things in life are God-given things which cost nothing. All we need is the desire to appreciate them.
- vii. (d) Factual
- viii. The speaker loves to enjoy the common things of life.

Passage 14

1. A black vulture (*Coragyps atratus*) is a carrion feeder that pilots and air traffic specialists have long considered a collision threat, given both its size and flight behaviour. Of Brazil's animal-aircraft incidents in 2020, eight percent involved black vultures. Even discounting the danger, they pose to aircrafts, vultures are widely seen as harbingers of death and decay. Yet, they play an important role in the human-built environment.
2. These carrion-eaters fly in committees and when they are not airborne, camp out on large stands of refuse, packed together like feather-clad beggars. With their sooty plumage and crusty skin, black vultures fit right in with their rank surroundings. Boasting a wingspan of around five feet and the ability to fly at speeds surpassing Usain Bolt in his prime, they are mostly habituated to the many collectors, sifters, and other (bipedal) scavengers who spend quality time at the dump. Gazing, waiting-they will make their move when the time is right.
3. A trash mound is essentially a rookery and nursery for a bird that evolved to eat the flesh of the dead and dying but now thrives on the abundance of trash. Here, where human-coordinated management is absent, vultures are efficient managers of waste.
4. For each story of a potential airline collision resulting from the birds, they cycle millions of tons of nutrients and other material through the food web, eating dog faeces and fish bones with equal gusto. The average Brazilian household throws away 353g of trash per day; the average black vulture consumes 140g a day. Not all household waste is edible-although *Coragyps atratus* does seem to have an affection for gobbling up shreds of plastic grocery bags. Their powerful stomach acid breaks down harmful pathogens of cholera, brucellosis, and anthrax too.
5. As the planet seems to be roiled in flames and losing biodiversity at a rapid clip, vultures are as opportunistic as ever, with their populations growing in both South and North America which makes continued conflict with humans inevitable.

6. Solid waste is typically strewn about communities in rural Latin America. The vultures have taken care of everything; the city has no hope of taking care of itself." In this light, the vultures' general unsightliness, and perhaps the occasional aircraft collision, is a small price to pay. "They're the best thing that ever happened to the Amazon town," says a conservationist.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. Why does the writer say that vultures are harbingers of death and decay?
 - (a) They are responsible for animal-aircraft incidents in Brazil.
 - (b) They collide with aircrafts and feed on dead flesh.
 - (c) They are responsible for animal-aircraft incidents everywhere in the world.
 - (d) They are carrion feeders.
- ii. Based on your reading of the text, explain why the writer says that *Coragyps stratus* thrives on the abundance of human-made piles of trash. Rationalise your response in about 40 words.
- iii. Which outstanding trait of the black vultures the writer wishes to project, with reference to the following statement?
Not all household waste is edible-although '*Coragyps atratus*' does seem to have an affection for gobbling up shreds of plastic grocery bags.
- iv. The passage includes some word pairs that denote consecutive stages in a process for example, moulding and baking a bread. From the sets (a)-(e) below, identify two sets of words that do not correspond to this relation.
 - (a) South and North America
 - (b) dead and dying
 - (c) rookery and nursery
 - (d) death and decay
 - (e) pilots and air traffic specialists
- v. Complete the sentence appropriately.
The writer compares the black vultures with Usain Bolt because
- vi. Based on the reading of the passage, examine, in about 40 words, that the black vultures despite their general unsightliness are highly social birds.
- vii. "They're (the black vultures) the best thing that ever happened to the Amazon town," says a

conservationist in Paragraph 6. The options given below provide enough evidence to substantiate this claim except one. Choose the correct option.

- (a) They take care of waste management better than humans.
- (b) They consume even plastics.
- (c) They protect humans from the spread of harmful pathogens.
- (d) They single-handedly keep rural Latin America spick and span.

viii. Complete the statement.

Despite the fact that the growing populations of black vultures in both South and North America have sharpened the conflict with humans, they are a blessing for mankind because they consume even non-edible waste like

Ans :

2021

- i. (b) They collide with aircrafts and feed on dead flesh.
- ii. Trash mounds have become common nesting grounds and nurseries for black vultures. It has helped the bird evolve and adapt itself to the changes in its environment. Here, where human-coordinated management is absent, vultures are efficient managers of waste.
- iii. The author wishes to project the hardiness of the black vultures.
- iv. (a) South and North America
(e) pilots and air traffic specialists
- v. the flying speed of *Coragyps atratus* is even better than the most celebrated athlete, Usain Bolt's running speed in his prime.
- vi. They fly together in committees. They camp out on large stands of refuse, packed together watching out for each other and their young ones. A trash mound is essentially a rookery and nursery for the black vulture because humans don't frequent it.
- vii. (d) They single-handedly keep rural Latin America spick and span.
- viii. shreds of plastic grocery bags and ingest pathogens of cholera, brucellosis, and anthrax too.

Passage 15

1. The seasonal problem of water taps running dry is plaguing most of our major cities. With the bigger rivers flowing in trickles and ponds and wells reduced to clay pits, village women in remote areas have to fetch every drop of water for

drinking, cooking, washing and so on, across large distances. This has only worsened a perennial problem, that of widespread pollution of water, rendering it unfit for human consumption. The monsoons and the attendant floods will not solve this problem.

2. The Delhi Administration is seriously worried about the threat to civic health posed by the polluted waters of the Yamuna. Two main tanks are to be set up to treat sewage. At present, only 60 per cent of the 200 million gallons of the city's sewage receives any kind of treatment before it is dumped into the river which supplies water not only to this city but to innumerable towns and villages downstream. The Ganga, the Yamuna, the Kaveri, in fact, all our important rivers serving many urban conglomerations, are fast becoming a major source of diseases.
3. A comprehensive bill introduced in the Parliament recently envisages the setting up of central and state boards for the prevention and control of water pollution. But it will obviously take some time before legislation is passed and effectively implemented. Meanwhile, the problem continues to swell. According to a survey of eight dwelling countries conducted a couple of years ago, 90 percent of all child deaths were due to water-borne diseases. It is the same unchanged story today.
4. In a country like India, a burgeoning population continuing to use the open countryside as a lavatory means that with every dust storm and rain, humans excreta laden with germs and parasites find their way to ponds, shallow wells and even the streams and rivers. Only 18 percent of the rural folk have access to potable water.
5. A new threat that has already assumed alarming proportions is industrial waste which is generally dumped untreated into the nearest river. For instance, for every kilogram of process hide, 30-40 litres of foul-smelling, wastewater has to be disposed of. There are at least 900 licensed tanneries in the organised sector. Putrefied paper and jute waste, metallic waste from strawboard and textile mills, sulphur, ammonia, urea, metallic salts and corrosive acids all find their way to the rivers of India.
6. It is important not only to make new laws to ensure the purity of water but also to realise the urgency of implementing them ruthlessly if we are to avoid a national health disaster cutting across the barrier between towns and the countryside.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. Why does the writer say that 'this has only worsened a perennial problem'?
 - (a) There is climate change and increasing floods.
 - (b) More and more is becoming unfit for human use.
 - (c) The water table has gone down.
 - (d) There is no more clean water.
- ii. Based on your reading of the text, list two reasons why the writer says that
According to a survey of eight dwelling countries conducted a couple of years ago, 90 percent of all child deaths were due to water-borne diseases. (Answer in about 40 words)
- iii. Complete the sentence appropriately.
Only 18 percent of the rural folk have access to potable water because _____.
- iv. The passage includes some words that are opposites of each other. From the sets (a)-(e) given below, identify two sets of antonyms.
 - (a) Reduce and swell
 - (b) Prevention and control
 - (c) Burgeoning and becoming
 - (d) Running and plaguing
 - (e) Town and countryside
- v. Complete the sentence appropriately.
The need of the hour to avoid a national health disaster is to _____.
- vi. Which new threat is the writer talking about in Paragraph 5? Answer in about 40 words.
- vii. Select the option that corresponds to the following relation below.
A new threat that has already assumed alarming proportions is industrial waste which is generally dumped untreated into the nearest river. (Paragraph 5)
 - (a) The crime rate is at its peak mainly caused due to inequality, financial burden and overexposure to television.
 - (b) Human behaviour is often affected by the people around them.
 - (c) Happiness can be found in even the smallest of things in life, said a wise person.
 - (d) In order to be successful, one needs to have patience and perseverance.

- viii. The writer expresses his concern when he says only 18 percent of the rural folk have access to potable water.

State one point that supports the above statement.

Ans :

2021

- i. (b) More and more water is becoming unfit for human use.
- ii. The writer says the given statement because
 1. Use of open countryside as a lavatory causing rain, storm, etc to transport the infections human excreta to ponds, rivers etc.
 2. Putrefied paper, metallic waste from mills, sulphur, ammonia, urea, metallic salts and corrosive acids all find their way to the rivers of India.
- iii. water-bodies continue to be dumped with sewage and human excreta laden with germs
- iv. (a) Reduce and swell
(e) Town and countryside
- v. make laws and implement them vigorously
- vi. Industrial waste which is generally dumped untreated into the nearest river is the rising threat that the author is talking about. With so many licensed tanneries, wastes like putrefied paper and jute waste, metallic waste from strawboard and textile mills, sulphur, ammonia, urea, metallic salts, and corrosive acids all find their way to the rivers of India.
- vii. (a) The crime rate is at its peak mainly caused due to inequality, financial burden, and overexposure to television.
- viii. The given statement is supported by the fact that due to the presence of open lavatory, all waterbodies like ponds, shallow wells, streams and rivers get polluted with germ filled human excreta.

Passage 16

1. A UNICEF report, 2021 pointed out that some 100 million girls are at risk of child marriage over the next decade. The pandemic has led to “school closures, economic stress, service disruptions, pregnancy, and parental deaths”, leaving a further 10 million vulnerable girls facing the possibility of child marriage.
2. In Rajasthan, civil society organisations are battling the practice, empowering the girls and succeeding. Launched on International Women’s Day in 2019, Naubat Baja relies largely on the

strength of mobile phones, which have penetrated the remotest corners of India and are the youth’s favourite mode of communication, particularly in areas with little access to television, cable, or the internet.

3. The words Naubat Baja, stand for an ensemble of musical instruments that were played together in earlier times to catch the attention of people. This initiative is a new incarnation of the digital age, relaying messages against harmful practices such as child marriage and gender discrimination. Posters against early marriage are a part of the campaign by Naubat Baja Missed Call Radio, a cloud telephone-based radio channel in Rajasthan, that addresses issues of adolescents’ well-being, empowerment and health. Volunteers and adolescent group leaders associated with Naubat Baja are called champions.
4. Girls phone the Naubat Baja number and receive a callback, which contains a 15-minute recording of free entertainment, peppered with Hindi film songs, short stories and audio dramas themed around social issues narrated through comedy or satire. There is news about job opportunities, general knowledge facts and information about government welfare schemes aimed at the youth. Messages on themes such as child marriage, domestic violence, adolescent girls’ health, menstrual hygiene, gender sensitisation, financial awareness are conveyed through the dramas.
5. The regularly updated programme, overseen by UNFPA representatives, is produced in studios with the help of a content team of researchers and presented by professional audio content makers and popularised through social media, graffiti and awareness campaigns in rural and urban areas by volunteers, community leaders, Panchayats (rural governing bodies), Anganwadi (rural child care centres) and ASHA (Accredited Social Health Activist) workers.
6. In Rajasthan, efforts are on to draw in more partners in the drive like the Nehru Yuva Kendra Sangathan (NYKS)- one of the largest youth networks in the world to popularize messages aired by Naubat Baja. Once the strategies start to bear fruit, thousands of ordinary girls will dare to dream.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. Why does the writer wish to project when he says this?
A UNICEF report, 2021 pointed out that some 100 million girls are at risk of child marriage over

the next decade.

- (a) agitation against the authorities
- (b) insecurity about the world trend
- (c) alarm for the lives of the girls
- (d) conviction about the helpless situation

- ii. The writer emphasizes that Naubat Baja uses its content very cleverly to rake up sensitive social issues through theatrical performances (Paragraph 4).

What is the similarity between the two? Rationalise your response in about 40 words.

- iii. Complete the sentence appropriately.
The campaign content used in Naubat Baja is being done with a professional touch

- iv. The passage includes some words that are opposites of each other. From the sets (a)-(e) below, identify two sets of antonyms.

- (a) rural and urban areas
- (b) child marriage and early marriage
- (c) gender discrimination and sensitisation
- (d) well-being and health
- (e) television and cable

- v. Complete the sentence appropriately.
The representatives of the United Nations and champions keep the youth updated by providing them with

- vi. Based on your reading of the passage, prove that Naubat Baja has successfully reached even the remotest corners of inaccessible areas.

- vii. How are civil society organisations using technology to their advantage to bring about social change?

- (a) They are using a cloud-based telephone service to reach people.
- (b) They are using poster campaigns at grass root levels.
- (c) They are using satire and comedy to push their social messages.
- (d) They are relying on their collaboration with UNO.

- viii. The mass reach of the Naubat Baja in both rural and urban areas involving local community platforms in Rajasthan has been made possible due to the combined efforts of

Ans :

2021

- i. (c) alarm for the lives of the girls.

- ii. Dramas are used to sensitise and make people aware about a range of sensitive social issues such as child marriage, domestic violence, health of adolescent girls, menstrual hygiene, gender sensitisation, and even financial awareness to drive the point home.

- iii. as it is not only made by a team of researchers but is also presented by professional audio content makers.

- iv. (a) rural and urban areas
(c) gender discrimination and sensitisation

- v. information about job opportunities, general knowledge facts, government welfare schemes and financial management.

- vi. Naubat Baja is a cloud telephone-based radio channel. It relies on the strength of mobile phones, which have penetrated the remotest corners of India. That's why it is able to access those areas that are devoid of access to television, cable TV or even, the internet.

- vii. (a) They are using a cloud-based telephone service to reach people.

- viii. Anganwadi centers, ASHA workers, NYKS, and panchayat members.

Passage 17

1. Although pollution of land, sea and air has been well documented, the latest and the least recognised version is the swelling tide of noise which is engulfing urban as well as rural areas. This has long-term implications on the ecology, health, and productivity of a fast developing country like India.
2. Unlike other pollutants, noise lacks visibility, seldom registering on the consciousness, except as a trifling irritant to be dismissed at will, therefore, less likely to be perceived as a threat. Available data indicates that noise does pose a threat and is known to have caused a number of complications. Declining productivity among workers in certain industries has been directly correlated with noise levels, particularly these under constant exposure to the menace.
3. The first ever survey of the impact of noise on health, conducted by All India Institute of Medical Sciences, has established that noise not only impairs the physical and psychological functioning of the human organism, but also causes nausea, vomiting, pain, hypertension and a lot of other complications, including cardiovascular complaints.

4. A study by Post Graduate School of Basic Medical Sciences, in Chennai, confirms such conclusions. In 50 per cent of industries, it was found that workmen exposed to higher intensities of noise in occupational capacities were often irritated, short-tempered, and impatient and more likely to resort to agitation and disrupt production. This was true of units in heavy industrial pockets in and around the four metropolitan centres.
5. Recreational noise, another ugly facet, is becoming more widespread in cities and towns. Loudspeakers are turned at full volume during marriages, festivals, jagrans, musical programmes, particularly at night, without the least consideration for others. Even at 50 db sound can awaken a person from a deep slumber. As experiments have shown, loudspeakers with output from 60 to 80 db cause the pupils of a slumbering person to dilate, with increasing intake of oxygen, resulting in palpitation. The effect is more pronounced in narrow lanes. TV sets are played at full volume at prime time, invariably disturbing neighbours. Noise-making seems to have become the latest status symbol, be it an election campaign or slogan shouting or advertising ownership of a TV set.
- (d) urban and rural
(e) cities and towns
- v. Complete the sentence appropriately.
The survey conducted by AHMS has established that noise not only impacts but also impairs by causing nausea, vomiting, pain, hypertension and cardio-vascular complaints.
- vi. Based on the reading of the passage, answer in about 40 words. How does the author define the consequences of recreational noise?
- vii. The author emphasises that 'The swelling tide of noise has long-term implications on the environment, human health, and productivity.' Which of the following options corroborates this?
(a) It has a lot of health complications.
(b) Human apathy to noise makes it an omniscient threat.
(c) It is considered a trifling irritant to be dismissed at will.
(d) It can make a person violent and disruptive.
- viii. What is the message conveyed by the author in the article?

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. Why does the writer say that noise has implications on our nation's ecology, health, and productivity? Eliminate the incorrect option.
(a) Because it has overwhelmed both urban and rural areas.
(b) Because it is conveniently dismissed.
(c) Because its effects are well-documented.
(d) Because its effects are not well-documented.
- ii. What is the tone of the writer in the given line- 'Even at 50 db, sound can awaken a person from a deep slumber.' from paragraph 5? Rationalise your response in about 40 words.
- iii. Complete the sentence appropriately.
The author cites examples of noise pollution in heavy industrial pockets to conclusively prove to the reader that
- iv. The passage includes some words that are opposites of each other. From the sets (a)-(e) below, identify two sets of antonyms.
(a) physical and psychological
(b) in and around
(c) sea and air
(d) urban and rural
(e) cities and towns
- v. Complete the sentence appropriately.
The survey conducted by AHMS has established that noise not only impacts but also impairs by causing nausea, vomiting, pain, hypertension and cardio-vascular complaints.
- vi. Based on the reading of the passage, answer in about 40 words. How does the author define the consequences of recreational noise?
- vii. The author emphasises that 'The swelling tide of noise has long-term implications on the environment, human health, and productivity.' Which of the following options corroborates this?
(a) It has a lot of health complications.
(b) Human apathy to noise makes it an omniscient threat.
(c) It is considered a trifling irritant to be dismissed at will.
(d) It can make a person violent and disruptive.
- viii. What is the message conveyed by the author in the article?

Ans :

2020

- i. (d) Because its effects are not well-documented.
- ii. The writer emphasises the deadly impact of even low levels of noise with an example that if even 50 db sound can disturb a person and disrupt his sleep cycle then, louder levels of sounds can have a devastating effect on one's physical as well as mental health.
- iii. consistent exposure to noise can lead to behavioural changes.
- iv. (a) physical and psychological
(d) urban and rural
- v. our physical and psychological functioning, our health.
- vi. Recreational noise is characteristic of urban areas, especially neighbourhoods with narrow lanes where it gets trapped and disturbs people, disrupts life, and impairs health like dilation of pupils, palpitations, and disruption of sleep.
- vii. (b) Human apathy to noise makes it an omniscient threat.
- viii. Noise is as lethal as any other kind of pollution.

Passage 18

1. It is an indisputable fact that the world has gone too far with the innovation of new technologies such as mobile phones, the internet and so on, due to which, people are able to tour the cosmos virtually sitting in one place using their smart devices or other technological gadgets. Though mobile internet access is often-times hurried and short, it can still provide common internet features like alerts, weather data, emails, search engines, instant messages and game and music downloading.
2. Due to the easy access to smartphones, communication has been very effective and instant. People are able to convey their message all around the globe to their loved ones without spending hefty sums of money. Adults are always fond of such gadgets and they always welcome and adopt such new technology readily. Further, young people have been able to broaden their minds and improve their skills by doing research on the Internet. For instance, they use smartphones to look up any new word they come across. As we know that most of universities have online teaching provisions and smartphones assist students to complete their assignments on time.
3. The mobile phone has been a lifesaver for a lot of people in case of an emergency. Likewise, use of smartphones can be of vital importance in preventing crimes in society by providing information to the security forces in time.
4. Nonetheless, for the young, the use of the mobile phone can be like an addiction and they can misuse it. Young people are also prone to getting involved in undesirable activities on the Internet. This might have an adverse effect on their academic performance. Therefore, young people should always be monitored and made aware of its adverse/negative outcomes.
5. Also a major contributor to its popularity is the availability of prepaid or pay-as-you-go services from a phone shop or an online store. This allows subscribers to load text or airtime credits to their handsets by the use of their credit cards, debit cards or by buying a prepaid card from the network they subscribe to. If a prepaid card is not that appealing to you, then you can opt to subscribe using the pay-by-month plan.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. What does the author mean when he says 'tour the cosmos'?

- (a) Booking foreign tours.
- (b) Seeing so far as one can go.
- (c) Seeing things which were part of the dream.
- (d) Seeing different parts of the universe.

- ii. Based on your reading of the text, list two reasons why the writer approves of smart phones. Answer in about 40 words.

- iii. Fill in the blank.

Grown-ups should the use of new technology by the young people.

- iv. The passage includes some words that are similar in meaning to each other. From the sets (a)-(e) below, identify two sets of synonyms.

- (a) Preventing and providing
- (b) World and cosmos
- (c) Adverse and negative
- (d) Addiction and misuse
- (e) Effective and instant

- v. Complete the sentence appropriately.

Smart phones today have become crucial to education because

- vi. Do you think that the author warns young people from use of smart phones? Give reasons for your answer in about 40 words.

- vii. Select the correct option to fill in the blank.

Internet does not help young ones to

- (a) complete their assignments in time
- (b) differentiate between good and bad
- (c) broaden their mind by doing research
- (d) learn and know more words

- viii. Mobile phone is called a lifesaver. State the reasons for the same.

Ans :

2020

- i. (d) Seeing different parts of the universe.
- ii. The writer approves of smartphones because communication has been very effective and instant. People are able to convey their message all around the globe to their loved ones without spending hefty sums of money. Further, young people have been able to broaden their minds and improve their skills by doing research on the Internet.
- iii. monitor
- iv. (b) World and cosmos
(c) Adverse and negative

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

- v. most of the universities have online teaching provisions and smartphones assist students to complete their assignments on time.
- vi. Yes, the author warns young people about the use of smartphones as for the young, the use of mobile phone can be like an addiction and they can misuse it. Young people are also prone to getting involved in undesirable activities on the Internet. This might have an adverse effect on their academic performance. Therefore, young people should always be monitored and made aware of its adverse/negative outcomes.
- vii. (b) differentiate between good and bad
- viii. The mobile phone has been called lifesaver because it has helped people in case of an emergency. Likewise, use of smartphones can be of vital importance in preventing crimes in society by providing information to the security forces in time.

Passage 19

1. In the classroom, broadening your thinking can mean emphasizing something called problem based learning. In this approach, a teacher presents a problem or question with no clear or obvious solution. Students are then asked to think broadly about how to solve it.
2. Problem-based learning can help students think like scientists, Wallace says. He cites an example from his own classroom. Last fall, he had students read about fruit flies that lack an enzyme-a molecule that speeds up chemical reactions-to break down alcohol. "I had seven groups of students, and got seven different ways to measure," he says. "That's what I would call creativity in a science class."
3. "Creativity means taking risks and not being afraid to make mistakes," adds Andrews. In fact, she and many educators agree, when something comes out differently than expected, it provides a learning experience. A good scientist would ask "Why?" she says, and "What's happening here?"
4. Talking with others and teamwork also help with associative thinking-allowing thoughts to wander and freely associating one thing with another-that DeHaan says, contributes to creativity. Working on a team, he says, introduces a concept called distributed reasoning. Sometimes called brainstorming. This type of reasoning is spread out and conducted by a group of people.
5. "When you talk about creativity in science, it's not about, have you done a nice drawing to

explain something," she says. "It's about, What are we imagining together? What's possible, and how could we figure that out? That's what scientists do all the time."

6. Although using arts and crafts to represent ideas can be helpful, Smith says, it is not the same as recognizing the creativity inherent in science. "What we've been missing is that science itself is creative," she explains.
7. "It's a creativity of ideas and representations and finding things out, which is different from making a Player-mâché globe and painting it to represent the Earth," she says.
8. In the end, educators and scientists agree that anyone can learn how to think like a scientist. "Too often in school, students get the impression that science is for a specially gifted subspecies of humanity," Herschbach says. But he insists just the opposite is true.
9. "Scientists don't have to be so smart," he continues. "It's all there waiting for you if you work hard at it, and then you have a good chance of contributing to this great adventure of our species and understanding more about the world we live in."
(Adapted from the American Heritage Children's Science Dictionary)

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. Why does the writer say that problem-based learning can 'broaden one's thinking'?
 - (a) It can lead to creative resolution of an issue at hand.
 - (b) It can lead to people working in a pedantic manner.
 - (c) It can lead to the expansion of the human brain literally.
 - (d) It can lead to people working independently.
- ii. What makes Herschbach debunk the popular misconception that scientists are more gifted than others? Rationalise your response in about 40 words.
- iii. Complete the sentence appropriately.
The author tries to establish a link and a point of similarity between problem-based learning and thinking like a scientist when he says that
- iv. The passage includes some word-pairs that are closely related or similar to each other. From the sets (a)-(e) below, identify sets that go against

the essence of the passage.

- (a) arts and crafts
- (b) ideas and representations
- (c) educators and scientists
- (d) distributed reasoning and brainstorming
- (e) scientists and gifted subspecies

v. Complete the sentence appropriately.

DeHaan lays deep emphasis on the benefits of associative thinking in science and emphasises that its maximum benefits can be drawn out

vi. Based on the reading of the passage, examine, in about 40 words, what disconnect or point of difference does the writer draw out between creativity in art and craft and creativity in science.

vii. Which of these explanations does not relate to the concept of distributive reasoning?

- (a) It is synonymous with brainstorming.
- (b) It is prevalent among the scientific community only.
- (c) It is a part of associative thinking.
- (d) It requires a team to conduct it successfully.

viii. Fill in the blank with suitable word/words.

This great adventure of our species in Paragraph 9 refers to

Ans :

2020

- i. (a) It can lead to creative resolution of an issue at hand.
- ii. Educators and scientists agree that anyone can learn how to think like a scientist. One needs to contribute to the greater understanding of the world and resolve its problems with a spirit of inquiry and hard work- qualities that are mandatory to become a good scientist.
- iii. it can broaden one's thinking by encouraging a person to look at a problem from different perspectives.
- iv. (a) arts and crafts
(e) scientists and gifted subspecies
- v. in a team setting that allows thoughts to freely associate one thing with another.
- vi. Creativity in science refers to the creativity of ideas and representations and finding things out. It means taking risks, asking questions, and making mistakes whereas in art, the focus is on beauty and symbolism.

vii. (b) It is prevalent among the scientific community only.

viii. the existence of human beings on earth.

Passage 20

1. A youngster quit Facebook in December after spending over three years on the social networking site. With that one act, he bid a silent adieu to more than 300 contacts that he had added to his account during the period. Like almost everyone from his "friend's circle," the 20-year-old was a regular on the service; visiting it every day to post photos and status updates but last week a new feature on Facebook called Timeline forced him to reconsider the pros and cons of being on the networking site.
2. Everyone has some skeletons in their closet and I am just not comfortable with Facebook digging up and displaying all the facets of my life on a bulletin board,' says this youngster who joined the network in July 2007, while he was in class 11th.
3. Facebook, you see, had compressed the time he spent on the site and arranged it in chronological order. While he initially liked the new neatly organised scrapbook-like feature he wasn't happy to reveal posts from the past that until recently were hidden under layers and layers of recent updates. Just clicking on a date on the timeline could transport his friends back in time and enable them to view every embarrassing comment link or photo he had posted on his profile.
4. "I think it's a recipe for disaster," he says. "In 2007, I had some wall posts which seemed appropriate at the time but now after a lapse of four years, I have moved on and don't want them to be openly displayed for all to see."
5. He is not alone. Many users, worried about how the Facebook activity could possibly affect their offline lives, are choosing to commit "Facebook suicide." While some have privacy concerns, others feel that the site meant to bring them closer to their friends actually does the opposite- it reduces their friendship to something superficial.
6. Poking and liking are not enough to keep a friendship going,' says a business analyst. Having quit Facebook three years ago, she prefers meeting her "real" friends face-to-face, instead of reading their trite posts online. "On Facebook, people hype everyday issues including what they ate and where they went on a daily basis," says this analyst who continues to use Twitter.

7. "Facebook has become a time sink and it could not justify the time I spent on it," he says, "I spend more time calling up friends or relatives over the phone now I also go out and meet people whenever possible and have a good offline life. I do not regret the change." Today, Facebook has 800 million users of which 37 million are Indians. The site has become an online identity for most, and many of those who decided to quit cannot overcome the withdrawal symptoms and return. Facebook, fully aware of its addictive powers, facilitates this return by allowing users to 'deactivate' their accounts but continues to store information on its servers so that they can return from their 'break', whenever they wish.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. Which of the following statements best describes the reason for the youngster's reaction to the posts he made in the past?
 - (a) He did not want to be reminded of the past.
 - (b) He was reminded of the bitter past.
 - (c) He felt it unnecessary.
 - (d) He was embarrassed of the post.
- ii. Based on your reading of the text, list any two disadvantages of the social media site Facebook.
- iii. Complete the sentence appropriately.
People are choosing to commit Facebook suicide because
- iv. The passage includes some words that are opposites of each other. From the sets (a)-(e) below, identify a set of antonyms.
 - (a) Pros and disaster
 - (b) Superficial and real
 - (c) Quit and regular
 - (d) Addictive and lapse
 - (e) Facilitates and updates
- v. Complete the sentence appropriately.
According to the author, feature of Timeline takes away a person's privacy.
- vi. Why did the youngster change his mind later regarding staying on Facebook?
- vii. Evaluate the appropriate characteristic that can be apt for the lives of people who had quit Facebook.
 - (a) Embarrassing and Addictive
 - (b) Sad and Hysterical

- (c) Social and Real
- (d) Nostalgic and Fear of missing out

- viii. In Paragraph 7, the author says 'allowing users to 'deactivate' their accounts but continues to store information on their servers so that they can return from their 'break', whenever they wish.' State the reason for doing so by Facebook.

Ans :

2019

- i. (d) He was embarrassed of the post.
- ii. Two disadvantages of the social media site Facebook are :
 1. The site reveals post from the past which were relevant then but are embarrassing or triggering now.
 2. People are not really connected. Likes and pokes are not real friendships. People hype what they ate and where they went on the social media site.
- iii. many users, worried about how their activity on Facebook could affect their personal lives.
- iv. (b) superficial and real
- v. clicking on a date
- vi. The youngster changed his mind later because he realised that a piece of information or poster put in the past may have been relevant then but today it may not be. People move on in life and sometimes they do not want their past to haunt them.
- vii. (c) Social and Real
- viii. The social media site Facebook is fully aware of its addictive powers. Hence, it offers a way out by keeping the information of the user to facilitate their easy return.

Passage 21

1. They've also got huge educational success. It is a complicated cultural phenomenon. The pursuit of educational excellence to the exclusion of other aspects of life, such as spending time outside, can be detrimental to eye health believe eye specialists.
2. In low and middle-income countries, myopia rates still tend to be lower-Bangladesh and India for example report rates of about 20-30% in adults-but this is changing. In Africa, for example, myopia used to be comparatively uncommon, but over the past ten years, the prevalence of childhood myopia has been rising fast. As literacy rates improve in those countries-an otherwise

welcome development-that problem could grow unless there is a big effort to also provide eye tests and glasses, experts warn.

3. School time in itself is, however, not necessarily the root of the problem, as the Covid-19 pandemic lockdowns have shown. It is staying indoors that appears to be. During the lockdowns, schools shut down all over the world-but children's eye health became even worse. Typically, they stayed inside during the lockdowns, and spent hours staring at screens, either following classes or watching TV, as other forms of learning and entertainment disappeared.
4. This complex problem-myopia as a bad side effect of an otherwise positive trend-also shows up in another area: income levels. Like education, a higher income is generally associated with greater well-being in children-but not when it comes to eye health. Instead, myopia is associated with higher socio-economic status. The richer we get, the better we are at protecting our children from ever going outdoors, because they've got more things to do. They've got to learn music, play video games and watch TV, and so forth.
5. Is there a way out? In China, trials have been conducted in classrooms that mimic learning outdoors. Children and teachers preferred the bright new classrooms that resemble a glasshouse, as compared with a traditional classroom. However, in summer and on sunny days, the light intensity was at the 'practical upper limit for routine use'. The bright classroom is also twice as expensive to build as a regular classroom, because of building materials and cooling mechanisms that are required.
6. The most effective, evidence-based prevention strategy is also surprisingly low-tech and applies to all countries regardless of their wealth or resources: more time outdoors. Researchers are still investigating exactly why being outdoors, and being in natural light, helps prevent myopia-but for now, their perhaps most important conclusion is that it does. The challenge is to ensure that children make use of this natural boost.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. Why does the writer say that myopia is 'a complicated cultural phenomenon' in South-East Asia? Which of these statements does not corroborate the given statement?
 - (a) The rate of educational success is very high.
 - (b) The rate of myopia is here higher than other

countries.

- (c) The rate of spending time outdoors is very low.
- (d) The rate of spending time indoors is very low.
- ii. Why does the writer deduce that spending too much time in classrooms is not necessarily the root of the problem of myopia? Rationalise your response in about 40 words.
- iii. Complete the sentence appropriately.
The author says that "Like education, a higher income is generally associated with greater well-being in children-but not when it comes to eye health." The analogy is interesting but
- iv. The passage includes some word pairs from the passage that are opposites of each other. From the sets (a)-(e) below, identify two sets of pairs that do not classify under antonyms.
 - (a) glasshouse classrooms and traditional classrooms
 - (b) learning and entertainment
 - (c) low and middle-income countries
 - (d) outdoors and indoors
 - (e) pandemic and lockdowns
- v. The writer thinks that the glasshouse classrooms in China built with the objective of bringing the outdoors inside are not feasible in all kinds of weather. (Paragraph 5)
State one point that the author puts forward in defence of his argument.
- vi. Based on your reading of the text, list two reasons why the writer says that in low and middle-income countries, the problem of myopia could grow manifold in the coming years.
- vii. The writer says, "The richer we get,the more things our children have to do."
(Paragraph 3)
Select two suitable reasons responsible for this social phenomenon.
 1. We consider it a status symbol.
 2. We want them to have varied learning experiences.
 3. We consider it a family tradition.
 4. We follow the herd mentality.
 5. We think this was their talent increases.
 6. We have the availability of resources.
 - (a) 1 and 3
 - (b) 4 and 5
 - (c) 2 and 6
 - (d) 1 and 4

viii. Supply one point to justify the following:

Ironically, widespread and long lockdowns gave a real push to the number of children getting myopia.

Ans :

2018

- i. (d) The rate of spending time indoors is very low.
- ii. The writer says so because the problem of myopia actually worsened during the lockdowns when the schools were shut down all over the world. The children spent hours staring at screens, either following classes or watching TV.
- iii. contradictory in nature.
- iv. (c) low and middle-income countries
(e) pandemic and lockdowns
- v. In summer and on sunny days, the light intensity is at the “practical upper limit for routine use.”
- vi. In low and middle income countries, childhood myopia has become a rising problem because of increasing literacy levels. Unfortunately, low-income countries don't have enough provision for even basic eye-tests and school-going children do not have access to reading glasses.
- vii. (c) 2 and 6
- viii. During the long lockdowns, the children spent hours staring at screens for online classes, TV and other modes of entertainment.

Passage 22

1. Nature depletion to most of us has been reduced to threats of global warming. With the forest cover depleted to a minimum, animals poached to extinction and holidays in wildlife sanctuaries, the interest of a few to link with nature seems like a distant possibility. Zoos and zoological parks remain the only places for the multitudes to connect with wildlife.
2. Traditionally, zoos have provided an economic form of recreation for people from various strata of society, income and educational levels, ages and socio-economic backgrounds. They offer a large vista of possibilities to educate and sensitise people. According to CEE India, “In India there are more than 150 zoos and they attract as many as 50 million visitors annually.”
3. Today, children have a wide disconnect with nature. An attractive place is required for nature education that will provide a competition to internet, television and play stations. Zoos are a place where children get to see the animals. It gives form to their imagination and opens a

new world of curiosity. Many grow up to become crusaders of wildlife protection.

4. In India, Reuben David, a champion of wildlife, created the Ahmedabad zoo. During his time, the zoo became one of the most remarkable zoos of India and contributed substantially to conservation and research. Animals are exchanged between zoos of the world.
5. Man-animal conflict continues to intensify. The Wildlife Protection Society of India estimated that at least 3189 leopards were killed from 1994 to 2010. Leopards are targeted as they attack livestock and enter human habitation. Wild animals need protection.
6. Some animal activists talk about banning zoos. What is the alternate plan to save various critically endangered species? Banning zoos might just accelerate their extinction. Zoos provide breeding places for the species that face a threat of extinction in the jungles. When a species is confined to one place, it faces a threat of being wiped away by disease, famine or epidemic. Many species are bred in zoos and reintroduced in their natural habitats.
7. The issue should not be to ban the ill-maintained zoos but to put more investment into creating a naturalized environment, keeping animals healthy and well fed, facilitating captive breeding programmes, carrying out researches, restoring endangered species, understanding animal behaviour, improving animal husbandry, develop conservation initiatives and educate the visitors. Zoos, a substantial way of conservation, provide life-system education and have immense educational and research value.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. Many species are bred in zoos and reintroduced in their natural habitats. The word ‘reintroduced’ means.
 - (a) sent back to their original surroundings.
 - (b) introduced to animals.
 - (c) familiarized with the jungle.
 - (d) introduced to humans
- ii. List the reason why zoos offer a large vista of possibilities to the multitudes. Rationalise your response in about 40 words.
- iii. Complete the sentence appropriately.
The author's use of the phrase ‘wildlife crusaders’ for children stems from

- iv. The passage includes some words that are related to each other in functionality. From the sets (a)-(e) below, identify two such sets.
- famine and epidemic
 - television and play stations
 - zoos and zoological parks
 - conservation and research
 - healthy and well-fed
- v. Use information from the passage to complete the sentence given below appropriately.
The author advocates that even ill-maintained zoos should not be closed or banned; instead -----.
- vi. Based on the reading of the passage, examine, in about 40 words, what makes the author say that the link between man and nature has been broken.
- vii. Zoos help children become 'crusader's of wildlife protection because
- they do not like animal locked in cages,
 - they understand that caring for animals is a good profession.
 - zoos sensitise children to animals
 - they learn to help animals.
- viii. Some activists have suggested banning zoos. Why is this not a viable scenario according to the author?

Ans :

2016

- (a) sent back to their original surroundings.
- Zoos provide an economic form of recreation for people from various strata of society, income and educational levels, ages, and socio-economic backgrounds. In India for example, they attract almost 50 million visitors annually.
- the fact that it educates them about nature and makes them curious and imaginative.
- (c) zoos and zoological parks
(d) conservation and research
- more investment should be put into them to create a naturalized environment.
- The link between man and nature has been broken because forest cover stands depleted to a minimum, animals are poached to extinction and people use wildlife sanctuaries for holidays. Even children have a wide disconnect.
- (c) zoos sensitise children to animals
- Banning zoos might just accelerate the extinction of those species that are on the verge of extinction. Zoos provide breeding places for them before reintroducing them to their natural habitat.

Passage 23

- The funding crisis at many zoos has reopened the debate over the value of zoos and whether they should be allowed to exist at all. People who are in favour of zoos argue that they perform an essential role in conserving rare animal species. Over the past 20 years zoos have developed programmes designed to help preserve endangered species. This involves breeding animals in captivity in 'captive breeding programmes' and then reintroducing them into their natural habitats to replenish the number living in the wild.
- Zoos cooperate with each other in order to ensure the success of their breeding programmes. Animals are passed from one zoo to another in order to prevent inbreeding-breeding from closely related animals.
If animals that are closely related to one another mate there is a danger that they will produce deformed offspring.
- Supporters of zoos argue that they have an important role in educating children, millions of who visit zoos every year. Television-viewing is no substitute for encountering real animals, they argue. Zoos also carry out important research, for example, on the best conditions for rare species to reproduce. If zoos were forced to close, it would be disastrous for world conservation, zoo supporters say. And most animals in captivity would have to be killed.
- Opponents of zoos accept that some species have been saved from extinction by 'captive breeding programmes', but they argue that this offers no solution to the worldwide conservation crisis. The number of animals protected by zoos is tiny compared with the overall problem. It cost millions to save the Arabian onyx from dying out; but could that amount be available for every species that is endangered? The value of zoo-breeding programmes is also questioned as some species, such as the African elephant, do not reproduce well in captivity.
- Captive animals are often kept in poor and inhumane conditions, opponents say. In the worst zoos, animals are still displayed for the entertainment of the public. Where animals are placed in impoverished and unsuitable surroundings, they often behave in abnormal and neurotic ways. It is common for polar bears

constantly to pace up and down or twist their heads and circle over and over again. This behaviour is now recognised by scientists as a sign of stress and frustration. When children visit zoos where animals are acting in neurotic and abnormal ways, they are not being educated. Instead, opponents say, they are being given inaccurate information.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. What are the advantages of zoos?
 - (a) Children are educated about wildlife in zoos.
 - (b) Breeding of endangered species is done.
 - (c) Both (a) and (b)
 - (d) None of the above
- ii. How would closing of zoos be disastrous? Answer in about 40 words.
- iii. Complete the following with a reason from paragraph 2 :
Inbreeding can lead to deformed animals because -----.
- iv. The passage includes some words that are opposites of each other. From the sets (a)-(e) below, identify a set of synonyms.
 - (a) Reproduce and breed
 - (b) Rare and endangered
 - (c) Supporters and opponents
 - (d) Crisis and solution
 - (e) Reintroduce and replenish
- v. Complete the sentence appropriately.
Cooperation amongst zoos support Captive Breeding Programme by
- vi. Supply the disadvantages of zoo. (Answer in about 40 words.)
- vii. Zoos provide a chance to encounter real animals,
 - (a) which can irritate the animals in the zoo
 - (b) which gives visitors a chance to take pictures with animals
 - (c) but visitors do not always see the natural behaviour of animals
 - (d) None of the above
- viii. Do you think captive breeding programmes are 100% successful?
Ans :
- i. (c) Both (a) and (b)

- ii. The closing of zoos can have a disastrous impact on world conservation. It would cause deliberate destruction of wildlife on a large scale while most animals in captivity would have to be killed.
- iii. animals bred are closely related to each other
- iv. (a) Rare and endangered
(b) Reproduce and breed
- v. preventing inbreeding among captive animals which are closely related. As a result, the offsprings are not deformed and have a better chance of surviving.
- vi. The various disadvantages of zoos are
 1. Running conservation programme is very costly.
 2. Captive animals are kept in very poor conditions.
 3. Children are getting inaccurate information about animal behaviours.
- vii. (c) but visitors do not always see the natural behaviour of animals
- viii. No, because such programmes are a minute solution to the worldwide conservation of wild animals.

Passage 24

1. The world is big but in a sense, it starts with me. Knowledge and awareness about myself have to precede my knowledge of things other than me. If I want the external environment to appreciate value. I need to do it by myself, first. In order to make the atmosphere around me green, I have to be green myself, in belief and action.
2. From dusk to dawn and dawn to dusk, our every activity leaves its footprint on the environment and ecology. It is a 24 x 7, eternal phenomenon. A laboured consciousness of having to go green in all possible areas is required in each one of us. It is, after all, our own self-interest and that of our descendants. The conscious application of change is going to become a habit and one's culture in due course. Though we read and hear a lot of green initiatives, we hardly tweak our routines to suit the larger picture.
3. Greenery in the surroundings prevents dust and noise pollution. The way we water and manure plants also matters. Water is also a fast-depleting resource. Sprinklers are one example to use and conserve it. Compost from biowaste can be used as manure for plants which is cost-effective and eco-friendly. We can also contribute to the preservation of water bodies by not dumping our

garbage in them. The use of public transport systems in the place of individual modes can reduce carbon footprint.

4. 'Reuse', 'Recycle', 'Re-engineer' and 'Renew' are the mantras. Let us appreciate, support and contribute our might to the promotional efforts of the community in this direction. Remember, my ecology is also the community, society and nation that I care for which in turn cares for me. In other words, all these seemingly outward initiatives done for others are going to make my life more comfortable ultimately.
5. I have to be, therefore, concerned about what sort of environment I am responsible for, for my own sustenance, livelihood and progress. As long as my impact is positive, my presence will be welcome. If it is otherwise, I am going to be shunned. It is either 'Embrace' or 'Embarrass'.
6. Green initiatives are anti-scorch Earth. Air, water and soil need to be conserved for the thriving of mankind in the future. The increasing onslaughts on the quality of air and soil need to be reversed. The indiscriminate exploitation of water-consumable water is only 0.3% of freshwater-needs to be stopped. The Earth ought not to shrink further, continue to breathe easy. Mother Earth looks for only love and cares from her children and nothing more in return for all the wealth she has so generously showered on us.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. Why does the author say that one should be concerned about the environment?
 - (a) For future generations
 - (b) For the betterment of country
 - (c) For the betterment of culture
 - (d) For better sustenance
- ii. The writer is all for measures to be taken to save the planet Earth when he says, 'Air, water and soil need to be conserved for the thriving of mankind in the future.' (Paragraph 6) State any two solutions he offers in the extract in about 40 words.
- iii. Complete the sentence appropriately.
We need to conserve water because _____.
- iv. The passage includes some words that are opposites of each other. From the sets (a)-(e) given below, identify two sets of antonyms.
 - (a) Belief and action
 - (b) Knowledge and awareness

- (c) Reduce and increasing
- (d) Indiscriminate and change
- (e) Dusk and dawn

- v. Complete the sentence appropriately.
The author says that the Earth ought not to shrink further and continue to breathe easy because _____.
- vi. Supply one point to justify the following in about 40 words.
I need to do it by myself, first. In order to make the atmosphere around me green, I have to be green myself, in belief and action.
- vii. Why does the writer says "The use of public transport systems in the place of individual modes..."?
 - (a) to manage ecosystem
 - (b) to enhance air quality
 - (c) to reduce carbon footprint
 - (d) All of these

- viii. Based on your reading of the text, list any 2 preventive measures for the author's statement "Water is also a fast-depleting resource," in Paragraph 3.

Ans :

2014

- i. (d) For better sustenance
- ii. Two solutions that the writer offers are :
 1. The increasing onslaughts on the quality of air and soil need to be reversed.
 2. The indiscriminate exploitation of water needs to be stopped.
- iii. it is fast depleting resource
- iv. (c) Reduce and increasing
(e) Dusk and dawn
- v. Mother Earth looks for only love and care from her children and asks for nothing more in return for all that she offers
- vi. The entire day, our every activity leaves its footprint on the environment and ecology. Therefore, it is our responsibility to awaken our consciousness and go green in all possible areas. It is, after all, our own self-interest and that of our descendants.
- vii. (c) to reduce carbon footprint
- viii. Two preventive measures for the given statement are
 1. Use of sprinklers to preserve water.
 2. Not dumping garbage in waterbodies.

Passage 25

1. Summer vacation offers families dilemmas and opportunities. For too many kids it becomes a period of intellectual passivity and stalled personal growth. For others-and their parents-it's a time of overload and frantic scheduling.
2. "Summer is a great time for parents to build a relationship with their children," says a renowned child psychologist. And it's an opportunity both for the kids to learn and for the family to grow together. To make this a reality, educators and psychologists point to several simple strategies that parents can start planning before summer gets under way.
3. "Summer's a perfect time for kids to take skills they've learned in a classroom and use them in new ways," notes a well-known educator. Comparing prices in a grocery shop can sharpen children's mental maths skills. Taking measurements to build a new tree house or design a simple plaything teaches geometry. Car trips provide opportunities to study maps and learn geography.
4. Sometimes kids will need a small push in the right direction. Victoria encouraged her seven-year-old son, Philip, to take part in their local library's summer reading club. For every book report a child wrote, he received a raffle ticket. At the end of the summer sports prizes were raffled off. Philip, who'd painstakingly produced seven book reports won an autographed picture of a hockey star and had his name in one of his reports printed in the local newspaper. (If that's not possible, encourage children to write letters to editors on current affairs, or about school-related issues.) "Philip moaned and groaned about writing the reports, but in the end, he was happy he put the effort in," notes his mother. "And his ability to express himself really improved."
5. It's the daily practice of stimulation-intellectual, creative, esteem-building-that parents can give their children that have the greatest impact," says an eminent researcher. In an informal study conducted in 1998 other researchers surveyed successful college students about how they spent their free time from ages five to 12, then compared their activities with those of troubled youngsters. They found that the successful ones were more likely to play spontaneous games, more involved in household chores and more likely to engage in playful activities with their parents.
Sample Papers.
6. Truly successful kids, say educators, are those who've learnt to budget time to help others-

whether it's helping an invalid neighbour or preparing their own family's meals a couple of nights a week. Where parents fail, say, experts, is in the way such responsibilities are presented.

7. For most parents of school-age kids, the largest block of time they'll have with their children is in the summer. With a little advance preparation, parents can use the summer to help develop their youngsters into smarter, more creative, more caring human beings.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. Why does the writer say that 'Summer vacation offers families dilemmas and opportunities'? Pick out the odd option that should not be in the list.
 - (a) For many children summer vacation is a long break from intellectual activities.
 - (b) The personal growth of many children comes to a standstill.
 - (c) A few parents build meaningful relationships with their children.
 - (d) Many parents chalk out backbreaking schedules for their kids.
- ii. What is the objective of the writer when he says that "the kids need a small push in the right direction"? Rationalise your response in about 40 words.
- iii. Complete the sentence appropriately.
Experts are of the firm opinion that when it comes to budgeting time, it is _____ in a positive manner and not the kids.
- iv. The passage includes some words that are near synonyms of each other. From the sets (a)-(e) below, identify two such sets of synonyms.
 - (a) educators and psychologists
 - (b) moaned and groaned
 - (c) overload and frantic scheduling
 - (d) build or design
 - (e) dilemmas and opportunities
- v. Complete the sentence appropriately.
The author uses many examples to prove that summer is a perfect time for kids to take skills they have learnt in a classroom and use them in new ways by _____.
- vi. Based on the reading of the passage, examine, in about 40 words, how parents can make the greatest impact on the lives of their kids.

- vii. State which of the following is NOT true for troubled youngsters according to experts.
- They show apathy to household chores.
 - They don't play spontaneous games.
 - They spent their free time from ages five to 12 constructively.
 - They don't get involved in playful activities with their parents.

viii. What is the essence of the expert opinion regarding advanced planning of the summer vacation?

Ans :

2013

- (c) A few parents build meaningful relationships with their children.
- Sometimes the children need to be persuaded to learn a new skill. A few may even groan in protest but eventually, the improvement in their skillset and the rewards make them appreciate 'the push.'
- the parents who fail when they do not present the responsibilities.
- (b) moaned and groaned and
(c) overload and frantic scheduling
- applying the concepts in real-life scenarios.
- When parents are able to provide their children with daily practice of stimulation-intellectual, creative, esteem-building and keep them involved in a constructive manner, they can have the greatest impact.
- (c) They spent their free time from ages five to 12 constructively.
- The kids can become better and smarter if vacation is utilised well.

Passage 26

- Peer pressure is a phenomenon wherein we tend to get influenced by the lifestyle and the ways of thinking of our peers. Peer pressure can prove beneficial but it is most often observed to have negative effects.
- The thought, behaviour and taste in fashion, music, television and other walks of life of the masses are often seen to have a deep impact on society. We tend to get influenced by the lifestyle of our peer group. The changing ways of life of our peers often force us to change our ways of looking at life and leading it. It's a human tendency to do what the crowd does. Few have the courage to resist peer pressure and be their own selves rather than being one among the lot.

- Peer pressure is bound to affect most of us both positively and negatively. The distinction between positive and negative peer pressure lies in a thoughtful analysis of the views of the masses. Following your peers blindly leaves a negative impact on your life while an analytical approach to looking at peer behaviour can help you act positively.
- Peer pressure is not always bad. It can help you analyse yourself and contemplate your ways of life. Some of the practices that the masses follow may actually teach you the way of living. You may be able to change yourself for the better. Looking at what others do can help you bring about a positive change in your way of thinking. If you can pick selectively, peer pressure can actually result in a positive change in your way of life.
- Teenage is that phase of life when you are exposed to the world outside. These are the years when you spend most of your time with your friends. Teenage is the phase of beginning to become independent in life; the years of forming your ideals and principles, the years that shape your personality and the years that introduce you to your own self. As adolescents, you often spend most of your daily time with friends and, owing to this, you tend to imitate your friends. The people around you are bound to influence you. However, the effect of the influences of the masses is greater during your teen years. Parents have a vital role to play during this phase of your life.
- Parents and teachers need to be careful while dealing with teenagers as they are most susceptible to succumbing to peer pressure during these years of their life. Teenage individuals need to be taught to distinguish between the good and the bad, the right and the wrong and should be taught to be thoughtful in life.
- A strong support from family, an ability to differentiate between the positive and the negative and a skill to choose friends from among peers this three-pronged strategy is the best way to keep away from negative peer pressure.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

Select the option that corresponds to the following relation below.

Peer pressure can prove beneficial but it is most often observed to have negative effects.

- Sleep is good for memory but too much sleep can also be linked to health problems.

- (b) Beginnings and ends are easier to remember than middles.
- (c) Some people enjoy seeing anger in others.
- (d) Food tastes better when someone else makes it.
- ii. Based on your reading of the text, list 2 reasons why the writer says Peer pressure is not always bad. Answer in about 40 words.
- iii. Complete the sentence appropriately.
The changing ways of our peers' life can affect us by _____.
- iv. Complete the sentence appropriately.
Adolescents tend to imitate and share views with their friends because _____.
- v. The passage includes some words that are opposites of each other. From the sets (a) - (e) given below, identify two sets of antonyms.
- looking and leading
 - walks and masses
 - positively and negatively
 - distinction and change
 - right and wrong
- vi. In about 40 words, supply one point to justify the following.
Parents and teachers need to be careful while dealing with teenagers as they are most susceptible to succumbing to peer pressure during these years of their life.
- vii. Which of the following is an appropriate reason for the effect of peer pressure in teenage years?
- Teenagers spend more time with their parents and old people.
 - Teen years are always unmanageable.
 - Teenagers spend more time with their peers and friends.
 - It is impossible to convince teenagers.
- viii. The writer mentions 'The people around you are bound to influence you'. (Paragraph 5)
Mention one reason from the passage that supports the above statement.
Ans : 2012
- (a) Sleep is good for memory but too much sleep can also be linked to health problems.
 - The writer says that peer pressure is not always bad because
 - It can help us in self analysis and contemplation.
 - Observing and practising good practices of others can help enhance our thinking and way of living.
 - forcing us to change the ways in which we lead our lives
 - they spend most of their time with their friends
 - (c) positively and negatively
(e) right and wrong
 - As adolescents often spend most of their daily time with friends, they tend to imitate and copy them blindly. Parents and teachers, being experienced, can prevent teenagers and adolescents from following wrong and dangerous trends and attitudes. Thus, they need to be careful while dealing with teenagers.
 - (c) Teenagers spend more time with their peers and friends.
 - The writers states that the people around us have a deep influence on us because 'according to him' it is a human tendency to follow our peers. Thus, we cannot resist the taste of our peers and are influenced by them.

Passage 27

- Despite plenty of naysayers, the textbook is dead. It just doesn't know it yet and continues on walking about as though alive. I even have one, A textbook of Physics, on my bookshelf beside me that was printed in 1891. It has some line drawings and no colour. Today, textbooks have lots of colourful images and engaging questions sprinkled about them. They also have tons of advice for teachers on how to use them effectively.
- The word "textbook" originated in the 1720s, almost 300 years ago. It's had a good run and is ready to retire. Those who argue that you cannot learn well without a textbook ignore the centuries prior to 1720 when lots of people learned and learned well with no textbooks anywhere. You can learn without textbooks. That's certain. But why should we bother to change something that worked for 30 years? Many deliver the verdict in a single word: technology. That's way too simplistic.
- We've seen film loops, overhead projectors, motion picture projectors, machine scoring of tests and a myriad of other technological innovations in classrooms, but the textbook remains. No, technology alone will not end the reign of the

textbook. It takes something more and that became available in the 1940s-the programmable electronic computer. But here we are 70 years later, with plenty of textbooks visible. The computer was not sufficient by itself.

4. The next big change began with ARPANET in the 1960s. This foundation led to the internet and its growth has been phenomenal. But a widespread communication medium alone is not sufficient to dislocate textbooks either. Inexpensive computers, easy-to-use-interfaces (GUIs) and ready access to the internet all contribute.
5. "Fine," say many. "But the textbook publishers are putting their book online. They are creating e-textbooks. So, textbooks live!"
6. This argument misses the essential difference between education technology in the earlier times and education technology in the present, other than mere cost. Computer software can be interactive. Previous education technology was, like textbooks, rather passive. Active learning is far superior to passive learning, so much so that it's not a step, not a leap but a rocket propelled launch past old-fashioned learning.
7. It's the mental engagement with something that determines whether you learn and how well. The real big exchange will come when students can jump into online situations that are more like real life, and are able to use a variety of devices to reach the web and become part of the learning community. They will be guided by a combination of human mentors and machines.
8. Furthermore, diagnostic analysis of their work will tell mentors when students are ready for certain learning and, more importantly, when they are not. Textbooks do not tap into our brains to realise this learning potential. Hence, today, the textbook is a zombie. It's just waiting for that wooden stake or silver bullet to put it to well-deserved rest.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. The writer says that one can learn without textbooks. Which is the least effective argument put forward by him?
 - (a) Students are no more interested in passive learning.
 - (b) Textbooks have outlived their purpose.
 - (c) Students are interested only in active learning.
 - (d) People learned prior to 1720 when textbooks were first introduced.

- ii. What is the best way according to the writer to strike a balance between passive learning and active mental engagement? Refer paragraphs 6 and 7. Rationalise your response in about 40 words.

- iii. Complete the sentence appropriately.
The author's use of the term 'diagnostic analysis' refers to _____.

- iv. The passage includes some words that are opposites to each other. From the sets (a)-(e) below, identify two sets of antonyms.

- (a) wooden stake or silver bullet
- (b) learned and learned well
- (c) human mentors and machines
- (d) active and passive learning
- (e) dead and alive

- v. Complete the sentence appropriately.
The main premise or the central idea of this essay according to Harry Keller is _____.

- vi. Based on the reading of the passage, examine, in about 40 words, how textbooks travelled from 18th century to the Age of Computers and what changes occurred on the way.

- vii. Select the option that can weaken the author's case for a complete shift to computer learning in paragraph 4.

- (a) The development of e-textbooks with activities that require active participation from readers.
- (b) A rising dependency on using technology as a medium of learning.
- (c) Scholarly articles comparing the effectiveness of online learning with that of textbooks.
- (d) Sharp increase in the creation of e-textbooks.

- iii. What explains the long life of the ordinary textbook?

Ans :

2010

- i. (a) Students are no more interested in passive learning.
- ii. The balance between active and passive learning will be achieved when students can jump into online situations that are more like real life to become part of the learning community. They will be guided by a combination of human mentors and machines who will teach them when they are willing to learn.

- iii. an evaluation of the learner's capabilities
- iv. (d) active and passive learning
(e) dead and alive
- v. to provide a boost to the field of education technology.
- vi. The process of learning took place without the use of textbooks. The introduction and circulation of textbook turned them onto a commonly used medium of learning. The invention of computers and digital books reduced the dependency on physical books. The creation of adaptive and interactive learning tools contributed to the way learning took place.
- vii. (a) The development of e-textbooks with activities that require active participation from readers.
- viii. It was widely believed that the computer and the Internet will be the death of textbooks but e-textbooks loaded with interactive activities came up in response.

Passage 28

1. Parents are changing the plots of classic fairy tales when reading them aloud because of violence and political in-correctness. Traditional fables such as 'Little Red Riding Hood', 'The Ginger Bread Man' and 'The Three Little Pigs' were deemed the worst offenders, with parents linking some of their endings to horror films.
2. The poll which was commissioned by Music Magpie included 2000 parents and revealed that one in four took creative liberties when sharing fairytales with their children to suit their beliefs and ideologies. Meanwhile, another 16% confessed to banning them altogether.
3. While these classic tales might seem playful and innocent on the surface, a closer look at the plot, lines and characters reveals some problematic traits. For example, in 'Little Red Riding Hood', 'The child is eaten alive by a wolf, only to be saved by a hunter who cuts her out of the animal's stomach with an axe'. 'The Three Little Pigs' also reaches a rather gory conclusion with the pigs murdering a wolf and eating it. Lest we forget 'The Ginger Bread Man', whose protagonist is also eaten by a fox. It is an ending that's hard for parents to swallow, with one of them labelling it as 'too cruel' in the survey.
4. However, a deeper analysis of some of the nation's most popular tales unveiled even further issues with regard to political correctness. One in four parents found it inappropriate that 'Cinderella has to do all of the cleanings in her home while another 25% argued that 'sleeping beauty' poses a consent issue, given that prince charming kisses the princess while she is asleep. Meanwhile, 27% believe that 'Pinocchio' encourages children to tell lies while one in four claims that 'The Ugly Duckling' in which an abused duckling is only accepted by society after he has grown into a swan, advocates body shaming.
5. Some of these stories have been around for generations. 'But times have changed and there are elements to these classics which for some don't really fit into society as they once did. We all agree that stories play a vital role in the growth and development of children. The books they read and the characters they get to know can become like friends. Reading stories also helps children with their confidence levels, coping with emotions, and language learning.
6. So stories are a great way to learn in a natural way as there is no teaching involved in it. The learners learn from simply reading the story. The choice of stories must be judicious.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. Select the option that depicts what the writer projects, with reference to the following.
The choice of stories must be judicious (Paragraph 6)
(a) sadness (b) caution
(c) doubt (d) denial
- ii. Supply one point to justify the following in about 40 words.
The choice of stories must be judicious.
- iii. Complete the sentence appropriately.
According to the writer, in paragraph 4 he says '.... 'The Ugly Duckling' in which an abused duckling is only accepted by society after he has grown into a swan..' The vice that this story promotes is _____.
- iv. The passage includes some words that are opposites of each other. From the sets (a)-(e) below, identify two sets of synonyms:
(a) Innocent and worst
(b) Reveal and unveiled
(c) Commission and ban
(d) Encourages and advocates
(e) Emotions and traits

- v. Complete the following with a phrase from Paragraph 5.

Because of the change in ideologies, some

- vi. The writer mentions '...a closer look at the plot, lines, and characters reveals some problematic traits.' Mention any two examples to support the statement in about 40 words.

- vii Which issues have been highlighted to be problematic in the Classic fairytales?

- (a) Violence (b) Consent
(c) Body shaming (d) All of these

- viii What kind of liberties are modern-day parents taking?

Ans :

2009

- i. (b) caution
- ii. Stories play a vital role in the growth and development of children. The books the children read and the characters they get to know can become friends and help in shaping their character. Reading stories also helps children with their confidence levels, coping with emotions and language learning. Hence, the choice of stories must be judicious.
- iii. body shaming
- iv. (b) Reveal and unveiled
(d) Encourages and advocates
- v. elements of classics do not fit the present day beliefs.
- vi. Two examples to support the statement are
 1. The story of Cinderella was found to be problematic by some parents as she did most of the household work with no help from others.
 2. The classic Tale of Sleeping Beauty represents the consent issue where she was kissed without her knowing, let alone consent.
- vii. (d) All of these
- viii. Modern-day parents no longer stick to the morals taught at the end of the classic stories. They are taking the liberty to change the story to suit their ideology.

Passage 29

1. Detachment is not physically renouncing our possessions, profession, home and family as many of us think. It is the ability to let go of all the desires, habits, emotions, thoughts, speech and

behaviour patterns that are negative or detrimental to our well-being in any way. Detachment and discrimination are interdependent; they mutually strengthen each other and empower us. The more we are able to discriminate, the more we are able to segregate our harmful desires and discard them. The more mental trash we discard this way, the more we empower our faculty of discrimination.

2. There is a simple technique we can all practise to strengthen our discrimination and detachment and get rid of unnecessary desires. This will generate the awareness we need to control our senses and mind and make them stop churning out desires every moment. To practise this technique, we should select a quiet place when we have some leisure time.
3. Sit down with a few sheets of paper and pen or a computer and make two lists. In the first list, understand and write down your most important goal or agenda in this life. Then meticulously add all the other goals that you would like to achieve. While you make this list, you shouldn't think only about yourself. Include what you would like to contribute to the welfare of your dependants, children and their forthcoming generations.
4. Once you complete this, set it aside and begin the second list. List all your desires here. They may be big or small, important or insignificant, right or wrong, demonic or divine. Just remove the lid on the Pandora's Box and allow them all to spill out freely. Don't try to censor or edit the list of desires at this stage. Complete the list first. After you have made an exhaustive list, go over it to see which of these desires are truly necessary, conducive to your meditation, helpful and favourable to you and beneficial to others.
5. If you have been serious and honest in doing this exercise, you will have long lists of goals and desires and many of them may be selfish or detrimental to your goal of meditation, visualisation, self-realisation, peace, happiness and bliss. This exercise will help you develop frankness and honesty with yourself. You will touch your true feelings and bring many of your hidden ambitions and desires into the open.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

Why does the writer say that detachment is empowering?

- (a) It makes us let go of our desires.
(b) It helps us physically renounce our possessions.

- (c) It helps us get detached from family and relations.
- (d) It strengthens our sense of discrimination.
- ii. What are the popular misconceptions about detachment that are dispelled by the author? Rationalise your response in about 40 words.
- iii. Complete the sentence appropriately choosing appropriate words from the passage to complete the author's advice.
The author encourages the readers to 'remove the lid on the Pandora's Box and allow your desires and wishes to spill out freely' -----.
- iv. The passage includes some word-pairs that are similar to each other. From the sets (a)-(e) below, identify the word-pair that is the odd one out.
- (a) frankness and honesty
(b) goal and agenda
(c) censor and edit
(d) detachment and discrimination
(e) detachment and renunciation
- v. The writer correlates detachment and discrimination and says that we should make serious efforts to strengthen them (Paragraph 2). State the most important outcome of this process.
- vi. Based on your reading of the text, list two reasons why the writer implies that the human mind is full of trash. Answer in about 40 words.
- vii. Evaluate the outcomes given below after completing both the lists of our desires and goals in life. Which of these is not advised by the author and therefore, should not be on the list?
- (a) They contain goals that are truly necessary.
(b) They may be censored or edited.
(c) They are beneficial to our family and their future generations.
(d) They are conducive to mental well-being.

- viii. Supply one point to justify the following.
Awareness puts a lid on our mind which keeps churning out desires every moment which can be confusing.

Ans :

2007

- i. (d) It strengthens our sense of discrimination.
- ii. Contrary to the popular belief detachment according to the author is the ability to let go of all the desires, habits, emotions, thoughts, speech and behaviour patterns that are negative or detrimental to our well-being in any way.

- iii. without censoring or editing them.
- iv. (d) detachment and discrimination
- v. This will generate the awareness we need, to control our senses and mind
- vi. Our mind is like the Pandora's box which houses harmful desires, thoughts, and speech and behaviour patterns that we use indiscriminately. This mars our self-awareness and we are not able to segregate harmful desires and discard them this turns the mind into a trash can.
- vii. (b) They may be censored or edited
- viii. Enlisting our personal and family goals helps us to eventually segregate desires that are truly necessary.

Passage 30

- Sport has rapidly become an established part of the entertainment industry and the smallest details of sportsmen's private lives are exposed by the media to public scrutiny. Top professionals are often described as 'stars' and large business interests exploit their skills. Considerable profits are made out of selling sports gear which is a replica of the gear used by the professionals, newspapers sell more copies if their sports coverage is good and substantial gains can be made out of the spectators' willingness to gamble on results.
- The increasing demand for new talented sportsmen serves to strengthen the popular image of professional sports as a highly glamorous occupation. Even those who reach the heights maintain their supremacy for only a relatively short period and then desperately need help to establish themselves in a new career.

It is always attractive to do something interesting and to do it as well as possible, but serious injury or an unaccountable loss of form quickly halts the progress of many young sportsmen. Outdoor life can be delightful except when the prevalent weather conditions are rain, wind, snow, fog or ice. It's flattering to hear one's name chanted with acclaim by thousands on the terraces but crowds are fickle and soon forget, once time takes its toll on muscle and mind.

- Sportsmen at the height of their professional life travel all around the world - a cricket team may spend its winter in Australian summers and the Wimbledon Women Champions may spend the year bathed in sunshine, but their own social lives are disrupted and leisure hours have to be sacrificed to hard, exhausting practice. All

professional sportsmen must adhere to strict training schedules to maintain their physical fitness; their lives are devoted to keeping the body in peak condition by exhausting exercise combined with a strict regimen of self-discipline and moderation in food and drink.

5. Retirement comes at an early age and the financial rewards gained will probably not provide enough to live on for the rest of life and the early-retired sportsman has to seek a new career. He/she enters the new career fifteen years later than his/her contemporaries and often with not enough reputation in his/her sport to persuade an employer to pay him/her a high salary. Perhaps, after all, it is better to remain a keen amateur.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. Complete the sentence appropriately.
Professional sport is considered as a highly _____ occupation.
(a) Glamorous (b) Temporary
(c) Boring (d) Risky
- ii. How is life after retirement for the sportsmen?
Answer in about 40 words.
- iii. Complete the sentence appropriately.
The smallest details of sportsmen's private lives are given out by _____ .
- iv. The passage includes some words that are synonyms of each other.
From the sets (a)-(e) below, identify one set of synonyms :
(a) Private and public
(b) Rapidly and quickly
(c) Relatively and desperately
(d) Enough and often
(e) Fickle and exploit
- v. Complete the sentence appropriately.
Sportsmen have to sacrifice their leisure life to _____
- vi. Supply the things that halts the progress of young sportsperson and state the challenges faced by them. Answer in about 40 words.
- vii. Which of the following will be the most appropriate title for the passage?
(a) Fame, Power and Career-Sports
(b) Being a Sportsman Forever

- (c) A Celebrity Sportsperson
- (d) Being Forever Young

- viii. State whether the given statement is TRUE or FALSE in the context of the passage.

Sportsmen have to keep their bodies in good condition.

Ans :

2005

- i. (a) Glamorous
- ii. Retirement comes at an early age and the financial rewards gained will probably not provide enough to live on for the rest of life and the early-retired sportsman has to seek a new career. He/she enters the new career fifteen years later than his/her contemporaries and often with not enough reputation in his/her sport to persuade an employer to pay him/her a high salary.
- iii. the media
- iv. (b) Rapidly and quickly
- v. hard, exhausting practice
- vi. Serious injury or an unaccountable loss of form quickly halts the progress of many young sportsmen. Outdoor life can be delightful except when the prevalent weather conditions are rain, wind, snow, fog or ice. It's flattering to hear one's name chanted with acclaim by thousands on the terraces but crowds are fickle and soon forget, once time takes its toll on muscle and mind.
- vii. (a) Fame, Power and Career- Sports
- viii. TRUE



CHAPTER 2

CASE BASED FACTUAL PASSAGE

NOBIA

1. INTRODUCTION

A factual passage deals with facts usually shared in the form of reports, scientific articles and historical descriptions. The contents of such a passage are a collection of facts put together in a sequential manner. Factual description involves creating a complete mental picture of a particular person, place, object, beings or events. A factual description allows the reader to get a comprehensive view of the subject under discussion. It involves a step by step description of the subject in the best possible manner. In this way, the reader is able to compare or contrast facts, data or other information that is relevant. In other words, a factual passage is a detailed description of the physical attributes of the given topic.

2. POINTS TO REMEMBER

One should keep the following points in mind before answering the questions set on a given factual passage:

1. Read the passage quickly to have some general idea of the subject matter.
2. Read the passage again and underline the important points.
3. Read the questions and try to know what has been asked.
4. Underline the portions where the probable answers may be available.
5. Remember that the word limit must always be honoured and taken seriously.

3. SOME IMPORTANT EXAMPLES

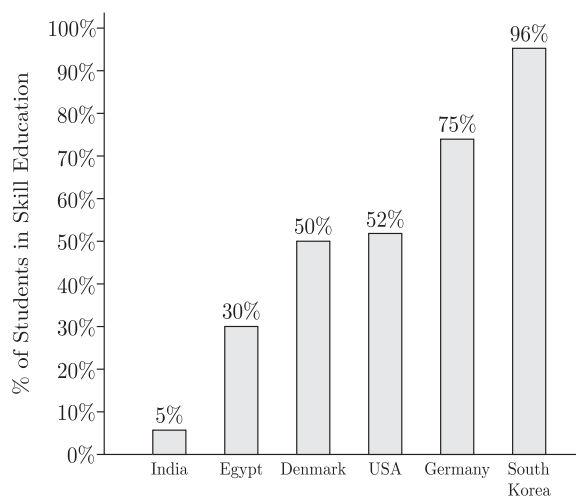
Passage 1

1. The National Education Policy 2020 proposes the revision and revamping of all aspects of education, including the educational structure, regulations and governance, to create a new system which is aligned with the aspirational goals of 21st century students. According to the policy, by 2025, at least 50% of learners through the school and

higher education system shall have exposure to skill education, for which a clear action plan with targets and timelines are to be developed.

2. The policy aims to overcome the social status hierarchy associated with skill education and integration of skill education into mainstream education in all educational institutions in a phased manner. Beginning with skill exposure at early ages in middle and secondary school, quality skill education will be integrated smoothly into school and higher education.
3. Every child will learn at least one skill and is exposed to several more. This would lead to emphasizing the dignity of labour and importance of various vocations involving Indian arts and artisanship.
4. The development of skill capacities will go hand-in-hand with the development of 'academic' or other capacities. To achieve this objective, secondary schools will have to collaborate with Industrial Training Institutes (ITIs), Polytechnics, Local Industry, etc. Skill labs will also be set up and created in the schools in a Hub and Spoke model, which will allow other schools to use the facility. Higher education institutions will offer skill education either on their own or in partnership with industry and other institutions.

The Global Scenario of Students in Skill Education Sector.



Answer the following questions, based on the above passage :

i. Based on the reading of the extract, list 2 objectives of NEP 2020.

ii. Fill in the blank with appropriate option from those given in the brackets, based on the understanding of paragraph (4).

The statement :

“The development of skill capacities will go hand-in-hand with the development of academic or other capacities” is a/an _____ (fact/opinion) because it is a/an _____ (subjective judgement/objective detail)

iii. Select the option that corresponds to the meaning of the statement given below :

“According to the policy, by 2025, at least 50% of learners through the school and higher education system shall have exposure to skill education.”

- (a) Maximum 50% learners shall have exposure to technical education.
- (b) Minimum 50% learners shall have exposure to technical education.
- (c) Minimum 50% learners shall have exposure to skill education.
- (d) Maximum 50% learners shall have exposure to skill education.

iv. Based on the understanding of the passage, complete the following statement appropriately :
The benefit of the hub and spoke model will be _____.

v. Complete the following analogy correctly with a word/phrase from paragraph (3) :
Racism : condemn :: _____ : respect

vi. As per the Global Scenario which country has the maximum percentage of students in Skill Education and what can be the possible reason?

vii. Fill in the following blank choosing the most appropriate option from the ones given below :
As per NEP 2020, skill exposure will begin at _____.

- (a) middle and secondary school
- (b) primary school
- (c) higher school
- (d) senior secondary school

viii. Justify the statement — ‘The NEP will create an awareness and appreciation of Indian arts and artisanship.’

Ans :

2024

- i. 1. Overcome social status hierarchy associated with vocational education.
2. revision and revamping of all aspects of education
- ii. The statement: “The development of skill capacities will go hand-in-hand with the development of academic or other capacities” is a/an (fact) because it is a/an (objective detail).
- iii. (c) Minimum 50% learners shall have exposure to skill education.
- iv. It will allow other schools to use the facility of skill labs
- v. Skill education
- vi. The country with the maximum percentage of students in Skill Education varies based on the available data and may change over time. However, countries like Germany, Switzerland, and South Korea are often cited as having strong vocational education and training systems. The possible reasons for their high percentage of students in skill education include strong government support, collaboration with industries, and a cultural emphasis on vocational training.
- vii. (a) middle and secondary school
- viii. The NEP aims to ensure that every child learns at least one skill and is exposed to several more, including Indian arts and artisanship. By integrating skill education into mainstream education and emphasizing the dignity of labor, the NEP will promote awareness and appreciation of Indian arts and artisanship among students, thus preserving and promoting traditional Indian crafts and skills.

Passage 2

1. Mango (*Mangifera indica*) is Asia’s most popular fruit, and it has gained popularity around the world. It has long been a component of culture and religion as a useful and tasty fruit. In addition to taste, it has many good qualities thus making it to be called as “King of Fruits”. Major mango-growing states in India include Andhra Pradesh, Uttar Pradesh, Karnataka, Bihar, Gujarat and Tamil Nadu. Andhra Pradesh and Uttar Pradesh are the leading states in mango production.
2. Mango is grown in an area of 5.58 million hectares of area in the world. India is the largest producer of mangoes with 46.02 and 45.88 percent of the total world area and production, respectively.

However, India being the major shareholder in terms of mango production, exports only 0.52% of its total production indicating the huge gap in exporting of mangoes. Peru exports about 46%, Thailand 24%, Mexico 18% and Brazil 11% of their total mango production. These countries are the bigger challenges for Indian mango exports. Hence, efforts are needed to evolve cheap transportation mechanism, increase the trade agreements with major importing countries and enhance the productivity.

3. The top importing country is United States of America, however, India exports only two percent of its total exports to the USA. The USA, European countries, the UK, Malaysia and Russia can be the other hotspots where India can target to export the mangoes. The critical issue for exporting to the USA is transportation cost (due to sea route distance) and limited shelf life of mango, while for Europe transportation costs as well as competition by African countries are the major hurdles.

The following chart shows the major export destinations of Indian mangoes in 2019-20 :

Major Export Destination of Indian Mangoes in 2019-20

S. No.	Country	Percentage
1.	U.S.A.	2
2.	Kuwait	2
3.	Saudi Arabia	3
4.	Qatar	6
5.	Bangladesh	6
6.	Oman	7
7.	U.K.	9
8.	Nepal	24
9.	United Arab Emirates	33
10.	Bahrain	2
11.	Others	6

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage :

- i. Complete the following analogy appropriately, based on your understanding of Para (1) :
We can say that for becoming the king of jungle, Lion has to be the strongest, bravest and the fiercest. Similarly, Mango is known as the king of fruits because _____.

- ii. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate option from those given in brackets, based on your understanding of Para (2) :

The statement that, India is the largest producer of Mangoes with 45.88 percent of the total world production can be attributed to Indian orchardists, is a/an _____ (fact/opinion) because it is an _____ (subjective judgement/objective detail)

- iii. Justify the following in about 40 words :
India being the major shareholder in terms of mango production, exports only 0.52% of its total production.

- iv. Based on the table, which three countries were at par with each other in terms of mango import from India in 2019-20 ?

- v. The top mango importing country is the U.S.A., however, India exports only two percent of its total exports to the U.S.A. State any one inference that can be drawn from this.

- vi. In the given sentence taken from para-2, select the option that correctly replaces the underlined word, with its most likely antonym.

These countries are the bigger challenges for Indian mango exports.

- (a) enigmas (b) solutions
(c) provocations (d) disputes

- vii. Why is India described as the largest producer of mangoes in the world ? Answer in about 40 words.

- viii. Which of the following is the main takeaway from the study mentioned in the passage ?

- (a) India needs to produce more mangoes so that more can be exported.
(b) The UAE imported most mangoes from India in 2019-20.
(c) India is the largest producer of mangoes and by putting in more efforts, has the potential to be the largest exporter too.
(d) More study is needed to find ways to increase the export of mangoes from India.

Ans :

2024

- i. of its exceptional taste, cultural significance, and numerous positive qualities. Just as a lion must possess strength, bravery, and fierceness to become the king of the jungle, mango's reputation as the king of fruits is attributed to its delicious flavor, versatility, and widespread popularity across Asia and the world.

- ii. The statement that India is the largest producer of mangoes with 45.88 percent of the total world production can be attributed to Indian orchardists, is a fact because it is an objective detail.
- iii. India's low export percentage (0.52%) despite its significant share in mango production reflects domestic consumption prioritization or logistical challenges. This indicates a focus on satisfying local demand rather than maximizing international trade, potentially due to factors like perishability or market constraints.
- iv. Based on the table, the three countries at par with each other in terms of mango import from India in 2019-20 are the UK, Kuwait, and Qatar.
- v. One inference that can be drawn from this is that there may be significant barriers or challenges hindering India's mango exports to the USA, such as high transportation costs or stringent import regulations.
- vi. (b) solutions
- vii. India is described as the largest producer of mangoes in the world due to its extensive cultivation area, comprising 46.02% of the global mango-growing area. Additionally, India's favorable climate, diverse varieties, and agricultural expertise contribute to its dominance in mango production.
- viii. (c) India is the largest producer of mangoes and by putting in more efforts, has the potential to be the largest exporter too.

Passage 3

“Scouts and Guides Around the World.”

1. Many young people aged between 6 and 25 belong to the Scout movement. It is a worldwide organization, which was set up to help young people achieve their full potential as they grow up.
2. The organization was established in 1907 by a British general called Robert Baden-Powell. While in the army, he wrote a publication about scouting (which means searching and keeping watch) and how to survive in the wild, called ‘Aids to Scouting’. He realized how popular this was, and the result was another book, ‘Scouting for Boys’, which had less emphasis on the military. To test his ideas, he held a week-long camp for 21 boys from various schools in London, Poole and Bournemouth. This took place in August 1907, on Brownsea Island, in Southern England. These boys had the chance to enjoy outdoors, which became another of the movement's objectives.
3. The Scout Movement quickly got established in Europe. It then spread throughout the world, starting in Chile in 1909. To begin with, the focus was on boys aged 11 to 18. However, as the movement grew, it was clear that younger boys, older boys and girls all wanted to be involved. Baden-Powell's sister set up the Girl Guides in 1910, and in 1914 she started Rosebuds, later renamed Brownies, for younger girls. The movement's intention to help young people play useful roles in society applies equally to girls and boys. By 2010, there were 32 million scouts, and by 2006, there were 10 million guides around the world, from a total of 216 different countries.
4. 2007 marked 100 years of the Scout Movement, and events took place around the world to celebrate this centenary. To mark the occasion, a colourful badge was produced for scouts to sew onto their uniforms or bags. The design included the official scout emblem, as well as the phrase, ‘one world one promise’, and images of doves and the globe.
5. 2007 was also the 150th anniversary of Baden-Powell's birth. To honour both occasions, a flame was lit at Baden-Powell's grave in Nyeri. This is the place in Kenya where he spent the last few years of his life. The flame was then carried through several countries until it reached the UK.

Country	Membership	Population participation	Scouting introduced	Guiding introduced
India	41500000	0.3%	1909	1911
Indonesia	17100000	7.2%	1912	1912
Philippines	21500000	2.2%	1910	1918
Thailand	1300000	1.9%	1911	1957
United States	7500000	2.4%	1910	1912

Answer the following questions based on your reading of the above passage :

- i. Infer one reason for the following, based on the information given in paragraph 4 :
‘Colourful badge was sewn on to the uniform and bags of the Scouts’.
- ii. From paragraph 1, we can infer that Scout Movement was set up ____.
- iii. Complete the following analogy correctly with a word/phrase from paragraph 4.
10 years : decade :: 100 years : _____

- iv. After reading the passage, bring a contrast between the books 'Aids to Scouting' and 'Scouting for Boys'.
- v. What does the writer mean by the following phrase ? 'One world one promise.'
- vi. According to the chart, which country took maximum time to introduce 'Guiding' after 'Scouting' ? Choose your answer from the options given below :
- (a) India (b) Indonesia
(c) Thailand (d) Philippines
- vii. List two reasons why a flame was lit at Baden-Powell's grave in 2007.
- (a) _____
(b) _____
- viii. Fill in the blank by selecting the correct option :
The establishment of Scout movement from 1907 to 2006 showed _____ results.
- (a) uniform (b) encouraging
(c) inconsistent (d) disappointing

Ans :

2024

- i. One reason for this could be to commemorate and celebrate the 100th anniversary of the Scout Movement. The colourful badge was a symbolic way to mark this significant milestone.
- ii. people aged between 6 and 25 achieve their full potential as they grow up.
- iii. centenary
- iv. 'Aids to Scouting', written by Robert Baden-Powell during his time in the army, focused on scouting in the context of war, specifically on searching and keeping watch, as well as survival in the wild. In contrast, 'Scouting for Boys' had less emphasis on the military aspect. Instead, it was geared more towards the broader idea of scouting, encapsulating outdoor activities, and it became the foundation for the Scout movement.
- v. The phrase 'one world one promise' signifies unity and shared commitment among the worldwide Scout community. Regardless of their different cultures, countries, or backgrounds, all Scouts share the same promise, which is to do their best, to do their duty to God and the country, help other people, and the obey the Scout Law.
- vi. (c) Thailand
- vii. (a) 2007-marked 100 years of the Scouting Movement
- (b) it was also the 150th anniversary of Baden-Powell's birth
- viii. (b) encouraging

Passage 4

- Rotation of crops is a universal phenomenon which is practised by most of the farmers of the tropical and temperate countries. The main objective of rotation of crops is to obtain higher agricultural returns on the one hand, and to maintain the soil fertility on the other.
- In other words, the rotation of crops helps in making agriculture more sustainable. The importance of crop rotation is more in the areas where farmers grow two, or more than two crops in the same field in a year. Irrigation facilities have also been appreciably developed in the country during the last three decades. The availability of water to the arable land has helped in the intensification of agriculture.
- In the areas such as Punjab and Haryana, where the Green Revolution is a big success, one soil exhaustive crop (rice) is followed by another soil exhaustive crop (wheat). Subsequently, the field vacated by wheat is devoted to either rice or maize or cotton. Thus, in one year, the farmers are harvesting three soil exhaustive crops from the same field. Such a rotation of crops may fetch more income to the farmers, but depletes the soil fertility at a faster pace.
- A number of field studies were conducted to assess the traditional crop rotation pattern. One such field study about the changes in the rotation of crops was conducted in the village Banhera (Tanda), Haridwar district. The main rotation of crops of the village is shown in the table below.

Traditional Rotation of Crops (1960-65) in Banhera (Tanda)				
Year	Kharif (mid-June to mid-October)	Rabi (mid-October to mid-April)	Zaid (April to June)	No. of days land left fallow
1960	Millet/ fodder/rice	Gram	Fallow	90
1961	Fallow	Wheat	Fallow	210
1962	Millet/ fodder/rice	Gram	Fallow	90
1963	Fallow	Wheat	Fallow	210
1964	Millet mixed with urad/ fodder/rice	Gram	Fallow	90
1965	Fallow	Wheat	Fallow	210

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage :

- i. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate option from those given in brackets, based on your understanding of para 2.

One of the reasons that there has been an intensification of agriculture in the country is the development of irrigation facilities is a/an _____ (fact/opinion) because it is a/an _____ (subjective judgement/objective detail).

- ii. Based on your understanding of paras 1 and 2, state whether the following statement is true or false.

If proper irrigation facility is provided, higher agricultural returns can be obtained by making crop rotation more sustainable.

- iii. Justify the following in about 40 words.

Crop rotation may fetch more income to the farmers, but depletes the soil fertility at a faster pace.

- iv. Based on the table, mention the years when the land was left fallow for maximum number of days.

- v. The study conducted in village Banhera (Tanda) reflects that during the years 1960 to 1965, from April to June, the land was left fallow or uncultivated throughout. State any one inference that can be drawn from this.

- vi. Select the option that correctly states the significance of crop rotation as given below :

1. Crop rotation is done to obtain higher agricultural returns.
2. Higher agricultural returns can be obtained by harvesting soil exhaustive crops.
3. Crop rotation demands that land should be left fallow for a few months to increase the fertility of soil.
4. Better irrigation facility to the arable land has helped in the intensification of agriculture.
5. If crops to be harvested are chosen wisely, crop rotation can help in maintaining fertility of soil.

Options :

- (a) (1), (2) and (4)
- (b) (1) only
- (c) (3) and (5)
- (d) (1) and (5)

- vii. Crop rotation is helping in making agriculture more sustainable. Mention one benefit and one drawback of crop rotation. (Answer in about 40 words)

- viii. Which of the following is the main takeaway from the study mentioned in the passage ?

- (a) The study needs to include more valid data to support the practice of crop rotation.
- (b) Crop rotation is a sustainable practice that can transform the agricultural sector.
- (c) The impact of crop rotation on farmer's upliftment has been thoroughly explained.
- (d) Crop rotation is independent of the type of crops harvested and availability of water for irrigation.

Ans :

2024

- i. fact, objective detail

- ii. True

- iii. This statement is inaccurate. Crop rotation is a practice designed to enhance soil fertility, not deplete it. By alternating the types of crops grown on a piece of land, different nutrients are used and replenished naturally, reducing the need for chemical fertilizers and preventing the rapid depletion of soil nutrients. It helps maintain a healthy balance in the soil, leading to sustainable agriculture and potentially more income for farmers due to healthier crop yields.

- iv. 1961, 1963, 1965

- v. One inference that can be drawn from the fact that the land in Banhera (Tanda) was left fallow from April to June during the years 1960 to 1965 is that this period, which corresponds to the Zaid cropping season, may not be suitable for cultivation due to reasons such as extreme temperatures, insufficient rainfall, or perhaps cultural practices allowing the land to recover. Leaving the land fallow during these months could help in restoring soil fertility and moisture, preparing it for the upcoming Kharif and Rabi cropping seasons.

- vi. (d) (1) and (5)

- vii. One benefit of crop rotation is that it can enhance soil health by varying plant demands on soil nutrients, thus reducing the need for chemical fertilizers. A drawback is that it requires careful planning and knowledge of crop-specific requirements, which can be complex and labor-intensive.

- viii. (b) Crop rotation is a sustainable practice that can transform the agricultural sector.

Passage 5

- After more than two years of halted travel, India's tourism and hospitality industry is now cautiously hopeful. Tourism constituted almost 3% of India's GDP and generated around 100 million jobs in 2019. But the sector was severely hit in India — like in other countries — in the past two years.
- Indians are now travelling with a vengeance — 'revenge travel', as the phenomenon is called. And many, experts say, now prefer to travel within the country instead of flying to more expensive destinations abroad. The industry is also benefiting from new trends borne of the pandemic such as micro-holidays and workcations.
- According to a survey, 51 percent of Indian travellers believed that international travel remained an important means of expanding their horizons and connecting with other cultures. Over two years, the survey said, Indian travellers are now dreaming about their next international trip and more than 70 percent of Indians are excited about being able to travel internationally.
- There has also been an increase in the number of students going abroad to study. The increasing desire to study overseas is credited to the pent-up demand from the pandemic's two-year duration. This has got further pronounced because of growing aspirations and affordability among the middle-class students from Tier II and Tier III cities.

The table below shows foreign travel by Indians for different purposes from 2019 to 2022.

Purpose	2019	2020	2021	2022
Business	14.7 L	2.6 L	1.2 L	4.6 L
Job	25.2 L	71 L	8.3 L	24 L
Residency	89.5 L	28.9 L	34.6 L	72.5 L
Education	5.8 L	2.6 L	4.4 L	6.5 L
Tourists	63.8 L	13.1 L	12.8 L	30.8 L
Visit	42.1 L	10.1 L	15.1 L	40.9 L
Medical	1,448	390	545	1,253
Pilgrimage	8.8 L	Fl L	4,139	4.6 L
Others	2.6 L	54,775	58,767	1.6 L
Total	2.5 Crore	66.2 L	77.2 L	1.8 Crore

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage :

- Complete the following analogy appropriately, based on your understanding of paragraphs 1 and 2.

We can say that the situation when people were travelling with a vengeance is comparable to people going out to dine in hordes, because _____.

- Fill in the blanks with the appropriate option from those given in brackets, based on your understanding of paragraph 1.
The statement that, 'Tourism constituted almost 3% of India's GDP and generated around 100 million jobs in 2019', is a/an _____ (fact/opinion) because it is a/an _____ (subjective judgement/objective detail).
- Justify the following in about 40 words.
After being cooped up inside their houses for more than two years, Indians are now excited about being able to travel internationally.
- Based on the given table, for which 'purpose' did Indian foreign travel increase in 2022 as compared to 2019 ?
- 'The industry is also benefiting from new trends borne of the pandemic such as micro-holidays and workcations.' Which 'industry' is being talked about here ?
- As per the given table, for which purpose did maximum number of Indians undertake foreign travel in 2019 and in 2022 ?
State any one inference that can be drawn from this.
- Why are students today choosing to go abroad to study ? (Answer in about 40 words.)
- Which of the following is the main takeaway from the study mentioned in the passage ?
 - International travel remains an important means of expanding the horizons and connecting with other cultures.
 - Though travel, both domestic and international, has picked up, it has yet to reach its previous levels.
 - Indians are excited about being able to travel internationally.
 - The study needs to include experts from Tourism Department to offer any recommendations for further research.

Ans :

2024

- We can say that the situation when people were travelling with a vengeance is comparable to people going out to dine in hordes, because both scenarios reflect pent-up demand being released after restrictions.

- ii. The statement that “Tourism constituted almost 3% of India’s GDP and generated around 100 million jobs in 2019” is a/an fact because it is a/an objective detail.
- iii. Indians, confined by pandemic restrictions for over two years, are eager to explore new destinations, embrace diverse cultures, and enjoy the freedom of international travel, reflecting a strong desire to break free from prolonged isolation.
- iv. Without the table, I can infer from the passage that Indian foreign travel increased primarily for educational purposes due to pent-up demand and growing aspirations among middle-class students from Tier II and Tier III cities.
- v. The ‘industry’ being referred to here is the tourism and hospitality industry.
- vi. The maximum number of people undertook foreign travel in 2019 and 2022 because of residency. It can be inferred that Indians are settling in foreign because of better life and expanding their horizons and connecting with other cultures.
- vii. Students are opting to study abroad due to pent-up demand from the pandemic’s two-year duration, along with growing aspirations and increased affordability among middle-class students, particularly from Tier II and Tier III cities.
- viii. (b) Though travel, both domestic and international, has picked up, it has yet to reach its previous levels.

Passage 6

1. The reduction in green areas has caused various environmental problems. People squeezed between concrete structures are looking for various ways to meet their longing for green. One of the ways to do so, is vertical gardens and green walls. Vertical gardening is a unique method of gardening where plants are grown in a vertical position or upward, rather than in the traditional method of planting them on the ground.
2. The purpose of vertical gardens and green walls, which arises from the studies of different disciplines (landscape architects, architects, engineers, etc.), is to close the cold image of concrete and increase the visual value. In these systems, nature and structures are integrated, and thus, urban areas and the desired environment have become intertwined.

3. Vertical garden case studies often show that, though functionality should be in the foreground, when vertical gardens are planned, they are generally made as aesthetic elements in the city’s underpasses and city squares, and decorative elements in residences, without seeking functionality.
4. Experts support that the visual quality and evaluation of landscape architecture is determined based on the satisfaction of the users. Hence, a survey questionnaire was prepared for residents of varied age groups from of a metropolitan city. The given Table 1, displays these responses :

Table 1 - Total number of participants : 400

No.	Survey statements	Strongly agree	Agree	Neutral	Disagree	Strongly disagree
Vertical gardens :						
1.	improve quality of life of people in urban areas	191	138	43	9	19
2.	reduce noise pollution	128	164	77	25	6
3.	increase air quality -indoors and outdoors	172	147	51	28	2
4.	reduce energy and water consumption	58	47	125	68	2
5.	positively impact global warming	114	144	106	30	6
6.	have a relaxing and calming effect	161	177	44	7	11
7.	cost too much	86	107	152	42	13
8.	make plants look beautiful	195	139	44	6	16
9.	add naturalness to the environment	135	173	55	25	12
10.	are among the determining factor to visiting a place	59	133	141	54	13
11.	are inconvenient indoors	9	84	123	126	48
12.	can be applied in every place	71	132	97	77	23
13.	have a functional feature	81	207	100	10	2
14.	distract drivers	34	101	106	131	28
15.	funds are best used for social issues	57	72	100	130	41

5. The study acknowledged that vertical gardening has the potential to transform urban spaces into green, sustainable areas, and further research should explore the impact of vertical gardening

on the environment and human well-being.

Answer the following questions, based on the above passage :

- i. Complete the following analogy appropriately, based on your understanding of paragraphs 1 and 2.

We can say that the situation of people living in concrete structures is comparable with a fish living in a fishbowl, and the need for vertical gardens to the need for decorations in the fishbowl because

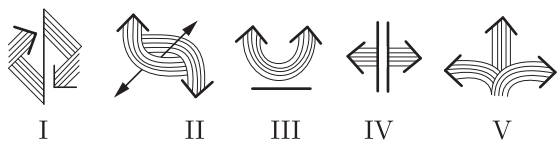
- ii. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate option from those given in brackets, based on your understanding of paragraph 2.

The statement that, urban spaces have become more closely connected with the desired natural surroundings through the incorporation of nature and structures in vertical gardens and green walls, is a _____ (fact/ opinion) because it is a _____ (subjective judgement/objective detail).

- iii. Justify the following, in about 40 words.

While the survey results suggest that vertical gardens may be effective in improving the quality of life in urban areas, further research and evaluation may be necessary to fully understand their effectiveness and potential drawbacks.

- iv. Based on the survey results, which two concerns should the city government, looking to install vertical gardens, address?
- v. In Table 1, the statement 3, “Vertical gardens increase air quality - indoors and outdoors,” received the most neutral responses from participants, with 51 respondents indicating a neutral stance. State any one inference that can be drawn from this.
- vi. Select the option that correctly displays what ‘intertwined’ signifies. (Reference-Paragraph 2)



- (a) (I) , (IV) and (V) (b) Only (II)
(c) Only (III) (d) (II) and (V)

- v. Infer in about 40 words, one benefit and one drawback of vertical gardening, in comparison to other solutions, such as community gardens or parks.

- iv. Which of the following is the main takeaway from the study mentioned in the passage?

- (a) Vertical gardening has minimal impact on the environment or human well-being.
(b) Vertical gardening is a sustainable practice that can transform urban spaces into green areas.
(c) The impact of vertical gardening on the environment and human well-being has already been thoroughly explored.
(d) The study needs to include experts from horticultural firms to offer any recommendations for further research.

Ans :

2023

- i. the way a fish is confined in its bowl and requires decoration to have a sustainable and happy life, the same way, people living in concrete structures need vertical gardens.
ii. opinion; subjective judgement
iii. It is true that vertical gardens improve quality of life of people in urban areas but the study needs to be objective in nature to prove this as a fact or discover its drawbacks. Currently, it is only a subjective judgement that is based on a survey including some people.
iv. The two concerns that the city government should be looking to address are: cost of installation of vertical gardens and areas of installation with an intent to avoid driver distraction.
v. The reference that can be drawn from the given response is the lack of information amongst people regarding the improvement of air quality through vertical gardens.
vi. (b) Only (II)
vii. The benefit of vertical garden over community park is that it provides indoor aesthetics and freshness to the confined spaces of urban homes while the drawback is that it lacks a large extent of space for greenery that community parks have.
viii. (b) Vertical gardening is a sustainable practice that can transform urban spaces into green areas.

Passage 7

- India is a country of many languages. The constitution recognises 22 languages officially, but over 121 unique languages have been identified in the country.
- To preserve and encourage the literary function of language, the government introduced ‘classical

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

languages' in 2004. According to the Ministry of Culture, a classical language is one that is at least 1,500 years old and has ancient, valuable literature recorded in it. Further, such a language is original and not derived from another language. Based on these guidelines, six languages have been classified as classical languages: Tamil, Sanskrit, Kannada, Telugu, Malayalam and Odia.

3. The following graph shows the percentage of Indian people whose mother tongue is a classical language. This is as per data collected by the census of 2011. The census was not conducted in 2021 due to the pandemic.

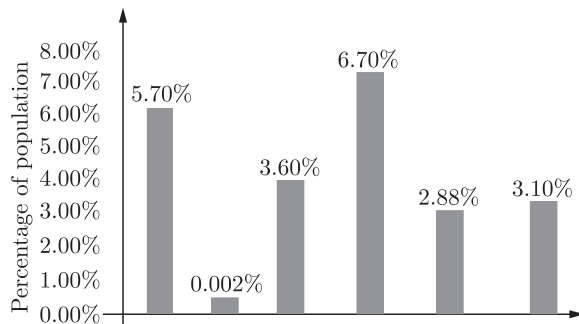


Figure : Tamil Sanskrit Kannada Telugu Malayalam Odia Languages

4. According to the graph, around 6.7% of the Indian population are native speakers of Telugu, whereas Sanskrit has been identified as a mother tongue by only 0.002% of the population, which is around 24,821 people. Malayalam has the second lowest number of native speakers, making up about 2.9% of Indians.
5. The 2011 census data also noted that a majority of the native speakers reside in the area where their mother tongue originated. For example, 93% of Kannada speakers live in Karnataka. Similarly, 93% of Malayalam speakers live in Kerala.
6. Balancing the preservation of culture and inclusivity is a delicate equation for a heterogeneous country like India. With growing awareness, concepts like 'classical languages' may help us achieve harmony.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. Which of these pieces of information can be confirmed by reading the passage?
- The number of people in India who speak Tamil.
 - Where the majority of native Sanskrit speakers live.

III. The reason Malayalam is considered a classical language.

IV. When the idea of classical languages was introduced in India.

- Only (I)
- Only (IV)
- Only (I) and (II)
- Only (III) and (IV)

- ii. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate option from those given in brackets.

Based on the passage, the _____ (functional/historical) value of a language is of utmost importance while (preserving/categorising) it as a classical language.

- iii. Imagine that a committee was formed to ensure that classical languages have more native speakers by the time the next census is conducted. In 40 words, answer the following questions to help the committee achieve its objective.

- Which classical language needs its attention most urgently and why?
- Which classical language would be THIRD on its priority?

- iv. State an example from the passage that shows that India is a 'heterogeneous country'. Answer in one sentence.

- v. Why has the writer stated the following line in the passage? Give a reason.

The census was not conducted in 2021 due to the pandemic.

- vi. Complete the sentence based on information from the passage.

If Tamil originated from Tamil Nadu, we can infer that _____ of the native Tamil speakers would be living in Tamil Nadu.

- vii. Which of these hypothetical situations would help India achieve harmony? Justify your answer in about 40 words.

- if the majority of Indians who speak a classical language are settled abroad
- if more languages from remote and tribal areas of India are identified as classical languages
- if the percentage of Indians who are native Telugu speakers increases to more than 10 percent

viii. Which of these sentences uses 'delicate' in the same way as paragraph (6) does?

- She looked beautiful in the dress with the delicate floral pattern.
- He was frequently admitted to the hospital due to his delicate health.
- This discussion will require careful consideration as it is a delicate matter.
- Please handle these delicate items carefully during transportation as they break easily.

Ans :

2023

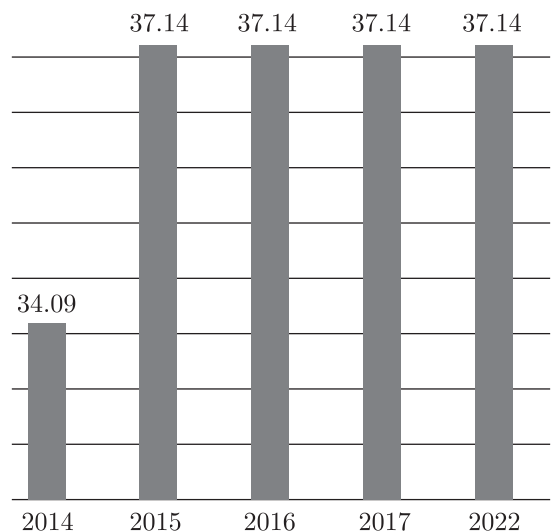
- (d) Only (III) and (IV)
- historical; categorising
- Sanskrit, as it has the lowest percentage of people who identify it as their mother tongue
 - Odia
- India is considered a heterogeneous country because it is a country of many languages.
- The writer stated the following line in the passage to give a disclaimer to readers in case they find updated information in recent times that contradicts the stated data.
- a majority
- (b) if more languages from remote and tribal areas of India are identified as classical languages.
- (c) This discussion will require careful consideration as it is a delicate matter.

Passage 8

- Sports and energy drinks consumed by athletes and fitness-freaks, are beverages rich in essential components such as nutrients, vitamins, carbohydrates, etc., that provide much-needed mental and physical stimulation. They not only provide an instant energy boost but also help to replenish the electrolytes which are lost during the workout keeping the body hydrated which is of utmost importance. Indian consumers drink 120 billion liters of beverages of which 4% are ready-to-drink energy drinks which are available in a variety of flavours and also in an organic avatar.
- Furthermore, aggressive promotion and marketing by the big brands across all media have also contributed significantly to their market growth. Collaboration with celebrities and sports personalities, development of more consumer-oriented products such as sugar-free drinks or customizable drinks, product availability across various platforms, and sponsoring various sporting events or teams are believed to even

further increase the growth of these brands.

Energy Drinks Market Revenue (USD million),
Convenience stores, India, 2014-2022



- The market size of Indian Sports and energy drinks reached US\$ 2.4 billion in 2022. And going by the current rate, projections estimate the market size to reach US\$ 5.0 billion by the year 2027; thereby exhibiting a growth rate of (CAGR) of 13.27 during 2022-2027.
 - A lot of athletes gets confused between an energy drink and sports drink. Sugar is the biggest enemy for any athlete if its intake is not balanced correctly. Any beverage which contains more than 10% of sugar is considered to be an energy drink. So aerated beverages, sodas, juices (like mango, lime etc.) all fall under the energy drink category. When an athlete consumes any energy drink, it creates a sudden insulin spike in the body and for a short duration of period feels energetic. However, the insulin spike is soon followed by an insulin spike drop, leaving behind the athlete dull, lethargic and fatigued. This is not desirable in an athlete as they need to constantly maintain their energy & focus for higher performance.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- Complete the following analogy appropriately, based on your understanding of paragraphs 1 and 2.
The fact that sports drinks are the preferred choice of sports persons is comparable with the fact that energy drinks seem to be _____.
- Fill in the blanks with the appropriate option from those given in brackets, based on your understanding of paragraph 2.
Indian consumers drink 120 billion liters of beverages of which 4% or 4.8 billion liters are

ready-to-drink energy drinks that are available in a variety of flavours and also in an organic avatar is _____ (a fact/ opinion) because it is _____ (a/an subjective judgement/ objective detail).

- iii. Justify the following, in about 40 words :
Big brands and MNCs are keenly pushing and aiding the growth of their beverages' markets by widening their consumer base.
- iv. Based on the passage, mention two marketing tactics involving big events and known faces adopted by the big brands to popularise their energy and sports drinks?
- v. Study the statement: 'Sports and energy drinks are beverages that seem to have nailed not only the wide-ranging taste buds of the consumers but also the latest fads prevalent in society.'
State any one inference that can be drawn from this.
- vi. Select the option that correctly displays what 'avatar' signifies. (Reference-Paragraph 1)



(i)



(ii)



(iii)



(iv)



(v)

- (a) Only (i) (b) (i) and (iii)
(c) Only (v) (d) (ii), (iii) and (iv)

vii. Infer one benefit and one drawback of athletes consuming sports and energy drinks. Answer in about 40 words.

viii. Select the appropriate option to fill in the blanks.
From paragraph 1, we can infer that sports and energy drinks are a source of _____ and _____ especially if you are into regular and heavy work-outs.

1. electrolytes
2. instant energy
3. hydration
4. organic matter
5. flavours

- (a) 1 and 4 (b) 2 and 3
(c) 4 and 5 (d) 1 and 5

Ans :

2023

- i. more popular among celebrities.
ii. a fact, an objective detail
iii. It is true that big brands and MNCs are keenly pushing and aiding the growth of their markets by widening their consumer base by developing more consumer- oriented products such as sugar-free drinks or customizable drinks and ensuring their product availability across various platforms.
iv. 1. Sponsoring various sporting events or teams
2. Collaboration with celebrities and sports personalities sponsoring various sporting events or teams.

Billions of Indians consume ready-to-drink energy drinks which are available now in a variety of flavours and also in an organic avatar.

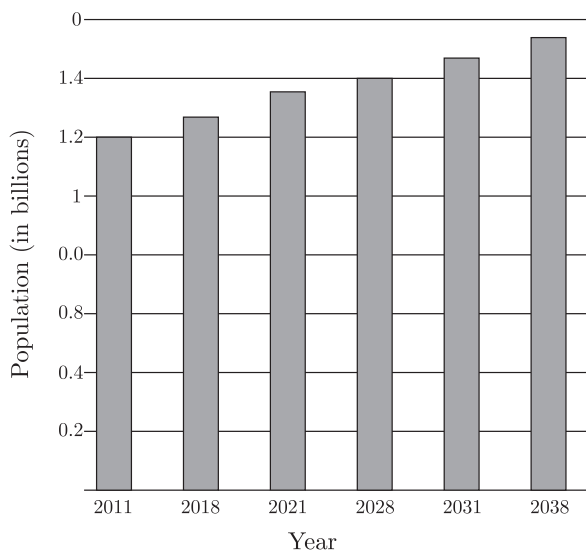
- vi. (c) Only (v)
vii. Sports and energy drinks contain more than 10% of sugar content which creates a sudden insulin spike as well as a sudden drop in human body which is a drawback. But they also contain nutrients, vitamins, carbohydrates, etc., that help to replenish the electrolytes which are lost during the workout keeping the body hydrated.
viii. (b) 2 and 3

Passage 9

1. India's population is expected to grow by 25%, with reference to 2011, to 1.52 billion by 2036, according to the final report of the technical

group on population projections dated July 2020. The group was constituted by the National Commission on Population (NCP) under the Ministry of Health and Family Welfare with the mandate to provide population projections for the period 2011 to 2036.

2. India's population growth rate is expected to decline to its lowest since the Independence in the 2011-2021 decade, with a decadal growth rate of 12.5%. It 0.0 will decline further to 8.4% in the 2021-2031 decade, as per the report, 0 0.8 which The Wire has seen. According to these projections, India will overtake China as the world's most populous country around 2031-almost a decade later than the United Nations projection of 2022. India's population is projected to increase to 1.52 billion by 2036.



Source : Report of the technical group on population projections

3. The projections have been delayed quite significantly. "Ideally, they should have come by 2016. But there were delays in setting up the committee and then more delays at the government's end even after we submitted the report. We had submitted our report in November 2019," said a member of the committee wishing to remain anonymous. This was confirmed by two other members as well.
4. India's population was 1.21 billion as per the Census of 2011 and the projections now estimate that the population will grow by 311 million by 2036.
5. The report projects that as much as 70% of this increase will be in urban areas. India's urban population will increase from 377 million in 2011

to 594 million in 2036-a growth of 57%. So, while 31% of Indians were living in urban India in 2011, that will grow to 39% by 2036.

6. Consequently, the proportion of the rural population will decline from 69% to 61% as the urban population is projected to increase more than twice the projected increase in the rural population.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. Complete the sentence appropriately.
The number by which the population of India is estimated to grow by 2036 is _____.
- ii. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate option from those given in brackets.
This passage contains the decadal _____ (growth/decline) rate for the decade 2011-2021, which is 12.5%.
- iii. Which population projections were highlighted by the NCP's report about India's population growth? Answer in about 40 words.
- iv. "It will decline further to 8.4% in the 2021-2031 decade..." What does this statement mean?
- v. According to the passage, how much delay from the UN's projection can be seen in India becoming the most populated country in the world?
- vi. Why did the projections come in July of 2020?
(a) Delay by the committee
(b) Delay by the government
(c) Delay in setting up the committee
(d) Both (a) and (b)
- vii. Infer two facts about India on the basis of your reading of the passage. Answer in about 40 words.
- viii. The purpose of the above report was to give
(a) Population projections for 2011-2036
(b) Population projections for 2036
(c) Population projections for 2011
(d) Population projections for 2031

Ans :

2022

- i. 311 million
- ii. growth
- iii. India's population growth rate is expected to decline to its lowest since the Independence in the 2011-2021 decade, with a decadal growth rate of 12.5%. It will decline further to 8.4% in the

2021-2031 decade. According to these projections, India will overtake China as the world's most populous country around 2031—almost a decade later than the United Nations projection of 2022.

- iv. The given statement means that India's population growth rate is expected to decline drastically.
- v. A delay of a decade from the UN's projection can be seen in India becoming the most populated country in the world.
- vi. (d) Both (a) and (b)
- vii. 1. According to the passage, India will become the most populous country in the world by 2031.
2. The nation's population growth rate is expected to decline to its lowest since the Independence in the 2011-2021 decade.
- viii. (a) Population projections for 2011-2036

Passage 10

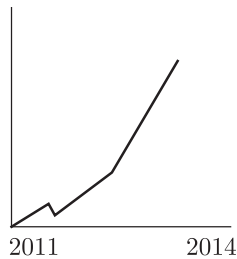
1. The emergence of novel COVID-19 epidemic has been spreading in India which brought the sudden lockdown situation in the country. After government execution of lockdown with different stages, beings rapidly change their pattern of living. The affection of such controls affected entertainment with several entities. Many productions of entertainment programs get stopped that results the broadcast of new programs and several episodes has been stationary till the unlocked. To avoid the forfeiture in revenue, production houses used the concept of minimax programming that belongs to repeated telecast of running or evergreen programs. "Their current success may seem as an aberration at first glance. Doordarshan itself has replayed its old shows in the past too and these have always gone unnoticed," says Shailesh Kapoor, founder and CEO at Ormax Media. Meanwhile, the condition of movie theatre is much similar to other entertainment substances that have been closed and unable to perceive the entertainment.
2. Under such circumstances, web series enable to emphasis the audiences with its own concept of 'anywhere-anytime' where audience can watch and interact with programs with their convenience and of personal medium. Web series are developing a new breed for new content providers, who produce fresh content for digital audiences. Spreading the Internet access in rural and urban areas is much responsible for increasing of audience of web series in digital platform. Since, the revolution

of 4G in India, OTT (Over-The-Top) platform such as Hotstar, Netflix, Amazon Prime video, ALTBalaji are delivering the content like web series, movies, TV serials, sports and news with different languages to the user (audience) with a boundless quality. A study revealed that 95% youth (age between 18 and 25) have admitted to watching web series in a metro city like Mumbai and approximately 81% audiences are watching in online manner by using OTT platform where in 42% of audiences watching web series on a daily basis, by using OTT high rate.

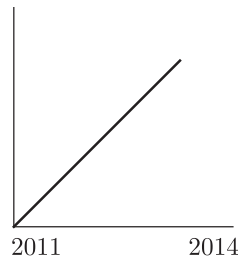
3. In a study, certain responses were collected on watching habits of web series between before and after lockdown. It was clear that approximately 15% of rise was seen in audiences during lockdown. Audiences showed their interest more towards web series. In the same study, another interpretation showed the meaning of free time to watch web series during lockdown. Before lockdown, 'all day' users of web series were quite low to approximately 4% but during lockdown, an increase of users approximately 36% was seen in category.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

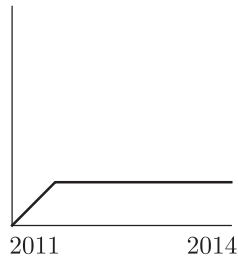
- i. Complete the following sentence appropriately.
A study revealed that _____ (age between 18 and 25) have admitted to watching web series in a metro city like Mumbai.
- ii. Fill in the blank with appropriate word/words.
Web series are creating a new kind of _____ who produce fresh content for people who watch movies or series on OTTs.
- iii. State one example which proves the statement. (Answer in about 40 words)
COVID19 induced lockdown affected entertainment industry.
- iv. State the reason in the increase in the trend of web series in digital platform.
- v. Substitute the word 'forfeiture' with ONE WORD similar in meaning, in the following, sentence from Paragraph 1.
To avoid the forfeiture in revenue, production houses used the concept of minimax programming that belongs to repeated telecast of running or evergreen programs.
- vi. Select the chart that appropriately represents the trend in the audience of watching web series:



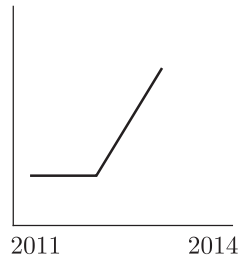
(1)



(2)



(3)



(4)

- (a) Chart 1 (b) Chart 2
(c) Chart 3 (d) Chart 4

- vii. What do you understand by 'Minimax Programming'? How did Doordarshan apply it in India? (Answer in about 40 words.)
- viii. Which of the following is over the top platforms delivering to the audience?
- Movies and sports
 - Web and TV series
 - News with different languages
 - All of these

Ans :

2022

- 95% youth
- content providers
- The Covid-19 affected the entertainment industry badly. The production of many entertainment programs got stopped. Apart from this, any further broadcast of new episodes of ongoing program was cancelled.
- Spreading the Internet access in rural and urban areas is the reason behind the increase in the audience of web series in digital platform.
- Loss
- (b) Chart 2
- Minimise programming refers to the telecast of running or evergreen programs. Doordarshan applied Minima programming in India during lockdown by telecasting Ramayanal.

- viii. (d) All of these

Passage 11

- Through the Sustainable Development Goal (SDG), the countries of the world have resolved to achieve universal access to safe drinking water and adequate sanitation and hygiene for all by 2030. The aim is to ensure the consumption of safe drinking water and practice safe sanitation and hygiene, resulting in lower exposure to a contaminated environment, resulting in lower morbidity and mortality, especially amongst children.
- The Swachh Bharat Mission was launched by the Government of India on 2nd October, 2014 to achieve the vision of 'Swachh Bharat' by 2nd October, 2019. The Swachh Bharat Mission Gramin-SBM (G) endeavours to accelerate rural sanitation coverage, reduce open defecation and improve the management of solid and liquid wastes in rural areas. The implementation of SBM (G) is the responsibility of the Ministry of Drinking Water and Sanitation (MDWS). The MDWS, while issuing guidelines for Open Defecation Free (ODF) verification stressed on "safe technology option which aimed at no contamination of surface soil, groundwater or surface water; excreta management inaccessible to flies or animals; no human handling of fresh excreta and freedom from odour and unsightly condition". Over the past 4 years, over 92 million new households have received access to household toilets and by the end of the SBM (G) programme, all 16.5 million rural households will have such access. However, the issue is of usage and thus, the goal is to create ODF communities and villages, with no one defecating in the open.
- The status of ODF villages published on the website of MDWS indicates that as of 01.04.2019, over 99% of rural HHs in India have toilet access. The declared ODF villages at all India levels accounted for 556,824 spreading over 247,723 Gram Panchayats, 6,031 Blocks and 616 Districts.
- UNICEF in India accords high priority to the provision of safe sanitation and water services to people in rural areas and has over the past many years aided through catalytic technical support to MDWS, the Government of India and 15 state governments in the implementation of the various sanitation programmes and since 2014, specifically to the SBM (G). With the progress of the SBM (G) and the declaration of ODF communities, there is an emerging question on whether the

campaign to eliminate open defecation and create ODF communities is resulting in a decrease in faecal contamination in the environment.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. Complete the following analogy appropriately.
There will be a decrease in faecal contamination in the environment because ____.
- ii. Fill the blank with appropriate word.
The passage provides data that proves that over 99% of rural households have access to ____.
- iii. Describe the purpose of the launch of Swachh Bharat Mission (G). Answer in about 40 words.
- iv. According to the passage, who is responsible for the progress of the Swachh Bharat Mission?
- v. Suggest a suitable title for the passage.
- vi. Select the option that the given sentence refers to "Over the past 4 years, over 92 million new households have received access to household toilets."
(a) There is an increase in the usage of toilets among rural households.
(b) There is an increase in the construction of community-shared toilets.
(c) There is an increase in the building of toilets inside households.
(d) There is an increase in access to toilets but are not being used by the villagers.
- vii. Which international organisation is helping in providing sanitation and how? (Answer in about 40 words)
- viii. Why is the government successful in providing access to toilets to over 99% of rural households?
(a) Government is giving false data.
(b) Villagers also want to have access to toilets to minimize the negative impact of open defecation.
(c) Villagers are cooperative.
(d) Rural households have become educated.

Ans :

2022

- i. the goal is to create Open Defecation Free (ODF) of communities and villages
- ii. toilets
- iii. The purpose of the launch of Swachh Bharat Mission (G) was to accelerate rural sanitation

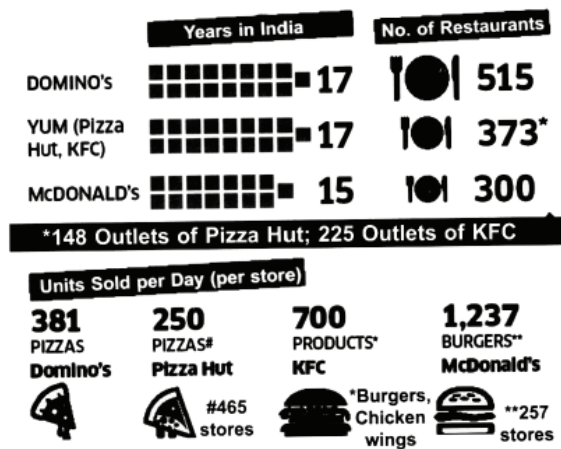
coverage, reduce open defecation. and improve the management of solid and liquid wastes in rural areas.

- iv. Ministry of Drinking Water and Sanitation is responsible for the progress of the Swachh Bharat Mission.
- v. Swachh Bharat Mission and SDG
- vi. (a) There is an increase in the usage of toilets among rural households.
- vii. UNICEF is helping in providing sanitation and water services in rural areas. It has been providing technical support to Molds, Government of India and 15 State governments in the implementation of various sanitation programmes.
- viii. (b) Villagers also want to have access to toilets to minimize the negative impact of open defecation.

Passage 12

1. According to the National Institutes of Health (NHI), fast foods are a quick alternative to home-cooked meals. They are also high in saturated fat, sugar, salt and calories. Eating too much fast food has been connected to, among other things, obesity, colorectal cancer and high cholesterol. Still the traditional family dinner is increasingly being replaced by eating "on the run". As a result, the time invested in food preparation is getting lower and lower. 54% of the Indians are aged below 25 years and eating out is their favourite outdoor entertainment. Much of the retail boom in India could be attributed to these young consumers.
2. Organized fast food service sector in India and elsewhere, busy lifestyles of people and dual-working families with children have provided the perfect platform for fast food companies to flourish, which offer quick meal solutions. As a result, the fast food industry has witnessed a tremendous growth rate. McDonald's alone serves 46 million people worldwide each day. Fast-food chains are still less than 5% of India's food services market-the global average rests at 20%.
3. India's food services market was estimated at 24,236 billion in 2020. Fast food chains in India have a market size of 2348 billion and account for 54% of the total sales. This is estimated to reach 64% by 2025. Covid dealt a body blow to the food services industry because of long lockdowns. However, large players were quick to remedy the impact on business by scaling their existing delivery capabilities. Fortunately, these chains had the infrastructure and process for delivery

services in place long before the spread of the pandemic, which enabled them to adapt swiftly to government regulations.



4. The large food chains are set to gain a bigger share of the food services market on the back of a young population, value pricing, and increased penetration in tier two and three cities. The more recent popularity of online food ordering and food delivery platforms has enabled food chains to reach more consumers. Fast food chain Burger King reported a blockbuster IPO last year; meanwhile, Domino's pizza franchise in India recently revised its potential store opening target in India from the earlier 2,000 to 3,000. McDonald's, Burger King, Domino's plan to deepen their reach in India's smaller cities, and benefit from a younger demographic expecting to clock a compound annual growth rate of 23% between 2021 to 2025.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- Complete the following analogy appropriately, based on your understanding of paragraph 1.
The convenience that fast food can be eaten 'on the run' is comparable with on one's person or in a handbag as opposed to having a desktop that keeps one tied to their work desk.
- Fill in the blanks with the appropriate option from those given in brackets, based on your understanding of the passage.
We can infer that the large food service chains particularly in India were able to buffer their businesses and revenues during the pandemic owing to their ability to adapt to the new regulations,

infrastructure and the flexibility of their delivery service is a (fact/ opinion) because it is a/an(subjective judgement/ objective detail).

- "The traditional family dinner is increasingly being replaced by eating on the run". Justify the following, in about 40 words.

- Based on the results of the study, which two concerns showcase the flip side of the popularity of fast foods as referred to in the passage?

Study the statement: 'McDonald's alone serves 46 million people worldwide each day.' State any one inference that can be drawn from this.

- Select the option that correctly displays what 'demographic' signifies. (Reference-Paragraph 4)



- (i) (ii) (iii) (iv) (v)
- (a) Only (i) (b) nly (ii)
(c) (ii), (iv) and (v) (d) (i) and (iii)

- Infer the reasons responsible for the large food chains set to gain a bigger share of the food services market on the back of a young population in India. Answer in about 40 words.

- Three sets of statements about the trends in fast food sector in India are given below. Which of the following statements is CORRECT with reference to the study mentioned in the passage?

- The share of fast food chains in food services market is below 5%.
- The share of fast food chains in food services market is 20%.
- Branded fast food services fall under unorganized sector in India.
- By 2025, the total sales in fast food market size will grow by 10%

Ans :

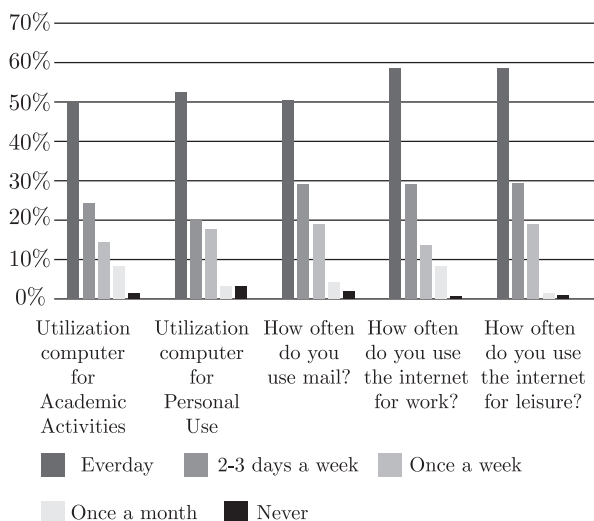
2021

- carrying a mobile phone.
- fact; objective detail.
- The time invested in food preparation is getting lower and lower. 54% of the Indians are aged below 25 years and eating out is their favourite outdoor entertainment. Even eating in peace with family has changed for the worse especially among the young consumers.

- iv. 1. Fast foods are high in saturated fat, sugar, salt and calories.
2. Eating too much fast food has been connected to obesity, colorectal cancer and high cholesterol.
- v. Fast food is mind-blowingly popular not only in India but all over the world.
- vi. (b) Only (ii)
- vii. Value pricing and increased penetration in tier two and three cities, the rising popularity of online food ordering and food delivery platforms has enabled food chains to reach more consumers. Busy lifestyles of people and dual-working families with children have also contributed to this growth.
- viii. (a) The share of fast food chains in food services market is below 5%.

Passage 13

1. The present generation is well updated with the use of internet and computers. The rapid development in computer technology and increase in accessibility of the internet for academic purposes has changed the face of education for everyone associated with it. Let's look at the data arising out of a recent survey that was done to ascertain the time spent on utilisation of the computer and internet.



2. At present, many schools and universities have been implementing internet-based learning, as it supplements the conventional teaching methods. The internet provides a wide variety of references and information to academics as well as scientific researchers. Students often turn to it to do their academic assignments and projects.

3. However, research on Internet is very different from traditional library research, and the differences can cause problems. The Internet is a tremendous resource, but it must be used carefully and critically.
4. According to a 2018 Academic Student e-book Experience Survey, conducted by LJ's research department and sponsored by EBSCO, when reading for pleasure, almost 74% of respondents said they preferred print books for leisure whereas, 45% of respondents chose e-books rather than the printed versions, for research or assignments.
5. When asked what e-book features make them their favourite for research, the respondents were clear. Having page numbers to use in citations, topped the list (75%); followed by the ability to resize text to fit a device's screen (67%); the ability to bookmark pages, highlight text, or take notes for later reference (60%); downloading the entire e-book (57%); and allowing content to be transferred between devices (43%) were the varied responses.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. Rearrange the following features of an e-book from the most favourite to the least favourite.
 1. Downloading the entire e-book
 2. Using page numbers in citations
 3. Highlighting text
 4. Transferring content between devices
 5. Resizing text to fit the screen of a device
- ii. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate option from those given in brackets, based on your understanding of paragraph 2.
At present, many schools and universities have been implementing internet-based learning, as it supplements the conventional teaching methods in assignments and projects with information and references is _____ (a fact/ an opinion) because it is _____ (a/an subjective judgement/ objective detail).
- iii. Justify the following, in about 40 words.
People have marked preferences when it comes to reading for pleasure or for research.
- iv. Based on the survey results, which two features have changed the face of education in recent times?
- v. State any one inference that can be drawn from the following statement.
"The present generation is well updated with the use of the internet and computers."

- vi. Select at least two options that correctly display what 'citation' signifies. (Reference-Paragraph 5).



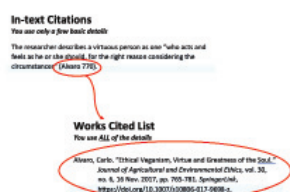
(i)

(ii)



(iii)

(iv)



(v)

- (a) Only (i) (b) (ii) and (v)
(c) Only (iv) (d) (ii), (iii) and (v)

- vii. Infer one benefit and one drawback of using the internet as specified by the author in the passage. (Answer in about 40 words)

- viii. Which of the following is the main takeaway from the study mentioned in the passage?

- (a) More than 50% of respondents stated enjoying both versions of books for leisure reading.
(b) A little less than 50% of the respondents voted for e-books for research or assignments.
(c) About three-quarters of the respondents preferred print books for recreational reading.
(d) The survey was intended for understanding the e-book experience among students.

Ans :

2021

- i. The order from the most favourite to the least favourite is 2, 5, 3, 1 and 4.
ii. a fact, an objective detail.
iii. According to a 2018 Academic Student e-book Experience survey, almost 74% of respondents

had a marked preference for print books for leisure whereas, 45% clearly preferred e-books rather than the printed versions, for research or assignments.

- iv. 1. The rapid development in computer technology.
2. An increase in accessibility of the internet for academic purposes.
v. This has been made possible due to the easy accessibility of computer technology.
vi. (b) (ii) and (v)
vii. House spiders make webs in ceilings and window corners to trap insects at our homes whereas, the garden spiders keep the pests in the gardens at bay. For example spiders are particularly useful in protecting cotton crops and keeping our homes, famous, and gardens free of pests.
viii. (a) More than 50% of respondents stated enjoying both versions of books for leisure reading.

NODIA

Passage 14

Universal access to adequate sanitation is a fundamental need and human right. Securing access for all would go a long way in reducing illness and death, especially among children. 'Safely managed' sanitation services represent a higher service level that takes into account the final disposal of excreta, in addition to the 'basic' service level which requires an improved sanitation facility (such as flush toilets or latrine with a slab) not shared with other households.

2. Between 2000 and 2020, the global population increased by 1.7 billion people, but 2.4 billion people gained access to safely managed sanitation services, i.e. a basic facility where excreta are disposed of in situ or treated off-site. Still, in 2020 3.6 billion people lacked safely managed services, of which approximately half (1.9 billion) had basic services. Among the 1.7 billion people lacking even basic services, 580 million shared improved sanitation facilities with other households, counted as 'limited' services and 616 million used 'unimproved' facilities. The data reveal pronounced disparities, with two-thirds of people who still lacked even basic services living in rural areas. Nearly half of them lived in sub-Saharan Africa.
3. Almost all developed countries have achieved universal access, but sanitation coverage varies widely in developing countries. In 2020, 62 countries achieved universal (>99 percent)

access to basic services. Yet, in 48 countries, less than half of the population had safely managed services.

4. Defecating in the open is an affront to dignity and a risk to children's nutrition and to community health. The elimination of open defecation is recognised as a top priority for improving the health, nutrition and productivity of developing country populations and is explicitly mentioned in SDG target 6.2.
5. Among the 1.7 billion people without basic sanitation services in 2020, nearly a third (494 million) used no form of a toilet and practised open defecation. In 55 countries, more than 5 per cent of the population practised open defecation in 2020. Open defecation is most widespread in sub-Saharan Africa but is also high in Central and Southern Asia as well as Oceania.
6. In 17 countries, open defecation decreased by more than five percentage points between 2015 and 2020. Assuming current rates of progress continue the world and most SDG regions are on track to eliminate open defecation before 2030.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. Complete the following sentence.
According to the passage, 'limited' services refers to _____.
- ii. Fill in the blanks with appropriate word/words.
There is a need to improve the health, nutrition and productivity of developing country populations to _____.
- iii. Why is universal access to sanitation a central human right?
- iv. Why is open defecation widespread in Sub-Saharan, Central and Southern Asia and Oceania?
- v. Mention the progress made in eliminating open defecation. Answer in about 40 words.
- vi. The statement "there is a wide difference between developed and developing countries in the sanitation coverage" means that
 - (a) in 48 countries, less than half of the population has safely managed services.
 - (b) 1.7 billion people are without basic sanitation services.
 - (c) nearly two-thirds of people still lack even basic services that live in rural areas.
 - (d) 62 countries in the world have achieved universal access to basic sanitation services
- vii. List any two ill effects of open defecation. (40 words)
- viii. What are the consequences of unsanitary conditions?
 - (a) Breeding grounds for mosquitoes
 - (b) Illness and deaths
 - (c) Contaminated food and water
 - (d) All of the above

Ans :

2021

- i. the people who do not have access to even basic sanitation services.
- ii. eliminate open defecation
- iii. Universal access to sanitation is considered a central human right because it ensure life by reducing the risk of disease and death.
- iv. Open defecation is widespread in these areas due to lack of basic sanitation services.
- v. Open defecation decreased by more than five percentage points between 2015 and 2020. If the current rates of progress continue the world and most SDG regions are on track to eliminate open defecation before 2030.
- vi. (c) Nearly two-thirds of people still lack even basic services that live in rural areas.
- vii. The two ill effects of open defecation are:
 1. Defecating in the open is an affront to dignity.
 2. It is also a risk to children's nutrition and to community health.
- viii. (d) All of the above

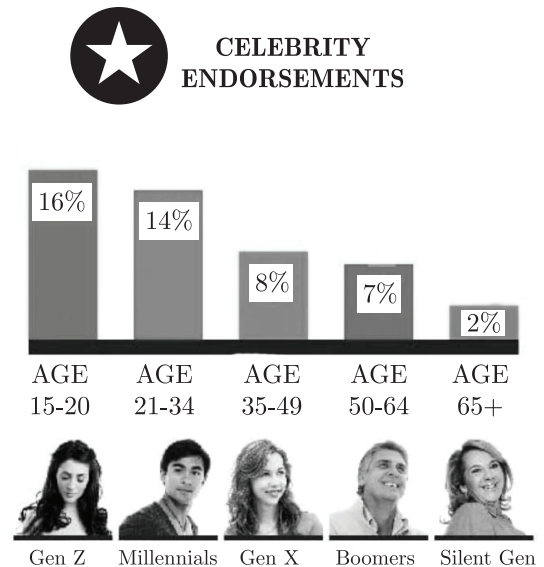
**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

Passage 15

1. Celebrities advertising products is nothing new, in fact, it has been part of our lives for years. Back in the 2000's, you couldn't sit through a commercial break without seeing the teen pop icon of that time, Britney Spears, endorsing Pepsi. The Pepsi legacy was later continued by the most famous celebrity Beyonce. She was paid millions to promote the carbonated drink, which outraged health advocacy groups. Many concerned people questioned her ethics, as to why she was supporting a drink that plays a major role in causing obesity.

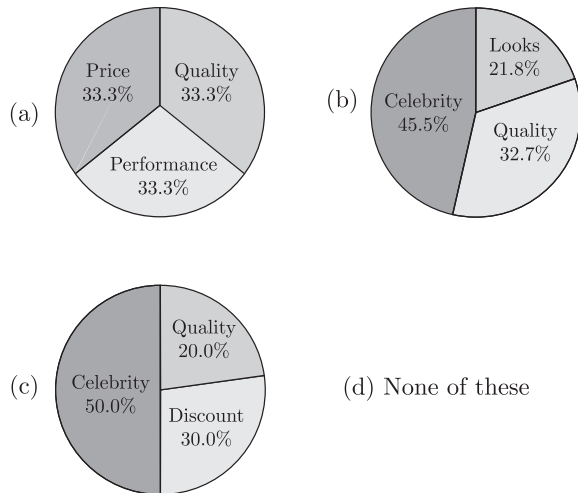
2. With the growing importance of social media in a shopper's purchase journey, companies are evolving and stepping up the endorsement game across different channels. With celebrities vouching for promoting their products, brands can increase awareness, trust, and familiarity, which are important variables in the purchase decision-making process.
 3. Consumers feel more sympathetic towards a brand if their products are promoted by a celebrity they admire or relate to. It's a simple psychological effect: people believe that purchasing a product that's promoted by a celebrity they admire, will allow them to emulate the celebrity's desired traits or attract similar people into their lives. They will associate the celebrities' success, beauty, athletic skill, etc. with a particular product.
 4. Research by Nielson conducted in 2015 broke down the level of trust in advertising formats by different generations. It found that celebrity endorsements resonate more strongly with Generation Z (ages 15-20) and Millennial (ages 21-34) audiences. Brands are taking advantage of that by increasingly utilising the social media communities of celebrities. Social media is a way for consumers, in particular, those of younger demographics, to engage and build intimate connections with the celebrities they follow, making it the place for these celebrities to plug a company or a product on their personal social media accounts.
 5. While celebrity endorsements certainly help to attract consumers, their direct influence on the consumers' purchasing decisions is inconclusive. As consumers are becoming better educated and have faster access to information, blind faith in celebrity endorsement is beginning to wane. They will be attracted to a brand because of a celebrity but they will quickly move away if the product does not perform. It's the quality of your product that will keep consumers coming back, not a celebrity link.
- FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS**
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP
6. A brand needs to tell the consumer why a product makes sense for them as individuals and what problem they can solve with it, not solely rely on a real-life Barbie doll, athlete or pop-culture icon. If they can't, their products will lose value over time and consumers will be the first ones to turn their backs.

NODIA



Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. Complete the following sentence appropriately.
Blind faith in celebrity endorsement is beginning to wane because
- ii. Fill in the blanks.
From Paragraph 3 we can infer that people believe that purchasing a product that's promoted by their favourite celebrity will help them (emulate/desire) their traits or (attract/repel) similar people into their lives.
- iii. Infer one reason for the following, based on information in Paragraph 2. Answer in about 40 words.
With celebrities vouching for promoting their products, brands can increase awareness, trust and familiarity.
- iv. List any one advantage of social media in brand promotion.
- v. On the basis of the figure, which age group can be said to be believing of the celebrity endorsement?
- vi. Select the pie chart that appropriately depicts the needs of the customers that are well-informed and educated.



vii. List any 2 benefits of 'celebrity endorsement' as mentioned in paragraph 2 in about 40 words.

viii. Select the correct option to complete the following sentence.

Consumers are no longer lured by celebrity endorsements because _____ (Paragraph 5)

- celebrities are too busy to promote these brands and their products.
- the brands are not collaborating with celebrities as they did earlier.
- they do not like celebrities anymore.
- they are more informed and will discontinue if the product lacks quality and does not perform.

Ans :

2020.

- consumers are getting better education and have faster access to information
- emulate, attract
- The give statement is correct because people follow and trust celebrities. They believe that everything their favourite celebrities use must be trustworthy. Hence, brands use celebrity endorsements to create popularity of their products.
- The consumer is better informed and well-educated. They are also actively involved on social media. This helps the brands to directly reach out to their consumers.
- On the basis of the figure, people in the age group 15-20 years can be said to be believing of the celebrity endorsement.
- (d) None of these
- The benefits of 'celebrity endorsement' are
 - When celebrities vouch for the products, it builds trust.

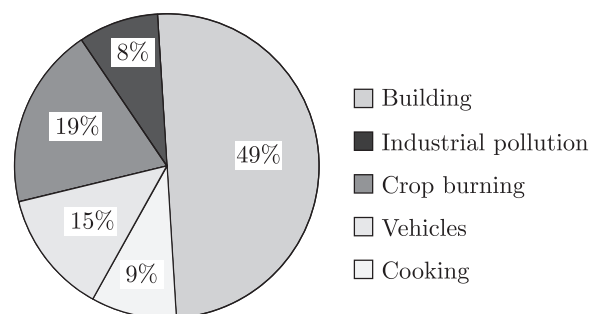
- It increases familiarity and influences decision-making.

viii. (d) they are more informed and will discontinue if the product lacks quality and does not perform.

Passage 16

- Air pollution affects health seriously. Of the most polluted 30 cities in the world, 21 were in India in 2019. As per a 2016 study, at least 140 million Indians breathe air that is 10 times or more over the WHO safe limit and 13 of the world's 20 cities with the highest annual levels of air pollution are in India.
- Air pollution kills 2 million Indians prematurely every year. Emissions come from vehicles and industry, whereas in rural areas, much of the pollution stems from biomass burning for cooking and keeping warm. In autumn and winter months, large scale crop residue burning in farms — a cheaper alternative to mechanical tilling — is a major source of smoke, smog and particulate pollution.
- India has a low per capita emissions of greenhouse gases but the country as a whole is the third largest greenhouse gas producer after China and the United States. A 2013 study on non-smokers has found that have 30% have weaker lung function than Europeans.
- The Air (Prevention and Control of Pollution) Act, 1981 has failed to reduce or regulate pollution because of poor enforcement of the rules

Sources of Air Pollution



- In 2015, GOI, together with IIT Kanpur launched the National Air Quality Index. In 2019, India launched 'The National Clean Air Programme' with tentative national target of 20%–30% reduction in PM_{2.5} and PM₁₀ concentrations by 2024, considering 2017 as the base year for comparison. It will be rolled out in 102 cities that are considered to have air quality worse than the National Ambient Air Quality Standards.

6. There are other initiatives such as a 1,600 kilometre-long and 5 kilometre-wide The Great Green Wall of Aravalli-an ecological corridor along Aravalli range from Gujarat to Shivalik Hills with the planting of 1.35 billion native trees over 10 years to combat the pollution.
7. In 2019, IIT Bombay, in partnership with the McKelvey School of Engineering (USA), launched the Aerosol and Air Quality Research Facility to study air pollution in India.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. Complete the following analogy appropriately, based on your understanding of paragraphs 1 and 2.
The fact- 'Of the most polluted 30 cities in the world, 21 were in India in 2019' is comparable with urban Indians living in gas-chambers and the air that we breathe can be compared to a mixture of
- ii. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate option from those given in brackets, based on your understanding of paragraph 2.
Air quality in India has worsened so much in the last few years that is contributing to the premature deaths of 2 million Indians every year is (a fact/ opinion) because unfortunately, it is (a/an subjective judgement/ objective detail) that proves that air pollution can be fatal to human health.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

- iii. Toxic air emissions are not just rampantly widespread in the cities but are equally pervasive in rural areas threatening the health of people. Justify the following, in about 40 words.
- iv. List any two examples of indoor or domestic pollution as mentioned in the passage.
- v. Study the statement.
Mechanical tilling is an unpopular method to remove stubs from the fields.
State any one inference that can be drawn from this.
- vi. Select the options that correctly display what 'tilling' signifies. (Reference-Paragraph 2)



(i)



(ii)



(iii)



(iv)



(v)

- (a) Only (i) (b) Only (ii)
(c) (ii), (iii) and (iv) (d) (i) and (v)

- vii. Mention a few steps taken by the government to tackle the problem of air pollution and why some of the efforts fail to make a mark. (Answer in about 40 words)

- viii. Select the correct option to complete the following sentence.

In 2019, India Launched. The National Clean Air Programme with tentative national target of

-----.

- 20%- 30% reduction in PM 2.5.
 - Study air pollution in 102 cities that are worst affected.
 - 20%-30% reduction in PM 10.
 - Take 2017 as the base year.
- (a) 1 and 2 (b) 2 and 3
(c) 1 and 3 (d) 2 and 4

Ans :

2020

- i. toxic gases that are 10 times or more over the WHO safe limit.
- ii. a fact, an objective detail.
- iii. 102 Indian cities are considered to have air quality worse than the National Ambient Air Quality Standards with at least 140 million Indians breathing toxic air whereas, in rural areas, much

- of the pollution stems from biomass burning for cooking and keeping warm especially, in autumn and winter months.
- iv. 1. Domestic cooking using biomass and keeping warm in winter.
2. Passive smoking.
 - v. Our farmers prefer to get rid of the agricultural residue by burning it because it is cheaper and commonly-used method.
 - vi. (d) (i) and (v)
 - vii. The government and IIT Kanpur have launched the National Air Quality Index. An ecological corridor along the Aravalli range from Gujarat to Shivalik Hills is being established by planting 1.35 billion native trees. But poor enforcement of the laws e.g. The Air Act, 1981 is a drawback we suffer from.
 - viii. (c) 1 and 3

Passage 17

1. Data released by India's food quality regulator, the Food Safety and Standards Authority of India (FSSAI) earlier, shows that nearly 25% of samples of edible goods it tested this year were found to be adulterated or in violation of prescribed standards.
2. The samples included milk and dairy products, spices, cereals as well as branded food products. A total of 85,729 samples were sent, so far. FSSAI carried out the testing following a spike in complaints from consumers over quality and adulteration, said an agency official.
3. According to the data, 20,390 samples of the 85,729 sent to the agency were found to be non-conforming to prescribed standards. While agency officials maintain that Food Safety Officers in each state regularly test samples to check for compliance and also take recourse in cases of violations according to the Food Safety and Standards Act, 2006, experts claim that poor enforcement on the ground and a lack of awareness plague the process.
4. Consumer activist Bijon Mishra said the lengthy legal procedure involved in penalizing violators provides an opportunity to the accused to keep doing business. "Law enforcement is very poor. It takes years to finalise a case and by that time, sellers keep on making profits. Moreover, people are also not aware. Hardly anybody complains about adulteration," he added.

5. Umesh Sharma, an advocate, said enforcement of rules is very poor on the ground. "The issue is directly related to public health and the government should take serious initiatives to implement food safety rules," he said. Data from the agency shows an abysmal conviction rate.
6. In 2017, the Law Commission issued a set of recommendations regarding the issue. The panel had recommended that IPC Sections 272 (dealing with adulteration of food and drinks) and 273 (dealing with the sale of noxious food and drinks) be amended to make adulteration a serious crime. It was also recommended that depending on the gravity of the offence, punishment can include life imprisonment and the minimum sentence should be six months in jail term.
7. The panel, headed by former Supreme Court judge BS Chauhan, also wanted amendments to Section 357 of the Criminal Procedure Code so that courts can order compensation for victims.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. Complete the following sentence.
IPC 272 and 273 amendments were added to -----.
- ii. Fill in the blank to complete the following sentence.
..... allows the penalised to continue their business.
- iii. Explain why penalising adulteration in India is challenging in about 40 words.
- iv. What did the data revealed by FSSAI show?
- v. Substitute the word 'punishing' with ONE WORD similar in meaning, in the following, sentence from Paragraph 4.
The lengthy procedure involved in punishing violators provides an opportunity to the accused to keep doing business.
- vi. Based on your understanding of the passage, choose the option that lists the punishments set for offenders.
(a) Life imprisonment
(b) Public shaming
(c) Sentence of 6 months
(d) Both (a) and (c)
- vii. Which samples were tasted by FSSAI and why? Also, what did the data suggest?

- viii. Which of the following recommendations were made by the law commission regarding the issue?
- Minimum sentence should be six months' jail term.
 - Depending on the gravity of the offence, punishment can include life imprisonment.
 - Adulteration became a serious crime.
 - All of the above

Ans :

2019

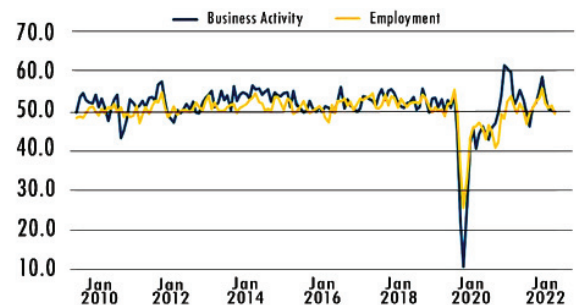
- regulate the quality of food in India.
- Lengthy legal procedure
- Penalising adulteration in India is challenging because the legal procedure involved in penalising violators provides an opportunity to the accused to keep doing business. Law enforcement is very poor. It takes years to finalise a case and by that time, seller keep on making profits. Moreover, people are also not aware. Hardly anybody complains about adulteration.
- The data revealed by FSSAI shows that nearly 25% of samples of edible goods it tested this year were found to be adulterated or in violation of prescribed standards.
- penalizing
- (d) Both (a) and (c)
- The samples tested by FSSAI included milk and dairy products, spices, cereals as well as branded food products. FSSAI carried out the testing following a spike in complaints from consumers over quality and adulteration. According to the data, 20,390 samples out of the 85,729 sent to the agency were found to be non-conforming to prescribed standards.
- (d) All of the above

Passage 18

- Domestic tourism in India reached a peak in 2019, with more than 232 crores of domestic tourist visits and 3.14 crore international tourist visits, the highest since 2001 according to the tourism ministry. India moved to the 34th position on the World Economic Forum's Travel & Tourism Competitiveness Index in 2019 from the 65th rank in 2013. Covid, however, halted the robust performance in its tracks, with domestic tourist visits falling to just 61 crore and international tourist visits to 71.7 lakh in 2020. However, tourism ministry data shows that while international visits to India dropped even further in 2021, to just 10.5 lakh, domestic visits increased by 11 per cent.

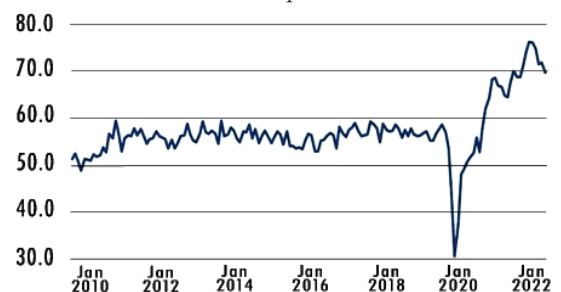
- While rising costs are having an impact, all flights and hotels are fully booked, and prices for both are higher than they have been for some time. People who would otherwise have travelled abroad, are travelling within India instead. While branded and luxury hotels were among the earliest ones to recover their loyal clientele, small-scale and medium enterprises, which constitute more than 80 percent of the tourism industry, have not been able to recover fully yet. However, the domestic industry is gaining foothold.

Value over 50 denotes expansion and below 50 implies contraction



High and rising costs weigh on the sector

Value over 50 denotes expansion and below 50 implies contraction



- Rajasthan, which has been heavily dependent on foreign visitors, saw much distress. Most of its luxury heritage Havelis and palaces that earlier saw occupancy throughout the winter months with foreign tourists, now remain available and within reach for domestic tourists. The prices went almost down 30 per cent from their 2019 peak numbers. Likewise, prices in some Goa and Kerala hotels, too, dropped to almost one-third. These are now starting to recover due to the increasing number of domestic as well as inbound tourists.
- Prices of hotels at weekend destinations increased after the tourist rush, thanks to the techie crowd of Bengaluru and Hyderabad. In northern India, tourists flooded holiday destinations like Srinagar,

Gulmarg, and Rishikesh. The young consumer is moving towards private and experiential stays and wellness experiences. The booking windows have become shorter and the length of stays is longer. Inbound tourism will recover by 2023 despite the hiccups.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. Complete the following analogy appropriately, based on your understanding of paragraphs 1 and 2.

The fact that branded and luxury hotels in India were among the earliest ones to recover their loyal clientele, small-scale and medium enterprises, which constitute more than 80 per cent of the tourism industry, have not been able to recover fully is comparable with big movie production houses who survive even big flops but _____.

- ii. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate option from those given in brackets, based on your understanding of paragraph 1.

International tourism trends in India from 2020 to 2021 show that the actual impact of Covid on tourism was felt more in 2021 and not in 2020 when international visits to India dropped even further in 2021, to just 10.5 lakhs from 71.7 lakhs is (a/an fact/opinion) because it is (a/an subjective judgement/objective detail).

- iii. "People who would otherwise have travelled abroad, are travelling within India instead." Justify the statement in about 40 words with reference to 2019.

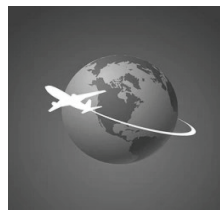
NO NEED TO PURCHASE SAMPLE PAPERS
Download India's Best 20 Sample Papers

DOWNLOAD NODIA APP

**Every School conduct Pre-Board
From These Sample Papers**

- iv. Based on the report released by the Ministry of Tourism, which two main tourism trends mark the young consumers' choices in selecting holiday destinations?
- v. Study the statement :
Hotels in the suburbs of Bengaluru and Hyderabad were able to recover from dipping tourist footfalls sooner than expected.
State any one inference that can be drawn from this.

- vi. Select the option that correctly displays what 'inbound' signifies contextually in the passage. (Reference-Paragraph 3)



(i)



(ii)



(iii)



(iv)



(v)

- (a) Only (i) (b) Only (ii)
(c) (ii), (iii) and (iv) (d) (i) and (v)

- vii. Infer one benefit and one drawback of Coronavirus on domestic tourist footfalls. Answer in about 40 words.

- viii. Study the statement given below.

Domestic tourism is showing positive trends despite being weighed down by inflation.

Which of the following options substantiate this statement?

- (a) All flights and hotels are fully booked.
(b) Luxury hotels have recovered their loyal clientele.
(c) Heritage properties in Rajasthan are now in the reach of domestic tourists.
(d) Room rents in Goa and Kerala have dropped to one third of the earlier rates.

Ans :

- i. smaller ones crash and disappear at the first crisis.
ii. a fact, an objective detail

- iii. Domestic tourism in India reached a peak in 2019, with more than 232 crores of domestic tourist visits and 3.14 crore international tourist visits, the highest since 2001 according to the tourism ministry.
- iv. 1. The young consumer is moving towards private and experiential stays and wellness experiences.
2. The booking windows have become shorter and the length of stays is longer.
- v. The young crowd engaged in the IT sector in these two metros has been heavily patronising the weekend destinations in the suburbs.
- vi. (b) Only (ii)
- vii. **Benefit :**
Domestic tourist visits increased by 11 per cent. Goa, Kerala and Rajasthan saw more domestic visitors when the international footfalls fell.
Drawback :
Rising costs or inflation strongly impacted the transport and hotel bookings made by the average tourist.
- viii. (a) All flights and hotels are fully booked.

Passage 19

1. People worldwide are living longer. Today most people can expect to live into their sixties and beyond. Every country in the world is experiencing growth in both the size and the proportion of older persons in the population. By 2030, 1 in 6 people in the world will be aged 60 years or over—the share of this group will increase from 1 billion in 2020 to 1.4 billion and by 2050, the world's population of people aged 60 years and older will be 2.1 billion. The number of persons aged 80 years or older is expected to triple between 2020 and 2050 to reach 426 million.
2. While this shift in distribution of a country's population towards older ages—known as population ageing—started in high-income countries (for example in Japan 30% of the population is already over 60 years old), it is now low- and middle-income countries that are experiencing the greatest change. By 2050, two-thirds of the world's population over 60 years will live in low- and middle-income countries.
3. By income group, the sharpest growth in the numbers of older people will occur in countries currently classified as middle income. This is unsurprising, as these countries make up 74 per cent of the world's population. What's surprising

is that these numbers are increasing at a much faster rate than in either low or high-income countries.

4. Population aging is sounding alarms worldwide. The older people will have to spend their investments to support themselves pulling money from the economy. Another issue is fiscal stress. Government treasuries will be strained by rising pension liabilities, the cost of health and long-term care associated with the expected growth in the incidence of chronic diseases such as diabetes, heart ailments, dementia, cancer, among others.
5. Various responses could cushion the economic burden of population aging. These include policy reforms to promote the health and pension financing of the old. Raising the legal age of retirement, which has been relatively stable in nearly all countries for the past several decades would also ease the burden. Additional approaches include efforts to increase health systems' emphasis on early detection and on prevention of disease through, for example, better awareness of the benefits of physical activity and subsidization of such activity. Relaxing the institutional and economic barriers to international immigration from regions with relatively large working-age populations could alleviate labour shortages.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. Complete the following analogy appropriately, based on your understanding of paragraphs 1 and 2.
From the passage, we can infer that the dynamics of greying population shifting from high-income to low and middle-income countries, is comparable with the regular oscillation
- ii. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate option from those given in brackets, based on your understanding of paragraph 2.
The population researchers say that it is unsurprising that the middle-income countries will see the sharpest growth in the numbers of older people because these countries currently make up 74 percent of the world population is (a fact! opinion) because it is (a/ an subjective judgement! objective detail).
- iii. With vast numbers of greying population inundating the world, the effects on the economies of the countries would be devastating. How could this situation be tackled? Answer in about 40 words.

- iv. List any two examples of 'cushioning economic burdens' as referred to, in Paragraph 5.
- v. The rate of growth of size and the proportion of older persons in the population has gone up for every country in the world.
State any one inference that can be drawn from this based on information in paragraph 1.
- vi. Select the option that correctly displays what 'immigration' signifies in the passage. (Reference Paragraph 5)



(i)



(ii)



(iii)



(iv)



(v)

- (a) Only (i) (b) Only (ii)
(c) (ii), (iii) and (iv) (d) (i) and (v)

- vii. The greying population numbers in the world are set to get concentrated in the low and middle-income countries by 2050 that were hitherto higher in rich countries. Infer one benefit and one drawback of this great shift. (Answer in about 40 words)
- viii. Select the correct option to complete the following sentence.
The aging of global population is going to have far-reaching consequences for the world economy

also because the old people will have to

- (a) liquidate their investments.
(b) take bank loans.
(c) borrow from relatives
(d) be dependent on their children

Ans :

- i. of a pendulum from one extreme to another.
- ii. a fact, an objective detail.
- iii. Relaxing the institutional and economic barriers to allow international immigration of skilled labour from regions with relatively large working-age populations could alleviate labour shortages. Supporting the needs of the aging but still healthy workforce could also help.
- iv. 1. Raising the legal age of retirement.
2. Improve and increase the health systems.
- v. People worldwide are living longer.
- vi. (b) Only (ii)
- vii. By 2050, when the shift will take place, the rich countries will have young populations with skilled workforce which will be an advantage and low and middle-income countries will be dealing with large old populace and thus, run acute labour shortages. This will be a drawback.
- viii. (a) liquidate their investments

Passage 20

1. Today sustainability-environmental, social and economic-is increasingly recognised as the benchmark for all tourism businesses. As noted by the UN World Tourism Organisation, 57 per cent of international tourist arrivals will be in emerging economies, by 2030.
2. The various 'Tourism Terms' are : Eco Tourism, Ethical Tourism, Geo Tourism, Pro-Poor Tourism, Responsible Tourism and Sustainable Tourism. Based on the study conducted by Travel Bureau, the market profile of an ecotourist is given below:
Age : 35-54 years old, although age varied with activity and other factors such as cost.
Gender : 50 per cent females and 50 per cent males, although, clear differences based on activity were found.
Education : 82 per cent were college graduates, a shift in interest in ecotourism from those who have high levels of education to those with less education was also found, indicating an expansion into mainstream markets.

Household Composition : No major differences were found between general tourists and experienced tourists.

Party Composition : A majority (60 per cent) of experienced ecotourism respondents stated they prefer to travel as a couple, while only 15 per cent stated they preferred to travel with their families, and 13 per cent preferring to travel alone.

Trip Duration : The largest group of experienced ecotourists (50 per cent) preferred trips lasting 8-14 days.

Expenditure : Experienced ecotourists were willing to spend more than general tourists, the largest group (26 per cent).

Important Elements : The top three responses of experienced ecotourists were:

- (a) wilderness setting
- (b) wildlife viewing
- (c) hiking/trekking.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. Complete the following analogy appropriately, based on your understanding of paragraph 1.
We can say that as sustainable development should be integral to careful consumption of resources similarly, multi-dimensional sustainability
- ii. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate option from those given in brackets, based on your understanding of paragraph 2.
The profile of an ecotourist varies according to the level of education, gender, age, etc. but a clear differentiation in choice of activities between males and females is a/an (fact/opinion) because it is a/an (subjective judgement/objective detail).
- iii. Justify the following, in about 40 words.
An experienced ecotourist is not averse to spending more money and time on his travel.
- iv. Based on the survey results, which two factors indicate a shift in mainstream travel markets when we talk about ecotourism?
- v. As noted by the UN World Tourism Organisation, 57 per cent of international tourist arrivals will be in emerging economies, by 2030. State any one inference that can be drawn from this.
- vi. Select the option that correctly displays what 'mainstream' signifies. (Reference-Paragraph 2)



(i)



(ii)



(iii)



(iv)



(v)

- (a) Only (ii)
- (b) Only (i)
- (c) (ii), (iii) and (iv)
- (d) (i) and (v)

vii. Infer one benefit and one drawback of household composition in the survey on ecotourism. Answer in about 40 words.

viii. Choose the option that is the correct answer for the following.

1. Rama Kant, an NRI, loves animals and wishes to travel to places that safeguard their rights and inculcate awareness of their rights. What kind of tourist is he?
 2. Vimal Singh from the USA is an environmental scientist and has always chosen to travel to places that are examples of a symbiotic relationship between man and nature. What kind of tourist is he?
- (a) 1 is a geotourist and 2 is a responsible tourist.
 - (b) 1 is an ecotourist and 2 is a geotourist.
 - (c) 1 is a sustainable tourist and 2 is a pro-poor tourist.
 - (d) 1 is an ethical tourist and 2 is a geotourist.

Ans :

2017

- i. has become the benchmark for all tourism businesses.
- ii. fact, objective detail.
- iii. An experienced ecotourist on average likes to spend 8 to 14 days of his life and spends 26% more on travel provided he gets opportunities to see his preferred wilderness setting, wildlife viewing, and hiking and trekking facilities.
- iv.
 1. A shift in interest in ecotourism from those who have high levels of education to those with less education has been discerned.
 2. An equal number of men and women are interested in ecotourism.
- v. Developing countries will become tourist hubs attracting 57% of international tourists by 2030 and tourism will help generate large volumes of revenue for their economies according to UNWTO.
- vi. (a) Only (ii)

- vii. One benefit and one drawback of household composition in the survey on ecotourism respectively are that almost 60% of the respondents stated they prefer to travel as a couple, while only 15 percent stated they preferred to travel with their families.
- viii. (d) 1 is an ethical tourist and 2 is a geotourist.

NO NEED TO PURCHASE SAMPLE PAPERS
Download India's Best 20 Sample Papers

DOWNLOAD NODIA APP

**Every School conduct Pre-Board
From These Sample Papers**

Passage 21

1. "India is a major tourist destination and is therefore a strategic ally to strengthen the recovery of Travel & Tourism activity in the region. In 2019, India's Travel & Tourism sector made up 6.8 per cent of the country's total GDP, and 8 per cent of total employment. The government of India's leadership is instrumental and essential for us to be able to work towards a single agenda and the reactivation of international travel to benefit the millions of people in India who depend on the sector for their livelihoods," said a spokesperson from WTTC.
2. In India, travel and hospitality contributes 9.3 per cent to the overall Indian GDP and accounts for over 8 per cent of India's total employment. It is therefore imperative to come together and focus on the revival of the sector across the globe with optimism, hope and unity in solidarity of the industry. The recovery plan presented to the tourism ministers from the world includes The, that focus on key measures to reactivate international tourism. The measures include a globally recognised international testing programme; strengthening and standardising protocols between countries to reduce risk and regain confidence from the traveller; and international coordination for the reopening of the sector, with the highest priority to health, safety and certainty for the traveller.
3. According to data, the travel and tourism sector generated 14.1 trillion (USD 208.9 billion) in 2016, which is world's 7th largest in terms of absolute size; the sum is equivalent to 9.6% of India's GDP. Additionally, the sector created 40.3 million jobs in 2016, which ranks India 2nd in the world

in terms of total employment generated. The sector accounts for 9.3% of the country's total jobs. India's Travel and Tourism sector was also the fastest growing amongst the G20 countries, growing by 8.5% in 2016. 6.7% growth is forecast for 2017 in this sector.

The President and CEO, WTTC, David Scowsill says, "We encourage the Indian government to continue to adopt policies that encourage travellers, such as the new visa regime, enable investment in vital infrastructure, and allow companies to do business. India is a beautiful and diverse tourism destination, with the right policies in place it will no doubt continue to grow towards ranking even higher in terms of its tourism economy."

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. Complete the following analogy appropriately, based on your understanding of paragraphs 1 and 2.
We can say that the success of the recovery plan put forward by the WTTC to reactivate tourism in the world after the pandemic derives its strength from the robust and _____ especially in 2016.
- ii. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate option from those given in brackets, based on your understanding of paragraph 2.
According to the author, the revival of travel and hospitality has to be executed with optimism, hope and unity among the countries of the world with a special focus on India because this sector contributes 9.3 percent to the overall Indian GDP and accounts for over 8 percent of India's total employment is _____ (a fact/an opinion) and _____ (a/an subjective judgement/objective detail).
- iii. Justify the following, in about 40 words.
The plan proposed by the Indian government will help revive tourism on an international scale and reactivate it with a key focus on the travellers.
- iv. Based on the survey results, which two policies will greatly enhance travel and encourage travellers according to David Scowsill?
- v. Infer one reason for the following, based on information in paragraph 1.
The WTTC acknowledges the importance of the Indian tourism industry in reviving international travel.
- vi. Select the option that correctly displays what 'tourism infrastructure' signifies. (Ref-Paragraph 2)



(i)



(ii)



(iii)



(iv)



(v)

- (a) Only (i) (b) Only (ii)
 (c) (ii), (iii) and (iv) (d) (i) and (v)

vii. Infer one benefit and one drawback of the Indian Travel and Hospitality sector's remarkable growth in 2016 as compared to 2019. Answer in about 40 words.

viii. Which of the following is the main takeaway from the study mentioned in the passage?

- (a) It is the fastest-growing sector among G20 countries.
 (b) The travel and tourism sector generated jobs worth Rs. 14.1 trillion in 2016.
 (c) Travel-friendly policies will help India create more employment in this sector.
 (d) The reactivation of international travel needs a single coordinated agenda.

Ans :

- i. the fastest growth of this sector amongst the G20 countries
- ii. a fact, an objective detail.
- iii. The focus is on the safety and health of the travellers. For this, the plan includes measures like standardising protocols between countries to reduce risk and regain confidence from the traveller, the highest priority to their health and safety and better coordination among the countries.

- iv.
 1. The new visa regime of the Indian government.
 2. Creating a business-friendly atmosphere for the international companies.
- v. Because India is a major tourist destination in the world.
- vi. (b) Only (ii)
- vii. One disadvantage is that the sector made up 6.8 % of the country's total GDP in 2019 as compared to its contribution of 9.6% to the GDP in 2016. The benefit is that the sector accounts for 9.3% of the country's total jobs.
- viii. (d) The reactivation of international travel needs a single coordinated agenda.

NO NEED TO PURCHASE SAMPLE PAPERS
 Download India's Best 20 Sample Papers

DOWNLOAD NODIA APP

**Every School conduct Pre-Board
 From These Sample Papers**

Passage 22

1. The most characteristic feature of spiders is their ability to produce silken threads. Spiders normally have six finger-like silk glands, called 'spinnerets' located beneath their abdomen. To spin a web, the spider squeezes the silk out of its body through two small holes. The liquid silk is thicker than water and dries into a fine thread as soon as it comes in contact with air. Spider silk is much stronger than steel and resists breakage because of its elasticity. It can stretch up to 140 per cent of its original length. The diameter of these silken threads is about 10,000 of an inch. Spiders use this silk to make webs to trap their prey. The egg sacs of some spiders are also made of silk which pre-treats the unborn progeny. Sometimes the spider can also use its silk as a safety feature. A certain species of spider 'phidippus apacheanecs' trails a safety line of fine silk as it jumps. It uses the silk line to recover if it misses its target. The silk of 'N aphils Spider' is the strongest natural fiber known.

The spinning of webs is a remarkable example of instinctive behaviour. A spider does not have to learn how to make a web, although spinning itself can be adopted to unique circumstances. For example, 'orb' webs are circular in shape and take an hour to build. Funnel spiders pin a net-like entrance to their homes, which helps to trap food. Similarly, trap door spiders dig their homes

and spin a trap door out of their silk for trapping insects.

Black and Yellow Garden Spider	Fisher Spider
	
Typically found in fields and gardens during daytime	Do not need webs to catch prey, track down insects and pounce on them.
Common House Spider	Woodlouse Hunting Spider
	
Found in houses, sheds and garages; Typically weave their webs in ceiling and window corners.	Spotted outside in leaves, wood or rock pill bugs,
Grass Spiders	
	
Webs are weaved in grass, visible in morning dew	

3. As integral components of our biosphere, spiders have an intrinsic existence value. They are efficient predators that play an important role in controlling the pests of cotton. They are also a source of food for other creatures such as birds and wasps. Thus, the presence of spiders is an ecological indicator signalling the health of natural ecosystem.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. Complete the following blank appropriately, based on your understanding of paragraph 2.

We can say that Funnel spiders and Trap Door spiders building structures to trap insects for food is comparable with a rattrap set for a mouse but with a big difference: _____.

- ii. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate option from those given in brackets, based on your understanding of paragraph 1.

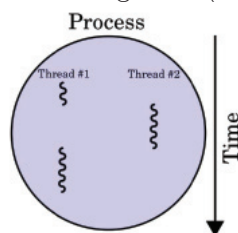
Spider silk is much stronger than steel and resists breakage because of its elasticity. It can stretch up to 140 per cent of its original length is _____

(a/an fact opinion) because it is _____ (a/an subjective judgement/objective detail)

- iii. Justify the following, in about 40 words.

Spiders are great indicators of a healthy ecosystem.

- iv. Based on the passage name two species each of spiders found in our homes and outdoors.
- v. What kind of behaviour does the author say the spiders exhibit when at work? State any one inference that can be drawn from this.
- vi. Select the option that correctly displays what 'threads' signifies. (Reference-Paragraph 1)



(i)



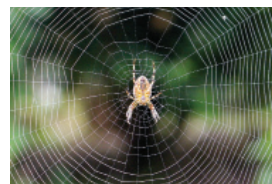
(ii)



(iii)



(iv)



(v)

- (a) Only (i) (b) (ii), (iii) and (v)
(c) Only (v) (d) (i) and (iv)

- vii. Infer one benefit and one drawback of having spiders whether at home or in the garden. Answer in about 40 words.

- viii. Which of the following is an incorrect fact about spiders from the study mentioned in the passage?

- (a) Woodhouse Hunting spiders live on leaves and wood.
(b) Naphils Spider weaves the silkiest web known.
(c) Spinning can be adopted to unique circumstances.
(d) The egg sacs of some spiders are also made of silk.

Ans :

2015

- i. a rattrap will necessarily have a bait but spider webs won't.
- ii. a fact, an objective detail.
- iii. Spiders help in controlling the pests on cotton. They are also a source of food for other creatures such as birds and wasps. Thus, the presence of spiders is an ecological indicator signalling the health of a natural ecosystem.
- iv. 1. Found in homes: Fisher Spider and Common House Spider.
2. Found outdoors: Black and Yellow Garden Spider, Woodhouse Hunting Spider.
- v. Spiders exhibit instinctive behaviour when they spin a web because they don't have to learn it. the knowledge of spinning is evolutionary.
- vi. (c) Only (v)
- vii. House spiders make webs in ceilings and window corners to trap insects at our homes whereas, the garden spiders keep the pests in the gardens at bay. For example, spiders are particularly useful in protecting cotton crops and keeping our homes, farms, and gardens free of pests.
- viii. (b) Naphils Spider weaves the silkiest web known.

protection, comes the protection of other species and the habitat of which they are all a part.

5. Top 3 National Parks in India where the Snow Leopard can likely be seen
 - i. Kibber Wildlife Sanctuary - Himachal Pradesh
 - ii. Ulley Valley - Ladakh
 - iii. Hemis National Park - Himachal Pradesh



Passage 23

1. India is home to an estimated 10% of the global Snow Leopard population spread across five Himalayan states of Jammu and Kashmir, Himachal Pradesh, Uttarakhand, Sikkim and Arunachal Pradesh which is only 5% of the available global habitat for the animal.
2. Project Snow Leopard was introduced in India by the Project Snow Leopard Committee instituted by the Ministry of Environment and Forests, Government of India, in the year 2009 to safeguard and conserve India's unique natural heritage of high-altitude wildlife populations and their habitats by promoting conservation through participatory policies and actions.
3. Project Tiger and Project Elephant are prevalent in India with the former introduced in 1973 garnering worldwide attention.
4. The Snow Leopard usually occurs at an altitude of >2700m above sea level and is the apex predator in the Himalayan Region along with the Tibetan Wolf. The project is not only to protect the Snow Leopard but as with Project Tiger, it is considered an umbrella species and with its

The reasons for the introduction of Project Snow Leopard are as follows.

- i. High altitudes of India > 3000m including the Himalayan and Trans-Himalayan biogeographic zones support a unique wildlife assemblage of global conservation.
- ii. There has been relatively less attention on the region from the viewpoint of wildlife conservation.
- iii. The region represents a vast rangeland system supporting important traditional pastoral economies and lifestyles.
- iv. The region provides essential ecosystem services and harbours river systems vital for the nation's food security.
- v. India has ratified international agreements promoting the conservation of high-altitude wildlife species such as the snow leopard.
- vi. The region is important for the country's national security as well as international relations.
- vii. The high-altitude wildlife in India today faces a variety of threats.
- viii. The existing high-altitude protected areas in India require considerable strengthening.

- ix. Wildlife Management in the region needs to be made participatory.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. Complete the following sentence appropriately.
Project Snow Leopard was introduced in India to _____.
- ii. Select the appropriate option to fill in the blanks from Paragraph 4.
The _____ and the _____ which usually occur at an altitude of >2700m, are the apex predators in the Himalayan Region.
- iii. What do you understand by the word 'ratified' in point number (vi) in paragraph 6? Why do you think India has 'ratified' the international agreements? (Answer in about 40 words)
- iv. Infer the meaning of the phrase 'snow leopard is considered an umbrella species' from the passage.
- v. In which states/UTs of India can the Snow Leopards be found?
- vi. Select the correct option to complete the following sentence.
The reason for the introduction of Project Snow Leopard in high altitudes is that _____.
(a) the region provides essential ecosystem services and harbours river systems vital for the nation's food security
(b) the region has a cold climate
(c) the region offers a very less chance of survival for other animals
(d) snow Leopard survive better in such climates
- vii. List any two reasons for the introduction of Project Snow Leopard in high altitudes in about 40 words.
- viii. Which of the following is an appropriate title for paragraph 2?
(a) Project Snow Leopard
(b) Project Tiger
(c) Preserving India's wild
(d) Man in the Wild

Ans :

2014

- i. safeguard and conserve India's unique natural heritage of high-altitude wildlife population and their habitats by promoting conservation through participatory policies and actions.

- ii. Snow Leopard, Tibetan Wolf
- iii. The word 'ratified' means (especially of governments or organisations) to make an agreement official. India has ratified the international agreements to protect the snow Leopard as it is an endangered species.
- iv. 'Umbrella' species refers to such species whose protection will ensure the protection of other species.
- v. Snow Leopards can be found in four Himalayan states - Himachal Pradesh, Uttarakhand, Sikkim, Arunachal Pradesh - and the union territory Jammu and Kashmir.
- vi. (a) the region provides essential ecosystem services and harbours river systems vital for the nation's food security
- vii. Two reasons for the introduction of Project snow Leopard in high altitudes are
 1. High altitudes of India > 3000m including the Himalayan and Trans-Himalayan biogeographic zones support a unique wildlife assemblage of global conservation.
 2. There has been relatively less attention on the region from the viewpoint of wildlife conservation.
- viii. (c) Preserving India's wild

Passage 24

1. When we think of countries that are the major consumers of water resources we tend to think of the water used in our homes, such as water used for bathing and lawn sprinklers. However, studies have shown that home water use is only the tip of the iceberg and a large majority of the water consumed is hidden from plain view. The chart showing the largest water consuming countries of the world is thus an eye opener.
2. As India is an agricultural country, the most important crops of India are rice, wheat and sugarcane. Significantly these crops are the most water-consuming crops. Rice, a major crop export, consumes about 3,500 litres of water for a kilogram of grain produced. Punjab which is the 3rd largest producer of rice in India is completely dependent on groundwater for the production of its rice and consumes two to three times more water than Bihar and West Bengal to produce a kilogram of rice.

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

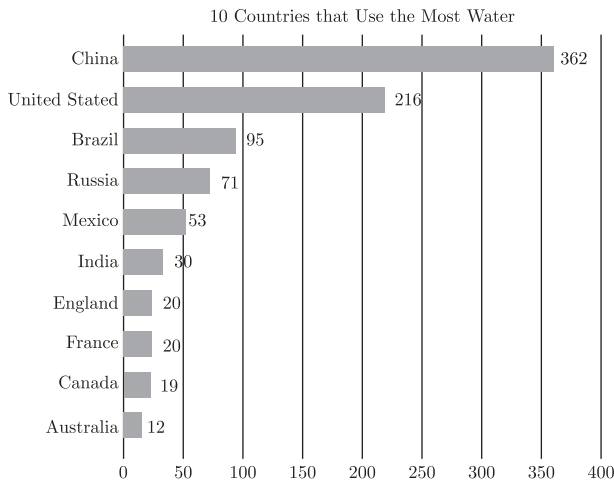
Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!



3. Sugarcane is another water-guzzling crop in India, which is a very popular crop among farmers in Maharashtra because they are assured of marketing by sugar mills. The primary source of water for growing this crop is groundwater, whereas states like Bihar which is more suitable for the production of sugarcane produces only 4% of the country's total sugar cane output.
4. Thus, measures need to be taken to ensure that crop production patterns within the country, across different states, are aligned to regional water availability.. Also, Agriculture policies should be put in place to limit the export of water-intensive crops. Emphasis should also be placed on the adoption of water- efficient technologies, management systems, farmer education, and advisory services to improve water consumption in agriculture.
5. Crops in India are irrigated by several methods. Some farmers take to flooding the whole field. Others resort to channelling water between rows of plants while others resort to watering using large sprinklers. But the better method is to let water drop into plants using drip irrigation. Hence, India should consider investing in scaling up micro-irrigation to make India's agriculture more water-efficient. Drip irrigation is the most efficient and appropriate irrigation system. Instead of wetting the whole field surface, water is applied only to the plant root zone. The P.T.O Government of India's 'Per Drop More Crop' component under the Pradhan Mantri Krishi Sinchayee Yojana promotes the use of drip and sprinkler irrigation by farmers.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. Complete the following sentence appropriately, based on your understanding of data given in passage.
On analysing the data given in the passage, we

can say that China and America guzzle water in excess followed by _____.

- ii. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate options given in the brackets, based on your understanding of paragraph 2.

The more the farmers appreciate and value the efficiency in using water-saving technology in agriculture, the lesser the consumption and replenishment of groundwater, in the long run, is _____ (a fact/ an opinion) because it is _____ (a/an subjective judgement/ objective detail).

- iii. How would the alignment between the crop production patterns and the consumption of water in agriculture affect India's agriculture positively? Answer in about 40 words.

NODIA

- i. Based on the passage, how can the farmers be convinced to change the way they grow crops? List at least two changes that can be implemented at the ground level and at the government level.
- v. Study the statement 'A large majority of the water consumption is hidden from plain view.' State any one inference that can be drawn from this.
- vi. Select the option that correctly display what 'drip irrigation' signifies. (Reference-Paragraph 5)



(i)



(ii)



(iii)



(iv)



(v)

- (a) Only (i) (b) Only (iii)
(c) (ii), (iii) and (iv) (d) (i) and (iii)

vii. Infer one benefit and one drawback of growing rice, wheat and sugarcane by Indian farmers. Answer in about 40 words.

viii. Select the correct option to complete the following sentence:

If India _____ and _____ its irrigation methods or systems at a micro-level, our agriculture will become more water-efficient.

- (a) invests, scales-up (b) organises, adopts
(c) channels, organises (d) aligns, channels

Ans :

2013

- i. Brazil and Russia.
- ii. a fact, an objective detail.
- iii. The crop production pattern in India is faulty- for example, Punjab relies solely on groundwater for rice and Maharashtra prefers growing sugarcane whereas both these crops can be grown in West Bengal and Bihar more sustainably. This will save water and replenish it too'
- iv. 1. the adoption of water-efficient technologies and farmer education to improve water consumption in agriculture.
2. limit the export of water-intensive crops.
- v. Other sectors like agriculture and industries consume more water than common households.
- vi. (a) Only (i)
- vii. Rice, wheat, and sugarcane are major crops that are produced for consumption, selling' as well as exports. This advantage is overshadowed by the fact that in the process of growing them, water consumption and its efficiency are conveniently overlooked by the farmers'.
- viii. (a) invests, scales-up

Passage 25

1. Private coaching is a multi-million rupee industry in India. But it is the symptom of a problem, not the problem itself. Coaching centres merely fill the gap caused by lack of quality teaching especially in government school, more so in small towns and villages. Only a sincere and sustained effort to improve education in such schools will alter the picture and prevent this huge drain on the resources of the families desperately seeking to give their children decent education.

2. Secondary level students topped the number of students taking private coaching with 31% males and 29% female students taking recourse to the method, a recent NSSO survey has shown. The report also showed that nearly 20% students attending pre-primary and above level (21% of males and 19% of females) were taking private coaching.

STUDENTS AT SECONDARY LEVEL TAKE PRIVATE COACHING THE MOST				
Rural + Urban(%)	Level	Male	Female	All India
	Pre-primary	12.4	10.8	11.6
	Primary	16.5	16.2	16.4
	Upper primary Middle level	23	20.6	21.9
	Secondary	31.1	29.1	30.2
	Higher Secondary	29.6	24.7	27.5
	Diploma certificate	7.2	7.7	7.3
	Graduate & above level	13.8	13	13.5
	All (pre-primary and above level)	20.5	19	19.8

3. Private coaching is a thriving business across the country and according to a 2016 NSSO report more than 7.1 crore students were taking private coaching or tuition classes in addition to their basic education.
4. Experts attributed the trend of a larger share of students at the secondary level taking recourse to private coaching to the entrance exams for professional courses such as engineering and medicines.
5. Anil Swarup, former Secretary school education in the ministry of human resource development, explained the increase of students taking private coaching to the different competitive examinations and said this was a result of the dichotomy between learning and understanding.

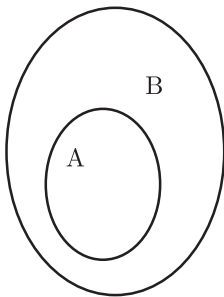
Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. Complete the following analogy appropriately, based on your understanding of paragraphs 1 and 2.
We can say that the dichotomy between learning and understanding widely considered to be the main reason for the increase in the number of students taking private coaching is comparable with two banks of a river because _____.

- ii. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate option from those given in brackets, based on your understanding of paragraph 2.

According to the author, private coaching is the symptom of a problem, not the problem itself is _____ (a/an fact/opinion) because it is _____ (a/an subjective judgement/objective detail)

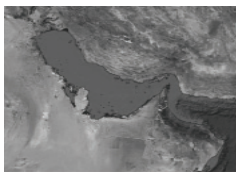
- iii. 'Private coaching is a thriving business across the country' according to a NSSO report issued in 2016. Justify the reasons for this trend in about 40 words.
- iv. Based on the survey results, which two concerns clearly demonstrate the larger problem associated with the fact that private coaching has become a multi-million-rupee industry in India?
- v. In the given table state any one inference that can be drawn from the fact that 11.6% of pre-primary and 16.4 % of primary students need private coaching too.
- vi. Select the option that correctly displays what 'dichotomy' signifies in the passage. (Reference-Paragraph 5).



(i)



(ii)



(iii)



(iv)



(v)

- (a) Only (i) (b) Only (iii)
(c) (ii), (iii) and (iv) (d) (i) and (iii)

- vii. Infer one benefit and one drawback of mushrooming of private coaching centers in India. Answer in about 40 words.

- viii. Below are given the main takeaways from the NSSO report mentioned in the passage about the effect of private coaching on professional courses on secondary-level students. Which of these is NOT mentioned explicitly in the report?

- (a) The lack of good teachers is most felt at the secondary level.
(b) There is a dichotomy between learning and understanding.
(c) They need coaching to qualify for engineering and medical entrance exams.
(d) 27.5 % of the students depends on private coaching at this level.

Ans :

the gulf is wide and needs to be bridged.

an opinion, a subjective judgement.

- ix. More than 7.1 crore students were taking private coaching or tuition classes in addition to their basic education in India because of the ever-widening gap between learning and understanding.
- iv. 1. The gap between learning and understanding is caused by lack of quality teaching especially in government schools.
2. The problem is more rampant in small towns and villages.
- v. The problem of poor quality teaching in India begins in the introductory years of schooling itself.
- vi. (b) Only (iii)
- vii. A disadvantage is that private coaching is a huge drain on the resources of the families desperately seeking to give their children a decent education. A benefit is that these centers are providing quality education in small towns and villages.
- viii. (a) The lack of good teachers is most felt at the secondary level.

NO NEED TO PURCHASE SAMPLE PAPERS
Download India's Best 20 Sample Papers

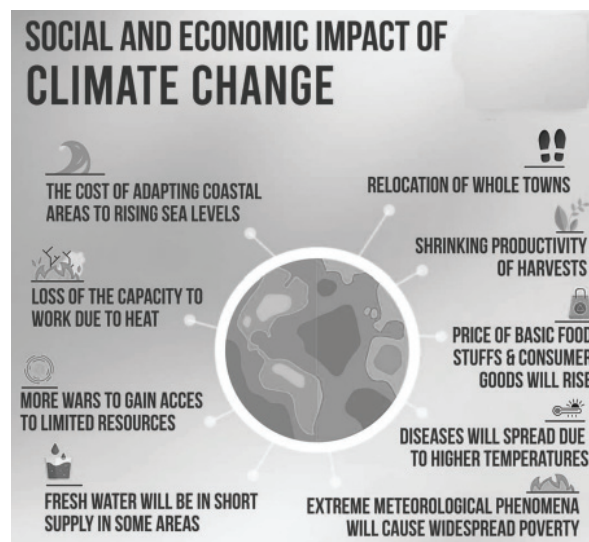
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP

**Every School conduct Pre-Board
From These Sample Papers**

Passage 26

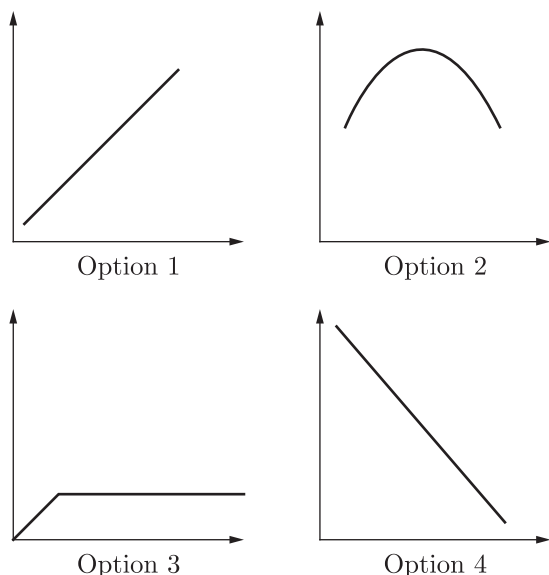
- India's average temperature has already increased by around 0.7 degrees Celsius during the 1901-2018 period due to Greenhouse gas emissions and by the end of 2100 it is expected to rise by approximately 4.4 degrees Celsius warns the first-ever climate change assessment report by the Indian government.
- The report Assessment of Climate Change over the Indian Region prepared by the Union Ministry of Earth Sciences (MoES) warned that the rapid changes in the temperature would mean increasing stress on India's "natural ecosystems, agricultural output and freshwater resources, while also causing escalating damage to infrastructure." This ultimately means a serious impact on the 'country's biodiversity, food, water, energy security and public health.
- It said that several regions in India are global biodiversity hotspots with numerous endemic species of plants and animals and with the "climate changing more rapidly than usual, they may face increasing threats on account of these changes."
- The MoES report cautioned that by the end of 2100, the "frequency of summer (April-June) heat waves over India is projected to be 3 to 4 times higher" and the "average duration of heatwave events is also projected to approximately double." According to the report, the Sea Surface Temperature (SST) of the tropical Indian Ocean has also risen by one degree Celsius, on average, during 1951-2015.
- The rise in temperature is playing havoc with India's rainfall which is significant for India's agriculture sector. The report noted that the summer monsoon precipitation (June to September) over India has declined by around six per cent from 1951 to 2015, with notable decrease over the Indo-Gangetic Plains and the Western Ghats. It stressed that the overall decrease of seasonal summer monsoon rainfall during the last 6-7 decades has led to an increased propensity for droughts in India.
- "In particular, areas over Central India, South-West coast, Southern peninsula and North-Eastern India have experienced more than two droughts per decade. The area affected by drought has also increased by 1.3 percent per decade over the same period. Climate model projections indicate a high likelihood of an increase in the frequency, intensity and area under drought conditions in India by the end of the twenty-first century," said

the MoES report.



Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- Complete the following analogy appropriately based on your understanding of the passage.
The rise in temperature will _____
- Fill the blanks with the appropriate option from those given in brackets, based on understanding of passage.
From Paragraph 5, we can infer that the _____ (fall/rise) in temperature has wreaked havoc on the rainfall pattern. The overall _____ (decrease/increase) of seasonal summer monsoon rainfall during the last 6-7 decades has led to an increased tendency of droughts.
- Infer 3 reasons for the following, based on information in Paragraph 1. Answer in about 40 words.
India's average temperature has already increased by around 0.7 degrees Celsius during the 1901-2018 period.
- Mention any two social and economic impacts of climate change.
- On the basis of the given picture, which phenomena will cause widespread poverty?
- Select the chart that appropriately represents the drought trend with climate in India from the year 1951 to 2015, as per Paragraph 5.



- (a) Option 1 (b) Option 2 and 3
(c) Option 3 (d) Option 1 and 4

vii. Justify the following in about 40 words.
The rise in temperature is playing havoc with India's rainfall.

viii. Which of the following is an appropriate title for paragraph 2?

- (a) Winds of change (b) Climate change
(c) Loss of diversity (d) Drought trends

Ans :

- i. increase the frequency and duration of the heat waves
- ii. rise, decrease
- iii. Greenhouse gas emission, destruction of the natural ecosystems, and over-exploitation of natural resources are the reasons for the rising in temperature of around 0.7 degrees Celsius during the 1901-2018 period.
- iv. Two social and economic impacts of climate change are
 1. Less capacity to work
 2. Increase in carpooling
- v. On the basis of the given picture, it can be said that extreme meteorological phenomena will cause widespread poverty.
- vi. (a) Option 1
- vii. The given statement means that the increase in temperature is having a detrimental effect on the amount of rainfall that India receives. As per a report, the summer monsoon precipitation has

decreased by around 6% from 1951-2015. This decrease of rainfall during the last 6-7 decades has led to an increased frequency for draughts in India.

viii. (c) Loss of diversity

NO NEED TO PURCHASE SAMPLE PAPERS
Download India's Best 20 Sample Papers
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP
Every School conduct Pre-Board
From These Sample Papers

Passage 27

1. Around 194 million birds and 29 million mammals are thought to be killed every year on European roads, according to a new study that has ranked the most vulnerable species. The research has found that the species killed most often were not necessarily the endangered species. This means action to preserve wildlife when new roads are built risks being targeted at the wrong species based on current methods. Road densities in Europe are among the world's highest, with 50% of the continent within 15 km of a paved road or railway. Roads are therefore, a significant threat to wildlife and evidence shows deaths on them could even cause some species to disappear completely.
2. Despite this, the long-term protection of species is not currently considered when assessing the impact of new roads on wildlife, meaning we risk giving support to only the endangered species, doing nothing to help those most at risk. A better understanding of which species are most vulnerable to roads, is therefore, important if we are to take a more effective action of protection.
3. A research team based in Lisbon calculated road-kill rates for 423 bird species and 212 mammal species. They found that small animals with high population densities and which mature at an early age were most likely to be killed on roads. Nocturnal mammals and birds with a diet of plants and seeds were also shown to have higher death rates.
4. The study also used the road-kill surveys to rank the bird and mammal species whose long-term survival was most threatened by road-kill. The hazel grouse and ground squirrel were found to be the most at risk of local extinction. Both are common in Europe but are classified as species of Least Concern Red List of Threatened Species.

5. The most vulnerable animals classified as threatened by International Union for Conservation of Nature (IUCN) were the red-knobbed Coot, Balcan mole and Podolian mole. The study revealed that road-kill hotspots were not the areas with the highest population of endangered species. For example, house sparrows had a high road-kill rate (2.7 per km/year) but were ranked 420th of 423 bird species for vulnerability. Conversely, the hazel grouse had a low predicted road-kill rate (0.2 per km/year) but was the most vulnerable of all birds studied.

Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

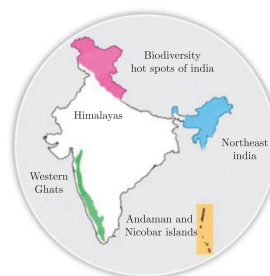
- i. Complete the following analogy appropriately, based on your understanding of the passage.
We can say that high road densities have had a long-ranging impact on some of the animal species being driven to extinction. This situation can be compared to the cutting down of forests by humans for building up modern infrastructure and its long-term effect on _____ and _____.
- ii. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate option from those given in brackets, based on your understanding of paragraph 1.
The statement 'Recent research has found that the species killed most often on European roads were not necessarily the endangered species but roads can ironically cause some species to disappear completely' is _____ (a/an fact/opinion) because it is _____ (a/an subjective judgement/objective detail)
- iii. The vulnerability of an animal dying in a road accident is often not an important factor to determine its being 'threatened' by IUCN. Justify the following, in about 40 words.
- iv. Based on the results of the study, which two factors primarily contribute to threatening or killing wildlife?
- v. The long-term protection of species is not currently considered when assessing the impact of new roads on wildlife, meaning we risk giving support to only the endangered species, doing nothing to help those most at risk' State any one inference that can be drawn from the above statement.
- vi. Select the option that correctly displays what hotspot signifies. (Reference-Paragraph 2)



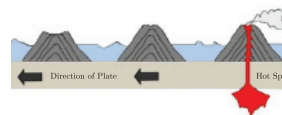
(i)



(ii)



(iii)



(iv)



(v)

- (a) Only (i)
(b) Only (ii)
(c) (ii), (iii) and (v)
(d) (ii) and (iv)

- vii. Infer an astounding conclusion drawn by a number of road-kill surveys. Answer in about 40 words.

- iii. Which of the following given points is the correct statement?

- (a) The number of road kills depends upon the population density of small animals.
(b) Small animals generally keep away from roads.
(c) More mammals than birds are killed on the roads.
(d) Animals that come out only at night are saved.

Ans :

2011

- i. global warming, climate change.
ii. a fact, an objective detail.
iii. The study revealed that road-kill hotspots were not the areas with the highest population of endangered species. For example, house sparrows

had high road-kill rate but was the most vulnerable of all birds studied.

- iv. 1. Road densities in Europe are among the world's highest.
2. Conservation efforts are targeting the wrong species.
- v. A better understanding of which species are most vulnerable to road accidents is important if a more effective action for their protection is to be implemented effectively.
- vi. (b) Only (ii)
- vii. Road-kill surveys also rank the bird and mammal species whose long-term survival is most threatened by road accidents. The hazel grouse and ground squirrel that are classified as species of Least Concern Red List of Threatened Species were found to be the most at risk of local extinction.
- viii. (a) The number of road kills depends upon the population density of small animals.

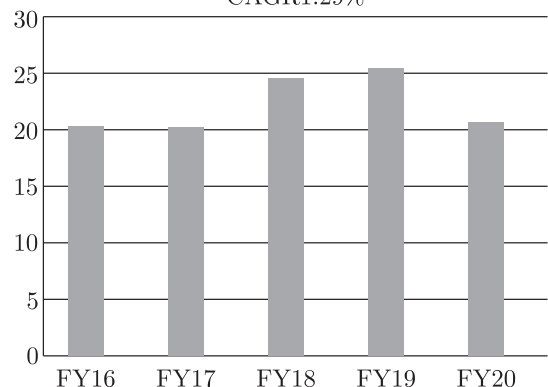
Passage 28

1. The automobile industry in India is the world's fourth-largest. India was the world's fourth-largest manufacturer of cars and the seventh-largest manufacturer of commercial vehicles in 2019. The Indian automotive industry (including component manufacturing) is expected to reach 216.16-18.18 trillion (US \$ 251.4-282.8 billion) by 2026. The industry attracted Foreign Direct Investment (FDI) worth US \$ 24.21 billion from April 2000 to March 2020 according to the data released by the Department for Promotion of Industry and Internal Trade (DPIIT).
2. Two-wheelers and passenger vehicles dominate the domestic Indian auto market. Passenger car sales are dominated by small and mid-sized cars. Two-wheelers and passenger cars accounted for 80.8 percent and 12.9 percent market share, respectively, accounting for a combined sale of over 21.55 million vehicles in FY20. The CAGR during FYI 6-FY20 is 1.29 percent.
3. The government aims to develop India as global manufacturing and Research and Development (R and D) hub. It has set up National Automotive Testing and R and D Infrastructure Project (NATRIP) centres as well as National Automotive Board to act as a facilitator between the government and the industry. Under (NATRIP), five testing and research centres have been established in the country since 2015. NATRIPs proposal for

"Grant-In-Aid for test facility infrastructure for Electric Vehicle (EV) performance Certification from NATRIP Implementation Society" under FAME (Faster Adoption and Manufacturing of (Hybrid) and Electric Vehicles in India) scheme was approved by Project Implementation and Sanctioning Committee (PISC) on 3rd January, 2019.

4. The Indian Government has also set up an ambitious target of having only EVs sold in the country. The Ministry of Heavy Industries, Government of India, has shortlisted 11 cities in the country for the introduction of EVs in their public transport system under the FAME scheme. The first phase of the scheme was extended to March 2019 while in February 2019, the government approved the FAME-II scheme with a fund requirement of Rs 10,000 crore (US \$ 1.39 billion) for FY20-22. Under Union Budget 2019-20, government announced providing an additional income tax deduction of ₹1.5 lakh (US \$ 2146) on the interest paid on the loans taken to purchase EVs.
5. EV sales, excluding e-rickshaws, in India witnessed a growth of 20 percent and reached 1.56 lakh units in FY20 driven by two-wheelers. The Government of India expects the automobile sector to attract US \$ 8-10 billion in local and foreign investment by 2023.

Number of automobiles sold in India
(in millions)
CAGR 1.29%



Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. Complete the sentence appropriately.
As per the passage, the Government of India wants to grow in _____.
- ii. Fill the blanks with the appropriate option from those given in brackets, based on your understanding of passage.

We can infer that the _____ (Department/ Institute) for promotion of Industry and Internal Trade highlights that India has received a considerable amount from _____ (FDI/R & D).

- iii. Based on your understanding of the passage, list the initiatives taken by the government to promote the automobile industry. Answer in about 40 words.
- iv. Why has the government set up NATRIP and National Automotive Board?
- v. What was the NATRIP's proposal?
- vi. Which word can substitute the word 'ambitious' in the following sentence from Paragraph 4.
He is smart, intelligent and an ambitious medical student.
- (a) Arrogant (b) Ideal
(c) Dreamy (d) Aspiring
- vii. What does the Indian Government want to establish?
- viii. Select the correct option to complete the following sentence.
Para 4 focuses on the ambitious target of having _____
- (a) the overall growth of the automobile industry
(b) only the 2 wheeler's sold in the country
(c) only the EVs being sold in the country
(d) foreign Direct Investment in the automobile industry

Ans :

- i. R&D, i.e. Research and Development.
- ii. Department, FDI
- iii. The following initiatives have been taken by the government to promote the automobile industry:
1. Established NATRIP and a NAB.
 2. Set up 5 testing and research centres.
 3. Introduction of EVs in their public transport.
 4. Reduction in tax on loans for EVs.
- iv. The government set up NATRIP and National Automotive Board to act as a facilitator between the government and industry.
- v. NATRIP proposed to provide aid for test facility infrastructure for Electric Vehicle (EV) performance certification.
- vi. (d) Aspiring

vii. The Indian Government wants to establish the following

1. National Automotive Testing and R&D Infrastructure Project centres
2. National Automotive Board.

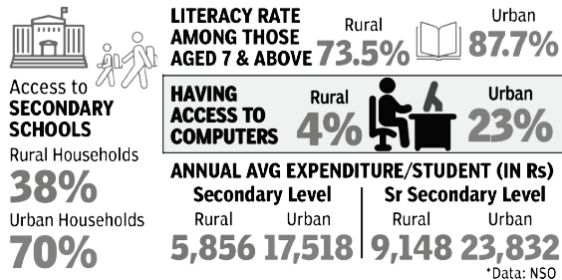
viii. (c) only the EVs being sold in the country.

Passage 29

1. Right from literacy, accessibility to schools and household expenditure on education, the rural-urban gap remains significant. There is a digital divide, too, with just 4% of rural households having access to computers as compared to 23% in urban areas. These and other trends in a rural-urban gap in education are revealed in the details of a survey conducted by the National Statistical Office (NSO).
2. The report on 'Household Social Consumption: Education' surveyed 1.13 lakh households spread across over 8,000 villages and 6,000 urban blocks between July 2017 and June 2018. The study involved 1.52 lakh students across different levels of study.
3. On accessibility, while 92.7% of the rural households have a primary school within 1 km as compared to 87.2% in urban areas, the situation gets skewed as only 38% of the rural households have access to secondary school as compared to 70% in the urban areas on similar parameters.
4. While accessibility to a neighbourhood school at the primary level is not an issue in rural areas, the gross attendance ratio is also satisfactory with nearly 100% of boys and girls in rural as well as urban areas attending classes. However, in sync with reduced accessibility, there is a gap at the secondary level between rural and urban settings. The all India literacy rate among persons aged 7 years and above is 77.7%. However, for the same age group, rural literacy is 73.5% and for urban areas it is, 87.7%.
5. The digital divide between rural and urban households is stark with just 4% of the rural population having access to computers. The report highlighted that while only 15% surveyed population in the rural cluster has internet access, 42% of the students in the urban areas have access to the internet.
6. At school level while the majority of the urban households had shown a preference for private schools, it's the opposite for rural households. The report highlights that 76.1% of the rural

children are attending primary and middle school run by the government, while only 38% of the urban children are attending government schools. However, for graduate and above studies, 49.7% rural students are attending classes in government institutions as compared to 41% of the urban counterparts in government institutions.

STARK DIVIDE IN SECONDARY EDUCATION



Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. Complete the following sentence appropriately.
The majority of urban households show preference to
- ii. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate option from those given in the brackets, based on your understanding of passage.
Rural areas have (more/less) primary schools (within/without) a km as compared to that in urban areas.
- iii. What data shows that the rural-urban gap is visible at the secondary level of education?
Answer in about 40 words.
- iv. What did the survey conducted by the NSO cover?
- v. In which aspect is the condition of education in the urban and rural households equal?
- vi. Based on your understanding of the passage, choose the option that lists the factors that indicate the rural-urban gap.
 - (a) Infrastructure development and Employment opportunities
 - (b) Accessibility to schools and Digital divide
 - (c) Right to literacy and Household expenditure
 - (d) All of the above
- vii. Explain in about 40 words the digital divide between rural and urban households based on the passage.
- viii. What does the Household Social. Consumption: Education focus on?
 - (a) Need for making technology more affordable
 - (b) Backtracking of online education.
 - (c) Rural-urban gap in education
 - (d) How the digital divide is non-existent in education.

Ans :

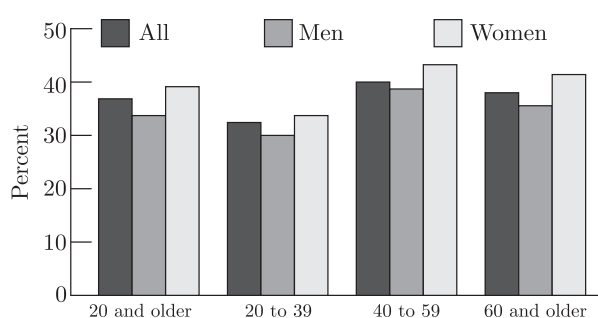
- i. private schools
- ii. more, within
- iii. The fact that only 38% households of in rural areas have access to secondary schools and 70% of households in urban areas have access to secondary schools shows that the rural-urban gap is visible at the secondary level of education.
- iv. The survey covered 1.13 lakh households spread across over 8,000 rural and 6,000 urban blocks between July 2017 and June 2018. The study involved 1.52 lakh students across different levels of study.
- v. The condition of education in the urban and rural households is equal on the accessibility of neighbourhood schools at the primary level.
- vi. (d) All of the above
- vii. The digital divide between rural and urban households is stark with just 4% of the rural population having access to computers. The report highlighted that while only 15% surveyed population in the rural cluster has internet access, 42% of the students in the urban areas have access to the internet.
- viii. (c) Rural-urban gap in education

Passage 30

1. Obesity has been defined as a Body Mass Index (BMI) greater than 30 kg/m², with extreme obesity defined as a BMI greater than 40 kg/m². Obesity is rapidly becoming the leading cause of preventable death in the United States, with obesity-related deaths projected to soon surpass deaths related to tobacco abuse. The incidence of obesity has doubled in the United States since 1960, with one-third of the adult population currently obese. Perhaps more alarming is the increase in overweight children; over the past 25 years, this rate has risen from 6% to 19%.

2. Obesity is the next major epidemiologic challenge facing today's doctors, with the annual allocation of healthcare resources for the disease and related comorbidities projected to exceed \$150 billion in the United States. The incidence of obesity has risen in the United States over the past 30 years; 60% of adults are currently either obese or overweight. Obesity is associated with a higher incidence of a number of diseases, including diabetes, cardiovascular disease and cancer. Consumption of fast food, Trans Fatty Acids (TFAs), and fructose-combined with increasing portion sizes and decreased physical activity-has been implicated as a potential contributing factor in the obesity crisis.
3. The use of Body Mass Index (BMI) alone is of limited utility for predicting adverse cardiovascular outcomes, but the utility of this measure may be strengthened when combined with waist circumference and other anthropomorphic measurements. Certain public health initiatives have helped to identify and reduce some of the factors contributing to obesity.
4. In New York City and Denmark, for example, such initiatives have succeeded in passing legislation to reduce or remove TFAs from residents' diets. The obesity epidemic will likely change practice for gastroenterologists, as shifts will be seen in the incidence of obesity-related gastrointestinal disorders, disease severity and the nature of comorbidities. The experience gained with previous epidemiologic problems such as smoking should help involved parties to expand needed health initiatives and increase the likelihood of preventing future generations from suffering the consequences of obesity.

Adult obesity prevalence by gender, 2011-2014



Answer the following questions, based on the passage above.

- i. Complete the following sentence with appropriate words.
60% of the adult population in the USA is either _____ or _____.

- ii. Fill in the blanks with appropriate option from those given in brackets.
The annual allocation of budget in the US for obesity and related diseases is _____ (projected to decrease by \$150 million/projected to exceed \$150 billion)
- iii. What problems are caused by obesity in the United States? Answer in about 40 words.
- iv. Based on your understanding of the passage, infer one medical problem caused by obesity.
- v. Which initiative has been taken in New York City and Denmark?
- vi. Based on your understanding of the passage, choose the option that lists medical problems caused by obesity.
 1. Heart diseases
 2. Diabetes
 3. Lung diseases
 4. Cancer
 5. Thyroid
 6. Hormonal disorders
 - (a) 1 and 2
 - (b) 3 and 4
 - (c) 5 and 6
 - (d) All of these

- vi. How will the obesity epidemic change practice for gastroenterologists? Answer in about 40 words.

- iii. Which of the following is not true as per passage?
 - (a) Obesity is the most common amongst late teenagers in America.
 - (b) Obesity is defined in terms of the Waist Hip ratio.
 - (c) Obesity has been termed as an epidemic.
 - (d) Obesity is related to smoking.

Ans :

- i. obese, overweight
- ii. projected to exceed \$150 billion
- iii. Obesity is rapidly becoming the leading cause of preventable death in the United States, with obesity-related deaths projected to soon surpass deaths related to tobacco abuse. The incidence of obesity has doubled in the United States since 1960, with one-third of the adult population currently obese. Perhaps more alarming is the increase in overweight children; over the past 25 years, this rate has risen from 6% to 19%.
- iv. Diabetes

- v. In New York City and Denmark, certain public health initiatives have helped to identify and reduce some of the factors contributing to obesity. Such initiatives have succeeded in passing legislation to reduce or remove TFAs from residents' diets.
- vi. (d) All of these
- vii. The obesity epidemic will likely change practice for gastroenterologists, as shifts will be seen in the incidence of obesity-related gastrointestinal disorders, disease severity and the nature of comorbidities. The experience gained with previous epidemiologic problems such as smoking should help involved parties to expand needed health initiatives and increase the likelihood of preventing future generations from suffering the consequences of obesity.
- viii. (b) Obesity is defined in terms of the Waist Hip ratio.



CHAPTER 1

TENSES

NODIA

1. INTRODUCTION

The word **Tense** is a term of English grammar and refers to a form of the verb that indicates time. Time is a universal, non-linguistic concept with three divisions - Past, Present and Future; by tense we understand the correspondence between the form of the verb and our concept of time. When making a statement it is essential to indicate whether a situation exists now, existed in the past or is likely to exist in the future.

2. MEANING AND DEFINITION

Tense comes from Latin word tempus, meaning time. Tense is that form of a verb which shows time and state of an action or event.

Let us take three sentences:

- I sing this song to please you.
- I sang the song in her very presence.
- I shall sing another song for her tomorrow.

In the first sentence, the verb sing refers to present time. In the second sentence, the verb sang refers to past time. In the third sentence, the verb shall sing refers to future time. Thus, a verb may refer to present time or past time or future time.

Tense can be defined as follows :

A form of a verb which indicates the time and the state of an action or event.

3. KINDS OF TENSE

There are three main tenses corresponding to the three main divisions of time viz. Present, Past and Future.

1. Present Tense

The present tense indicates that the action is done at the present time; as,

- The sun rises in the east.
- I do not know him.

2. Past Tense

The past tense indicates that the action took place in the past; as,

- I went to Delhi last month.
- Mohan opened the door for me.

3. Future Tense

The future tense indicates that the action will take place in the future; as,

- I shall go to Delhi tomorrow.

Each of these three tenses has subdivisions to show continuity or completeness of the action and the time. These subdivisions are:

1. Indefinite (Simple)
2. Continuous (imperfect)
3. Perfect
4. Perfect Continuous

Indefinite (Simple)

It denotes present, past or future time in its simplest form; as,

- I write
- I wrote
- I shall write.
- The action in present, past or future time is mentioned simply without anything being said about the completeness or incompleteness of the action.

Continuous (Imperfect)

It shows that the event (in present, past or future) is still continuing or not yet completed; as,

- I am writing.
- I was writing.
- I shall be writing.

Perfect

It denotes that the event (in present, past or future) is in a completed or perfect state- present, past or future; as,

- I have written.
- I had written.
- I shall have written.

Perfect Continuous

It combines the meanings of the two preceding forms, Perfect and Continuous; as,

- I have been writing.
- I had been writing.
- I shall have been writing.

4. PRESENT SIMPLE TENSE**Rule 1**

This tense is used to express an action that takes or is actually taking place at the present time; as,

- He drives his car.

Rule 2

To express a habitual action; as,

- He drinks tea every morning.
- My watch keeps good time.

Rule 3

A universal truth; as,

- The sun rises in the east.
- Slow and steady wins the race.

Rule 4

In exclamatory sentences beginning with here and there to express what is actually taking place in the present

- Here comes the bus!
- There she goes!

Rule 5

In vivid narrative, as substitute for the simple past; as,

- Immediately the sultan hurries to his capital.
- Sohrab now rushes forward and deals a heavy blow to Rustam.

Rule 6

To express a future event that is part of a fixed timetable or fixed programme; as,

- The match starts at 9 o' clock.
- The train leaves at 5:20.

Rule 7

Discussing what happens in a book, play or film; as,

- In **Lagaan** Amir Khan plays a central character.

Rule 8

Simple present tense is also used to talk about a physical feeling that is affecting you or someone else; as,

- I feel heavy.
- His head aches.

But while physical perceptions such as hearing and seeing usually the modal **can** be is used; as,

- I can hear it.
- I can smell the food.

What is present, provided that present time is implied by the context; as,

- I understand what you say.

Rule 9

Used in Commentaries

While describing an event such as a sports match or a ceremony that is happening at the time; as,

- Prasad balls to Lara.
- Sachin takes a run.

Rule 10

Used in reporting

Reporting verb such as hear or tell we can report what someone said at some point in recent past by using simple present; as,

- I hear he is eating.

Rule 11

The simple present tense is often used with adverbs or adverb phrases such as; always, never, occasionally, often, sometimes, usually, every week, on Mondays, twice a year etc.; as,

- How often do you wash your hair?
- It rains in winter.

Or with time clauses expressing routine or habitual actions whenever and when (= whenever) are particularly useful; as,

- Whenever it rains the roof leaks.

Rule 12

It must be used instead of the present continuous with verbs which cannot be used in the continuous form, e.g. Love, see, believe etc. So that we can say; as,

- I love you but not I am loving you.

Rule 13

It is used in conditional sentences; as,

- If I see Ann, I will ask her.
- Unless you take the brake off, the car won't move.

Affirmative Sentences**Pattern**

He/She/It/singular noun + verb (1st form) + s/es + ...

I/We/You/They/plural noun + verb (1st form) + ...

- He reads a book daily.
- Geeta plays football in the evening.
- I read a book daily.
- They play football in the evening.

Negative Sentences**Pattern**

He/She/It/singular noun + does not + verb (Ist form) + ...

I/We/You/They/plural noun + do not + verb (Ist form) + ...

- He does not read a book.
- You do not play football.
- Tanu does not tell a lie.
- The boys do not go there.

Interrogative Sentences**Pattern**

Do + subject + verb (Ist form) + ... ?

Does + subject + verb (Ist form) + ... ?

Q.W. + do/does + subject + verb (Ist form) + ... ?

- Does he live in Alwar?
- Do you know Mohan?
- Where does Geeta go daily?
- Why do you come late?

Interrogative Negative Sentence**Pattern**

Does + subject + not + verb (Ist form) + ...?

Do + subject + not + verb (Ist form) + ...?

- Do you not read your book daily?
- Does he not help the poor?
- Do they not love their country?
- Does Sohan not take bath daily?

5. PRESENT CONTINUOUS TENSE**Rule 1**

This tense is used to express an action going on at the time of speaking; as,

- The boys are flying kites.
- I am doing my work.
- He is playing cricket.

Rule 2

This tense is used to express intention or likelihood. It refers to future time; as,

- I am going to Lucknow tomorrow. (Intention)
- Ramlal is going to die. (Likelihood)

Rule 3

This tense is also used for temporary action may not be actually happening at the time of speaking. It also some times expresses habit or custom; as,

- He is attending college very regularly. (Habit)
- I am reading William Shakespeare. (Temporary action)
- I am studying English novels these days.
- He is living in a rented house.
- Is she still modelling for Hindustan Lever?

Rule 4

This tense is used for fixed programme or plan of the nearest future; as,

- We are leaving for Mumbai tonight.
- Are you singing this evening.

Affirmative Sentences**Pattern**

Subject + is/am/are + verb (Ist form) + ing + O/A.

- Tanu and Gaurav are playing football.
- Mohan is reading a novel now.

Negative Sentences**Pattern**

Subject + is/am/are + not + verb (Ist form) + ing + O/A.

- She is not going to college today.
- Children are not playing now.
- I am not cooking food.

Interrogative Sentences**Pattern**

Is/am/are + subject + verb (Ist form) + ing + O/A.

Q.W. + is/am/are + subject + verb (Ist form) + ing + O/A.

- Is he living in Delhi these days?
- Are you going to see him today?
- Where is your brother reading nowadays?
- Why are the boys making a noise?
- The present continuous tense is not normally used with the following verbs:

1. **Verbs of senses (involuntary actions)** : feel, hear, see, smell also notice and observe.
2. **Verbs of expressing feelings and emotions** : admire, adore, appreciate, care for, desire, detest, dislike, fear, hate, like, loathe, love, mind, respect, value, want, with.

3. **Verbs of mental activity** : agree, appreciate, assume, believe, expect, feel, feel sure/certain forget know, mean, perceive, realize, recall, recognize, recollect, remember, see (understand), see through (have an opinion), trust (= believe/have confidence) in, understand.

Note : But the continuous can be used with appreciate meaning to increase in value.

4. **Verbs of possession** : belong, owe, own, possess, e.g., How much do I owe you?
5. The auxiliaries, except, be and have in certain uses.

6. PRESENT PERFECT TENSE

Rule 1

This tense is used to express an action that has been completed just now; as,

- I have written the letter.

Rule 2

A past action which is still continuing; as,

- He has served me for 5 years.
- She has been ill since Monday.

Note the difference:

- He has served me for 5 years (He is still serving).
- He served me for 5 years (He is no longer in my service).

Rule 3

To suggest the decision made in the past is still of importance in the present; as,

- The government has cut university budgets, consequently the dean has increased the size of most classes.

Rule 4

To express past action without a definite time; as,

- I have read the paper.

Rule 5

To express an action done in a space of time not yet exhausted; as,

- It has rained all the week.

Rule 6

To express something whose consequences still remain; as,

- I have been ill.

Rule 7

It denotes an action completed at the time of speaking; as,

- She has worked all the sums.

Affirmative Sentences

Pattern

Subject + has/have + verb (IIIrd form) + O/A.

- She has finished the task.
- I have read this report.

Negative Sentences

Pattern

Subject + has/have + not + verb (IIIrd form) + O/A.

- We have not met her so far.
- He has not learnt his lesson.

Interrogative Sentences

Pattern

Has/have + Subject + verb (IIIrd form) + O/A.
Q.W. + has/have + Subject + verb (IIIrd form) + O/A.

- Has Gopal milked the cow?
- Have you ever seen a white elephant?
- Why has the boy not come here yet?
- Which books have you purchased?

Adverbials

Just, already, yet, never, so far, lately, recently, etc.

PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE

Rule 1

This tense is used to refer to actions that began in past but are continuing to take place in the present and are expected to continue in the near future also; as,

- Tom has been working here since 1985.
- It has been raining here since yesterday.
- How long have you been working here?

Rule 2

This tense is used to refer to actions or situations that started in the past, Continued for sometime and have just stopped but have presented results; as,

- Your shoes are dirty. It seems you have been walking in the fields.
- You look tired. Yes I have been working all day long.
- The gardener have been watering plants.
- The beggar has been crying.
- Why have her clothes been so wet?

Use of Since

Since is used for definite period of time/point of time:

1. Name of the days; as - Since Sunday/Monday.....
2. Name of the months; as - Since January/February.....
3. Name of the years; as - Since 1970/1980.....
4. Name of the parts of the day; as - Since morning/dawn/Sunset/Sunrise/dark/night/evening/afternoon.....
5. O' clock/am/pm; as - Since 4 o'clock, Since 8 pm, Since 7 am, Since 5:30 am etc.
6. Yesterday, last night, last week, last month, last year; as - Since last night, Since yesterday.
7. Name of the seasons; as - Since summer/winter/spring/autumn.....
8. Name of the festivals; as - Since Eid/Holi/Deepawali/Christmas etc.
9. Name of the events and stage of one's life; as - Since his arrival/departure/birth/marriage/death etc.

Use of For

For is used for indefinite/uncertain period of time (minutes, hours, seconds, days, weeks, months, year, decades, centuries); as,

- For three hours.
- For several minutes.
- For many weeks.
- For two months.
- For two years.

Affirmative Sentences**Pattern**

Subject + has been/have been + verb (Ist form) + ing + O/A + since/for + time.

- She has been living in Mumbai since 1992.
- Children are playing cricket for two hours.

Negative Sentences**Pattern**

Subject + has not been/have not been + verb (Ist form) + ing + O/A + since/for + time.

- Mohan has not been reading in this school for two years.
- They have not been playing football since 2 PM.

Interrogative Sentences**Pattern**

Has/have + subject + been + verb (Ist form) + ing + O/A + since/for + time.

Q.W. + has/have + subject + been + verb (Ist form) + ing + O/A + since/for + time.

- Have you been living in Alwar since 2006?
- What has Geeta been doing for five months?

8. PAST SIMPLE TENSE**Rule 1**

This tense is used to express actions which occurred in the past; as,

- Hira Lal bought two cups of tea.
- I bought this shirt in Mumbai.
- His aunt came back from Dubai.

Rule 2

Expressing past habitual actions; as,

- I went to the Cathedral on Sundays.
- He played badminton in his childhood.
- He always came to meet me.
- I always carried my identity card with me.

Rule 3

Referring to situation related to past time; as,

- My uncle was seriously ill.
- It was night.
- I was helpless that day.
- He was absent from the class that day.

Rule 4

We use Simple Past or Present Perfect tense when adverbs of time, as - today, this morning, this month, this year, recently etc. are used; as,

- I saw him today. (Past Indefinite)
- I have seen him today. (Present Perfect)
- I saw this movie this week. (Past Indefinite)
- I have seen this movie this week. (Present Perfect)

Rule 5

We use Simple Past tense after - It is high time, It is about time, It is time etc.; as,

- It is high time we left for the Railway Station.

Rule 6

Past Indefinite is used for the action which continues; as,

- While the mother cooked, the children played.
- While my wife cooked, I watched T.V.

Rule 7

Past Indefinite is used in sentences expressing Past habitual actions where - always, never, seldom, often, rarely, Used to/would, once a day/

week/month, daily, every day/week/month/year etc. are used; as,

- My father used to get up early in the morning.
- Salim would wait for his beloved friend for hours.
- My mother used to take care of me.

Rule 8

In conditional sentences, when **if clause** is used. It refers to present of future time; as,

- If you worked hard you might pass the examination.
- If he come on time, I would pay him his salary.

Rule 9

Simple past tense is used with supposition sentences beginning with - if, as if, as though, I wish, if only, we wish, He/She wishes etc.; as,

- I wish I were the Prime Minister of India.
- If I became the Mayor of Allahabad. I would solve all the Civic problems of the people.
- He talks to me as if he were my boss.

Rule 10

When there are two clauses in a sentence i.e. two kinds of actions are going, on with the previous action Past Perfect tense is used and with the subsequent action Past Indefinite tense is used; as,

- The bus had departed before we reached the bus station.
- We reached the bus station after the bus had departed.

Rule 11

If some action is going on in Past time and in the mean time another action occurs, in such situation, we use Past Continuous tense for the action going on and Past Indefinite for the subsequent action; as,

- I was having my lunch when Rustam came.
- When I was reading a book, Paragi arrived.
- While I was planting a sapling, an insect bit me.

Affirmative Sentences

Pattern

Subject + verb (IInd form) + O/A.

- He saw a lion in the forest.
- She wrote him a letter yesterday.

Negative Sentences

Pattern

Subject + did not + verb (Ist form)+ O/A.

- I did not meet him yesterday.
- She did not complete her work in time.

Interrogative Sentences

Pattern

Did + subject + verb (Ist form) + O/A?

Q.W. + did + subject + verb (Ist form) + O/A?

- Did you see a boy on the way?
- Why did you break the table?

9. PAST CONTINUOUS TENSE

Rule 1

Past Continuous tense expresses an action going on at some time in the past; as,

- When she came into my room, I was studying.
- He was looking ill yesterday.
- I was reading all afternoon.
- When he came to me I was talking to my wife.

Rule 2

Past Continuous tense is used to refer to an event that was in progress at the time something else happened; as,

- The boy fell down while he was running.
- She was sitting in a Cafe when I saw her.
- We were having coffee when the lights went out.

Rule 3

This tense is used to refer to repeated action in the past; as,

- He was always telling me to do things I did not want to do.

Rule 4

This tense is used to refer to an action that was intended to be done in the past but was not done; as,

- Shirmila walked away, just as I was going to speak to her.

Rule 5

Past Continuous tense is used when two actions are going on Simultaneously in the past; as,

- While Ramu was playing, I was doing my work.
- While my wife was cooking food, I was writing book.

Rule 6

We use this tense in the following senses; as,

- He was becoming richer and richer.
- It was getting darker and darker.
- Anita was growing more and more beautiful.

Affirmative Sentences**Pattern**

Subject + was/were + verb (Ist form) + ing + O/A.

- The lion was sleeping under a tree.
- Mother was cooking food when I reached home.
- Boys were playing while girls were reading.

Negative Sentences**Pattern**

Subject + was/were + not + verb (Ist form) + ing + O/A.

- She was not reading her book when I saw her.
- The lion was not sleeping under the tree.

Interrogative Sentences**Pattern**

Was/were + subject + verb (Ist form) + ing + O/A?

Q.W. + was/were + subject + verb (Ist form) + ing + O/A?

- Was he crying?
- Were the cattle grazing in your field?
- Were the police running after the thieves?
- Why was he disturbing you?
- Where were the boys going?
- What was she doing when you reached there?

Adverbials

1. While, at that time.
2. At that moment, etc.

10. PAST PERFECT TENSE**Rule 1**

Past Perfect is used wherever we wish to say that an action had been completed before another commenced. The past of the sentence expressing previous action is put into Past Perfect and the part of the sentence expressing subsequent action is put into Past Indefinite (Simple Past); as,

- The ship was sunk by storm which had suddenly sprung up.
- Monu had been ill for two days when the doctor was sent for.

Rule 2

Past Perfect tense is used after - I wish, He/She wishes, they wish, as though, as if etc. ; as,

- I wish I had been born in London.
- She talks to me as if she had come from the USA.

Rule 3

If some action was hoped in the past but was not completed, we use words like - hope, think, expect, mean, intend, want, suppose etc. In such situation both clauses of the sentence will be in Simple Past tense; as,

- I had wanted to meet him but unfortunately I fell ill.
- I had hoped that he would come to attend my party.

Affirmative Sentences**Pattern**

Subject + had + verb (IIIrd form) + O/A.

- She had seen the Taj Mahal.
- The patient had died before the doctor came.
- The Train had left before I reached the station.
- The peon rang the bell after we had reached school.

Negative Sentences**Pattern**

Subject + had not + verb (IIIrd verb) + O/A.

- I had not seen the Red Fort.
- She had not completed her homework.
- The patient had not died before the doctor came.
- The farmers had not ploughed their fields before it rained.

Interrogative Sentences**Pattern**

Had + subject + verb (IIIrd form) + O/A?

Q.W. + Had + subject + verb (IIIrd form) + O/A?

- Had you seen the Taj Mahal?
- Had you reached school before the bell rang?
- Why had he not finished his work before the teacher came?

Adverbials

Before, after.

11. PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE

The past perfect continuous bears the same relation to the past perfect as the present perfect continuous bears to the present perfect.

Rule 1

When the action began before the time of speaking in the past and continued up to that time, or stopped just before it, we can often use either past perfect or past perfect continuous; as,

- It was now six and he was tired because he had worked since dawn.
- It was now six and he was tired because he had been working since dawn.

Rule 2

To denote an action that had been going on for sometime before another action took place in the past; as,

- I had been solving problems of mathematics for hours when you come.

Rule 3

To express a repeated action in the past perfect as a continuous action; as,

- He had been trying to phone her.

Affirmative Sentences

Pattern

Subject + had been + verb (ing) + object + since/for.

- We had been studying in this college since 1990.
- They had been teaching there for ten years.

Negative Sentences

Pattern

Subject + had + not been + verb (ing) + object + since/for.

- He had not been working in this company for ten years.
- The washerman had not been washing clothes since 10 o' clock.

Interrogative Sentences

Pattern

Had + subject + been + verb (ing) + object + since/for?

Q.W. + had + subject + been + verb (ing) + object + since/for?

- Had they been working in that company for twenty years?
- Where had he been teaching them for four months?

12. FUTURE SIMPLE TENSE

Rule 1

It is used to talk about things which we cannot control. It expresses the future as fact. We use this tense to talk about what we think or believe will happen in the future; as,

- I think India will win the match.

Rule 2

It is used to express habitual action which will take place and which we cannot control; as,

- Spring will come again.

Rule 3

It is used with clauses of condition, time and purpose; as,

- If I do this exercise, it will help you.

Rule 4

With adverbials such as tomorrow, day after tomorrow, next week, next month, on coming Saturday, in 2010 etc.; as,

- She will do this practice next month.

Rule 5

It is used to express the speaker's opinion or assumption about the future, the tense is used with: think, know, hope, suppose, believe, expect, perhaps, probably, surely; as,

- I think he will play.

Rule 6

Verbs not normally used in the continuous tenses, e.g. auxiliary verbs, verbs of the senses, of emotion, thinking, possessing etc usually express the future by the future simple, though **be going to** is sometime possible; as,

- He will be here at six.
- You will have time for tea.

Rule 7

It is used, chiefly in newspapers, news broadcasts, for formal announcement of future plans and for weather forecasts; as,

- The president will open the new heliport tomorrow.
- The fog will persist in all areas.

Affirmative Sentences

Pattern

Subject + will/shall + verb (1st form) + object.

- I shall meet Dr. Verma tomorrow.
- He will do his work honestly.
- She will always obey her parents.
- Zeenat and Jannat will win the competition.

Interrogative Sentences**Pattern**

Will/Shall + subject + verb (1st form) + object?
 Q.W. + will/shall + subject + verb (1st form) + object?

- Will you accept my advice?
- Will he attend the meeting on Sunday?
- Why will they do the work here?
- Who will come to meet you tomorrow?

Interrogative Negative Sentences**Pattern**

Will/Shall + subject + not + verb (1st form) + object?
 Q.W. + will/shall + subject + not + verb (1st form) + object?

- Will you not take the examination this year?
- Why will they not celebrate Holi this year?

13. FUTURE CONTINUOUS TENSE**Rule 1**

It indicates an action that will be going on in the future. It is usually accompanied by another simultaneous action; as,

- I shall be sleeping when you will be going for a walk.

Rule 2

We use this tense to talk about actions in the future which are already planned or which are expected to happen in the normal course of things; as,

- I will be staying here till Sunday.

Note : With the future continuous we normally mention the future time (next Friday etc.).

Rule 3

This tense is used to indicate that a longer action in the future will be interrupted. The interruption is usually an action in the simple future; as,

- I will be sleeping when my sister arrives.

Rule 4

It is used to mention specific time as interruption; as,

- At midnight tonight, we will still be driving through the desert.

Affirmative Sentences**Pattern**

Subject + will be/shall be + verb (ing) + object.

- I shall be seeing him next week.

- I shall be staying in this hotel tomorrow morning.
- They will be travelling at this time.
- The children will be doing their homework.

Negative Sentences**Pattern**

Subject + will/shall + not + be + verb (ing) + object.

- They will not be having food this time.
- I shall not be doing my work that day.
- The children will not be learning their lesson.
- The boatman will not be rowing this boat.

Interrogative Sentences**Pattern**

Will/Shall + subject + be + verb (ing) + object?
 Q.W. + will/shall + subject + be + verb (ing) + object?

- Will you be coming here tomorrow?
- Who will be doing your work that day?
- How will you be doing this work?
- Will he be preparing for his examination there?

Interrogative Negative Sentences**Pattern**

Will/Shall + subject + not + be + verb (ing) + object?

Q.W. + will/shall + subject + not + be + verb (ing) + object?

- Will you not be playing ludo that time?
- Shall we not be having our food there?
- Why will they not be whitewashing the house today?
- Why will he not be talking to me.

14. FUTURE PERFECT TENSE**Rule 1**

It indicates an action which will be finished before a certain time in the future; as,

- I shall have come back from office before you go out.

Rule 2

It is used to express the speaker's belief that something has taken place; as,

- You will have heard of Ashoka's victory.

Rule 3

Sometimes it is used to express a past possibility; as,

- She will have purchased a new sari.

Affirmative Sentences**Pattern**

Subject + will/shall + have + verb (IIIrd form) + object.

- All the guests will have taken dinner.
- We shall have finished our work by then.
- Ramesh will have completed his studies by the time his father retires.

Negative Sentences**Pattern**

Subject + will not/shall not + have + verb (IIIrd form) + object.

- The thief will not have fled before the police reach there.
- We shall not have finished our game before father comes here.
- They will not have written the essay before the teacher comes.

Interrogative Sentences**Pattern**

Will/Shall + subject + have + verb (IIIrd form) + object?

Q. w. + will/shall + subject + have + verb (IIIrd form) + object?

- Will you have completed your course before the examination begin?
- Will they have reached the station before the train departs.
- How will they have reached the field before it starts raining.

Interrogative Negative Sentences**Pattern**

Will/Shall + subject + not + have + verb (IIIrd form) + object?

Q.W. + will/shall + subject + not + have + verb (IIIrd form) + object?

- Will you not have reached the office before 10 o' clock?
- Shall we not have eaten food before the guests come?
- Why will he not have finished his work before Monday?

15. FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE

Rule 1

The future perfect continuous tense is used for actions which will be in progress over a period of time that will end in the future; as,

- By next march we shall have been living here for four years.

Rule 2

We can use the future perfect continuous to emphasize how long something has been going on by a particular point in the future; as,

- On Saturday, we will have been living in this house for a year.

Affirmative Sentences**Pattern**

Subject + will/shall + have been + verb (ing) + object + since/for.

- The girls will have been dancing since 4 o' clock.
- The shoe maker will have been repairing our shoes since morning.
- The gardener will have been watering the plants for two hours.

Negative Sentences**Pattern**

Subject + will/shall + not + have been + verb (ing) + ...

- Golu will not have been driving bicycle for three hours.
- The labourers will not have been whitewashing the house for four days.

Interrogative Sentences**Pattern**

Will/Shall + subject + have been + verb (ing)?

Q.W. + will/shall + subject + have been + verb (ing)?

- Why will the teacher have been teaching the students since 10 o' clock.
- Will they have been travelling for six hours?

Interrogative Negative Sentences**Pattern**

Will/Shall + subject + not have been + verb (ing) + object?

Q.W. + will/shall + subject + not have been + verb (ing) + object?

- Will the farmers not have been ploughing the field since morning?

- Why will the tailor master not have been sewing any clothes for three days?

16. CONDITIONAL TENSE

1. Open Condition

It tells us that something will take place, if a certain condition is fulfilled. This condition may or may not be fulfilled.

Pattern

Present Indefinite in If clause + Subject + will/shall/can/may + verb in main clause.

If Clause	Main Clause
If you come early	We shall begin the work
If she loves him	She will marry him

2. Improbable or Imaginary Condition

It tells us what we expect may not take place.

Pattern

Simple Past in If clause + Subject + would/should/could/might + infinitive (verb).

If Clause	Main Clause
If you paid the amount	We would deliver the goods
If I saw Aman	I could talk to him

3. Unfulfilled Condition

It tells us that something did not take place because a particular condition was not fulfilled.

Pattern

Past Perfect in If clause + Subject + would/should/could/might + have + Past Participle in main clause.

If Clause	Main Clause
If you had resigned the job	You would have faced several financial troubles
If I had married Geeta	I would have been happier

17. OTHER TENSE

1. Future in the Past Tense

Pattern

All persons + might/would/could/should/must + have + Past Participle form of verb.

- I might have given him a pen.

All persons + was/were + going to + Present form of verb.

- I was going to give him a pen.

2. Future in the Past Continuous Tense

Future in the past continuous tense are used to talk about an action we wanted to do in some past time but the action itself did not take place.

Pattern

All persons + might/would/could/should/must + have + been + Continuous form of verb

- I should have been writing a book by now.



EXERCISE

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. Fill in the blank by choosing the correct option to complete the sentence to update the result of the regional science fair :
We have exciting news to share!
Our school _____ first place in the regional science fair.

(a) awarded (b) was awarded
(c) had awarded (d) has been awarded

Ans : 2024

(d) has been awarded

2. Fill in the blank by choosing the correct option to complete the part of the disclaimer given in a textbook:

The authors of the book _____ all reasonable care to ensure that the contents of the book do not violate any copyright or other intellectual property rights of any person in any manner.

(a) has been taking (b) have taken
(c) has taken (d) have been took

Ans : 2024

(b) have taken

3. Complete the given narrative by filling in the blank with the correct option.

I _____ watching that programme every week since it started.

(a) has been (b) had
(c) have been (d) was been

Ans : 2024

(c) have been

4. Fill in the blank by choosing the correct option to complete the weather warning given by the IMD.
IMD on Sunday _____ a 'thunderstorm' alert for some districts in coastal Maharashtra in view of the extremely severe cyclonic storm Biparjoy gushing over the Arabian Sea.

(a) will issue (b) will be issuing
(c) issued (d) is issuing

Ans : 2024

(c) issued

5. Complete the slogan, by filling in the blank with the correct option :

Planting a tree is a very noble deed and _____ the earth from global warming!

(a) saves (b) saving
(c) had saved (d) should save

Ans :

2024

(a) saves

6. Complete the line from a song by filling the blank with the correct option :

The morning dew captures your essence,
The flowers and grass _____ your colour,
The Sunrise embraces your arrival,
As the dawn welcomes a new day.

(a) reflect (b) reflects
(c) reflected (d) shall reflect

Ans : 2024

(a) reflect

7. Complete the given narrative by filling in the blank with the correct option :

The internship at the tech startup had me _____ excited about the potential of innovation and entrepreneurial spirit.

(a) feeling (b) felt
(c) to feel (d) feels

Ans : 2024

(a) feeling

8. Complete the given narrative, by filling in the blank with the correct option.

The opportunity to volunteer at the local food bank made me _____ the challenges faced by underprivileged communities.

(a) realizing (b) to realize
(c) realized (d) realize

Ans : 2024

(d) realize

9. Fill in the blank by choosing the correct option to complete the update on the school's chess team.

It's a victorious day !

Our school's chess team _____ the interschool chess championship.

(a) has been won (b) will winning
(c) was winning (d) has won

Ans : 2024

(d) has won

10. Complete the given narrative by filling in the blank with the correct option.

Now that many employees have shown high productivity working from home, will their bosses hereafter _____ them to take working vacations ?

(a) expecting (b) expected
(c) have expected (d) expect

Ans : 2024

(d) expect

11. Complete the line from a song by filling in the blank with the correct option.

The whispering leaves tell your tale,
The silent stones _____ your journey,
The sun casts light on your path,
Leading you towards tomorrow's glory.

- (a) have echoed (b) echo
(c) echoes (d) shall echo

Ans :

2024

- (b) echo

12. Fill in the blank by using the correct word in the bracket.

Anyas _____ (eat) all the chocolates kept in the tray.

- (a) ate (b) eating
(c) have eaten (d) eaten

Ans :

2023

- (a) ate

13. Select the correct option to fill the blank about Dipti's nature.

She always _____ every person.

- (a) trust (b) trusts
(c) trusting (d) have trusted

Ans :

2023

- (b) trusts

14. Complete the given narrative, by filling in the blank with the correct option :

Heena _____ from fever since last Sunday.

- (a) suffered (b) will suffer
(c) suffer (d) has been suffering

Ans :

2023

- (d) has been suffering

15. Fill in the blank by using the correct form of the word in the bracket.

In the depths of the enchanted forest, where time _____ (stand) still and mythical creatures roamed freely, a young adventurer embarked on a quest.

Ans :

2023

- stood

Directions : In the following questions, a part of the sentence is underlined. Choose the correct Tense Form from the given alternatives (a), (b) and (c) to correct that part of the sentence. In case no improvement is needed, your answer is (d).

16. I have received your letter yesterday.

- (a) had received (b) have to receive
(c) received (d) No improvement

Ans :

2022

- (c) received

17. The boys are listening to my lecture since 8 O'clock this morning.

- (a) were listening (b) have been listening
(c) had been listening (d) No improvement

Ans :

2022

- (b) have been listening

18. The workers are waiting for their pay packet since morning.

- (a) would be waiting (b) were waiting
(c) have been waiting (d) No improvement

Ans :

2022

- (c) have been waiting

19. If you wrote to me earlier, I would have easily solved your problem.

- (a) were writing (b) had written
(c) have written (d) No improvement

Ans :

2021

- (b) had written

20. They had left the village a few days ago.

- (a) have left (b) would have left
(c) left (d) No improvement

Ans :

2021

- (c) left

21. It is high time that we did something about it.

- (a) had done (b) would do
(c) have done (d) No improvement

Ans :

2020

- (d) No improvement

22. The sun set before we reached the village.

- (a) would have set (b) would set
(c) had set (d) No improvement

Ans :

2019

- (c) had set

23. All important people of the country are having large houses in cities.

- (a) have (b) were having
(c) have been having (d) No improvement

Ans :

2018

- (a) have

24. The bell is ringing for two minutes.

- (a) has been (b) had been
(c) have been (d) No improvement

Ans :

(a) has been

2017

25. The train left before I reached the station.

- (a) will have left (b) leaves
(c) had left (d) No improvement

Ans :

2017

(c) had left

26. He is afraid that his criminal record will be held against him when he will apply for jobs.

- (a) when he apply for jobs
(b) when he applies for jobs
(c) when he should apply for jobs
(d) No improvement

Ans :

2017

(b) when he applies for jobs

27. They are waiting for her since morning.

- (a) were waiting (b) have been waiting
(c) wait (d) No improvement

Ans :

2017

(b) have been waiting

Directions : In the following questions, sentences are given with blanks to be filled in with correct Tense Form. Four alternatives are suggested for each question. Choose the correct alternative out of the four alternatives.

28. They did not know where they _____ from.

- (a) had come (b) have come
(c) has come (d) come

Ans :

2017

(a) had come

29. She feared that she _____

- (a) will fail (b) may fail
(c) might have fail (d) would fail

Ans :

2016

(d) would fail

30. The water tank _____ before it was filled.

- (a) had been cleaned (b) have been cleaned
(c) has cleaned (d) had cleaned

Ans :

2014

(a) had been cleaned

31. She _____ for a grocer's when I saw her.

- (a) is looking (b) was looking
(c) will be looking (d) has been looking

Ans :

2013

(b) was looking

32. If they _____ is earnest, they could have won the match.

- (a) tried (b) had tried
(c) would try (d) try

Ans :

2013

(b) had tried

33. It is already ten but he _____ as yet.

- (a) has not returned (b) would not return
(c) had not returned (d) will not return

Ans :

2010

(a) has not returned

34. The teacher _____

- (a) is teaching (b) are teaching
(c) has teaching (d) have teaching

Ans :

2010

(a) is teaching

35. While it _____ we saw the rainbow in the sky.

- (a) are raining (b) is raining
(c) were raining (d) was raining

Ans :

2009

(d) was raining

36. I _____ a motorcycle when the price comes down.

- (a) buy (b) shall buy
(c) had bought (d) bought

Ans :

2007

(b) shall buy

37. The engineers _____ this bridge since last year.

- (a) have repaired (b) have been repairing
(c) had repaired (d) are repairing

Ans :

2007

(b) have been repairing

38. The farmers _____ their farms, if they had known that a thunderstorm was approaching.

- (a) will leave (b) would leave
(c) will have left (d) would have left

Ans :

2007

(d) would have left

39. Solar Eclipse _____ next Monday.

- (a) will occur (b) occurred
(c) has occurred (d) had occurred

Ans :

2006

(a) will occur

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

40. If we _____ one more batsman in our team, we would have won the match.

(a) had had (b) would have been
(c) would have (d) would have had

Ans :

2005

(a) had had

Very Short Answer Type Questions

1. Fill in the blank by using the correct form of the word in the bracket, for the given portion of a letter :

Therefore, I request you to please consider this request of _____ (construct) a park in our society so that each and every person can benefit and we can enjoy a healthy environment amidst the concrete jungle.

Ans :

2024

constructing

2. Fill in the blank by using the correct form of the word in the brackets, for the given portion of a letter.

Thank you for exceeding company expectations and _____ (inspire) your team with your spectacular work ethic.

Ans :

2024

inspiring

3. Fill up the blanks by using the correct tense form of the verbs given in brackets.

- We _____ (go) to Guwahati by Rajdhani Express last month.
- Rajdhani train _____ (be) a fully air-conditioned train.
- It _____ (provide) food, cold drinks, water, and the blankets at night.
- The journey _____ (be) cool. It imparted solace to the soul and mind.
- On the opposite, there _____ (be) a priest.
- He _____ (be) in the church of Patna for the past twenty years.
- I was informed that he _____ (read) a book.
- He did not say when he _____ (come).
- I hope that you _____ (pardon) me soon.
- He taught me that good deeds _____ (be) never lost.

Ans :

1. went, 2. is, 3. provides, 4. was, 5. was, 6. has been, 7. had been reading, 8. would come, 9. will pardon, 10. are.

4. Fill up the blanks by using the correct tense form of the verbs given in brackets.

- Arjun _____ (be) a good friend of Lord Krishna.
- He never _____ (want) to fight with his brother Duryodhan.
- It was Krishna who _____ (inspire) Arjun by giving him Upadesas of Gita.
- Arjun _____ (bow) before his Guru and then he started fighting.
- The Mahabharata _____ (write) by Ved Vyasji.
- The Mahabharata _____ (be) an epic.
- Malaria _____ (be) caused by female Anopheles mosquito.
- They _____ (be) also called carriers.
- When a Mosquito _____ (bite) a person, the microbes enter into the bloodstream.
- We should _____ (keep) the surrounding clean to avoid the breeding of mosquitoes.

Ans :

1. was, 2. wanted, 3. inspired, 4. bowed, 5. was written, 6. is, 7. is, 8. are, 9. bites, 10. keep.

5. Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verbs given in the brackets:

- The hungry child _____ for ten minutes. (cry)
- He _____ along the road when suddenly he _____ an old man. (walk, meet)
- I praised him for what he _____ for the poor. (do)
- When I was at school, I _____ part in cultural activities. (take)
- You cannot go out till you _____ your homework. (complete)
- When I reached the house I _____ that thieves _____ into it. (find, break)
- My mother food when she _____ a noise. (cook, hear)
- There is going to be a buss strike. Everyone _____ for auto rickshaws and rickshaws next week. (look)
- He is a very rude person. I _____ him. (not help)
- When you reach there, he _____ a book. (read)

Ans :

1. has been crying, 2. was walking, met, 3. had done, 4. took, 5. have completed, 6. found, had broken, 7. was cooking, heard, 8. will be looking, 9. shan't help, 10. will be reading.

6. Fill up the blanks by using the correct tense form of the verbs given in brackets.

Last week I (a) _____ (visit) the trade fair. It (b) _____ (inaugurate) by the President of India. I (c) _____ (accompany) by my friend who (d) _____ (come) from the U.S.A. last week. He (e) _____ (live) in the U.S.A. since last five years. He (f) _____ (do) his M.B.A. from the New York University.

Ans :

(a) visited, (b) was inaugurated, (c) was accompanied, (d) had come, (e) has been living, (f) is doing.

7. Fill up the blanks by using the correct tense form of the verbs given in brackets.

Kate Middleton may (a) _____ (be) looked dainty and fairy-like in her wedding gown but (b) _____ (talk) doing the rounds (c) _____ (be) that the dress bore a striking similarity with Grace Kelly's wedding outfit. Royal wedding fans couldn't (d) _____ (help) noticing that both the brides (e) _____ (wear) dramatic gowns with similar V-shaped necklines and long white lace sleeves at their respective weddings, (f) _____ (report) the New York Daily.

Ans :

(a) have, (b) talks, (c) are, (d) help, (e) wore, (f) reports.

8. Fill up the blanks by using the correct tense form of the verbs given in brackets.

Honey, amla, gums, resins, tubers and tamarind; all these and more (a) _____ (come) from forests and (b) _____ (find) their way into our lives. But the tribals who (c) _____ (pluck), dig and extract them get a pittance. Now, the government (d) _____ (decide) to provide a minimum support price (MSP) for some select forest produce on the lines of wheat and paddy. The step could (e) _____ (help) around 40 million tribal families which still (f) _____ (depend) part or whole year on income from forests.

Ans :

2016, 2008

(a) come, (b) have found, (c) pluck, (d) has decided, (e) help, (f) depend.

9. Fill up the blanks by using the correct tense form of the verbs given in brackets.

With the onset of Kaliyuga, none (a) _____ (perform) pooja and the area (b) _____ (turn) into a forest with wild shrubs and mud hills (c) _____ (form) on the Shivlingam. When chappals (d) _____ (get) trees cut down for (e) _____ (form) a village, a valmeekam

(f) _____ (surface) and local people offered prayers.

Ans :

2013

(a) performed, (b) turned, (c) formed, (d) got, (e) forming, (f) surfaced.

10. Fill in the blanks by choosing the correct option given below:

(a) _____ the beauty of nature not through right but through touch. She (b) _____ hundreds of things through mere touch. She (c) _____ the smoothness of the skin of a silver birth by (d) _____ her loving hands on it. She (e) _____ the same thing and felt the rough and shaggy bark of a pine. She desired that men with sight and hearing power must (f) _____ full use of these powers.

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| (a) (i) enjoyed | (ii) was enjoying |
| (ii) had enjoyed | (iv) enjoys |
| (b) (i) will find | (ii) finds |
| (iii) has found | (iv) found |
| (c) (i) had judged | (ii) judged |
| (iii) would judge | (iv) was judging |
| (d) (i) passing | (ii) passed |
| (iii) pass | (iv) passes |
| (e) (i) do | (ii) does |
| (iii) did | (iv) will do |
| (f) (i) have made | (ii) will make |
| (iii) made | (iv) make |

Ans :

(a) (i) enjoyed, (b) (iv) found, (c) (ii) judged, (d) (i) passing, (e) (ii) did, (f) (iv) make.



CHAPTER 2

MODALS

1. INTRODUCTION

There are some modal auxiliaries in English grammar. Words like will, would, shall, should, can, could, may, might, must, ought to etc. when used with verbs (usually before the principal verb) expressing the mode or manner of the action denoted by the verb are known as modals or modal auxiliaries. Modals use such ideas as ability or capacity, probability or possibility, permission, command, compulsion, duty, obligation etc. In most of the cases modals indicate present or future times, however, sometimes they also represent past times.

NODIA

2. USES OF MODALS

Uses of different modals are given below:

Will is used

To express the pure future :

- You will see me at the mall.
- The Chairman will deliver the speech.

To express willingness, intention, promise, determination with the first person (I, We) :

- I will write the letter for you. (Promise)
- I will help you. (Willingness/Intention)
- They will win the match. (Determination)

Note : will is never used with the first person in the interrogative.

Shall is used

To express pure future :

- We shall overcome someday.
- I shall help you.

To ask for advice, suggestion, request etc. with the first person (I, We) in the interrogative :

- Shall I bring a cup of coffee for you? (Request)
- Shall I open the door? (Advice)
- Shall we meet tomorrow? (Suggestion)

Would (past form of will) is used

To express a habit :

- He would rise early in the morning and go for a walk.
- He would sit for hours reading this book.

To express a polite request :

- Would you open the door, please?
- Would you mind standing here?

To express a wish, preference :

- I wish you would come with us.
- Would that (I wish) he were here.
- I would rather have a coffee than milk.
- I would like to come with you.

To express an imaginary condition :

- I would do it, if I were allowed.
- I would buy a bike if I won a lottery.

Should (Past form of shall) is used

To express duty/obligation or advise or desirability:

- We should obey our parents. (Duty)
- You should exercise daily. (Advise)

Should often implies a mild suggestion or advice. It is milder form of must and ought to.

To express purpose after lest (in expression of fear) :

- Work hard, lest you should fail.
- They hired a taxi lest they should miss the train.

May is used

To express possibility :

- Sophia may turn up today.
- It may rain today.

To express permission :

- You may go now.
- May I come in, Sir?

To express wish, faith, hope :

- May God bless you!
- May you live long!

To express a purpose :

- She is working hard so that she may win a scholarship.

Might (Past form of may) is used

To express less possibility :

- She might come today.
- It might rain tonight.

To express permission :

- Might I raise a question?

Can is used

To express permission :

- You can go now.
- He can stay here as long as he wishes.
- Can I smoke here?

To express possibility :

- This can be true.
- Anyone can make mistakes.

To express ability or capacity :

- I can climb this mountain.
- Hritik Roshan can dance very well.

NOTE :

Can never indicates past time. In the sense of ability, the past and the future tense forms are **was/were able to** and **shall/will be able to** :

- He was not able to cross the road. (Past)
- I hope I shall be able to solve this problem. (Future)

Could (past form of can) is used

To express ability/capacity in the past :

- She could dance very well in the youth.
- I could give him an answer if he had asked me.

To express a polite request :

- Could I borrow your book?
- Could you wait for some time?

To express possibility under certain conditions:

- If we had money, we could buy a car.
- It could not be true.

Must is used

To express obligation or duty :

- You must work hard.
- Soldiers must obey the orders of their officers.
- We must not cheat others.

To express necessity or compulsion :

- The letter must be written today.
- She must do as I say.

To express emphatic advice or determination :

- You must see a doctor at once.
- You must not leave before you finish your breakfast.

To express assumption, conclusion/inference, certainty/strong probability :

- The Postmaster must be in his office at this time.
- She must be twenty one.
- He must have reached by now.

Ought (always followed by a 'to' infinitive) is used

To express the subject's obligation or duty :

- We ought to respect our parents.
- We ought not to deceive anyone.

NOTE :

There is no external authority in **ought** as there is in **must** which expresses the speaker's authority. **Must** compels action on the part of the subject.

Ought expresses duty, inner conscience, a sensible action or advice. It has the same sense as **should**.

To give advice :

- You ought to mediate for mental peace.

NOTE :

Would, should, could, might, must, ought to before **have** refer to past.

3. MARGINAL AUXILIARY VERBS

Need (not) is used

Chiefly to show absence of necessity or compulsion in the negative or interrogative :

- The negative is formed by **need not** and the interrogative by inversion.
- He need not pay your fees right now.
- You need to take a sound sleep.
- Need I speak to him.

It does not take **s** in the third person singular present tense. Its past is **had to** in the affirmative, **need not have** in the negative and **need have** in the interrogative.

- You need not have wasted your time in this useless activity.
- Need I have to see my doctor?

Dare is used

In the negative and interrogative. The negative is formed by dare not and the interrogative by inversion. It does not take s in the third person singular present tense.

- I dare not kill this snake.
- How dare you come here?
- Dare we interrupt him?

Both **dare** and **need** can be used as main verbs. Then they take s in the third person singular present tense. They form their negative and interrogative with **do** and are followed by **to** infinitive.

Used (to) is used

To express past habit :

- I used to carry a lunch box to school. (I don't carry now)
- I used to sing in my young age. (I don't sing now)

To express the existence of something in the past :

- There used to be a big mansion over here.



EXERCISE

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. Complete the slogan, by filling in the blank with the correct option.
When it gets really hot, rain _____ a blessing.
(a) should be (b) will be
(c) must be (d) ought to be
Ans : 2024
(b) will be

2. Select the option that identifies the error and supplies the correction for the opening line, from a Terms and Conditions document.
Though all efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy of the content on this website, the same could not be construed as a statement of law or used for any legal purposes.

Option No.	Error	Correction
(a)	efforts	effort
(b)	ensure	ensuring
(c)	could	should
(d)	of	for

- Ans : 2024
(c)

3. A modal verb is always followed by
(a) V⁵ (b) V⁴
(c) V² (d) V¹
Ans :
(d) V¹

4. Can you lift this box ? What does the underlined auxiliary **can** suggests ?
(a) Capacity (b) Competence
(c) Ability (d) Skill
Ans :
(c) Ability

5. The game should be finished by now. What does the underlined auxiliary **should** suggests ?
(a) Probability (b) Conjecture
(c) Deduction (d) Prediction
Ans :
(d) Prediction

Directions : In the following questions, sentences are given with blanks to be filled in with an appropriate and suitable Modal Auxiliary. Four alternatives are suggested for each question. Choose the correct alternative out of the four alternatives.

6. I _____ rather die than join the gang of terrorists.

(a) could (b) should
(c) would (d) can

Ans : 2022

(c) would

7. I _____ go on with the work, cause what may.

(a) may (b) will
(c) shall (d) can

Ans : 2022

(b) will

8. You _____ tell the truth.

(a) must (b) would
(c) might (d) can

Ans : 2022

(a) must

9. _____ you post this letter for me, please ?

(a) Must (b) Will
(c) Shall (d) Need

Ans : 2021

(b) Will

10. Your sister is seriously injured. You _____ consult a good doctor.

(a) can (b) would
(c) might (d) must

Ans : 2021

(d) must

11. The teacher said to Hari, "you _____ go where you like."

(a) may (b) can
(c) shall (d) should

Ans : 2020

(a) may

12. He prayed that God _____ give me prosperity.

(a) must (b) could
(c) should (d) might

Ans : 2020

(d) might

13. _____ I go out, Sir ?

(a) Can (b) Will
(c) May (d) Should

Ans :

(c) May

2020

14. _____ God help you.

(a) Might (b) Can
(c) Would (d) May

Ans : 2020

(d) May

15. It _____ rain tonight.

(a) will (b) may
(c) should (d) can

Ans : 2019

(b) may

16. Work hard lest you _____ fail.

(a) should (b) may
(c) would (d) will

Ans : 2019

(a) should

17. You have a large number of shirts. You _____ buy any more

(a) need not (b) can not
(c) would not (d) should not

Ans : 2017

(a) need not

18. As you sow, so _____ you reap.

(a) will (b) can
(c) shall (d) may

Ans : 2017

(c) shall

19. We _____ drink in a public place. It is a crime.

(a) must not (b) should not
(c) would not (d) could not

Ans : 2016

(a) must not

20. How _____ you speak to me like that ?

(a) can (b) dare
(c) will (d) may

Ans : 2016

(b) dare

21. He said I _____ use his car whenever I wanted.

(a) will (b) would
(c) could (d) can

Ans : 2015

(c) could

22. You _____ start your work in right earnest.

(a) must (b) can
(c) should (d) may

Ans :

(a) must

2015

23. One _____ love one's neighbours.

(a) used to (b) ought to

(c) dare (d) could

Ans :

(b) ought to

2015

24. We _____ do as we are told.

(a) must (b) should

(c) can (d) may

Ans :

(a) must

2015

25. You _____ not feel sorry for this petty mistake.

(a) dare (b) need

(c) used to (d) ought

Ans :

(b) need

2014

26. She _____ have been ill.

(a) must (b) dare

(c) need (d) ought

Ans :

(a) must

2014

27. At Lahore I _____ walk by the Ravi.

(a) ought to (b) used to

(c) need (d) dare

Ans :

(b) used to

2013

28. He _____ not eat so much, he will fall ill.

(a) dare (b) must

(c) need (d) used to

Ans :

(c) need

2013

29. You _____ not enter my class. I forbid it.

(a) will (b) may

(c) shall (d) dare

Ans :

(c) shall

2013

30. I _____ not come yesterday since I was too busy.

(a) dare (b) need

(c) could (d) should

Ans :

(c) could

2013

31. _____ you open the gate, please ?

(a) May (b) Might

(c) Will (d) Would

Ans :

(d) Would

2013

32. My father is not well. Still he _____ come.

(a) can (b) may

(c) would (d) might

Ans :

(d) might

2012

33. He _____ not worry about me.

(a) may (b) would

(c) need (d) could

Ans :

(c) need

2011, 2009

34. The news I heard just now is so strange that you _____ not believe it.

(a) will (b) could

(c) might (d) None of these

Ans :

(c) might

2010

35. You will have to catch the morning flight, so you _____ better get ready.

(a) may (b) had

(c) should (d) would

Ans :

(c) should

2010

36. He _____ sometimes force himself to work on till late in the night only to find himself unable to do anything the next day.

(a) could (b) used to

(c) would (d) should

Ans :

(c) would

2010

37. _____ our king live long !

(a) May (b) Must

(c) Should (d) Can

Ans :

(a) May

2010

38. Mr. Sharma said that it was money that he _____ collect from him.

(a) shall (b) will

(c) can (d) could

Ans :

(d) could

2009

39. The father divided his property among his three sons lest they _____ quarrel afterwards.

- (a) should (b) shall
(c) will (d) could

Ans : 2008, 2004
(a) should

40. Had I known about the agenda, I _____ have attended the meeting.

- (a) could (b) would
(c) will (d) might

Ans : 2008
(b) would

Directions : In the following questions, choose the correct alternative out of the four alternatives that closest to the idea conveyed by the sentence.

41. He may take the examination.

- (a) He will take the examination.
(b) He must take the examination.
(c) He can't take the examination.
(d) He has been permitted to take the examination.

Ans :
(d) He has been permitted to take the examination.

42. You must come in time.

- (a) You are likely to come in time.
(b) You are obliged to come in time.
(c) You have the option to come in time.
(d) You can't come in time.

Ans :
(b) You are obliged to come in time.

43. Shall we sit in the lawn ?

- (a) I suggest we sit in the lawn.
(b) We must sit in the lawn.
(c) We have to sit in the lawn.
(d) We can sit in the lawn.

Ans :
(a) I suggest we sit in the lawn.

44. The rupee may be devalued.

- (a) The value of the rupee has gone down.
(b) The value of the rupee is to go down.
(c) It is possible that the value of the rupee will go down.
(d) The value of the rupee can't go down.

Ans :
(c) It is possible that the value of the rupee will go down.

45. Need you work so hard ?

- (a) You must work so hard.
(b) You don't work so hard.
(c) You don't have to work so hard.
(d) You can't work so hard.

Ans :
(c) You don't have to work so hard.

Very Short Answer Type Questions

Identify the error and supply the correction for the following advertisement of an antivirus software. A properly installed and maintained antivirus program may wipe out any malware attack, be it a bot, a virus, a Trojan or even ransomware. Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans : 2024

Error	Correction
may	should/will

2. Read the given sentence from an article on Yoga. Identify the error and supply the correction in the sentence :

Yoga should help lower blood pressure, cholesterol, and blood sugar, all of which are not good for your heart and blood vessels. Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans : 2024

Error	Correction
Should	Can/may/might

3. Read the given sentence from a science journal. Identify the error and supply the correction in the sentence.

'When nutrition therapy is provided by a qualified professional, people could learn how to make better food choices.' Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans : 2024

Error	Correction
could	can

4. Identify the error and supply the correction for the following note in a smart watch's instruction manual.

When the watch is connected to the mobile phone, the watch may automatically calibrate and synchronize with the time of the mobile phone.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

2024

Error	Correction
may	will

5. Read the given dialogue carefully. Identify the error and supply the correction in the sentence. Sanya exclaims, "Look! My keys are in the refrigerator. I will have absent-mindedly put them here while putting away the groceries."

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

2023

Error	Correction
will	must/might/could

6. Read the given sentence from a recipe review article. Identify the error and supply the correction in the sentence.

This delightful recipe must keep your hunger pangs at bay with its balanced spices and oriental flavour.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

2023

Error	Correction
must	will

7. Fill the blank to complete the cautionary declaration, given below.

The traffic police _____ penalize the law breakers strictly.

Ans :

2023

will

8. Identify the error in the given sentence and supply the correction.

The news I heard just now is so strange that you could not believe it.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

2018

Error	Correction
could	might

9. Identify the error in the given sentence and supply the correction.

The father divided his property among his three sons lest they will quarrel afterwards.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

2017

Error	Correction
will	should

10. Identify the error in the given sentence and supply the correction.

You could not disturb him during his work.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

2016

Error	Correction
could not	must not

11. Fill in the blanks with appropriate modals:

- We _____ obey our teachers, (have to/ must)
- She _____ pass this time, (ought to/has to)
- He _____ not buy a car. (has to/need)
- He works hard lest he _____ fail, (should/ must)
- Do you _____ cook your own meal? (should/have to)
- The villagers _____ use kerosene lamps a few years ago. (must/had to)

7. The old lady _____ take a bath every day before taking meals, (ought to/should)
8. She _____ finish this work before I go. (has to/must)
9. Ramesh said that they _____ report for duty on Monday, (should/ought to)
10. We _____ prepare our lessons well before the examination. (ought to/must)

Ans :

1. must, 2. ought to, 3. need, 4. should, 5. have to, 6. had to, 7. should, 8. must, 9. should, 10. ought to.

12. Fill in the blanks using appropriate modals.

1. I _____ eat 5 bananas at a time when I was young.
2. You _____ see the lawyer at once.
3. _____ god protect you from the pain and agony.
4. My mother _____ watch T.V. for hours even now.
5. It _____ be cold in the evening, who knows?
6. Avoid the offending allergen that _____ cause allergy. It may be a particular food, perfume, smoke or a cold environment.
7. Today you _____ put your mind and talents to use. You should establish new contacts.
8. He said that the inspector had not been removed. This _____ affect the investigation.
9. He _____ fail to deliver goods.
10. The company _____ rather prefer to buy the shares of other financial institutions.

Ans :

1. could, 2. must, 3. May, 4. can, 5. may, 6. might, 7. should, 8. might, 9. may, 10. will.

13. Rewrite the following sentences using the words given in the brackets.

1. It's not necessary to buy the cap. (need)
2. The hotels will be full, possibly. (might)
3. I'm sure it is the sun cream you are allergic to. (must)
4. It's not possible for us to change the weather. (can't)
5. Is it a good idea to take it with us this time? (should)

Ans :

2014

1. We need not buy the cap.
2. The hotels might be full.
3. It must be the sun cream you're allergic to.
4. We can't change the weather.
5. Should we take it with us this time?

14. In the following passage, one modal needs to be inserted in each line. Write the missing modal along with the word that comes before and the word that comes after it.

1. I believe I get them all in this shop.
2. You see, I buy a present for my friend.
3. What we look at first?
4. Gloves . I think they be on this floor.
5. I see just the kind we want.
6. You try these on.

Ans :

2013

	Before	Missing	After
1.	I	can	get
2.	I	have to	buy
3.	What	shall	we
4.	they	might	be
5.	I	can	see
6.	You	should	try

15. Meera has written a dialogue between two friends. But she has used the wrong modals. Find the incorrect modals and replace them with the correct ones in each line.

1. **Sonu** : Where's Vikas? He can have been here half an hour ago.
2. **Vicky** : He should have got lost. He is still new to this town.
3. **Sonu** : He can have forgotten all about the plan, I suppose.
4. **Vicky** : He may not have forgotten. We are talking about it this morning.
5. **Sonu** : Well, something can have delayed him.

Ans :

	Incorrect	Correct
1.	can	should
2.	should	may
3.	can	could
4.	may not	can't
5.	can	must

16. Complete the dialogue, filling in the blanks.

Frog : You (a) _____ practise for longer hours as it will make your voice grow stronger.

Nightingale : But I (b) _____ as the weather is bad.

Frog : If you don't then you (c) _____ lose your audience. You (d) _____ to make them happier.

Nightingale : No, I am leaving your Bingle Bog Jungle right now, I (e) _____ not sing at any cost.

Frog : You (f) _____ not or else I will kill you.

Ans : 2013

(a) must, (b) can't, (c) shall, (d) ought, (e) would, (f) dare.

17. Complete the dialogue, filling in the blanks.

Kinshuk : Doctor, I am not feeling well, (a) _____ you please issue me a medical certificate?

Dr. Anil : Yes, certainly I (b) _____ if you (c) _____ tell me your ailment.

Kinshuk : Sir, I (d) _____ go to Simla as I am suffering from workaholism.

Dr. Anil : This is no ailment. Sorry, in that case I (e) _____ You (f) _____ leave now.

Ans : 2012

(a) could, (b) will, (c) can, (d) need to, (e) cannot, (f) may.

18. Complete the dialogue, filling in the blanks.

Prachi : (a) _____ I remind you that tomorrow we (b) _____ go for a movie?

Rashmi : No, you (c) _____ I (d) _____ ask Namrata to remind me.

Prachi : I (e) _____ be happy if you bring your sister along.

Rashmi : OK. I (f) _____ certainly.

Ans : 2012

(a) should, (b) have to, (c) need not, (d) shall, (e) would, (f) would.

19. Fill in the blanks with appropriate modals.

Cross-Border terrorism (a) _____ increase if there is no check now. The prime cause is, anybody who enters the state illegally (b) _____ be permitted to stay. Our government (c) _____ undertake strong measures so that this act could be prevented. I hope the terrorists. (d) _____ realise their moral obligation. Kill the sin and not the sinner, hence the terrorists (e) _____ not be punished rather they (f) _____ to be rehabilitated.

Ans : 2011

(a) will, (b) should not, (c) should, (d) would, (e) should, (f) ought/need.

20. Fill in the blanks with the appropriate modal.

Mohan is not keeping well nowadays. He (a) _____ see the doctor immediately. He (b) _____ get well unless he visits a doctor. He (c) _____ be suffering from viral fever. He (d) _____ take proper medicine and rest lest he (e) _____ fall seriously ill. It (f) _____ affect not only his health but studies also.

Ans : 2010

(a) must, (b) can't/won't, (c) may, (d) should, (e) should, (f) may.



CHAPTER 3

SUBJECT-VERB CONCORD

1. INTRODUCTION

Action is what comes to your mind as soon as you think of a verb. You **think** of something. You **tell** something. You **play** cricket. You **run**. All these bolder words tell about you and are called verbs. In fact, your identity is established by a verb, by what you **do**, by what you **are**. Note this **are**, which does not denote an action but a state of being. Nevertheless, it tells about you and hence also is a verb. Language has its base in logic and harmony. The subject and the verb are the essential parts of a sentence. It is imperative that the verb agree with the subject in number and person.

2. MEANING AND DEFINITION

Concord is the agreement which must occur between the subject and the verb in a sentence. The subject is the part of the sentence which does something. The verb tells what it does. Subject-verb concord or agreement can be defined as follows:

Subject-verb concord or agreement refers to the relationship between the subject and predicate of the sentence.

Subject-verb concord or agreement means that the subject and the verb must agree in case and in number.

3. SOME BASIC RULES

Some rules of subject-verb concord or agreement are given below:

Rule 1

Two or more singular subjects connected by **and** usually take a verb in the plural.

Incorrect Computer and telecommunication **has metamorphosed** information technology.

Correct Computer and telecommunication **have metamorphosed** information technology.

Note that computer and telecommunication are two distinct subjects. So they will take a plural verb.

Rule 2

If two singular nouns refer to the same person or thing, the verb must be singular.

Incorrect The poet and critic **have been** honoured.

Correct The poet and critic **has been** honoured.

In such sentences you have to be very cautious about the article **the**. When we say the poet and critic, we are referring to one person only who is both poet as well as critic. Say, someone like TS Eliot. When we say the poet and the critic, we are referring to two persons - one the poet and the other the critic. Since the given incorrect sentence uses **the** only once, we are talking of one person. Hence, the verb should be singular.

Rule 3

If two subjects together express one idea, the verb is in the singular.

Incorrect Bread and butter **are** essential for one's life.

Correct Bread and butter **is** essential for one's life.

Here we are not talking of bread and butter as separate food items. One can very well do without these. If you eat rice instead of bread and take no butter at all, even then life goes on. Here bread and butter means livelihood. Means of living is essential for one's life. Thus we see that the two nouns together convey a single idea. Hence, the verb should be singular.

Rule 4

If the singular subjects are preceded by each or every, the verb is usually singular.

Incorrect Every man and woman in a family **are** responsible for the upbringing of a child.

Correct Every man and woman in a family **is** responsible for the upbringing of a child.

Here it appears as if there were two subjects - man and woman. Hence the mistake of using the plural verb **are**. But mark the word **every**. The use of this word brings in the idea of one at a time. Hence, use singular verb.

Rule 5

Two or more singular subjects connected by or, nor, either ... or, neither ... nor take a verb in the singular.

Incorrect Either Manoj or Madhukar **have** the key to this problem.

Correct Either Manoj or Madhukar **has** the key to this problem.

The use of either ... or makes it clear that it is one of the two and should therefore take a singular verb.

Rule 6

When the subjects joined by or or nor are of different numbers, the verb must be plural and the plural subject must be placed next to the verb.

Incorrect Neither Rekha nor her friends **was** present at the party.

Correct Neither Rekha nor her friends **were** present at the party.

In such cases, we function on the principle 'plural includes singular'. The verb **was** may apply to Rekha but not to her friends. For the latter we need a plural verb. But can the plural verb apply to singular Rekha? Yes, because plural includes singular.

Rule 7

When the subjects joined by **or** or **nor** are of different persons, the verb agrees in person with the one nearest to it.

Incorrect Either she or I will pay the fees.

Correct Either she or I shall pay the fees.

Or

Either she will pay the fees, or I shall.

The verb here should agree with **I**, not she.

Rule 8

Error of Proximity : The verb is made to agree in number with a noun near it instead of with its proper subject. This is wrong and should be avoided.

Incorrect The behaviour of the students **were** not proper.

Correct The behaviour of the students **was** not proper.

The writer of the above sentence has a myopic (short-sighted) vision. His grammar functions jerkily. He sees students and immediately concludes - plural verb **were**. If we calmly put the question what/who was/were not proper?, we see that it is the behaviour, not the students. Since the subject the behaviour is singular, the verb should be singular.

Rule 9

Words joined to a singular subject by with, as well as etc. are parenthetical. The verb should therefore be put in the singular.

Incorrect The guru as well as his disciples **are** committed to celibacy.

Correct The guru as well as his disciples **is** committed to celibacy.

Note that **as well as** is different from **and** or **or**. In the case of the latter conjunctions both parts - that is, the one before the conjunction **and** or **or**, and the one after the conjunction - carry equal weights. But in the case of **as well as**, the part that comes after it is merely supporting in nature - worthy of being put within brackets. The main part is the one that comes before it and the verb behaves in accordance with this part. In the given sentence; as, guru is singular.

Rule 10

Either, neither, each, everyone, many a must be followed by a singular verb.

Incorrect Many a man **have** resigned in crisis.

Correct Many a man **has** resigned in crisis.

The confusion is but natural. The moment one sees **many a**, the mind is filled with plural notions. In fact, the phrase does have a plural meaning. But in spite of its meaning, it behaves as a singular adjective. Look at the noun. It is man, not men. So the verb should be singular.

Rule 11

When a plural noun denotes some specific quantity or amount considered as a whole, the verb is generally singular.

Incorrect Five hours **are** too short a time to judge one's character.

Correct Five hours **is** too short a time to judge one's character.

Here **five hours** is being considered as **one** chunk. This is made clearer by the use of **a** time. So, the verb should be singular.



EXERCISE

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. Fill in the blank by choosing the correct option to complete the part of the grievance posted by a citizen on a social media platform.

Crossing this stretch at any time of the day is a challenge. Even during afternoons, there _____ ice cream vendors on the road with people crowding around their carts.

- (a) were (b) are
(c) have been (d) would be

Ans :

2024

- (b) are

2. Complete Nelson Mandela's quote by filling in the blank with the correct option.

"The greatest glory in living _____ not in never falling, but in rising every time we fall." - Nelson Mandela

- (a) lie (b) lies
(c) lays (d) laying

Ans :

2023

- (b) lies

3. In a sentence a verb must agree with its

- (a) subject (b) object
(c) second object (d) none of these

Ans :

- (a) subject

4. In a sentence, a verb must agree with the subject

- (a) in person (b) in number
(c) both a and b (d) none of these

Ans :

- (c) both a and b

5. If the subject is singular, the verb will also be

- (a) singular (b) plural
(c) in third form (d) none of these

Ans :

- (a) singular

6. If the subject is plural. The verb will also be

- (a) plural (b) singular
(c) in third form (d) none of these

Ans :

- (a) plural

7. Only one of the following sentences has got a correct subject-verb agreement. Which one is that?

- (a) The typing of letters are over
(b) The typing of letters is over
(c) Both a and b
(d) None of these

Ans :

- (b) The typing of letters is over.

8. We use _____ with singular nouns and pronouns.

- (a) is (b) are
(c) they (d) none of these

Ans :

- (a) is

9. We use _____ with plural nouns and pronouns.

- (a) are (b) is
(c) am (d) none of these

Ans :

- (a) are

10. We use _____ with the singular pronoun I.

- (a) am (b) is
(c) are (d) none of these

Ans :

- (a) am

11. We use **was** with _____ nouns and pronouns.

- (a) singular (b) plural
(c) both a and b (d) none of these

Ans :

- (a) singular

12. We use **were** with _____ nouns and pronouns.

- (a) plural (b) singular
(c) both a and b (d) none of these

Ans :

- (a) plural

13. The student _____ completed this chapter.

- (a) have (b) has
(c) is (d) are

Ans :

- (b) has

2018

14. Mahesh and Suresh _____ business partners.

- (a) have (b) has
(c) are (d) had

Ans :

- (c) are

2018

15. She _____ her office by 9 a.m. daily.

- (a) reach (b) reaches
(c) reached (d) reaching

Ans :

2017

(b) reaches

16. Kamal and his friends _____ also invited to the party.

- (a) is (b) was
(c) had (d) were

Ans :

2017

(d) were

17. Neither you nor your sister should _____ to them.

- (a) talk (b) talks
(c) talked (d) talking

Ans :

2017

(a) talk

18. Twenty-five years _____ the minimum age to fill this form.

- (a) are (b) is
(c) has (d) have

Ans :

2017

(b) is

19. A bouquet of flowers _____ required for the event.

- (a) are (b) have
(c) has (d) is

Ans :

2016, 2006

(d) is

20. A pair of socks _____ been missing from my wardrobe.

- (a) have (b) has
(c) were (d) is

Ans :

2016

(b) has

21. Much _____ been said in the news reports.

- (a) were (b) have
(c) has (d) was

Ans :

2015

(c) has

22. The company _____ of its stakeholders.

- (a) think (b) thought
(c) thinks (d) thinking

Ans :

2015

(c) thinks

23. Either of the two dresses shall _____ good.

- (a) looking (b) look
(c) looks (d) looked

Ans :

2014

(b) look

24. Each and every member _____ to vote.

- (a) has (b) have
(c) having (d) are

Ans :

2014

(a) has

25. A large number of soldiers _____ died for the country.

- (a) has (b) is
(c) are (d) have

Ans :

2014

(d) have

26. Half of the class _____ empty.

- (a) were (b) was
(c) has (d) have

Ans :

2013

(b) was

27. A lot of the money I had _____ gone.

- (a) is (b) are
(c) have (d) none of these

Ans :

(a) is

28. Mathematics _____ my favourite subject when I was in high school.

- (a) was (b) were
(c) is (d) none of these

Ans :

(a) was

29. The Sushi and the pasta _____ delicious.

- (a) look (b) looks
(c) looking (d) none of these

Ans :

(a) look

30. Chris, in addition to his brother Zack, _____ hockey on Saturday.

- (a) play (b) plays
(c) playing (d) none of these

Ans :

(b) plays

31. The box of toys _____ in the boy's bedroom.

- (a) is (b) are
(c) am (d) none of these

Ans :

- (a) is

32. The book of stories _____ \$10.

- (a) cost (b) costs
(c) costes (d) none of these

Ans :

- (b) costs

33. The Lions of the East _____ an interesting book.

- (a) is (b) are
(c) am (d) none of these

Ans :

- (a) is

34. Either Shobha or I _____ to blame.

- (a) is (b) am
(c) are (d) none of these

Ans :

- (b) am

35. Neither of them _____ wrong.

- (a) was (b) were
(c) has (d) none of these

Ans :

- (a) was

36. The council _____ chosen its president.

- (a) has (b) have
(c) is (d) none of these

Ans :

- (a) has

37. Two and two _____ four.

- (a) make (b) makes
(c) are (d) none of these

Ans :

- (b) makes

38. The cost of all these articles _____ risen.

- (a) has (b) have
(c) are (d) none of these

Ans :

- (a) has

39. The quality of the mangoes _____ not good.

- (a) was (b) were
(c) are (d) none of these

Ans :

- (a) was

40. No news _____ good news.

- (a) is (b) are
(c) am (d) none of these

Ans :

- (a) is

Directions: In the following questions, a sentence is given followed by four options. Select the option that replaces the given sentence or its part correctly.

41. Slow and steady win the race.

- (a) Slowly and steady wins the race.
(b) Slow and steadily wins the race.
(c) Slow and steady wins the race.
(d) None of these

Ans :

- (c) Slow and steady wins the race.

42. These news were broadcasted on Radio BBC.

- (a) These news were broadcast on Radio BBC.
(b) This news was broadcast on Radio BBC.
(c) This news was broadcasted on Radio BBC.
(d) None of these

Ans :

- (b) This news was broadcast on Radio BBC.

43. Every boy and girl were given a prize.

- (a) Every boy and girl were given prizes.
(b) Every boy and girl was given prizes.
(c) Every boy and girl was given a prize.
(d) None of these

Ans :

- (c) Every boy and girl was given a prize.

44. Everyone of them were clapping at the performance of the clown.

- (a) Everyone of them were clapping at the performance of the clowns.
(b) Everyone of them was clapping at the performance of the clowns.
(c) Everyone of them was clapping at the performances about the clowns.
(d) None of these

Ans :

- (b) Everyone of them was clapping at the performance of the clowns.

45. Law and order are to be maintained at all costs.

- (a) Law and orders are to be maintained at all costs.

- (b) Law and order is to be maintained at all costs.
 (c) Laws and orders are to be maintained at all costs.
 (d) None of these

Ans :

- (b) Law and order is to be maintained at all costs.

46. Five hundred rupees are a long sum.

- (a) Five hundred rupee is a long sum.
 (b) Five hundred rupee is a large sum.
 (c) Five hundred rupees is a big sum.
 (d) None of these

Ans :

- (c) Five hundred rupees is a big sum.

47. I knew that he will not respect his elders.

- (a) I knew that he would not respect his elders.
 (b) I knew that he shall not respect his elders.
 (c) I knew that he will not be respecting his elders.
 (d) None of these

Ans :

- (a) I knew that he would not respect his elders.

48. He is one of the greatest player who has participated in one day cricket matches.

- (a) He is one of the greatest players who has
 (b) He is one of the greatest players who have
 (c) He is one of the greatest players who have
 (d) None of these

Ans :

- (b) He is one of the greatest players who have

49. Many a boys were playing in the garden.

- (a) Many a boy were playing in the garden
 (b) Many a boys was playing in the garden.
 (c) Many a boy was playing in the garden.
 (d) None of these

Ans :

- (c) Many a boy was playing in the garden.

50. None of the ten pens are yours.

- (a) None of the ten pen are yours.
 (b) None of the ten pens is yours.
 (c) None of the ten pens are your
 (d) None of these

Ans :

- (b) None of the ten pens is yours.

Very Short Answer Type Questions

1. Fill in the blank by using the correct form of the word in the bracket, for the given portion of a letter :

Dear Sir

In response to your query, the document that _____ (explain) our country's sustainability initiatives has been attached for your consideration.

Ans :

2024

explains

2. Fill in the blank by using the correct form of the word in the brackets, for the given portion of a letter.

Please keep me _____ (apprise) of your next step to address this matter. Thanks for your time.

Ans :

2024

apprised

3. Fill in the blank by using the correct form of the word in the bracket, for the given portion of a letter.

Sir

Enclosed is the report that _____ (summarize) the study conducted on the impact of climate change on crop yield in the region.

Ans :

2024

summarizes

4. Fill in the blank by choosing the correct option to complete an issued circular by an organization, to its Managers.

Please refer to the attached conference schedule and _____ (it/these/them) should be circulated among all attendees for their reference.

Ans :

2024

it

5. Fill in the blank by choosing the correct option, to complete the line of a circular issued by an organization, to its stakeholders.

In order to enable the stakeholders to _____ (access/assess/accnt) all the applicable circulars at one place, the provisions of the circulars issued till January 6, 2024, are incorporated in this master circular.

Ans :

2024

access

6. Fill in the blank by choosing the correct option to complete the line from an insurance company brochure.

Suitable for someone who wishes to _____ (insure/assure/ensure) adequate financial backup. It is available to the family in case of his/her untimely death.

Ans :

2024

ensure

7. Fill in the blank by choosing the correct option in the bracket, to complete the sentence :

The revised meeting agenda is attached and

_____(this/those/it) needs to be emailed to all participants before the meeting.

Ans :

2024

it

8. Identify the error in the given sentence and supply the correction.

Some guys like to fights on even playing grounds, and some guys like to cheat.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

2022

Error	Correction
fights	fight

9. Identify the error in the given sentence, from a school magazine report and supply the correction. The heavy dose of chemicals that we ingest with every bite of fast food and carbonated drinks are a lethal combination for our health.

Use the given format for your response

Error	Correction

Ans :

2021

Error	Correction
are	is

10. Identify the error in the given sentence and supply the correction.

A good business letter is one that get results.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

2020

Error	Correction
get	gets

11. Identify the error in the given sentence and supply the correction.

The movie, including all the previews, take about two hours to watch.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

2020

Error	Correction
take	takes

12. Identify the error in the given sentence, from an e-magazine report and supply the correction.

In the last decade, conservationists and academics have turned his attention to studying the best ways to install these natural features in the North.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

2019

Error	Correction
his	their

13. Identify the error in the given sentence, from a school magazine report and supply the correction. A group of students were invited to come on stage and play a drama scene. The drama they presented was funny and interesting.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

2019

Error	Correction
were	was

14. Choose the correct form of the verbs given in the brackets in the following sentences:

- Each of these producers _____ his own advantage, (has, have)
- Ten miles _____ long distance, (is, are)
- Many a student _____ hard to pass his entrance exam, (try, tries)
- The furniture in his house _____ impressive, (look, looks)

5. Few students _____ present in the class today, (is, are)
6. Ritesh, my best friend _____ leaving for Japan next week, (is, are)
7. Most of my friends _____ government employees, (is, are)
8. The level of intoxication _____ from subject to subject, (vary, varies)
9. Either boys or girls _____ telling lies, (is, are)
10. A number of people _____ reported to be missing in the train accident at Jhansi. (was, were)

Ans :

1. has, 2. is, 3. tries, 4. looks, 5. are, 6. is, 7. are, 8. varies, 9. are, 10. were.

15. In each of the lines below, one verb does not agree with the subject. Write it correctly.

1. Gauri and Tamanna is visiting the Jaisalmer Fort.
2. The Jaisalmer Fort are one of the largest forts in the world.
3. The fort stand in the middle of the Thar Desert.
4. Several tales of valour is attached to this fort.
5. Many warriors has tried to capture this fort.
6. A few has succeeded.

Ans :

	Incorrect	Correct
1.	is	are
2.	are	is
3.	stand	stands
4.	is	are
5.	has	have
6.	has	have

16. Fill in the blanks with the correct verb given in the bracket:

1. Mathematics _____ (is/are) my favourite subject.
2. Politics _____ (is/are) not my cup of tea.
3. The poet and philosopher, Rahim _____ (has/have) died.
4. Mohan no less than you _____ (is/are) guilty.
5. This news _____ (is/are) false.
6. Bread and butter _____ (is/are) my favourite breakfast.

Ans :

1. is, 2. is, 3. has, 4. are, 5. is, 6. is.

17. Fill in the blanks with the correct form of verb:

1. One thousand rupees _____ a big amount for me.
2. If I _____ a bird, I would fly.
3. Each of the girls _____ received an award.
4. Four weeks _____ a good holiday.
5. My father _____ not like reading comics.
6. He walks as if he _____ lame.

Ans :

1. is, 2. were, 3. has, 4. is, 5. does, 6. were.

18. Fill up the blanks by using the correct form of the verbs given in brackets.

1. Mrs Talwar _____ (live) in a village.
2. She _____ (be) three children.
3. Her hobby _____ (be) singing and praying in solitude.
4. She _____ (love) to look after the poor children.
5. Her children _____ (be) abroad.
6. She _____ (be) a staunch devotee of Lord Krishna.

Ans :

1. lives, 2. has, 3. is, 4. loves, 5. are, 6. is.

19. Complete the passage using correct form of verb. Climatic change (a) _____ one of the hotly contested debates. India and Antarctica (b) _____ once the part of the same landmass. To visit Antarctica now (c) _____ to be a part of history. 90 percent of the Earth's total ice volumes (d) _____ stored there, Antarctica (e) _____ her simple ecosystem. Therefore to study the earth, Antarctica (f) _____ the place to go. Antarctica (g) _____ devoid of any human markets. It (h) _____ no trees, buildings or billboards.

Ans :

- (a) is, (b) were, (c) is, (d) was, (e) has, (f) is, (g) is, (h) has.



NODIA

CHAPTER 4

REPORTED SPEECH

1. INTRODUCTION

The art of reporting the words of a speaker is called Narration. If we report what another person has said, we usually do not use the speaker's exact words (direct speech), but reported (indirect) speech. Therefore, you need to learn how to transform direct speech. The structure is a little different depending on whether you want to transform a statement, question or request.

2. DIRECT NARRATION

Direct narration is a speech which is reported by some other person exactly in the words spoken by the speaker. The speech is placed within inverted commas; as,

- She said to him, "I shall give you money."
(Direct Narration)

Points to remember about Direct Narration:

1. It is put within inverted commas.
2. It always begins with a capital letter.
3. A comma separates it from the Reporting Verb.

3. INDIRECT NARRATION

Indirect narration is a speech which is reported by some other person by using certain conjunctions in place of commas and making necessary changes in the verbs and the pronoun of the reported speech.

- She told him that she would give him money.
(Indirect Narration)

Points to remember about Indirect Narration:

1. No inverted commas are used.
2. No comma is required to separate it from the Reporting Verb.
3. The tense of the Reporting Verb is never changed.

4. A conjunction may be used after the Reporting Verb if necessary.
5. Tenses, pronouns and words denoting nearness of time and position undergo certain changes.

4. TRANSFORMATION OF DIRECT SPEECH INTO INDIRECT SPEECH

Unless any instructions are given to the contrary, it should be assumed that the report of a dialogue is to be given by a third person. The order of ideas and the language of the original should not be changed when direct speech is turned into indirect speech. Only the necessary logical changes in verb tenses, pronoun person, adjectives and adverbs are to be made. Let's study the transformation of direct speech into indirect speech.

Change of Tenses

Rule 1

If the Reporting Verb is in the present (says, is/are/ am saying etc.) or in the future tense (will/shall do, will/shall have done etc.) the tense of the verb in the indirect speech is not changed.

Direct She says, "I am reading".

Indirect She says that she is reading.

Rule 2

If Reporting Verb is in the past tense (said, had said, was saying, had been saying etc.) the tenses in the reported speech are changed into the past tense (Do/does is changed to did, Did is changed to had done, Can is changed to could, May is changed to Might, Will is changed to would, Shall is changed to should).

Direct He said, "There is a scarcity of raw material."

Indirect He said that there was a scarcity of raw material.

Rule 3

Present Indefinite (see) becomes Past Indefinite (saw). Present Continuous (is seeing) is changed to past Continuous (was seeing). Present Perfect (has seen) is changed to Past Perfect (had seen). Past Indefinite (saw) becomes Past Perfect (had seen). Past Continuous (was seeing) becomes Past Perfect Continuous (had been seeing).

NOTE :

Past Perfect (had seen) and Past Perfect Continuous (had been seeing) remain unchanged.

Exceptions to the Rule

In case of a universal truth or permanent fact expressed in the reported speech, the tense remains unchanged irrespective of the tense of the Reporting Verb.

Direct My father says, "The sun is a star."

Indirect My father says that the sun is a star.

If the reported speech prescribed a state of affairs which still exists when the speech is reported, its tense normally remains unchanged.

Direct He said, "Mohan wants to become rich by winning a lottery."

Indirect He said that Mohan wants to become rich by winning a lottery.

Change of Pronoun**Rule 1**

First person pronoun are changed into pronoun of the same person as the person of the subject of the Reporting Verb.

Direct I said, "I have done my work."

Indirect I said that I had done my work.

Direct You said, "I have done my work."

Indirect You said that you had done your work.

Direct He said, "I have done my work."

Indirect He said that he had done his work.

Rule 2

Pronouns of the second person are changed into pronouns of the same person as that of the object of the Reporting Verb.

Direct Mohan said to me, "You should do your work quietly."

Indirect Mohan told me that I should do my work quietly.

Direct Mohan said to him, "You should do your work quietly."

Indirect Mohan told him that he should do his work quietly.

Rule 3

Third person pronoun remain unchanged.

Direct I said to Ram, "She should not be trusted."

Indirect I told Ram that she should not be trusted.

Change of Words Denoting Time and Position

All pronoun, adjectives or adverbs denoting nearness of time or positions must be replaced by words denoting corresponding remoteness or distance.

Direct I said, "I am glad to be here this evening."

Indirect I said that I was glad to be there that evening.

Some common changes are given below :

Direct	Indirect
Now	Then
This	That
These	Those
Here	There
Today	That day
Yesterday	The previous day
Tomorrow	The next day
Ago	Before
Last night	The previous night
Next	The next, The following
Thus	So
Hence	Thence

NOTE :

When, however, words like here, this, now, today etc. used in the direct speech refer to the place or time at which the speech is made, they do not change, as for instance :

Direct Ram said, "I shall see him today."

Indirect Ram said that he would see him today.

Changing Assertive Sentences (Statements)**Rule 1**

Outside the inverted commas, the verb said remains said; says remains says : said to become told; says to become tells.

Rule 2

Verb such as inform, reply, remind, declare etc. be used instead of said and told to give clear meaning :

Direct The thief said, "Yes, I stole the money."

Indirect The thief confessed that he had stolen the money.

Rule 3

That is used as a conjunction when the inverted commas are removed.

Direct She said, "I am unwell."

Indirect She said that she was unwell.
However, in some cases that is not required.

Direct He said to me, "I fear you have failed."

Indirect He feared I had failed.

Rule 4

Tenses, pronouns and words denoting nearness should be changed according to the rules already stated.

The rules for changing direct speech into indirect speech should be reversed when changing indirect speech into direct speech,

1. Use say in place of tell, inform, reply etc.
2. Put the reported speech within inverted commas, separating it from the principal clause by a comma.
3. Appropriate changes should be made in tenses, pronouns and words denoting remoteness.

Changing Interrogative Sentences (Questions)

Rule 1

Change the reporting verb into ask, enquire, demand, want to know etc. (Note that enquire and demand take the preposition **of** before a personal object)

Rule 2

Remove the sign of interrogation (?) and convert the question inside the inverted commas into a statement.

Rule 3

Remove the inverted commas and use **if** or **whether** as conjunction if the question begins with a finite verb, including auxiliaries is, are, am, was, were, do, does, did, has, have, shall, will etc.

Rule 4

The place of the auxiliary verb and noun or pronoun are exchanged in those items where questions begin with is, am, was, were, will etc.

Direct I said to him, "Will you teach me?"

Indirect I asked him if he would teach me.

Rule 5

No conjunction is used when the question begins with word like who, what, whose, when, why, how etc.

Direct She said to Ram, "Where do you live?"

Indirect She asked Ram where he lived.

Rule 6

In case of questions beginning with who, what, whose, when, where etc. the place of interrogative pronouns and adverbs are not changed (see example given above).

Rule 7

Tenses, pronouns and words denoting nearness are changed according to the rules already stated.

Changing Imperative Sentences (Commands and Requests)

In imperative sentences we have orders, commands and requests.

Rule 1

The reporting Verb is changed into a verb signifying command, request or advice. Commands can be expressed by words such as command, order, tell, charge, bid, require etc. Requests can be expressed by words such as request, beg, implore, ask, solicit etc. Advice can be expressed by words such as advice, exhort, urge etc. Other words which may be of use in imperative sentences are : forbid, persuade etc.

Direct Ram said to me, "Help me carry my box."

Indirect Ram requested me to help him carry his box.

Direct The teacher said, "Sit quietly children, do not disturb me."

Indirect The teachers ordered the children to sit quietly and forbade them to disturb her.

Rule 2

The verb of the reported speech is changed into an infinitive (In the above examples, **help** becomes **to help** and **sit** becomes **to sit**).

Rule 3

If the reported speech is negative, the word **not** is placed before **to** :

Direct The teacher said, "Children, do not quarrel over trifles."

Indirect The teacher told the children not to quarrel over trifles.

Rule 4

Tenses, pronouns and words denoting nearness are changed according to the rules already discussed.

Rule 5

Using the word **Let** in changing imperative sentences

1. **Let** is used to make proposals. In such cases, the Reporting Verb changes to suggest, propose etc.

Direct : She said, "Let us have some tea".

Indirect : She suggested that they should have some tea.

2. **Let** is often used as an ordinary verb signifying **allow**.

Direct : He said to Rita, "Let me go home."

Indirect : He requested Rita to let him go home.

3. **Let** is at times used to express a condition. In that case it should be changed to **might** and the sentence modified slightly.

Direct : She said, "Let it rain ever so hard, I shall go."

Indirect : She said that she would go however hard it might rain.

**EXERCISE****Multiple Choice Type Questions**

1. Read the dialogue between a librarian and a student.

Librarian : Welcome back! It's good to see you, young man!

Student : Thanks! I was overloaded with assignments, so I have not visited the library this week.

Based on the conversation above, report the dialogue between a librarian and a student by completing the sentence.

The librarian greeted the student warmly, expressing pleasure at his visit. The student thanked her and explained that _____ which had limited his recent visits to the library.

Select the correct option from those given below :

- (a) he had been overloaded with assignments
- (b) he has been overloaded with assignments
- (c) he was overloaded with assignments
- (d) he is overloaded with assignments

Ans :

2024

- (a) he had been overloaded with assignments

2. Read the dialogue between Karan and his teacher regarding his absence from school.

Teacher : Karan, why were you absent yesterday ?

Karan : Yesterday I had cold and fever, sir. I couldn't inform you beforehand.

Teacher : That's okay. Take care of your health.

Select the correct option to complete the reporting of the above dialogue.

The teacher asked Karan _____.

Karan replied that he had cold and fever the previous day and added that he couldn't inform the teacher beforehand. The teacher advised him to take care of his health.

- (a) why did he remain absent the previous day
- (b) why he had been absent the previous day
- (c) the reason he was absent
- (d) why was he absent yesterday

Ans :

2024

- (b) why he had been absent the previous day

CHAPTER 5

DETERMINERS

1. INTRODUCTION

Most of us know what a noun or verb is in the English language. However, there's a key article of speech that's just as important to learn: the determiner. Essentially, these words explain whether you're speaking about something general or something specific. In addition, it can tell your reader or listener how much or how many of something you're referring to. Let's discuss these clarifying words, learn why they're necessary, and discover how to use them properly.

2. MEANING AND DEFINITION

Determiners are words which come before nouns determining or limiting the use of the noun by giving some additional information. They indicate the singularity or the plurality of a noun, amount or quantity of a noun, possessive aspect of a noun, the number and order of a noun or the distributive or demonstrative aspect of a noun. A determiner is used to limit the application of a noun without describing it. We don't know anything about the quality of the noun from a determiner. Determiners can be defined as follows:

Determiners are those words that are prefixed before nouns to determine their meaning.

A determiner is a word that introduces a noun or provides information about the quantity of a noun.

3. TYPES OF DETERMINERS

Determiners can be divided into the following types:

1. **Articles** - a, an, the
2. **Demonstratives** - this, that, these, those
3. **Possessives** - my, your, our, his, her, its, their
4. **Quantifiers** - some, any, few, little, more, much, many, each, every, either, neither, both, all, enough

5. **Cardinal and Ordinal Numbers** - one, two, three..., first, second, third...
7. **Difference Words** - another, other
8. **Interrogatives** - whose, what, which

4. ARTICLES

A, an and **the** are the three articles in the English language. Articles belong to the group of noun determiners, that is, they determine the noun in terms of its definiteness. They are used before nouns or noun groups and indicate whether the noun they precede is uniquely identifiable by the speaker/writer or listener/reader of the expression or not; as,

- Arun, an engineer, gave a fifth of his property to the city museum.

Kinds of Articles

There are two kinds of articles.

1. **Indefinite Articles** - A, An (in the sense of **one** and **any**)
2. **Definite Articles** - The (in the sense of **this** and **that**)

1. Indefinite Article

A or **An** is called the indefinite article because it leaves indefinite the person or thing spoken of; as,

- There shall come a day when everyone will be rich.

The writer of the above sentence is indefinite about the day. He cannot specify a particular day. It could be any day.

2. Definite Article

The is called the definite article because it points out some particular person or thing; as,

- The day was hot.

The writer of the above sentence is definite about the day. He specifies the day. There must have been some sentence before which made a mention of the day. It is a particular day.

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

Ans :

2019

(c) He asked me what time the sun should set the next day.

10. "Tinu, where have you been all these days ?" asked the principal.

- (a) The principal asked Tinu where he had been all those days.
- (b) The principal asked Tinu where he has been all those days.
- (c) The principal asked Tinu where had he been all those days.
- (d) The principal asked Tinu where was he all those days.

Ans :

2019

(a) The principal asked Tinu where he had been all those days.

11. "Have you completed your assignment, Minu?" said her brother.

- (a) Minu's brother asked Minu if you have finished your assignment.
- (b) Minu's brother said to Minu if she had finished her assignment.
- (c) Minu's brother asked her if she had finished her assignment.
- (d) Minu's brother asked Minu if she has finished her assignment.

Ans :

2018

(c) Minu's brother asked her if she had finished her assignment.

12. She said, "When I was a child, I wasn't afraid of ghosts".

- (a) She said that when she was a child she wasn't not afraid of ghosts.
- (b) She said that when she was a child she hadn't been afraid of ghosts.
- (c) She said that when she was a child she wasn't afraid of ghosts.
- (d) She said that when she had been a child she wasn't afraid of ghosts.

Ans :

2018

(b) She said that when she was a child she hadn't been afraid of ghosts.

13. I said to my friend, "Can I borrow your dictionary for one day ?"

- (a) I asked my friend if I could borrow his dictionary for one day.
- (b) I asked my friend if I could borrow your dictionary for one day.

(c) I asked my friend if I can borrow his dictionary for one day.

(d) I asked my friend that if I can borrow his dictionary for one day.

Ans :

2017

(a) I asked my friend if I could borrow his dictionary for one day.

14. He said to us, "Why are you all sitting about there doing nothing ?"

- (a) He asked us why are we all sitting about there doing nothing.
- (b) He asked us why we are all sitting about there doing nothing.
- (c) He asked us why we were all sitting about there doing nothing.
- (d) He asked us why were we all sitting about there doing nothing.

Ans :

2015

(c) He asked us why we were all sitting about there doing nothing.

15. He requested the boss to let him go on with his project.

- (a) He said to the boss, "Let me go on with my project please."
- (b) He told the boss, "Go on with my project please."
- (c) He said to the boss, "You better let me go on with my project."
- (d) He told the boss, "Please go on with my project."

Ans :

2015

(a) He said to the boss, "Let me go on with my project please."

16. Ashmita advised me to go and see a doctor.

- (a) "You should go and see a doctor," said Ashmita.
- (b) Ashmita asked me, "Will you go and see a doctor?"
- (c) Ashmita told me, "Go and see the doctor."
- (d) "Shouldn't you go and see a doctor?" asked Ashmita.

Ans :

2014

(a) "You should go and see a doctor," said Ashmita.

17. Suresh asked Prasad whether he had watched the cricket match on television the previous night.

- (a) Suresh asked Prasad, "Did you watch the cricket match on television previous night ?"

- (b) Suresh asked Prasad, "Have you watched the cricket match on television last night ?"
- (c) Suresh said to Prasad, "Did you watch the cricket match on television last night ?"
- (d) Suresh said to Prasad, "Did you watched the cricket match on television last night ?"

Ans : 2014

- (c) Suresh said to Prasad, "Did you watch the cricket match on television last night ?"

18. Father said to me, "You are idling away your time."

- (a) Father told me that I was idling away my time.
- (b) Father told me that I am idling away my time.
- (c) Father told me that you are idling away your time.
- (d) Father told me that you were idling away your time.

Ans : 2014

- (a) Father told me that I was idling away my time.

19. He swore in the name of God that he was ignorant of the matter.

- (a) He said, "I'm ignorant by God!"
- (b) He declared, "God knows I was ignorant of the matter."
- (c) He said, "By God! I'm ignorant of the matter."
- (d) He said he was ignorant of God.

Ans : 2013

- (c) He said, "By God! I'm ignorant of the matter."

20. He proposed to his companions that they should not miss that chance to see the last show.

- (a) He said to his companions, 'Let us not to miss the chance to see the last show.'
- (b) He said to his companions, 'Let us not miss that chance to see the last show.'
- (c) He said to his companions, 'We should not miss that chance to see the last show.'
- (d) He said to his companions, 'Let us not miss the chance to see the last show.'

Ans : 2012

- (b) He said to his companions, 'Let us not miss that chance to see the last show.'

21. "Bring me an elephant with one golden tusk," the witch told her minion.

- (a) The witch requested her minion to bring her

an elephant with one golden tusk.

- (b) The witch told her minion to bring her the elephant with one golden tusk.
- (c) The witch ordered her minion to bring her an elephant with one golden tusk.
- (d) The witch advised her minion to bring her an elephant with one golden tusk.

Ans : 2012

- (c) The witch ordered her minion to bring her an elephant with one golden tusk.

22. She asked her brother if he could give her some money then.

- (a) She said to her brother, "Could I give you some money now ?"
- (b) She said to her brother, "Can you give me some money then ?"
- (c) She said to her brother, "Can you give me some money now ?"
- (d) She asked her brother, "Give me some money now."

Ans : 2012

- (c) She said to her brother, "Can you give me some money now ?"

23. She said that she really liked the furniture.

- (a) "She really liked this furniture," she said.
- (b) She had really liked this furniture," she said.
- (c) "I really like this furniture," she said.
- (d) "I have really liked this furniture," she said.

Ans : 2012

- (c) "I really like this furniture," she said.

24. "Please help me to find the way", she said.

- (a) She requested that she be found the way to help.
- (b) She requested to be shown the way.
- (c) She asked to find the way with help.
- (d) She asked for help in finding the way.

Ans : 2012

- (b) She requested to be shown the way.

25. My friend said, "I bought the tickets yesterday."

- (a) My friend had bought the tickets yesterday.
- (b) My friend wanted to buy the tickets yesterday.
- (c) My friend told me to buy the tickets.
- (d) My friend said that he had bought the tickets the previous day.

Ans : 2011

- (d) My friend said that he had bought the tickets the previous day.

26. The teacher said to the student, "Recite the poem loudly."

- (a) The teacher told the student that the poem may be recited loudly.
- (b) The teacher asked the student to recite the poem loudly.
- (c) The teacher commanded the student that he should recite the poem loudly.
- (d) The teacher expected that the student will recite the poem loudly.

Ans :

2011

- (b) The teacher asked the student to recite the poem loudly.

27. The Prime Minister said that no one would be allowed to disturb the peace.

- (a) The Prime Minister said, "We shall not allow any one to disturb the peace."
- (b) The Prime Minister said, "We would not allow no one to disturb the peace."
- (c) The Prime Minister said, "No one will disturb the peace."
- (d) The Prime Minister said, "No one can disturb the peace."

Ans :

2010

- (a) The Prime Minister said, "We shall not allow any one to disturb the peace."

28. The commander said to the army, "March forward".

- (a) The commander asked the army march forward.
- (b) The commander ordered the army to march forward.
- (c) The commander requested the army to go forward.
- (d) The army requested the commander to march.

Ans :

2010

- (b) The commander ordered the army to march forward.

29. She exclaimed, "I'm afraid we are rather late !"

- (a) She exclaimed that they were frightened of being late.
- (b) She exclaimed that she was afraid that they were rather late.
- (c) She shouted that they were scared that they would be late.
- (d) She screamed that she was worried that they would all be late.

Ans :

2010

- (b) She exclaimed that she was afraid that they were rather late.

30. The mother urged the child to come on the footpath.

- (a) The mother said to the child, "Come on the footpath."
- (b) The mother said, "Come, child come. Come on the footpath."
- (c) The mother said, "Please come on the footpath, child."
- (d) The mother said to the child, "You should come on the footpath."

Ans :

2009

- (b) The mother said, "Come, child come. Come on the footpath."

31. Sushma said, "We shall celebrate the festival of Janmashtami tomorrow."

- (a) Sushma said that we should celebrate the festival of Janmashtami the next day.
- (b) Sushma said that we shall celebrate the festival of Janmashtami the next day.
- (c) Sushma said that they should celebrate the festival of Janmashtami the next day.
- (d) Sushma said that they would celebrate the festival of Janmashtami the next day.

Ans :

2008

- (d) Sushma said that they would celebrate the festival of Janmashtami the next day.

32. The traveller enquired of the farmer if he could tell him the way to the nearest inn.

- (a) The traveller said to the farmer, "Where is the nearest inn ?"
- (b) The traveller said to the farmer, "Which is the way to the nearest inn ?"
- (c) The traveller said to the farmer, "Can you tell me the way to the nearest inn ?"
- (d) The traveller said to the farmer, "What is the way to the nearest inn ?"

Ans :

2007

- (c) The traveller said to the farmer, "Can you tell me the way to the nearest inn ?"

33. "If you don't keep quiet I shall shoot you," he said to her in a calm voice.

- (a) He warned her to shoot if she didn't keep quiet calmly.
- (b) He said calmly that I shall shoot you if you don't be quiet.

- (c) He warned her calmly that he would shoot her if she didn't keep quiet.
 (d) Calmly he warned her that be quiet or else he will have to shoot her.

Ans : 2007

(c) He warned her calmly that he would shoot her if she didn't keep quiet.

34. I said to her, "I am going to my town tomorrow."

- (a) I told her that she was going to her town the next day.
 (b) I told her if I was going to her town the next day.
 (c) I told her that I was going to my town the next day.
 (d) I told her if I was going to my town the next day.

Ans : 2007

(c) I told her that I was going to my town the next day.

35. He said to me, "Let's play tennis."

- (a) He proposed me that we should play 'tennis.'
 (b) He said to me to play tennis.
 (c) He suggested that tennis should be played.
 (d) He ordered me to play tennis.

Ans : 2007

(a) He proposed me that we should play tennis.

36. Kiran asked me, "Did you see the cricket match on television last night ?"

- (a) Kiran asked me whether I saw the cricket match on television the earlier night.
 (b) Kiran asked me whether I had seen the cricket match on television the earlier night.
 (c) Kiran asked me did I see the cricket match on television last night.
 (d) Kiran asked me whether I had seen the cricket match on television last night.

Ans : 2006

(d) Kiran asked me whether I had seen the cricket match on television last night.

37. The tailor said to him, "Will you have the suit ready by tomorrow evening ?"

- (a) The tailor asked him that he will have the suit ready by the next evening.
 (b) The tailor asked him that he would had the suit ready by the next evening.
 (c) The tailor asked him if he would have the suit ready by the next evening.

- (d) The tailor asked him if he will like to have the suit ready by the next evening.

Ans : 2006

(c) The tailor asked him if he would have the suit ready by the next evening.

38. He said to the interviewer, "Could you please repeat the question ?"

- (a) He requested the interviewer if he could please repeat the question.
 (b) He requested the interviewer to please repeat the question.
 (c) He requested the interviewer to repeat the question.
 (d) He requested the interviewer if he could repeat the question.

Ans : 2006

(d) He requested the interviewer if he could repeat the question.

39. Pawan said to me, "If I hear any news, I'll phone you."

- (a) Pawan told me that if he heard any news, he will phone me.
 (b) Pawan told me that if he will hear any news, he will phone me.
 (c) Pawan told me if he had heard any news, he would phone me.
 (d) Pawan told me that if he heard any news, he would phone me.

Ans : 2006

(d) Pawan told me that if he heard any news, he would phone me.

40. The captain said to the army, "March forward, now."

- (a) The captain said to the army that march forward now.
 (b) The captain ordered the army to march forward then.
 (c) The captain ordered the army to march on that day.
 (d) The captain ordered the army to attack the enemy.

Ans : 2005

(b) The captain ordered the army to march forward then.

Very Short Answer Type Questions

1. Report the dialogue between a vendor and his customer, by completing the sentence :

Vendor : You look a little different today!

Customer : Yes, I just got a new haircut.

The vendor noticed that his customer's appearance had changed and asked him about it. The customer admitted this, citing the fact that _____.

Ans : 2024

he had recently/just got a haircut

2. Report the dialogue between two friends, Nidhi and Neha, by completing the sentence :

Nidhi — Have you mastered the art of cooking Chinese food ?

Neha — Yes, indeed ! I have been cooking Chinese food for a month.

Nidhi asked Neha if she had mastered the art of cooking Chinese food. Neha answered in the affirmative and explained that _____.

Ans : 2024

she had been cooking Chinese food for a month.

3. Marie and Peter had a conversation about volunteer work.

Report Marie's question.

What kind of skills have you imbibed from this volunteer work ?

Ans : 2024

Marie asked, "What kind of skills have you imbibed from this volunteer work?"

4. Sunanda and Pushkar had a conversation about their travels.

Report Pushkar's question.

Have you ever been to Peri Bagh ?

Ans : 2024

Pushkar asked Sunanda if she had ever been to Peri Bagh.

5. Report the dialogue between a vendor and his customer, by completing the sentence :

Vendor : We missed your usual visits, sir.

Customer : I know, I had to travel for work.

The vendor expressed that the customer's regular visits were missed, reaching out to the customer. The customer acknowledged this and clarified that _____.

Ans : 2024

he had had to travel for work

6. Report the following dialogue between a hawker and his customer, by completing the sentence.

Hawker : Do you want any tomatoes ?

Customer : Yes, indeed! Although they are a bit expensive, I like to add tomatoes to my diet.

The hawker asked the customer whether she wanted any tomatoes. The customer answered in the affirmative and explained that _____.

Ans : 2024

although they are a bit expensive, she likes to add tomatoes to her diet.

7. Report the dialogue between a vendor and his customer, by completing the sentence :

Vendor : It is nice to see you, Sir!

Customer : Yes, indeed! Unlike last month, I have been away for quite some time this month.

The vendor greeted his customer respectfully and mentioned that he was pleased to see him. The customer answered in the affirmative and explained that _____.

Ans : 2023

unlike the previous month, he had been away for quite some time that month.

8. Two friends, Aarav and Ananya, are discussing their upcoming trip. How would Aarav report Ananya's dialogue?

Aarav : "I have already booked the hotel for our trip tomorrow."

Ananya : "Are you sure? Don't forget to confirm the reservation."

Ananya asked me _____.

Ans : 2023

if I was sure I had booked the hotel for our trip the next day and reminded me not to forget to confirm the reservation

9. Abhilash and Neha had a conversation about the inauguration of Neha's Dance Academy. Report Abhilash's question.

Is your best friend helping you in this venture?

Ans : 2023

Abhilash asked Neha whether/if her best friend was helping her in that venture.

10. Read the given conversation between two friends. Sumit : What do you plan to do after your graduation?

Rahul : I have processed my admission at Harvard Business School. Very soon, I shall be leaving for London.

Report what Rahul told his friend by completing the following sentence.

Rahul replied that _____.

Ans : 2023

he had processed his admission at Harvard Business School and added that very soon, he would be leaving for London.

11. Change the following into Indirect Speech:

1. Ramu said, "I saw a lion in the forest."
2. Satish said to me, "I am very happy here."
3. He said, "I can do this work."
4. Renu said to me, "I was washing the clothes."
5. She said, "I am not well."
6. He said to Sita, "I have passed the test."
7. I said to my friend, "He has been working very hard."
8. My friend said to me, "I shall go to Delhi tomorrow."
9. I said, "I agree to what he said."
10. The student said to the teacher, "I am sorry that I am late."

Ans :

1. Ramu said that he had seen a lion in the forest.
2. Satish told me that he was very happy there.
3. He said that he could do that work.
4. Renu told me that she had been washing the clothes.
5. She said that she was not well.
6. He told Sita that he had passed the test
7. I told my friend that he had been working very hard.
8. My friend told me that he would go to Delhi the next day.
9. I said that I agreed to what he had said.sorry that I am late."
10. The student told the teacher that he was sorry that he was late.

12. Change the following into Indirect Speech:

1. My brother asked me, "When will you return?"
2. Sita said to me, "Are you planning to visit Bengaluru Shortly?"
3. The beggar said to the old man, "Can you tell me the way to the nearest temple?"
4. The shopkeeper said to me, "Sir, can I help you now?"
5. Vijaya asked Seema, "When are you leaving for U.K.?"
6. My friend said to me, "Why have you kept me waiting?"
7. The doctor asked me, "How is your mother?"
8. Raman said to his friend, "Will you not help me in solving this problem?"
9. Ramesh said to the guest, "Do you want some more coffee?"

10. He said to me, "Will you go to Jaipur tomorrow?"

Ans :

1. My brother asked me when I would return.
2. Sita asked me if I was planning to visit Bengaluru shortly.
3. The beggar asked the old man if he could tell him the way to the nearest temple.
4. The shopkeeper asked me respectfully if he could help me then.
5. Vijaya asked Seema when she was leaving for U.K.
6. My friend asked me why I had kept him waiting.
7. The doctor asked me how my mother was.
8. Raman asked his friend if he would not help him in solving that problem.
9. Ramesh asked the guest if he wanted some more coffee.
10. He asked me if I would go to Jaipur the next day.

13. Change the following into Indirect Speech:

1. "Get out of the car!" said the policeman.
2. "Could you please be quiet," she said.
3. The man with the gun said to us, "Don't move!"
4. She said to me, "Open the window."
5. The captain said to the soldiers, "Attack the enemy."
6. I said to him, "Leave this place at once."
7. The teacher said to the students, "Listen to me attentively."
8. The Principal said to the peon, "Ring the bell."
9. The master said to the servant, "Fetch me a glass of water."
10. I said to him, "Please bring me a glass of water."

Ans :

1. The policeman ordered him to get out of the car.
2. She asked me to be quiet.
3. The man with the gun warned us not to move.
4. She ordered me to open the window.
5. The captain commanded the soldiers to attack the enemy.
6. I told him to leave that place at once.
7. The teacher asked the students to listen to him attentively.

8. The Principal ordered the peon to ring the bell.
9. The master ordered the servant to fetch him a glass of water.
10. I requested him to bring me a glass of water.



3. Read the dialogue between Ramya and her dad.
Dad : “Ramya, I heard your school made some changes recently. What is going on?”

Ramya : “Yes, dad. The school administration _____ a revised attendance policy to ensure academic success.”

Select the correct option to complete the reporting of the above dialogue :

- (a) will implement (b) is implementing
(c) has implemented (d) was implementing

Ans :

2023

- (c) has implemented

4. Read the dialogue between Vilakshna and her physician, Dr. Sharnani, regarding the effectiveness of her medication.

Dr. Sharnani : How is your acid reflux problem now ?

Vilakshna : I'd tried everything without success, but this new medicine is great.

Select the correct option to complete the reporting of the above dialogue.

Dr. Sharnani asked Vilakshna about her acid reflux problem to which Vilakshna replied that she'd tried everything without success, _____.

- (a) but she found the new medicine to be great
(b) but she thought that this new medicine was great
(c) but the new medicine was great
(d) but that new medicine was great

Ans :

2022

- (d) but that new medicine was great

5. Read the dialogue between Adam and Emma about a career option.

Adam : Why did you opt for a career in journalism?

Emma : I couldn't resist my love for storytelling and my desire to expose the truth.

Select the option to complete the reporting of the above dialogue :

Adam asked Emma _____ in journalism Emma passionately expressed that she couldn't resist her love for storytelling and her desire to expose the truth.

- (a) why did she opt for a career
(b) why had she opted for a career
(c) why she opted for a career
(d) why she had opted for a career

Ans :

2021

- (d) why she had opted for a career

Directions : In the following questions, a sentence has been given in Direct/Indirect form. Out of the four alternatives suggested, select the one which best expresses the same sentence in Indirect/Direct form.

6. He says “I go for a walk every morning”.

- (a) He says that he goes for a walk every morning.
(b) He said that he used to go for a walk every morning.
(c) He said that he goes for a walk every morning.
(d) He says he went for a walk every morning.

Ans :

2021

- (a) He says that he goes for a walk every morning.

7. He said to me, “You are getting lazy day by day.”

- (a) He informed me that I am getting lazy day by day.
(b) He told me that I have been getting lazy day by day.
(c) He told me that I was getting lazy day by day.
(d) He told me that you were getting lazy day by day.

Ans :

2020

- (c) He told me that I was getting lazy day by day.

8. He said, “Ravi, why are you sounding so depressed today ?”

- (a) He asked Ravi why did he sound so depressed that day.
(b) He asked Ravi why he was sounding so depressed that day.
(c) He told Ravi why he sounded so depressed today.
(d) He asked Ravi that why was he sounding so depressed that day.

Ans :

2020

- (b) He asked Ravi why he was sounding so depressed that day.

He asked me “What time will the sun set tomorrow ?”

- (a) He asked me what time does the sun set the next day.
(b) He asked me what time the sun would set tomorrow.
(c) He asked me what time the sun should set the next day.
(d) He asked me what time would the sun set the next day.

Uses of Indefinite Articles 'A, An'

Indefinite article **A/An** is used when we talk of a thing or a person that is indefinite or that is mentioned for the first time (in the sense of **one**). Indefinite article is also used to express a class (in the sense of **any**).

Rule 1

A student must note that the choice between **A** and **An** is determined primarily by sound.

'A' is used before a word beginning

1. With consonant; as, a boy, a child, a student, a book etc.
2. With a vowel giving the sound of a consonant; as, a one eyed man, a university student, a European, a unique book, a uniform, a universal problem etc.

'An' is used before a word beginning

1. With a vowel; as, an elephant, an apple, an ass, an umbrella etc.
2. With a mute **h**; as, an hour, an heir, an honourable person, an honest man, an honorary post, an hourly visit etc.
3. With a consonant pronounced with the sound of a vowel; as, an L.L.B. student, an M.P., an M.L.A., an S.P., an X-ray, an F.I.R. etc.

Rule 2

Before a singular/countable common noun when it is mentioned for the first time representing no particular person or a thing; as,

- I need a book.
- Twelve inches make a foot.
- A beggar came to my door.
- Please get me a scooter.
- She gave her a note book.

Rule 3

Before a singular countable noun which is used to single out some person/something as a representative of a class of a thing, animals and persons; as,

- A cow is useful animal.
- A beggar cannot be chooser.
- A rose is a beautiful flower.
- A son should be obedient.

Rule 4

To make a common noun of a proper noun to express quality; as,

- A Shylock is living in my neighbourhood.
- He is a Vikramaditya known for his fairness.

Rule 5

In certain expressions of quantity with certain numbers and expressions of Price/rate, speed, ratio; as,

- Rupees ten a kilo.
- A dozen mangoes.
- Half a dozen.

Rule 6

When **A/An** represents a weakened form of preposition **in**; as,

- He earns fifty thousand rupees a year.
- We should brush our teeth two times a day.

Rule 7

In exclamations with **what** or **how** before singular countable nouns; as,

- What a hot day!
- What a pretty girl!
- What a naughty child!
- How fine a day!
- What a fool he is.

Rule 8

Note the position of indefinite article in the following adverbs : **Rather, very, much, quite, so, too, much, as**; as,

- It is rather a nuisance.
- It is rather a good step (or a rather good step).
- He is a very good person.
- He is a much hated character.
- He is such a nice man that everybody likes him.
- It is quite an interesting story.
- She is as intelligent a student as her brother is.
- She is too weak a student to pass.
- She is so weak a student that she can't pass.

Rule 9

Before a person not known to the speaker; as,

- A Mr. Gupta - Some Mr. Gupta
- A Mrs. Sharma - Some Mrs. Sharma

Rule 10

Before the verbs used as nouns; as,

- For a swim
- For a rest
- For a talk
- For a visit

Rule 11

Before certain phrases; as,

- In a hurry
- Take a fancy
- Make a noise
- Tell a lie

Rule 12

Before the words denoting numbers; as,

- A Hundred, A dozen, A million

Rule 13

Before the adjectives **little** and **few** to give the sense of **some**.

- A little - Some (Quantity)
- A few - Some (Number); as,
- I have little money to buy a house. (hardly any)
- Please give me a little sugar. (some)
- He has spent the little money that he had. (some but all)
- There are few boys in the class. (hardly anyone)
- I met a few students in the university. (some)
- The few students that were in the class were sitting idle. (some but all)

Rule 14

There is no plural of **a**, **an**. **Some** or **Any** is the equivalent of the plural.

- A horse - Some horses/any horses
- An orange - Some oranges/any oranges

Uses of Definite Article 'The'**Rule 1**

When we talk of the particular person or a thing as already mentioned, known or under discussion; as,

- The book (which you mentioned) is not available in the market.
- Let us study the lesson carefully. (lesson in hand)

Rule 2

Before proper noun (unique objects) when they refer to the names of historical buildings, mountain ranges, planets, rivers, oceans, gulfs, groups of islands, holy books, ordinals, descriptive names of countries, states, newspapers, magazines, deserts, superlative degree, names of trains, hotels, shops; as,

- The Persian Gulf
- The Indian Ocean

NODIA

- The Ranjit
- The Himalayas
- The Ramayana
- The Vedas
- The Earth
- The Taj Mahal
- The best picture
- The first man
- The Sahara
- The Bay of Bengal
- The Rajdhani Express
- The Times of India
- The Frontline
- The North Pole
- The Netherland
- The Sudan
- The USA
- The Maurya Sheraton

NOTE :

'The' is not used before Aravali and Everest because they are not mountain ranges.

Rule 3

When a singular noun expresses a class of animal or things. But **the** is avoided with their plural forms and persons to express a class; as,

- The dog is a faithful animal.
- The rose is a sweet flower.
- The cow is economically useful.
- Dogs are faithful.

Indefinite article **A** is used in the sense of **any** to single out a person, a thing or an animal as a representative of a class; as,

- A son should be obedient.
- A cow is a useful animal.
- A mango is a sweet fruit.

Man/Woman/Mankind used in general sense to represent human race are used without article; as,

- Man is mortal. (Used in general sense)

Rule 4

Before an adjective when it represents a class of persons; as,

- The rich should help the poor.
- The old are respected by the young.

Rule 5

Before musical instruments; as,

- He can play the flute.
- She is fond of playing the harmonium.

Rule 6

As an adverb with a comparative sense (Double comparison); as,

- The sooner, the better.
- The higher you go, the colder it is.

Rule 7

Before comparative degree in case of a choice; as,

- She is the weaker of the two sisters.
- Which is the more beautiful of the two sisters?

Rule 8

Before proper noun for the sake of comparison; as,

- Surdas is the Milton of India.
- Kalidas is the Shakespeare of India.

Rule 9

Before the sports cups and trophies; as,

- India won the Singer Cup last year.
- A number of teams are taking part in the World Cup.

Rule 10

Before physical positions; as,

- The top of the mountain.
- The back of the house.
- The centre of the market.
- The front of the house.

Rule 11

With the cardinal points; as,

- The sun rises in the east.
- The Himalayas are to the north of India.

Rule 12

Before a unit of measurement; as,

- Cloth is sold by the metre.
- Eggs are sold by the dozen.

Rule 13

Before caste and communities; as,

- The Rajputs are brave people.
- The Marathas are hard working.

Rule 14

Before the adjectives **same & whole** and after the adjective **all & both** used with plural nouns; as,

- This is the same book that you gave me.
- The whole class was absent.
- All the boys were present there.
- Both the brothers were honest.
- All sugar is wasted.

Rule 15

In certain idiomatic phrases; as,

- In the wrong.
- On the contrary.
- In the town.
- The benefit of the doubt.
- In the air.
- Speak the truth.
- Out of the question.
- In the right.

Rule 16

Before a common noun to give it the force of a superlative; as,

- She is the woman.
- Netaji was the leader.
- He is the man for this job.

Rule 17

Before a common noun to give it the sense of an abstract noun (feelings, qualities etc.); as,

- The judge in him.
- The mother in her.
- The beast in him.

Rule 18

Before inventions; as,

- The telephone.
- The wireless.
- The television. (as an invention)
- He was watching television. (**television** is used just as a set.)
- He was listening to the radio.

Rule 19

Before the name of professions used collectively; as,

- The Press.
- The Bench.

Rule 20

Before a noun, qualified by adjectives; as,

- The former President Abdul Kalam
- The immortal Shakespeare.
- The late Shri S.C. Bose.

Rule 21

Before the case in apposition; as,

- Netaji, the hero of Modern India, ought to be remembered.
- Who can underestimate Mr. Vajpayee, the former Prime Minister?

EXERCISE

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. Fill the blank with the correct option to complete the note of appreciation by the Head of an organisation.

It is good to know that _____ registration forms were received this time for our event, as compared to the previous year.

- (a) many (b) most
(c) much (d) more

Ans :

2023

- (d) more

2. Sri Lanka is _____ island.

- (a) a (b) an
(c) the (d) none of these

Ans :

2019

- (b) an

3. He is _____ honour to his profession.

- (a) an (b) a
(c) the (d) none of these

Ans :

2019

- (a) an

4. The cow is _____ sacred animal.

- (a) a (b) an
(c) the (d) none of these

Ans :

2019

- (a) a

5. I saw a woman with _____ umbrella over her head.

- (a) a (b) an
(c) the (d) none of these

Ans :

2018

- (b) an

6. _____ European visited our town yesterday.

- (a) A (b) An
(c) The (d) None of these

Ans :

2018

- (a) A

7. M. S. Dhoni is one of _____ best captains cricket has seen.

- (a) The (b) A
(c) An (d) That

Ans :

2017

- (a) The

8. _____ apple _____ day keeps _____ doctor away.

- (a) A, an, the (b) The, an, a
(c) An, a, the (d) An, the, a

Ans :

2017

- (c) An, a, the

9. I don't want _____ coffee, thank you.

- (a) Some (b) Any
(c) Little (d) Few

Ans :

2016

- (b) Any

10. How _____ money do you spend on new clothes?

- (a) Many (b) Few
(c) Much (d) Little

Ans :

2016

- (c) Much

11. Only _____ people came to watch the new film.

- (a) A few (b) Many
(c) Much (d) A some

Ans :

2016

- (a) A few

12. Could you give me _____ money, please?

- (a) Little (b) A little
(c) A few (d) Few

Ans :

2016

- (b) A little

13. She spent _____ amount of money she had.

- (a) little (b) much
(c) the few (d) the little

Ans :

2015

- (d) the little

14. _____ tact would have saved the situation.

- (a) The little (b) A little
(c) Little (d) Very little

Ans :

2014

- (b) A little

15. I can't eat _____ more bananas, but I should like _____ more apples.

- (a) any, any (b) some, some
(c) some, any (d) any, some

Ans :

2013

- (d) any, some

16. Put _____ sugar in your tea; I haven't put _____

Rule 8

Names of illnesses do not carry articles; as,

- He was hospitalised for appendicitis.

Rule 9

When meals are being talked about as regular meals of the day, they are used without articles; as,

- What did you have for dinner today?

Rule 10

The noun **man**, when used to mean mankind or the human race, does not have an article; as,

- Man is mortal.

Rule 11

Articles are not used if possessive pronouns are part of the noun phrase; as,

- He stays in my house. (not **the my house**)

Rule 12

When two or more adjectives refer to the same person/thing and are joined together by **and**, an article may be used only before the first noun.

- **The orator and poet** arrived on time. (will mean there are one person)
- **The orator and the poet** arrived on time. (will mean there are two persons)
- I saw **a black and white dog**. (a dog part black and part white)
- I saw **a black and a white dog**. (two dogs, one black and one white)

Rule 13

When two or more nouns refer to closely-related different things, **the** article is not used before the second noun.

- I need a fork and knife to eat this.

5. DEMONSTRATIVES

Demonstratives are pronouns which point out to something. However, when they are followed by nouns, they act as determiners. The demonstrative determiners in the English language are this, that, these, those.

Rule 1

The demonstrative determiner 'That' (Plural-Those) is used to avoid repetition of a preceding noun.

- My shorts are better than those of my brother.
- Our defence academies are better than those of Afghanistan.

Rule 2

The demonstrative determiner 'This (Plural-These)' is used to refer to a person/ persons or thing/ things near to the speaker.

- This is the best coffee I have had.
- These magazines are very good.

Rule 3

The demonstrative determiner 'That (Plural-Those)' refers to a person/ persons or thing/ things far from the speaker.

- Get that dog out of the house.
- Throw away those shoes in the garbage.

6. POSSESSIVES

The possessive determiners in the English language are my, your, our, his, her, its, and their. These are used to show or determine the ownership of a certain thing.

- Where is your car?
- The dog growled and showed its teeth.
- My best friend is a cat.
- Which one is his house?
- It's our secret recipe.
- Their house was just around the corner.

7. QUANTIFIERS

Quantifiers indicate how much or how little of the noun is being discussed. Quantifiers are commonly used before either countable or uncountable nouns. They include words such as some, any, few, little, more, much, many, each, every, both, all, enough etc.

Some**Rule 1**

The indefinite adjective 'Some' is generally used in affirmative sentences with uncountable and plural countable nouns.

- There is some proof that he is guilty.
- I have some good ideas on the project.

Rule 2

It can also be used in questions where 'Yes' is expected as an answer.

- Would you like some tea?
- Could you give me some food?

Ans :

2005

(b) several

31. Although _____ of the lawn is open to the sun, there are plenty of shade trees to make it comfortable.

(a) each (b) every
(c) most (d) none

Ans :

2005

(c) most

32. Although there were many politicians that were honest and decent, there were just as _____ who were not.

(a) some (b) much
(c) many (d) a little

Ans :

2005

(c) many

33. The news was _____ good to be true.

(a) very (b) too
(c) so (d) as

Ans :

2005

(b) too

34. _____ of the two sisters is married.

(a) Both (b) Every
(c) Each (d) Any

Ans :

2005

(c) Each

35. _____ of you should attend the conference.

(a) Both (b) Each
(c) Every (d) Many

Ans :

2005

(a) Both

36. Which one of the following sentences shows a correct use of Article

(a) The teacher called the last boy standing in the queue.
(b) The teacher called a last boy standing in the queue.
(c) both a and b above
(d) None of these

Ans :

(a) The teacher called the last boy standing in the queue.

37. Which one of the following sentences shows a correct use of Article

(a) Ganga is a holy river for Hindus.
(b) The Ganga is a holy river for Hindus.

(c) both a and b above

(d) None of these

Ans :

(b) The Ganga is a holy river for Hindus.

38. Which one of the following sentences shows a correct use of Article

(a) God is merciful to all of us.
(b) The God is merciful to all of us.
(c) A God is merciful to all of us.
(d) None of these

Ans :

(a) God is merciful to all of us.

39. Which one of the following sentences shows a correct use of Article

(a) We went to see a Taj Mahal in Agra.
(b) We went to see the Taj Mahal in Agra.
(c) We went to see the Taj Mahal in the Agra.
(d) None of these

Ans :

(b) We went to see the Taj Mahal in Agra.

40. Which one of the following sentences shows a correct use of Article

(a) The Book which you demand is out of print.
(b) Book which you demand is out of print.
(c) A Book which you demand is out of print.
(d) None of these

Ans :

(a) The Book which you demand is out of print.

Very Short Answer Type Questions

1. Fill the blank by choosing the correct option, to complete the concluding line of an issued circular by an Organisation, to its Managers.

A copy of the plan is enclosed and _____ (that/then/this) may be communicated to all Team Leaders for compliance.

Ans :

2023

this

2. Identify the error and supply the correction, for the following sentence:

Every people went to welcome the Indian Cricket team.

Error	Correction

Most

‘Most’ is used to indicate nearly all of an amount or of a group.

- Most of the people do not recover from this fatal disease.
- Most of the people in India are working class.

Enough

The determiner ‘enough’ is used before uncountable nouns or plural nouns to say that there is something that is sufficient and enough as much as needed.

- The hotel had enough rooms for all the guests.
- They did not have enough storage to store all that they had ordered for.

A lot

It means very often or very much. It is used as an adverb. It often comes at the end of a sentence and never before a noun.

- I like basketball a lot.
- She’s a lot happier now than she was.
- I don’t go there a lot anymore.

A lot of, lots of

We use a lot of and lots of in informal styles. Lots of is more informal than a lot of. A lot of and lots of can both be used with plural countable nouns and with singular uncountable nouns for affirmatives, negatives, and questions:

- We’ve got lots of things to do.
- That’s a lot of money.
- There weren’t a lot of choices.
- Can you hurry up? I don’t have a lot of time.
- Are there a lot of good players at your tennis club?
- Have you eaten lots of chocolate?

8. CARDINAL AND ORDINAL NUMBERS

The cardinal numbers (one, two, three, ...) are adjectives referring to quantity, and the ordinal numbers (first, second, third, ...) refer to distribution.

- There are twenty-five beds available in a hospital.
- Geeta won second prize in painting competition.

9. DIFFERENCE WORDS**Another**

It can be used with a singular countable noun to talk about an additional person or thing of the same type.

- Can I have another cup of coffee?
- He opened another branch last month.

Other

This determiner is used with plural nouns or sometimes with uncountable nouns.

- Other people might not have thought like this.
- The students are busy in other activities rather than participating in the math class.

10. INTERROGATIVES

Interrogative determiners formulate direct or indirect questions and exclamations. The three interrogative determiners in English are what, which, and whose.

Whose

Whose means “belonging to which person”. Whose functions both as an interrogative and a possessive determiner, so technically whose is an interrogative possessive determiner. Whose is the only interrogative possessive determiner in English.

- They didn’t know whose car it was.
- Whose iPhone was stolen?
- He couldn’t remember whose car keys they were.

What

What is for asking for information specifying something.

- What time did you arrive?
- I wonder what reason he gave.
- What idiot told you that?

Which

Which is for asking for information specifying one or more people or things from a definite set.

- Which table would you prefer?
- I wonder which teacher told him that.
- I asked them which Italian car was best.



Rule 22

Before the dates; as,

- The 10th of May.
- The 5th of September.

Rule 23

Before the organs of government; as,

- The Judiciary
- The legislature

Rule 24

Before the parts of a body of a person in place of possessive adjectives; as,

- He hit me on the back.
- She caught me by the arm.

Rule 25

Before the political parties; as,

- The BJP.
- The Labour Party
- The Janta Party.

Rule 26

Before the armed forces; as,

- The Army.
- The Police.
- The Air force.

Rule 27

Before the dynasties, empires, wars, revolutions, centuries; as,

- The Gupta dynasty.
- The British empire.
- The Red revolution.
- The Middle Ages.
- The Civil war.
- The Vedic ages.
- The Sixth century.

Rule 28

Before language to signify nationality; as,

- The Chinese are hard working.
- The Japanese are patriots out and out.

Rule 29

Before nationality (plural); as,

- The Greeks.
- The Indians.
- The Asians.

Note : But we say An Indian, An Asian, A Greek.

Rule 30

Before little and few.

- The little - some but all
- The few - some but all

Omission of Articles

Articles are omitted in a number of places. Zero article specifically refers to absence of articles before plural countable and uncountable nouns. Instances where the articles are left out are listed below.

Rule 1

The article is not used when unlimited numbers or quantities are being referred to, or numbers are not being thought of at all; as,

- Kangaroos are found in Australia. (generic reference to kangaroos)
- Sugar is an essential commodity.

Rule 2

There is no article where the implication is **some** or **a few** and not the entire class; as,

- They want to buy old paintings.

Rule 3

Names of persons do not carry articles, irrespective of whether or not they are used with a title; as,

- Dr. Sharma
- Raj Mehra
(except as specified under the use of a/an/the)

Rule 4

Names in the possessive do not carry articles; as,

- Harrods
- McDonald's

Rule 5

Names of businesses and chains of shops do not carry articles; as,

- He is working for Tata Motors. (not the/a Tata Motors)

Rule 6

The article is omitted when only one person can occupy a position; as,

- They appointed him president.

Rule 7

Articles are not used with months and days of the week when the meaning is **the day/month before or after this one**; as,

- He will come on Tuesday. (next Tuesday)

- (a) some, any (b) any, any
(c) some, some (d) any, some

Ans :

- (a) some, any

2013

17. He is very lucky. He has _____ friends to stand by him in times of need.

- (a) little (b) few
(c) a few (d) a little

Ans :

- (c) a few

2013

18. I gave a dinner for a _____ close friends.

- (a) many (b) more
(c) the few (d) few

Ans :

- (d) few

2013

19. There is _____ water left, so drink only if you must.

- (a) some (b) little
(c) few (d) much

Ans :

- (b) little

2012

20. There isn't _____ point at all in getting upset about it.

- (a) few (b) several
(c) any (d) many

Ans :

- (c) any

2012

21. The dietary habits of a child often have _____ to do with that child's eating habits as an adult.

- (a) little (b) every
(c) most (d) None of these

Ans :

- (a) little

2011

22. In the first _____ months of life, an infant learns how to lift its head, how to smile and how to recognize its parents.

- (a) many (b) any
(c) few (d) None of these

Ans :

- (c) few

2009

23. Serving _____ terms in Congress, Shirley Chisholm became an important United States politician.

- (a) several (b) much
(c) a lot of (d) None of these

Ans :

- (a) several

2009

24. The storm continued for _____ of the days when we were in New Orleans, but fortunately there wasn't _____ damage in the city.

- (a) a few, many (b) all, a little
(c) most, much (d) some, few

Ans :

- (c) most, much

2009

25. Heavy fines and jail sentences have made _____ difference in preventing elephant poaching for their tusks.

- (a) a few (b) little
(c) many (d) None of these

Ans :

- (b) little

2008

26. Though it is a densely populated city, there are surprisingly _____ people seen on the streets.

- (a) few (b) a few
(c) little (d) a little

Ans :

- (a) few

2007

27. With hard work and _____ luck nothing can stop you in your way to success.

- (a) little (b) a little
(c) few (d) a few

Ans :

- (b) a little

2006

28. I know _____ of the book is not worth reading but most of the readers like the end of the book.

- (a) much (b) many
(c) a few (d) several

Ans :

- (a) much

2006

29. We only spent _____ days in Istanbul; on the first day we visited the famous mosques and on the other days we just shopped.

- (a) a few (b) many
(c) little (d) the little

Ans :

- (a) a few

2006

30. The expedition through the old Mayan city was held up because of _____ delays in the delivery of food supplies.

- (a) any (b) several
(c) every (d) much

Any

Rule 1

It is used in questions when you want to ask whether something exists or not. It is also used in negative sentences where we want to say that something does not exist.

- I don't need any help.
- Do you have any advice on the matter?

Rule 2

It is also used in affirmative sentences before plural nouns and uncountable nouns when it refers to a quantity of something which may or may not exist.

- You can stop at any point you like.

Little and Much

These are used to refer to amount or quantity. Little is used to emphasize that there is a small amount of something whereas 'Much' is used for emphasizing on large quantities. Both of them are used with uncountable nouns. Little is also used in reference to small amount of something without any emphasis.

- I want to spend a little time in Dubai.
- I have studied very little for my exam.
- Do you like to watch much television?

Few and Many

These are mostly used to refer to a number. They are used before plural countable nouns. Few emphasizes a smaller number and many refer to more numbers.

- Few students came for the class today.
- Many people went to welcome the Indian Cricket team.
- They stayed in the U.S.A for a few days.

More, Less and Fewer

They are mostly used as comparative determiners. 'More' is used before plural and uncountable nouns (with than) to refer to a quantity or amount which is greater than another quantity or amount. It is also used to refer to an additional quantity of something. Less is used to refer to an amount that is less than another amount. Fewer is used where we refer to a group of things that are smaller than another group before plural nouns.

- He does much more cardio than I do.
- The poor have less access to cleanliness.
- There are fewer cars here.

All

All is mostly used with a plural verb when followed by a countable plural noun. It includes all the persons or things of a particular kind. Another rule for it is that it requires a singular verb when it is followed by an uncountable noun.

- All children cannot be treated in the same manner.

Both

This determiner is mostly used to talk about two things of the same kind. It is used to show that two persons or things are involved rather than one and is often followed by 'and'.

- Both Raman and Raghav went out for a movie.
- He held oranges in both his hands.

Either and Neither

These determiners usually refer to two persons or things but show that one out of the two is or is not involved in a situation. Neither is used mostly with singular nouns and by either, it can mean both of two things especially when it is used with 'end' or 'side'.

- Take either side of the bed, both are the same.
- Neither of them is speaking the truth.

Each and Every

These determiners are used to refer to all members of a group, persons or things. When we talk about members as individuals, we use 'each' and when we make a statement about all of them we use 'every'. They are to be prefixed before a singular countable noun and the verb attached with them should be singular.

- Each and every board member was present in the meeting.
- Today a laptop and air conditioner can be seen in each house.
- Every child is said to have his/ her own special abilities.

Several

It is usually used to indicate an imprecise number that is not very large but more than two.

- There were several deaths during the floods in U.P.
- There were several cases of fraud pending against him in the court.

Ans :

2022

Error	Correction
Every	Many

3. Identify the error and supply the correction, for the following sentence:

Every trees have a single woody stem called a trunk which supports a mass of branches carrying leaves.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

2022

Error	Correction
Every	Most

4. Identify the error in the given sentence and supply the correction.

At the age of seventeen, Galileo know that he had discovered an important law- a law of a pendulum.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

2021

Error	Correction
a	the

5. Identify the error in the given sentence and supply the correction.

Our defence academies are better than that of Afghanistan.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

2021

Error	Correction
that	those

6. Identify the error in the given sentence and supply the correction.

There are a little countries in the world where the population is not growing fast.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

2020

Error	Correction
a little	a few

7. Identify the error in the given sentence and supply the correction.

Have you got some proof that he committed the crime?

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

2019

Error	Correction
some	any

8. Identify the error in the given sentence and supply the correction.

I walk 3 kilometres each day to reach my school.

Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans :

2016

Error	Correction
each	every

9. Fill in the blanks with a, an, the :

- He is studying at _____ University in U.K.
- Have you found _____ pen you lost yesterday?
- Please give me _____ one rupee note.
- All _____ boys run away.
- I have bought _____ umbrella.
- Neil Armstrong was _____ first man to land on the moon.
- Yesterday _____ European visitor came to our school.
- The camel is _____ ship of the desert.
- Nasir is _____ honourable man.
- I don't expect _____ reward.

Ans :

- a, 2. the, 3. a, 4. the, 5. an, 6. the, 7. a, 8. the, 9. an, 10. the.

- (b) (i) how (ii) which
 (iii) where (iv) why
 (c) (i) be taken (ii) took
 (iii) takes (iv) has taken
 (d) (i) a (ii) an
 (iii) the (iv) some

Ans :

2018

(a) (iv) understands, (b) (iii) where, (c) (i) be taken, (d) (iii) the.

5. Complete the paragraph given below by filling in the blanks with the help of options that follows
 Last year I (a) _____ the same spot even if I was not (b) _____ a cycle. I saw that many buildings (c) _____ been built on (d) _____ banks of the Ganga.

- (a) (i) visited (ii) visit
 (iii) visiting (iv) visits
 (b) (i) ride (ii) rides
 (iii) rode (iv) riding
 (c) (i) has (ii) have
 (iii) had (iv) having
 (d) (i) a (ii) an
 (iii) the (iv) some

Ans :

2017

(a) (i) visited, (b) (iv) riding, (c) (iii) had, (d) (iii) the.

FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP

6. Complete the paragraph given below with the help of options that follow :
 Kanishka, (a) _____ ruler of the Kushanas embraced Buddhism. He (b) _____ invited to a Buddhist Meeting in Kashmir during (c) _____ reign. It was during his time that Buddhism (d) _____ to Sri Lanka, Myanmar and Java.

- (a) (i) a (ii) some
 (iii) an (iv) the
 (b) (i) is (ii) was
 (iii) had (iv) has
 (c) (i) her (ii) his
 (iii) their (iv) that
 (d) (i) spread (ii) spreads
 (iii) spreading (iv) is spread

Ans :

2016

(a) (iv) the, (b) (ii) was, (c) (ii) his, (d) (i) spread

7. Complete the paragraph given below with the help of options that follow :

Most Indian schools fail to ensure their students adequate playtime and fitness regime. Two out of every five school going children (a) _____ have a healthy Body Mass Index (BMI) and 50% (b) _____ adequate lower body strength. Some schools (c) _____ found to offer three or (d) _____ physical ducation periods per week.

- (a) (i) does (ii) does not
 (iii) don't (iv) do
 (b) (i) lack (ii) lacked
 (iii) have lacked (iv) had lacked
 (c) (i) was (ii) are
 (iii) is (iv) have
 (d) (i) much (ii) many
 (iii) more (iv) less

Ans :

2016

(a) (iii) don't, (b) (i) lack, (c) (ii) are, (d) (iii) more

8. Complete the paragraph given below with the help of options that follow :

Mohan and Shyam (a) _____ my best friends. They always (b) _____ me in my work. None of them (c) _____ football. I (d) _____ never (e) _____ them wasting their time. Neither Mohan nor Shyam is lazy. All the students of my class like them.

- (a) (i) is (ii) are
 (iii) am (iv) was
 (b) (i) helping (ii) helped
 (iii) helps (iv) help
 (c) (i) play (ii) playing
 (iii) plays (iv) played
 (d) (i) has (ii) have
 (iii) had (iv) has been
 (e) (i) see (ii) saw
 (iii) seeing (iv) seen

Ans :

2015

(a) (ii) are, (b) (iv) help, (c) (iii) plays, (d) (ii) have, (e) (iv) seen.

9. Complete the paragraph given below with the help of options that follow :

Ram (a) _____ keep his word as he has to repay all his loan. He will (b) _____ seventeen next week. I (c) _____ certain that you will (d) _____ that how successfully he has accomplished his mission. (e) _____ he live long ! You need not worry. Your money is safe.

CHAPTER 6

INTEGRATED GRAMMAR

1. GAP FILLING

1. Fill in any four of the following blanks given below choosing the most appropriate options from the ones that follow. Write the answers in your Answer-sheet against the correct blank numbers. Communication (a) _____ become very effective and instant due to smart phones. People (b) _____ able to (c) _____ their messages all around the globe to (d) _____ loved ones without (e) _____ hefty sums of money.

- | | |
|-----------------|---------------|
| (a) (i) is | (ii) has |
| (iii) have | (iv) had |
| (b) (i) is | (ii) are |
| (iii) was | (iv) am |
| (c) (i) convey | (ii) conveys |
| (iii) conveying | (iv) conveyed |
| (d) (i) his | (ii) her |
| (iii) their | (iv) your |
| (e) (i) spend | (ii) spending |
| (iii) spends | (iv) spent |

Ans :

2020

(a) (ii) has, (b) (ii) are, (c) (i) convey, (d) (iii) their, (e) (ii) spending.

2. Choose the correct options to fill in the blanks to complete the note about Delhi, the Capital of India.

Delhi (a) _____ the capital of India. People from all parts of the country and world come to visit Delhi. There (b) _____ many historical buildings here. Last year I, (c) _____ Delhi. I also watched (d) _____ Commonwealth Games 2010.

- | | |
|---------------|-----------------|
| (a) (i) was | (ii) is |
| (iii) are | (iv) being |
| (b) (i) being | (ii) are |
| (iii) been | (iv) were |
| (c) (i) visit | (ii) visiting |
| (iii) visited | (iv) will visit |

- | | |
|-----------|-----------|
| (d) (i) a | (ii) an |
| (iii) the | (iv) some |

Ans :

2019

(a) (ii) is, (b) (ii) are, (c) (iii) visited, (d) (iii) the.

3. Choose the correct options to fill in the blanks to complete the note about the Wangala Festival of Meghalaya.

The Wangala (a) _____ festival for the Garo in Meghalaya, Assam and Nagaland. It is a post harvest festival (b) _____ the end of the Agricultural Year. It is popularly known as 'The Hundred Drums' Festival. During the signature dance, the leading warrior (c) _____ with synchronised dance steps and specific hand-head movements.

- | |
|--------------------------------------|
| (a) (i) is important |
| (ii) are an important |
| (iii) was the important |
| (iv) is an important |
| (b) (i) being celebrated for marking |
| (ii) celebrated to mark |
| (iii) celebrated to marking |
| (iv) being celebrated for mark |
| (c) (i) leads the youngsters |
| (ii) is lead the youngsters |
| (iii) was leading the youngsters |
| (iv) had leads the youngsters |

Ans :

2019

(a) (iv) is an important, (b) (ii) celebrated to mark, (c) (i) leads the youngsters.

4. Fill in any four of the blanks in the paragraph given below with the help of options that follow : The modern Student (a) _____ the importance of physical exercise. He spends one to two hours in open air (b) _____ he takes part in different Sports. However, care should (c) _____ not to overstrain (d) _____ body.

- | | |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| (a) (i) understood | (ii) understand |
| (iii) have understand | (iv) understands |

10. Fill in the blanks with a, an, the:

- _____ Sun rises is _____ east and sets in _____ west.
- _____ apple _____ day, keeps _____ doctor away.
- Akash is Dara Singh of our school.
- _____ Rajdhani Express is _____ fast and comfortable train for _____ rich.
- _____ Himalayas are _____ highest mountains in _____ world.
- _____ dogs is _____ faithful animal.
- _____ postman put _____ letter under _____ front door just _____ hour after you had left.
- _____ man you saw here yesterday is _____ uncle of mine and _____ great lover of _____ Ramayana.
- She is _____ M.A. in Geography.
- _____ cow is _____ useful animal.

Ans :

1. The, the, the, 2. An, a, the, 3. the, 4. The, a, the, 5. The, the, the, 6. The, a, 7. The, a, the, an, 8. The, an, a, the, 9. an, 10. The, a.

11. Fill in the blanks with suitable determiners:

- _____ books are missing from the library. (Any/Some)
- She has not solved _____ sums, (many/any)
- This book is mine but _____ is yours, (that/any)
- _____ boys have done their work. (That/These)
- He didn't make _____ progress, (much/many)
- He has forgotten _____ of the details, (some/many)
- The District Magistrate visited _____ flood affected area, (every/either)
- _____ villa is this? (Whose/What)
- He is the _____ boy who has joined this gym. (first/whose)
- I met her _____ week, (this/those)

Ans :

1. Some, 2. many, 3. that, 4. These, 5. much, 6. some, 7. every, 8. Whose, 9. first, 10. this.

12. Fill in the blanks with suitable determiners:

- Could you bring me _____ books I left in the garden?
- _____ sun rises from the east.

- The doctor advised me to eat _____ apple every morning.
- There aren't _____ students in the library.
- I haven't got _____ pictures in my bedroom.
- She gave a cookie to _____ child.
- I've got to solve _____ math problems before I go to sleep.
- _____ cherries are delicious! (With a bowl of cherries on your lap)
- My mother doesn't drink _____ coffee.
- I always keep _____ money in my wallet for emergencies.

Ans :

1. those, 2. The, 3. an, 4. many, 5. any, 6. each, 7. some, 8. These, 9. much, 10. some.

13. Choose the correct determiner from the brackets:

- Let us save _____ (a little/the little) for a rainy day.
- Won't you have _____ (many/some) tea? Yes, I'll have _____ (a little/a few).
- Don't you have _____ (any/some) match at all? Of course we have _____ (any/some).
- He is mischievous, like _____ (many/a good many) boys.
- _____ (Many a/A good many) persons have made the same mistake.
- _____ (Every/Many) boy is keen on gymnastics.
- Generally, Mr Jones doesn't have _____ (many/much) money with him. But whenever he goes to visit his grandchildren, he has _____ (many/much) coins in his pocket.
- _____ (Lot of/A lot of) petrol leaked from the tank.
- "How _____ (much more/many more) strength must I exert", the mechanic asked.
- There is _____ (lots of/a lot of) marbles here, Andy told Mark. "Let's take _____ (few/a few)".

Ans :

1. the little, 2. some, a little, 3. any, some, 4. a good many, 5. A good many, 6. Every, 7. much, many, 8. A lot of, 9. much, 10. a lot of, a few.



- (a) (i) can (ii) may
(iii) should (iv) could
- (b) (i) been (ii) being
(iii) be (iv) have
- (c) (i) is (ii) are
(iii) am (iv) has
- (d) (i) sees (ii) saw
(iii) seeing (iv) see
- (e) (i) Can (ii) May
(iii) Should (iv) Must

Ans :

2014

(a) (iii) should, (b) (iii) be, (c) (iii) am, (d) (iv) see, (e) (ii) May.

10. Complete the paragraph given below with the help of options that follow :

In India, the death toll due to road accidents (a) _____ increased drastically. Most of them could (b) _____ averted. Wider road awareness among road users (c) _____ to be taught. Separate lanes for heavy vehicles should be made. More stringent laws must be (d) _____ while issuing licenses.

- (a) (i) has (ii) were
(iii) have (iv) had
- (b) (i) has been (ii) have been
(iii) had been (iv) be
- (c) (i) can (ii) could
(iii) ought (iv) should
- (d) (i) enforce (ii) enforced
(iii) enforces (iv) enforcing

Ans :

2013

(a) (i) has, (b) (ii) have been, (c) (iii) ought, (d) (ii) enforced.

2. EDITING

1. Select the option that identifies the error and supplies the correction for the sentence from a public health campaign.
The campaign's goal is to increase physical activity among the younger.

Option No.	Error	Correction
(a)	activity	activities
(b)	goal	goals
(c)	younger	youth
(d)	is	are

Ans :

2024

(c)

2. Select the option that identifies the error and supplies the correction for a pop-up that appeared on a webpage.

These cookies are used to collect information about how you interact with our website and allows us to remember you.

Option No.	Error	Correction
(a)	interact	interacted
(b)	with	to
(c)	about	for
(d)	allows	allow

Ans :

2024

(d)

3. Select the option that identifies the error and supplies the correction for a line from a Research Report :

In many low and middle income countries, health coverage has unproved dramatically in the last two decades, but health outcomes may not.

Option No.	Error	Correction
(a)	has	have
(b)	improved	improve
(c)	may	have
(d)	but	thus

Ans :

2024

(c)

4. Read the given sentence. Identify the error and supply the correction in the sentence :

The uniquely flavoured dish was interestingly enough to captivate my taste buds.

Error	Correction

Use the above format for your response.

Ans :

2024

Error	Correction
interestingly	interesting

5. Read the given sentence from a movie review article. Identify the error and supply the correction in the sentence.

The movie doesn't let you rest and is packed with engaged action sequences.

Use the given format for your response.

3. Read the following dialogue between a customer and shopkeeper and complete the passage that follows.

Customer : Can I have a bottle of juice?
Shopkeeper : Sorry, we only have milk bottles.
Customer : When will it be available ?
Shopkeeper : I can give it to you tomorrow.

The customer asked the shopkeeper (a) _____.
 The shopkeeper apologized and said they only had milk bottles. The customer wanted to know (b) _____. The shopkeeper said at he could give that to him the next day.

Ans :

2016

- (a) if he could have a bottle of juice
 (b) when it would be available

4. Read the following dialogue between a mother and daughter and complete the passage that follows.

Mother: Why are you looking so worried?
Daughter: My exams are approaching.
Mother: When will they start?
Daughter: Next month, Mother.

Mother asked her daughter (a) _____. The daughter replied that her exams were approaching. Mother further asked (b) _____. The daughter told her mother that they would start in the following month.

Ans :

2015

- (a) why she was looking very worried
 (b) when they would start.

5. Read the following dialogue between Harry and Cobbler and complete the passage that follows.

Harry : Can you polish my shoes?
Cobbler : Yes sir. But I will take 10 for each shoe.
Harry : I will not mind as long as it is done.

Harry asked the cobbler (a) _____. The cobbler replied affirmatively but (b) _____. Harry said that he would not mind as long as it was done.

Ans :

2015

- (a) if/whether he could polish his shoes
 (b) said that he would take 10 for each shoe

6. Read the following dialogue between Sunita and Neetu and complete the passage that follows.

Sunita: Tomorrow is your birthday, what do you want as a gift?
Neetu: That is a lovely thought but I don't want anything.

Sunita asked Neetu since the next day was her birthday, (a) _____ Neetu replied that (b) _____ but she did not want anything.

Ans :

2009

- (a) what she wanted as a gift
 (b) that was a lovely thought

7. Read the following dialogue between a teacher and Children and complete the passage that follows.

Teacher : Children, let us all pledge to save trees.
Children : Yes, mam, we all pledge to save our trees as the trees are the lungs of the city.
Teacher : Let us start today by planting a sapling.

The teacher asked all the children to pledge to save trees. The children replied affirmatively (a) _____ as the trees are the lungs of the city. Then the teacher said that (b) _____.

Ans :

2008

- (a) saying that they all pledged to save trees
 (b) they should start by planting a sapling that day.

Read the following dialogue between a doctor and patient and complete the passage that follows.

Doctor : You should take this medicine every day.
Patient : Should I take it before dinner or after dinner?
Doctor : No, you should take it after breakfast.

The Doctor advised the patient that (a) _____. The patient further asked (b) _____. The doctor replied negatively and then said that he should take it after breakfast.

Ans :

2008

- (a) he should take that medicine every day.
 (b) if/whether he should take it before dinner or after dinner.

9. Read the following dialogue between Radha and Shikha and complete the passage that follows.

Radha : Do you know how to swim?
Shikha : Yes I know. I have learnt it during this summer vacation.

Radha asked Shikha (a) _____. Then Shikha replied in affirmative and also added that (b) _____.

Ans :

2008

- (a) if/whether she knew how to swim
 (b) she had learnt it during the summer vacation

Ans :

2020

	Error	Correction
(a)	thinks	<u>think</u>
(b)	couldn't	<u>can't</u>
(c)	implied	<u>implies</u>

11. The following paragraph has not been edited. There is one error in each line. Identify the error and write its correction against the correct blank number. Remember to underline the correction. The first one has been done for you.

	Error	Correction
The pleasure in be outdoors	E.g. be	<u>being</u>
are fundamental for human	(a)	
happiness. There is so much to learnt	(b)	
and it is an constant source of delight to know	(c)	
more about the flora and fauna around.		

Ans :

2019

	Error	Correction
(a)	are	<u>is</u>
(b)	learnt	<u>learn</u>
(c)	an	<u>a</u>

12. The following paragraph has not been edited. There is one error in each line. Identify the error and write its correction against the correct blank number. Remember to underline the correction. The first one has been done for you.

	Error	Correction
In the Prisoner's Room a Candle is burning dimly. A Prisoner himself	E.g. is	<u>was</u>
sit by the table, only his back,	(a)	
the hair on his head, and his hands are visible	(b)	
from outside through the Window.	(c)	

Ans :

2018

	Error	Correction
(a)	A	<u>The</u>
(b)	sit	<u>sat</u>
(c)	are	<u>were</u>

13. The following paragraph has not been edited. There is one error in each line. Identify the error and write its correction against the correct blank number. Remember to underline the correction. The first one has been done for you.

	Error	Correction
We, here in India has so many religions, we ate so many different foods, we wear so much different kinds of dresses. Still we are much united than any other Country in the World.	E.g. has	<u>have</u>
	(a)	
	(b)	
	(c)	

Ans :

2017

	Error	Correction
(a)	ate	<u>eat</u>
(b)	much	<u>many</u>
(c)	much	<u>more</u>

14. The following paragraph has not been edited. There is one error in each line. Identify the error and write its correction against the correct blank number. Remember to underline the correction. The first one has been done for you.

	Error	Correction
The old miser spend all his time counting his money and think about new hiding places. He kept moving it about becuase he were terrified of being robbed. He may get up at night sometimes to make sure it was still there.	E.g. spend	<u>spent</u>
	(a)	
	(b)	
	(c)	

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

Error	Correction

Ans : 2024

Error	Correction
engaged	engaging

6. Identify the error and supply the correction for the given sentence from a comment posted by an admirer of a reporter.
The report was well document, so no one could claim that it was just one person’s opinion.
Use the given format for your response.

Error	Correction

Ans : 2024

Error	Correction
document	documented

7. Select the option that identifies the error and supply the correction for the opening line of a report.
Facebook, with more than 1 billion users is celebrated its 10th birthday this year.

Option No.	Error	Correction
(a)	with	for
(b)	is	are
(c)	than	then
(d)	celebrated	celebrating

Ans : 2023
(c)

8. Select the option that identifies the error and supplies the correction for the given line, from a survey.
Everyone are expected to submit their feedback to our customer service representative at the event.

Option No.	Error	Correction
(a)	are	is
(b)	their	your
(c)	feedback	feedbacks
(d)	the	a

Ans : 2023
(c)

9. The following paragraph has not been edited. There is one error in each line. Identify the error and write its correction against the correct blank number. Remember to underline the correction. The first one has been done for you.

Error	Correction
Have you ever learn from a mistake you have made?	E.g. learn <u>learnt</u>
Many shouldn't admit doing so. For those who do,	(a)
there was no need for guilt. We often make mistakes	(b)
while taking risks, but all brush them aside and learn.	(c)
With that, they usually don't make mistakes the next time.	

Ans : 2021

	Error	Correction
(a)	shouldn't	<u>won't/don't</u>
(b)	was	<u>is</u>
(c)	all	<u>some/many</u>

10. The following paragraph has not been edited. There is one error in each line. Identify the error and write its correction against the correct blank number. Remember to underline the correction. The first one has been done for you.

Error	Correction
A little political thinkers	E.g. A little <u>Some</u>
thinks that liberty and equality	(a)
couldn't go together. They think	(b)
that liberty implied the freedom	(c)
to do what one may like to do.	

18. The following paragraph has not been edited. There is one error in each line. Identify the error and write its correction against the correct blank number. Remember to underline the correction. The first one has been done for you.

	Error	Correction
Yesterday I try to take notes	E.g. try	<u>tried</u>
while the teacher explain a topic	(a)	
in the class. Since she did not speak loudly, it be difficult	(b)	
to hear, especially as any of the students behind me	(c)	
were talking and laughing most of the time.		

Ans :

2011

	Error	Correction
(a)	explain	<u>was explaining</u>
(b)	be	<u>was</u>
(c)	any	<u>some</u>

19. The following paragraph has not been edited. There is one error in each line. Identify the error and write its correction against the correct blank number. Remember to underline the correction. The first one has been done for you.

	Error	Correction
At the age of seventeen, Galileo know that he had discovered an important law-a law of a pendulum.	E.g. know	<u>knew</u>
He see that if he could check the time of a swing of the pendulum	(a)	
by means of his pulse beats, he can just as well	(b)	
check his pulse by means of a pendulum.	(c)	

Ans :

2010

	Error	Correction
(a)	a	<u>the</u>
(b)	see	<u>saw</u>
(c)	can	<u>could</u>

NODIA

2. TRANSFORMATION

1. Read the following dialogue between Raman and Anitha and complete the passage that follows.

Raman : What's the matter, Anitha?

Anitha : Oh, nothing. You cannot help me. I only want that blue umbrella.

Raman asked Anitha want (a) _____. She replied that it was nothing and he (b) _____ her as she only wanted that blue umbrella.

Ans :

2021, 2016

- (a) the matter was
(b) could not help

2. Read the following dialogue between a teacher and student and complete the passage that follows.

Biology Teacher : I instructed you to draw the diagram of bacteria. Why did you submit a blank sheet?

Sameer : Sir, I had drawn the diagram of bacteria, but you can't see it because it is not visible to the naked eye.

The biology teacher had instructed Sameer to draw the diagram of a bacterial cell and asked him (a) _____ a blank sheet. Sameer respectfully answered that he had drawn the diagram but (b) _____ to the naked eye.

Ans :

2021

- (a) why he had submitted
(b) he/the teacher couldn't see it because it is not visible

NO NEED TO PURCHASE SAMPLE PAPERS
Download India's Best 20 Sample Papers
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP
Every School conduct Pre-Board
From These Sample Papers

Ans :

2016

	Error	Correction
(a)	think	<u>thinking</u>
(b)	were	<u>was</u>
(c)	may	<u>used to</u>

15. The following paragraph has not been edited. There is one error in each line. Identify the error and write its correction against the correct blank number. Remember to underline the correction. The first one has been done for you.

Error Correction

It has been decide E.g. decide decided
to build a number of
fly-overs in Delhi.

That would mean
cutting hundreds
of trees. It would
certainly created (a)

ecological imbalance.
Thinking that this
balance may be
preserved, (b)

several organizations
has come forward to
sustain this green
cover by planting (c)

new trees. They are
also trying to create
awareness among the
people.

Ans :

2014

	Error	Correction
(a)	created	<u>create</u>
(b)	may	<u>should</u>
(c)	has	<u>have</u>

16. The following paragraph has not been edited. There is one error in each line. Identify the error and write its correction against the correct blank number. Remember to underline the correction. The first one has been done for you.

Error Correction

The people of India E.g. show showed
show remarkable
unity at the time

of Kargil Conflict.
There be a war like
situation (a)

on our borders. Our
soldiers fight with
the intruders with (b)

great courage. All
political parties
backed a Prime
Minister. (c)

Even children
supported the
jawans.

Ans :

2013

	Error	Correction
(a)	be	<u>was</u>
(b)	fight	<u>had fought</u>
(c)	a	<u>the</u>

17. The following paragraph has not been edited. There is one error in each line. Identify the error and write its correction against the correct blank number. Remember to underline the correction. The first one has been done for you.

Error Correction

Diwali was approach E.g.
fast. There approach approaching

was only three days
left. Kanishka went
out to burst (a)

crackers. He had been
outside for only the
few minutes when (b)

his mother call
out from inside
“Kanishka, you
haven’t (c)

cleaned your room.
Why are you playing

Ans :

2012

	Error	Correction
(a)	was	<u>were</u>
(b)	the few	<u>a few</u>
(c)	call	<u>called</u>

10. Read the following dialogue between a father and son and complete the passage that follows.

Father : How was the paper?
Son : It was easy. I could solve all the problems.
Father : Start preparing for the economics paper.

The father asked his son (a) _____. Son replied that that had been easy. He (b) _____ all the problems. Father further advised him to start preparing for the economics paper.

Ans : 2007

- (a) how the paper had been
 (b) could solve

11. Read the following dialogue between Reena and Rakesh and complete the passage that follows.

Reena : Have you seen 'Three Idiots'?
Rakesh : I saw them yesterday in my class.
Reena : I was talking about the movie.
Rakesh : I thought that you were talking about the three idiots in the class.

Reena asked Rakesh (a) _____ 'Three Idiots'. Rakesh replied that he had seen them the day before in his class. Reena further said that (b) _____ Rakesh replied that he had thought that she has been talking about the three idiots in the class.

Ans : 2006

- (a) if he had seen
 (b) she had been talking about the movie

12. Read the comic strip given below and complete the passage that follows.

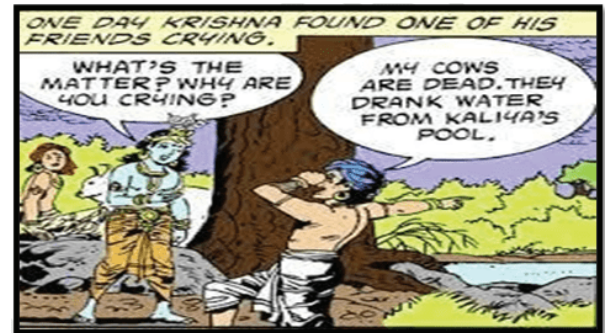


While making list of what Charlie wanted from Santa Claus, he asked Patty how (a) _____ all those toys. She could bet that everything these days is promotion and further added that it was possible as Santa (b) _____.

Ans : 2006

- (a) could he afford to give away
 (b) was being financed by some big eastern chain

13. Read the comic strip given below and complete the passage that follows.



One day Krishna found one of his friends crying. He asked (a) _____ and why he was crying. His friend was inconsolable and wailed that all (b) _____ he informed that they had drank water from kaliya's pool.

Ans : 2006

- (a) what the matter was
 (b) his cows were dead.

14. Read the comic strip given below and complete the passage that follows.



Nancy asked her sister Sara (a) _____. Sara informed that she had been having trouble sleeping. She informed that (b) _____ not to eat a heavy meal before bed and so she was having it then.

Ans : 2005

- (a) what she was doing
 (b) the doctor had told her.

differently-abled, at the tourist spots, shall go a long way in bringing about a positive change.

- (a) (i) beliefs and traditions (ii) composing songs
- (b) (i) perceptions and attitudes (ii) cautioning the authorities
- (c) (i) preferences (ii) protesting
- (d) (i) interactions (ii) keeping minimum interference

v Select the option that correctly justifies the choice of the concluding portion of this letter.

- 1. I accept the authorities to take actions on this issue. Please post my thoughts in your newspaper.
- 2. I hope my views get published in the columns of your newspaper so that this issue may garner more public support and awareness.
- (a) Yes, to Option 1 because of the authoritative tone.
- (b) No, to Option 1 because of the informal tone.
- (c) Yes, to Option 2 because of the tone of polite expectation.
- (d) No, to Option 2 because of the certainty in the tone.

vi Select the option that completes the concluding line appropriately.

I hope that my letter will _____

- (a) help spread awareness about the issue.
- (b) lead to action against all authorities responsible, at tourist spots.
- (c) improve circulation of the national daily.
- (d) result in positive reviews by the readers.

Ans :

2022

- i. (d) 1, 3 and 4
- ii. (d) Inconvenience Faced by the Differently-abled at Tourist Spots
- iii. (c)
- iv. (b) (i) perceptions and attitudes (ii) cautioning the authorities
- v. (c) Yes, to Option 2 because of the tone of polite expectation.
- vi. (a) help spread awareness about the issue.
- 2. You discover that the medicines you bought from the nearby medical stores were sold after their due date of expiry. You are writing a letter of complaint to the Food and Drugs authority, Government of Jharkhand:

Sunita Lal,
14, R.K. road,
Ranchi, Jharkhand
30 March, 2018

(i) _____
Food and Drugs Authority,
Ranchi, Jharkhand

Subject: (ii) _____

Respected Sir/Madam,

From the past three days, I have been suffering from mild fever. I visited my family doctor Dr. Gupta who prescribed me a few medicines. I purchased the given medicines from (iii) '_____' which is situated next to Rambhavan Hotel on R.K. road, Ranchi.

I took the medicines home and in the afternoon was about to take my first dose, when I checked the medicines. I was shocked to see the expiry date on the medicines as 15th January, 2018. They had been expired for almost two and a half month. The shopkeeper (iv) _____ to accept his fault and such behaviour of his, to my belief, is unacceptable.

Thus, I request you to bring this matter to notice as consumption of expired products can (v) _____. This is a matter of (vi) _____ and I request you to inspect the whole store as early as possible.

Looking forward to your positive reply.

Kind Regards,

Sunita Lal

Complete the letter by choosing the most appropriate option:

- i (a) The Health Commissioner,
(b) The President
(c) The Editor
(d) The Municipal Commissioner
- ii (a) Selling of expried products
(b) Selling of defective products
(c) Selling of products with expired dates.
(d) None of these
- iii (a) Shyam Kirana Store
(b) Mediplus medical store
(c) Maharaja Textiles
(d) Shiv Hardware and Sanitary
- iv (a) denied (b) agreed
(c) hesitated (d) Scolded

CHAPTER 7

FORMAL LETTER

NODIA

1. INTRODUCTION

Letter writing is an art. It is the commonest mode of communication. It is different from other forms of writing because it is intended for a specific reader. A letter is written when something has to be conveyed to someone sitting far away. Writing requires imagination, creativity, careful planning and organisation. The language of the letter should be interactive.

2. TYPES OF LETTERS

There are broadly two types of letter, namely Formal Letters, and Informal Letters. Let us have a look at these types of letters:

1. **Formal Letters** - These letters follow a certain pattern and formality. They are strictly kept professional in nature, and directly address the issues concerned. Any type of business letter or letter to authorities falls within this given category.
2. **Informal Letters** - These are personal letters. They need not follow any set pattern or adhere to any formalities. They contain personal information or are a written conversation. Informal letters are generally written to friends, acquaintances, relatives etc.

DOWNLOAD INDIA'S BEST STUDY MOBILE APP

- 30 Sample Paper with Solutions
- Chapterwise Question Bank of All Subject
- Previous 15 Years Solved Papers
- NCERT Solutions
- Case Study Questions with full Solutions
- **Word File of Material for Teachers**

Search by **NODIA** on Play Store to Download App

3. FORMAT OF A FORMAL LETTER

A formal letter must adhere to the prescribed format. The format of a formal letter is as mentioned below:

Sender's Address: [Address and contact details of the sender]

Date:

Receiver's Designation and Address:
[Designation and Address of the receiver]

Subject: [Name the request/complaint]

Salutation: [Respected Sir/Madam]

Body of the letter:

Paragraph 1 [State the purpose of application]

Paragraph 2 [Here start writing detailed information]

Paragraph 3 [Now conclude your letter that is write what you are expecting]

Complimentary Closing: [Now end the letter with – yours sincerely, faithfully, thankfully]

Signature: [Name followed by Signature]

4. ESSENTIAL COMPONENTS OF A FORMAL LETTER

The essential components of a formal letter are as follows:

1. **Sender's address:** One of the most essential components, also known as the return address. It is the mailing address of the sender. The address and contact details of the person sending the letter are written here.
2. **Date:** Immediately after the sender's address comes the date on which the letter is written.
3. **Receiver's designation and address:** After writing the date you should mention the address of the receiver. Candidates must start with the receiver's designation followed by the name of the organization and then the full address.

4. **Subject:** Followed by the receiver's details, you must include the subject line. Basically, this subject line talks about the purpose of the letter.
5. **Salutation:** You should greet the person to whom you are writing the letter. As you are writing a formal letter, the greeting should not be too personal.
6. **Body:** Basically, the body of the letter is divided into 3 parts which are as under:
Paragraph 1: Purpose of writing the letter.
Paragraph 2: Now explain the reason in detail.
Paragraph 3: Conclude the letter. This section must say what you're expecting or the solution.
7. **Complimentary Closing:** Now conclude the letter with complementary closing like yours sincerely, yours faithfully, etc.
8. **Signature:** Below the complementary message, write your name followed by your signature and designation.

5. LETTER TO THE EDITOR

A Letter to the Editor is a formal comprehensive letter, addressed to the Editor of a certain publication/magazine/newspaper with the intent of complimenting, critiquing, informing, or communicating a certain piece of information. Newspapers, weeklies and magazines play an important role in shaping public opinion, public minds and decisions about many national and international issues because they have a large number of readers. Writing letters to the editors is a great way to engage with a topic you are passionate about and to influence public opinion. These letters are written to shape public opinion, to share information and ideas, to increase awareness, to advocate your cause or to start community conversation. It is a written way of talking to a newspaper or magazine. It takes a position for or against an issue or simply inform or both.

The following points should be remembered while writing a letter to the editor:

1. Express your ideas clearly and concisely.
2. Confine yourself to one topic. Use simple words, short words, short sentences and short paragraphs.
3. The letter should be timely and newsworthy. Its meaning should be clear.

4. Plan your first sentence carefully. Make it short and interesting.
5. If you write to criticize, begin with a word of appreciation, agreement or praise. A calm, constructive presentation is persuasive.
6. Help supply the truth that may have been omitted or slanted in reporting the news or editorializing on it.
7. Use a relevant experience (a situation in your school district) to illustrate a point. When rightly (and tightly) told, it can be persuasive.
8. Desired steps to rectify the situation should also be mentioned.
9. Close the letter with formal request to solve the problems.

EXAMPLES

1. Write a letter to the Editor of "The Times of India", Delhi expressing your concern over the increase in the rate of road accident, rash driving and overcrowded road transport. You are Priya/Priyanshu living at B-47 Avas Vikas, Mayur Vihar, New Delhi.

Ans :

B-47 Avas Vikas
 Mayur Vihar
 New Delhi
 13 November, 20XX
 To,
 The Editor
 The Times of India
 New Delhi

Subject: Increasing cases of road accidents, rash driving and overcrowding.

Sir,

Through the columns of your esteemed newspaper, I wish to express the anguish of the general public over the increasing number of road accidents, cases of rash driving and the problem of overcrowding in the buses.

The bus drivers have no regard for the traffic rules. They drive very rash under the influence of liquors. They even jump the red light signals installed on the roads.

Still the private bus operators stop at unauthorized stops. The uncontrollable speed and race with other buses is the main cause of accidents. They even overtake the other buses for picking up more passengers. The conductors pack their buses to suffocation. As a result, ladies and old people are unable to get into the buses.

It requires stricter watch on the part of the traffic police. More traffic police should be

employed to check the violations of the traffic rules. Proper road signals and road marks should be marked. The surprise check by traffic police in civil dress can play an effective role in booking the culprits.

Yours truly
Priyanshu

2. You are Praveen of 23, Civil Lines, Jaipur. Write a letter to the Editor of Dainik Bhaskar, Jaipur about frequent break-down of electricity.

Ans :

23, Civil Lines,
Jaipur
25 January, 20XX
To,
The Editor
Dainik Bhaskar
Jaipur

Subject: Frequent breakdown of electricity in civil lines, Jaipur

Sir,

Please permit me some space in your newspaper. I wish to draw the attention of the government towards the supply of electricity in Jaipur.

The lack of electricity supply is causing much trouble to this city. The supply we get is not only short but also highly irregular. We do not know about the hours of cut.

It has also affected the supply of water. If there is no light in the morning, there is no water either. The local water board also depends on the supply of electricity. Streets are dark in the night. It causes accidents. The students cannot study well.

I wish to make an urgent appeal to every person concerned to help.

Thanking You

Yours faithfully
Praveen

6. LETTER OF COMPLAINT

Complaint letters are usually written to business firms, water supply boards, telecommunication boards, electricity boards, sewerage boards and several other organizations. Their purpose is to remind the people of these firms or authorities about their defective products or poor services. It is extremely important to provide all the details in your complaint letter as the information can be further used for verification.

The following points should be remembered while writing a complaint letter:

1. The message conveyed in the complaint letter should be direct and credible.

2. Make accurate and clear statements by giving all the details and exact description of the goods.
3. Be very precise and accurate in describing the problems.
4. Use polite but firm language in narrating the problems.
5. Desired steps to rectify the situation should also be mentioned.
6. Do not use negative words like - dishonest, inefficient, useless, disgusting etc. as they sound discourteous.
7. Do not blame anyone unless you are absolutely sure. Use passive voice to talk of mistakes.
8. Avoid threats, accusation or veiled hints about the legal action if the claim is not settled promptly.
9. The letter should demand immediate response, quicker decision or positive action in order to resolve the complaint as soon as possible.
10. Close the letter with formal request to solve the problems.

Here, we shall discuss two types of letter of complaint:

1. Official Letters
2. Business Letters

Official Letters

Complaint letters to officials are letters written to any person who works and acts in an official capacity for the government. An official complaint letter is a type of letter written to address any type of wrongdoing, offense, grievance, resentment and irresponsible behaviour of government officials in your local area.

We can use such letters to raise our concerns about the unfair happenings around us and seek a positive as well as a productive outcome. It is our social responsibility to notify the higher authorities whenever we see anything wrong or fishy happening.

You can write a letter to your local government authority addressing problems in your area. It can be related to anything like illegal activities by goons, dumping of waste, pollution, water supply, Poor condition of roads, traffic problems, etc. Whatever the reason, the letter must be formal, respectful, and well-worded.

I request you to cordially grant me leave for 5 days. After coming back I will try to finish the syllabus covered in my absence with the help of my teachers and fellow classmates. I shall be really grateful to you if you approve my leaves.

Thanking you.

Yours obediently,
Rani Sharma

2. Write an application to the librarian of your school informing him of the library card, You have lost and requesting him to issue a duplicate card to you.

Ans :

To,
The Librarian,
N.K. Public School,
Kanpur
October 5, 20XX

Subject : To cancel old card and issue a new duplicate card

Respected Sir,

Most respectfully I beg to say that I, Ankit Sharma studying in 10th class, have lost my library card. My card No. is 323. Kindly cancel my old card and issue me a new duplicate card.

Thanking you.

Yours faithfully
Ankit Sharma

8. OTHER LETTERS

1. You are Anita/Amit, the student prefect and incharge of the school library. You have been asked to place an order for textbooks on Mathematics. Write a letter to M/s Full Marks (P) Ltd., 4238A/1, Ansari Road, Daryaganj, New Delhi placing an order for the books. Invent the necessary details.

Ans :

BVM, Public School
Ram Vihar
Delhi

23rd June, 20xx

M/s Full Marks (P) Ltd.
4238A/1, Ansari Road
Daryaganj, New Delhi

Subject : Order for Mathematics textbooks
Sir,

I would like to place an order for textbooks on Mathematics with your firm for our school library. Since the school is going to have Mathematics exhibition by the end of this month we need the following books urgently.

	Subject	Classes	Author	Quantity
1.	Mathematics	Class IX (Vol. I & II)	Manjeet Singh	40 copies
2.	Mathematics	Class X (Vol. I & II)	Manjeet Singh	40 copies
3.	Mathematics	Class XI (Part 1 & 2)	Manjeet Singh	15 copies
4.	Mathematics	Class XII (Part 1 & 2)	Manjeet Singh	20 copies

We request you to give us discount offered to the educational institutions. Please find enclosed a DD for 50000/-. The remaining amount shall be paid as soon as we receive the final bill. You are requested to send us these books through any courier service. Please ensure that the books are properly packed. The books found damaged will be returned at your cost. We shall feel highly obliged if you could deliver us these books within 10 days.

Yours truly

Amit (Student prefect)

2. You are Neelam/Rakesh, Store Incharge Diksha Stores, 32/54, Rajeev Nagar, Delhi. Your school requires school bags and accessories in bulk for the commencement of the new session. Write a letter of inquiry to the Sales Manager, Sky Bags Industries Ltd. 15/3, Ravi Nagar, Delhi enquiring about the details of goods manufactured.

Ans :

Diksha Stores
32/54, Rajeev Nagar
Delhi

28th August, 2019

The Sales Manager

M/s Sky Bags Industries Limited

15/3, Ravi Nagar

Delhi

Subject : Inquiry about school bags and accessories
Sir,

There has been enormous demand by our customers of the school bags and accessories you manufacture for primary and secondary school students and they are inquiring about quality, price, durability, etc.

We shall feel obliged if you could please send us 100 pieces of school bags for every age group on approval and return basis.

If we find the quality and price satisfactory then we expect to purchase more from you. Before placing a large order of the bags, we would like you to send the above quantity of the desired products on approval basis.

Date: 8 June, 20XX

The Retailer,

Rawat Electronics Shoppee,

Sector-6, Vidhydhar Nagar,

Jaipur-302039

Subject : Complaint regarding defective camera

Dear Sir,

In the last month I purchased a high priced camera from your Electronics Shoppee. I was careful to follow the instructions for use, honestly. I am sorry to inform you that the camera is not working properly. I could not take photographs during my visit to Hyderabad. There is something wrong with the camera. I am getting blurred pictures out of film rolls.

Even though the camera is inferior in quality, still we believe in your services. Kindly find the problem with the camera.

Please do the needful, and send me replacement for the same within 10 days from this letter.

Awaiting for your quick action.

Thanking you,

Yours faithfully,

(Vivek Mahajan)

2. You are Apoorva/Arpit. You bought a refrigerator from Ganesh Electronics and Electricals, Gandhi Marg, Nagpur. It does not function properly. Write a letter to the Sales Manager of the shop, complaining about the defect and asking for immediate replacement or repair, as necessary.

Ans :

33, Stadium Road

Nagpur

20th December, 20XX

The Sales Manager

Ganesh Electronics and Electricals

Gandhi Marg

Nagpur

Subject : Complaint about Defective Refrigerator
Purchased from You

Reference : Bill No. 234 Dated 7th December, 20XX

Dear Sir,

On 07.12.20XX, I purchased a Godrej refrigerator, Model No.435, vide Receipt No. 234 from your showroom, paying Rs.15,000.

Unfortunately, the refrigerator does not function properly now. It does not cool properly and side-walls of it get heated a lot. The freezing compartment of the refrigerator stops suddenly. It produces noise with vibrations.

To resolve the problem I would appreciate if you get the refrigerator checked properly by a qualified technician. Since, it is under warranty period, I request you to kindly send someone to

replace it as it seems to have some manufacturing problem.

I look forward to your reply and a resolution to my problem, and will wait until a week before seeking help from the Consumer Protection. Please contact me at the above address or by phone at 0402667546 between 4.30 p.m. to 9.00 p.m.

Yours truly

Arpit

Enclosures cc: Receipt of purchase and warranty card

7. APPLICATION TO PRINCIPAL OR LIBRARIAN

Students are taught application writing with the intent of familiarizing them with the proper format and composition for a formal application whether it is for a leave, fee concession, to name a few. The art of writing a concise and well-purposed formal application using a respectable language is a skill that can be learnt by understanding its format and structure. An application to principal/librarian from the student will be carefully considered by the principal/librarian of the school. So, before addressing something to these school officials, students must be aware of the application format and the rules to be followed while writing an application to the principal/librarian.

EXAMPLES

1. Imagine you are Rani Sharma. You need to visit out of the station for some new place to attend some family function or for a family trip. Write an application to notify the school principal about your absenteeism in the class.

Ans :

To,

The Principal,

Geeta Devi Senior Secondary School,

Madhubani

November 27, 20XX

Subject : Application for Leave

Respected Sir,

I beg to state that I am Rani Sharma, a student of class 10th C at your school. I have my family function in Delhi and all of my family members are going to attend it.

Hence, I am also leaving with them and will not be able to attend school from 28 November, 20XX to 2 December, 20XX.

EXAMPLES

1. You are Tushar Mathur of D-95, Sindhu Nagar, Jaipur. Write a letter to the General Manager of the Jaipur Transport Undertaking complaining about the local bus service.

Ans :

D-95, Sindhu Nagar,

Jaipur

5 January, 20XX

To,

The General Manager

Jaipur Transport Corporation,

Jaipur

Subject: Complaint regarding poor local bus service

Sir,

I want to draw your attention to the poor bus service to and from our locality. The buses seem not to follow any time-table. They generally run late. Sometimes some buses pass much before time. Irregularity is the rule.

The number of buses from our locality for major routes is also insufficient. The passengers have to wait for about 30 minutes if they miss a bus. Kindly increase the number of buses particularly in the morning and the evening. This will solve the problem of over-crowding too.

One great trouble is the road-worthiness of these buses. I think that the buses are very old. They quite often stop mid-way adding to our woes.

Kindly look into the matter personally and oblige.

Thanking you

Yours faithfully

Tushar Mathur

2. Write a letter to the Post Master, General Post Office, Pithoragarh complaining of late delivery of letters. You are Mohit/Mona of Takana, Pithoragarh.

Ans :

Friends Colony, Takana

Pithoragarh

11 November, 20XX

The Post Master

General Post Office

Pithoragarh

Subject: Complaint regarding late delivery of letters.

Respected Sir,

This is to bring to your kind notice that the beat postman of our area is not performing his duties well. He never delivers our letters, money orders, parcels etc. on time. He visits only once a week and

delivers the letters of the whole week that day. As a result of his careless attitude towards duties, we often get deprived of the important information of marriage, death, etc. of our relatives and friends.

Several times people could not reach on time to attend the interview or join service due to the negligence on the part of the postman. We have repeatedly requested him to be regular and deliver the letter on time but he pays no heed to our requests.

I sincerely request you to personally enquire into the matter and take immediate action for the redressal of our grievances.

Yours faithfully

Mona

(A resident of Friends Colony)

Takana

Business Letters

Business complaint letter is written by customers who are not satisfied by the levels of consumer services provided. If you feel that your supplier is dishonest about the goods they deliver to you, whether in terms of content or pricing, you can write them a customer complaint letter to express your grievances. Do not forget to mention that there will be consequences should they fail to address the issue in question.

A business complaint letter is written to address a problem(s) and to find out solutions to those problems. The problem can be of many things. They can be about a service, a product, or goods in the business. If you are writing a complaint letter, it should be written in a clear and precise manner. The problem and the dissatisfaction of the service are addressed in the complaint letter. The possible solutions to the problem(s) are addressed at the end of the letter.

EXAMPLES

1. You have purchased a high priced camera from the Rawat Electronics Shoppee, Sector-6, Vidhyadhar Nagar, Jaipur-302039, for your personal use, a month ago. Now you find that something is terribly wrong with the camera and you are getting blurred pictured out of the film rolls. Write a letter of complain to the retailer, seeking replacement for the camera.

Ans :

Mr. Vivek Mahajan

V.T. Road,

Ranchi, Jharkhand

The remaining of the unsold pieces would be returned to you at your expense within a period of one month from receipt of the products.

We hope to hear from you very soon.

Yours faithfully

Rakesh

Store Incharge



IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. You are Debashree, a resident of Siliguri, Assam. You have to write a letter to the editor of a national daily drawing attention towards the difficulty faced by differently-abled people at tourist places.
 - i Select the option with relevant aspects that Debashree should select, for this letter.
 1. The newspaper's name
 2. Attached proof of the newspaper subscription
 3. Debashree's address
 4. Formal tone
 5. Expected date of the letter's receipt

(a) 1 and 5 (b) 2, 3 and 4
(c) 3 and 5 (d) 1, 3 and 4
 - ii Select the appropriate subject for this letter.
 - (a) Drawing attention towards differently-abled people
 - (b) The Differently-abled : Neglected or Misunderstood?
 - (c) Tourist places are an inconvenience to Differently-abled people
 - (d) Inconvenience Faced by the Differently-abled at Tourist Spots
 - iii Which option should Debashree select, to elaborate on the difficulties faced by the differently-abled?

(a)	Absence of ramps for wheelchairs Unclean toilets High ticket-prices
(b)	Unsuitable visiting timings Tourist guides untrained in sign language Lack of braille-script tourist pamphlets
(c)	Absence of ramps for wheelchairs Tourist guides untrained in sign language Lack of braille-script tourist pamphlets
(d)	Unclean toilets High ticket-prices Unsuitable visiting timings

- iv Debashree shares some suggestions in her letter, to address the issue.
Select the option that helps her complete these suggestions, appropriately.
In my opinion, the media can play a pivotal role in transforming people's (i) _____. Also, (ii) _____ against negligence to the needs of the

15. Shyam meets Rahul at his residence on his way to school. Complete the given conversation.

Shyam : (a) _____ Rahul. How are you?

Rahul : I'm good. Thank you. (b) _____?

Shyam : Fine, thanks. (c) _____?

Rahul : It is only half past eight. By the way, (d) _____?

Shyam : No, I haven't finished the assignment. Will you wait for me? I will be ready in about ten minutes.

Rahul : Sure, with pleasure.

Shyam : Thank you very much.

- (a) (i) Ah! (ii) Alas!
(iii) Hello (iv) Well
- (b) (i) And me (ii) And you
(iii) And I (iv) And they
- (c) (i) What time is it
(ii) What time is that
(iii) What time is this
(iv) What time it is
- (d) (i) are you finished the assignment
(ii) had you finished the assignment
(iii) has you finished the assignment
(iv) have you finished the assignment

Ans :

2012

- (a) (iii) Hello
(b) (ii) And you
(c) (i) What time is it
(d) (iv) have you finished the assignment

16. Dialogue between two friends on the topic of air pollution is given below. Complete the dialogue.

Priya : Vidya, why are you (a) _____ eyes?

Vidya : I feel acute irritation in them.

Priya : What is the reason?

Vidya : It is due to (b) _____.

Priya : Oh yes, the air is full of fumes.

Vidya : These fumes (c) _____.

Priya : Yes, it has sulphur dioxide and nitrogen oxide. I forgot to bring my sunglasses today.

Vidya : How would sunglasses help?

Priya : They shield (d) _____.

Vidya : Then, I'll also wear mine from tomorrow.

Priya : Yes, you must.

- (a) (i) rubbing my eyes
(ii) seeing in my eyes
(iii) looking into my eyes
(iv) rubbing your eyes

- (b) (i) air pollution
(ii) water pollution
(iii) land pollution
(iv) noise pollution
- (c) (i) has poisonous gases
(ii) have poisonous gases
(iii) had poisonous gases
(iv) are poisonous gases
- (d) (i) the eyes from sunglasses
(ii) the eyes from beneficial gases
(iii) the eyes from harmful gases
(iv) the eyes from harmless gases

Ans :

2011

- (a) (iv) rubbing your eyes
(b) (i) air pollution
(c) (ii) have poisonous gases
(d) (iii) the eyes from harmful gases



- v (a) improve health of people
(b) give good profits to the medicine seller
(c) cause serious damage to the health of people
(d) None of these

- vi (a) grave importance (b) wide scope
(c) fact (d) discomfort

Ans :

- i. (a) The Health Commissioner,
ii. (c) Selling of products with expired dates.
iii. (b) Mediplus medical store
iv. (a) denied
v. (c) cause serious damage to the health of people
vi. (a) grave importance

3. How to end the main body of a formal letter?
(a) by telling the recipient what he should be doing next
(b) By showing love
(c) By discussing weather
(d) None of these

Ans :

- (a) by telling the recipient what he should be doing next

4. The key point to a formal letter is written in which part of a formal letter?

- (a) Introduction (b) Heading
(c) Subject (d) Body

Ans :

- (d) Body

5. What is the correct way to write the subscription in a formal letter??

- (a) Yours truly (b) Your truly
(c) You truly (d) None of these

Ans :

- (a) Yours truly

6. What is written on the top of editor's letter on the left side?

- (a) Salutation (b) Yours truly
(c) Subject (d) Sender's address

Ans :

- (d) Sender's address

7. Which of these is the right format of writing the date in all the formal letters?

- (a) 21/11/2020 (b) 21-11-2020
(c) November 21, 2020 (d) None of these

Ans :

- (c) November 21, 2020

8. The subject of letter to editor should be _____?

- (a) Long (b) Irrelevant
(c) Brief and relevant (d) None of these

Ans :

- (c) Brief and relevant

9. Which of the following statements is incorrect about letter to editor?

- (a) Must be in formal language
(b) Must be complete in all respects
(c) Must be relevant information
(d) Must be informal

Ans :

- (d) Must be informal

10. Which of the following is not a part of a letter to editor?

- (a) Date (b) Subject
(c) Salutation (d) Photo

Ans :

- (d) Photo

11. Letter to the editor are written to

- (a) newspaper (b) school
(c) college (d) club

Ans :

- (a) newspaper

12. Letter of complaint comes in the category of

- (a) formal letter (b) informal letter
(c) demi-official letter (d) none of these

Ans :

- (a) formal letter

13. What is written on the top of a Business Letter on the left side?

- (a) Sender's address (b) Receiver's address
(c) Date (d) Salutation

Ans :

- (a) Sender's address

14. What is written below sender's address in a Business letter?

- (a) Date (b) Receiver's address
(c) Subject (d) Salutation

SCAN QR CODE

JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL



conclusions, or observations. You should simply stick to the facts. The conclusion should include a thesis description, the most important findings from the study, and the concluding thought.

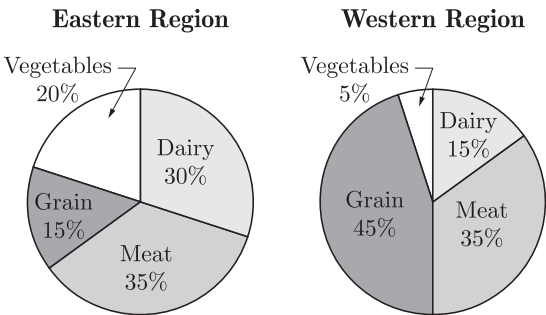
You need not dispose of the information to write a good analytical paragraph. The key is to choose wisely the important information, organize it well, state correct facts and summarise it properly.

6. USEFUL TIPS FOR WRITING AN ANALYTICAL PARAGRAPH

- For an introduction, you can start with the following phrases :
 - The chart given above describes
 - The table suggests
 - The line graph shows
 - The data given provides information about
 - The pie chart illustrates, etc.
- For describing trends, use phrases and words like- a pattern of growth, rapidly doubled, sky rocketed, striking increase, peaked, soaring rates, declined, plummeted, levelled off, stagnated, fluctuate, starting to rise, starting to fall, drop down, slightly, etc.
- For describing quantities, use various styles like - 48% of, one-third of, nearly one-fourth of, almost 80%, majority, on average, twice as much, almost equal, the highest, the lowest, very close to 2%, roughly, approximately 5% of, just under three percent, etc.
- For establishing a relationship or contrast, use phrases and words like- relationship between, similarly, in contrast with, in comparison to, but in the opposite case, however, whereas, when it comes to, as opposed to, while, striking difference, noticeable difference, etc.
- For the conclusion and other connecting phrases use - overall, subsequently, in all, in a nutshell, for the chart given, in short, striking changes, including, therefore, etc.

EXAMPLES

- The charts below show agricultural production in two different regions of the country. Write an analytical paragraph in 100-120 words by selecting and reporting the main features, and making comparisons where relevant.



Ans :

Agricultural Production in Two Different Regions of the Country

The pie charts show the different agricultural products raised in the western region and the eastern region of a country. Each region concentrates on different products. The Eastern Region has a slightly more even distribution among the different products than the Western Region does. In the Eastern Region, the top two products are meat, making up 35% of total agricultural production, and dairy, making up 30% of the total. Vegetables account 20% and grain for 15% of agricultural production in that region. In the Western Region, the top two products - grain and meat - account for 80% of the total agricultural production. Dairy makes up 15% of the total, while vegetables are only 5% of agricultural production in that part of the country. Each region has a different approach to agricultural production. In the Eastern Region, it is distributed among different products, while in the Western Region, it is concentrated more heavily on two different types of products.

You are Suresh/Lalita. Given below is a table based on data given about the number of tourists who visited your city in the past two years. Write an analytical paragraph on ‘Promotion of Tourism’ taking information from the table given below together with your own ideas in 100-120 words.

Year	Tourists Who Visited	
	Domestic	International
2020	444569	8563
2021	436350	11478

Plans of Tourism Department:

- To develop a wildlife park.
- Illumination and light and sound programme at one of the places of tourist interest in the city.
- To develop a big amusement park.
- Convention centre and a multiplex in the city.

27. Which of these is an example of courteous leave taking?

- (a) Yours sincerely (b) Sincerely
(c) Your sincerely (d) Your's sincerely

Ans :

- (a) Yours sincerely

28. Where should the signature of the writer be placed?

- (a) Below the courteous leave taking
(b) Above the courteous leave taking
(c) On the envelope
(d) Next to the courteous leave taking

Ans :

- (a) Below the courteous leave taking

29. In a formal letter, receiver's address includes:

- (a) Receiver's name (b) Sender's address
(c) Sir/Madam (d) Date

Ans :

- (a) Receiver's name

30. Suppose we didn't know the recipient's name, how we can close and end the letter?

- (a) Yours faithfully (b) Affectionately yours
(c) Your's sincerely (d) None of these

Ans :

- (a) Yours faithfully

31. Which is the vital part of the letter which is as good as wishing the person?

- (a) Reference (b) Subject
(c) Enclosure (d) Salutation

Ans :

- (d) Salutation

32. "Illegal parking of heavy commercial vehicles causing a nuisance to the residents of localities" is a topic associated with

- (a) official letter (b) letter to editor
(c) business letter (d) None of these

Ans :

- (b) letter to editor

33. A few lines of letter are mentioned here:

"Through the columns of your esteemed newspaper, I would like to highlight the burning issue of women's education scenario today in India, leading to their status in the family, society and the nation as a whole."

These lines are a part of

- (a) letter to editor

- (b) letter of complaint (business)

- (c) business letter

- (d) letter of complaint (official)

Ans :

- (a) letter to editor

34. In business letters, which of the following statement is True (T) or False (F)?

1. Signature is placed above the complimentary close.

2. Salutation is written after the address.

- (a) T,F (b) F,T

- (c) T,T (d) F,F

Ans :

- (b) F,T

1. Signature is placed above the complimentary close.

2. Salutation is written after the address.

35. Ganpati Enclave

223, Central Spine

Jaipur

Identify the part of the business letter given above.

- (a) Recipient's address (b) Body

- (c) Heading (d) Signature line

Ans :

- (a) Recipient's address

36. "Dear Mr. Ramesh," is an example of a

- (a) Subject line (b) Complimentary closing

- (c) Greeting (d) Salutation

Ans :

- (d) Salutation

Download NODIA App for All Sample Papers PDFs

37. When recounting a bad experience, we use _____ tense in our writing.

- (a) present (b) past

- (c) future (d) none of these

Ans :

- (b) past

38. A letter to the Manager, Sharma Furnitures, Delhi, mentioning about the poor quality of household furniture you recently purchased from them, is a kind of

- (a) letter to editor (b) complaint letter

- (c) business letter (d) letter of application

Ans :

- (b) complaint letter

39. _____ is written to register a complaint regarding product or a service to the business houses.

- (a) Letter of complaint
- (b) Letter of placing order
- (c) Informal letter
- (d) Letter to the editor

Ans :

- (a) Letter of complaint

40. _____ are written to the officials or the concerned authorities for making complaints and bringing to their notice, the problems or issues that a person had witnessed or felt.

- (a) Official letter (b) Job letter
- (c) Informal letter (d) Business letter

Ans :

- (a) Official letter

Long Answer Type Questions

1. There are daily reports in the newspaper of fatal accidents due to reckless driving and road rage. Write a letter to the Commissioner of Traffic Police in about 120 words suggesting the need to take stricter action against the offenders. Recommend the use of social media to launch awareness campaigns about the implications of irresponsible driving. You are Shantanu / Savita, living at B-108 Krishi Apartments.

Ans :

2024

B-108

Krishi Apartments

26 February 2024

The Commissioner

Traffic Police

New Delhi

Subject : Regarding increasing road accidents

Sir,

This is to bring in your kind notice that the cases of reckless driving and road rage are accelerating each day, resulting in fatal accidents.

The roads of Delhi are not safe anyways. However, the situation is worse in northern parts. During the light traffic hours after 10 p.m., it seems like some people choose the road just to release their stress by driving recklessly and giving other riders a near death experience. This eventually results into fights and even major accidents.

In the past one week, I've come across fifteen articles in the newspaper reporting more than 10 fatal accidents resulting in many casualties.

It has become vital that certain strict actions are taken against these offenders. Either by confiscating their vehicles or by cancelling their licenses, a lesson must be taught. In addition, publicizing this issue on social media will certainly bring awareness in this regard, resulting in a strong grip over these irresponsible drivers.

I request you to do something in this regard. I will be highly grateful for your consideration.

Yours sincerely

Savita

2. As Nalini Sharda of 409, Surya Apartments, Gopalpur, you believe that pedestrian safety is very important. Footpaths on both sides of the main roads of your city need major repairs and on some stretches they need to be constructed.

Write a letter to the MLA of your city area, in about 120 words, stressing the need for footpaths for pedestrian safety. Share your concern for maintenance of existing footpaths and the need to construct new ones where they are required.

Ans :

2024

409, Surya Apartments

Gopalpur

February 26, 2024

The MLA

Gopalpur

Delhi

Subject : Urgent Need for Footpaths to Enhance Pedestrian Safety

Sir

I am composing this correspondence to bring to your attention a pressing concern affecting our locality - the inadequate provision of safe footpaths, posing a significant hazard to pedestrians. The absence of designated pedestrian paths forces individuals onto busy thoroughfares, heightening the risk of accidents and injuries.

As our elected representative, I implore you to prioritize the establishment and upkeep of footpaths within our jurisdiction. This endeavor will not only bolster pedestrian safety but also foster a healthier and more sustainable community. Furthermore, existing footpaths are in a state of disrepair and necessitate urgent attention.

I earnestly beseech your immediate action on this matter, as the safety and welfare of our residents hang in the balance. Your assistance in addressing this issue will undoubtedly contribute to creating a safer and more pedestrian-friendly environment.

Thank you for your attention and dedication to our community's well-being.

Yours sincerely
Nalini Sharda

3. You are Vipul/Apoorva living at D-424, Island Avenue, Ernakulam. You have seen an advertisement given below about a diploma course in French language soon to be organized by Maxwell Institute of Languages, Fort Road, Kochi.

Maxwell Institute of Languages
French course available for students wanting to learn the language. Assurance of fluency. Interested students may please contact: Director, Maxwell Institute of Language

Write a letter in 120 words to the advertiser seeking all relevant information like admission procedure, fee structure, duration of the course, timing of the class, transport facilities, etc.

Ans : 2023
D-424
Island Avenue
Ernakulam-11990X
26 March 20XX
The Director
Maxwell Institute of Languages
Fort Road
Kochi - 4000XX
Subject : Enquiry regarding diploma course in French.
Sir,

This is with reference to your advertisement in the Times Daily dated 15 February 20XX regarding the courses in French language offered by your reputed institute. I am currently studying in Grade 12 and awaiting the results of my board examinations. I am passionate about languages and want to learn French in particular. I have researched and found your institute to be the best in providing courses on the same.

Please send me the prospectus containing information regarding the course and the application form. I would be highly grateful if you could also provide me with some information about the following:

- Scholarships available
- Admission procedure
- Fee structure
- Duration of the course
- Class timings
- Eligibility criteria
- Hostel/Transport facilities

NODIA

Kindly send me the latest brochure with the above details along with the enrolment form at the earliest so that I can register for the course.

Yours sincerely
Vipul/Apoorva

You are Vinita/Vinit, a customer of Excitel Broadband. Write a letter to the Customer Care Department, Excitel regarding the poor service of Internet connection. You are a resident of 485, Ram Nagar, Shandara.

Ans : 2021
485, Ram Nagar
Shandara, Delhi
15th Sept., 2019
The Manager
Customer Care Department (Broadband)
Excitel, Exchange Ram Nagar
Delhi

Subject : Poor Broadband Service

Sir,
I am a customer of your reputed broadband service and my customer ID is 41721. The Internet service at my home is very poor and I have to restart the modem or adjust the cables 10-12 times to get it working every time. Even after that, it works only for 5-7 minutes and then the modem restarts itself.

I have already raised several complaints on the helpline number but the issue has not been rectified as yet. It seems that there is some hardware issue with modem and it needs replacement as it keeps on restarting and its indicators are also not in proper order.

I would highly appreciate if you would look into the matter to deliver the best to its customers.

Thanking you
Yours faithfully
Vinita
Mobile No. 97604-xxxxx

5. You have seen an advertisement of a new model sports bike launched by Honda. You are a passionate racer and are keen to buy the new model of racing bikes being offered. Next month a zonal level Bike Marathon is taking place and you are keen to enroll your name as a contestant. Write a letter to M/s Honda Bikes and Scooters, Kashmere Gate, New Delhi enquiring about the price, specifications and availability of accessories that long distance racers would require. You are Man Singh living in Green Park, New Delhi.

Ans : 2020
44, Green Park
New Delhi-110053

20th Aug, 2019
 M/s Honda Bikes and Scooters
 Kashmere Gate
 Delhi

Subject : Price and specifications of new model sports bike

Sir,

My name is Man Singh. I live in Green Park, New Delhi and am a bike enthusiast. I have participated in many race events. At present I am training myself to compete for the upcoming zonal level Bike Marathon. Later I plan to participate in the coming Olympics. Being a racer I am always very passionate about the latest bike in the market. I have seen your advertisement this morning about the launch of a new racing sports model bike which not only comes in attractive model but meets all international standards. I saw the picture in the advertisement. Needless to say the model looks sleek and sporty with a striking colour combination.

So I would like to say that I'm really excited about this bike model and wish to procure it. I would be grateful if you could give me information about the following:

- Its features in detail
 - Its Price
 - Availability of necessary accessories
- Please call back with all information.

Thanking you

Yours truly

Man Singh

Mobile No : 85968xxxxx

6. You are Amit Kapoor, resident of 43/9, Shyam Enclave, Delhi. You visited Manali with your family during the summer vacation. You had two double suites at Lake View resort. Your stay at the hotel fell far short of the description in the brochure. Write a letter of complaint to the Customer Service Department to refund for your hotel stay.

Ans :

2019,

43/9, Shyam Enclave
 Delhi

12th August, 2019

Customer Service Department

Lake View Resort

Manali

Subject : Complaint about the double suites

Ref. No. : Holiday reference Number BM 3278 M
 Sir,

I had booked two double suites of rooms, 111 and 112, at your resort for a week from 10.07.2019 to 16.07.2019 for me and my family. My central complaint is that the hotel fell far short of the

description in the brochure.

Although the rooms were billed as four-star accommodation, they were cramped, and the furnishings were wornout and dirty. The hotel grounds, described in the brochure as "Pleasant, tranquil, and spacious", were in fact next to a busy main road. The swimming pool was closed for repairs.

I registered a formal complaint with the front office detailing these issues. I feel that we are due to full refund for this hotel stay as it failed to meet our expectations and ruined our holiday. Looking forward for a prompt reply.

Yours faithfully

Amit Kapoor

Encl. : Copy of the bill and photographs for evidence

7. You are Abhimanyu Sikri, resident of 119, Nilgiri Apartments, Kirti Nagar, Delhi. You purchased a wardrobe made of recycled wood shaving; from M/s Pawan Sales, Ramesh Nagar, Delhi. Write a letter of complaint to the Sales Manager asking for replacement of the product which you purchased 15 days ago. You have found that doors do not shut and the paint is uneven.

Ans :

2018

119, Nilgiri Apartments

Kirti Nagar, Delhi

25th August, 2019

The Sales Manager

M/s Pawan Sales

Ramesh Nagar, Delhi

Subject : Complaint about faulty wardrobe

Sir,

I had purchased a wardrobe on 2 August, 20xx, vide cash memo No. 355, with teak wood finish and tan colour.

The wardrobe is not of acceptable quality and does not match in sample wardrobe that I was shown in the store. The doors of the wardrobe do not open and shut properly and the stain on the wardrobe is uneven, with one half darker than the other.

So I would like you to replace it with one of the same quality as the sample and arrange for return of the faulty wardrobe at your cost.

I would like to have this problem fixed quickly else I will lodge a formal complaint with consumer court.

Yours faithfully

Abhimanyu Sikri

Enclosed: Copy of the receipt.

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

8. Write an application to the Principal of your school requesting him to grant you leave for a week.

Ans :

2016

To,
The Principal
Sanskriti Senior Secondary School,
Jamui
March 6, 20XX

Subject : Application for leave

Respected Sir,

I beg to say that I have to leave for my home town in Allahabad for my cousin's marriage to be held on 10 March.

I have to reach there a few days earlier, so that I can manage everything properly and do the needful.

Therefore, I earnestly request you to grant me leave for a week.

Thanking you in anticipation.

Yours Obediently
Rohit Patel
Class 10th A

9. Write an application to the Librarian, requesting him to remit the fine for returning the books late.

Ans :

2010

To,
The Librarian
Adarsh Vidya Mandir,
Banka
November 15, 20XX

Subject : Application for Remission of fine on late submission of books

Respected Sir,

A fine of Rs. 50/- has been imposed on me for returning the library books after the fixed time. The delay has been caused by the circumstances beyond my control. I was on sick leave for 12 days. So I could not come to the library to return the books.

So, I request you to please remit the fine. I shall be thankful to you for this.

Thanking You.

Yours Obediently
Rohit Kathuria

10. Your music academy is planning to organise musical shows next month on the occasion of Janmashtmi. You are Minakshi/Pavan, the band leader of Sargam Music Academy, 55, Dwarka, Ahmedabad. You require some musical instruments for the smooth running of the events. Write a letter to the Store Manager, M/s. Sangeet Instruments, Daya Nagar, Ahmedabad placing an order for the specific instruments required by you.

Ans :

2019

Sargam Music Academy
55, Dwarka
Ahmedabad
15th August, 2019
The Store Manager
M/s. Sangeet Instruments
Daya Nagar
Ahmedabad

Subject : Order for musical instruments

Sir,

Our music academy is going to organise musical shows on the occasion of Janmashtmi next month. You are one of the biggest wholesale suppliers of handmade musical instruments in Ahmedabad and offer the most competitive prices and prompt services. I wish to place an order for some musical instruments for the smooth running of the events. The order is as follows—

Sr. No.	Instruments	Brand	Quantity
1.	Sitar	Roland	4
2.	Harmonium	Tanglewood	8
3.	Flute	Ibanez	3
4.	Congo	Novation	4
5.	Bongo	Yamaha	6
6.	Tabla	Squire	7

All the instruments should be bubble-wrapped properly. We expect 15% discount as admissible to all music academics. In case of any damage in transit it would be at your cost. Payment would be made by cheque once the order is received. It will be highly appreciated if you deliver the items within a week or two.

Thanking you

Yours faithfully
Minakshi



CHAPTER 8

ANALYTICAL PARAGRAPH

1. INTRODUCTION

An analytical paragraph is a form of descriptive writing which is written on the basis of a given chart, graph, data, outline, clues, table etc. It requires analysis and comparison of the given facts and drawing conclusion based on the given data. When writing an analytical paragraph, one should remember to describe the facts in the best possible manner and cover the information provided. The paragraph must use clear and crisp language along with providing complete details of the data provided in the question.

2. FEATURES OF AN ANALYTICAL PARAGRAPH

1. It describes the given chart, table, data, graph, cues etc.
2. It should be brief and comprehensive (include complete information) at the same time.
3. It should state facts that are provided by the chart.
4. It is necessary to make use of simple and accurate language.
5. It should mention figures and quantities appropriately.
6. It is appropriate to use the same tense throughout the analytical paragraph.
7. No personal observation or response should be provided.
8. It would be preferable to use the passive form of the verb.

3. TYPES OF ANALYTICAL PARAGRAPHS

1. **Problem and Solution Based** : A problem is presented and learners are expected to suggest some solution based on some logic. They are supposed to support their solution with arguments, reasons and/or data.
2. **Data Based** : Some data is presented in the form of a pie-chart, a bar graph, a line graph, a table or a combination of any two of these and learners are expected to analyse the data making comparisons and drawing conclusions and to summarise it in the form of a paragraph.
3. **Information Based** : Some information is presented as an input and students are required to process and understand that information and then summarise it in a paragraph. Sometimes, they may also be required to give their own opinions or draw their own conclusions, too.
4. **Process Description Based** : A flow chart, a diagram, a visual or an info-graphic is presented and students have to analyse the information it presents, usually a process showing the sequence or different stages of action in the making of something.
5. **Map Based** : Usually a set of two maps is presented as an input with significant differences in a piece of land, a landscape or a building plan showing some changes, additions, and alterations therein. Students are supposed to carefully analyse these changes and summarise them in the form of a paragraph.
6. **Behaviour, Function, Pattern or Cycle Based**: A flow chart, a diagram, a visual or an info-graphic is presented as in a process and students have to analyse and summarise the information it presents, usually the behaviour or pattern or structure of an organism or various traits of the character or profile of a professional or the life cycle of a species etc.
7. **Similarities and Differences Based** : A set of two visuals or diagrams or info-graphics is presented with one showing marked differences and/or similarities in comparison with the other. Students are required to notice

and mark those differences and similarities and then summarise them objectively in the form of a paragraph.

8. **Suggestion or Advice Based :** A situation is presented and students are asked to put forth their suggestions or advice on what the person(s) or organisation(s) involved in it should do. This type is similar to the problem and solution based type of analytical paragraphs.

4. FORMAT OF AN ANALYTICAL PARAGRAPH

An analytical paragraph shall be divided into three parts :

1. Introduction,
2. Body of the paragraph, and
3. Conclusion.

Introduction (explain in one or two lines the subject of the graph given) ----- ----- Body (explain in detail what the graph is about, use relevant figures, explain trends, make comparisons and contrasts, divide into sub paragraphs, if required) ----- ----- ----- ----- ----- Conclusion (conclude the paragraph giving the overall view or summary of the graph) ----- ----- -----

5. ESSENTIAL ELEMENTS OF AN ANALYTICAL PARAGRAPH

The Introduction

The introduction is the first paragraph that should describe in brief what the chart/map/report is about. It should be like an opening paragraph that introduces the reader to the context of the chart/report/map given. When writing the introductory paragraph, you need not go into the details. You

just need to mention what is clearly evident from the chart/graph/table/map given in the question. It is best to write the introduction in one or two lines.

The Body of the Paragraph

This part of the analytical paragraph should contain details of the graph/chart/table given in the question. It should contain all the important information. It is extremely important to choose the significant details that should be included in the paragraph.

The body can be broken into two or three sub-paragraphs depending on the information extracted from the graph/chart/table. Breaking the body into sub-paragraphs makes it easy for the reader to understand.

- a. **Organizing Information:** You should look for the large differences that are very prominent. You can mention the aspect which is the smallest or the largest in the data given. Any aspects that are similar should be mentioned next. You should further mention about the aspect that has remained unchanged or constant throughout.
- b. **Comparing Information:** If the chart mentions two different parties, for example, men and women, refer to both of them in the analytical paragraph. If there is any contrast or comparison that could be drawn, you must present it effectively. If the chart is about a particular time period or highlights trends of several years, mention each year in a concise manner. If any comparison or contrast can be done for two or more years, you should write about it too.
- c. **Mentioning Quantities:** When including numbers and figures, their accuracy must be ensured. There are a number of ways that can be used to describe quantities. For example, percentage, fraction, ratios, etc.
- d. **Connecting Sentences:** If different information or ideas are there, you should use connectors or linking phrases to link them logically. The sentences of the paragraph should be sequential and connected rationally.

The Conclusion

The last paragraph should summarise the main idea mentioned and the information in general. It should be concluding in nature and act as the closing statement. One should keep in mind that one must not include any personal opinions.

Ans :

(a) Date

15. The subject of Business Letter should be

- (a) As long as possible
- (b) Brief, Clear and Relevant
- (c) Stretched and Irrelevant
- (d) None of these

Ans :

(b) Brief, Clear and Relevant

16. Where is Receiver's address written a Business or Official letter?

- (a) On the top of the letter
- (b) Just above the date
- (c) Just below the date
- (d) On the bottom of the letter

Ans :

(c) Just below the date

17. What should be the tone of a writer while writing a Complaint Letter?

- (a) Arrogant
- (b) Humble
- (c) Ungrateful
- (d) Superstitious

Ans :

(b) Humble

18. How much space should be taken to write sender's address in a Complaint Letter?

- (a) 1-3 Lines
- (b) 4-6 lines
- (c) One Line
- (d) None of these

Ans :

(a) 1-3 Lines

19. What does a letter to editor highlight?

- (a) Societal issues
- (b) Personal problem
- (c) Grudges with family members
- (d) Professional conflicts

Ans :

(a) Societal issues

20. Which of the following is the correct receiver's address from the following

- (a) To, The Editor, The Hindustan Times
- (b) The Editor, Hindustan Times
- (c) The Editor, The Hindustan Times
- (d) None of these

Ans :

(c) The Editor, The Hindustan Times

21. What should be written if sender's address is not given in the question/heading of a letter to editor?

- (a) Any address you know
- (b) Address of the school
- (c) XYZ, Examination Hall
- (d) None of these

Ans :

(c) XYZ, Examination Hall

22. Which of the following is the correct subject in a letter to editor?

- (a) Nuisance Created by Stray Animals
- (b) Nuisance Created by Street kids
- (c) Nuisance created by Family Members
- (d) None of these

Ans :

(a) Nuisance Created by Stray Animals

23. _____ letters are sent to people whom we don't know on a personal level.

- (a) Formal
- (b) Reference
- (c) Chain
- (d) Informal

Ans :

(a) Formal

24. Where should the name of the firm be mentioned?

- (a) Above the address of writer
- (b) On the last page of letter
- (c) Right of the page
- (d) Below the date

Ans :

(d) Below the date

25. Which of these is used as a form of greeting for business people?

- (a) Dear Mr. Patel
- (b) Dear Sir
- (c) Dear Father
- (d) Dear Nitin

Ans :

(b) Dear Sir

26. Which of the following statements is incorrect?

- (a) A letter must be properly punctuated.
- (b) A letter must be complete in all respects.
- (c) A letter must be written in legible handwriting.
- (d) A letter must be written in one single paragraph.

Ans :

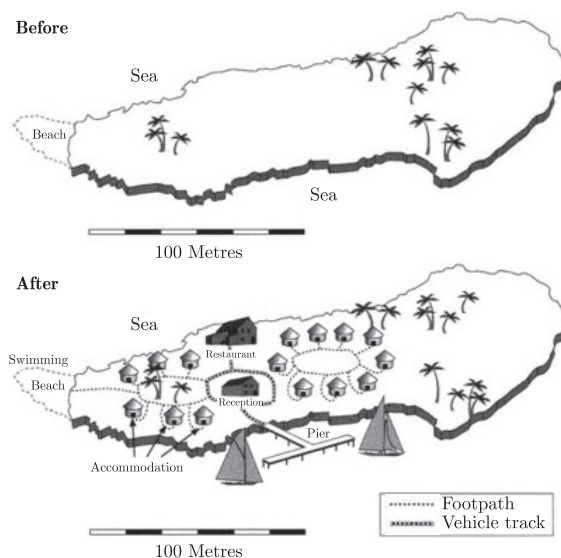
(d) A letter must be written in one single paragraph.

Ans :

Promotion of Tourism

There is no doubt that India is emerging as a tourists' destination both at national and international levels. For example, tourists from other countries were 8563 in the year 2020. But this number went upto 11478 in the year 2021. However, domestic tourists fell by 8219 in these years. This means we have to take steps to increase the numbers of both the types of the tourists. India's cultural heritage and unity in diversity are like magnets for the tourists. However, we must take steps to attract the tourists. For example, we must remove problems which hinder the flow of tourists. That's why, there are plans like developing a wildlife park. One important place of tourist interest should be equipped with light, sound and music system. Then there is a plan to develop a big amusement park. A Convention Centre and a multiplex are also going to be added. Besides these, a few hotels are also coming up. The tourist agencies are being connected via satellite telephony so that tourists do not face any problems. All the places of tourist interest are connected by chartered buses. It is hoped that by these steps, tourist inflow to the country will increase greatly.

3. The two maps below show an island, before and after the construction of some tourist facilities. Write an analytical paragraph in 100-120 words by selecting and reporting the main features, and making comparisons where relevant.



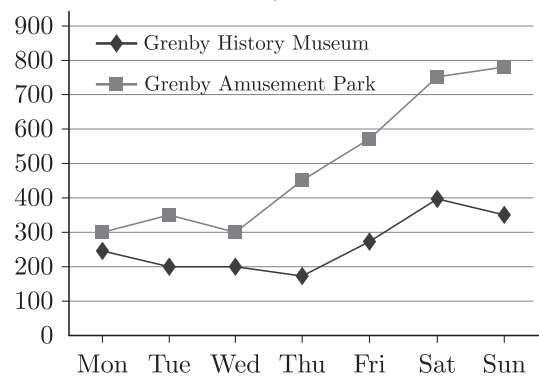
Ans :

Transformation of an Island

Both maps display an island, before and after it was developed for tourism. The island is approximately 250 metres long, has palm trees dotted around it, is surrounded by ocean and has a beach to the west. Over the period, the island was completely transformed with the addition of a hotel and a pier; however, the eastern part of the island appears to have been left undeveloped. The most noticeable additions are the hotel rooms. 6 buildings, surrounding some trees, have been built in the west of the island and 9 buildings have been constructed in the centre of the island. Between the two accommodation areas, a reception building and a restaurant have been developed. A pier has also been built on the south coast of the island, allowing yachts access to the resort. Apart from the trees, the beach remains the only natural feature to remain relatively untouched; however, it does appear that it is now used for swimming.

FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP

The graph below shows the number of visitors to two different tourist attractions in the city of Grenby during one particular week. Write an analytical paragraph in 100-120 words by selecting and reporting the main features, and making comparisons where relevant.

Daily Visitors

Ans :

Visitors to Two Different Tourist Attractions in the City of Grenby

The line graph shows how many people visited the Grenby History Museum and the Grenby Amusement Park each day for a week. For both places, the number of visitors was higher on the weekend than it was during the week. The number of visitors to the Grenby History Museum was low early in the week but picked up on the weekend. On Monday, there were around 250 visitors.

progression. At the beginning, a butterfly egg develops for two to three weeks before hatching. After that, the larva emerges from the egg and enters its growth phase, with its size continuing to increase throughout the time period. Three to six weeks later, it is fully grown as a larva and ready for pupation. The entire pupation process usually takes two weeks, during which the entire body is encased inside the pupa. After its body structure has completely transformed, it emerges as a butterfly and leaves the pupa. Finally, the female butterfly searches for a mate to reproduce and restarts the growth cycle when it produces eggs of its own.

4. Study the table given below which shows the data on the hobbies of students during summer vacations. Write an analytical paragraph in about 120 words analyzing what hobbies do boys and girls choose in their summer vacations :

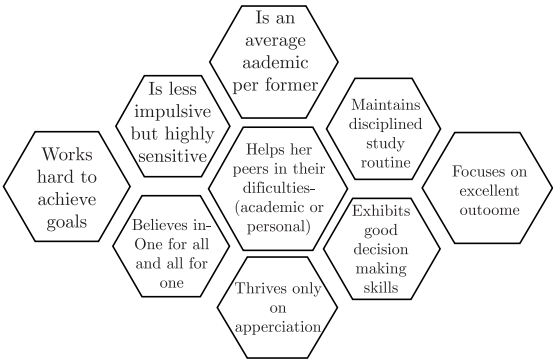
Hobbies	Boys	Girls
Singing	7%	25%
Photography	35%	5%
Playing	30%	16%
Dancing	13%	40%
Yoga	19%	15%

Ans : 2024

Hobbies of Students During Summer Vacations

The given table shows the preferences on the hobbies of the students during summer vacations. The table indicates that the highest number of girls are interested in dancing, i.e. 40% whereas the percentage of boys preferring dancing as a hobby is only 13%. We can clearly see that a smaller number of boys opt for singing i.e. 7%, whereas one-fourth of the girls are interested in singing. The data depicts a significant hike in photography as 35% of the boys prefers it against 5% of the girls. The data shows that the preference of students in Yoga is fairly similar, with 19% percent in boys and 15% in girls. Playing got a slight jump of interest in boys over girls which is 30% and 16%, respectively. If we observe the table carefully, we can see that the preference of boys to Photography is much more as compared to girls. In a nutshell, we can conclude that the interest of the boys is least in singing as compared to the girls while maximum percentage of the girls choose dancing over boys as their hobby during summer vacations.

5. Tsering, of class X, is contesting for the post of the Junior School Captain, in the upcoming student council elections. Given below is her character traits’ graphic, shared in the public domain, by the school counsellor, for the awareness of student voters, at school.



All Tsering’s peers have been asked to write a paragraph in about 120 words, analysing these traits, to either support or oppose her candidature. As one of her peers, write this analytical paragraph, by selecting some of the traits that support your analysis.

You may begin like this:
As a responsible student voter, I believe Tsering possesses/does not possess the necessary traits to be a School Captain.
You may end like this :
For these reasons, I believe she has/does not have the potential to be a good School Captain and I support/oppose her candidature.

Ans : 2023

Supporting Tsering’s Candidature

As a responsible student voter, I believe Tsering possesses the necessary traits to be an excellent School Captain. Her disciplined study routine and hard work ethic indicate her ability to prioritize and manage her time effectively. Tsering is less impulsive but sensitive and focuses on the excellent outcome of tasks assigned to her demonstrating good decision-making skills. Additionally, her willingness to help peers in academic and personal difficulties highlights her empathetic and caring nature. Furthermore, Tsering believes in the “One for all and all for one” policy, which is pivotal in fostering a sense of community and promoting inclusivity in the school.

Opposing Tsering’s Candidature

As a responsible student voter, I have reservations about Tsering’s candidature for the School Captain’s position. While she maintains a disciplined study routine, her average academic performance suggests a lack of academic

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

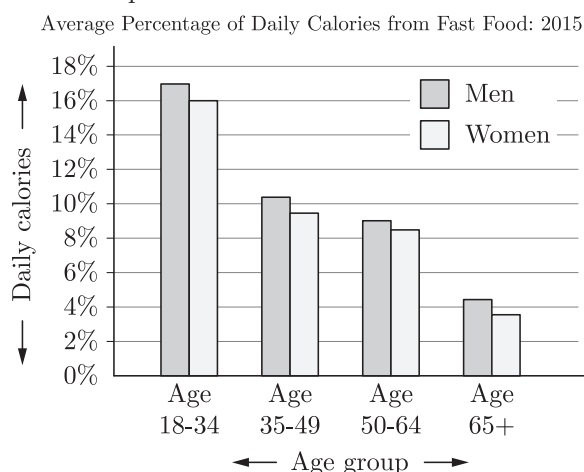
— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

glitter of cinema have a purpose. It is to cater to the baser elements. But in real life this never is the approach and should never be. In fact, our moral and aesthetic values must get an upper hand over everything. It is the moral duty of the fashion designers to take care of our values while designing fashions. We should not serve the baser instincts through fashions. Youth have a duty not to wear any dress which makes nonsense of everything sensible.

7. The graph below shows fast food consumption among men and women in 2015. Write an analytical paragraph in 100-120 words by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.



Ans :

Average Percentage of Daily Calories from Fast Food : 2015

The bar graph shows how much fast food men and women of different age groups consumed every day in 2015. In both groups, the percentage of daily calories from fast food decreased as age increased. According to the graph, men consumed less fast food as they got older. The 18-34 age group had the highest rate, getting around 17% of daily calories from fast food. There was a significant drop, to just over 10%, between this group and the next, age 35-49. Then, there was a smaller drop, to around 9%, in the 50-64 age group. The oldest age group, age 65 and over, had a much lower consumption rate, with just over 4% of daily calories coming from fast food. Among women, there was similar decrease in fast food consumption with age increase. Women age 18-34 got 16% of their daily calories from fast food. Like men, there was a significant drop between this and the next age group, to a little under 10% and then a smaller drop to the next age group.

The oldest age group consumed far less, under 4%, than the other age groups. There was a similar decrease in fast food consumption with age increase for both men and women, although women tended to consume slightly less than men across all age groups.

8. You are the Head Boy/Head Girl of your school. You decided to make the school population aware of the advantages of tree plantation and tell them how trees can serve as better air-conditioners. Write an analytical paragraph in 100-120 words. Take help of the cues given below.

Cues :

Trees keep environment cool by

- taking heat of earth and air
- absorbing carbon-dioxide that helps in controlling temperature rise
- bringing rains
- checking direct sunlight
- providing shade

Ans :

Advantages of Tree Plantation

Trees are really very important for us all. Their advantages are innumerable. For example, they take the heat of the earth and the air to air-condition the environment. Indeed, they have numerous advantages. Precisely speaking, they absorb the dangerous carbon-dioxide from the atmosphere. They help in controlling the temperature rise. Then they bring rains which is 'life' for us all. They take the heat off the earth as well as the atmosphere. They take off the heat of the sunlight and provide us shade. They maintain the ecological balance of the earth and provide us with life-giving oxygen. Seeing their enormous benefits we should plant as many trees as possible. The Chipko Movement and Van Mahotsava Movement are there which highlight the benefits of the trees. We say that our life is simply possible because of the trees. It is sad that we have destroyed much of the flora and fauna for meeting our existential needs. But we must replenish the depleting forests by planting more and more trees at every possible inch of the land. Our life depends on trees. We should educate the people about the benefits of the trees. This way we can cleanse our environment from the environmental pollution. We must take a pledge to plant more and more trees to make the earth a safe place for our lives.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

This number dropped slightly on Tuesday and Wednesday, and dipped again on Thursday, to just below 200 visitors. The number rose on Friday, then soared to 400 on Saturday, the busiest day of the week, and then fell slightly on Sunday. The Grenby Amusement Park also received fewer visitors during the week than on the weekend. On Monday there were 300 visitors. This number rose slightly on Tuesday and then fell back to 300 on Wednesday. The number climbed for the rest of the week until it reached over 700 on both Saturday and Sunday. Both places were busier on the weekend than during the week, although the amusement park received more visitors everyday than the museum did.

5. Given below is a newspaper report on the state of cancer prevailing in India. You have been asked to write an analytical paragraph on 'Cancer - a silent killer' Taking information from the clipping given below together with your own ideas, write this paragraph in 100-120 words.

"In India, cities are more cancer-prone than rural areas. In the early 1990's, we expected one out of 10-15 urban Indians to get cancer in their life-time, that is every second or third family would have to face this disease. This is partly due to high levels of benzene in the air and also that the metros are exposed to high levels of pesticides in their foods. In order to check the steady growth of cancer in the country, the Government shall have to give priority to preventive action. At the same time measures to undertake improvement in facilities for the treatment of cancer shall have to be adopted."

Ans :

State of Cancer Prevailing in India

It is a matter of concern that our urban population has become cancer-prone more than the rural population. It is very sad that every tenth person is likely to have cancer. It is due to high level of benzene in the air. It is also due to the high levels of pesticides in the foods. Also highly radio-active waves of the cell-phones etc., have also contributed to this grave danger to human population. To check this menace of cancer, the Government shall have to give top-most priority to preventive actions. More facilities like Diagnostic Centres and Cancer Hospitals need to be created for the treatment of cancer patients. There is a dire need to contain this deadly disease by taking some urgent steps. First of all, we must ban the wide use of the pesticides. Excessive use of pesticides is really harmful for human health. In the developed countries, much emphasis is being laid on organic

manure instead of the fertilizer. So we have to introduce organic manure. Then crop pattern needs to be changed. Besides this, a kind of public awareness programme will have to be undertaken. Public is to be awakened towards the growth of cancer and its easy detection. This would surely help in the containing of this disease at its initial stages. If cancer is detected and treated at the early stages, it can't be fatal.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

The cartoon below makes fun of the kind of fashions followed by today's youth. Using ideas from this cartoon together with your own ideas, write an analytical paragraph in 100-120 words on changing fashions.



Ans :

Fashions Followed by Today's Youth

In today's fast moving modern world fashions are changing very fast. However, the fashions show a downward trend in moral values. Looking at them one can safely say that fashions reveal lack of consideration in human thinking. For example, women dresses are very scanty. They leave more parts of the body naked. The young people like to wear such kind of clothes. These make them look like wild animals. Most of them wear a cloth-band round their foreheads and rings in their ear lobes. Equally young girls like to wear very tight dress. This tends to reveal their body frames and contours. This makes them look vulgar and repulsive. Fashions should make one look aesthetically appealing. Clothes like good manners should be appealing and beautiful. But it is not so with our youth. Modern youth copy blindly their favourite heroes and heroines in the film industry. The clothes worn by those in the

IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

1. Read the following excerpt from a newspaper on the problem of car parking and its impact.

A survey conducted on the residents showed that car parking in colonies has risen due to an increase in the number of cars per family. This has resulted in ugly incidents of road rage. Most of the families revealed that they are facing multiple issues due to this situation. There is no place for visitors to park and residents themselves park their cars haphazardly. In addition there is an increase in commercial vehicles parked outside colony gates, thus blocking exits.

Write a paragraph in about 120 words to analyze the news clipping.

Ans : 2024

Growing Parking Problems in Residential Colonies

The survey findings highlighted a concerning trend regarding car parking in residential areas, signaling a significant increase in the number of cars per family, which in turn has led to a surge in parking-related issues. The rise in car ownership has not only congested the streets but also escalated instances of road rage, indicating a direct correlation between the two. Residents are grappling with numerous challenges stemming from this predicament, with inadequate parking space for visitors exacerbating the situation. Moreover, the haphazard parking practices adopted by residents themselves further compound the problem. The influx of commercial vehicles parked near colony gates further aggravates the issue by obstructing exits. This complex web of problems demands immediate attention and strategic solutions to alleviate the strain on residential parking infrastructure and mitigate associated risks such as road rage and safety concerns.

2. The following data shows global literacy rates of different age groups and gender in a particular year. Write an. analytical paragraph describing and analyzing the given data.

Global literacy rate %	People of different age-groups			
	12 - 15 years	15 - 24 years	25 - 64 years	65 years and older
Men	88	90	88	80
Women	80	88	79	75

Ans : 2024

Global Literacy Trends Across Age Groups and Gender

The provided data illustrates global literacy rates across different age groups and genders in a specific year. Overall, there is a positive trend in literacy rates across all age groups and genders, with higher rates observed among younger age groups compared to older ones. Notably, among men, the highest literacy rates are recorded in the 15-24 age group, with 90%, followed closely by the 12-15 age group at 88%. Similarly, women also exhibit the highest literacy rate in the 15-24 age group, matching men at 88%. However, there's a slight dip in literacy rates among older age groups for both men and women, with the lowest rates observed among individuals aged 65 years and older. Despite this, the data suggests an overall improvement in literacy rates globally, particularly among younger age groups, reflecting advancements in education and literacy initiatives worldwide. This underscores the importance of continued efforts to promote literacy across all age groups to ensure equitable access to education and knowledge dissemination.

3. The visual given shows the life cycle of a butterfly. Study the information carefully and then summarise it in the form of an analytical paragraph. Make comparisons and draw conclusions wherever applicable.

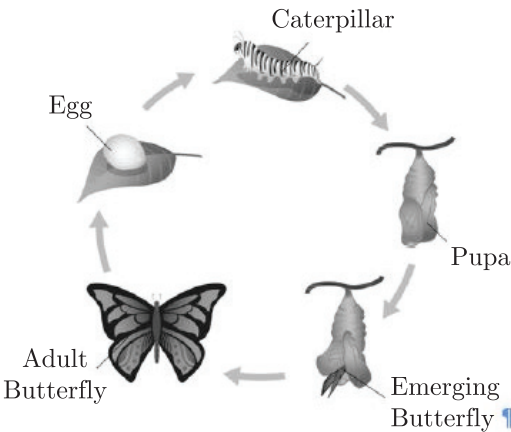


Figure : Life Cycle of Butterfly

Ans : 2024

Life Cycle of Butterfly

The progress diagram illustrates the stages a butterfly undergoes during its lifespan. Overall, there are a total of five phases in the cycle, starting from the egg to the adult phase, and it takes around seven to eleven weeks for the entire

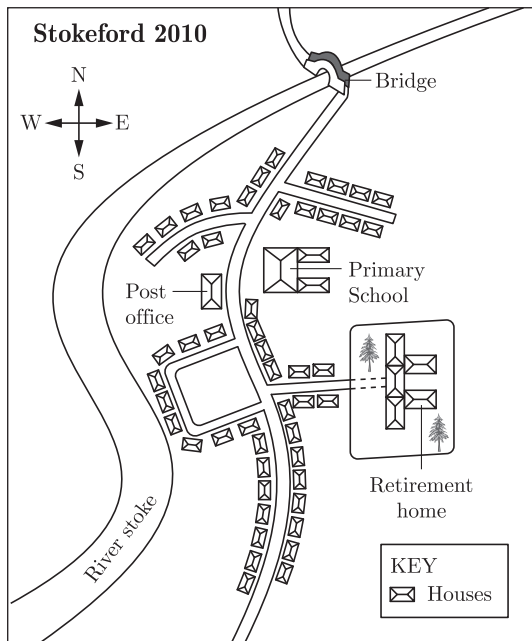


Figure : (b)

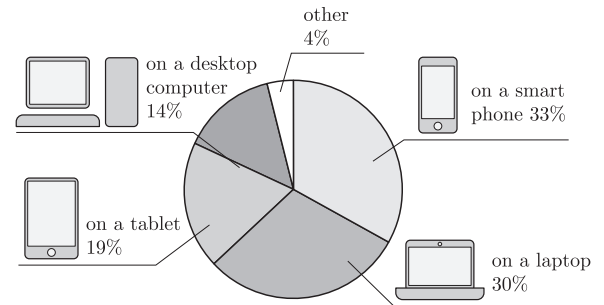
Ans :

2019

Transformation of Village of Stokeford

The two maps illustrate how the village of Stokeford, situated on the east bank of the River Stoke, changed over an 80 year period from 1930 to 2010. There was considerable development of the settlement over these years and it was gradually transformed from a small rural village into a largely residential area. The most notable change is the presence of housing in 2010 on the areas that were farmland back in 1930. New roads were constructed on this land and many residential properties built. In response to the considerable increase in population, the primary school was extended to around double the size of the previous building. Whilst the post office remained as a village amenity, the two shops that can be seen to the north-west of the school in 1930, no longer existed by 2010, having been replaced by houses. There also used to be an extensive property standing in its own large gardens situated to the south-east of the school. At some time between 1930 and 2010, this was extended and converted into a retirement home. This was another significant transformation for the village.

9. The pie chart below illustrates how internet users aged 16+ prefer to access the internet at home and in other places. Summarize the information in the pie chart by selecting and reporting the main features. Write in 100-120 words.



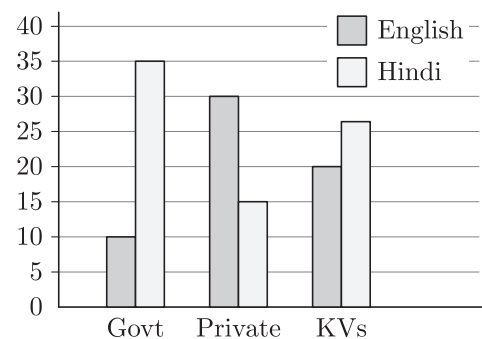
Ans :

2018

Devices for Accessing the Internet

The graph shows the results of a survey in which people aged 16 and over were asked about their preferred devices for accessing the internet. The question referred to going online at home and in other places. Participants mentioned four main devices in their answers : a smart-phone, a laptop, a tablet and a desktop computer. From the pie chart it is clear that the majority of participants prefer to use smart-phones and laptops, with just three per cent difference between the two. Nearly a third of participants prefer to go online with a smart-phone. Thirty per cent like to use a laptop. A desktop computer accounts for fourteen per cent of users' preferred devices. Only a small minority prefer a device other than these main four. In conclusion, since mobile and portable devices are the most popular choices, it is clear that many participants are accessing the internet outside their homes. The desktop computer is the least popular of the four main devices. In future, we can probably expect to see more and more people accessing the internet with smart-phones as their preferred choice.

10. Study the graph given below. The graph depicts the number of students of class tenth speaking English and Hindi in three different types of schools in New Delhi. Based on the details given in the bar graph given below, write an analytical paragraph in 100-120 words.



discipline. Additionally, her quest for appreciation may cause her to prioritize recognition over the well-being of the school community. Moreover, Tsering's sensitivity, while admirable, may hinder her ability to make tough decisions and exercise effective leadership skills. Finally, Tsering's focus on the excellent outcome of tasks assigned to her may cause her to overlook the process and teamwork required to achieve those outcomes which are crucial for the school's smooth functioning. For these reasons, I believe she does not have the potential to be a good School Captain and I oppose her candidature.

6. Read the following excerpt from an article that appeared in the magazine section of a local daily: "The ban on single-use plastic is impractical. The purpose of articles like bags and packaging is ultimately to make human life easier. Plastic articles do this well, so they shouldn't be banned." Write a paragraph in 100-120 words to analyse the given argument. You could think about what alternative explanations might weaken the given conclusion and include rationale/evidence that would strengthen/counter the given argument.

Ans :

2021

Ban on Single-use Plastic

The argument in support of plastic bag shows a shallow thinking and short sightedness of one's thought process. For the sake of making our lives convenient, we have put environment at stake. It is important to realize that convenience, at times, in the long run can make life extremely difficult. Banning single-use plastic is necessary to prevent greater problems, particularly pertaining to environment. Single-use plastic over time is known to cause pollution, affect life on land as well as in water and disconcert ecosystems, which in turn can make survival of humans very difficult. Thus, if one weighs the options of convenience and survival, it becomes clear that convenience is a short term joy, while survival is a long-term goal.

7. Manisha is to write an analytical paragraph on 'Smoking is a silent killer of life'. Using your own ideas and the outline given below, write this paragraph on her behalf in 100-120 words.
- Smoking is actually a silent killer _____
 nicotine is a poison _____ dangerous to various
 vital organs _____ smoking a cigarette shortens
 _____ causes a deadly disease _____ guide
 our smoking youth _____ ensure good health
 to all Indians.

Ans :

2019, 2014

Smoking is a Silent Killer of Life

Smoking is actually a silent killer of life. It is also a drain on the limited income of yours. A smoker may say that he feels relieved of worries when he smokes. But it is his own whim. Smoking does more harm. It doesn't give any sort of freedom from anxiety. The nicotine is a poison and is dangerous to various vital organs like heart, kidney, liver and lungs. It is actually a slow poison and kills a smoker slowly. They say that smoking a cigarette shortens one's life by four minutes. So smoking means shortening one's life knowingly and inviting death due to cancer which is very merciless. Smoking also affects the non-smokers. So a person who smokes is affecting the health of the other persons who are near him. Smoking causes a deadly disease like cancer. There is a statutory warning on the cigarette packets that smoking is injurious to health. But it is of no importance as the smokers feel a bit terrified to read this. The next moment they forget it and smoke. The government has taken a right decision now in banning smoking at public places. We all can guide our smoking youth not to smoke but give it up at once. In taking care of our health we shall be rendering a greater help to the national cause to ensure good health to all Indians.

8. The maps below show the village of Stokeford in 1930 and 2010. Write an analytical paragraph in 100-120 words by selecting and reporting the main features, and making comparisons where relevant.

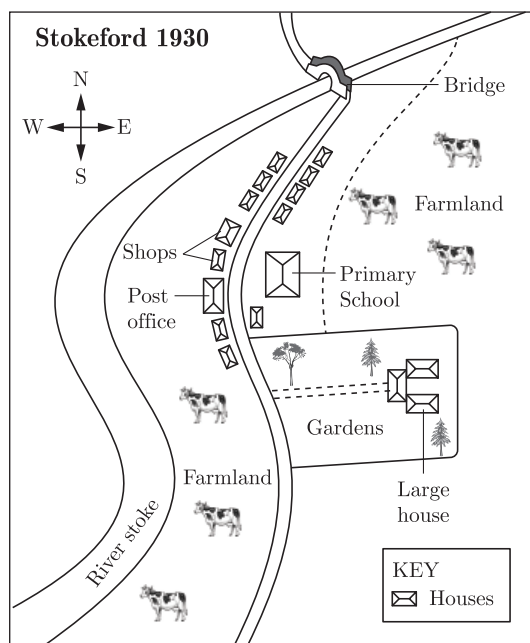
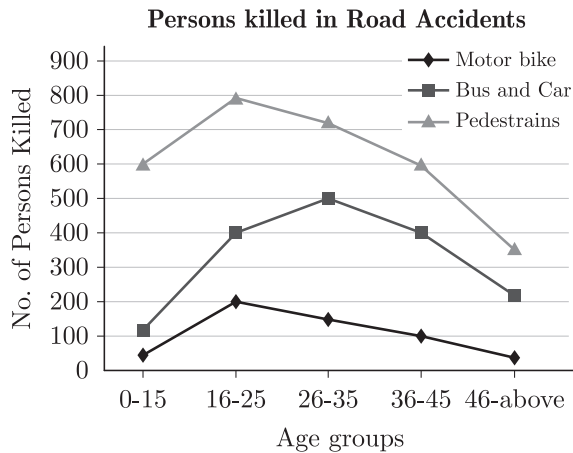


Figure : (a)

13. A line graph is given below. The graph shows the number of persons of different age groups killed in accidents. Analyse the given data in an analytical paragraph of 100-120 words.



Ans :

2016

Persons of Different Age Groups Killed in Accidents

The line graph illustrates the number of persons of different age groups killed in accidents. It is evident from the graph that the maximum number of people who are killed in road accidents are pedestrians. Among pedestrians, too, people of 16–25 age group record the highest number of accident deaths that is 800. Coincidentally, this age group faces the maximum motor bikers' deaths in road accidents which is one-fourth of pedestrians' deaths. Whereas, people who die due to bus or car accidents belong to the 26–35 age group. But, after the age of 35 people get less caught in road accidents. It can be concluded that 16–35 years of generation falls victim to road accidents more than the people who have crossed 35 years. However, pedestrians are at the highest risk of accidents followed by bus and car riders.

NO NEED TO PURCHASE SAMPLE PAPERS

Download India's Best 30 Sample Papers
As per New 50 % Case Study Pattern

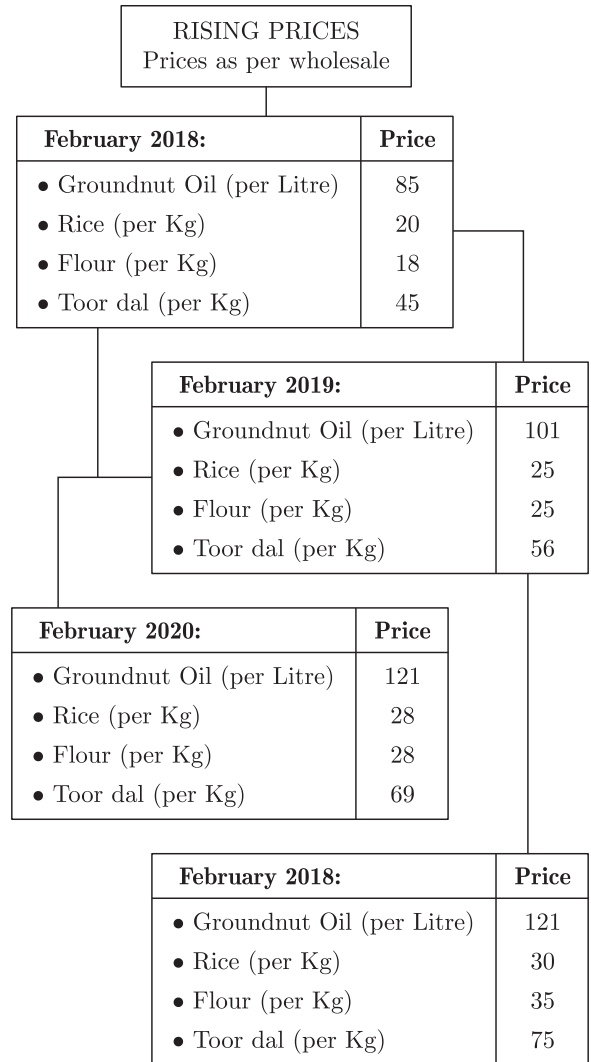
Search by **NODIA** on
Play Store to Download App

Every school use these
sample papers as Preboard
papers because school
has been provided word file of papers.

SCAN QR CODE



14. Study the concept chart from the survey done by the COSMOS on 'Rising Prices'.



Write a paragraph in not more than 120 words, analysing the given information.

Ans :

2017

Rising Prices

Life of a poor man is never easy but the past few years have been even more difficult. The prices of staple food items have been rising steeply. The table shows a comparative study of prices over three years. The rising prices mean that most of the food is beyond the common man's reach. Since the table shows wholesale prices, their market rate must be more than double. When basic necessities cost so much, how is the common man supposed to feed his family? When parents cannot feed their children, they are malnourished and their growth is adversely affected. In a country where rice, dal and chapati are staple foods, the skyrocketing prices mean that the poor cannot afford even one square meal. There needs to be a system where the prices are regulated and those who sell them at inflated prices should be dealt with severity.

Ans :

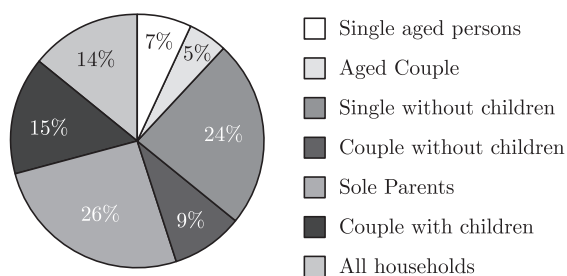
2018

Students' Distribution on the Basis of the Language Spoken

The graph depicts the number of students of class tenth speaking English and Hindi in three different types of schools in New Delhi. The graph clearly illustrates that the number of students speaking Hindi in government schools is almost 3.5 times greater than the number of students who speak English. In contrast, two-third of the total students in private schools prefer to speak in English. In KVs there is a slight difference between the choice of two languages, with Hindi being spoken by 55% of students. On comparing the three types of given schools, government schools have the highest number of Hindi speakers. Private schools are at the highest position among English speakers. In a nutshell, Private school students prefer to speak English whereas government school students choose Hindi over English to communicate. Students are almost evenly distributed in KVs on the basis of the language spoken.

11. The pie chart shows the proportion of people from different households living in poverty in the UK in 2002. Write an analytical paragraph to describe the information in 100-120 words.

Proportion of people from each household type living in poverty



Ans :

2018

Proportion of People from Different Households Living in Poverty

The given pie chart illustrates seven different categories of households living in poverty in the UK in 2002. It is clearly evident from the pie chart that 26% of the total poverty-stricken households are those of sole parents. Single people without children account for the second highest proportion with 24%. In contrast to couples without children that accounts for just 9%, couples with children account for 15% of the poor households. Single aged persons and aged couples proportion for 12%.

together for poor households. Overall, 14% of all households in the UK were living under poverty. The younger generation had a greater poor percentage than their aged counterparts. Couples without children had better economic conditions than those with children.

NO NEED TO PURCHASE SAMPLE PAPERS
Download India's Best 20 Sample Papers
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP
Every School conduct Pre-Board
From These Sample Papers

12. The graph given shows estimated sales of gold in Dubai in 2002. Write an analytical paragraph describing the line graph in 100-120 words.



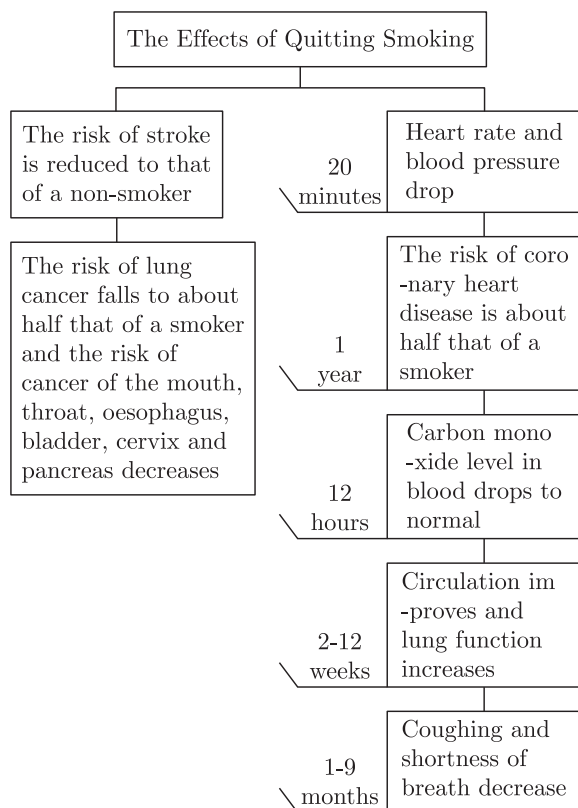
Ans :

2017

Estimated Sales of Gold in Dubai in 2002

The line graph depicts the estimated sales of gold in Dubai for a period of twelve months in 2002 in millions of Dirhams. In January 2002, the sales stood at 200 million Dirhams. It steadily increased through the next month and peaked to 350 million Dirhams in the third month of the year. However, the gold sales started to plummet over the next three months and hit 110 million Dirhams in the month of July. Unexpectedly, the sales doubled in August before coming down to the same level as in July for the month of September. For the next two months of the year, the gold sales levelled off to 180 million Dirhams and then slightly increased in December. Overall, the estimated gold sales fluctuated in 2002. The sales were the highest in the month of March and lowest in the months of July and September. The sales at the end of the year were almost the same as they were in the beginning of the year. Here we conclude the topic of Analytical paragraphs. As it is a new topic added to the syllabus of Class 10, students need to prepare it well.

9. Study the concept chart from a recent study by WHO that has described some positive effects of quitting smoking.



Write a paragraph in not more than 120 words, analysing the given information.

Ans :

Positive Effects of Quitting Smoking

Smoking is the silent killer that affects a large number of people around the world. The negative effects of tobacco smoke are well known, but the good news is that the positive effects of kicking the habit can't be missed. A smoker can leave the habit forever and can see the amazing results to live a healthier and happier life. As part of a report released by the World Health Organization for World No Tobacco Day, the potentially devastating effects of smoking can be successfully reversed. After just 20 minutes, the first health improvements begin with a drop in heart rate and blood pressure. Within 12 hours carbon monoxide levels drop to normal and after a few weeks lung function increases and circulation improves. Within 1-9 months the person experiences decreased coughing and shortness of breath. Even the elevated risk of stroke or coronary heart disease is gone within 15 years. Cancer of lungs along with that of mouth, throat, oesophagus, bladder, cervix and pancreas also becomes a much less significant threat after about ten years. So,

quitting smoking is the best decision a smoker can take to improve the quality of his life.

10. You are Meghna. Look at the picture given below. It depicts the massive jam of vehicles reflection the chaotic state of traffic in metropolitan cities. Taking clues from the picture and using your own ideas, write an analytical paragraph in 100-120 words depicting the existing state of traffic on roads and suggesting ways and means to improve the conditions.



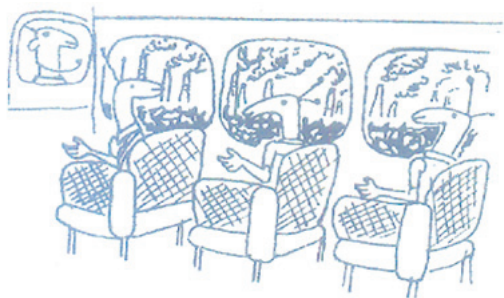
Ans :

Chaos on Roads in Metropolitan Cities

It is seen that in the last decade India has seen a rapid growth in the automobile industry. Every year we see new cars and other vehicles. This also shows the economic prosperity of the people, especially the middle class. But this has given birth to many problems. There is now a virtual disorder on roads in metropolitan cities. It seems people have no road sense. They drive their vehicles the way they like. They forget that the roads are for other road-users also. Secondly, they seem that they are in a great hurry. Thirdly, there is always an increased pressure of vehicles on city roads almost every time. During peak hours it is a hell. Roads are the life-lines of any city. But their encroachments lead to the creation of many problems. Those on wheels never obey the traffic rules. They feel that the roads' are meant only for them. The apathy of the transport or police authorities is also responsible for this disorder on roads. Next, the vehicles do not keep to their lanes. Road markings are not there, nor are the policemen. Whatever may be the case, there is virtual hell on these roads. When the road-users do not observe rules, they cause enormous delays to others also. This leads to road rage. That's why, there are road fights or quarrels among the drivers. The authorities should do something to create order among the road users without any delay.



15. Nikhil sees the following cartoon on the high level of pollution on earth. He has to write an analytical paragraph on the topic for the school magazine. Write this paragraph for him in 100-120 words. Using this information and your own ideas.



‘This is your Captain speaking. We’re about to land on earth. Kindly put on your oxygen mask!’

Ans :

2013

Pollution on Earth

Among all modern problems facing the world today, the problem of environmental pollution is the most glaring. It will not be long when we will have to wear oxygen masks if this pollution increases at the present level. This cartoon beautifully suggests this. There are many reasons for this pollution. We have cut the forests to meet the demands of ever increasing population and setting up various industries. Burning of petrol and the smoke emitted by the factories pollute the air. We breathe in carbon monoxide and nitrogen oxides. The effluents are let off in rivers by the factories. They cause water pollution. Pressure horns, loud speakers, ‘music’ from music parlours add to the sound pollution. All this has made human life a real nightmare. Human health is in grave danger. Respiratory diseases like bronchitis, asthma are on the increase. The metropolitan cities have become unsafe for habitation. Children are the most sufferers. It is the need of the hour that something should be done to contain the increasing environmental pollution. It can be checked by planting more trees and implementing various laws to check it. If something is not done soon, the damage to our biosphere will be difficult to repair. It is high time that this problem is solved at once.

NODIA



2. Counter Clerk : Counter Clerks complete selling duties for a business. Typical work duties of a Counter Clerk are greeting customers, helping them to locate desired products, promoting and selling products, offering required information, demonstrating product use, closing sales, issuing receipts, and collecting payments.
3. Appropriate : suitable or right for a particular situation, person, use, etc.
4. Acknowledgment : acceptance of the truth or existence of something.
recognition of the importance or quality of something.
5. Counterfoil : the part of a cheque, receipt, ticket, or other document that is torn off and kept as a record by the person issuing it
6. Record : a thing constituting a piece of evidence about the past, especially an account kept in writing or some other permanent form.
the sum of the past achievements or performance of a person, organization, or thing.

NO NEED TO PURCHASE SAMPLE PAPERS

Download India's Best 30 Sample Papers
As per New 50 % Case Study Pattern

Search by **NODIA** on
Play Store to Download App

Every school use these
sample papers as Preboard
papers because school
has been provided word file of papers.

SCAN QR CODE

the clues that follow the form.

M.O.-8 भारतीय डाक		DEPARTMENT OF POSTS, INDIA MONEY ORDER		50 Paise
		INDIA POST PAY RUPEES		
To		Rs 		
PIN				
Date		Sender's Signature		
M.O. NO.		Date		
		Rupees		
		Rs		
Combined Oblong Stamp		Assistant Postmaster		
Round M.O. Stamp		Received Rupees		
		Signature of Payee		
Oblong Stamp		Signature of witness/ identifier		
		Signature of paying official		
M.O. ACKNOWLEDGEMENT				
M.O. NO.		Date		
Sender's Name & Address				
423				
PIN				
Date Stamp		Received Rupees		
		on		
		Signature of Payee		
(Space for Communication)				

2. Fill out the Money Order form given below using

- Think about who you will send the money to, and how much. You might want to send money for a magazine subscription, or to a relative or a friend.
- Or you may fill out the form with yourself as sender and your partner as receiver. Use a part of your pocket money, and submit the form at the nearest post office to see how it's done. See how your partner enjoys getting money by post!
- Notice that the form has three parts — the Money Order form, the part for official use and the Acknowledgment. What would you write in the 'Space for Communication'? Now complete the following statements.

4. WORD MEANINGS

1. Crest - top of a hill, top
2. Amiable - friendly and pleasant
3. Contentment - satisfaction
4. Exclaimed - cry out suddenly in surprise, strong emotion, or pain.
5. Regarded - consider or think of in a specified way
6. Blow - hard stroke with fist
7. Boss - person in authority
8. Bunch - gang or group
9. Career - a profession
10. Caused - made
11. Charity - benefaction
12. Confidence - faith
13. Conscience - an inner sense of right and wrong
14. Continent - remark
15. Correspondence - communication by exchanging letters with someone
16. Crook - rogue
17. Daybreak - the time in the morning when daylight first appears
18. Deny - refuse
19. Dotted - full of
20. Downpour - heavy rain
21. Draped - adorn, cover, or wrap
22. Effort - attempt
23. Entire - complete
24. Exposing - make (something) visible by uncovering it.; reveal
25. Expression - aspect of face
26. Goodwill - friendly, helpful, or cooperative feelings or attitude
27. Hailstones - a pellet of hail
28. Harvest - season's yield of crop
29. Instruct - teach / inform
30. Intimately - closely
31. Lick - pass the tongue over
32. Obligated - grateful
33. Ox of a man - hardworking
34. Perform - do
35. Predict - say in advance
36. Regarded - looked closely
37. Resemble - have a similar appearance
38. Resolution - a firm decision to do or not to do something.
39. Shake - weaken
40. Slightest - very little

41. Solitary - a lonely
42. Stuck - remained determined
43. Throughout - all through
44. Upset - worried
45. Wrinkling - have wrinkles

5. MESSAGE

The story conveys the message that Faith has the power to give us what we want, to fulfil our needs. However, one must realise that humanity still prevails.

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Activity

1. One of the cheapest ways to send money to someone is through the post office. Have you ever sent or received money in this way? Here's what you have to do. (As you read the instructions, discuss with your teacher in class the meanings of these words: counter, counter clerk, appropriate, acknowledgment, counterfoil, record. Consult a dictionary if necessary. Are there words corresponding to these English words in your languages?)

Inside the post office, go to the counter marked 'Money Order'



Buy a Money Order (MO) form by paying 50 paise to the person behind the counter



Fill in the appropriate boxes in the form (preferably in BLOCK letters)



Pay the counter clerk the amount of money to be sent along with the charges



Take back the MO acknowledgment counterfoil for your record.

Ans :

Yes I have sent money in this way.

1. Counter : a long flat-topped fitment across which business is conducted in a shop or bank or refreshments are served in a cafeteria. a small disc used in board games for keeping the score or as a place marker.

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. Where was Lencho's house situated?
 (a) bottom of the hill (b) top of a hill
 (c) top of a plateau (d) in a city
Ans : 2021
 (b) top of a hill
2. What was the only thing that the Earth needed according to Lencho?
 (a) a shower (b) a snowfall
 (c) strong winds (d) sunlight
Ans : 2021
 (a) a shower
3. Where did Lencho expect the downpour to come from?
 (a) north (b) north-east
 (c) north-west (d) south-east
Ans : 2021
 (b) north-east
4. Which crop was growing on Lencho's fields?
 (a) Corn (b) Barley
 (c) Rice (d) None of these
Ans : 2020
 (a) Corn
5. What destroyed Lencho's fields?
 (a) Heavy rainfall (b) Hailstorm
 (c) Landslide (d) Flood
Ans : 2020
 (b) hailstorm
6. The field looked as if it were covered in _____.
 (a) salt (b) locusts
 (c) sugar (d) ice
Ans : 2020
 (a) salt
7. Lencho compared the quantum of damage with
 (a) attack by rats (b) attack by crows
 (c) plague of locusts (d) None of these
Ans : 2020
 (c) plague of locusts
8. What was the only hope left in the hearts of Lencho's family?
 (a) Compensation from government
 (b) Help from farmer's association
 (c) Help from God
 (d) There was no hope left
Ans : 2015
 (c) Help from God
9. How did Lencho decide to contact his last resort?
 (a) By visiting them personally
 (b) Through a letter
 (c) Through e-mail
 (d) Through fax
Ans : 2015
 (b) Through a letter
10. How much money did Lencho ask for?
 (a) 100 pesos (b) 1000 pesos
 (c) 10 pesos (d) 500 pesos
Ans : 2015
 (a) 100 pesos
11. What was the immediate reaction of the postman on seeing the letter?
 (a) Laughed whole-heartedly
 (b) Cried
 (c) Felt sad about what happened
 (d) Felt empathetic
Ans : 2015
 (a) Laughed whole-heartedly
12. The postmaster was a fat, amiable man. What is the meaning of amiable?
 (a) Rude (b) Helpful
 (c) Friendly (d) Enthusiastic
Ans : 2015, 2006
 (c) Friendly
13. On seeing the letter, the postmaster was moved by Lencho's _____.
 (a) unwavering faith (b) handwriting
 (c) love for God (d) determination
Ans : 2015
 (a) unwavering faith
14. Why did the postmaster decide to reply to Lencho's letter?
 (a) He was a good man
 (b) He felt empathetic
 (c) To preserve Lencho's faith in God
 (d) All of the above
Ans : 2014
 (c) To preserve Lencho's faith in God

- (i) In addition to the sender, the form has to be signed by the _____
- (ii) The 'Acknowledgment' section of the form is sent back by the post office to the _____ after the _____ signs it.
- (iii) The 'Space for Communication' section is used for _____
- (iv) The form has six sections. The sender needs to fill out _____ sections and the receiver _____

Ans :

- (i) In addition to the sender, the form has to be signed by the postal clerk.
- (ii) The 'Acknowledgment' section of the form is sent back by the post office to the sender after the receiver signs it.
- (iii) The 'Space for Communication' section is used for sending messages.
- (iv) The form has six sections. The sender needs to fill out three sections and the receiver one.

Oral Comprehension Check - 1

1. What did Lencho hope for ?

Ans :

Lencho hoped for rain.

2. Why did Lencho say the raindrops were like 'new coins' ?

Ans :

It was because rain drops would resemble the new coins.

3. How did the rain change ? What happened to Lencho's fields ?

Ans :

The rain changed as hailstone began to fall. Lencho's fields were covered with hailstones and the whole crop destroyed.

4. What were Lencho's feelings when the hail stopped ?

Ans :

When the hail stopped Lencho felt that it was a total loss. A plague of locusts would have left more than that year they would go hungry. Lencho was desperate. He passed that night in sorrow.

Oral Comprehension Check - 2

1. Who or what did Lencho have faith in ? What did he do ?

Ans :

Lencho had faith in God. He wrote a letter to God demanding help from him.

2. Who read the letter ?

Ans :

The postmaster read the letter.

3. What did the postmaster do then ?

Ans :

The postmaster did not want to break Lencho's faith in God. So he decided to answer the letter and send money to Lencho.

Oral Comprehension Check - 3

1. Was Lencho surprised to find a single letter for him with money in it ?

Ans :

Lencho was not surprised to find a letter for him with money.

2. What made him angry ?

Ans :

He became angry when he counted the money. Actually Lencho had demanded 100 pesos but only 70 pesos reached him. He thought that God could not deny him what he had demanded. Certainly the post-office employees might take the money. So Lencho was angry.

Thinking About the Text

1. Who does Lencho have complete faith in ? Which sentences in the story tell you this ?

Ans :

Lencho has complete faith in God. The following sentences tell us this :

1. Lencho thought only of one hope - The help of God, whose eyes, as he had been instructed, see everything, what is deep in one's 'conscience'.
2. He wrote "God, if you don't help me, my family and I will die of hunger this year."
3. "God, of the money that I asked for only seventy pesos reached me, send me the rest."

2. Why does the postmaster send money to Lencho ? Why does he sign the letter "God" ?

Ans :

The postmaster was a very generous fellow. In order not to shake Lencho's faith in God, he collected money and sent it to Lencho. The postmaster signed the letter "God", lest Lencho should think that the money had not been sent by God.

3. Did Lencho try to find out who had sent the money to him ? Why/Why not ?

A non-defining relative clause usually has a comma in front of it and a comma after it (some writers use a 'dash' - instead, as in the story). If the relative clause comes at the end, we just put a full stop.

Join the sentences given below using who, whom, whose, which, as suggested.

1. I often go to Mumbai. Mumbai is the commercial capital of India. (which)
2. My mother is going to host a TV show on cooking. She cooks very well. (who)
3. These sportspersons are going to meet the President. Their performance has been excellent. (whose)
4. Lencho prayed to God. His eyes see into our minds. (whose)
5. This man cheated me. I trusted him. (whom)

Ans :

1. I often go to Mumbai which is the commercial capital of India.
2. My mother, who cooks very well, is going to host a TV show on cooking.
3. These sports persons, whose performance has been excellent, are going to meet the President.
4. Lencho prayed to God whose eyes see into our minds.
5. This man cheated me whom I trusted.

Sometimes the relative pronoun in a relative clause remains 'hidden'. For example, look at the first sentence of the story :

- (a) The house - the only one in the entire valley - sat on the crest of a low hill.

We can rewrite this sentence as :

- (b) The house - which was the only one in the entire valley - sat on the crest of a low hill.
In (a), the relative pronoun 'which' and the verb 'was' are not present.

4. Using Negatives for Emphasis :

We know that sentences with words such as no, not or nothing show the absence of something, or, contradict something. For example :

- (a) This year we will have no corn. (Corn will be absent.)
- (b) The hail has left nothing. (Absence of a crop.)
- (c) These aren't raindrops falling from the sky, they are new coins. (Contradicts the common idea of what the drops of water falling from the sky are.)

But sometimes negative words are used just to emphasis an idea. Look at these sentences from the story :

- (d) Lencho... had done nothing else but see the sky towards the north-east. (He had done only this.)
- (e) The man went but for no other reason than to have the pleasure of feeling the rain on his body. (He had only this reason.)
- (f) Lencho showed not the slightest surprise on seeing the money. (He showed no surprise at all.)

Now look back at example (c). Notice that the contradiction in fact serves to emphasise the value or usefulness of the rain to the farmer.

Find sentences in the story with negative words, which express these ideas emphatically.

1. The trees lost all their leaves.

2. The letter was addressed to God himself.

3. The postman saw this address for the first time in his career.

Ans :

1. The trees lost all their leaves. The corn was totally destroyed.
2. The letter was addressed to God himself. Never in his career the postman had known this address.
3. The postman saw this address for the first time in his career. He went to his boss laughing heartily to show him the letter to God.

5. Metaphors

The word 'metaphor' comes from a Greek word meaning 'transfer'. Metaphors compare two things or ideas : a quality or feature of one thing is transferred to another thing. Some common metaphors are

- the leg of the table : The leg supports our body; So the object that supports a table is described as a leg.
- the heart of the city : The heart is an important organ in the centre of our body. So this word is used to describe the central area of a city.

In pairs, find metaphors from the story to complete the table below. Try to say what qualities are being compared. One has been done for you.

Ans :

1. cyclone, 2. gale, 3. typhoon, 4. tornado, 5. hurricane, 6. whirlwind.

Some More Words :

1. **Conscience** : An inner feeling that tells difference between right and wrong.
 2. **Bigamy** : A system of marrying more than one wife usually having two wives.
 3. **Biology** : The science of life in its various forms.
 4. **Cell** : A small room in a monastery or prison.
 5. **Demagogue** : A person or a leader who has got popularity.
 6. **Go-cart** : A wheeled appliance to teach babies to walk.
 7. **Sculptor** : One who carves on stone or wood.
2. Notice how the word 'hope' is used in these sentences from the story.

(a) I hope it (the hailstorm) passes quickly.

(b) There was a single hope : help from God.

In the first example, 'hope' is a verb which means you wish for something to happen. In the second example it is a noun meaning a chance for something to happen.

Match the sentences in column 'A' with the meanings of 'hope' in column 'B'.

	A	B
1.	'Will you get the subjects you want to study in college ?'	A feeling that something good will probably happen.
2.	'I hope you don't mind my saying this, but I don't like the way you are arguing.'	Thinking that this would happen (It may or may not have happened).
3.	This discovery will give new hope to HIV/AIDS sufferers.	Stopped believing that this good thing would happen.
4.	We were hoping against hope that the judges would not notice our mistakes.	Wanting something to happen and thinking it quite possible.
5.	I called early in the hope of speaking to her before she went to school.	Showing concern that what you say should not offend or disturb the other person : a way of being polite.

6.	Just when everybody had given up hope, the fishermen came back, seven days after the cyclone.	Wishing for something to happen, although this is very unlikely.
----	---	--

Ans :

	A	B
1.	Will, you get the subjects you want to study in college ? I hope so	Wanting something to happen (and thinking it quite possible).
2.	I hope you don't mind my saying this, but I don't like the way you are arguing.	Showing concern that what you should not offend or disturb the other person. a way of being polite.
3.	This discovery will give new hope to HIV/AIDS sufferers.	A feeling that something good will probably happen.
4.	We were hoping against hope that the judges would not notice our mistakes.	Wishing for something to happen although this is very unlikely.
5.	I called early in the hope of speaking to her before she went to school.	Thinking that this would happen (It may or may not have happen).
6.	Just when everybody had given up hope, the fishermen came back, seven days after the cyclone.	Stopped believing that this good thing would happen.

3. Relative Clauses

Look at these sentences

- (a) All morning Lencho - who knew his fields intimately - looked at the sky.
- (b) The woman, who was preparing supper, replied, "Yes, God willing."

The italicised parts of the sentences give us more information about Lencho and the woman. We call them 'relative clauses'. Notice that they begin with a 'relative pronoun' who. Other common relative pronouns are whom, whose, and which.

The relative clauses in (a) and (b) above are called 'non-defining', because we already know the identity of the person they describe. Lencho is a particular person, and there is a particular woman he speaks to. We don't need the information in the relative clause to pick these people out from a larger set.

CHAPTER 1

A LETTER TO GOD

1. INTRODUCTION

A Letter to God by G.L. Fuentes is a short story written in third-person, about a farmer named Lencho. When a hailstorm destroys his year's harvest, he writes a letter to God asking for money, and sends it to him through post. A Letter to God is a humorous story about a man's faith, the dependence it brings along, and the fine line between faith and ignorance that exists in the world.

2. CHARACTERS

Lencho

He had a firm believe in God and was very innocent. He was very caring for his family and that is why he decides not to give up and find some way to help his family.

Postmaster

He was a nice, very helpful and genuine man whose natural instinct was to help Lencho and therefore he collects money for him and even deducts some money from his own salary.

3. SUMMARY

Lencho's House and Crop

Lencho had his lonely house in the valley. It was situated on the top of a low hill. From there one could see the river and the fields. Lencho had a good crop. But it needed rains badly.

It Starts Raining

Lencho saw the sky in the north. It had rain clouds. His wife was preparing the dinner. He told her that God willing it would rain. Soon big drops of rain began to fall. Lencho went out to feel the rain on his body. He was very glad. He said that the drops of rain were new coins.

Hailstorm and Loss Therefrom

But soon the hail rained on everywhere. The fields became white as if covered with salt. The

crop was totally destroyed. Lencho became sad. He felt that they would go hungry that year. Also they would have no seeds for the next crop.

Lencho Writes to God

But Lencho had a single hope : help from God. He was sure that no one dies of hunger. He had a great belief in God. The following Sunday he went to the post office. He wrote a letter to God to send him one hundred pesos. He wrote 'God' as the address.

Postmaster Collects Money for Lencho

An employee of the post office showed this letter to the postmaster. The postmaster laughed seeing the address. He wished to have such a faith in God. He had had an idea answer the letter. But reading it he found that the writer needed money. It was to keep the faith of the writer. So he asked all his friends and employees to give some money.

Money Sent to Lencho

The postmaster could collect only seventy pesos this way put the money in an envelope and addressed it to Lencho. He wrote a single word on it 'God' as a signature.

Lencho Receives the Money

The following Sunday Lencho came to the post office. He asked if there was any letter for him. He was given that letter. Lencho did not show any surprise on seeing the money. He got angry when he counted the money. He felt that God could not have made a mistake.

Lencho's Letter to God, Calls Post Office Employees Crooks

Immediately Lencho wrote another letter to God. He put it into the mailbox. The postmaster opened it. Lencho had written in that letter that he had received only seventy pesos. But he had asked for one hundred pesos. He asked God to send him the rest. But God should not send it through the mail. It was because the post office employees were crooks.

Object	Metaphor	Quality or Feature Compared
Cloud	Huge mountains of clouds .	The mass or 'hugeness' of mountains
Raindrops		
Hailstones		
Locusts		
		An epidemic (a disease) that spreads very rapidly and leaves many people dead.
	An ox of a man	

Ans :

	Object	Metaphor	Quality or Feature Compared,
1.	Cloud	Huge mountains of clouds.	The mass or hugeness of mountains.
2.	Raindrops	New coins	Excessive value like money and metal
3.	Hailstone	New silver coins frozen pearls	Ornamental value, hugeness of ice.
4.	Locusts	Plague of locusts	An epidemic (a disease) that spreads very rapidly and leaves many people dead.
5.	Farmer	An ox of a man	A hard working and laborious person.

Speaking

- Have you ever been in great difficulty, and felt that only a miracle could help you ? How was your problem solved ? Speak about this in class with your teacher.

Ans :

It was on last Sunday that I went to the Aravalli Mountain ranges. It is situated in South Delhi. I was quite alone. The area is full of rocks, mountains and thorny bushes. It is quite deserted. Under the whim of enjoying nature, I went on moving. By chance it became dark. A violent storm came and the clouds approached in the sky.

I was frightened to the extent possible. I started weeping and my heart was pounding and thumping. The atmosphere was turning all the more fearful. I cried in horror. Only a miracle could save me. Suddenly a military jeep stopped near me. I was all the more frightened and gave a shriek. They gave me consolation and made me sit in the jeep. They brought me to the police station. My parents were informed and they took me home.

Listening

- Listen to the letter (given under in this lesson) read out by your teacher/on the audio tape. As you listen fill in the table given below :
 - The writer apologises (says sorry) because
 - The writer has sent this to the reader
 - The writer sent it in the month of
 - The reason for not writing earlier
 - Sarah goes to
 - Who is writing to whom ?
 - Where and when were they last together ?

Ans :

1.	The writer apologises (says sorry) because	he has not written for a long time.
2.	The writer has sent this to the reader	a birthday card
3.	The writer sent it in the month of	September 2005
4.	The reason for not writing earlier	turned to new house
5.	Sarah goes to	School named "Little Feet"
6.	Who is writing to whom ?	Uncle to cousin
7.	Where and when were they last together ?	Bangalore, last year

Ans :

Lencho was a simple-minded person. He had firm faith in God. So he did not try to find out who had sent the money. He was of the view that the money was sent by God and none else could do such an act.

4. Who does Lencho think has taken the rest of the money? What is the irony in the situation ? (Remember that the irony of a situation is an unexpected aspect of it. An ironic situation is strange or amusing because it is the opposite of what is expected.)

Ans :

Lencho has thought that the rest of the money has been taken by the post office employees. He believed that God could not send him less money what he had asked for. Here one can find the irony that the money has been collected and paid by the post office employees. He does not believe in them. He calls them bunch of crooks. He thinks that thirty pesos have been kept by the post office employees. He has got no idea that even the amount of seventy pesos has been sent by them.

An irony is an amusing or a strange situation because we find it quite opposite in nature from what we duly expect. Here the post office employees collect and send money to Lencho. He calls them a group of cheats on not receiving the full amount.

5. Are there people like Lencho in the real world ? What kind of a person would you say he is ?

Ans :

No, the people like Lencho are not there in the real world.

Lencho is a hard-working farmer. Heavy rain and hailstorm destroys his crops. As a result, the only hope for him in this hour of need is the help of God. He has a firm faith in God. He believes that God will come to his rescue. He writes a letter to God to send him 100 pesos. The postmaster at first breaks out laughing but the other moment he turns serious at the immense faith of the man who has written this letter. The postmaster decided to answer the letter to God in order not to shake the writer's faith in God. On behalf of God, he sends him only seventy pesos as he is able to collect only that much amount. Lencho doesn't show the slightest surprise on seeing the money. Such is his confidence. He becomes angry on counting the money. He again writes a letter to God to send him the remaining 30 pesos directly instead of sending through the mail. He calls the post-office employees a bunch of crooks.

6. There are two kinds of conflicts in the story between humans and nature, and between humans themselves. How are these conflicts illustrated ?

Ans :

We can find two kinds of conflict in the story namely :

1. **Between Humans and Nature :** Lencho is a hardworking farmer. He needs a shower for his crop. He waits for the rain to come. By chance the rain starts pouring with hailstone. It hailed heavily. The crop was totally destroyed. He was totally upset. This is one conflict.
2. **Between Humans Themselves :** After complete destruction, Lencho writes a letter to God for money. The postmaster opens the letter addressed to God. In order not to shake the writer's faith in God, he collects money from his employees. He too contributes from his salary. He sends more than half to Lencho signed as God. On receiving the money, Lencho gets angry. He believes that the post office employees have taken some of his money. This is a conflict between humans themselves.

NODIA Thinking About Language

Look at this sentence from the story :

Suddenly a strong wind began to blow and along with the rain very large hailstone began to fall.

'Hailstones' are small balls of ice that fall like rain. A storm in which hailstone fall is a 'hailstorm'. You know that a storm is bad weather with strong winds, rain, thunder and lightning.

There are different names in different parts of the world for storms, depending on their nature. Can you match the names in the box with their descriptions below, and fill in the blanks ? You may use a dictionary to help you.

gale, whirlwind, cyclone, hurricane, tornado, typhoon

1. A violent tropical storm in which strong winds move in a circle : __c____
2. An extremely strong wind : _a__
3. A violent tropical storm with very strong winds : __p____
4. A violent storm whose centre is a cloud in the shape of a funnel : __n____
5. A violent storm with very strong winds, especially in the western Atlantic Ocean : __r____
6. A very strong wind that moves very fast in a spinning movement and causes a lot of damage : ____l____

15. What else did the reply demanded apart from goodwill, ink and paper?

- (a) Lost crop (b) Money
(c) God's signature (d) New seeds

Ans :

(b) Money

16. How much money was the postmaster able to arrange?

- (a) 100 pesos (b) Nil
(c) 1000 pesos (d) 70 pesos

Ans :

(d) 70 pesos

2014

17. Why was Lencho not surprised on seeing the money in the envelope?

- (a) He was too sad to acknowledge it
(b) He had unwavering faith in God
(c) He was an ungrateful man
(d) None of the above

Ans :

(b) He had unwavering faith in God

2014

18. How did he feel when he counted the money?

- (a) Grateful (b) Joyful
(c) Relieved (d) Angry

Ans :

(d) Angry

2014

19. What did Lencho think of the post-office employees?

- (a) Bunch of crooks (b) Rude
(c) Unhelpful (d) Proud

Ans :

(a) Bunch of crooks

2014

20. What did Lencho ask for in his second letter?

- (a) More money
(b) Remaining amount and not send it by mail
(c) Remaining amount and send it by mail only
(d) He didn't ask for anything

Ans :

(b) Remaining amount and not send it by mail

2014

21. What is the irony in this lesson?

- (a) Lencho was sad after the hailstorm even though he was the one waiting for a shower
(b) Postmaster laughed at Lencho but still helped arrange money for him
(c) Lencho blamed the post office employees who in fact helped him
(d) There is no irony

Ans :

2014

(c) Lencho blamed the post office employees who in fact helped him

22. What type of conflict does the chapter highlight?

- (a) Conflict between nature and humans
(b) Conflict among humans
(c) Conflict among God and nature
(d) Both (a) and (b)

Ans :

(d) Both (a) and (b)

2013

23. Who is the author of the lesson 'A Letter to God'?

- (a) G.L. Fuentes
(b) J.k. Rowling
(c) William Shakespeare
(d) Roald Dahl

Ans :

(a) G.L. Fuentes

2013

24. What did Lencho hope for?

- (a) A good shower of rain for his crop.
(b) A new motorcycle
(c) A tractor
(d) None of these

Ans :

(a) A good shower of rain for his crop.

2013

25. Why was Lencho satisfied?

- (a) On seeing a new tractor in his field.
(b) On seeing a new buffalo.
(c) On seeing the field of ripe corn with flowers.
(d) None of these

Ans :

(c) On seeing the field of ripe corn with flowers.

2013, 2010

26. Why did Lencho need money?

- (a) To buy a tractor
(b) To save his family from hunger
(c) To buy a new phone.
(d) To buy a buffalo.

Ans :

(b) To save his family from hunger

2013

27. What did the postmaster do then?

- (a) He decided to collect the money and send it to Lencho.
(b) He throw away the letter
(c) He decided to beat Lencho to teach him a lesson.
(d) He gave it to other postmaster

Ans :

2013

(a) He decided to collect the money and send it to Lencho.

28. Lencho, the farmer gazes at the sky in the _____ direction on the hope for rainfall.

- (a) North-west (b) North
(c) North-East (d) South

Ans :

2011

(c) North-East.

29. Large droplets were equivalent to

- (a) Five cents coin (b) One cent coin
(c) Ten cents coin (d) Two cent coin

Ans :

2010, 2008

(c) Ten cents coin.

30. Hailstones were compared with _____ in the story.

- (a) Frozen gold (b) Snow balls
(c) Silver coins (d) Frozen pearls

Ans :

2010

(d) Frozen pearls.

31. Lencho started writing a letter to god on

- (a) Monday morning (b) Sunday morning
(c) Saturday morning (d) Sunday afternoon

Ans :

2009

(b) Sunday morning

32. Lencho received only _____ pesos.

- (a) 50 (b) 70
(c) 60 (d) 10

Ans :

2008

(b) 70

33. Lencho was suspicious upon the honesty of the

- (a) Employees of the post office
(b) Postmaster
(c) God
(d) Postman

Ans :

2008

(a) Employees of the post office

34. According to Lencho the employees of the post office are

- (a) Crooks (b) Good soul
(c) Faithful (d) Image of god

Ans :

2008

(a) Crooks

35. Which quote supports the idea in the given extract?

- (a) "Farming is a profession of hope."
(b) "I would rather be on my farm than be emperor of the world."
(c) "Farming looks mighty easy when your plough is a pencil, and you're a thousand miles from the corn field."
(d) "Those too lazy to plough in the right season will have no food at the harvest."

Ans :

2007

(a) "Farming is a profession of hope."

36. Lencho's letter included

- (a) details of his problems
(b) description of the post office
(c) belief of being looted
(d) List of further demands

Ans :

2007

(d) List of further demands

37. Why Did The Postmaster Signed The Letter AsGod ?

- (a) he wanted to make him fool
(b) So that Lencho's faith does not get shaken.
(c) he do the sign like that only
(d) none of the above

Ans :

2007

(b) So that Lencho's faith does not get shaken.

38. Why did not Lencho try to find out who send the money to him ?

- (a) he had completed faith in God
(b) he didn't waste his time
(c) he was not interested to find out
(d) none of the above

Ans :

2006

(a) he had completed faith in God

39. Who Does Lencho Think Has Taken The Rest Of The Money ?

- (a) he,himself
(b) the God
(c) the post office employees
(d) his wife

Ans :

2006, 2005

(c) the post office employees

40. What Made Lencho Angry ?

- (a) There were only 70 pesos
(b) there were 100 pesos
(c) there was no money
(d) 70 & 100 pesos

Ans :

2006

(a) There were only 70 pesos

41. On the crest of a low hill. Find the meaning of highlighted word

- (a) middle of a hill (b) bottom of a hill
(c) top of a hill (d) none of these

Ans :

2005

(c) top of a hill

42. What Postmaster Said To Employees To Collect The Money

- (a) for forming the NGO
(b) As an act of rudeness
(c) as an act of give something
(d) As a act of charity

Ans :

2005

(d) As a act of charity

Short Answer Type Questions

1. How far would you agree that one's positivity can bring in a spark of brightness even in adverse circumstances?

Ans :

2024

Positivity has the power to illuminate even the darkest of circumstances. By maintaining a positive attitude, individuals can find hope, resilience, and solutions to overcome challenges. It not only improves one's outlook but also inspires others, creating a ripple effect of brightness.

2. Lencho did not bother exploring any other means to resolve his situation but just turned to God. Do you feel that his approach was justified? Why/Why not?

Ans :

2023

Lencho's approach cannot be justified as we know that even God helps those who help themselves. Seeking help from someone is understood but not putting in any effort and depending on others or hoping for one's luck to work is something one cannot practically believe in.

3. Who read the letter sent by Lencho? What did he do then?

Ans :

2023

Lencho compared the raindrops to the new coins wherein he compared the big raindrops with ten cents coins and the smaller ones with five cent coins. Lencho's comparison represented his excitement of earning good money from his crops due to the good downpour.

4. People get support from family and friends during bad times. How does Lencho's family behave after the harvest is ruined?

Ans :

2021

Similarly, Lencho got lots of support and moral courage from his family. After his entire crop was ruined in the hailstorm, his family members solaced him and asked him not to lose hope. They reminded him that in God's world no one died of hunger. Lencho's entire family had faith in God's help.

5. 'Lencho was an ox of a man, working like an animal in the fields, but still, he knew how to write.' What does this line tell us about the norm amongst such farmers, then?

Ans :

2021

This line tells us that normally the farmers working in the fields are hard-working but uneducated. They can work like an ox in the fields. But, Lencho could read and write. He wrote a letter to God for help after the hailstorm destroyed his cornfields.

6. Lencho and his family knew the implications the hailstorm would have on their lives. Write a conversation between Lencho and his wife as they watched the downpour turn into a hailstorm.

Ans :

2021

Conversation between Lencho and his wife –
Wife : If this storm does not stop here, we will die of hunger.
Lencho : Yes, our hard work will go to waste. It must stop now.
Wife : We will have no corn left this year.
Lencho : Don't worry, God can see everything and He will not let us die of hunger.
Wife : Let's hope so. I have heard that no one dies of hunger.

7. Lencho had faith in God but lacked faith in humanity. Elaborate with reference to 'A Letter to God'.

Ans :

2019, 2017

Lencho had immense faith in God, therefore he wrote a letter to God with the belief that God would send him the hundred pesos and that would make up for the loss of his crops. But, when he received seventy pesos, he was upset. He had no faith in humans and thought that the post office employees had stolen thirty pesos of the money that God had sent for his help. Once again, he wrote a letter to God to complain about this issue.

8. What did postmaster need to answer Lencho's letter ?

Ans :

2013

Postmaster was surprised on seeing Lencho's letter addressed to God. On reading the letter he found that he needed more than goodwill, paper and ink to answer the letter. He needed money to be sent to Lencho.

9. What were Lencho's feelings when he found the letter with money in it ? What did he do after opening the letter ?

Ans :

2010

Lencho was not at all surprised to see the money in the letter as he was fully confident about it. He knew that God will send money for him. On opening the letter he found seventy pesos instead of hundred. So, he wrote another letter to God to send rest of the amount but now not through mail as the post office employees were crooks.

10. How do you know Lencho was a hard working farmer?

Ans :

2009

We know that Lencho was a hard working farmer as he worked very hard like an animal in the field. His house was the only one in the entire valley. He made every effort to get money to sow the field for the next harvest.

11. Lencho was angry when he received the letter. How did he express his anger?

Ans :

2009

When Lencho received the letter he was angry as the envelope contained seventy pesos. He knew that God could not have made a mistake. At once he began to write second letter to God with wrinkling of his brow. He affixed the stamp with blow of his fist.

12. What was the effect of the storm on Lencho's farm?

Ans :

2008

All of a sudden very large hailstone began to fall. His field became white as if covered with salt. The hailstones looked like silver. The storm was so violent that it destroyed the crop completely. Not a leaf or a flower remained on the plants. It was a total loss.

13. When did Lencho receive the letter ? What was his reaction on opening the letter ?

Ans :

2007

On the following Sunday, Lencho went to the post office. He wanted to know if there was any letter for him. The postman handed over the letter to Lencho. Lencho was not at all surprised. Rather

he became angry on finding seventy pesos.

14. What did Lencho write in the first letter addressed to God?

Ans :

2007

In the first letter, Lencho wrote, "God, if you don't help me, my family and I will go hungry this year. I need a hundred pesos in order to sow my field again and to live until the crop comes, because the hailstorm...".

15. Do you think the post office employees were really "a bunch of crooks"?

Ans :

2006

No, they were not crooks at all. Rather, they were kind-hearted and generous people. They wanted to help Lencho to mitigate his trouble. Hence, they had contributed to collect 70 pesos to retain Lencho's faith in God.

16. Why did the postmaster send a letter of reply to Lencho?

Ans :

2003

The postmaster was very impressed and touched by Lencho's sincere faith in God. He wished he too had that kind of faith. So, in order to reconfirm and not to shake Lencho's faith in God he decided to answer the letter.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. Explain the irony in the chapter, "A Letter to God".

Ans :

2024

The irony in the chapter "A Letter to God" is that Lencho suspects the exact same people that helped him in his time of need. He thinks that the post office employees stole his money when it's they who collected the cash for him in the first place. He calls them a "bunch of crooks" though they are the ones who tried to keep his faith in God alive by giving him money.

2. What idea does the Postmaster come up with ? What did he do to stick to his resolution ?

Ans :

2024

So, in order not to shake the writer's faith in God, the postmaster came up with an idea: answer the letter. But when he opened it, it was evident that to answer it he needed something more than goodwill, ink and paper.

But he stuck to his resolution: he asked for money from his employees, he himself gave part of his salary, and several friends of his were obliged to give something 'for an act of charity'. It was

impossible for him to gather together the hundred pesos, so he was able to send the farmer only a little more than half.

3. The people at the post office contribute to putting together whatever they can manage, for Lencho.

- (a) What do you think was the main reason behind their help? Would you have done the same if you were one of the employees?
- (b) As an employee, write about your perspective and reason(s) for contributing to the fund. The fact that you don't want to say 'no' to a cause initiated by your boss, can also be an equally compelling reason!

Ans :

2021

- (a) The main reason behind their help could be empathy. If I were in the place of one of the employees I would have definitely helped Lencho by giving out some money. "Many a little makes a mickle". One rupee donated by 100 people would make up to 100 rupees without making much difference to the donor. However, it would be a big help for the done.
- (b) Of course, an employee can't say 'no' to a helping deed initiated by his/her boss. But, as an employee, I consider it right to help a distressed person. It is the moral duty of every human to help a needy person. You never know, maybe, it's your turn next time. I believe that 'Charity always begins at home.

4. Read the extracts given below and comment on the difference in the nature of help both the characters, of these two stories, received.

- (i) Suddenly I came out of the clouds and saw two straight lines of lights in front of me. It was a runway! An airport! I was safe! I turned to look for my friend in the black aeroplane but the sky was empty. [The Black Aeroplane]
- (ii) All through the night Lencho thought only of his one hope: the help of God.. The following Sunday, at daybreak he began to write a letter.. It was nothing less than a letter to God... The following Sunday Lencho came a bit earlier than usual to ask if there was a letter for him.... Lencho showed not the slightest surprise on seeing the money, such was his confidence. [A Letter to God]

Ans :

2020

- Both need help
- In The Black Aeroplane, he is helped by a stranger in a black aeroplane in the storm, without lights

- Steered through the dark clouds; was told there was no other aeroplane in the air other than his
- Wasn't clear who helped him
- Open to interpretation
- Help is not asked for but he receives it
- Is thankful
- In A Letter to God – different nature of aid
- Lencho writes a letter to God asking for money; his conviction in God touches the postmaster
- Postmaster raises money and sends it to him
- He asks for help
- The source of his aid is clearly revealed
- Not satisfied

5. In the lesson 'A Letter to God', what moral values does the postmaster display in his behaviour?

Or

The postmaster represents such people who still believe in helping others. Mention those values of the postmaster which you would like to emulate in yourself. Write in 100-120 words.

Ans :

2018

The postmaster was very impressed and touched by Lencho's sincere faith in God. In order to reconfirm and not to shake Lencho's faith he decided to answer the letter. He is amazed to read Lencho's letter and even more amazed at Lencho's abundant faith in God. The postmaster is thus a very genuine, empathetic and soft hearted man. The postmaster is also a man who sticks to his resolutions so he is able to collect money for Lencho's help. Since he commands the respect of his juniors and friends they too feel obliged to give him money for an act of charity. He is a generous person and tries to perceive others in a more positive light.

6. Apart from his blind faith in God was Lencho a wise person ? Was he justified in called post office employees a bunch of crooks ? Prove your point by giving examples from the text 'A Letter to God'.

Ans :

2016

Lencho was simple man, a farmer who lived in a solitary house. He hardly knew ways of the world. He had such strong faith in God that he could never believe that God would not help him. He wrote the letter with a very strong conviction. This faith in God prompted him to write a letter to God asking his help. When he had asked for hundred pesos but received less, he could never imagine that God could have never made the

mistake. It was not out of jealousy or anger he called post office employees a bunch of crooks. But it was his innocence and simpleton behaviour which made him address them in such a manner. He was an innocent person who lacked common sense and practical knowledge of the world.

7. Describe the character of Lencho in the light of his faith and attitude towards God and man.

Or

“I wish I had the faith of the man who wrote this letter.” Describe Lencho’s character in the light of this statement. Is such devout faith in God possible in today’s practical life?

Ans :

2013, 2008, 2004

Lencho being a very simple person started a correspondence with God so that he would help him and make sure that he and his family would not starve. He had an abundant faith in God and therefore with great confidence he directly appealed to God for help. As for his opinion regarding men, Lencho considers them dishonest and deceitful. He does not hesitate to write about his contemptuous attitude towards men in his letter to God and he calls the men at the post-office a bunch of crooks. He knew that God helps innocent people in distress and therefore does not hesitate in approaching him directly for help and neither is he bewildered when he does receive a letter signed by God.

Faith is an expression of hope for something better. In today’s practical world of cut-throat competition and demanding lives, such strong faith in God and one’s own self is extremely necessary. It motivates us to be positive and be successful in what we do.

8. Why did Lencho seek help from God? Who received the letter? What did he do?

Or

‘Faith can move mountains.’ What did the postmaster do in order not to break Lencho’s faith in God. Explain.

Or

What was the letter to God about? How much did it serve Lencho’s purpose?

Ans :

2008, 2002, 2001

When Lencho’s crop was totally destroyed by the hail, he being a simple-hearted person who had abundant faith in God, started a correspondence with Him. In a letter he asked God to send him a hundred pesos to enable him to sow his field again and live until the new crop came. This envelope which was addressed “To God” greatly intrigued a postman and so he took the envelope containing

the letter to the postmaster. After reading the letter the postmaster was highly impressed and touched by Lencho’s faith in God. So, in order to cement Lencho’s faith in God, the postmaster decided to collect money and send it to Lencho. He was able to collect only seventy pesos. He put this money in an envelope along with a letter containing the sender’s signature ‘God’, and sent it to Lencho.

9. Suppose you are the postmaster who had raised the money to help Lencho. Write a letter to your friend, John, telling him how you felt when Lencho, in his second letter to God, called the post office employees “a bunch of crooks”.

Ans :

2007

Main Post Office,
G.P. Street,
Panama City.

May 7, 20__

My dear Danny,

I hope you must be doing well in your job. In my job, we come across different types of people. I think ours is more or less a thankless job. I will illustrate this with an unusually interesting incident.

In a village adjoining our town, there is a simple farmer named Lencho. I came to know about his extraordinary faith in God, when I happened to read his letter addressed to God. Danny ! he actually wrote a letter to God for financial help. His whole crop had been destroyed because of hailstones. Just to preserve his faith, I managed to raise seventy pesos from my employees and friends. I too contributed a part of my salary. This money was sent to him in an envelope as if it were sent by God. His demand was for hundred pesos. I was shocked when I got another letter from him addressed to God. He had written that the balance amount of thirty pesos should not be sent through us as we were “a bunch of crooks”. We all were taken aback by his letter. I decided not to send him any more money. But to my surprise, my employees thought otherwise. So, once again we contributed and sent him the remaining 30 pesos. What about the things at your end ? Waiting for your reply.

Rest is as usual here.

Yours sincerely
Herbert

10. “Humanity still exists”, this is what we get to know after reading ‘A letter to God’ in which firm faith in God of a poor farmer and helpfulness of the post office employees are aptly depicted . Write a paragraph supporting this statement, in about 100-120 words.

Ans :

2006

Humanity Still Exists

These days greed, infidelity and being emotionless is becoming common. However, the chapter, 'A Letter to God' sets a perfect example that humanity still exists. After reading the lesson, 'A Letter to God', we come across the fact that there are people who have still not forgotten to show their love and care towards those who need it without any self-interest. The postmaster and the other employees of the post office set a flawless example of humanity and kindness for others. First, when they read the address mentioned on the letter, they all broke into laughter because they knew that the mentioned address on the letter did not exist. But immediately, they were moved to see Lencho's faith in God and the postmaster even stated that he wished he had the faith of Lencho. So, the postmaster decided to help Lencho. He asked for help from other employees of the post office. Each of them contributed whatever they could but they could not make it to hundred pesos. They somehow managed to collect seventy pesos. They kept them in an envelope for Lencho. This act of kindness shows us a true picture of humanity.

Extract Based Questions**1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :**

All through the night, Lencho thought only of his one hope: the help of God, whose eyes, as he had been instructed, see everything, even what is deep in one's conscience. Lencho was an ox of a man, working like an animal in the fields, but still he knew how to write.

- i. Write down two things that you can infer from the extract about Lencho's character.
- ii. Read the following descriptions (a)-(c) and identify which one correctly corresponds to the extract.
 - (a) A debate is a formal discussion on a particular topic, usually with two or more people presenting different viewpoints and arguments.
 - (b) A soliloquy is a speech given by a character alone on stage, which reveals their innermost thoughts and feelings to the audience.

- (c) A narrative from the point of view of an omniscient narrator, who knows everything about the story and the character.

iii. What was Lencho going to do?

- (a) Go to bank for loan
- (b) Write a letter to God
- (c) Ask for help
- (d) Have faith in God

iv. What does the author mean by the statement 'Lencho was an ox of a man..'?

Ans :

2018

- i. Lencho was a God-fearing man. He had immense faith in God and hoped that only God could help him to get out of the difficult situation he was in. He was also a very hard-working man and knew how to read and write.
- ii. (c) A narrative from the point of view of an omniscient narrator, who knows everything about the story and the character.
- iii. (b) Write a letter to God
- iv. The given statement indicates that Lencho was a sincere, dedicated and hard working man.

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

The house-the only one in the entire valley—sat on the crest of a low hill. From this height one could see the river and the field of ripe corn dotted with the flowers that always promised a good harvest.

The only thing the Earth needed was a downpour or at least a shower.

- i. To whom does the house described in the extract belong to?
- ii. How has the author described the scene viewed from Lencho's house?
- iii. Based on the detail of the house's location, how can it best be described?
 - (a) Majestic
 - (b) Imposing
 - (c) Solitary
 - (d) Unique
- iv. Which word would correctly substitute 'covered' in the given sentence from the extract?

The hat was covered with small strings of different colours.

Ans :

2015

- i. The house described in the extract belongs to Lencho and his family.

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

CHAPTER 2

NELSON MANDELA : LONG WALK TO FREEDOM

1. INTRODUCTION

This chapter is an extract from the autobiography of Nelson Mandela (18 July, 1918 - 5 December, 2013), the first Black President of South Africa. Excerpts from “Long Walk to Freedom” include description of the inauguration ceremony, citations from his speech, his journey to being a freedom fighter, the struggle, along with a tribute to other freedom fighters and countless other people who fought for their freedom. This lesson gives us an overview as to how Nelson Mandela along with others, carved their way to a society where there will be no discrimination on the basis of their colour, caste, race, age or gender.

2. CHARACTERS

Nelson Rolihlahla Mandela

He was a South African anti-apartheid revolutionary, politician, and philanthropist who led the country from 1994 to 1999. He was the country's first black president and the first to be elected in a democratic election with full representation. He fought against the ‘apartheid’ regime of South Africa which believed in racialism.

3. SUMMARY

The Inauguration Day

Tenth May dawned. It was bright and clear. Many world leaders had been coming to the author to pay respects to him. It was before the inauguration. The inauguration was to be the largest gathering of world leaders there.

The Place of Inauguration

The inauguration ceremonies took place in a big open building in Pretoria. Here the South Africa's first democratic non-racial govt, was to be installed.

The Swearing-in Ceremony

On that day the author was in the company of his daughter Zenani. Mr. De Klerk was first sworn in as second deputy President. Then Thabo Mbeki was sworn in as first deputy President. It was the author's turn then. He was sworn in as the President. He pledged to obey and uphold the constitution. He also pledged to devote himself to the well-being of the people.

The Author Addresses

The author spoke of the newborn liberty. He thanked all the international guests. He said that they had come there to be with his countrymen. It was the common victory for justice, peace and human dignity. He pledged to liberate his people from poverty, suffering and discrimination.

Display by Jets and Helicopters

After a few moments colourful South African jets and helicopters flew over the Union Buildings there. It was for military's loyalty to democracy for a new government. Then the highest military generals having medals on their chests saluted the author. He thought that they would have arrested him many years before.

Singing of the National Anthem

The day was symbolised for the author by the playing of two national anthems. The whites sang ‘Nkosi Sikelel’ and the blacks sang ‘Die Stem’. These formed the old anthems of the republic.

The Author's Thoughts

On that day of the inauguration, the author thought of history. In the first decade the South African people had patched up their differences with other black-skinned people. They had built a system of superiority also. It was the basis of the harshest societies. This system had now stood overturned. Now it was the system that recognised the rights and freedoms of all people.

5. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

One of the employees, who was a postman and also helped at the post office, went to his boss laughing heartily and showed him the letter to God. Never in his career as a postman had he known that address. The postmaster — a fat, amiable fellow — also broke out laughing, but almost immediately he turned serious and, tapping the letter on his desk, commented, “What faith! I wish I had the faith of the man who wrote this letter. Starting up a correspondence with God!”

So, in order not to shake the writer’s faith in God, the postmaster came up with an idea: answer the letter. But when he opened it, it was evident that to answer it he needed something more than goodwill, ink and paper.

- i. How would you describe the postmaster based on your understanding of the passage? Answer in about 40 words.
- ii. ‘But when he opened it, it was evident that to answer it he needed something more than goodwill, ink and paper.’ What did the postmaster need?
 - (a) He needed seeds from everyone to help Lencho.
 - (b) He needed an envelop and a stamp.
 - (c) He needed a hundred pesos to help the petitioner.
 - (d) He needed sixty pesos to give in charity to Lencho.
- iii. A few sentences with various meanings of ‘shake’. are given below. Which of the following sentence has used the word ‘shake’ in a similar meaning as in the passage?
 - (a) The jelly wobbled daintily in a pool of creamy custard.
 - (b) As soon as we finished bathing the dog, it shook itself vigorously.
 - (c) The armies did not want to unsettle the situation so they declared a truce.
 - (d) She stood in a corner shivering with cold and fear.
- iv. What do the words, “What faith! I wish I had the faith of the man who wrote this letter. Starting up a correspondence with God!” reveal about the postmaster?

Ans :

2010

- i. The Postmaster was a kind, generous, helpful, amiable and God-fearing man. He received a letter from Lencho which was written to

God asking for Hundred pesos, so that he could sow his fields again. The postman felt sympathetic towards Lencho. He gave up a part of his salary and asked all other employees to help.

- ii. (c) He needed a hundred pesos to help the petitioner.
- iii. (c) The armies did not want to unsettle the situation so they declared a truce.
- iv. The postmaster felt overawed by Lencho’s naivety and marvelled at his absolute faith in God.



- ii. The author has described the scene viewed from Lencho's house very picturesquely. From the house, one could see a river and the beautiful yellow field of corn.
- iii. (c) Solitary
- iv. dotted

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"Now we're really going to get some water, woman." The woman who was preparing supper, replied, "Yes, God willing". The older boys were working in the field, while the smaller ones were playing near the house until the woman called to them all, "Come for dinner". It was during the meal that, just as Lencho had predicted, big drops of rain began to fall. In the north-east, huge mountains of clouds could be seen approaching. The air was fresh and sweet. The man went out for no other reason than to have the pleasure of feeling the rain on his body, and when he returned, he exclaimed, "These aren't raindrops falling from the sky, they are new coins. The big drops are ten cent pieces and the little ones are fives."

- i. "These aren't raindrops falling from the sky, they are new coins. The big drops are ten cent pieces and the little ones are fives."
In which of the following examples has the same figure of speech been used to describe raindrops in the above lines?
 (a) She looked as fresh as morning dew.
 (b) Waves heaved heavily.
 (c) Glow worms are tiny lights floating around in the forest.
 (d) Break, break, break On thy cold gray stones, O Sea!
- ii. How does Lencho's mood progress along with the progress of the rain? Answer in about 40 words.
- iii. In the statement made by Lencho "Now we're really going to get some water, woman," water denotes rainfall. Which of the following pairs does not denote the same relationship?
 (a) earth - soil
 (b) sun - sky
 (c) fire - embers
- iv. In the statement, 'The man went out for no other reason than to have the pleasure of feeling the rain on his body' use one word to replace the underlined part of the sentence.

Ans :

2014

- i. (c) Glow worms are tiny lights floating around in the forest.
- ii. Lencho's mood which is hopeful in the beginning changes to happy when he feels the first drops of rain and then excited when he notices the size of the raindrops. He compares them to cents.
- iii. (b) sun - sky
- iv. only

4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

The following Sunday Lencho came a bit earlier than usual to ask if there was a letter for him. It was the postman himself who handed the letter to him while the postmaster, experiencing the contentment of a man who has performed a good deed, looked on from his office. Lencho showed not the slightest surprise on seeing the money; such was his confidence - but he became angry when he counted the money. God could not have made a mistake, nor could he have denied Lencho what he had requested.

- i. According to the extract, what was the belief of Lencho?
 (a) God couldn't make a mistake in sending the money.
 (b) God couldn't deny what he had requested.
 (c) Money was stolen.
 (d) Both (a) and (b)
- ii. Why did Lencho go a bit early to the post office the following Sunday?
- iii. Read the following descriptions (a)-(c) and identify which one correctly corresponds to Lencho.
 (a) Blind faith in God
 (b) Superstitious nature of village people
 (c) Suspicious of all government authorities
- iv. How much money did Lencho receive?

Ans :

2013

- i. (d) Both (a) and (b)
- ii. Lencho went a bit early to the post office the following Sunday to receive the answer to his letter to God.
- iii. (a) Blind faith in God
- iv. Lencho received only seventy pesos.

The Author's Regret

This auspicious day came after the sacrifices of thousands of the people. The author thought of himself the sum of all those people. He was pained that he couldn't thank them.

Freedom Fighters Remembered

The policy of apartheid created a lasting wound in his country and his people. This policy had produced great freedom fighters. They were like Oliver Tambos, Walter Sisulus, Chief Luthulis, Yusuf Dadoos etc. They were men of uncommon courage, wisdom and generosity. The country was rich in minerals. But its greatest wealth was its people.

The Definition of Courage

From these people the author learned the meaning of courage. They risked their lives. They underwent great torture. He learned that courage was not the absence of fear but the victory over it.

Man's Natural Goodness

The author says that no one is born hating another person due to colour or religion. They could be taught to love. Love comes naturally to the human heart. In prison they were pushed to the wall. But he saw humanity in the hearts of the guards. It was man's essential goodness. It can't be put out.

Man's Duties

In life every man has twin duties - to his family, to his community and country. The author found it difficult to fulfil these two duties. It was because a coloured man in South Africa was punished if he lived like a human being. Such a man was forced to live apart from his own people. So he was not allowed to do his duties to his family.

Freedom Defined

The author was born free. He was not born with a hunger to be free. He was free as long as he obeyed his father and obeyed the customs of his tribe. But soon he realized that his freedom was an illusion. He began to hunger for freedom when it was taken from him. As a student he wanted freedom to read and go. As „ a young man in Johannesburg he wanted freedom to be as per his potential. He also wanted the freedom of livelihood of his own and of family.

Desire for Freedom Made Him Bold

But soon he saw that he was also not free like his brothers and sisters. Then he joined the African National Congress. His hunger for freedom became great for the freedom of his people. The desire for the freedom of his people to live with dignity gave him power. It made him bold. It made him live

like a monk. The chains on his people became chains for him too.

Oppressor and the Oppressed Without Humanity

The author knew that the oppressor must be liberated like the oppressed. A man who takes away another's freedom becomes the hated. No one is free if he is taking someone else's freedom. Both the oppressor and the oppressed are robbed of humanity.

4. WORD MEANINGS

1. Dawned - (of a day) began
2. Awe - amazed
3. Deputy - second in command
4. Emancipation - the fact or process of being set free from legal, social, or political restrictions
5. Stream - a small, narrow river
6. Abided - obeyed
7. Amphitheatre - an open - air theatre
8. Apartheid - a policy or system of segregation on grounds of race
9. Array - an impressive display
10. Assembled - (of people) gather together in one place for a common purpose
11. Bedecked - decorate
12. Besieged - to be surrounded by
13. Bondage - the state of being a slave
14. Boyhood - the state or time of being a boy
15. Chevron - a pattern in the shape of a V
16. Civil - courteous and polite
17. Comrades - a colleague or a fellow member of an organisation
18. Confer - grant
19. Curtailed - reduce; impose a restriction on
20. Defies - refuse to obey
21. Deprivation - the damaging lack of material benefits considered to be basic necessities in a society
22. Despised - hated, had a very low opinion of
23. Dignitaries - a person considered to be important because of high rank or office.
24. Dignity - the state or quality of being worthy of respect.
25. Discrimination - being treated differently or unfavourably
26. Erected - build; construct
27. Frightened - afraid or anxious
28. Glimmer - shine faintly with a wavering light

2. Using the Definite Article with Names

You know that the definite article 'the' is not normally used before proper nouns. Nor do proper nouns usually occur in the plural. (We do not say : *The Nelson Mandela, or *Nelson Mandelas.)

But now look at this sentence from the text :

... the decades of oppression and brutality ... produced the Oliver Tambos, the Walter Sisulus ... of our time.

Used in this way with the and/or in the plural, a proper noun carries a special meaning. For example, what do you think the names above mean ? Choose the right answer.

- (a) for example Oliver Tambo, Walter Sisulu,
- (b) many other men like Oliver Tambo, Walter Sisulu ..., many men of their type or kind, whose names may not be as well-known.

Did you choose option (b) ? Then you have the right answer !

Here are some more examples of the used with proper names. Try to say what these sentences mean. (You may consult a dictionary if you need; look at the entry for the.)

1. Mr Singh regularly invites the Amitabh Bachchans and the Shah Rukh Khans to his parties.
2. Many people think that Madhuri Dixit is the Madhubala of our times.
3. History is not only the story of the Alexanders, the Napoleons and the Hitlers, but of ordinary people as well.

Ans :

1. This means that Mr Singh regularly invites famous personalities as of the calibre of Amitabh Bachchan and Shah Rukh Khan to his parties.
2. This means that Madhuri Dixit is compared to a landmark in acting in the form of legendary actress Madhubala.
3. This means that history is not only the story of the great fighters and leaders such as Alexander, Napoleon and Hitler, but also of ordinary people.

3. Idiomatic Expressions

Match the italicised phrase in column A with the phrase nearest in meaning in column B. (Hint : First look for the sentence in the text in which the phrase in column A occurs).

	A		B
1.	I was not unmindful of the fact	(i)	had not forgotten, was aware of the fact
		(ii)	was not careful about the fact
		(iii)	forgot or was not aware of the fact
2.	When my comrades and I were pushed to our limits	(i)	pushed by the guards to the wall
		(ii)	took more than our share of beatings
		(iii)	felt that we could not endure the suffering any longer
3.	to reassure me and keep me going	(i)	make me go on walking
		(ii)	help me continue to live in hope in this very difficult situation
		(iii)	make me remain without complaining
4.	the basic and honourable freedoms of ... earning my keep ...	(i)	earning enough money to live on
		(ii)	keeping what I earned
		(iii)	getting a good salary

Ans :

1. (i) had not forgotten, was aware of the fact.
2. (iii) felt that we could not endure the suffering any longer.
3. (ii) help me continue to live in hope in this very difficult situation.
4. (i) earning enough money to live on.

(iii)	Be overwhelmed with a sense of history	– A sign of human feeling (goodness, kindness, pity, justice, etc.)
(iv)	Resilience that defies the imagination	– A beautiful coming together of various peoples, like the colours in a rainbow
(v)	A glimmer of humanity	– The centre of racial superiority
(vi)	A twilight existence	– Feel deeply emotional, remembering and understanding all the past events that have led up to the moment

Ans :

(i)	A rainbow gathering of different colours and nations	– A beautiful coming together of various peoples, like the colours in a rainbow
(ii)	The seat of white supremacy	– The centre of racial superiority
(iii)	Be overwhelmed with a sense of history	– Feel deeply emotional, remembering and understanding all the past events that have led up to the moment
(iv)	Resilience that defies the imagination	– A great ability (almost unimaginable) to remain unchanged by suffering (not losing hope, goodness or courage)
(v)	A glimmer of humanity	– A sign of human feeling (goodness, kindness, pity, justice, etc.)
(vi)	A twilight existence	– A half-secret life, like a life lived in the fading light between sunset and darkness

Oral Comprehension Check - 1

- Where did the ceremonies take place ? Can you name any public building in India that are made of sandstone ?

Ans :

The ceremonies took place in the premises of the Union Building of Pretoria which was attended by international leaders and dignitaries. In India, Red Fort and Rashtrapati Bhawan are public buildings that are made of sandstone.

- Can you say how May 10 is 'an autumn day' in South Africa ?

Ans :

10th May is an autumn day in South Africa due to its location on earth. It is the beginning of the winter. On this day Nelson Mandela took Oath as the first black president of South Africa.

- At the beginning of his speech, Mandela mention 'an extraordinary human disaster'. What does he mean by this ? What is the 'glorious... human achievement' he speaks of at the end ?

Ans :

He means that the black people of South Africa have been the victim of system of Apartheid. It was a man made disaster. He speaks the freedom of his people from oppression 'glorious human achievement.'

- What does Mandela thank the international leaders for ?

Ans :

Mandela thanks the international leaders for having come at the occasion of South Africa's liberty and accepting it as an independent republic.

- What ideas does he set out for the future of South Africa ?

Ans :

He sets the ideal that his country will never experience the oppression of one by another.

Oral Comprehension Check - 2

- What do the military general do ? How has their attitude changed, and why?

Ans :

The military general saluted Mandela and pledged their loyalty. Previously they arrested him. But their attitude has changed as Mr. Mandela has become the president of South Africa.

1. For decades the Union Buildings had been the seat of white supremacy, and now ...
2. Only moments before, the highest generals of the South African defence force and police ... saluted me and pledged their loyalty. ... not so many years before they would not have saluted -----
3. Although that day neither group knew the lyrics of the anthem ..., they would soon -----
4. My country is rich in the minerals and gems that lie beneath its soil, -----
5. The Air Show was not only a display of pinpoint precision and military force, but -----
6. It was this desire for the freedom of my people ... that transformed ----- into a bold one, that drove ----- to become a criminal, that turned ----- into a man without a home.

Ans :

2. but arrested me.
3. know the words by heart.
4. but I have always known that its greatest wealth is its people, finer and truer than the purest diamonds.
5. but a demonstration of the military's loyalty to democracy, to a new government that had been freely and fairly elected.
6. a frightened youngman, a law-abiding attorney, a family loving husband

3. Expressing Your Opinion

Do you think there is colour prejudice in our own country ? Discuss this with your friend and write a paragraph of about 100 to 150 words about this. You have the option of making your paragraph a humorous one.

Read the short verse given below :

When you were born you were pink
When you grew up you became white
When you are in the sun you are red
When you are sick you are yellow
When you are angry you are purple
When you are shocked you are grey
And you have the cheek to call me 'coloured'.

Ans :

India and Colour Prejudice

There is no colour prejudice in India. Everybody is free to get and have education, employment and accommodation facility anywhere in India. It is not the case, if one is either black or pink, he is denied the facility of propagation or adoption

of any religion and so on. India has a written constitution that grants equal rights to all Indians without any kind of discrimination. If a South Indian arrives in Delhi, he has the equal opportunities like the native. He cannot be denied to board a bus or the train. Our constitution provides full protection to every Indian. Settling marriages with the persons of other castes is also allowed in India. It depends simply on the Indian how he proceeds in a rightful and legal way.

SCAN QR CODE
JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL



7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. How does Nelson Mandela define the meaning of courage?
(a) Triumph over fear
(b) Triumph over love
(c) Triumph over selfish
(d) Triumph over poverty
Ans : 2021
(a) Triumph over fear

2. Where did ceremonies take place?
(a) Rockstone amphitheater
(b) Sandstone amphitheater
(c) Glass stone amphitheater
(d) None of these
Ans : 2021
(b) Sandstone amphitheater

3. Which flame can be hidden but never extinguished?
(a) Man's love (b) Man's natural way
(c) Man's goodness (d) None of these
Ans : 2021
(c) Man's goodness

4. Which day was the largest gathering of international leaders on South African soil for the installation of South Africa's first democratic, non-racial government?
(a) 9th May (b) 10th May
(c) 11th May (d) 12th May
Ans : 2020
(b) 10th May

4. How did Mandela's understanding of freedom change with age and experience ?

Ans :

2012

Mandela's understanding of freedom changed with age and experience. During boyhood he learnt that freedom was an illusion. As a youth, he realised that his freedom had been taken away from him. With the advancement of age and experience, he felt that not only his freedom but also the freedom of everyone was curtailed. So he decided to join the African National Congress to have freedom for all.

5. How did Mandela's 'hunger for freedom' change his life ?

Ans :

2015, 2013, 2009

After being deeply touched with the fact that the freedom of everybody was curtailed, his hunger for freedom changed the path of his life. He desired that the people of his country should live with dignity and self-respect. In this way a frightened youth turned into a bold one, a law-abiding person to criminal, a homeless into a monk. Mandela found that he could not enjoy the limited and poor freedom till his people were not free. According to him : "Freedom is indivisible". The chains worn by my men were the chains on "me". These views for freedom changed his life.

Thinking About Language

1. There are nouns in the text (formation, government) which are formed from the corresponding verbs (form, govern) by suffixing (at) ion or ment. There may be a change in the spelling of some verb-noun pairs : such as rebel-rebellion; constitute-constitution.

1. Make a list of such pairs of nouns and verbs in the text.

	Noun	Verb
1.	rebellion	rebel
2.	constitution	constitute

2. Read the paragraph below. Fill in the blanks with the noun forms of the verbs in brackets. Martin Luther King's _____ (contribute) to our history as an outstanding leader began when he came to the _____ (assist) of Rosa Parks, a seamstress who refused to give up her seat on a bus to a white passenger. In those days American Blacks were confined to positions of second class citizenship by restrictive laws and customs. To break these laws would mean _____ (subjugate) and

_____ (humiliate) by the police and the legal system. Beatings, _____ (imprison) and sometimes death were waiting for those who defied the system. Martin Luther King's tactics of protest involved non-violent _____ (resist) to racial injustice.

Ans :

1. A Noun signifies the name of a person, a place or a thing e.g., Mohan, Sonapat, a bucket, etc.

In English we can form Nouns by adding suffix to the root word. e.g., move-movement, act-action, rebel-rebellion, construct-construction, etc. Some of the examples from this lesson are appended as under :

	Verb	Noun
1.	separate	separation
2.	nationalise	nationalisation
3.	elect	election
4.	inaugurate	inauguration
5.	oppress	oppression
6.	celebrate	celebration
7.	express	expression
8.	imagine	imagination
9.	instal	installation
10.	accompany	accompaniment
11.	constitute	constitution
12.	devote	devotion
13.	possess	possession
14.	emancipate	emancipation
15.	form	formation
16.	demonstrate	demonstration
17.	govern	Government
18.	dominate	domination
19.	generate	generation
20.	prevent	prevention
21.	obstruct	obstruction.

2. (i) contribution, (ii) assistance, (iii) subjugation, (iv) humiliation, (v) imprisonment, (vi) resistance.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

29. Glorious - having, worthy of, or bringing fame or admiration.
30. Grimmet - very serious or gloomy
31. Illusion - a false idea or belief
32. Inclination - natural tendencies of behaviour
33. Indivisible - unable to be divided or separated
34. Inevitably - unavoidably
35. Lyrics - the words of a song
36. Mealies - a maize plant
37. Monk - a member of a religious community of men typically living under vows of poverty
38. Obligations - a duty or a commitment
39. On our own soil - in our own country
40. Oppression - prolonged cruel or unjust treatment or exercise of authority.
41. Overturned - reverse.
42. Overwhelmed - have a strong emotional effect
43. Pleasantly - giving a sense of happy satisfaction or enjoyment; satisfying
44. Pledged - committed (a person or organization) by a solemn promise.
45. Possession - ownership
46. Precision - accuracy
47. Prejudice - a strong dislike without any good reason
48. Profound - very great or intense
49. Pushed to our limits - pushed to the last point in our ability to bear pain
50. Racial domination - when people of one race have power over another race
51. Reassure - say or do something to remove the doubts
52. Rebellion - the action or process of resisting authority, convention or control
53. Reign - rule; govern
54. Resilience - the ability to deal with any kind of hardship and recover from its effects
55. Sandstone - a type of stone that is formed of grains of sand
56. Secrecy - the action of keeping something secret
57. Spectacular - beautiful in a dramatic and an eye-catching way
58. Supremacy - the state or condition of being superior to all others in authority, power, or status
59. Sworn - given under oath; determined to stay in the role specified
60. Symbolised - be a symbol of

61. Trail - series; chain
62. Transitory - not permanent
63. Triumph - great victory or achievement
64. Troop - soldiers or armed forces
65. Twilight - half-light, semi-darkness
66. Unimaginable - difficult or impossible to imagine
67. Unintended - not planned or meant
68. Unmindful - not conscious or aware
69. Virtuous - having or showing high moral standards
70. Yearned - have an intense feeling or longing for something

MESSAGE

This chapter conveys the message that any person can reach heights irrespective of their race. So people should not be discriminated against on any basis. The oppressor and the oppressed both lose humanity. One through hatred the other through oppression and hence both need to be liberated from these inhumane prisons. Mandela's believe that the people are born free of hatred and learn it later. is also a very enlightening lesson we learn from the chapter. The people learn to hate and therefore they can also learn to love is a beautiful take away from the chapter.

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Activity

1. In Column A are some expressions you will find in the text. Make a guess and match each expression with an appropriate meaning from Column B.

(i)	A rainbow gathering of different colours and nations	– A great ability (almost unimaginable) to remain unchanged by suffering (not losing hope, goodness or courage)
(ii)	The seat of white supremacy	– A half-secret life, like a life lived in the fading light between sunset and darkness

Speaking

1. In groups, discuss the issues suggested in the box below. Then prepare a speech of about two minutes on the topic. (First make notes for your speech in writing.)

‘True liberty is freedom from poverty, deprivation and all forms of discrimination.’

- causes of poverty and means of overcoming it.
- discrimination based on gender, religion, class, etc.
- constitutionally guaranteed human rights.

Ans :

NOTES

1. Causes of poverty :
 - (i) Unemployment.
 - (ii) Illiteracy.
 - (iii) Source of meagre income.
 - (iv) Overpopulation.
 Means to overcome poverty :
 - (i) Need for hard work
 - (ii) Less children
 - (iii) Education.
2. Discrimination based on gender, religion, class, etc.
 - (i) Creates hatred and ill-will.
 - (ii) Attitude towards superiority & inferiority.
 - (iii) Communal disharmony.
 - (iv) Strict observance of equal rights.
3. Constitutionally guaranteed human rights.
 - (i) Equality before law.
 - (ii) Equal opportunity for employment & edn.
 - (iii) Banning child labour.
 - (iv) No discrimination of caste, colour, creed etc.

SPEECH

True Liberty is freedom from Poverty, Deprivation and all forms of Discrimination

Dear friends,

I am placing my ideas that true liberty is freedom from poverty, deprivation and all forms of discrimination. I hope you will listen to my views peacefully.

True liberty is not only the freedom from poverty, deprivation and all forms of discrimination, but it also includes liberty of education and equality before law. Of course poverty is a curse

as it disturbs the peace and tranquillity of the family. It brings havoc and creates trouble in every possible way. It becomes troublesome for one to provide all chances of education, employment, medicine, accommodation, food and soon. In deprivation one is denied of enjoying his rightful benefits. Suppose one is refused admission in some professional institution because of caste, colour, religion, sex or failure to deposit the capitation fee. This type of discrimination and deprivation affect one's personality and freedom. It is only through strict observance of laws we can get rid of such evil practices. Our constitution guarantees equality of education and employment without any difference. We must not forget that deprivation and discrimination give birth to despise, ill-will and hatred.

Writing

1. Looking at Contrasts

Nelson Mandela's writing is marked by balance : many sentences have two parts in balance.

Use the following phrases to complete the sentences given below :

- (i) they can be taught to love
 - (ii) I was born free
 - (iii) but the triumph over it
 - (iv) to create such height of character
 - (v) but he who conquers that fear
1. It requires such depth of oppression _____.
 2. Courage was not the absence of fear _____.
 3. The brave man is not he who does not feel afraid _____.
 4. If people can learn to hate _____.
 5. I was not born with a hunger to be free _____.

Ans :

1. to create such height of character.
2. but the triumph over it.
3. but he who conquers that fear.
4. they can be taught to love.
5. I was born free.

2. This text repeatedly contrasts the past with the present or the future. We can use coordinated clauses to contrast two views, for emphasis or effect.

Given below are sentences carrying one part of the contrast. Find in the text the second part of the contrast, and complete each item. Identify the words which signal the contrast. This has been done for you in the first item.

18. It was a celebration of South Africa's first _____ government.

- (a) autocratic, racial (b) democratic, non-racial
(c) democratic, racial (d) monarch, non-racial

Ans :

2012

- (b) democratic, non-racial

19. Why did other countries broke off diplomatic relations with South Africa?

- (a) White rulers
(b) Other countries are racial
(c) It is a poor country
(d) Apartheid policy

Ans :

2011

- (d) Apartheid policy

20. "We thank all of our distinguished international guests for having come to take possession with the people of our country of what is, after all, a common victory for _____."

- (a) justice (b) peace
(c) human dignity (d) all of these

Ans :

2011

- (d) all of these

21. What was it that the nation needed to be liberated from?

- (a) poverty (b) gender discrimination
(c) deprivation (d) all of these

Ans :

2010

- (d) all of these

22. "We have achieved our political emancipation." What is the meaning of emancipation?

- (a) freedom from restriction
(b) enslavement
(c) slavery
(d) both b and c

Ans :

2009

- (a) freedom from restriction

23. "The structure they created formed the basis of one of the harshest, most inhumane, societies the world has ever known." What structure is Mandela talking about?

- (a) Racial domination against the black skinned
(b) Poverty and suffering
(c) Discrimination against the poor
(d) oppression of women

Ans :

2009

- (a) Racial domination against the black skinned

24. Whom did Mandela wanted to thank but couldn't?

- (a) his family
(b) white rulers
(c) African patriots who no longer existed
(d) Military

Ans :

2009

- (c) African patriots who no longer existed

25. According to Mandela, what is the greatest wealth of a nation?

- (a) minerals (b) gems
(c) diamonds (d) people

Ans :

2008

- (d) people

26. What are a man's obligations in life?

- (a) Obligation to people
(b) Obligation to family
(c) Obligation to God
(d) Both a and b

Ans :

2008

- (d) Both a and b

27. What comes more naturally to heart according to Mandela?

- (a) hatred (b) unity
(c) love (d) racial discrimination

Ans :

2008

- (c) love

28. What realisations did Mandela have of his boyhood freedom?

- (a) it is just an illusion
(b) he was born free
(c) freedom was meant for kids
(d) he had no realisations

Ans :

2007

- (a) it is just an illusion

29. What began Mandela's hunger for freedom?

- (a) the fact that it had already been taken away from him
(b) his obligation towards people
(c) his obligation towards family
(d) he was born to fight

Ans :

2007

- (a) the fact that it had already been taken away from him

5. What is a country's greatest wealth?
 (a) Its minerals (b) Its people
 (c) Its technology (d) None of these
Ans : 2020
 (b) Its people
6. What does depths of oppression create?
 (a) oppressed (b) heights of character
 (c) poverty (d) lack of freedom
Ans : 2020
 (b) heights of character
7. Who, according to Mandela is not free?
 (a) oppressor (b) oppressed
 (c) both a and b (d) none of these
Ans : 2020
 (c) both a and b
8. Which party did Mandela join?
 (a) Indian National Congress
 (b) African National Congress
 (c) National African Party
 (d) he did not join any party
Ans : 2017
 (b) African National Congress
9. What realisations did Mandela have of his boyhood freedom?
 (a) it is just an illusion
 (b) he was born free
 (c) freedom was meant for kids
 (d) he had no realisations
Ans : 2016
 (a) it is just an illusion
10. Why were two National Anthems sung?
 (a) to imply unity
 (b) to mark the end of racial discrimination
 (c) to mark the end of gender discrimination
 (d) Both a and b
Ans : 2015
 (d) Both a and b
11. What did Mandela learn about courage?
 (a) it is absence of fear
 (b) it is the triumph over fear
 (c) both a and b
 (d) none of the above
Ans : 2015
 (b) it is the triumph over fear
12. What unintended effect did the decades of oppression and brutality had?
 (a) Created men of extraordinary courage, wisdom and generosity
 (b) Poverty and suffering
 (c) Boycot from foreign nations
 (d) Both b and c
Ans : 2014
 (a) Created men of extraordinary courage, wisdom and generosity
13. The spectacular array of South African jets was a display of
 (a) military's precision
 (b) military's loyalty to democracy
 (c) none of the above
 (d) both a and b
Ans : 2014
 (d) both a and b
14. What was it that the nation needed to be liberated from?
 (a) poverty
 (b) gender discrimination
 (c) deprivation
 (d) all of these
Ans : 2013
 (d) all of these
15. What change brought international leaders to South Africa?
 (a) End of Apartheid (b) Humanity
 (c) Peace (d) Trade negotiations
Ans : 2013
 (a) End of Apartheid
16. How many deputy presidents were elected?
 (a) two (b) three
 (c) one (d) none
Ans : 2013
 (a) two
17. When was the inauguration day?
 (a) 10 May (b) 10 March
 (c) 20 May (d) 20 March
Ans : 2012, 2010
 (a) 10 May

SCAN QR CODE
JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL



2. Why were two national anthem sung ?

Ans :

The public of South Africa consist of white and black people. Each group sang its own anthem.

3. How does Mandela describe the systems of government in his country (i) in the first decade, and (ii) in the final decade, of the twentieth century

Ans :

2010

While describing the system of government in the first decade of the twentieth century, Nelson Mandela told us that then the white-skinned people of south Africa patched up their differences and erected a system of racial domination against the dark-skinned people of their own land. The system of government they created formed the basis of one of the harshest, most inhumane societies the world has ever known.

But, in the last decade of the twentieth century that system had been overturned forever. It has been replaced by a system of government that recognised the rights and freedom of all people, regardless of the colour of their skin.

4. What does courage mean to Mandela ?

Ans :

For Mandela courage was not the absence of fear but the triumph over it.

5. Which does he think is natural, to love or to hate ?

Ans :

For Mandela love comes more naturally to the human heart than its opposite, hate. No one is born hating another person because of the colour of skin, or his background or his religion. People learn to hate and they can be taught to love. Love comes naturally as man's goodness is a flame that can be hidden but not extinguished.

Oral Comprehension Check - 3

1. What 'twin obligations' does Mandela Mention ?

Ans :

One obligation is to one's family, parents, wife and children. The second obligation is to his people, community and country.

2. What did being free mean to Mandela as a boy, and as a student ? How does he contrast these 'transitory freedom' with the basic and honourable freedom ?

Ans :

2009

As a boy freedom for Mandela was to run in the fields, to swim in the stream running through his village, to ride the bull. As a student freedom

for Mandela was to stay out at night, to read what he pleased and to go where he chose. These were only transitory freedom. Later he realised that he wanted the basic freedom and honourable freedom of achieving his potential, earning his keep, marrying and having a family.

3. Does Mandela think the oppressor is free ? Why/ Why not ?

Ans :

Mandela thinks that the oppressor is not free because he is the prisoner of hatred. He is locked up by prejudice and narrow mindedness.

Thinking About the Text

1. Why did such a large number of international leaders attend the inauguration ? What did it signify the triumph of ?

Ans :

2011

A large number of international leaders attended the inauguration because it was a common victory for justice, for peace and for human dignity. It was the complete end of racial discrimination in South Africa. It signified the triumph of humanity against oppression, fear, sufferings and gender-discrimination. It recognised the rights and freedom of all the people regardless of their colour.

2. What does Mandela mean when he says he is 'simply the sum of all those African patriots' who had gone before him ?

Ans :

During the apartheid movement, thousands of people gave sacrifices and suffered a lot. It was impossible for Mandela to repay their courage. But he could simply say that he himself was their part and parcel in the struggle. He was deeply concerned that they were not able to see the result of their sacrifices.

Would you agree that the 'depths of oppression' create 'heights of character'? How does Mandela illustrate this ? Can you add your own examples to this argument ?

Ans :

2008

We agree that the depth of oppression creates height of character. During the apartheid struggle in South Africa, people had to face oppression and brutality for decades together. This produced many great men like Oliver Tambos, the Walter Sisulus, the Bram Fischers and so on. They had extraordinary wisdom, courage and generosity.

In India we find such people like Lala Lajpat Rai, Rani Laxmi Bai and Bhagat Singh, etc.

30. A man who takes away another man's freedom is

-----.

- (a) White (b) a prisoner of hatred
(c) criminal (d) rude

Ans : 2006
(b) a prisoner of hatred

31. Who, according to Mandela is not free?

- (a) oppressor (b) oppressed
(c) both a and b (d) none of these

Ans : 2006
(c) both a and b

32. How did Mandela's hunger for freedom change his life?

- (a) turned from frightened to bold
(b) turned from law-abiding attorney to a criminal
(c) turned a life-loving man to live like a monk
(d) all of the above

Ans : 2006
(d) all of the above

33. What does depths of oppression create?

- (a) oppressed (b) heights of character
(c) poverty (d) lack of freedom

Ans : 2006
(b) heights of character

34. What is the dream of Nelson Mandela for the future of South Africa?

- (a) Free from all selfishness
(b) Free from all love and emotions
(c) Free from poverty and discrimination

Ans : 2005
(d) None of these
(c) Free from poverty and discrimination

35. What has the Nelson Mandela achieved?

- (a) Political emancipation
(b) Political love
(c) Political goodness
(d) None of these

Ans : 2005
(a) Political emancipation

36. Why is it easy to learn to love?

- (a) Because it comes naturally
(b) Because they are less in number
(c) Because you have will to do this.
(d) None of these

Ans :

2005

(a) Because it comes naturally

37. In the article, who have the people been compared to?

- (a) Utensils (b) Minerals and Gems
(c) Technology (d) None of these

Ans : 2005
(b) Its people

38. What created a lasting wound in Nelson's country?

- (a) The policy of fighting
(b) The policy of economic backwardness
(c) The policy of apartheid
(d) None of these

Ans : 2005
(c) The policy of apartheid

39. What colours does the new South African flag possess?

- (a) black, red, green, blue and gold
(b) black, red, yellow, blue and gold
(c) orange, black, yellow, blue and silver
(d) black, blue, violet, saffron and green

Ans : 2005
(a) black, red, green, blue and gold

Short Answer Type Questions

1. Nelson Mandela in his inauguration speech says, "We, who were outlaws not so long ago, have today been given the rare privilege to be host to the nations of the world on our own soil." What is the significance of this statement with reference to the political system that prevailed before this ?

Ans : 2024

The significance of Mandela's statement lies in highlighting the profound transformation from the apartheid system of institutionalized racial segregation and discrimination in South Africa to democratic governance. This shift allowed those previously marginalized and criminalized to now welcome global nations as equals on their own land, marking a significant victory for human rights and justice.

2. State two ways in which the oppressor and the oppressed are similar, according to Mandela.

Ans : 2023

According to Mandela, both the oppressor and the oppressed are robbed of their humanity. According to Mandela, if one person takes away

another person's freedom, they themselves become a prisoner of prejudice. They become shackled and restricted by their own biases and actions. While the oppressed are dehumanised because that is how the oppressors treat them, the oppressors too are dehumanised as a consequence of their own actions.

3. Based on your reading of the lesson, what can you infer about Mandela as a father and as a leader?

Ans : 2021

Mandela was a loving father as well as a great leader. But, to make his country free from apartheid, he prioritised the role of a leader and stayed in jail for 27 years away from his family.

4. Mandela feels that courage is triumph over fear. How would you define courage in this context?

Ans : 2021

According to me, courage has to be aroused from within. One can conquer fear by facing it without thinking of its consequences. The willingness to challenge fear is courage.

5. Mandela says that his country's greatest wealth is its people and not the purest diamonds. Justify his statement.

Ans : 2021

Minerals and even the purest diamonds are worthless if the people of a country are deprived of fundamental rights. Diamonds lie beneath the soil whereas people of a country can make it great with their courage, wisdom and generosity.

6. Nelson Mandela speaks of twin obligations. What are they?

Ans : 2019, 2013

In South Africa or in any nation there are two obligations for a person. One is at the personal level towards his family. Another obligation is towards the society. Apart from striving for personal goals a person should also work hard to contribute something to the society.

7. Why is 10th May 1994 important for South Africa? What was observed on the streets of Pretoria on this day?

Or

Describe the inauguration ceremony when Nelson Mandela took the oath.

Ans : 2015

On 10th May 1994 first democratic, non-racial government was to be installed on the streets of Pretoria. Dignitaries from more than 140 countries around the world participated in it. More than 100,000 South African men, women and children of all races sang and danced with joy.

8. What freedom meant to Mandela in childhood?

Ans : 2015, 2003

During childhood freedom meant to Mandela to be free to run in the fields, to swim in the clear stream that ran through his village, free to roast mealies under the stars and ride the broad backs of slow moving bulls.

9. What pained Nelson Mandela on becoming the President of South Africa?

Ans : 2014

Nelson Mandela was sad for not able to thank those African patriots who had fought for independence and sacrificed their lives for it. This pained him that they were not able to see what their sacrifices had brought.

10. How did Nelson Mandela become the first black President of South Africa?

Ans : 2013

Nelson Mandela is a South African. He fought a life-long fight against the racial discrimination. The first democratic elections were held in South Africa's history. His party won 252 seats out of the 400 seats. He became the first black President there.

11. Why had Mandela to join the African National Congress?

Ans : 2012, 2010

When Mandela realised that the freedom of everybody was curtailed like his, he was deeply moved. His hunger for freedom became keener and keener. He desired that his people should lead a life of dignity and self-respect. Consequently he joined the African National Congress.

12. Mention the difficulties faced by Nelson Mandela.

Ans : 2012

Nelson Mandela had to face many difficulties. He was ripped away from his family to fulfil his duty to his people. He was forced to live a life apart. He lived a life of a monk. In the prison Nelson and his friends were ill treated.

13. What according to Nelson Mandela is the greatest wealth of a nation?

Ans : 2011

Nelson Mandela believed that his country is rich in the minerals and gems that lie beneath its soil. He believed that greatest wealth of a nation were its people-finer and truer than the purest diamonds.

14. How did a law abiding advocate become a criminal?

Ans :

2011

The law abiding advocate became a criminal with the desire to live with dignity and self respect that changed a law abiding citizen into a bold criminal. The law loving man was forced to live like a monk. This change came when hunger for freedom became hunger for freedom of his own people.

15. What does Mandela mean by saying 'I was born free'?

Ans :

2010

In childhood Mandela felt he was born free as he was free to run in the fields near his mother's hut. He was free to swim in the stream and free to roast mealies under the stars. Moreover at that time he was not troubled by laws of God.

16. What were the ceremonies that took place on May 10 in South Africa?

Ans :

2009

On 10 May 1994, the inauguration ceremonies took place in South Africa, when Nelson Mandela became South Africa's first Black President after more than three centuries of white rule. Mandela's African National Congress party had won 252 of the 400 seats.

17. What did Mandela think of the oppressor and the oppressed?

Ans :

2006

Mandela thinks that both the oppressed and the oppressor are robbed of their humanity. The oppressor is not truly free if he is taking someone else's freedom as the oppressed is trapped in the net of hatred while oppressed does not believe in humanity. So, both of them must be liberated.

18. What was addressed by Mandela in his speech while taking oath?

Ans :

2005, 2003

Mandela addressed the gathering in his speech and assured that his people shall not again experience the oppression. He promised to make the nation free from poverty, deprivation and discrimination.

19. What did the smoke trail of Impala symbolize in the inauguration?

Ans :

2004

In the inauguration, a chevron of Impala jets left a smoke trail of the black, red, green, blue and gold symbolizing the new South African flag.

20. How according to Mandela has apartheid affected South Africa?

Ans :

2002

According to Mandela the policy of apartheid has created a deep and lasting wound in his country and his people. Many generations will be spent recovering from the profound hurt of this policy.

NODIA

Long Answer Type Questions

A desire is more personal whereas a vision has broader connotations. You have been asked to present an analysis of Valli's desire and Mandela's vision and how they are respectively fulfilled. Write this presentation draft including your insights, in about 120 words, comparing the approaches of both Valli and Mandela.

You may begin like this :

One acknowledges that both, Valli and Mandela _____ however,

(Reference — Nelson Mandela — A Long Walk to Freedom & Madam Rides a Bus)

Ans :

2024

One acknowledges that both Valli and Mandela exhibit aspirations, yet their expressions of desire and vision differ significantly. Valli, in "Madam Rides the Bus," harbors a personal desire to experience the thrill of riding a bus, symbolic of freedom and exploration in her confined world. Conversely, Mandela's vision, as portrayed in "A Long Walk to Freedom," extends beyond personal fulfillment to encompass the liberation of an entire nation from apartheid oppression. While Valli's desire is fulfilled through a simple act of defiance, Mandela's vision requires enduring struggle and sacrifice, culminating in the realization of a democratic South Africa. Their journeys highlight the distinction between individual desires and collective visions in shaping personal and societal destinies.

2. In the chapter 'A Baker from Goa' the narrator talks about his childhood in Goa and his fond memories. In about 120 words write a presentation draft comparing the childhood of the narrator in 'A Baker from Goa' to that of Nelson Mandela.

You may begin this way :

Childhood memories remind us of the days gone by....

Reference : A Baker from Goa and Nelson Mandela : Long Walk to Freedom.

Ans :

2024

The childhood memories of both the writers give us a glimpse into their traditions and cultures. Nelson Mandela had spent his childhood around fields and streams whereas the childhood of Lucio Rodrigues, the narrator of the Glimpses of

Joy of Flight and Reunion of Family

The seagull becomes so happy and soars higher calling 'ga, ga, ga'. It was really a joyous moment for the whole family; his brothers and sisters along with his parents come near to encourage and cheer him. The young seagull successfully made his first flight.

4. WORD MEANINGS

1. Seagull - a type of bird
2. Ledge - a projection of stone, Cliff
3. Brink - edge
4. Flap - move quickly
5. Expanse - area, region
6. Stretched - extended
7. Beneath - below
8. Flapped - moved quickly
9. Muster - gather, summon, collect
10. Take the plunge - decide and do something
11. Desperate - suicidal, damaging
12. Shrilly - loudly, high pitched voice
13. Upbraiding - scolding
14. Starve - remain without food
15. Perfecting - learning more to become perfect
16. Skim - float, glide
17. Herring - a type of fish
18. Devour - eat greedily and quickly
19. Cackle - speak loudly, laugh loudly
20. Plateau - a level surface on a hill
21. Taunting - teasing
22. Cowardice - act of being coward
23. Ascending - rising
24. Blazing - very hot, burning
25. Stepped - walked
26. Brink - edge
27. Pretended - acted
28. Take notice - pay attention, look at
29. Dozing - sleeping
30. Preening - cleaning feathers by beak
31. Hump - projection, bump,
32. Tore - pulled apart
33. Now and again - repeatedly
34. Scrapped - rubbed, scratched
35. Maddened - became mad
36. Whet - grind, sharpen
37. Begging - requesting earnestly
38. Derisively - teasingly
39. Plaintively - say with sadness

40. Utter - speak
41. Lean - to bend
42. Halted - stopped
43. Dived - jumped in air
44. Monstrous - huge
45. Seized - gripped
46. Still - stopped, motionless
47. Soaring - flying
48. Gradually - slowly
49. Dizzy - feeling of spinning, giddy
50. Swooped - rushed, moved suddenly and quickly
51. Curveting - flying up and down
52. Banking - rise up
53. Soaring - flying
54. Diving- go down
55. Commended - appreciated, praised
56. Shriek - shout
57. Cawed - sound of a bird or crow
58. Amusedly - happily
59. Ahead of - before
60. Beckoning - calling, signalling
61. Fright - fear
62. Exhausted - completely tired
63. Scraps - pieces
64. Belly - stomach
65. Dog fish - a type of fish

5. MESSAGE

The story reflects how one hesitates to take the first step and that fear is all in the mind. The story gives the message that one needs to believe in self to overcome all the hurdles of own life. One should trust one's abilities because "the fear of suffering is worse than the suffering itself".

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS**Thinking About The Text**

1. Why was the young seagull afraid to fly? Do you think all young birds are afraid to make their first flight, or are some birds more timid than others? Do you think a human baby also finds it a challenge to take its first step.

Ans :

2015, 2009, 2006

The young seagull thought that his wings were too weak to support him so he was afraid to fly. Yes, we think a man baby also finds it a challenge to take its first step.

6. Prejudice based on race and colour or any other reason causes profound hurt. Write about any one character from the chapters in First Flight who was subjected to such prejudice? Discuss the consequence of this prejudice for the character.

Ans :

2021

Prejudice based on race and colour or any other reason causes profound hurt to the discriminated-against person. In 'The hundred Dresses' lesson from the 'First Flight book' one character named Wanda Petronski faced similar cases of partiality by her American classmates. She was bullied and made fun of. Wanda went through all the trouble because she was a Polish immigrant. Besides, she wore the same dress every day to school because she was unable to buy a second pair of dresses.

But, she never paid heed to their sarcastic comments. Rather she put her imagination of beautiful dresses on paper in the drawing competition and won the medal.

7. Nelson Mandela in his inaugural speech used these two words 'an extraordinary human disaster' and so 'glorious a human achievement'. What did he mean by that ?

Ans :

2016

The extraordinary disaster was the rule of Apartheid in South Africa. This disaster of racial discrimination brought oppression, deprivation, cruelty and suffering for the black people of South Africa. Blacks were not allowed to visit the places reserved for the whites. They led a life of humiliation.

At last on 10 May, 1994, after more than three centuries of white rule, Nelson Mandela's African National Congress party won the elections. Nelson Mandela became the first black President of South Africa. This coming into power of non-racial government was a glorious human achievement.

8. Give the character sketch of Nelson Mandela.

Ans :

2015

Nelson Mandela is a great patriot. He loves his country and countrymen. For him the greatest wealth of South Africa is her people.

He has a sacrificing nature. He sacrificed his life of comfort, family and home and plunged into the struggle for freedom. He believed in equality for all. He opposed the rule of Apartheid for which he was declared an outlaw. He was oppressed and tortured in jail for several years but he never broke. It shows his traits of tolerance, courage and perseverance.

9. Which twin obligations have been mentioned in this lesson? Explain.

Or

Which twin obligations does Mandela mention ? Why was he not able to fulfil those obligations ?

Ans :

2014, 2009, 2005

In the midst of this lesson, one comes across the obligation to the family and the obligation to the country. In the first type of obligation a man has to do for his family, children, wife and parents. He is supposed to work for their well being.

In the second type of obligations a man has to fulfil it for his people, community and country. We can fulfil them according to our capacities and abilities. But in South Africa it was impossible for a black man to fulfil them. When Nelson tried to fulfil them for his family, he was cut off from his family. He was forced to live a desolate life full of troubles and tortures. When Nelson tried to serve his people, he was prevented from doing his obligations.

10. What ideals does Nelson Mandela set out for the future of South Africa?

Or

What ideals does he set out for the future of South Africa?

Ans :

2009

Nelson Mandela pledged to liberate all the people of South Africa from the continuing bondage of poverty, deprivation, suffering, gender and other discrimination. He even promised that never-ever again in the future shall his beautiful land experience the oppression of one person by another. The sun shall never set on the most glorious human achievement. Freedom shall henceforth reign in South Africa with the country and its people having also achieved their political emancipation and peace for human dignity.

11. Comment on the significance of freedom for human beings and how it is important for the growth of civilization and humanism as described in the lesson 'Nelson Mandela: Long Walk to Freedom'.

Ans :

2005

Each being on this earth requires freedom to live. The value of freedom is better known to the people of South Africa who had been chained with the restrictions and not permitted to fulfil their obligations freely neither towards their family nor towards their country.. Mandela spent so many years in lifeless jail cell and his heart was broken at the sight that he was forced to witness. He could feel the sorrow and grief behind the cold

- iii. (a) The desire to lead a normal respectful life as a citizen.
- iv. in first person's point of view.

5. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

That day had come about through the unimaginable sacrifices of thousands of my people, people whose suffering and courage can never be counted or repaid. I felt that day, as I have on many other days, that I was simply the sum of all those African patriots who had gone before me. That long and noble line ended and now began again with me. I was pained that I was not able to thank them and that they were not able to see what their sacrifices had wrought.

- i. Read the following descriptions (a)-(c) and identify which one correctly corresponds to the extract.
 - (a) A debate is a formal discussion on a particular topic, usually with two or more people presenting different viewpoints and arguments.
 - (b) A autobiographical account of an event which covers the author's point of view regarding the event and all other things associated with it.
 - (c) A narrative from the point of view of an omniscient narrator, who knows everything about the story and the character.
- ii. Who represents 'the long and noble line'?
 - (a) Nelson Mandela (b) African patriots
 - (c) African tribes (d) None of these
- iii. How do you think the day had come into the life of the author?
- iv. Which word would correctly substitute 'plainly', in the given sentence from the extract?
Col Rathore was plainly a man who never liked to show off.

Ans :

2020

- i. (b) A autobiographical account of an event which covers the author's point of view regarding the event and all other things associated with it.
- ii. (b) African patriots
- iii. The day had come in the life of the author and millions of other people through courage, sufferings and many sacrifices of the speaker's people.
- iv. simply

6. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

My country is rich in the minerals and gems that lie beneath its soil, but I have always known that its great wealth is its people, finer and truer than the purest diamonds.

It is from these comrades in the struggle that I learned the meaning of courage. Time and again, I have seen men and women risk and give their lives for an idea. I have seen men stand up to attacks and torture without breaking, showing a strength and resilience that defies the imagination.

- i. According to the speaker, what is the greatest wealth of a nation?
 - (a) Its minerals (b) Its gems
 - (c) Its diamonds (d) Its people
- ii. What opinion does the speaker have about the people in his country?
- iii. What are the people of Africa being compared to?
- iv. State True or False.
None of the terms (a) -(d) below, can be applied to the statement - Nelson Mandela is distraught at the actions of his people.
 - (a) A hypothesis - a proposed explanation for a phenomenon
 - (b) An assumption - something that is taken for granted or assumed to be true without proof
 - (c) A premise - a proposition that forms the basis of an argument
 - (d) A theory - a well-substantiated explanation for a natural phenomenon

Ans :

2019

- i. (d) Its people
- ii. The speaker believes that the people of his country are very valuable. They, according to the speaker, are the greatest wealth of his country and are finer and truer than the purest diamonds.
- iii. The people of Africa are compared to the purest diamonds and all other gems that are present in the lands of Africa.
- iv. True. This statement would not be called a hypothesis, assumption, premise or theory.



racess, colors, and nations are now equal and welcome, signifying the start of democratic and non-racial government.

- iii. The phrase that could correctly substitute 'pleasantly besieged' in the given sentence could be 'delightfully surrounded' or 'agreeably inundated'.

iv. False

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow:

On the day of the inauguration, I was overwhelmed with a sense of history. In the first decade of the 20th century a few years after the bitter Anglo-Boer war and before my own birth, the white skinned people of South Africa patched up their differences and created a system of racial domination against the dark-skinned people of their own land. The structure they created formed the basis of one of the harshest, most inhumane societies the world has ever known. Now, in the last decade of the twentieth century, and my own eighth decade as a man, that system has been overturned forever and replaced by one that recognised the rights and freedoms of all peoples, regardless of the colour of their skin.

Ans :

2024

- i. Explain the feelings of the narrator when he said; "I was overwhelmed with a sense of history."
- ii. The system of racial domination has been replaced by a system that :
- confirms the education of the Blacks.
 - recognises the rights and freedoms of all people.
 - recollects the bitter experiences.
 - focuses on the personality development.
- iii. Comment on the kind of society apartheid had created?
- iv. Which phrase would correctly substitute 'patched up' in the given sentence from the extract :

"...the white skinned people of South Africa patched up their differences..."

Ans :

2022

- i. 1. Mandela felt happy because of his role in ending Apartheid in South Africa.
2. He was overwhelmed remembering all the past events.
- ii. (b) recognises the rights and freedoms of all people.

- iii. 1. A system of racial domination / segregation against the dark-skinned people in their own land.

2. One of the harshest and most inhuman societies of the world.

iv. Appeased/repaiored/mended

4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"It was only when I began to learn that my boyhood freedom was an illusion, when I discovered as a young man that my freedom had already been taken from me, that I began to hunger for it. At first as a student I wanted freedom only for myself the transitory freedoms of being able to stay out at night, read what I pleased and go where I chose. Later; as a young man in Johannesburg, I yearned for the basic and honourable freedoms of achieving my potential, of earning my keep, of marrying and having a family-the freedom not to be obstructed in a lawful life."

- i. The speaker's attitude towards his freedom when he was in his boyhood can be summed up as _____.
(a) being self- centered
(b) being naive
(c) being foolish
(d) being indifferent to others
- ii. How does Nelson Mandela understand the concept of "transitory freedoms"? Answer in about 40 words.
- iii. In the statement, 'I discovered as a young man that my freedom had already been taken from me, that I began to hunger for it,' what was Mandela hungering after?
(a) The desire to lead a normal respectful life as a citizen.
(b) The desire to fulfil all his professional dreams.
(c) The breaking of the chains that bound his fellow citizens.
- iv. If 'Point of View' is the narration of a story that can be told from a first, second, or third person's point of view, the given extract is told _____.

Ans :

2020

- i. (b) being naive
- ii. 'Transitory freedoms' for him meant staying out at night, reading what he liked and going where he chose. This was Mandela's concept of freedom when he was young and limited to personal liberty and enjoyment.

India, seems to be inspired by the English and Portuguese culture. Mandela lived life as a cattle boy but Lucio belonged to a civilized and literate family where he talks about basic hygiene and etiquette. Mandela grew up in a poor family and ate whatever he got in the fields, like roasted mealies. On the contrary, Lucio was born in a well-settled family who could afford bread bangles and other delicacies available in Goa. Mandela had to struggle for his basic freedom throughout his life. Lucio lived a privileged life as interpreted from the lesson 'Baker from Goa'.

3. You have been chosen to address a student gathering from the neighbourhood schools, to speak on the resilience of human spirit required to transcend discrimination. Prepare the speech draft in not more than 120 words, with reference to the commonality of themes in, Nelson Mandela: Long Walk to Freedom, and, The Trees by Adrienne Rich,

You may begin this way:

Good morning, everyone. Today, I'd like to discuss two pieces of literature that offer a powerful insight into the resilience of the human spirit required to transcend discrimination.

You may end this way.

To conclude, I'd like to say that...

Thank you

Ans :

2023

Good morning, everyone. Today, I'd like to discuss two pieces of literature that offer a powerful insight into the resilience of the human spirit required to transcend discrimination. These pieces are from the stories, Nelson Mandela: Long Walk to Freedom and The Trees.

In both the pieces, resilience of the human spirit has proved to be able to eliminate discrimination. In Nelson Mandela, Mandela had a grit and determination to abolish the racism that prevailed against the blacks in South Africa. He fought that discrimination while facing a lot of challenges in his life only because he was resilient.

Similarly, in the poem 'The Trees', the poet uses the image of trees to depict the journey of women in the world to fight for their rights. She had shown how hard work, perseverance and grit can defeat any challenge in the way to attain our human rights. To conclude, I'd like to say that we should learn from these pieces that no matter what comes in our way, we should have resilience of the spirit to transcend discrimination and speak up for our rights.

Thank you

4. Freedom is inconsequential if it is behind bars of prejudice and narrow-mindedness. How would you explain this statement? Support your answer with suitable examples from the real world.

Ans :

2021

This statement was given by Nelson Mandela on the institution day of South Africa. An oppressor who takes away others' freedom is a victim of prejudice and narrow-mindedness. He needs to come out of this jail first to be called free in a real sense. If a man can't respect others' freedom he himself is not free and needs to be educated.

Example 1- The death of George Floyd (a black American) by a careless white policeman that triggered "Black Lives Matter" and 'I can't Breathe' campaigns all over America confirms the existence of apartheid.

Example 2- Religious discrimination and attack on minorities in Pakistan depict that they are bound by the shackles of prejudice and narrow-mindedness.

5. After having read the lesson on the oppression that communities faced in South Africa, you were deeply hurt. You could also relate to the struggles and hardships of millions of Indians who fought against the oppressive British rule.

Write a diary entry expressing your feelings about the oppression faced by people in their homeland. You may begin like this:

24 August 20XX, Monday	9:00 pm
My heart is filled with sadness as I think of the oppressed who had to tolerate the inhuman attitude of the oppressors in their own land.	

Ans :

2021

24 August 20XX	Monday 9:00 pm
My heart is filled with sadness as I think of the oppressed who had to tolerate the inhuman attitude of the oppressors in their own land. Indian farmers were forced by Britishers to grow indigo in place of rice in their fields. It fetched a handsome amount of money for Britishers but farmers were having less food and less income. The English looted the poor women's dignity. No female was safe in the British era. Tears roll down my eyes when I think of the physical and mental torture that our freedom fighters faced. Everyone knows how cruel general Dyer turned a meeting into a massacre. These wounds are deep-rooted in the hearts of every Indian and can never be healed.	

CHAPTER 3

TWO STORIES ABOUT FLYING

I

HIS FIRST FLIGHT

1. INTRODUCTION

The Story “His First Flight” is written by Liam OH Hearty. It is about a young seagull bird who is afraid of flying. It feels that its wings are not strong enough to make it fly. How he overcomes this fear which all of us face while trying a new venture and the story of his successful maiden flight has been beautifully narrated in the chapter. The story highlights the importance of family and friends in one’s life.

2. CHARACTERS

Young Seagull

A timid sea-bird who was hesitant and afraid of flying. But he did not stop trying. Gradually he gathered strength and made regular efforts for flying. Finally, he forgot his fear of flying and made his first flight.

Mother Seagull

The mother of young seagull who motivated the young one enough to get him to learn flying. She even took the bold step of pushing her offspring from the cliff to eschew his fear.

Father Seagull

The Father of Young Seagull who was the sole breadwinner of the family.

Siblings

Siblings of the young seagull who cheered for their brother for his first flight along with their father offering moral and mental support to him.

3. SUMMARY

The Seagull Family

The seagull family consists of six seagulls – mother, father, three sons and one daughter. All

of them except the youngest son are expert in flying high. His parents have tried several times to teach him how to fly but he is scared to do that and does not want to try anymore. He relies on the food that his parents bring back from their flights.

Young Seagull’s Fear of Flying

The youngest son is afraid of flying as he thinks that if he flies, his wings would not support him and he would fall down in the sea below and drown. Even his parents have rebuked him. They even threatened him if he doesn’t fly, he would die of hunger, but he does not try.

Parents Leave Young Seagull Alone

After so many failed attempts, his parents leave him alone on the rock without food. They even taunt him for his cowardice. The young seagull looks at his brothers and sisters enjoying swimming, diving in the sea water for fish to feed themselves, but no one comes near him to offer food.

Hunger and Heat Increase

As the time passes, the young seagull could not tolerate the hunger and the heat. He moves closer to the ledge and pretends to fall asleep but nobody takes notice of him. His brothers and sisters have already had hearty breakfast and father seems busy in admiring and cleaning the feathers on his back. The mother looks at him and tries to tempt him with pieces of fish. His begging and crying does not affect her.

Young Seagull Dives for Food

The young seagull was very hungry. He as surprised enough at his mother’s ignorance of his pitiful condition. Thus, he dives for food. He begins to fall down with a scream as soon as he dives.

Flight Begins

The young seagull begins to fall in the sea. He is afraid of drowning, so he tries to spread his wings outwards and begins flying. He feels a little dizzy but all his fear vanished (disappeared). He soars slowly downwards and upwards. He could finally fly on his own.

prison bars for 27 long years. His life was a hell for those long years as he was deprived of freedom.

Freedom is a condition in which people have the liberty to speak, act and pursue happiness without unnecessary external limitations. Freedom is important because it leads to enhanced expressions of creativity and original thought, increased productivity, and an overall high quality of life which is extremely important for the growth of human civilization and humanism. Freedom in liberal terms mean freedom from oppression, and not freedom from responsibilities. This is because freedom is important for the growth of civilization.

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow :

We have, at last, achieved our political emancipation. We pledge ourselves to liberate all our people from the continuing bondage of poverty, deprivation, suffering, gender and other discrimination.

Never, never, and never again shall it be that this beautiful land will again experience the oppression of one by another.

The sun shall never set on so glorious a human achievement.

Let freedom reign. God bless Africa!

Ans :

2024

- i. State any one inference about Nelson Mandela from the given context :
“We have, at last, achieved our political emancipation.”
- ii. State True or False :
When Mandela says, “God bless Africa”, he intends to mean well-being and welfare of only black people in South Africa.
- iii. “Nelson Mandela’s speech is full of optimism.” Elaborate in about 40 words with reference to the extract.
- iv. Which phrase would correctly substitute ‘so glorious’, in the given sentence from the extract.
“The sun shall never set on so glorious a human achievement.”

Ans :

- i. Inference : Nelson Mandela acknowledges the attainment of political freedom after a prolonged struggle.
- ii. False

- iii. Mandela’s speech exudes optimism as he celebrates the realization of political emancipation, signaling hope and progress for the nation after enduring hardships. His words reflect confidence in a brighter future despite past challenges.
- iv. “The sun shall never set on such a magnificent human achievement.”

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow:

Tenth May dawned bright and clear. For the past few days, I had been pleasantly besieged by dignitaries and world leaders who were coming to pay their respects before the inauguration. The inauguration would be the largest gathering ever of international leaders on South African soil. The ceremonies took place in the lovely sandstone amphitheatre formed by the Union buildings in Pretoria. For decades this had been the seat of white supremacy, and now it was the site of rainbow gathering of different colours and nations for the installation of South Africa’s first democratic non-racial government.

Ans :

2024

- i. What do you infer from the following statement ?
“The inauguration would be the largest gathering ever of international leaders on South African Soil.”
- ii. Explain in about 40 words the effective shift from white supremacy to a rainbow gathering.
- iii. Which phrase would correctly substitute ‘pleasantly besieged’ in the given sentence from that extract ?
- iv. State true or false with reference to the given extract.
in the past the ‘amphitheatre’ had been a seat for theatrical performances.

Ans :

2024

- i. From the statement “The inauguration would be the largest gathering ever of international leaders on south African Soil”, it can be inferred that the inauguration ceremony is an extremely significant event, attracting the attention of world leaders, indicating it may be a turning point or important moment in the history of South Africa.
- ii. The transition from white supremacy to a rainbow gathering signifies the end of racial segregation and dominance by whites in South Africa. The “rainbow gathering” signifies unity and inclusion and that all

2. "The sight of the food maddened him." What does this suggest ? What compelled the young seagull to finally fly ?

Ans :

2009

It suggests that food is the most essential thing for a living creature. It was the food that forced the seagull to take risk. Food is the basic need.

3. "They were beckoning to him, calling shrilly." Why did the seagull's parents incited him to finally fly ?

Ans :

Seagull's father and mother wanted their young one to learn to fly by any means.

4. Have you ever had a similar experience, where your parents encouraged you to do something that you were too scared to try ? Discuss this in pairs or group.

Ans :

Yes, I had a similar experience while learning to ride a bicycle in my school days. In my initial attempts, I fell down every time and developed a fear of cycling in my mind which was difficult to overcome. No amount of provoking and cajoling could let me try it again, but my father encouraged me to overcome the fear and helped me as he was adamant about my learning cycling. He took me to a raised, open ground near our house and made me sit, and asked me to put my hands on the handle and feet on the paddle. Since the ground was a slope, I sped down and enjoyed it greatly. This ended my fear and developed my confidence. Thus, I overcame my fear of cycling and started riding a cycle every day.

5. In the case of a bird flying, it seems a natural act, and a foregone conclusion that it should succeed. In the examples you have given in answer to the previous question, was your success guaranteed, or was it important for you to try, regardless of a possibility of failure.

Ans :

A bird flying is not natural; it is taught to the young ones by their parents or their elder ones. So, one has to learn it through some of the traits which may breed in them naturally. Without any attempt and learning; nothing comes automatically. But it can be concluded that it should succeed.

Our success was never guaranteed. One has to try again and again. In some cases, all results may not favour us. But it is always essential to practise, try and put every nerve to get success.

Speaking

1. We have read about the first flight of a young seagull. Your teacher will now divide the class into groups. Each group will work on one of the following topics. Prepare a presentation with your group member's and then present it to the entire class.

- A. Progression of models of Airplane
- B. Progression of models of Motor cars
- C. Birds and their wing span
- D. Migratory birds-tracing their flights

Ans :

- A. **Progression of models of Airplane** : The very first model of an aircraft was found long back in Egypt in 1898. And, with the dream of flying in the sky came Wright brothers from America. They were the first in the world to successfully invent and fly the airplane. The two brothers set a milestone for the aviation industry. And today, there exist many models of airplane and aircraft.

- B. **Progression of models of Motor cars** : The credit of inventing the first motor car goes to a French person. He invented the first internal combustion motor car in 1808. After him, another successful discovery of the first petrol car was invented by a German engineer, Karl Benz in 1885. And, then finally a diesel motor car was invented in 1890's by Rudolf Diesel.

- C. **Birds and their wing span** : Birds are amazing animals which can fly around in the sky and there exist different types of species according to different environmental conditions. Birds have wings of different lengths, some have short wings whereas some have very large wings. The wingspan of a bird is the distance from one wingtip to another wingtip. In the living birds, the wandering albatross has the largest wingspan ranging from 8 ft to 11 ft.

- D. **Migratory birds-tracing their flights** : The birds migrate due to various reasons. The two most important reasons being the food and nesting conditions. Due to the scarcity of food in one location to the regions of high resources of food. But a very common fact is known about migrating birds is that two-thirds of the birds prefer flying in the nights.

SCAN QR CODE

JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL



26. Whom did the young seagull beg to bring him some food?

- (a) his father (b) his mother
(c) his brothers (d) his sister

Ans : 2006
(b) his mother

27. The young seagull dived at the fish maddened by

- (a) hunger (b) heat
(c) tiredness (d) sleep

Ans : 2006
(a) hunger

28. How did the young seagull fall into the air?

- (a) upward (b) downward
(c) both a and b (d) none of these

Ans : 2005
(c) both a and b

29. The seagull dived towards his mother because :

- (a) a strong wind pushed him
(b) he wanted to fly
(c) he wanted the fish in his mother's beak
(d) he wanted to reach his mother.

Ans : 2005
(c) he wanted the fish in his mother's beak

30. He stood at the edge of the ledge on one leg and closed his eyes because :

- (a) he was feeling sleepy
(b) it was a natural habit of seagulls
(c) he wanted to get the attention of
(d) he was afraid of the sea his family

Ans : 2005
(c) he wanted to get the attention of

Short Answer Type Questions

1. Flying is a natural act in birds. Then why was the young seagull 'exhausted by the strange exercise'? Justify the given statement with reference to baby seagull's fear.

Ans : 2024
The seagull did not have the courage to fly. Hence, he used to make excuses for not flying. He felt certain that his wings were too weak to support him. He had no courage to flap his wings and failed to muster up the courage to take the plunge.

2. The young seagull "failed to muster up courage to take that plunge". In what way can the reference to the 'plunge' here be both literal and metaphorical? Explain.

Ans : 2023
'Plunge' means to jump or dive immediately. Here, it literally refers to the dive the seagull had to make in order to take its first flight. Metaphorically, it refers to the faith in its family members or the leap of faith it had to take, trusting its wings to support its body to be able to fly.

3. Explain how hunger is nature's strongest motivator in the story, 'His First Flight'.

Ans : 2023
In the story, 'His First' Flight, the seagull was afraid to fly until his intense hunger made him forget his fear. As his hunger deepens, his fear of flying becomes secondary to his overpowering desire to find food. This is why when his mother offers him a piece of fish he musters the courage to jump off the cliff and dive at the food, and thus take his first flight.

4. Validate the given statement with reference to baby seagull's fear. 'Fear doesn't exist anywhere else other than one's mind.'

Ans : 2022
The baby seagull was afraid to fly off the ledge even after his siblings had flown off without facing any problems. He was afraid to take the leap because he felt that his wings would not support him. A seagull's wings are meant to support it and therefore, the fear just lay in his mind.

5. Describe the young seagull's emotions when he flew over the sea.

Ans : 2021
He was no longer afraid to fly. Although he felt a bit dizzy initially. Soon he was soaring upwards and shouting with happiness after his successful first flight.

6. "The young seagull was alone on his ledge." How far do you think this condition was by his choice?

Ans : 2021
His parents cajoled him to take flight with them but he could not muster up the courage and stayed there whereas his family members flew across the sea onto the plateau.

7. What trick did the young seagull's mother play to make him fly from his ledge?

Ans : 2020
The young seagull's mother was very clever. She stood on a little hump on the plateau and tore at the piece of fish. The sight of food maddened him. His mother picked up a piece of fish and was flying across to him. She halted from time-to-time with a piece of fish in her beak. Thus maddened by hunger he dived.

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

12. What were his parents teaching his brothers and sisters?

- (a) to perfect the art of flying
- (b) to skim the waves
- (c) to dive for fish
- (d) all of the above

Ans :

2010

- (d) all of the above

13. What were the young seagull's brothers and sister doing around him?

- (a) curveting
- (b) banking
- (c) soaring
- (d) all of these

Ans :

2010

- (d) all of these

14. Who is the narrator of the lesson 'His First Flight'?

- (a) Fredrick Forsyth
- (b) Cynthia Moss
- (c) Liam O'Flaherty
- (d) None of these

Ans :

2010

- (c) Liam O'Flaherty

15. Nobody had come near the young seagull for the last :

- (a) ten hours
- (b) twelve hours
- (c) twenty hours
- (d) twenty-four hours

Ans :

2010

- (d) twenty-four hours

16. Select the most appropriate option for the following:

devour : guzzle : nibble : _____

- (a) chew
- (b) savour
- (c) peck
- (d) gulp

Ans :

2009

- (c) peck

17. Who was alone on the ledge?

- (a) Young Seagull
- (b) Mother Seagull
- (c) Father Seagull
- (d) None of these

Ans :

2009

- (a) Young Seagull

18. Which of the following mirrors the use of the literary device in "shrieking shrilly"?

- (a) sparkling saga
- (b) singing soft
- (c) slippery sloppily
- (d) sneeze silently

Ans :

2009

- (d) sneeze silently

19. Why was he afraid to fly?

- (a) he was a coward

- (b) he was afraid his wings will not support him
- (c) he was afraid that everyone would judge him
- (d) both a and b

Ans :

2008

- (b) he was afraid his wings will not support him

20. Why did his mother stop midway while giving him the fish?

- (a) she was mad at him
- (b) to push him to fly out of hunger
- (c) she didn't want to give him the fish
- (d) she got tired

Ans :

2007

- (b) to push him to fly out of hunger

21. What did the seagull pretend was happening to him so that he could take his first flight?

- (a) he was unconscious
- (b) he was falling down the cliff
- (c) he was falling asleep
- (d) He lost his balance

Ans :

2007

- (c) he was falling asleep

22. Who was there on the ledge with the young seagull for the last twenty-four hours?

- (a) his two brothers
- (b) his sister
- (c) his parents
- (d) he was alone

Ans :

2007

- (d) he was alone

23. How did the young seagull feel to fly?

- (a) afraid
- (b) enjoyed
- (c) willing
- (d) all of these

Ans :

2007

- (a) afraid

24. His parents were perfecting his brothers and sisters in the art of

- (a) flying
- (b) hunting
- (c) swimming
- (d) chirping

Ans :

2006

- (a) flying

25. Only one family member was looking at the young seagull. It was his :

- (a) father
- (b) mother
- (c) brother
- (d) sister

Ans :

2006, 2003

- (b) mother

8. How did the seagull get over his fear of flight ?
How did he express his joy ?

Ans :

2017

The young seagull was afraid of flying in the beginning. His wings were bigger than his two brothers and sister, but he was terrified and frightened whenever he attempted to fly. On seeing them flying, he would try in vain to thrust himself forcibly in space and failing which made him desperate. They taunted him of being a coward and soon left him alone to starve. When he was starving for a day, his mother came to him with a piece of fish in her beak. When she reached near him, she stopped in the air with a piece of fish almost within the reach of his beak. Being too much hungry, he dived at the fish, but his mother swooped upwards. Getting impatient, he found his wings spread and was more confident now. He was joyous of his first flight and felt triumphant and amused. He continued to fly in the sky till he got tired and felt weak due to hunger and dropped himself on the surface of the sea.

9. Describe the methods used by the seagull family to help the young seagull come over his fear and fly.

Ans :

2012, 2002

The young seagull was unable to muster up courage to fly. His father and mother had come around calling him shrilly, unbraiding him and threatening to leave him to starve on his ledge unless he flew away but he did not move. His whole family had even walked about on the big plateau midway down the opposite cliff all morning taunting him for his cowardice to motivate him to fly. His mother was also tempting him by tearing a piece of fish lying at her feet so that the sight of food, which was maddening him, may make him overcome his fear and fly. He was still unable to do so and kept crying and begging her to bring him some food.

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

That was twenty four hours ago. Since then nobody had come near him. The day before, all day long, he had watched his parents flying about with his brothers and sister, perfecting them in the art of flight, teaching them how to skim the waves and how to dive for fish. He had, in fact, seen his elder brother catch his first herring and devour it, standing on a rock, while his parents circled around raising a proud cackle.

- Whom does 'he' represent in the given extract?
(a) The seagull (b) The pigeon
(c) The parrot (d) The pilot
- What were his parents teaching his brothers and sisters?
- What had 'his' elder brother done?
- Which word would correctly substitute 'eat quickly', in the given sentence from the extract?

Did the hungry beggar eat quickly all that was given to him?

Ans :

2018

- (a) The seagull
- The little seagull's parents were teaching the art of flying, the art of skimming the waves and diving for fish to his brothers and sisters.
- 'His' elder brother has caught his first herring.
- devour

FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS

DOWNLOAD NODIA APP

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

That was twenty-four hours ago. Since then nobody had come near him. The day before, all day long, he had watched his parents flying about with his brothers and sister, perfecting them in the art of flight, teaching them how to skim the waves and how to dive for fish. He had, in fact, seen his older brother catch his first herring and devour it, standing on a rock, while his parents circled around raising a proud cackle. And all the morning the whole family had walked about on the big plateau midway down the opposite cliff taunting him with his cowardice.

- Complete the statement with the best possible option available to you:
Nobody had come near the young seagull as his parents were _____
(a) busy circling the sea, enjoying the flight
(b) teaching his siblings, the art of flying
(c) raising cackle sounds, having fun
(d) standing on the rock, eating fish
- What had the seagull done in the last twenty-four hours? Answer in about 40 words.
- Fill up the blank in the following sentence.
The seagull's family taunted him because they were _____

8. How was the young seagull treated by his parents initially when he could not muster up the courage to fly from his ledge?

Ans :

2020

His parents taunted at him for his cowardice. His two brothers and a sister were lying on the plateau dozing. His father was preening the feathers on his white back. Only his mother was looking at him. His mother was flying across him with a piece of fish in her beak. He dived at the fish and fell outward and inward into space.

9. What did the young seagull do to attract the attention of his mother ?

Or

While alone on ledge, how did the little seagull try to draw the attention of his family ?

Ans :

2019

He came slowly up to the brink of the ledge and stood on one leg. He hid the other leg under his wing. He closed one eye and then the other and pretended to be falling asleep. Thus he tried to attract the attention of his mother.

10. What was the young seagull's experience during his first flight ?

Ans :

2018, 2010

Falling from the ledge, the seagull was terrified, but soon he started soaring, and then, flying. He forgot that he didn't always know how to fly. His fear soon turned into confidence, and then into amusement. As he was landing, he was again afraid, but, soon became at ease. It was a memorable first flight.

11. What was mother seagull's plan in holding a piece of fish a little away from young seagull's reach ?

Ans :

2017

Mother was much worried about young seagull's cowardice. Thus she held a piece of fish a little away to tempt and excite young seagull. Mother's plan was successful in encouraging young seagull to fly.

12. How did the seagull's feelings change when he realised he could not fly ?

Ans :

2016

When seagull realised that he could not fly, he bent his head and ran back to the ledge where he slept at night. As his courage to fly failed, he watched his parents flying with his brothers and sister. Though he was called coward but he did not move.

13. How were the seagull's parents helping his brothers and sister in "perfecting the art of flight" ?

Ans :

2015

The young seagull's wings were bigger, but his brothers and sister had already started flying before him. Their parents were now teaching them to be perfect in the art of flying. They were being taught how to skim the waves and how to dive for fish.

14. What was his family doing on the plateau when the seagull failed to draw their attention ?

Ans :

2014

On the plateau, the two brothers and the sister of the young seagull were half-asleep with their heads sunk into their necks. Meanwhile, his father was preening feathers with his beak on his white back. Only his mother was looking at him.

15. How did seagull's family react when he dropped his legs to stand on the green sea ?

Ans :

2014, 2003

After flying, the seagull felt tired and weak with hunger. So, he dropped his legs to stand on the green sea and soon started floating seeing his accomplishment, his entire family came around him screaming and praising him. They were even offering him scraps of dog-fish.

16. How did Seagull feel when he took the flight finally?

Ans :

2011

The young Seagull was able to muster courage at the sight of food. Then he felt his wings open and flutter. He was happy to soar higher. He felt triumphant and whole family joined him.

17. Young seagull tried to fly but he could not. Why was he afraid to fly ?

Or

Why could the young seagull not fly with his brothers and sisters ?

Ans :

2009, 2002

The young seagull felt certain that his wings were too weak to support him. He had no courage to flap his wings. Even when each one of his brothers and sisters whose wings were much shorter than his, ran to the brink of the ledge, flapped their wings and flew away, he failed to muster up courage to take that plunge.

18. What had the young seagull watched his parents doing the day before?

Ans :

2008

The day before the young seagull had watched his parents flying about with his brothers and sisters, perfecting in the art of flying and teaching them how to skim the waves and how to dive for fish.

19. When did the seagull get over his fear of flying over the sea?

Ans :

2007

The seagull was afraid of flying over the sea because he thought that he would drown. His family decided to motivate him by leaving him unattended. The mother tore at a piece of fish that lay at her feet now and then in his front. Since the seagull was too hungry, he was compelled to attempt his first flight in order to get food. He was successful. This is when he got over his fear of flying over the sea.

20. Describe the young seagull's expression when he saw his mother with food.

Ans :

2006

The young seagull uttered a joyful scream because he thought that his mother was bringing food for him. He tried to come nearer to her as she flew across. But his mother was just trying to arouse his hunger and motivate him to fly.

21. How did the young seagull and his family celebrate his first flight?

Ans :

2005

When the young seagull started flying and got over his fear, his family screamed around him out of joy. They praised him and offered him scraps of dog-fish out of delight as he made a successful attempt. The young seagull had made a successful maiden flight thus he was appreciated by his family.

22. Why did the seagull not go with the rest of his family?

Ans :

2002

The seagull did not go with his family because he had been afraid to fly. He had attempted to flap his wings but he felt certain his wings would not support him above the vast sea. So he stayed on the ledge alone.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. Briefly bring out the contrast between the young seagull's initial attempts to fly and his first successful flight.

Or

Compare and contrast the young seagull in the beginning and at the end of the lesson.

Ans :

2024

The young seagull's initial attempts to fly were marked by fear and hesitation. He was afraid of the height and the thought of falling. He would flap his wings timidly, but he could not bring

himself to take off. His parents tried to encourage him, but he was too scared to listen.

On the other hand, his first successful flight was a completely different experience. He was no longer afraid. He felt the wind in his wings and the sun on his face. He soared through the air with confidence and joy. He had finally overcome his fear and achieved his dream of flying.

The contrast between the young seagull's initial attempts to fly and his first successful flight is a testament to the power of determination and perseverance. When the young seagull was afraid, he could not fly. But when he overcame his fear, he was able to achieve anything he set his mind to.

The story of the young seagull is a reminder that we all have the potential to achieve our dreams, no matter how difficult they may seem. All we need is the courage to face our fears and the determination to keep trying.

2. The young seagull's parents wanted him to fly, like his brothers and sister. How could the young seagull's newly flying siblings (Brother 1, Brother 2 and Sister) have motivated him? Write a brief conversation between them.

Ans :

2021

Dialogue writing between the seagull and his siblings.

Seagull : I can't fly, I will fall down into the water.

Brother 1 : It's so easy, just look at me and repeat the same way.

Brother 2 : Come running from that end then dive it would be easy.

Seagull : I tried multiple times but I am unable to do.

Sister : Hold my hand and we will take the plunge together.

Brother 1 : let's all hold hands and fly together.

Seagull : No, I can't fly.

3. A noted author, Richard Bach wrote – "For most gulls, it was not flying that mattered, but eating. For this gull, though, it was not eating that mattered, but flight." Evaluate this statement with respect to the young seagull.

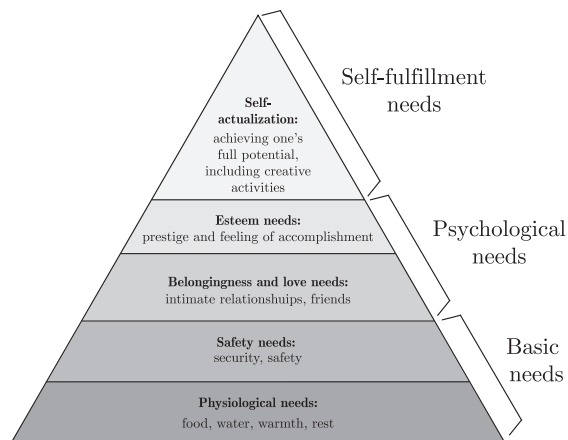
Ans :

2021

Flying comes naturally in most birds, but here in this story the seagull was reluctant to fly and remained hungry due to his fear. Later on, hunger overpowered the fear and he jumped to grab the insect in his mother's beak. The fear of flight faded at the sight of his food and compelled him to take his first flight. Thus, it can be said that the argument given in the question does not

apply even to this seagull. As it was eating that mattered more for this seagull too.

4. Look at the image of Maslow's hierarchy of needs. Abraham Maslow devised a theory of motivation that shows the basic needs at the bottom, and more advanced needs as you move up. It includes the theory that fundamental needs must be met before an individual can be motivated to achieve higher-order needs. Where in this hierarchy of needs, would you locate the young seagull's first flight? Justify your response.



Ans :

2021

As the German proverbs say- 'Wait is a hard word to the hungry' and 'A hungry belly has no ears'. The young gull's first flight would be located at the bottom of the pyramid under physiological needs. A hungry living being cannot think of anything else except an eatable. It is evident from the story that anyone can put even his life to risk to satisfy the fire in his stomach. Similarly, the seagull did not care about his life and forgot his fear while jumping off the ledge to take hold of the fish in her mother's beak to satisfy his hunger.

5. Look at the given image of different parenting styles and what they signify. Which of the given parenting styles would you attribute to the young seagull's parents?

THE FOUR PARENTING STYLES		
	Sensitive & Responsive	Stern & Punitive
Demanding	Authoritative	Authoritarian
Doesn't Enforce Limits	Permissive	Uninvolved

Ans :

2021

After reading the story 'His first flight' we can conclude that the father displayed an uninvolved parenting style as he was not much concerned

about the child.

While the mother can be termed as authoritative. On one side she was adamant about making his child learn the art of flying and removing his fear of flying. On the other side, the next day when the young seagull was looking for some food, the mother seemed worried about him and took a fish in her beak to give to the young gull. But she knew that it was the right time to teach him so instead of spoon-feeding she played a trick with him. She halted just a few steps away from the seagull. The sight of food maddened the hungry seagull and he jumped towards her which worked like magic and he could take up his first step towards flying.

6. 'All parental acts are for the betterment of the children.' Justify this statement by taking points from the lesson 'His First Flight'.

Ans :

2018

Parents always play a pivotal role for the betterment of the children. They try that their child should be able to learn the things in the best way. In this lesson we find that seagull's family encouraged him to fly. His wings were bigger as compared to his two brothers and sister, but he could not gather courage. His parents scolded him shrilly and threatened to leave him alone to starve. Next day, when he saw his mother with a piece of fish in her beak, he begged her for food. She flew across to him, but stopped in the air with a piece of fish within reach of his beak. When he dived at the fish, she swooped upwards. So it was the shrewd act of parents which made him come out of fear and take up first flight.

7. How was the young seagull able to learn floating on the sea ?

Ans :

2017

After flying for sometime, the young seagull came near the sea. He was flying straight over it. He saw a vast green sea beneath him, with little ridges moving over it. His brothers and sister had already landed on the sea. They were calling in a shrill voice and beckoning to him.

Then he dropped his legs to stand on the green sea. But his legs sank into it. He screamed with fright and attempted to rise again flapping his wings. But he was tired and weak with hunger and he could not rise, exhausted by the strange exercise. So, his feet sank into the green sea, and then his belly touched it and he sank no farther. Now, he was screaming with happiness, floating on the sea. As a result, his family was praising him and offering food to him.

- iii. the mother instead of offering the piece of fish to the seagull. halted mid-air.
- iv. (a) hunger and desperation

5. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

Then he flapped his wings once and he soared upwards. "Ga, ga, ga, Ga, go. ga, Gaw-col-ah' his mother swooped past him, her wings making a loud noise. He answered her with another scream'. Then his father flew over him streaming. He saw his two brothers and his sister flying around him curveting and banking and soaring and diving. Then he completely forgot that he had not always been able to fly, and commended himself to dive and soar and curve, shrieking shrilly.

- i. How would you interpret the mother's response in 'Ga, go, go, Ga, ga, ga, Gatv-col-ah' according to the passage?
- (a) She was appreciative that the young seagull had finally overcome his fear.
- (b) She was unhappy with his half-hearted efforts.
- (c) She was admonishing for taking too long to fly.
- (d) She was appreciating her other children.
- ii. In the statement. 'he commended himself to in, and soar and cunt, shrieking shrilly.' the meaning of the word 'commended' would be
-
- (a) complimented (b) entrusted
- (c) celebrated (d) applauded
- iii. How did the little seagull and his family react to his maiden flight?
- iv. Match the figures of speech in Column (A) with their appropriate and corned examples taken from the extract in Column (B) and choose the correct option from the alternatives gives below.

	Column A		Column B
1.	Alliteration	(a)	screaming, shrieking
2.	Repetition	(b)	banking, curveting
3.	Onomatopoeia	(c)	shrieking shrilly
4.	Movement words	(d)	then, and

- (a) 1 - (c), 2 - (d), 3 - (b), 4 - (a)
- (b) 1 - (c), 2 - (d), 3 - (a), 4 - (b)
- (c) 1 - (d), 2 - (c), 3 - (a), 4 - (b)
- (d) 1 - (a), 2 - (b), 3 - (c), 4 - (d)

Ans :

2009

- i. She was appreciative that the young seagull had finally overcome his fear
- ii. (b) entrusted
- iii. The seagull shrieked, soared, dived, and curved about. The young seabird was so overwhelmed with joy that he completely forgot that he had not always been able to fly. His family flew in circles and cackled loudly to show their appreciation and pride.
- iv. (i) 1 - (c), 2 - (d), 3 - (b), 4 - (a)

II

BLACK AEROPLANE

1. INTRODUCTION

The Story "Black Aeroplane" is written by Frederick Forsyth. It is about a pilot who is on his flight back home to England. The story narrates the incident that happens on the way and how he escapes death miraculously.

2. CHARACTERS

The Narrator

A pilot who was flying his Dakota aeroplane over France back to England lost his way due to storm.

The Unknown Friend

A pilot who was flying the black aeroplane helped the narrator to find the way in the storm.

The Woman

The working woman in the control centre whom the narrator asked about the unknown friend of the black aeroplane.

3. SUMMARY

The Trip to England

The narrator was flying his aeroplane at night over France to England. He was eager to meet his family. He was dreaming of his holiday. The stars were shining in the clear sky. Even the city-Paris could be seen down below. He called Paris Control to get instructed about the way. He was instructed to turn 12 degrees West.

- iv. Which of the words given in the options cannot be used to replace the underlined word in- He had, in fact, seen his older brother catch his first herring and devour it, standing on a rock,...'?

- (a) to gulp (b) to destroy
(c) to demolish (d) to wolf down

Ans :

2013

- i. (b) teaching his siblings, the art of flying
ii. In the last twenty-four hours, the seagull had watched how to skim the waters and dive for fish.
iii. trying their best to encourage and persuade him to fly.
iv. (b) to destroy

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

The sun was now ascending the sky, blazing on his ledge that faced the south. He felt the heat because he had not eaten since the previous nightfall. He stepped slowly out to the brink of the ledge, and standing on one leg with the other leg hidden under his wing, he closed one eye, then the other and pretended to be falling asleep. Still they took no notice of him. He saw his two brothers and his sister lying on the plateau dozing with their heads sunk into their necks. His father was preening the feathers on his white back.

- i. Which one of the options is not even remotely the meaning of the word 'pretended' in the extract?
(a) discovered (b) play-acted
(c) feigned (d) invented
- ii. Complete the statement with the best option. The young seagull was ray upset as be -----
(a) he was starved.
(b) was not able to train with his brothers and sisters.
(c) was being ignored by his father.
(d) he was feeling very hot.
- iii. Why was the entire seagull family ignoring their youngest? Answer in about 40 words.
- iv. 'Preening feathers' is an action common to birds when they use their beaks to -----

Ans :

2012

- i. (a) discovered
ii. (a) he was starved.

- iii. The seagull's family was ignoring their youngest on purpose. They wanted him to shed his fears and therefore, tried every trick to make him fly. They screamed, scolded, threatened, and taunted him for cowardice and even let him starve to drive him to desperation.

- iv. groom or clean themselves.

4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"Ga, ga, ga," he cried begging her to bring him some food. "Gaw-col-ah," she screamed back derisively. But he kept calling plaintively, and after a minute or so he uttered a joyful scream. His mother had picked up a piece of the fish and was flying across to him with it. He leaned out eagerly, tapping the rock with his feet, trying to get nearer to her as she flew across. But when she was just opposite to him, she halted, her wings motionless, the piece of fish in her beak almost within reach of his beak. He waited a moment in surprise, wondering why she did not come nearer, and then, maddened by hunger, he dived at the fish.

- i. Which of the given options is best suited to complete the following statement?
The mother's tone was derisive because
(a) the young seagull refused to bunt for itself.
(b) the seagull was behaving in a cowardly fashion for no reason.
(c) the other siblings had long learned to fly.
(d) the seagull's stubbornness was irritating.
- ii. Why was the young seagull overjoyed to see his mother flying towards him? Answer in about 40 words.
- iii. The anticlimactic moment in the passage is when -----
- iv. What finally pushed the seagull to overcome his fears?
(a) hunger and desperation
(b) fear of scolding from his parents
(c) taunts from his siblings
(d) a sense of shame and guilt

Ans :

2010

- i. (d) the seagull's stubbornness was irritating.
ii. The young seagull was overjoyed to see his mother coming towards him because he had not eaten anything for long and she was carrying a piece of fish for him.

Writing

1. Write a short composition on your initial attempts at learning a skill. You could describe the challenges of learning to ride a bicycle or learning to swim. Make it as humorous as possible.

Ans :

Learning to Ride a Bicycle

I learned to ride bicycle when I was ten year old. In my childhood bicycle always fascinated me. I wanted to ride bicycle when I saw other boys going to school on their bicycles. Then my father gave me one as a birthday present. He helped me learn it in my street. But I found it difficult to learn at first. I could not make balance. I could not see ahead as my eyes glued to the paddles. My father told me to see ahead. He held the bicycle from behind. Then one day he left it and I found that I was riding it independently. But I fell down after going a metre away. After that I was always afraid of falling. My father insisted me not to be afraid. I tried. I fell down several times. Finally my fear began to lessen. Now I could ride a few metre without the help of my father. Then I made myself perfect. And the day came when I went to school on bicycle. Indeed, learning to ride bicycle was a wonderful experience.

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS**Multiple Choice Type Questions**

1. The young seagull had _____ brothers and a sister.

(a) Three (b) Two
(c) Five (d) Four

Ans :

2021

(b) Two

2. The young seagull was afraid of

(a) Walking (b) Running
(c) Flying (d) Sleeping alone

Ans :

2021

(c) Flying.

3. The young seagull had lack of

(a) Courage (b) Morality
(c) Fear (d) Enthusiasm

Ans :

2020

(a) Courage.

4. _____ Day/days passed, but nobody had come near him to help.

(a) One (b) Four
(c) Two (d) Three

Ans :

2020

(a) One.

5. The young seagull was feeling more heat because

(a) He was facing east
(b) He was afraid
(c) He was hungry
(d) It was a too sunny day

Ans :

2016

(c) He was hungry.

6. Only _____ was looking at the young seagull.

(a) Brothers (b) Mother
(c) Sister (d) Father

Ans :

2016, 2011

(b) Mother.

7. The young seagull cried _____ to bring him some food.

(a) Gew go ga (b) Ga Ga Ga
(c) Go ga ge (d) Gaw colah

Ans :

2016

(b) Ga Ga Ga.

8. What did his parents threaten him with if he didn't flew away?

(a) to never talk to him (b) to punish him
(c) to starve him (d) to abandon him

Ans :

2014

(c) to starve him

9. What food did the seagull's mother get for it?

(a) earthworms (b) fish
(c) insects (d) rodents

Ans :

2011

(b) fish

10. What did the seagull pretended?

(a) Running Fast (b) Falling Asleep
(c) Crying (d) None of these

Ans :

2011

(b) Falling Asleep

11. Why was the seagull exhausted?

(a) Due to running fast
(b) Due to strange exercise
(c) Due to Crying
(d) None of these

Ans :

2011

(b) Due to strange exercise

Fear of Storm

Everything was going well before he saw the storm clouds and Paris was about 150 kilometers behind him. It was natural for the narrator to panic. He knew it was not possible to fly up and over those storm clouds. He was confused for a moment.

A Risky but Brave Decision of the Narrator

As everything was fearful at the moment, the narrator decided to risk and flew into the storm, but everything went out of control. The compass as well as other instruments stopped working. He was unable to see outside the plane as the plane was jumping and twisting in the air. He tried to contact Paris Control but couldn't. He was lost in the storm.

A Black Aeroplane Appeared

Suddenly, the narrator saw another black aeroplane in the storm by his side without lights on its wings. It seemed strange to him but he was glad to see another person in the storm.

The pilot of another plane waved at him and signalled to follow so he did that because he did not have other option except it.

A Safe Landing

The narrator flew for half an hour which was quite strange to him as he had fuel only for five or ten minutes. He felt fearful but suddenly he saw two bright lines in front of him. It was a runway. He was able to land safely which gave him a sigh of relief. It was just like a miracle for him.

The Greatest Surprise

The narrator came out from his plane to thank the pilot of the black aeroplane but he was shocked to see no one there. He went to Control Tower and asked the woman about the place and the black aeroplane. Hearing his words the woman laughed and said that there was no other plane except his. It was a big surprise to the narrator. He was dumbfounded as he had no explanation for the miracle.

4. WORD MEANINGS

1. Countryside - rural side
2. Immediately - at once
3. Twisted - moved sideways
4. Strange - unusual or surprising
5. Strangely- in a strange manner
6. Landed - came down
7. Dakota - a type of plane
8. Looking forward - to be eager
9. Switch over - change

10. Straight into - directly into
11. Waved - signalled
12. Compass - instrument for telling directions.
13. Runway - a strip of hard ground along which aircrafts take off and land.
14. Frightened - terrified, afraid
15. Followed - chased
16. Obedient - one who is ready to follow order/ one who obeys
17. Glad - happy
18. Radar - a system for detecting the presence, directions, distance and speed of aircraft, ships and other objects by sending out pulses of radio waves which are reflected of the object back to the source.

NODIA

5. MESSAGE

The story conveys the message that courage is guided by faith. The pilot of the Dakota plane was an experienced flier but he panicked when he got engulfed by the black storm. Still, he kept trying to reach to safety with the help of the guiding instruments in his plane.

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS**Thinking About the Text**

1. "I'll take the risk." What is the risk ? Why does the narrator take it ?

Ans :

The narrator who is the pilot of Dakota plane was flying from Paris to London. He was dreaming to enjoy the weekend holidays with his family. The weather was fine and he could reach England in time to enjoy the breakfast.

When he came 150 kilometers from Paris, he suddenly encountered huge black clouds like mountains. He had limited fuel just enough to reach England. He could neither fly above the clouds nor go round them to avoid them.

He could either go back to Paris or take of going through the dark clouds. The risk was getting lost in the storm clouds.

The narrator decided to take the risk as he wanted to spend the weekend with his family.

2. Describe the narrator's experience as he flew the aeroplane into the storm.

Ans :

As the narrator entered the storm clouds, his aeroplane started jumping and twisting. He became nervous when he found his radio, compass

and other instruments gone dead. It was pitch dark all around. He did not know which direction to go. He could not contact the Paris control room. He was lost in the storm.

Just then he saw a black aeroplane without lights. Its pilot signalled him to follow him. He followed him like an obedient child and came safely out of the storm clouds.

3. Why does the narrator say, “I landed and was not sorry to walk away from the old Dakota”?

Ans :

The old Dakota had given the narrator jitters. It shoot horribly, jumped and twisted in the storm. Moreover, its compass, radio and other such instruments had stopped working. It was no longer safe to fly it. So, the narrator was not sorry to walk from it after landing safely.

4. What made the woman in the control centre look at the narrator strangely ?

Ans :

2012, 2009

The question that the narrator asked her, “Who was the other pilot ? He wanted to thank him,” - made her look strangely at him as no sensible pilot would fly the plane in the storm. Moreover, no other plane was seen on the radar. His question perhaps, seemed absurd and silly to her.

5. Who do you think helped the narrator to reach safely? Discuss this among yourselves and give reasons for your answer.

Ans :

The narrator was helped by a black aeroplane which had no lights. The pilot in that aeroplane guided the narrator. The narrator followed him until he landed safely . Actually, it was not a real aeroplane or the pilot. It was the imagination of the pilot’s mind which helped him in the time of distress.

Thinking About Language

1. Study these sentences given below :

- They looked like black mountains.
 - Inside the clouds, everything was suddenly black.
 - In the black clouds near me, I saw another aeroplane.
 - The strange black aeroplane was there.
- The word ‘black’ in sentences ‘a’ and ‘c’ refers to the very darkest colour. But in ‘b’ and ‘d’ (here) it means without light/with no light. The word ‘black’ has a variety of meanings in different contexts. For example :

- ‘I prefer black tea’ means ‘I prefer tea without milk’.
- ‘With increasing pollution the future of the world is black’ means ‘With increasing pollution the future of the world is very depressing/without hope’.

Now, try to guess the meanings of the word black in the sentences given below. Check the meanings in the dictionary and find out whether you have guessed right.

- Go and have a bath, your hands and face are absolutely black _____.
- The taxi-driver gave Ratan a black look as he crossed the road when the traffic light was green _____.
- Bombardment of Hiroshima is one of the blackest crimes against humanity _____.
- Very few people enjoy Harold Painter’s black comedy _____.
- Sometimes shopkeepers goods to create false scarcity and then sell these in black _____.
- Villagers had beaten the criminal black and blue _____.

Ans :

- completely dirty
- cursory look, sight
- heinous
- depressing
- high-rate
- very severely.

2. Look at these sentences taken from the lesson you have just read :

- I was flying my old Dakota aeroplane.
- The young seagull had been afraid to fly with them.

In the first sentence the narrator was controlling an aircraft in the air. Another example is : Children are flying kites. In the second sentence the seagull was afraid to move through the air, using its wings.

Match the phrases given under column ‘A’ with their meanings given under column ‘B’ :

	A	B
1.	Fly a flag	Move quickly/suddenly
2.	Fly into rage	Be successful
3.	Fly along	Display a flag on a long pole
4.	Fly high	Escape from a place
5.	Fly the coop	Become suddenly very angry

Ans :

	A	B
1.	Fly a flag	display a flag on a long pole.
2.	Fly into rage	become suddenly very angry
3.	Fly along	move quickly/suddenly
4.	Fly high	be successful
5.	Fly the coop	escape suddenly from a place

3. We know that the word fly (of birds/ insects) means to move through air using wings. Tick the word which has the same or nearly the same meaning :

swoop flit paddle flutter ascend
float ride skim sink dart
hover glide descend soar shoot
spring stay fall sail flap

Ans :

1. Swoop 2. Flit 3. Soar
4. Hover 5. Sail 6. Skim
7. Flutter 8. Glide 9. Spring
10. Flap.

Writing

1. Have you ever been alone or away from house during a thunderstorm? Narrate your experience in a paragraph.

Ans :

Experiencing a Thunderstorm

Yesterday I was on my way back home from my school. It is situated ten kilometers from my house. All of a sudden there came a fierce gale full of dust and sand. It became too violent to move about. I decided to stay in the way under my friend's roof. Very soon it turned very fierce. It took away many roofs of huts in the open. Many trees were uprooted. Nothing was visible in the atmosphere. It became dark with dust and sand. It was of highest density. Those who were standing in the open, had the fear of being blown away. It receded after an hour. I did not find my bicycle. It was seen on a tree. Next day it was known some of the people and their luggages were lost in the storm.

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. When the pilot of the black aeroplane asked the narrator to follow him, in which direction did he turn the aeroplane?

(a) south (b) north
(c) east (d) west

Ans :

2021

(b) north

2. Which of the pilot's instruments stopped working first?

(a) compass
(b) radio
(c) both stopped together
(d) both were working

Ans :

2021

(a) compass

3. What was the name of the aeroplane that the pilot was flying?

(a) Airbus (b) Boeing
(c) Dakota (d) Minnesota

Ans :

2021

(c) Dakota

4. Why didn't the pilot turn the aeroplane back towards Paris?

(a) He wanted to meet his family
(b) He wanted to go on a holiday
(c) He did not want to miss the breakfast
(d) He did not like Paris

Ans :

2020

(c) He did not want to miss the breakfast

5. The compass was not working and:

(a) the radio was dead
(b) he lost his patience
(c) he lost his grip
(d) the steering was upset

Ans :

2020

(a) the radio was dead

6. What risk did the pilot take?

(a) flying back to Paris
(b) missing the breakfast he desired
(c) he took no risk
(d) flying his old Dakota straight into the storm

Ans :

2015

(d) flying his old Dakota straight into the storm

minutes more. I was starting to feel frightened again. But then he started to go down and I followed through the storm.

- i. Which of the following options perfectly justifies this statement. "He knows that I am lost", I thought 'He's trying to help me.'
 - (a) It's true because the stranger-pilot knew how to negotiate the storm quite well.
 - (b) It's false because the stranger-pilot was out to trick the author.
 - (c) Definitely true because the stranger pilot had been sent by God to help the author.
 - (d) It was probably the author's subconscious that was trying to find a way out.
- ii. The author says, "But then he started to go down and I followed through the storm." What happened after this? Answer in about 40 words.
- iii. Read the following options (a)-(c) and identify which figure of speech has been used in the given statement: "I was very happy to go behind the strange aeroplane like an obedient child"?
 - (a) simile
 - (b) contrast
 - (c) consonance
- iv. If this extract were to be filmed, what would be required to bring out the dramatic effect of this moment?

Ans :

2018

- i. (d) It was probably the author's subconscious that was trying to find a way out.
- ii. The author saw the runway and landed his aeroplane safely but the black plane is nowhere to be seen in the sky. It has disappeared as mysteriously as it had appeared. When he asks about the Black aeroplane at the control room, he is informed there that there was no other plane in the sky except his flight that night.
- iii. (a) simile
- iv. The director would be required to rely on CGI or visual effects to bring out the dramatic effect of this moment.

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

Paris was about 150 kilometres behind me when I saw the clouds. Storm clouds. They were huge. They looked like black mountains standing in front of me across the sky. I knew I could not fly

up and over them, and I did not have enough fuel to fly around them to the north or south. "I ought to go back to Paris," I thought, but I Wanted to get home. I wanted that breakfast 'I'll take the risk,' I thought, and flew that old Dakota straight in to the storm.

- i. Why has the author used the word 'Wanted' with a capital 'W'?
- ii. The final decision of the pilot was _____.
 - (a) not to return back to Paris.
 - (b) to take risk and fly straight into the storm.
 - (c) to fly around the clouds from north.
 - (d) fly around the clouds from south.
- iii. From the quotations given below, choose the one that best captures the mindset of the pilot.
 - (a) Life is either a daring adventure or nothing at all.
 - (b) The struggles we endure today will be the 'good old days' we laugh about tomorrow.
 - (c) Life rewarded courage, even when that first step was taken neck-deep in fear.
 - (d) Safety is indeed stability, but it is not progression.
- iv. What did the pilot notice when Paris was already 150 km behind him? Answer in about 40 words.

Ans :

2015

- i. The author wants to emphasize his intense desire to be home.
- ii. (b) to take risk and fly straight into the storm.
- iii. (c) Life rewarded courage, even when that first step was taken neck-deep in fear.
- iv. The aeroplane was stuck amongst huge, black clouds that looked like mountains. The pilot stood at crossroads: he could either fly back to Paris or miss his breakfast with his family. He chose the latter and confronted the storm with whatever fuel was left in the last tank.

4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

After half an hour the strange black aeroplane was still there in front of me in the clouds. Now there was only enough fuel in the old Dakota's last tank to fly for five or ten minutes more/was starting to feel frightened again. But then he started to go down and I followed through the storm. Suddenly I came out of the clouds and saw two long straight

20. Which control station did he contact on his way?

- (a) Paris (b) India
(c) England (d) he didn't contact any

Ans : 2007

(a) Paris

21. "They looked like black mountains standing in front of me across the sky". What looked like black mountains?

- (a) Black mountains
(b) Storm clouds
(c) tall buildings
(d) black plateau

Ans : 2007

(b) Storm clouds

22. What instruments had stopped working during the storm?

- (a) compass (b) radio
(c) both of them (d) none of them

Ans : 2007

(c) both of them

23. What was the pilot not sorry about?

- (a) missing his holiday
(b) driving the plane into the storm
(c) risking the lives of fellow passengers
(d) both b and c

Ans : 2006

(d) both b and c

24. How far was the narrator from Paris when he saw dark clouds in the sky?

- (a) 200 km (b) 100 km
(c) 50 km (d) 150 km

Ans : 2006

(d) 150 km

25. The pilot was not able to _____ anything.

- (a) see (b) hear
(c) speak (d) all of them

Ans : 2005, 2001

(a) see

26. Why was the aeroplane twisting in the air?

- (a) As it was dark night
(b) As it was a stormy night
(c) Due to lightening
(d) None of these

Ans : 2005

(b) As it was a stormy night.

Short Answer Type Questions

1. How would you describe the mood of the story, 'Black Aeroplane' as it begins?

Ans : 2021

As the story begins the narrator is happy and excited to meet his family in England. The stars are shining in the clear sky so he hopes to reach England before morning in his old Dakota plane.

2. Look at the given image. Briefly evaluate the narrator's decision to not go back to Paris with reference to the image.



Ans : 2021

The narrator had realised the approaching danger in the form of the storm if he moves forward. Still, he ignored the threat and decided to continue his flight to get an opportunity to meet his family.

3. Do you think that after his experience, the narrator would be able to truly enjoy the English breakfast he had yearned for? Why/ Why not?

Ans : 2021

Though he landed safely and before the time of the breakfast. His mind was full of certain questions about the black aeroplane and the other pilot. That's why he would not be able to enjoy his meal fully.

4. As a reader, do you feel betrayed or let down in the way the story ends? Validate your opinion.

Ans : 2021

The story ends with huge suspense about the black aeroplane and its pilot. The author should have given a proper ending to the story. Readers are left to make assumptions about the black aeroplane and its pilot who helped the narrator. Yes, I feel betrayed by the story's last part.

5. Based on your reading, would you call the narrator a family man? Justify your stance.

Ans : 2021

It is evident from the story that the narrator took the risk to meet his family. He was excited to stay with them during the vacations. He was eager to join his family at the breakfast table. This shows him to be a family man.

the ways to tackle a storm the way he did. I am grateful to God and the other pilot that I am alive today and living with my family.

3. Imagine that the narrator shared his story with friends and family once he got home. One of them, a spiritual leader, decided to incorporate the story as part of his weekly sermon to the congregation. Another friend, a psychologist, worked the story into his next lecture on survival instinct and crisis management.

Do you think the two interpretations of the story would be different? If so, how?

What insights might the narrator get about his mysterious experience, if he were to attend both the sessions?

Ans :

2021

A spiritual leader would use the story as an example to tell his disciples that God takes care of his children even in extreme conditions. He would preach that God sent an angel to save the narrator. Thus, we should not lose hope and keep trusting God. However, the psychologist friend would describe the incident in a totally different manner. He might say that 'God helps those who help themselves- the mysterious plane was the narrator's soul that drove him out of the storm.

If the narrator happens to listen to both of these workshops he would accept either of the two philosophies as true on the basis of his nature which is not specified in the story. If he is a religious person, he would accept the spiritual friend's opinion. But, he might like to go with the psychologist's interpretation if he is a man of logical thinking.

4. In a parallel world, the pilot of the black aeroplane narrates his adventure in a story titled 'The Old Dakota'. You come across an excerpt from the story, which responds to the ending questions of 'Black Aeroplane' and describes the black aeroplane pilot's decision to fly away after watching the Dakota land. Compose the said excerpt of the story employing relevant details from 'Black Aeroplane'.

Ans :

2021

Last night I caught up in a black storm. I was struggling to find my way out. I had the latest well-equipped aeroplane but the lights went off. Luckily, I did not lose connection with the control room. When I was trying to find out the right direction, I spotted an old Dakota plane flying amidst the black clouds. I followed it and on coming closer I waved at the other pilot to follow me and he did obediently. Almost half an hour later the runway was visible. I continued forward

whereas the Dakota landed there at the airport. I wanted to meet the Dakota pilot to ensure that he was alright but I was in a hurry. I hope he landed safely.

5. Describe the flight of the Dakota aeroplane till it landed safely at the airport.

Or

What did the pilot of the Dakota encounter 150 km away from Paris ? Recount his experience inside the black clouds.

Ans :

2017, 2011, 2009, 2005

Thinking of his holidays and about seeing his family soon, the narrator was flying back to England on his old Dakota DS 088 aeroplane. It was an easy flight until his plane was entrapped in the black clouds and he lost his way. Since he did not have enough fuel, he could not fly up and above the clouds nor he could fly around them towards the north or south. He decided to take risk and flew his Dakota straight into the stormy clouds. After getting lost in the storm, at a distance, he saw a plane flying next to him. The pilot was waving his left hand as if telling him to follow him. With the help of the black aeroplane all of a sudden, the narrator saw his Dakota coming out of the clouds. He was relieved to see the runway of the airport and he landed safely. He enquired about the pilot in the black aeroplane. But the lady at the Control Room informed him that his was the only aeroplane she could see on the screen of radar that night.

6. How did the black aeroplane rescue the first pilot?

Or

How was the pilot of the old Dakota rescued?

Or

How did the pilot of the black aeroplane help the pilot of the old Dakota to land safely at the airport?

Or

The pilot is lost in storm clouds? How does he reach safely?

Or

Who rescued the first pilot of Dakota and how?

Or

What is the significant role played by the black aeroplane in rescuing the Dakota aeroplane ?

Ans :

2015, 2011, 2009, 2008, 2004, 2000

The first pilot was stuck in the thick black clouds. The compass, radio and other instruments in his plane were dead. Then in the black clouds quite near to him, suddenly he spotted another aeroplane. Though he could not see the pilot's

the clouds, he saw two long straight lines of lights in front of him. It was the runway of an airport and so he was glad to find himself safe.

17. The narrator kept calling Paris Control, but they could not hear him. How did the narrator find himself lost in the storm?

Ans :

2011

The narrator kept calling Paris Control, but he did not get any answer as the radio was dead. He had no radio, no compass. The narrator couldn't believe his eyes when he saw that the compass was turning round and round. He understood that they would not work. At once, he found all other instruments were dead too. He was thus lost in the storm.

18. What happened when the narrator turned the aeroplane twelve degrees west towards England?

Ans :

2008

The narrator saw the huge storm clouds that looked like black mountains standing in front of him across the sky.

19. Describe the black clouds as the pilot saw them.

Ans :

2006

The writer was going from France to England. He was flying his Dakota aeroplane. When he had gone 150 kilometres from France, he saw storm clouds. They were huge. They looked like black mountains standing in front of him across the sky.

20. Why did the writer feel frightened once again?

Ans :

2005

The pilot of the black plane waved to the writer to follow him. The writer flew his plane behind him for half an hour. He found that there was enough fuel in his aeroplane only to last for five or ten minutes more. So, he felt frightened once again.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. You have been asked to present an evaluation of the approaches of both, the Baby Seagull and the Pilot who was lost in the clouds, towards achieving their dreams of conquering the skies. Write this presentation draft including your insights, comparing the approaches of both. You may begin this way: One acknowledges that both, the Seagull and the Pilot, wanted to however,

Ans :

2024

One acknowledges that both the Seagull and the Pilot wanted to conquer the skies, yet their approaches were quite different. The Baby

Seagull's story is one of determination, resilience, and unwavering belief in oneself. In stark contrast, the Lost Pilot's journey towards conquering the skies was fraught with uncertainty, confusion, and a lack of direction. Hunger and survival were the baby seagull's primary motivators to overcome fear and take the first flight. The seagull was desperately looking for food, so it had to take a risk despite its initial hesitation and fear. On the other hand, the pilot faced a different challenge in the form of a storm when he realised that he had gotten lost. He decided to put his trust in a mysterious black aeroplane and follow it like a child.

We can learn courage and tenacity from both stories. The pilot took a leap of faith to follow the unknown black aeroplane in the face of difficulty, whereas the seagull flew out of instinctual need.

In conclusion, the journeys of the Baby Seagull and the Lost Pilot offer valuable insights into the importance of determination, resilience, and preparation in achieving one's dreams. While the Baby Seagull's disciplined approach led to eventual success, the Lost Pilot's impulsive actions serve as a cautionary tale of the dangers of recklessness and overconfidence. Ultimately, it is the combination of passion, perseverance, and careful planning that paves the way for success in conquering the skies and beyond.

2. A few days after the experience, the narrator sat with his wife and recalled a long conversation he'd had with his young son the day before. The narrator's son had spoken to him about his close friend, Freddie, and the many ways Freddie helped him. When the narrator suggested inviting Freddie home for lunch, his wife casually said, "Freddie is like your friend in the black aeroplane!"

That night the narrator decided to record his thoughts in his diary to clear his head. As the narrator, write the diary entry.

Ans :

2022

10.00 pm/8th March

Dear diary,

On my last flight from Paris to England I had close contact with death. I thought it was my last flight. But, it was destined differently. When I was about to lose hope a mysterious black aeroplane showed me the right path to escape the storm. I enquired the control room staff about the mysterious plane but nobody confirmed its presence. I owe my life to him. I wish to meet and thank him for saving my life. He is like Freddie, my life saviour. 'The world is so small. I hope to meet him someday. I wish to learn from him

6. James Lane Allen says, "Adversity reveals character". What do you learn about the narrator from the experience? Mention any two traits supported by the textual evidence.

Ans : 2021

The stormy night incident proved that the narrator was a brave man who did not care about his life.

He did not panic and managed to keep calm during the toughest time which is a commendable trait for a pilot. Adversity revealed him to be a brave, patient and obedient man.

7. What did Frederick Forsyth think when he called Paris Control ?

Ans : 2019

On his way to England, Frederick Forsyth called Paris Control. The voice answered him to turn twelve degree west. He did it accordingly. He was happy to be in time for his breakfast. He thought to relish a good English breakfast.

8. What problems did the pilot of Dakota face in the clouds ?

Or

What difficulties did the narrator face while flying in the storm ?

Ans : 2018

The black storm clouds looked like black mountains. The pilot was trapped into the storm. His aeroplane started jumping and twisting in the air. All his instruments including the compass and the radio, etc. became dead. There was no answer from Paris Control. He was lost in the storm.

9. What were the points that went on troubling Frederick's mind on reaching safely at the airport?

Ans : 2017

On reaching the airport he asked the woman at the control centre about the other pilot. But she told that there was none. Still the following points went on troubling him :

1. Who helped him to arrive safely without a compass or a radio ?
 2. Who helped him without any more fuel in tanks ?
 3. Who was the pilot on the strange black aeroplane without lights?
10. Why did the woman in the control room deny having helped the pilot of Dakota?

Ans : 2017

The woman was shocked as she had not seen another aeroplane flying that night. Moreover she could see only one plane on the radar.

11. Why could the woman in the control room not help the pilot of Dakota ?

Ans : 2017

When the pilot of the Dakota plane asked the woman in the control centre about the black aeroplane and its pilot, she could not help him because she had seen no other plane flying that night on the radar.

12. What did the narrator feel while flying over France back to England ?

Ans : 2016

The narrator was flying his Dakota over France and going back to England. The moon was coming up in the east behind him. The stars were shining in the cloudless sky above him. The narrator was happy to be alone in the high sky above the sleeping countryside. He was happy dreaming of his holiday and looking forward to being with his family.

13. At what time and how did the narrator contact Paris Control for the first time ?

Ans : 2015

For the first time, the narrator contacted Paris Control at about one-thirty in the morning. He saw the lights of a big city in front of him. He switched on the radio and said, "Paris Control, Dakota DS 088 here can you hear me ? I'm on my way to England. Over."

14. What response did the narrator get from Paris Control? How did he react thereafter ?

Ans : 2014

The narrator contacted Paris Control and it directed the narrator to turn twelve degrees towards west. He checked the map and the compass and switched over to the second and last full tank. Then, he turned the Dakota twelve degrees west towards England.

15. What sort of aeroplane did the narrator see in the black clouds ?

Ans : 2014

When the narrator was lost in the storm, he saw another aeroplane quite near him. When his plane was in the black clouds, he saw this aeroplane that had no light on its wings. However, the narrator could see it flying next to him through the storm.

16. How did the narrator come out of the clouds and reach safely ?

Ans : 2013, 2009

The narrator was able to come out of the clouds after following the pilot of the black aeroplane. He was very happy to follow the black aeroplane like an obedient child. When the narrator came out of

face, he understood the pilot was signalling with his hand that he (the first pilot) should follow him. He turned his aeroplane slowly towards the black aeroplane and went behind it like an obedient child. After about half an hour he started going down and suddenly they came out of the clouds and the first pilot saw the runway in front of him but the aeroplane that he had followed just disappeared.

7. The narrator made every possible endeavour to save himself. He did not lose hope in dire situations. What values helped him endure the critical situation bravely? Discuss in 100-120 words.

Ans :

2010

The narrator's plane did not have enough fuel. He knew that because of the paucity of fuel, he could not fly up and over the clouds nor he could fly around them to the north or south. But then he decided to take the risk to enter his plane in the clouds because he wanted to go home and wanted to join his family at breakfast. This shows that he was a family-loving person. He was courageous as he knew that it would be risky to enter the clouds, but he did so in order to save his fuel. The narrator blindly followed the other pilot as he thought that the other pilot would guide him to the right, path.

8. Describe the first pilot's experience with the black clouds. How did he get out of these clouds?

Or

Recount the experience of the pilot of the Dakota inside the black clouds.

Or

What did the pilot of the Dakota experience inside the black clouds?

Ans :

2009, 2003, 2000

The black clouds appeared after the first pilot had covered 150 kilometers from Paris. They looked like black mountains standing in front of him across the sky. He knew he did not have enough fuel to fly above or around them. Once he was inside the clouds, everything was suddenly black. It became impossible to see anything outside the plane. The old aeroplane jumped and twisted in the air and the instruments in the plane, including the radio and compass, were dead. The first pilot was totally lost in the storm. Suddenly, in the black clouds, he saw another plane. Though it had no lights on its wings the first pilot could see the other pilot's signalling to follow him. Following him, the first pilot came out of the clouds.

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

The moon was coming up in the east, behind me, and stars were shining in the clear sky above me. There wasn't a cloud in the sky. I was happy to be alone high up above the sleeping countryside.

- What is the significance of not a single cloud in the sky?
- What was the pilot flying?
- How did the pilot feel after calling the Paris Control the first time? Answer in about 40 words.
- State TRUE or FALSE.

None of the following descriptions (a)-(d) correctly corresponds to the extract.

- A debate is a formal discussion on a particular topic, usually with two or more people presenting different viewpoints and arguments.
- A description is the pattern of narrative development that aims to make vivid a place, object, character, or group.
- An aside is a brief comment or remark made by a character directly to the audience, which is not intended to be heard by other characters on stage.
- An abstract refers to a short summary or outline of a longer work.

Ans :

2019

- The significance of not a single cloud in the sky is that the sky is clear.
- The pilot was flying Darkota aeroplane.
- When the pilot called the Paris Control the first time he was happy that he would reach England on time for a big English breakfast. He thought that everything was going well and it was an easy flight.
- FALSE (description (b) correctly corresponds to the extract)

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"He knows that I am lost", I thought 'He's trying to help me.' He turned his aeroplane slowly to the north, in front of my Dakota, so that it would be easier for me to follow him. I was very happy to go behind the strange aeroplane like an obedient child. After half an hour the strange black aeroplane was still there in front of me in the clouds. Now, there was only enough fuel in the old Dakota's last tank to fly for five or ten

7. Why could the writer not see anything outside the aeroplane?

- (a) Because of lightning
- (b) Because it was dark outside
- (c) Because there was bird
- (d) None of these

Ans :

- (b) Because it was dark outside

2015

8. Why was the aeroplane twisting in the air?

- (a) As it was dark night
- (b) As it was a stormy night
- (c) Due to lightning
- (d) None of these

Ans :

- (b) As it was a stormy night.

2013

9. When he looked down, he saw:

- (a) the lights over buildings
- (b) the lights on a tower
- (c) the lights in the houses
- (d) the lights of a big city

Ans :

- (d) the lights of a big city

2013

10. How would you describe the “risk” the narrator took?

- (a) calculated
- (b) impetuous
- (c) unavoidable
- (d) navigable

Ans :

- (b) impetuous

2012, 2010

11. The woman at the control tower confirmed that:

- (a) he could not land
- (b) there was no facility
- (c) there was no other aeroplane
- (d) there was no signal

Ans :

- (c) there was no other aeroplane

2012

12. What risk did the pilot take?

- (a) flying back to Paris
- (b) missing the breakfast he desired
- (c) he took no risk
- (d) flying his old Dakota straight into the storm

Ans :

- (d) flying his old Dakota straight into the storm

2011

13. What was the purpose behind calling Paris Control?

- (a) To know about air traffic

(b) To know the direction of the route

(c) To know the details about landing

(d) None of these

Ans :

(b) To know the direction of the route

2011

14. Who is the narrator of “Black Aeroplane”?

- (a) Liam O’ Flaherty
- (b) Frederick Forsyth
- (c) Roal Dahl
- (d) Paulo Coelho

Ans :

(b) Frederick Forsyth

2010

15. Why could the writer not see anything outside the aeroplane?

- (a) Because of lightning
- (b) Because it was dark outside
- (c) Because there was bird
- (d) None of these

Ans :

(b) Because it was dark outside

2009

16. Select the correct option to fill in the blanks below: risk: risky :: _____ : _____

- (a) danger: dangerously
- (b) hazard: hazardous
- (c) peril: imperilled
- (d) caution : precaution

Ans :

(b) hazard: hazardous

2009

17. The title “Black Aeroplane” is based on?

- (a) the aeroplane that helped the pilot
- (b) the pilot’s aeroplane
- (c) aeroplane in the stormy sky
- (d) none of the above

Ans :

(a) the aeroplane that helped the pilot

2008

18. The pilot was flying from _____ to _____.

- (a) England, France
- (b) England, India
- (c) France, England
- (d) France, India

Ans :

(c) France, England

2008

19. What was the pilot looking forward to?

- (a) to reach his destination
- (b) to meet his family
- (c) his holiday
- (d) both b and c

Ans :

(d) both b and c

2008

lines of lights in front of me. It was a runway! An airport! I was safe! I turned to look for my friend in the black aeroplane, but the sky was empty. There was nothing there. The black aeroplane was gone. I could not see it anywhere.

- i. How would you describe the mental state of the pilot when he saw two long straight lines of lights in front of him?
 - (a) freedom and liberty
 - (b) respite and relief
 - (c) reinforcement and support
 - (d) saturation and stress
- ii. In the statement, 'I turned to look for my friend in the black aeroplane, but the sky was empty' why does the author refer to a stranger as 'my friend'?
- iii. The author calls the black aeroplane 'strange' because _____.
- iv. Find the best synonym for the phrasal verb 'to look for' in the passage from the options given below.

(a) seek out	(b) pursue
(c) rummage through	(d) scan thoroughly

Ans :

2013

- i. (b) respite and relief
- ii. The stranger had saved the narrator from inevitable death by being around and directing him for more than half an hour and leading him to safety.
- iii. it appeared suddenly from nowhere.
- iv. (a) seek out

5. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

I landed and was not sorry to walk away from the old Dakota near the control tower. I went and asked a woman in the control centre where I was and who the other pilot was. I wanted to say 'Thank you'. She looked at me very strangely, and then laughed. "Mother aeroplane? Up there in this storm? No other aeroplanes were flying tonight. Yours was the only one I could see on the radar." So who helped me to arrive there safely without a compass or a radio, and without any more fuel in my tanks? Who was the pilot on the strange black aeroplane, flying in the storm, without lights?

- i. Why was the narrator not sorry to walk away from the old Dakota?
 - (a) The ordeal was finally over and he was relieved.

- (b) He worried that the aircraft which was without fuel might explode.
- (c) He wanted his big English breakfast.
- (d) The Dakota was jinxed according to him.

- ii. The author says that, 'She looked at me very strangely, and then laughed.' What made the woman laugh?
- iii. What is the significance of the so many questions put up by the pilot?
 - (a) They signify that the pilot was going through a big confusion.
 - (b) They signify that the pilot was hallucinating.
 - (c) They signify that it was all an unresolved mystery.
 - (d) They signify that the pilot was superstitious.
- iv. Replace the word 'strangely' in the passage with the most appropriate option from those given below so as it does not change the meaning of the sentence.

(a) abnormally	(b) unusually
(c) weirdly	(d) eerily

Ans :

2012

- i. (a) The ordeal was finally over and he was relieved.
- ii. She laughed at the improbability of the situation.
- iii. (c) They signify that it was all an unresolved mystery.
- iv. (c) weirdly



- (vii) stay in - stay indoors
- (viii) make up - have a good relationship for with
- (ix) hand in - give an assignment (homework) to a person in authority (the teacher)

3. Idioms

Idioms are groups of words with a fixed order, and a particular meaning, different from the meanings of each of their words put together. (Phrasal verbs can also be idioms; they are said to be idiomatic when their meaning is unpredictable.) For example, do you know what it means to 'meet one's match' in English? It means to meet someone who is as good as oneself, or even better, in some skill or quality. Do you know what it means to 'let the cat out of the bag'? Can you guess?

- Here are a few sentences from the text which have idiomatic expressions. Can you say what each means? (You might want to consult a dictionary first.)
 - Our entire class is quaking in its boots

 - Until then, we keep telling each other not to lose heart -----
 - Mr. Keesing was annoyed with me for ages because I talked so much -----
 - Mr. Keesing was trying to play a joke on me with this ridiculous subject, but I'd make sure the joke was on him, -----
- Here are a few other idiomatic expressions that occur in the text. Try to use them in sentences of your own.
 - caught my eye
 - he'd had enough
 - laugh ourselves silly
 - can't bring myself to

Ans :

- (i) become nervous, (ii) not to feel troubled, (iii) for a long time, (iv) to turn the table
-

(i)	Caught my eyes	-	All of a sudden the bare electric wire caught my eyes.
(ii)	He'd had enough	-	When the teachers have had enough we declared strike.

(iii)	Laugh ourselves silly	-	We laughed ourselves silly on seeing a joker.
(iv)	Can't bring myself to	-	I can't bring myself to speak about medicines.

- Do you know how to use a dictionary to find out the meaning of idiomatic expression? Take for example, the expression caught my eyes in the story. Where - under which word - would you look for it in the dictionary?

Look for it under the first word. But if the first word is a 'grammatical' word like a, the, for, etc., then take the next word. That is look for the first 'meaningful' word in the expression. In our example, this is the word caught.

But you won't find caught in the dictionary, because it is the past tense of catch. You'll find caught listed under catch. So you must look under catch for the expression caught my eye. What other expressions with catch are listed in your dictionary?

Note that a dictionary entry usually first gives the meanings of the word itself, and then gives a list of idiomatic expressions using that word. For example, study this partial entry for the noun 'eye' (from the Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary 2005).

Eye

- Noun
- PART OF BODY 1 [C] either of the two organs on the face that you see with : The suspect has dark hair and green eyes.
- ABILITY TO SEE 3 [sing.] the ability to see : A surgeon needs a good eye and a steady hand.
- WAY OF SEEING 4 [C usually sing.] a particular way of seeing sth : He looked at the design with the eye of an engineer.
- OF NEEDLE 5 [C] the hole in the end of a needle that you put the thread through.

IDM be all eyes to be watching sb/sth carefully and with a lot of interest before/in front of sb's (very) eyes in sb's presence; in front of sb : He had seen his life's work destroyed before his very eyes. Be up to your eyes in sth to have a lot of sth to deal with : we're up to our eyes in work.

You have read the expression not to lose heart in this text. Now find out the meanings of these other expressions using the word 'heart'. Write down an example for each.

- break somebody's heart
- close/dear/near to heart

Reasons for Not Writing the Diary

In the summer of 1941 her grandma fell ill. She had to be operated upon. She died in January 1942. She thought of her greatly and she loved her still. They celebrated Anne's birthday in 1942. The four of them were doing well till 20 June 1942. Then Anne wrote her diary again. It was like this.

About Class Affairs

It was the day of the declaration of results. Everyone in her class was in tension. The reason was who would go to the next class and who would not. They had bets with other boys on who would pass and who would not. She found the teachers as the most unpredictable creatures on the earth. She was not worried about her girl-friends and herself. She was sure to make that. But she was not sure about Maths. They could wait and told each other not to lose heart.

Mr. Keesing Gives Extra Work As Punishment

She went along her teachers pretty well. Mr. Keesing was a dull person who taught them Maths. He was always annoyed with her as she talked much. He gave her as a punishment, extra homework. It was in the form of an essay on 'A Chatterbox'. She was unable to understand what she could write about it. She put a slip of it on her school bag. It was to remind herself to write later.

Does the Homework Given Extra

In the evening, she had done her homework. She began thinking of the subject of the essay. She thought to write good points of arguing to prove the necessity of talking. Then she had an idea. She then wrote the three pages to her satisfaction. She wrote that talking was a feature of a student. Her mother also used to talk much. She inherited this trait from her mother. She tried to keep quiet.

Homework As Punishment Given Again

Mr. Keesing read it and laughed. Then he gave her another essay as she didn't stop talking. She was to write it on 'An Incurable' Chatterbox'. She wrote it and it satisfied Mr. Keesing. She did not talk for two lessons. But she started speaking again in the third lesson. He again asked her to write an essay. It was : 'Quack, Quack, Quack, Said Mistress, Chatterbox'. The class too roared into laughter hearing it. She also laughed. She wanted to write something original now. Her friend Sanne was good at poetry. She helped her to write the essay in verse.

Anne's Poem a Joke on Mr. Keesing Himself

Anne had finished her poem. It was about a mother duck and a father swan with three baby

ducklings. The three ducklings were bitten to death by the father. It was because they quacked too much. Luckily, Mr. Keesing took the joke the right way. Mr. Keesing had played a joke on her. But she had had it on him. He read the poem to the class adding his own comments. Since then she had been allowed to talk. She hadn't even been given extra homework. Mr. Keesing continued making jokes in the class.

4. WORD MEANINGS

1. Musings - a period of reflection or thought
2. Adorable - lovable, cute
3. Confide - to tell personal things privately to a person that one trusts
4. Contrary - opposite in nature, direction, or meaning
5. Enhance - intensify, increase, or further improve the quality, value, or extent of.
6. Farewell - an act of parting or of making someone's departure
7. Intended - planned
8. Listless - with no energy or interest
9. Not to lose heart - not be discouraged
10. Old fogey - an old fashioned person
11. Quaking - shake or tremble
12. Roared - laughed (here)
13. Annoyed - slightly angry; irritated
14. Assigned - gave crammed
15. Celebration - festivity
16. Chatterbox - a person who likes to chatter; talkative
17. Convincing - capable of causing someone to believe that something is true or real; powerful
18. Dedication - commitment
19. Depressed -sad
20. Dummies - an object designed to resemble and serve as a substitute for the real or usual one
21. Emigrated - leave one's own country in order to settle permanently in another.
22. Exhausted - completely used up
23. Fault - mistake
24. Forthcoming - imminent
25. Get along - deal with
26. Glances - take a brief or hurried look
27. Grandma - grandmother
28. Incurable - not able to be changed

Ans :

See the use of contract forms

HOB	-	Now where's your husband, mistress ?
MARY	-	In his bed, he's sick, and weary. You won't harm him.
HOB	-	We're going to smash his evil work to pieces. Where's the machine ?
S E C O N D MAN	-	On the table yonder.
HOB	-	Then here's the end of it. (Hob smashes the model, Mary screams)
HOB	-	And now for your husband!
MARY	-	Neighbours, he's a sick man and almost a cripple. You won't hurt him!
HOB	-	He's planning to take away our daily bread ... we'll show him what we think of him and his ways.
MARY	-	You've broken his machine ... You've done enough.

Writing

- Now you know what a diary is and how to keep one. Can you keep a diary for a week recording the events that occur? You may share your diary with your class, if you wish to. Use the following hints to write your diary.

- Though your diary is very private, write as if you are writing for someone else.
- Present your thoughts in a convincing manner.
- Use words that convey your feelings, and words that 'paint pictures' for the reader. Be brief.

'Diary language' has some typical features such as subjectless sentences (Got up late in the morning), sentence fragments without subjects or verbs (...too bad, boring, not good), contracted forms (they're, I've, can't, didn't, etc.), and everyday expressions which people use in speech. Remember not to use such language in more formal kinds of writing.

Ans :

Activity to be done by yourself.

Listening

- Your teacher will read out the following extract from 'The Diary of Samuel Pepys' about the great fire of London! As you listen complete this summary of the happenings.

Summary

This entry in the diary has been made on (a) _____ by (b) _____. The person who told Pepys about the fire was called (c) _____. She called at (d) _____ in the morning. Pepys went back to sleep because (e) _____ Pepys rose again at (f) _____ in the morning. By then about (g) _____ houses had been burned down. The fire had spread to (h) _____ by London Bridge. Pepys then walked to the (i) _____ along with Sir J. Robinson's (j) _____.

Ans :

- (a) 2nd September, (b) Samuel Pepys, (c) Jane, (d) three, (e) it was too early, (f) seven, (g) 300, (h) all fish street, (i) tower, (j) little son.

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

- Why was writing in a diary a strange experience for Anne?
 - she had never written anything before
 - she didn't know how to write
 - neither she nor anyone else would be interested in it later
 - Both a and c

Ans :

2021

- (d) Both a and c

- Who would Anne allow to read her diary?
 - her sister
 - her parents
 - a real friend (if she got one)
 - no one

Ans :

2021

- (c) a real friend (if she got one)

- Why does Anne want to keep a diary?
 - she has no close friends
 - she loves to write
 - she wants people to read about her later
 - she likes the idea of it

Ans :

2020

- (a) she has no close friends

Oral Comprehension Check - 1

1. What makes writing in a diary a strange experience for Anne Frank ?

Ans :

It was because Anne had never written anything before in a diary and it seemed to her that nobody would be interesting later in her musings. Nobody would care to read the thoughts of a 13 years old school girl.

2. Why does Anne want to keep a diary?

Ans :

2019

Anne felt sad and alone as she had no true friends. She had many things to tell. She thought that no one would listen to her patiently. So she felt like writing all her thoughts in a diary.

3. Why did Anne think she could confide more in her diary than in people ?

Ans :

Anne felt bored and listless, She had many thoughts in her mind. But she had nobody to listen patiently. She thought that paper has more patience than people. She could write everything on paper. There was no boundation of time as well. So, Anne thought that she could confide more in her diary than in people.

Oral Comprehension Check - 2

1. Why does Anne provide a brief sketch of her life ?

Ans :

Anne felt that no one would understand anything about her stories written in her diary if she started out writing without giving any background. That is why, she thought it was better to provide a brief sketch of her life in her diary, though she disliked doing that as well.

2. What tells you that Anne loved her grandmother?

Ans :

Anne's birthday was celebrated without her grandmother. Anne was not happy. Grandmother candle was lit along the rest. The birthday was a make up for others. This shows that Anne loved her grandmother.

Oral Comprehension Check - 3

1. Why was Mr. Keesing annoyed with Anne ? What did he ask her to do ?

Ans :

Mr. Keesing was annoyed with Anne because she talked too much in his period. As a punishment he asked her, to write an essay on the topic 'Chartterbox'.

2. How did Anne justify her being a chatterbox in her essay ?

Ans :

Anne was an intelligent girl. She gave in writing the necessity of talking. She argued that talking is a student's trait. She tries to control it but she is helpless since her mother is more talkative than her. It is her inherited trait.

3. Do you think Mr. Keesing was a strict teacher ?

Ans :

In the beginning Mr. Keesing seems to be a hard task master. He wants to ridicule Anne but he himself becomes the victim. Since then he starts participating in jokes with the students.

4. What made Mr. Keesing allow Anne to talk in class ?

Ans :

Mr. Keesing thrice gave Anne a writing job on her talkative nature. On all the three occasions she came out successful. In the third attempt the ball fell on the teacher and he became her victim. Finding himself unsuccessful, he allowed Anne to talk in the class.

Thinking About The Text

1. Was Anne right when she said that the world would not be interested in the musings of thirteen-year old girl ?

Ans :

No, Anne was not right when said this. This work became very Popular, translated into many languages. There have also been several film, television and theatrical Production , based on diary. It has been described as the work of a mature and insight mind.

There are some examples of diary or journal entries in the 'Before You Read' section. Compare these with what Anne writes in her diary. What languages was the diary originally written in ? In what way is Anne's diary different ?

Ans :

Anne's diary is different. She Poured out her heart in it. It was originally written in Dutch Language.

3. Why does Anne need to give a brief sketch about her family ? Does she treat 'Kitty' as an insider or an outsider ?

Ans :

Anne needs to give a brief sketch about her family since no one will understand a word of her stories to kitty if she plunges right in. She treats 'kitty' as an insider.

29. Ingenuity - the quality of being clever, original and inventive
30. Inherited - derived genetically from one's parents or ancestors.
31. Jotted - write (something) quickly
32. Liable - likely (here)
33. Mistress - a woman in a position of authority or control
34. On the surface - apparently
35. Outbursts - a sudden release of strong emotion
36. Pleading - to make an emotional appeal
37. Plunge - jump or dive quickly
38. Proceeded - to begin a course of action
39. Prompted - provoke
40. Ramble - to talk or write at length in a confused or inconsequential ways
41. Ridiculous - deserving or inviting derision or mockery; absurd
42. Several - many
43. Solemn - characterised by deep sincerity
44. Staked - bet, chanced
45. Trait - quality
46. Unpredictable - not able to be predicted; changeable
47. Verse - writing arranged with a metrical rhythm, typically having a rhyme

5. MESSAGE

The chapter conveys the message that a young student should be allowed to interact in class in order to feel joyous, stay mentally fit and have an enjoyable learning experience.

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Activity

1. Do you keep a diary? Given below under 'A' are some terms we use to describe a written record of personal experience. Can you match them with their descriptions under 'B'? (You may look up the terms in a dictionary if you wish.)

(i)	Journal	A book with a separate space or page for each day, in which you write down your thoughts and feelings or what has happened on that day
-----	---------	--

(ii)	Diary	A full record of a journey, a period of time, or an event, written every day.
(iii)	Log	A record of a person's own life and experiences (usually, a famous person)
(iv)	Memoir(s)	A written record of events with times and dates, usually official

Ans :

(i)	Journal	A full record of a journey, a period of time, or an event, written every day.
(ii)	Diary	A book with a separate space or page for each day, in which you write down your thoughts and feelings or what has happened on that day
(iii)	Log	A written record of events with times and dates, usually official
(iv)	Memoir(s)	A record of a person's own life and experiences (usually, a famous person)

2. Here are some entries from personal records. Use the definitions above to decide which of the entries might be from a diary, a journal, a log or a memoir

- (i) I woke up very late today and promptly got a scolding from Mum! I can't help it - how can I miss the FIFA World Cup matches?
- (ii) 10:30 a.m. Went to the office of the Director
01:00 p.m. Had lunch with Chairman
05:45 p.m. Received Rahul at the airport
09:30 p.m. Dinner at home
- (iii) The ride to Ooty was uneventful. We rested for a while every 50 km or so, and used the time to capture the magnificent landscape with my HandyCam. From Ooty we went on to Bangalore.
What a contrast! The noise and pollution of this once-beautiful city really broke my heart.
- (iv) This is how Raj Kapoor found me — all wet and ragged outside R.K.Studios. He was then looking for just someone like this for a small role in Mera Naam Joker, and he cast me on the spot. The rest, as they say, is history!

Ans :

- (i) Diary, (ii) Log, (iii) Journal, (iv) Memoir.

Ans :

1.	Heart-breaking	-	producing great sadness
2.	Homesick	-	missing home and family very much
3.	Blockhead	-	an informal word which means a very stupid person
4.	Law-abiding	-	obeying and respecting the law
5.	Overdo	-	do something to an excessive degree
6.	Day dream	-	think about pleasant things, forgetting about the present
7.	Breakdown	-	an occasion when vehicles/machines stop working
8.	Output	-	something produced by a person, machine or organisation

2. Phrasal Verbs

A phrasal verb is a verb followed by a preposition or an adverb. Its meaning is often different from the meanings of its parts.

Compare the meanings of the verbs get on and run away in (a) and (b) below. You can easily guess their meanings in (a), but in (b) they have special meanings.

- (a) • She got on at Agra when the bus stopped for breakfast.
 • Dev Anand ran away from home when he was a teenager.
- (b) • She's eager to get on in life. (succeed)
 • The visitors ran away with the match. *(won easily)

Some phrasal verbs have three parts : a verb followed by an adverb and a preposition.

- (c) Our car ran out of petrol just outside the city limits.
 (d) The government wants to reach out to the people with this new campaign.
1. The text you've just read has a number of phrasal verbs commonly used in English. Look these up in a dictionary for their meanings (under the entry for the italicised words) :
- (i) plunge (right) in
 (ii) kept back

(iii) ramble on

(iv) get along with

2. Now find the sentences in the lesson that have the phrasal verbs given below. Match them with their meanings. (You have already found out the meanings for some of them). Are their meanings the same as that of their parts ? (Note that two parts of the phrasal verb may occur separate in the text.)

- (i) plunge in - speak or write without focus
 (ii) kept back - stay indoors
 (iii) move up - make (them) remain quiet
 (iv) ramble on - have a good relationship with
 (v) get along with - give an assignment (homework) to a person in authority (the teacher)
 (vi) calm down - compensate
 (vii) stay in - go straight to the topic
 (viii) make up for - go to the next grade
 (ix) hand in - not promoted

Ans :

1.

- (i) Plunge (right) in - push or thrust quickly.
 (ii) Ramble on - Walking or talking at length in a confused way
 (iii) Kept back - To withheld
 (iv) Get along with - To move forward

2.

- (i) plunge in - go straight to the topic
 (ii) kept back - not promoted
 (iii) move up - go to the next grade
 (iv) ramble on - speak or write without focus
 (v) get along with - compensate
 (vi) calm down - make (them) remain quiet

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

CHAPTER 4

FROM THE DIARY OF ANNE FRANK

1. INTRODUCTION

This chapter is an excerpt from the 'Diary of a Young Girl' written by Anne Frank. It is an autobiography that was first published in 1947. In this chapter the writer Anne Frank tells about her true companion - a diary. She writes everything about her life in her diary and considers it her true friend. At the time of invasion of German over Holland, her family hid itself. At that time she started to write in her diary. She spent her adolescent years hidden from outside world, and her diary kept all her secrets.

2. CHARACTERS

Anne Frank

The 13 years old Jewish girl who writes a diary while she is hiding in Amsterdam from the Nazis during World War II.

Margot Frank

Anne's sister who is three years older than Anne.

Otto Frank

Anne's father who is a Jewish businessman who left Germany after Hitler's rise to power, hoping to find refuge in Holland.

Mrs Frank

Anne's mother who is the source of many conflicts with Anne during the two years that the family spends in hiding.

Mr Van Daan

A Jewish business and an associate of Mr Frank.

Mr Keesing

Anne Frank's teacher who punishes Anne as he gets annoyed by her talkative nature.

3. SUMMARY

Anne's Feelings About Diary

Anne writes her diary. She feels that doing so is a strange experience for one like her. It is so because

she has not written anything earlier. Secondly, no one would be interested in reading something written by her as she is a small girl.

Writes a Diary

One day Anne felt a bit depressed. She felt that paper had more patience than people. She was wondering whether to stay in or go out. Finally, she stayed in and thought. She felt that she won't let anyone read her 'diary' unless she found a real friend. So she wrote it.

Writing About Her Family

She wrote that she was not completely alone in the world. But she had loving parents and a sixteen-year-old sister. She had about thirty people around her, she could call friends. Then she had a family, aunts and a good home. But she had had no true friend. She thought of having a good time when she was with friends. But she could not get closer. She admitted it her fault that she didn't confide in each other. Since they were not liable to change, she started writing a diary. She made it her friend.

Diary Named As 'Kitty' - Brief Sketch of Life

She wanted the diary to be her friend. So she named it as her friend Kitty. She wrote a brief sketch of her life, though she disliked doing so. So, she wrote it. She wrote that her father married her twenty-five year old mother at the age of thirty-six. Her sister Margot was born in Frankfurt in Germany in 1926. She was born on 12 June 1929. Her father emigrated to Holland in 1933. Her mother Edith Hollander Frank went with her father to Holland. But she and her sister were sent to Aachen to stay with their grandmother. Then they went to Holland.

Anne's School

There she was sent to a Montessori nursery school. She stayed there until she was six. In the sixth class her teacher was Mrs. Kuperus, the headmistress. Both had tears when they bade farewell.

3. from the (bottom of your) heart
4. have a heart
5. have a heart of stone
6. your heart goes out to somebody

Ans :

1.	Break somebody's heart	-	overwhelm with someone with sadness.
2.	Close/dear/near to somebody's heart	-	of deep interest and concern to one.
3.	From the (bottom of your) heart	-	with sincere feeling.
4.	Have a heart	-	Show pity or have courage.
5.	Have a heart of stone	-	cruel person.
6.	Your heart goes out to somebody	-	to show love for someone.

5. Contracted Forms

When we speak, we use 'contracted forms' or short forms such as these :

can't (for cannot)

I'd (for I would or I had)

she's (for she has or is)

Notice that contracted forms are also written with an apostrophe to show a shortening of the spelling of not, is or would, as in the above example.

Writing a diary is like speaking to oneself. Plays (and often, novels) also have speech in written form. So we usually come across contracted forms in diaries, plays and novels.

1. Make a list of the contracted forms in the text. Rewrite them as full forms of two words.
For example :
I've = I have
2. We have seen that some contracted forms can stand for two different full forms :
I'd = I had or I would
Find in the text the contracted forms that stand for two different full forms, and say what these are.

Ans :

1.

I'm	-	I am.
don't	-	do not
didn't	-	did not
we'll	-	we will
won't	-	would not

who'll	-	who will
there's	-	there is
I've	-	I have
you're	-	you are

2.

it's	-	it is, it has
I'd	-	I would, I had
who's	-	who is or has

Speaking

1. Here is an extract adapted from a one-act play. In this extract, angry neighbours who think Joe the Inventor's new spinning machine will make them lose their jobs come to destroy Joe's model of the machine.

You've just seen how contracted forms can make a written text sound like actual speech. Try to make this extract sound more like a real conversation by changing some of the verbs back into contracted forms. Then speak out the lines.

[The door is flung open, and several men tramp in. They carry sticks, and one of them, HOB, has a hammer]

HOB	-	Now where is your husband, mistress ?
MARY	-	In his bed. He is sick, and weary. You would not harm him!
HOB	-	We are going to smash his evil work to pieces. Where is the machine ?
S E C O N D M A N	-	On the table yonder.
HOB	-	Then here is the end of it! [HOB smashes the model. MARY screams.]
HOB	-	And now for your husband!
MARY	-	Neighbours, he is a sickman and almost a cripple. You would not hurt him!
HOB	-	He is planning to take away our daily bread ... We will show him what we think of him and his ways !
MARY	-	You have broken his machine... You have done enough ...

4. How does Anne feel about her father , her grandmother, Mrs. Kuperus and Mr. Keesing ? What do these tell you about her ?

Ans :

2016

Anne feels her father is the most adorable father. She loved her grand mother very much. She was in tears when she said a heartbreaking farewell to her teacher, Mrs Kuperus. She calls Mr. Keesing an old fogey, who was annoyed with her for ages. These tell that Anne was sweet and intelligent child.

5. What does Anne write in her first essay ?

Ans :

She writes that talking is a student's trait and that she would do her best to keep it under control, but she would never be able to cure herself of the habit, since her mother talked as much as she does and not much can be done about inherited habits.

6. Anne says teachers are most unpredictable? Is Mr. Keesing unpredictable ? Why ?

Ans :

Yes, Mr. Keesing is unpredictable. He was so amused by his writing that he allowed Anne to talk in the class.

7. What do these statements tell you about Anne Frank as a person ?

- (i) We don't seem to be able to get any closer, and that's the problem. May be it's my fault that we don't confide in each other.
- (ii) I don't want to jot down the facts in this diary the way most people would, but I want the diary to be my friend.
- (iii) Margot went to Holland in December, and I followed in February, when I was plunked down on the table as a birthday present for Margot.
- (iv) If you ask me, there are so many dummies that about a quarter of the class should be kept back, but teachers are the most unpredictable creatures on earth.
- (v) Anyone could ramble on you and leave big spaces between the words, but the trick was to come up with convincing arguments to prove the necessity of talking.

Ans :

To Anne as a person these statements have different meanings.

- (i) The first statement speaks the importance of having the need of a real friend.

- (ii) The second statement speaks of Anne's conviction of considering the diary as her real friend.

- (iii) The third statement shows her profound love for her elder sister.

- (iv) The fourth statement is about teachers. She forms an opinion that these are unpredictable.

- (v) The last statement points out her skill in writing an essay.

Thus Anne was a skilled girl having the decent qualities of mind, body and soul.

Thinking About Language

1. Look at the following words :

headmistress, long-awaited, homework, notebook, stiff-backed, outbursts

These words are compound words. They are made up of two or more words. Compound words can be :

Compound words can be :

- Nouns : headmistress, homework, notebook, outbursts
- Adjectives : long-awaited, stiff-backed
- Verbs : sleep-walk, baby-sit

Match these compound words under 'A' with their meanings under 'B'. Use each in a sentence.

1.	Heart-breaking	-	obeying and respecting the law
2.	Homesick	-	think about pleasant things, forgetting about the present
3.	Blockhead	-	something produced by a person, machine or organisation
4.	Law-abiding	-	producing great sadness
5.	Overdo	-	an occasion when vehicles/machines stop working
6.	Day dream	-	an informal word which means a very stupid person
7.	Breakdown	-	missing home and family very much
8.	Output	-	do something to an excessive degree

4. What did Anne name her diary?

- (a) Anne (b) Catty
(c) Kitty (d) Kitten

Ans :

2020

- (c) Kitty

5. Why does she give a brief sketch about her family in the diary?

- (a) no one would understand it if she dove right in
(b) to introduce Kitty to her family
(c) she would forget facts about her family
(d) she liked talking about her family

Ans :

2020

- (a) no one would understand it if she dove right in

6. Which subject was Anne not sure of passing?

- (a) Maths (b) science
(c) english (d) all of these

Ans :

2020

- (a) Maths

7. Why was Mr Keesing annoyed with her?

- (a) she was not a good student
(b) she was talkative
(c) she was rude
(d) all of the above

Ans :

2016,

- (b) she was talkative

8. Which topic was she to write an essay on as a part of her punishment?

- (a) A Chatterbox
(b) An incorrigible chatterbox
(c) Quack, Quack, Quack, said Mistress Chatterbox
(d) all of the above

Ans :

2016

- (d) all of the above

9. What language was the diary originally written in ?

- (a) Spanish (b) English
(c) Dutch (d) French

Ans :

2016

- (c) Dutch

10. How did Anne justify her being talkative in the essay?

- (a) she discussed the subject topics in class
(b) it is a habit

- (c) it is an inherited trait from her mother and you can't do much about it

- (d) the class is boring

Ans :

2016

- (c) it is an inherited trait from her mother and you can't do much about it

11. What shows Anne's love for her grandmother?

- (a) she still thinks about her
(b) she misses her
(c) she let her birthday pass with little celebration
(d) both a and b

Ans :

2015

- (d) both a and b

12. Why does Anne think she was lonely?

- (a) she had no friends
(b) she had no real friends
(c) she was all alone
(d) she was an introvert

Ans :

2015, 2010

- (b) she had no real friends

13. Why was she unable to get closer to her already existing friends?

- (a) she didn't like her friends
(b) her friends are not understanding
(c) she can't bring herself to talk about personal stuff
(d) all of the above

Ans :

2015

- (c) she can't bring herself to talk about personal stuff

14. What would the kids bet about in class?

- (a) who is more talkative
(b) who would pass the class
(c) football matches
(d) baseball matches

Ans :

2015

- (b) who would pass the class

15. What did she write in her last essay?

- (a) a poem (b) a joke
(c) a paragraph (d) a funny poem

Ans :

2015

- (d) a funny poem

16. Why did she not want to give a brief in the diary at first?

- (a) she didn't want to be formal
(b) she wanted the diary to be her real friend

Anne took this up as a challenge and in her three-p.7ge long essay she justified her being a chatterbox by coming up with convincing arguments to prove the necessity of talking. She argued that talking is a student's trait and that she would do her best to keep it under control. Mr. Keesing had a good laugh at her arguments.

5. How did Anne finally stop Mr. Keesing from punishing her? Explain.

Ans :

2017, 2005

Anne had annoyed Mr. Keesing by her incessant chatting. He assigned her to write an essay each time. When Anne wrote her third essay entitled 'Quack, Quack, Quack, said Mistress Chatterbox', she wrote the whole essay in verse with help from her friend Sanne. She made sure the joke in her poem aimed at Mr. Keesing. Luckily Mr. Keesing took the joke in the right way. He read the poem to the whole class and finally stopped punishing Anne and allowed her to talk.

6. Why was Anne's teacher annoyed with her? How was she able to bring about a change in his attitude towards her?

Ans :

2013, 2007

Mr. Keesing who taught maths to Anne was annoyed with her because she talked too much. After several warnings, he assigned her extra homework. She tried to prove that talking was a student's trait and she would do her best to keep it under control. Mr. Keesing had a hearty laugh at her arguments and assigned her a second essay. But in her final essay she succeeded to convince Mr. Keesing. She wrote a poem about a mother duck and a father swan with three baby ducklings who were bitten to death by the father because they quacked too much. Luckily, Mr. Keesing took the joke in the right way. He allowed Anne to talk in the class and did not give her any extra homework.

7. Write the character-sketch of Anne highlighting intelligence and politeness.

Ans :

2012, 2008, 2001

Anne was a sober, witty and intelligent girl of Otto Frank. She was a Jewish girl born in German. Her book written in Dutch become the one of the world's most widely read books. Many films, television and opera have been produced based on her diary. She felt lonely at not having a real friend. So she dedicated her feelings to a diary named Kitty. Her teachers had a good view about her except her talkative nature. She had an intense love for her grandmother and her teacher, Mrs. Kuperus. Only Mr. Keesing, her maths

teacher punished her for her talkative nature by assigning essays.

8. What do you know about Mr. Keesing ? How did he punish Anne ?

Ans :

2010

Mr. Keesing was the maths teacher of Anne Frank. Anne was a talkative student. This teacher was an old fashioned-person. He did not like much troubles in school. So he was annoyed with Anne. He gave her several warnings but there was no good result.

Ultimately he assigned Anne, an extra homework. It was an essay on "A Chatterbox". Anne wrote that talking is a student's trait. She had inherited this quality from her mother, who is more talkative. But the teacher was adamant. He assigned two more essays. "An Incurable Chatterbox" and "Quack, Quack, Quack, said Mistress Chatterbox". By chance the joke fell on the teacher when Anne read it. After that he gave her no more assignment or punishment.

9. How does Anne feel about her father, her grandmother, Mrs Kuperus and Mr. Keesing? How does Anne's description of these characters reflect her own values? Is she fair, critical or biased about them?

Ans :

2009, 2004

Anne Frank loved her father too much. She described him as the most adorable father she had ever seen. She was deeply attached to her grandmother. She felt extremely lonely after her death and she even lit a candle for her on her next birthday. Anne got attached to her headmistress, Mrs. Kuperus and became emotional when bidding farewell. Mr. Keesing, her maths teacher was very strict and she got pretty well with him. Anne's description of these characters shows that Anne herself is a good human being. She has respect for all. She does not hesitate in making her teacher realise that he is wrong. She is fearless but talkative. She is fair and critical in her approach. She is not biased.

10. Why did Mr. Keesing punish Anne ? How did he bring a change in his attitude towards her ?

Ans :

2005

Mr. Keesing, Anne's mathematics teacher, was annoyed with her because she talked too much in the class. When she did not stop talking, despite several warnings, he punished her. But the punishment was in the form of doing extra homework. She was assigned to write an essay on, 'A chatterbox' then "An Incurable Chatterbox" and finally on "Quack, Quack, Quack, said Mrs.

31. There were _____ teachers in Anne's school.

- (a) Ten (b) Seven
(c) Nine (d) Five

Ans : 2007
(c) Nine.

32. The topic of the essay given by the teacher to Anne was

- (a) My work (b) Chatter box
(c) Discipline (d) Myself

Ans : 2007
(b) Chatterbox.

33. The third assignment given by Mr. Kessing to Anne was an essay on

- (a) Chatterbox
(b) Quack Quack Mistress chart
(c) Incurable chatterbox
(d) Quack Quack Quack said mister chatterbox

Ans : 2006
(d) Quack Quack Quack said mister chatterbox.

34. Anne, Anne's friend was very good in

- (a) Poetry (b) Hand writing
(c) Essay writing (d) Story writing

Ans : 2006
(a) Poetry.

35. At her third assignment Anne wrote a poem about –

- (a) Parrot
(b) A family of sparrow
(c) A duck family
(d) Herself

Ans : 2006
(c) A duck family.

36. The lesson is extracted from

- (a) The diary
(b) The diary of a young girl
(c) The diary of Anne Frank
(d) The diary of a young girl

Ans : 2006
(b) The diary of a young girl.

37. The name of the maths teacher of Anne Frank was –

- (a) Mr. Kessing (b) Mr. Smith
(c) Mr. Arnold (d) Mr. Kaperus

Ans : 2006
(a) Mr. Kessing.

38. Who was Anne's true friend?

- (a) Her pen 'kitty' (b) Her cat 'kitty'
(c) Her diary 'kitty' (d) None of these

Ans : 2006
(c) Her diary 'kitty'

39. Anne's father was thirty six year old when

- (a) he got married (b) he had a job
(c) he was jailed (d) he fought a war

Ans : 2005
(a) he got married

40. Mr. Keesing had assigned to Anne the task of

- (a) drawing a scene (b) collecting stamps
(c) painting a glass (d) writing an essay

Ans : 2005
(d) writing an essay

Short Answer Type Questions

1. Kitty was a trusted friend to Anne. Elaborate.

Ans : 2023
Kitty was indeed a trusted friend to Anne. It allowed Anne to express her wild innermost. It also provided her with a space to confide in and unburden herself to, serving as a form of therapy for her loneliness and isolation.

2. Enumerate any two reasons that justify Mr Keesing's displeasure at Anne's talking in class.

Ans : 2021
Mr Keesing was an old fashioned and strict teacher. He wanted the students to be attentive in class. He was displeased at Anne's talkative behaviour during the class. Moreover, she was not good at Maths.

3. Comment on the teacher-student relationship shared between Anne and Mr Keesing.

Ans : 2021
The teacher-student relationship between Anne and Mr Keesing was not amiable because he had punished her thrice for talking in the class. Although he appreciated Anne's poetry in front of other students later on.

4. Anne wrote in her diary to get things off her chest. List any two reasons why getting things off one's chest is recommended by counsellors as therapeutic.

Ans : 2021
Giving a vent out to one's emotions makes the body and mind feel light which is good for health and works as a healing therapy for mind and body. Here, Anne Frank write her intimate feelings in her diary and thus feels relaxed.

- (c) She did not like the idea
(d) both a and b

Ans :

- (d) both a and b

17. What was Anne Frank's full name?

- (a) Anneliese Marie Frank
(b) Anna Mariam Frank
(c) Anne Mark Frank
(d) Anneliese Martina Frank

Ans :

- (a) Anneliese Marie Frank

18. Who was the only survivor from Anne's family

- (a) Anne (b) Anne's father
(c) Anne's mother (d) Anne's sister

Ans :

- (b) Anne's father

19. How old was Anne's father when he married her mother?

- (a) 34 (b) 35
(c) 36 (d) 32

Ans :

- (c) 36

20. On which date did Anne record the incident in Mr Keesing's class in her diary?

- (a) 12 June, 1942 (b) 21 June, 1942
(c) 20 June, 1942 (d) 22 June, 1942

Ans :

- (c) 20 June, 1942

21. What was the subject on which she had to write?

- (a) Necessity of Walking
(b) Necessity of Running
(c) Necessity of Talking
(d) Necessity of Studying

Ans :

- (c) Necessity of Talking

22. What was topic of the essay written by Anne?

- (a) My Diary (b) A Chatterbox
(c) A letterbox (d) None of these

Ans :

- (b) A Chatterbox

23. How does the Anne explain his father?

- (a) Most Adorable father
(b) Most Angry Father
(c) Most delicate Father
(d) None of these

Ans :

- (a) Most Adorable father

24. How does she want to begin her diary?

- (a) By writing her name
(b) By giving an introduction
(c) By writing about her hobby
(d) None of these

Ans :

- (b) By giving an introduction

25. Anne was _____ years old when she started writing diary.

- (a) 10 (b) 15
(c) 12 (d) 13

Ans :

- (d) 13

26. Edith Hollander Frank is the name of Anne's –

- (a) Mother (b) Grand mother
(c) Sister (d) Aunt

Ans :

- (a) Mother

27. Margot and Anne went to Holland in the month of _____ and _____ consistently.

- (a) August, December
(b) December, February
(c) November, December
(d) March, May

Ans :

- (b) December, February

28. Mrs. _____ was the headmistress of Anne's first school.

- (a) Sink (b) Smith
(c) Kuperus (d) Thomson

Ans :

- (c) Kuperus

29. Grandma died in January, _____.

- (a) 1945 (b) 1941
(c) 1940 (d) 1942

Ans :

- (d) 1942

30. Anne Frank started writing diary on _____, 1942.

- (a) 25th January (b) 20th June
(c) 20th May (d) 21st June

Ans :

- (b) 20th June

due to tension. The class was busy in activities and the teachers were busy in deciding about the result of the class. This is why the entire class put their savings on bet.

16. What does the narrator inform the readers about her childhood?

Ans :

2005

She mentioned in her diary that she was born on 12 June, 1929. She lived in Frankfurt until she was four. Her parents immigrated to Holland in 1933. She and her sister, Margot, were sent to Aachen with their grandmother. Their grandmother died in January 1942.

17. Why did Anne say that she is not completely alone in the world?

Ans :

2004, 2001

Anne says that she is not completely alone in the world because she has loving parents, a sixteen year old sister and there are about thirty people whom she can call friends. She has a family, loving aunts and a good home.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. Your teacher has organised a debate and you have been asked to speak on: 'Consequences and Positive Reinforcements Have a Great Impact on Student Behaviour'. Write the debate script with three-four points to supplement your stand, either as a proposition speaker or as an opposition one.

Ans :

2021

I was unsure of my science project although I tried my best. But my hesitation went into the air on getting a positive pat on my back from the principal ma'am. Similarly, a positive appraisal by teachers infuses a motivational force among the students. This positive reinforcement can take monetary and non-monetary forms. Immediate positive consequences work like wonder in students' lives. Students can be praised personally or publicly. Students' behaviour will be strengthened if they get positive reinforcement even for their minutest efforts. Everybody expect appreciation for their hard work from concerned people. Positive reinforcement creates a healthy relationship between a teacher and a student which can last longer.

2. You are stressed and anxious since your Annual results are going to be announced soon. You decide to meet the school counsellor to share your anxiety and apprehensions. Write the dialogue between you and your school counsellor. You may begin like this:

School Counsellor : Hello Anne, please sit down. You look very disturbed and irritated. What's the matter?

You : Well, to be honest, we all are disturbed. But the irritation is because of the two boys sitting behind.....

School Counsellor : First of all, you need to relax. Take a deep breath. How do you feel we can deal with this situation rationally?

You.....Continue

Ans :

2021

You : These boys keep on betting about their promotion to the next class. Their talks make me curious.

Counsellor : How are you in your studies?

You : I am good in all the subjects except Maths.

Counsellor : How did you perform in the final exams?

You: I hope to get first division.

Counsellor : then you should stop worrying and think positively. besides, you can request your teacher to change your seat so that the boys do not bother you in future as well.

You : Thank you for the session, I feel relaxed now.

3. Anne was a sensitive and mature girl. From the chapters and poems in your textbook, First Flight, think of any two characters who could be her friends or confidantes. Analyse the common character traits that would help in creating this special bond of friendship.

Ans :

2021

Wanda Petronski from 'the hundred dresses' would be the right selection to become a true friend of Anne Frank. As she is a good listener and confidant. Unlike Anne, Wanda is a sensible girl who talks very little and would be able to give some tips to Anne to correct her talkative behaviour. Both of them want a true friend.

Valli from 'Madam Rides the Bus' lesson is a responsible girl who would not disclose Anne's secrets to others. Moreover, she too is alone like Anne. So, they can complement each other by creating a special bond of friendship. Both are self-respecting and fun-loving girls.

4. How did Mr. Keesing assign Anne extra homework, an essay on "A Chatterbox"? How did she justify her being a chatterbox?

Ans :

2017, 2016, 2009

Mr. Keesing who taught maths to Anne was annoyed with her because she talked too much. After several warnings, he assigned her extra homework. He asked her to write an essay on the subject 'A Chatterbox'.

CHAPTER 5

GLIMPSES OF INDIA

I

A BAKER FROM GOA

1. INTRODUCTION

The chapter 'Glimpses of India' is divided into three parts. The first part 'A Baker from Goa' written by Lucio Rodrigues is a pen portrait of a traditional Gaon village baker or pader who still has an important place in Gaon culture although the Portuguese have left India long back.

2. CHARACTERS

Baker

The baker was an important part of the Goan villages under Portuguese rule. He used to come everyday to the street to sell loaves of bread and bread-bangles. Everyone used to wait for the 'thang-thang' sound of his stick in the morning which announced his arrival.

3. SUMMARY

Bread Making in Goa

This is a pen portrait of the traditional Goan village baker who is still remembered by Goans. Bread making is an ancient technique mastered by the Portuguese. They were the lovers of bread. Bread making was an art which needed lot of expertise and perfection, mixing, moulding and baking were the areas of specialization of making bread. The loaves were baked in time tested furnaces. This profession was passionately continued by the descendants of the bakers.

The author fondly remembers his childhood days which remind him of the bakers who used to be their friend, companion and guide. The baker used to visit the houses twice a day, once in the morning during his selling hours and then again in the evening, returning after selling all his bread.

Delivering the Loaves

The jingling thud of the bamboo the baker carried woke them up in the morning and they ran to meet and greet him. They also ran to get the bread bangles which were especially made bread. As the baker came, he would call the lady of the house and greet her 'good morning'. The children would be pushed aside and the loaves would be delivered to the maid servant. The author recalls the fresh aroma of loaves that filled the air. The children would not even brush their teeth and would eat bread bangles made of bread.

Significance of Bread in Goan Culture

Various kinds of breads have always been important in the culture of Goa. On different occasions, different breads would be made. No marriage ceremony was complete until and unless the traditional bol was served. The lady of the house on the occasion of her daughter's marriage would prepare sandwiches and bolinhas would be prepared for Christmas and other festivals.

Baker's Attire

The baker was usually dressed in a kabai, a long frock reaching down to the knees or a shirt and a trouser which was shorter than full length ones and longer than half pants.

A Lucrative Business-Bread Making

The baker usually collected his bills at the end of the month. All the accounts were written on a wall in the house with a pencil. Since the ancient times bread making has been a profitable business because Portuguese loved bread and even today bread enjoys great popularity in Goa. The bakers and his family used to be one of the most prosperous members of the society.

4. WORD MEANINGS

1. Glimpses - views
2. Destinations - fixed points/places
3. Influences - impact/effect
4. Baker - who bakes bread
5. Pen-portrait - painting the character of a man
6. Traditions - old customs

Chatterbox.”

In her essay on “A Chatterbox,” Anne wrote that talking was a natural trait of a student and her mother also talked as much as she did. She further wrote that as she had inherited this trait from her mother, she thus could not help talking. Finally, she had written her third assignment in a verse form. Mr Keesing read this poem to the class, which was about three ducklings who were bitten to death by their swan father because they quacked too much. This brought a change in Mr. Keesing’s attitude and he never punished Anne again.

- ii. Anne justifies her talkative nature by arguing that being talkative is a trait inherent among students - it’s part of their character to be lively and expressive. Furthermore, she links her talkativeness to heredity, suggesting it’s an inherited trait from her mother, implying that it’s a natural aspect of her personality that is difficult to change.
- iii. (b) persuasive
- iv. to talk continuously in a confused manner.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow :

Anyone could ramble on and leave big spaces between the words, but the trick was to come up with convincing arguments to prove the necessity of talking I thought and suddenly I had an idea. I wrote the three pages, Mr. Keesing had assigned me and was satisfied. I argued that talking is a students’ trait and that I would do my best to keep it under control, but that I would never be able to cure myself of the habit since my mother talked as much as I did if not more, and that there’s not much you can do about inherited traits.

- i. State any one inference about Anne from the given context.
“Anyone could ramble on and leave big spaces between the words, but the trick was to come up with convincing arguments to prove the necessity of talking.”
- ii. In about 40 words, elaborate on the justification Anne gives for her talkative nature.
- iii. Which one of the following best describes the tone of the given extract ?
(a) derogatory (b) persuasive
(c) nostalgic (d) cautionary
- iv. Which phrase would correctly substitute ‘ramble on’ in the given sentence from the extract ?

Ans :

2024

- i. The given context suggests that Anne was a clever and reflective individual. She understood the importance of presenting logical arguments to validate her actions rather than merely offering excuses.

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow :

I started right away at the Montessori Nursery School. I stayed there until I was six, at which time I started in the first form. In the sixth form, my teacher was Mrs. Kuperus, the headmistress. At the end of the year we were both in tears as we said a heartbreaking farewell. In the summer of 1941, Grandma fell ill and had to have an operation, so my birthday passed with little celebration.

- i. “In the summer of 1941, Grandma fell ill and had to have an operation, so my birthday passed with little celebration.”
State any one inference about Anne from the above context.
- ii. The first education of Anne started at _____.
(a) some Kindergarten School
(b) a Nursery School
(c) Montessori Nursery School
(d) Elementary School
- iii. Who was Mrs. Kuperus? What kind of relationship did Anne share with her?
- iv. Substitute the word ‘heartbreaking’ with a word similar in meaning in the following sentence :
“At the end of the year we were both in tears as we said a heartbreaking farewell.”

Ans :

2024

- i. One possible inference about Anne from this context is that she experienced disappointment or sadness during her birthday due to her grandmother’s illness and the lack of celebration, indicating her empathy and concern for her family members.
- ii. (c) Montessori Nursery School

- iii. Mrs. Kuperus was Anne's teacher and the headmistress during her time in the sixth form. Anne shared a close and emotional relationship with Mrs. Kuperus, as evidenced by their tearful farewell at the end of the year. This suggests that Anne respected and admired Mrs. Kuperus and formed a strong bond with her.
- iv. Emotional/poignant/painful

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow :

Mr. Keesing had a good laugh at my arguments, but when I proceeded to talk my way through the next lesson, he assigned me a second essay. This time it was supposed to be on 'An Incurable Chatterbox.' I handed it in, and Mr. Keesing had nothing to complain about for two whole lessons. However, during the third lesson, he'd finally had enough. "Anne Frank, as a punishment for talking in class, write an essay entitled-'Quack, Quack, Quack, said Mistress Chatterbox.'

- i. How does Mr. Keesing's assignment of the essay "'Quack, Quack, Quack, said Mistress Chatterbox'" serve as both a punishment and a creative response to Anne Frank's talkative nature?
- ii. In the context of Mr. Keesing, the phrase, 'had a good laugh' implies _____.
- iii. With reference to Anne Frank's approach to authority figures like Mr. Keesing, which option is the LEAST likely?
 - (a) Subtle resistance to authority
 - (b) Assertiveness and independence
 - (c) Enthusiasm for intellectual discourse
 - (d) Compliance with classroom norms
- iv. The use of terms like " _____ " and " _____ ", point towards Anne's talkative and lively communication style.

Ans :

2023

- i. Mr. Keesing aims to curb Anne's chattiness while nurturing a more disciplined and imaginative approach to expression. He playfully penalises Anne for her talkative behaviour - incorporates to address the issue.
- ii. that he did not take Anne's arguments too seriously
- iii. (d) Compliance with classroom norms
- iv. chatterbox ; quack

4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

Our entire class is quaking in its boots. The reason, of course, is the forthcoming meeting in which the teachers decide who'll move up to the next form and who'll be kept back. Half the class is making bets. G.N. and I laugh ourselves silly at the two boys behind us, C.N. and Jacques, who have staked their entire holiday savings on their bet. From morning to night, it's "You're going to pass", "No, I'm not", "Yes, you are", "No, I'm not". Even G.'s pleading glances and my angry outbursts can't calm them down. If you ask me, there are so many dummies that about a quarter of the class should be kept back, but teachers are the most unpredictable creatures on earth.

- i. What does the following imply?
C. N and Jacques staking their entire holiday savings on their bet.
- ii. Anne says that there were so many dummies in the class that about a quarter of them shouldn't be promoted. Is she being rude or brutally honest? Evaluate in about 40 words.
- iii. State TRUE or FALSE.
None of the following options (a)-(d) below, showcase the reality :
 - (a) the teachers will decide whom to promote to the next form
 - (b) the teachers will decide who should be kept back
 - (c) a quarter of the class was dummies who should be kept back
 - (d) a quarter of the class was dummies who should be kept back
- iv. Which emotion is portrayed in the expression 'quaking in their boots'?

Ans :

2020

- i. C. N. and Jacques staking their entire holiday savings on their bet implies that they both think that the other one will pass.
- ii. Anne is being brutally honest. Many students in the class doubted if they would be promoted to the next class. They remained anxious and would discuss this all day. They would make bets on who would be promoted. CN and Jacques had even staked their entire holiday saving on the bet.
- iii. False
- iv. fear or nervousness.

5. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

That evening, after I'd finished the rest of my homework, the note about the essay caught my eye. I began thinking about the subject while chewing the tip of my fountain pen. Anyone could ramble on and leave big spaces between the words, but the trick was to come up with convincing arguments to prove the necessity of talking.

- i. According to the passage and the story, Anne was
 - (a) thinking about what to write in the essay
 - (b) angry with Mr Keesing
 - (c) too tired to write the essay
 - (d) unable to write the essay
- ii. What does she (Anne Frank) write in her essay? Answer in about 40 words.
- iii. Read the following descriptions (a)-(c) and identify which one correctly corresponds to the extract.
 - (a) A debate is a formal discussion on a particular topic, usually with two or more people presenting different viewpoints and arguments.
 - (b) A soliloquy is a speech given by a character alone on stage, which reveals their innermost thoughts and feelings to the audience.
 - (c) An aside is a brief comment or remark made by a character directly to the audience, which is not intended to be heard by other characters on stage.
- iv. What is integral to writing her essay according to Anne?

Ans :

2017

- i. (a) thinking about what to write in the essay
- ii. In her essay titled 'Chatterbox', Anne wanted to come up with convincing arguments to prove the necessity of talking. She wrote three pages and argued that talking was a student's trait and she would do her best to keep it under control.
- iii. (c) An aside is a brief comment or remark made by a character directly to the audience, which is not intended to be heard by other characters on stage.
- iv. According to Anne, it is important to give convincing arguments in support of the necessity to talk in her essay.

6. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

To enhance the image of this long-awaited friend in my imagination, I don't want to jot down the facts in this diary the way most people would do, but I want the diary to be my friend and I'm going to call this friend 'Kitty'.

- i. Who is the long-awaited friend mentioned in the extract?
 - (a) Mrs. Kuperus
 - (b) Anne's Grandmother
 - (c) Her diary
 - (d) Margot
- ii. What did Anne want to write in her diary?
- iii. Why does Anne want to keep a diary?
- iv. State TRUE or FALSE.

None of the terms (a)-(d) below, can be applied to the statement - Anne was a reserved and introvert person.

 - (a) A hypothesis - a proposed explanation for a phenomenon
 - (b) An assumption - something that is taken for granted or assumed to be true without proof
 - (c) A premise - a proposition that forms the basis of an argument
 - (d) A theory - a well-substantiated explanation for a natural phenomenon

Ans :

2014

- i. (c) Her diary
- ii. Anne wanted to write each and every detail of her life in her diary.
- iii. Anne wanted to keep a diary as she did not have any close and true friends whom she could confide in. Though she had friends, she was never able to truly open up about her feelings to them.
- iv. True



5. Anne said that the only thing missing was the presence of a true friend. Imagine that Anne had access to the internet and had chosen to blog instead of writing a diary. As Anne, write a blog post on the value of a true friend.

Dearestkittyblogger.com
Anne Frank, 25th June 1942
The Value of a True Friend

Ans :

2021

Dearestkittyblogger.com
Anne Frank, 25th June 1942

The Value of a True Friend

‘A friend in need is a friend indeed’ But for me, a true friend is a good listener and confidant. A true friend must be able to hold secretly the intimate feelings of her or his friend from others. If one can’t find these qualities in a real friend, a diary is the best option because the paper has more tolerance than people. A true friend is a blessing.

6. Annie writes that it was fortunate that Mr Keesing took the joke the right way. Why does she feel so?

Ans :

2020

Poem referred to the father swan who bit his three ducks because they quacked too much; allusion to Mr Keesing – Poem written to turn the joke around on Mr Keesing; metaphorically convey the value of talking – fortunate that Mr Keesing got the joke, else, the disciplinary action could have been severe.

7. Explain the phrase ‘quaking in its boots’. Why was the whole class quacking in boots ?

Ans :

2020

The whole class was busy in activities as the forthcoming of the meeting in which teachers were to decide who’ll move to the next form had to be decided. All the students were busy about these discussion and were also putting their entire savings on bet.

8. How did Sanne help Anne Frank in writing the third essay ?

Ans :

2019, 2017

Sanne was Anne’s close friend, and good at poetry. She helped Anne write the third essay in verse. It turned out to be a good poem, and even the teacher, Mr. Keesing, took it in the right way.

9. What was the last essay for Anne and write its result?

Ans :

2017

The last essay was- “Quack, Quack, Quack, said Mistress Chatterbox.” At this topic the whole class roared. Anne was too troubled. Her friend Sanne came to her help to write in verse. So the essay was written like a poem. The teacher fell a prey to it.

10. Explain ‘teachers are the most unpredictable creatures’.

Ans :

2015

Anne and her classmates thought that teachers were the most unpredictable creatures as nobody would know what there was in their minds and what their next step would be.

11. What does Anne tell about her father?

Ans :

2014

Anne says that her father is the most adorable man. He married at the age of thirty-six. At that time her mother Edith was twenty-five. Due to Nazi’s occupation, he emigrated to Holland in 1933.

12. Write down Anne’s rapport with school teachers.

Ans :

2013

There were nine teachers in school. Among them there were two women and seven males. One Mr. Keesing was an old fashioned type of teacher. He was a strict fellow. He remained angry with Anne because of her talkative habits.

13. Why was Mr. Keesing annoyed with Anne and what extra homework did he give to her after several warnings?

Ans :

2009, 2008

Mr. Keesing was annoyed with Anne because she talked too much. In spite of giving her several warnings she continued to talk excessively. After this Mr. Keesing assigned her extra homework, to write an essay on the subject - ‘A Chatterbox’

14. What arguments did Anne give in her essay titled ‘A Chatterbox’?

Ans :

2006

In her essay ‘A Chatterbox’ Anne argued that talking was a student’s trait and that the only thing she could do was to try and control it. But she further argued that her trying to manage her talking would not be very effective because her mother talked as much as she did. Therefore, nothing could it be done about an inherited trait.

15. Why did the entire class put their saving on bet?

Ans :

2005

Anne Frank wrote about her class humorously. She said that the entire class quacked in its boot

7. Reminiscing - remembrances/old
8. Nostalgically - thinking fondly
9. Loaves of bread - bread
10. Vanished - disappeared
11. Moulders - wasters curb
12. Furnaces - fire places
13. Extinguished - blown out
14. Thud - a low dull sound
15. Heralding - announcing
16. Profession - work/business
17. Pader - slow-moving
18. Companion - friend
19. Jingling - a kind of sound
20. Supported - helped
21. Banged - break/a kind of sound
22. Vertical - straight
23. Pushed aside - turned back
24. Rebuke - scolding
25. Parapet - wall at the edge of a bridge
26. Peep into - looked
27. Fragrance - scent/smell
28. Properly - rightly
29. Loses - finishes
30. Engagement - marriage
31. Bolinhas - a kind of sweet
32. Absolutely - completely
33. Kabai - a kind of dress
34. Comment - remarks
35. Recorded - noted
36. Profitable - beneficial
37. Starved - remained hungry
38. Prosperous - happy and rich
39. Plump - fat
40. Physique - body structure
41. Testimony - statement
42. Jack fruit - a kind of fruit

5. MESSAGE

From this chapter the author is trying to convey a message about the rich culture and diversity of India and also the importance of bakers in Goa.

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Activity

1. What images — of people and of places — come to your mind, when you think of our country?

Ans :

Pictures of people of my state, Punjab and other states come to my mind.

2. You may know that apart from the British, the Dutch and the French, the Portuguese have also played a part in the history of our country. Can you say which parts of India show French and Portuguese influences?

Ans :

Goa, Pondicherry and other coastal regions show French and Portuguese influences.

Oral Comprehension Check - 1

1. What are the elders in Goa nostalgic about?

Ans :

2015, 2014

The elders in Goa are nostalgic about the good old Portuguese days and their love for bread and loaves. The writer says that the eaters of loaves have left but the makers still exist.

2. Is bread-making still popular in Goa? How do you know?

Ans :

Yes, bread making is still popular in Goa. The eaters may have gone away but they have left the makers behind. There are mixers, moulders and the ones who bake the loaves. The time tested furnaces still exist there.

3. What is the baker called?

Ans :

The baker is called a pader in Goa.

4. When would the baker come everyday? Why did the children run to meet him?

Ans :

The baker would come twice a day—once early in the morning and the second time when he returned after selling his stuff. The children would run to meet him as they wanted to have bread-bangles.

FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS

DOWNLOAD NODIA APP

NODIA

Oral Comprehension Check - 2

Match the following. What is a must?

- (i) as marriage gifts? - cakes and bolinhas
- (ii) for a party or a feast? - sweet bread called bol
- (iii) for a daughter's engagement? - bread
- (iv) for Christmas? - sandwiches

Ans :

- (i) as marriage gifts - sweet bread called bol
- (ii) for a party or a feast - bread
- (iii) for a daughter's engagement - sandwiches
- (iv) for Christmas - cakes and bolinhas

our heritage and have love and respect for age-old traditions.

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“Marriage gifts are meaningless without the sweet bread known as the ‘bol’ just as a party or a feast loses its charm without bread. Not enough can be said to show how important a baker can be for a village. The lady of the house must prepare sandwiches on the occasion of her daughter’s engagement. Cakes and ‘bor are a must for Christmas as well as other festivals. Thus, the presence of the baker in the village is absolutely essential.”

- i. Breads are a very important part of the culture of the people in Goa. Which of the given options does not corroborate the statement?
 - (a) Bols are central to marriage celebrations and festivals.
 - (b) Festivals especially Christmas are incomplete without cakes.
 - (c) Every house has their own furnace in Goa.
 - (d) Special sandwiches are made on a daughter’s engagement.
- ii. What makes the marriage gifts meaningless? Answer in about 40 words.
- iii. The word ‘sandwich’ is named after the Earl of Sandwich who loved eating sandwiches. Read the following descriptions (a)-(c) and identify which one does not correspond to the name of a person in its origin as shown in the extract.
 - (a) It is Murphy’s Law.
 - (b) Maintain the temperature at 200 Fahrenheit.
 - (c) We are leaving for the Indira Gandhi International airport.
- iv. What is the traditional name of bakers in Goa and what made them different from other people in appearance?

Ans :

2021

- i. (c) Every house has their own furnace in Goa.
- ii. A marriage gift would have no meaning if a sweet bread known as the ‘bol’ is not served to the guests just like a party feast loses its charm without this sweet bread.

- iii. (c) We are leaving for the Indira Gandhi International airport.
- iv. The traditional name of the bakers was ‘pader’ and since they were a prosperous community, they resembled a jackfruit in appearance.

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

Our elders are often heard reminiscing nostalgically about those good old Portuguese days, the Portuguese and their famous loaves of bread. Those eaters of loaves might have vanished, but the makers are still there. We still have amongst us the mixers, the moulders and those who bake the loaves. Those age-old, time-tested furnaces still exist. The fire in the furnaces has not yet been extinguished. The thud and jingle of the traditional baker’s bamboo, heralding his arrival in the morning, can still be heard in some places. Maybe the father is not alive, but the son still carries on the family profession. These bakers are, even today, known as pader in Goa. What are elders often heard reminiscing nostalgically?

- i. The narrator says that the furnaces were ‘time-tested’ because
 - (a) they had been thoroughly tested each time before being used.
 - (b) they had proved the test of time and were working well.
 - (c) they had been tested by modern-day experts.
 - (d) they had the power to withstand inexperienced usage.
- ii. What does the “fire in the furnaces has not yet been extinguished” imply?
- iii. In the line “Those eaters of loaves might have vanished, but the makers are still there”, What is the tone of narrator and why? Answer in about 40 words.
- iv. Read the following options from (a)-(c) and identify which word would correctly substitute ‘signalling’ in the given sentence from the extract.
A horn sounded, signalling the arrival of Peter’s opponent.
 - (a) unimportant
 - (b) heralding
 - (c) mediocre

Ans :

2017

- i. (b) they had proved the test of time and were working well.

The way the pader sold bread : The baker comes to sell bread twice a day. In the morning jingling thud of his bamboo woke the author from sleep. The loaves were bought by the servant of the house. Children ran to him to have bread bangles or special sweet cake. His one hand supported the basket on his head and the other banged the bamboo on the ground. He would greet the lady of the house with 'Good Morning' and then place the basket on the vertical bamboo peculiar.

What the pader wore : The pader wore a peculiar dress known as kabai. It was single-piece long frock reaching down the knees.

When the pader was paid : The baker usually collected his bills at the end of the month. Monthly accounts used to be recorded on some wall in pencil.

How the pader looked : The pader was a fat plump man . He always looked happy and prosperous. He gave the appearance of a jackfruit.

Writing - II

1. Compare the piece from the text (on the left below) with this other piece on Goan bakers (on the right). What makes the two texts so different ? Are the facts the same ? Do both writers give you a picture of the baker ?

Our elders are often heard reminisces nostalgically about those good old Portuguese days, the Portuguese and their famous loaves of bread. Those eaters of loaves might have vanished but the makers are still there. We still have amongst us the mixers, the moulders and those who bake the loaves. Those age-old time-tested furnaces still exist. The fire in the furnaces had not yet been extinguished. The thud and the jingle of the traditional baker's bamboo, heralding his arrival in the morning, can still be heard in some places. May be the father is not alive but the son still carries on the family profession.	After Goa's liberation, people used to say nostalgically that the Portuguese bread vanished with the paders. But the paders have managed to survive because they have perfected the art of door to door delivery service. The paders pick up the knowledge of bread-making from traditions in the family. The leavened, over-baked bread is a gift of the Portuguese to India. (Adapted from Nanda kumar Kamat's The Unsung Lives of Goan Padars')
---	--

Ans :

Both the pieces are different. The piece on the left gives a vivid and correct description of the baker but on the right, it is hazy and different. Their language and the text fail to serve the real purpose.

2. Now find a travel brochure about a place you have visited. Look at the description in the brochure. Then write your own account, adding details from your own experience, to give the reader a picture of the place, rather than an impersonal, factual description.

Ans :

For our best understanding let us study the following paragraph.

A Visit To Delhi

Being adjacent to Delhi, we had an educational tour of Delhi. We were four friends. We hired a radio taxi and reached the Qutab Minar. It is the highest tower in India. Then we reached the Indira Gandhi Airport. The aeroplanes added to our knowledge. We turned our taxi towards the Budha Jayanti Park and neared the India Gate. We were happy to see the 'Amar Jawan Jyoti'. It reminds us of our brave soldiers. The Parliament House, the Rashtrapati Bhawan and the Jantar Mantar are the wonderful works of art. It filled our heart with delight. The Rashtrapati Bhawan is really awe-inspiring. Having a glance at the Appu Ghar and the Zoo, we returned towards the Red Fort. It is the Moghul art of architecture. There was a large crowd to see the Diwan-e-aam, Diwan-e-khas and the Rang Mahal. Our hearts were full of wonder and joy.

Group Discussion

1. In groups, collect information on how bakeries bake bread now and how the process has changed over time.

Ans :

The students will make a request and arrange a visit to any neighbouring bakery unit. They will collect the information and jot down the points involved in the different processes. Then they will present it in a class in the shape of a paragraph. Since everything is automatic, the man is only to handle the machinery and note its proper functioning.

special make' Cakes and 'bolinhas' are a must for Christmas and other festival's

9. How is the Goan baker still an important part of the life of a Goan village?

Ans : 2012
The Goan baker is still an important part of the life of a village in Goa. His bread and cakes were an essential part of the Goan life. They were needed in marriages, festivals and other occasions.

10. What do we hear from our elders about the Portuguese?

Ans : 2011, 2008
Our elders often remember the Portuguese in Goa. They were famous for preparing the loaves or bread. Their furnaces still exist in Goa. They were the mixers, moulders and the bakers.

11. What did the baker mean to the narrator during his childhood? How many times did he pay a visit?

Ans : 2010
The baker or pader was an important person in the author's life. He was treated like a friend. He used to come twice a day, once in the morning to sell the bread and then while returning after emptying his basket. The author used to run to meet him in order to take the bread-bangles. He chatted and gossiped with him.

12. What was Kabai ? Give a brief description.

Ans : 2008
Kabai was a particular dress - a single piece long frock reaching down the knees which the bakers used to wear in old days. Later it was replaced by a shirt and trousers which were longer than the shorts and shorter than the full length.

13. State the importance of the presence of furnace in the village in Goa ?

Ans : 2006
Even today Portuguese are famous for loaves of bread. The furnaces still exist where on occasions bread and cakes are prepared. It is their traditional family work. So the bakers furnaces are most essential.

Long Answer Type Questions

- The narrator shares, "Baking was indeed a profitable profession in the old days."
 - What do you feel has changed now? Why?
 - State any one way, you feel, the Paders can regain their lost glory.

Ans :

2021

- Baking was indeed a profitable profession in the old days. A lot of things have changed now that reduced the profitability of the local bakers. Big business houses have replaced small bakers with their competitive prices. Today's generation gets attracted to fancy advertisements and prefers to buy highly advertised products. Local Bakers find it difficult to sell their high in quality but a less known or less advertised product. The flavour and quality of their products fail to appeal to today's youth whose senses are blindfolded by branded goods.
- The Paders can regain their lost Glory by Government's support for locally made goods. We should be vocal for locals by buying and publicising local bakery products. The government's self-reliant India initiative might help the small scale workers to earn their livelihood and lost glory.

- In the chapter, 'A Baker from Goa' the narrator talks about his childhood in Goa and his fond memories.

Compare the childhood of Nelson Mandela with that of the narrator.

Ans :

2021

The childhood memories of both the writers give us a glimpse into their traditions and cultures. Nelson Mandela had spent his childhood around fields and streams whereas the childhood of Lucio Rodrigues, the narrator of the Glimpses of India, seems to be inspired by the English and Portuguese culture. Mandela lived life as a cattle boy but Lucio belonged to a civilized and literate family where he talks about basic hygiene and etiquette. Mandela grew up in a poor family and ate whatever he got in the fields, like roasted mealies. On the contrary, Lucio was born in a well-settled family who could afford bread bangles and other delicacies available in Goa. Mandela had to struggle for his basic freedom throughout his life. Lucio lived a privileged life as interpreted from the lesson 'Baker from Goa'.

- After reading the story "A Baker from Goa", do you think our traditions, heritage, values and practices are the roots that nourish us? Why/why not?

Ans :

2015

'A Baker from Goa' highlights the importance of the traditional practice of making bread for every occasion and festival of the Goan people.

Short Answer Type Questions

1. The author says — ‘During our childhood in Goa, the baker used to be our friend, companion and guide.’ Elaborate.

Ans :

2024

The narrator Lucio Rodrigues becomes nostalgic as he talked about a traditional Goan village baker who occupied a special place in the society. He referred to the baker as his friend, companion and guide. It shows that the people of Goa are rich in human values. The narrator himself has respect for all the professions. He never looks down upon anybody. The baker with his disciplined routine and the most sought after loaves of bread teaches the children the value of being punctual.

2. “During our childhood in Goa, the baker used to be our friend, companion and guide.” What does this statement imply in relation to the character of the baker ?

Ans :

2024

The statement “During our childhood in Goa, the baker used to be our friend, companion and guide” implies that the baker was a man of good character. The children were fond of him, which suggests that he was patient with children, an affectionate/loving person, and more than just a baker, but more of a family friend. He was also a respected person in the Goan society who would guide the children about good behavior.

3. Justify the opinion that the traditional baker and his bread play a significant role in the cultural and social fabric of Goan society.

Ans :

2023

The traditional baker and his bread play a significant role in the cultural and social fabric of Goan society. The baker’s bread was not an ordinary food item but an essential part of every Goan wedding or special occasion. The bread used to be a symbol of social and economic status.

4. How did the baker become synonymous with celebrations and occasions in Goa?

Ans :

2021

Bread occupied a significant place in Goan celebrations and occasions. Cakes and bolinhas (coconut cookies) were a must for Christmas and other festivals. A girl’s mother must serve bread sandwiches on her daughter’s engagement. The Engagements and marriages were charmless in the absence of bread preparations.

5. How is bread an important part of life in Goa?

Or

Is bread an important part of Goan life? How do you know this?

Ans :

2020, 2017

Yes, bread is an important part of the Goan life. It is needed for marriage gifts, parties and feasts. Bread is also needed by a mother for preparing sandwiches during her daughter’s engagement. Thus, it is necessary to have breads for every occasion because of which the presence of a baker’s furnace in the village is very important.

6. When did the baker come every day? Why did the children run to meet him?

Or

When would the baker come everyday?

Or

Why did the children run to meet him?

Or

Why did the children run to meet the baker every day?

Ans :

2018, 2017, 2015

The baker in the traditional goan village came twice a day. Once in the morning when he set out on his selling round and then when he reberhed after emptying his huge basket. The children considered the baker their friend, companion and guide. They ran to meet him for the delicious bread bangles or sometimes it was for the sweet bread a special make.

7. What do we learn about the financial condition of the bakers of Goa?

Or

Why did the baker and his family always look happy and prosperous

Ans :

2017, 2011

The financial condition of the bakers of Goa seems to be good. It was a profitable profession. Their jack-fruit like plump physique was an evidence to this. The bakers usually looked happy and prosperous.

8. What are the different varieties of bread popular in Goa? What occasions are they associated with?

Ans :

2012

Bread is very popular in Goa. The Goan bakers make different breads of superb quality such as bread-bangles, loaves, sweet bread ‘bol’, cakes and ‘bolinhas’

‘Marriage gifts are always special with sweet bread ‘bol’. children love to eat bread-bangles as its fragrance attracts them. Loaves were of

5. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

Thus, the presence of the baker's furnace in the village is absolutely essential. The baker or bread-seller of those days had a peculiar dress known as the 'kabai. It was a single-piece long frock reaching down to the knees. In our childhood we saw bakers wearing a shin and trousers which were shorter than full-length ones and longer than half pants. Even today, anyone who wears a half pant which reaches just below the knees invites the comment that he is dressed like a pader! The baker usually collected his bills at the end of the month. Monthly accounts used to be recorded on some wall in pencil. Baking was indeed a profitable profession in the old days.

- i. The author says that 'Baking was indeed a profitable profession in the old days.' Which of the following reasons justify this claim?
 - (a) Everyone routinely bought bread.
 - (b) Bread was always sold fresh.
 - (c) All social occasions were somehow linked with bread.
 - (d) Monthly accounts used to be recorded on some wall in pencil.
- ii. People wearing half-pants were taunted in Goa. Why? Answer in 40 words.
- iii. The presence of the baker's furnace in the village was absolutely essential because _____.
- iv. Paders used to wear a peculiar dress known as the 'kabar. Replace the word 'peculiar' with another from the options given below so that the meaning remains the same.

(a) absurd	(b) strange
(c) silly	(d) ridiculous

Ans :

2015

- i. (c) All social occasions were somehow linked with bread.
- ii. People dressed in half pants were teased because of its local association with the traditional dress of the baker. Such people were derided as 'dressed like paders.'
- iii. no function, no festival, no party was possible in the absence of a baker.
- iv. (ii) strange

II

COORG

1. INTRODUCTION

The chapter 'Glimpses of India' is divided into three parts. This is the second part of the chapter written by Lokesh Abrol. This is a pen portrait of Coorg which is a beautiful place favours for its coffee plantations and rain forests. The place has an amazing weather throughout the year with enough rain during the monsoon season. A variety of animals can be found here while the place is surrounded by beautiful Brahmagiri hills, islands and Tibetan settlements.

2. CHARACTERS

Coorgis

The people of Coorg are very brave and courageous. It is said that they are of Greek descent. Some people say that they are the descendents of the Arabs. The first chief of the Indian army was General Cariappa who was a Coorgi.

3. SUMMARY

Situation of Coorg

Coorg is situated midway between Mysore and the coastal town of Mangalore. It is a heaven on earth carried gently by the air with great efforts from the kingdom of God. Here one can find the martial men who have shown their valour in the war. It is a home of evergreen forests, spices, coffee, wild animals and other kinds of shrubs. During the monsoon, it rains heavily and visitors fail to enjoy the perfect bliss of kilt earth. From September to March the weather is all embracing and the air breathes of invigorating coffee. In prime corners one can see coffee estates and colonial bungalows.

Origin of People of Coorg

Coorg or Kodagu is the smallest district of Karnataka. Its people are possibly of Greek or Arabic descent. As the story goes on that a part of Alexander's army moved south along the coast and settled here since the return became impossible. So these people married the locals and adopted their rites. Even today we can see some difference from the Hindu mainstream. There is another theory of Arab origin. The Kodagus wear black coat with an embroidered waist belt known as Kuppia, it resembles the Kuffia worn by the Arabs and the Kurds.

This tradition continues even today. This shows how our traditional practices can keep us to our past and heritage. Traditional values shape our personality as well as provide us with emotional support. They enable us to face difficult situations and make us emotionally strong. Traditional practices also have an impact on our behavioural patterns towards the other people in the society.

4. For what reasons was a baker in the Goan village considered very essential ? What was the peculiar dress of the baker in the Portuguese days ?

Or

What was the peculiar dress of the bakers during the Portuguese days?

Ans :

2014, 2012

A baker was very essential in the Goan village. He prepared sweet bread. They were known as the 'bol'. The marriage gifts were considered meaningless without 'bol'. For the engagement of a daughter sandwiches were prepared. On other festivals and occasions cakes and bolinhas were made. Children bought bread bangles from them. In the Portuguese days, the bakers wore a particular dress called Kabai. It was a single piece long frock reaching down to the knees.

5. Baking was considered an essential and a profitable profession in a traditional Goan village. What reasons does the writer give to support his point ?

Or

Bread and cakes were an integral part of Goan life in olden days. Discuss the memories that author recollects about good old Portuguese days and their loaves of bread.

Ans :

2011, 2009

Goa is very much influenced by the Portuguese. Baking was considered an essential and a profitable profession in a traditional Goan village. The Portuguese are famous for preparing the loaves of bread. We can come across the bakers of bread. It is their traditional family work. The villagers were much fond of the sweet bread known as 'bol'. The marriage gifts were meaningless without it. So the bakers' furnaces were the most essential. 'Cakes' and 'bolinhas' formed an important item on various occasions like Christmas and other festivals. The baker would collect the bill at the end of the month. They recorded their accounts on the wall in pencil. Baking was a profitable business in old days. The baker and his family never starved and they looked happy and prosperous.

6. Why was the baker's furnace essential in a traditional Goan village?

Ans :

2010

The baker's furnace is essential in a traditional Goan village because without the baker's furnace bread, cakes, bolinhas and sandwiches cannot be made. Marriage gifts are meaningless if sweet bread cannot be supplied. The lady of the house needs to prepare sandwiches for her daughter's engagement. For Christmas and other festivals cakes and bolinhas are a must. Thus, the presence of the baker's furnace is absolutely essential in a traditional Goan village.

7. Rodrigues describes his childhood and the bakers of Goa. What does he remember so fondly about those bakers ?

Ans :

2009

Rodrigues describes his childhood. Those were good old Portuguese days, the Portuguese and their famous loaves of bread. The eaters of loaves might have vanished but the makers are still there. We still have amongst us mixers, the moulders and those who bake the loaves. Those time tested furnaces still exist. It is their traditional family work. Those bakers are known as paders in Goa. The writer remembers a baker fondly. He used to be their friend. He used to visit their house twice a day. In the morning the jingling sound of the bamboo woke them from sleep. The maid servants purchased the loaves. The bakers also sold bread bangles, sweet bread of special make, cakes and bolinhas. He collected the bill at the end of the month.

8. The Portuguese still remember their good old days, the traditional bakers and their loaves of bread. This fact reflected the deep-rooted love for their culture and traditions. What lesson do you learn from their life ?

Ans :

2004

The author enjoys listening to the stories of his elders about the Portuguese baker and their delicious loaves of bread. Time has changed now. Bakers are still remembered but metaphorically. If any person is seen wearing a half pant that reaches just below the knees or has a plump physique, he is called a baker. This reflects the Goan's love and respect for their tradition and culture. Their life teaches us a valuable lesson to be connected to our roots. It helps us in maintaining our identity all over the world. We should not be influenced by Western culture. Indian tradition is well known for its unity in diversity. We have a rich legacy of culture and values. It is our duty to preserve

2. What did the bakers wear :

- (i) In the Portuguese days
- (ii) When the author was young

Ans :

- (i) The bakers were usually dressed up in a peculiar dress called kabai. It was a single piece long frock reaching down to the knees.
- (ii) During his childhood days, the author saw the bakers wearing a shirt and trousers which were shorter than full length ones and longer than half pants.

3. Who invites the comment - “he is dressed like a pader” Why?

Ans :

Any person who is wearing a half pant which reaches just below the knees invites this comment. This is because the baker, known as a pader, used to dress like that.

4. Where were the monthly accounts of the baker recorded?

Ans :

Monthly accounts of the baker were recorded on some wall in the house with a pencil.

5. What does a ‘jackfruit-like appearance’ mean?

Ans :

It means having a plump physique, like a jackfruit.

Thinking About The Text

1. Which of these statements are correct?

1. The pader was an important person in the village in old times.
2. Paders still exist in Goan villages.
3. The paders went away with the Portuguese.
4. The paders continue to wear a single-piece long frock.
5. Bread and cakes were an integral part of Goan life in the old days.
6. Traditional bread-baking is still a very profitable business.
7. Paders and their families starve in the present times.

Ans :

1. Correct, 2. Correct, 3. Incorrect, 4. Incorrect, 5. Correct, 6. Correct, 7. Incorrect

2. Is bread an important part of Goan life? How do you know this?

Ans :

Yes, bread is an important part of Goan life. It is an important part of marriage gifts, parties and feasts. Bread is also prepared by a mother for preparing sandwiches during her daughter’s engagement. Thus, it is necessary to have breads for every occasion, because of which the presence of a baker’s furnace in the village is very important

3. Tick the right answer. What is the tone of the author when he says the following?

1. The thud and the jingle of the traditional baker ‘s bamboo can still be heard in some places, (nostalgic, hopeful, sad)
2. Maybe the father is not alive but the son still carries on the family profession, (nostalgic, hopeful, sad)
3. I still recall the typical fragrance of those loaves, (nostalgic, hopeful, naughty)
4. The tiger never brushed his teeth. Hot tea could wash and clean up everything so nicely, after all. (naughty, angry, funny)
5. Cakes and bolinhas are a must for Christmas as well as other festivals, (sad, hopeful, matter-of-fact)
6. The baker and his family never starved. They always looked happy and prosperous, (matter-of-fact, hopeful, sad)

Ans :

1. Nostalgic, 2. Hopeful, 3. Nostalgic, 4. Funny, 5. Matter-of-fact, 6. Matter-of-fact

Writing - I

1. In this extract, the author talks about traditional bread-baking during his childhood days. Complete the table with the help of clues on the left. Then write a paragraph about the author’s childhood days.

Clues	Author’s childhood days
the way bread was baked	
the way the pader sold bread	
what the pader wore	
when the pader was paid	
how the pader looked	

Ans :

The way bread was baked : The stuff was mixed, the bread was moulded and it was baked in furance. Their smell was delicious.

- ii. The “fire in the furnaces has not yet been extinguished” implies furnaces are still being used to bake the loaves of bread.
- iii. The author’s tone is nostalgic for the Portuguese loaves of bread and at the same time hopeful that these bread and the Portuguese bakers exist in Goa.
- iv. (b) heralding

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

We kids would be pushed aside with a mild rebuke and the loaves would be delivered to the servant. But we would not give up. We would climb a bench or the parapet and peep into the basket, somehow. I can still recall the typical fragrance of those loaves. Loaves for the elders and the bangles for the children.

- i. Why were the children pushed aside?
 - (a) Because they were making noise
 - (b) To deliver the bread to the servant
 - (c) To give them bread loaves
 - (d) So that bread seller could go inside the house
- ii. What was there in the basket?
- iii. What did children do when they were pushed aside by the baker?
- iv. Read the following descriptions (a)-(c) and identify which one correctly corresponds to the extract.
 - (a) An autobiographical account describing the author’s feelings and thought regarding an event in her life.
 - (b) A nostalgic remembrance of the daily routine of the narrator when he was a child.
 - (c) A soliloquy is a speech given by a character alone on stage, which reveals their innermost thoughts and feelings to the audience.

Ans :

2016

- i. (b) To deliver the bread to the servant
- ii. The basket contained bread bangles for children and loaves for elders.
- iii. When the children were pushed aside by the baker they climbed a bench or the parapet to peep into the baker’s basket.
- iv. (b) A nostalgic remembrance of the daily routine of the narrator when he was a child.

4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

During our childhood in Goa, the baker used to be our friend, companion and guide. He used to come at least twice a day. Once, when he set out in the morning on his selling round, and then again, when he returned after emptying his huge basket. The jingling thud of his bamboo woke us up from sleep and we ran to meet and greet him. Why was it so? Was it for the love of the loaf? Not at all. The loaves were bought by some Paskine or Bastine, the maid-servant of the house! What we longed for were those bread-bangles which we chose carefully. Sometimes it was sweet bread of special make.

- i. The author says, ‘He used to come at least twice a day.’ What is meant by this?
 - (a) The pader had a habit of visiting the neighbourhood multiple times.
 - (b) The bread was baked fresh and delivered fresh.
 - (c) The customers demanded more than one visit.
 - (d) A pader tried to sell all the loaves he had baked for the day.
- ii. What attracted the children to rush to the door on hearing the jingle of the pader’s bamboo?
- iii. We know that the pader used to come early morning because _____.
- iv. ‘The jingling thud of his bamboo woke us up from sleep...’ In the options given below, which words express the same relationship as ‘jingling thud’ in the extract?
 - (a) ecstatic joy
 - (b) eerie silence
 - (c) shrieking cry
 - (d) boiling rage

Ans :

2014

- i. (d) A pader tried to sell all the loaves he had baked for the day.
- ii. The children were attracted by either sweet bread or bread-bangles in the pader’s basket. Allured by the aroma of loaves of fresh bread, they used to climb on parapets or on a bench to peep into the baker’s basket. The bangles of sweet bread were a great fascination for them.
- iii. the children would be still sleeping.
- iv. (c) shrieking cry

2. There are a number of craft-based professions which are dying out. Pick one of the crafts below. Make a group presentation to the class about the skills required, and the possible reasons for decline of the craft.

Can you think of ways to revive these crafts?

1. Pottery.
2. Carpentry
3. Batik work
4. Bamboo weaving
5. Dhurri (rug) weaving
6. Making jute products
7. Embroidery
8. Handloom

Ans :

Not only the above mentioned craft-based professions are declining but also so many others have come to a stand-still. It is because the modern innovations and techniques are so advanced that the ancient techniques are very costly, time-consuming, laborious, troublesome, ancient, complicated and tensed.

For the revival of any craft much depends on the policies of the government. It is a matter of worth understanding as to who will use the traditional modes when he is getting more accurate, less costly item in the twinkling of an eye.

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. Who is the author of "A Baker from Goa"?
 (a) Arup Kumar Datta
 (b) Lokesh Abrol
 (c) Lucio Rodrigues
 (d) None of these
 Ans : 2021
 (c) Lucio Rodrigues
2. Which word in the following means the same as 'sweet smell'?
 (a) Good morning (b) Loaves
 (c) Fragrance (d) None of these
 Ans : 2021
 (c) Fragrance
3. Which one of the following task is done by bakers?
 (a) Bake the loaves (b) Bake the dough
 (c) Bake the mould (d) None of these

Ans :

- (a) Bake the loaves

2020

4. Why do the elders think about their past?
 (a) They miss the good old days.
 (b) They remember their bad days.
 (c) They think younger are slow.
 (d) None of these

Ans :

- (a) They miss the good old days.

2007, 2007

What are the bakers known as in Goa?

- (a) Pader (b) Portugese
 (c) pekar (d) Baker

Ans :

- (a) Pader

2012

6. What did the children long for?
 (a) Loaves (b) bread bangles
 (c) banana bread (d) all of these

Ans :

- (b) bread bangles

2012

7. _____ was called kabai.
 (a) Baker's dress (b) baker's basket
 (c) baker's bamboo (d) baker's song

Ans :

- (a) Baker's dress

2010

8. What does the narrator still remember?
 (a) Typical fragrance of the loaves
 (b) Typical fragrance of the dough
 (c) Typical fragrance of the mould
 (d) None of these

Ans :

- (a) Typical fragrance of the loaves

2007

9. Where were the monthly accounts of the baker recorded?
 (a) In a copy, with a pencil
 (b) On a wall, with a pencil
 (c) On a board, with a pencil
 (d) None of these

Ans :

- (b) On a wall, with a pencil

2007

10. How is the family profession still carried?
 (a) By their nephews (b) By their sons
 (c) By their workers (d) None of these

Ans :

- (b) By their sons

2005

Famous for Valour

Coorgi homes are very hospitable. There are so many tales of valour related to their sons and fathers. Coorg Regiment is famous in the Indian Army. General Cariappa, the first chief of Indian Army was a Coorgi. Only the Kodagus are the people in India who are permitted to carry firearms without a licence. They are famous for showing utmost bravery before the enemy.

Water Games of Coorg

There flows the Cauvery river from the hills and forests of Coorg. Fish like Mahaseer and Kingfishers etc. are abundant in these waters. Other creatures like squirrels, langurs and elephants enjoy the splash and ripple effect in the clear water. The elephants can be seen bathing and their mahouts scrub them. The games like rafting, canoeing, rappelling, rock climbing, mountain biking and walking trails are favourite with the trekkers. There one can enjoy the birds, bees, butterflies, macaques, malabar squirrels. Langurs and slender loris are there to company us. They sit on the trees and keep a watchful eye on the visitors.

Other Surprises of Coorg

The ride on the elephant is very joyous. One can enjoy a climb on the Brahmagiri hills. It provides a clear cut worth seeing view of Coorg. There one can see the rope bridge which leads to the sixty-four acre island of Nisargadhama. Walking over this rope-bridge creates trembling sensations in the body. There one can come across India's largest Tibetan colony. It is run by the Buddhist monks. It is near Bylakuppe. It is inhabited by monks who wear red, ochre and yellow clothes. A number of visitors visit to discover the heart and soul of India in Coorg. One can reach there by reaching Madikeri. It is the district headquarter. The misty hills, lush forests and coffee plantation will cost a spell on us. From Bangalore, Mysore and Mangalore one can reach Coorg. From Bangalore it is about 250-260 km.

4. WORD MEANINGS

1. Midway - in the mid path
2. Coastal - near the coast
3. Heaven - paradise
4. Drifted from - carried along
5. Kingdom - country
6. Inhabited - resided by
7. Martial - relating with war
8. Creatures - animals that remains
9. Evergreen - always green
10. Spices - spices
11. Pours - rains
12. Commences - starts
13. Showers - rain
14. Invigorating - enlivening
15. Colonial - pertaining to a colony
16. Tucked - with complete nearness
17. Canopies - hanging covers that form a shelter
18. Prime - best quality
19. Fiercely - very much
20. Descent - lineage
21. Alexander - name of a brave warrior
22. Impractical - impossible
23. Apparent - clear
24. Traditions - customs
25. Rites - customs
26. Distinct - different
27. Mainstream - a tradition that most people follow
28. Embroidered - work of needle and thread
29. Hospitality - custom of welcoming
30. Recount - recall
31. Numerous - many
32. Tales - stories
33. Valour - bravery
34. Related - concerning
35. Most decorated - receiving maximum awards for bravery in a war
36. Permitted - allowed
37. Abound - overflow
38. Partially - a small part
39. Ripple - current of the waves
40. Splash - dripping
41. Scrubbed - rubbed
42. Mahouts - who takes care of an elephant
43. Laidback - peaceful
44. Adventure - courageously
45. Converts - changes
46. Rafting - travel in a river in a raft
47. Raft - a platform made by tying planks together
48. Canoeing - travel in a river in a large narrow boat
49. Numerous - many
50. Trails - paths created by walking
51. Region - area
52. Rappelling - going down a rock by sliding down a rope
53. Favourite - lovely
54. Trekkers - travellers
55. Watchful - vigilant
56. Loris - a kind of lemur
57. Slender - polite
58. Step aside - keep away
59. Prefer - look nice
60. Panoramic view - a view of a wide area

4. "The climb to the _____ hills brings you into a panoramic view of the entire misty landscape of Coorg."

(a) Brahmagiri (b) Himalayan
(c) Nilgiri (d) Parvati

Ans : 2015

(a) Brahmagiri

5. The first chief of the Indian Army is from _____.

(a) coorg (b) Goa
(c) Mysore (d) Punjab

Ans : 2013

(a) coorg

6. Coorg is a _____ country.

(a) tea (b) bread
(c) coffee (d) green

Ans : 2013

(c) coffee

7. Where is Coorg situated?

(a) Mysore (b) Mangalore
(c) Karnataka (d) Kerala

Ans : 2013

(c) Karnataka

8. _____ river obtains its water from Coorg.

(a) Yamuna (b) Narmada
(c) Kaveri (d) Tapi

Ans : 2011, 2006

(c) Kaveri

9. What are the activities available in Coorg?

(a) River-rafting (b) Canoeing
(c) Mountain biking (d) All of these

Ans : 2013, 2007

(d) All of these

10. What is canoeing?

(a) travelling in a river in a canoe
(b) travelling in a river in a raft
(c) going down a cliff by sliding down a rope
(d) All of these

Ans : 2011

(a) travelling in a river in a canoe

11. What covers thirty percent area of the district of Kodagu?

(a) Deciduous Forests (b) Evergreen Forests
(c) Mountains (d) None of these

Ans : 2010

(b) Evergreen Forests

12. Where is Coorg situated?

(a) between Mysore and the coastal town of Bangalore.
(b) between Mysore and the coastal town of Mangalore.
(c) between Mangalore and the coastal town of Bangalore.
(d) None of these

Ans : 2008

(b) between Mysore and the coastal town of Mangalore.

13. What type of people inhabit this land of rolling hills?

(a) Martial Man (b) Evergreen Man
(c) Mountain Man (d) None of these

Ans : 2005

(a) Martial Man

Short Answer Type Questions

1. Coorg has been defined as a 'piece of heaven' by the writer. Justify.

Ans : 2024

Coorg, described in "Glimpses of India," is called a 'piece of heaven' because of its breathtaking natural beauty. The region has rolling hills, lush coffee plantations, dense forests, and rich wildlife. Its pleasant climate, waterfalls, and peaceful atmosphere create a paradise-like setting that attracts and fascinates visitors.

2. "Coorgi homes have a tradition of hospitality, and they are more than willing to recount numerous tales of valour related to their sons and fathers." Elaborate with reference to the chapter "Glimpses of India".

Ans : 2023

Coorgi Regiment of Army is the most decorated regiment with several awards and accolades. Coorgis are the only people allowed to carry firearms without a license in India. In these ways, Coorgi tradition of courage and bravery is recognized in modern India.

3. Why does the author in 'Coorg' say that the visitors' search for the heart and soul of India would be found in Coorg?

Ans : 2021

Different aspects of Indian culture and tradition can be experienced in Coorg. It is home to

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

Thinking About Language

1. Collocations

Certain words 'go together'. Such 'word friends' are called collocations'. The collocation of a word is 'the company it keeps'.

For example, look at the paired sentences and phrases below. Which is a common collocation, and which one is odd? Strike out the odd sentence or phrase.

- 'How old are you?'
'How young are you?'
- a pleasant person
a pleasant pillow

Ans :

- The odd sentence is 'How young are you?'
- The odd phrase is 'a pleasant pillow'.

2. Here are some nouns from the text.

culture	monks	surprise
experience	weather	tradition

Work with a partner and discuss which of the nouns can collocate with which of the adjectives given below. The first one has been done for you.

unique	terrible	unforgettable
serious	ancient	wide
sudden		

- culture : unique culture, ancient culture
- monks : _____
- surprise : _____
- experience : _____
- weather : _____
- tradition : _____

Ans :

1.	culture	unique culture, ancient culture
2.	monks	unforgettable monks, unique monks
3.	surprise	sudden surprise, terrible surprise
4.	experience	serious experience, sudden experience, wide experience
5.	weather	unforgettable weather
6.	tradition	ancient tradition

3. Complete the following phrases from the text. For each phrase, can you find at least one other word that would fit into the blank?

- tales of _____
- coastal _____
- a piece of _____
- evergreen _____
- _____ plantations
- _____ bridge
- wild _____

You may add your own examples to this list.

Ans :

	Missing	Alternate word
1.	valour	bravery
2.	town	belt, village
3.	heaven	cake
4.	rainforests	jungle
5.	coffee	tea, banana
6.	rope	steel, concrete
7.	creatures	animals

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

- Who is the author of "Coorg"?
(a) Arup Kumar Datta (b) Lokesh Abrol
(c) Lucio Rodrigues (d) None of these

Ans :

2021

- (b) Lokesh Abrol

- What is referred to as 'a piece of heaven'?
(a) Swimming Pool (b) Coorg
(c) Night (d) None of these

Ans :

2020

- (b) Coorg

- What is rappelling?
(a) travelling in a river in a canoe
(b) travelling in a river in a raft
(c) going down a cliff by sliding down a rope
(d) None of these

Ans :

2015

- (c) going down a cliff by sliding down a rope

of the road. Women were plucking the tea leaves in bamboo baskets. May to July are the best months of tea yielding.

4. WORD MEANINGS

1. Youngster - a young lad
2. Classmate - class-fellow
3. Vendor - seller
4. High pitched - high voice
5. Sipped - drank
6. Steaming - vapoured
7. Whew - surprise
8. Exclaimed - said in wonder
9. Detective - spy
10. Ardent - firm
11. Keener - anxious
12. Admitted - accepted
13. Magnificent - grand and decent
14. Densely - deep
15. Stretched - spread
16. Dwarfing - small
17. Sturdy - powerful
18. Billowing - moving mass of cloud steam etc. like a wave
19. Excitedly - with excitement
20. Brought up - cared for
21. Concentration - attention
22. Discovered - searched
23. Legends - old stories
24. Twigs - branches
25. Delicious - tasty
26. Flavour - smell
27. Ascetic - holy man
28. Meditations - thinking of God
29. Banished - exiled
30. Beverage - liquid for drinking (excluding water)
31. Clattered - made a sound
32. Veered - turned in a direction
33. Gravel-road - small pebbled road
34. Pruned - trimmed
35. Aprons - cloth
36. Sprouted - grown

5. MESSAGE

The story tells us about the popularity of tea as a beverage. Over 80 crore cups of tea are drunk every day throughout the world. It shows the increasing popularity of tea. The lesson gives a graphic description of the sea of tea bushes stretching as far as eyes can go in Assam. The plucking of the newly sprouted leaves by groups of tea - pluckers with bamboo baskets on their backs are vividly described in the lesson.

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Activity

NODIA: Can you say which parts of India grow (i) tea, (ii) coffee?

Ans :

- (i) Tea is grown in Darjeeling, Siliguri, Ooty, Kerala.
- (ii) Coffee is grown in Kerala and Tamil Nadu.

Thinking About Language - I

1. Look at these words: upkeep, downpour, undergo, dropout, walk-in. They are built up from a verb (keep, pour, go, drop, walk) and an adverb or a preposition (up, down, under, out, in). Use these words appropriately in the sentences below. You may consult a dictionary.

1. A heavy _____ has been forecast due to low pressure in the Bay of Bengal.
2. Rakesh will _____ major surgery tomorrow morning.
3. My brother is responsible for the _____ of our family property.
4. The _____ rate for this accountancy course is very high.
5. She went to the Enterprise Company to attend a _____ interview.

Ans :

1. downpour, 2. undergo, 3. upkeep, 4. drop-out, 5. walk-in.

2. Now fill in the blanks in the sentences given below by combining the verb given in brackets with one of the words from the box as appropriate.

over	by	through
out	up	down

1. The Army attempted unsuccessfully to _____ the Government, (throw)
2. Scientists are on the brink of a major _____ in cancer research, (break)
3. The State Government plans to build a _____ for Bhubaneswar to speed up traffic on the main highway, (pass)
4. Gautama's _____ on life changed when he realised that the world is full of sorrow, (look)
5. Rakesh seemed unusually _____ after the game, (cast)

Ans :

1. overthrow, 2. breakthrough, 3. bypass, 4. lookout, 5. downcast.

beautiful landscapes, coffee plantations, spice gardens, Buddhist monks and monasteries. India's amazing diversity is present here. That's why the author says that the visitors' search for the heart and soul of India would be found in Coorg.

4. Coorgs belong to a valorous and hospitable race. Comment on this statement with reference to the text.

Ans :

2021

The people of Coorg are known for their bravery. Even now only Kodavus (people of Coorg) are allowed to carry firearms without a licence. Coorgs are said to be very hospitable. They entertain their guests with the stories of their ancestors' bravery.

5. Do adventure sports like river rafting and rock climbing require a person to possess just physical strength? Why/Why not?

Ans :

2021

Besides physical strength, psychological or mental stability is equally important for adventurous sports. The adventurer should be able to take quick action in case of any emergency. He should be aware of natural disasters and must have taken precautionary safety measures with him.

6. Describe Coorg's weather. When is it most pleasant for the tourists to visit Coorg?

Or

In Coorg, which is the season of joy? Why?

Ans :

2021, 2011

The weather of Coorg is pleasant during the months from September to March. During that time, the weather is perfect with some showers thrown in for good measure. During the monsoon, it receives heavy rainfall.

7. How will a tourist enjoy when he climbs the Brahmagiri hills?

Ans :

2021

The climb to the Brahmagiri hills not only offers the panoramic view of the entire misty landscape of coorg, but also it is a getaway to many hidden surprises. Besides, a walk across the rope bridge leads to the sixty-four-acre island of Nisargadhama. Then, there is India's largest Tibetan settlement, Bylakuppe.

8. The people of Coorg have a tradition of courage and bravery. How has it been recognised in modern India?

Ans :

2015

Coorgs are a proud race of martial men and beautiful women. They are very hospitable and entertain their guests by relating stories of bravery of their sons and fathers.

The Coorgi tradition of courage and bravery has been recognized by awarding the Coorg Regiment with the most number of gallantry awards. Besides, the Coorgs are the only Indians allowed to carry firearms without a license.

9. What attractions in Coorg wait to be discovered by tourists?

Ans :

2012, 2008

Coorg is a place of beautiful sights and tourists have full interest in it. The main attractions in Coorg that wait to be discovered by tourists are river rafting, rock climbing, canoeing, rappelling, mountain biking and elephant-riding. Natural sights like rainforests also attract the tourists.

10. Write down Alexander's story about Coorg's descent.

Ans :

2011

According to one story, Coorgs are the Greek or Arabic descent. It is said that a part of Alexander's army moved along the south coast. When their return become impossible, they settled there and married the locals.

11. Why is Coorg called the land of rolling hills?

Ans :

2010

Coorg is called the land of rolling hills because it has a lot of hills and is itself a hill station. The hills seem to roll down in a panoramic view.

12. How do the wild animals, birds and beasts enjoy the clear water of the Kavery?

Ans :

2008

In the fresh water of Kavery one can see the fish and other animals enjoying. Squirrels and langurs threw half eaten fruits to enjoy the splash of water. The elephants enjoy bathing and the fish dive for their catch.

13. How do we know that Kodavus are a race of warriors?

Ans :

2007

The Coorg families take pride in narrating the tales of valour related to their sons and fathers. The Coorg Regiment is one of the most decorated with bravery medals. The first chief of the Indian Army, General Cariappa was a Coorgi.

61. Entire - complete
62. Misty - foggy
63. Settlement - colony
64. Bonus - extra dividend
65. Monks - sadhu
66. Ochre - yellowish and orange colour
67. Robes - dress
68. Discovered - found out
69. Surprises - wonders
70. Wild - wicked

5. MESSAGE

The lesson gives us a beautiful insight of the smallest district of Karnataka and its people. Coorg is beautifully located and described as a piece of heaven that must have drifted from the kingdom of God. It has rolling hillsides with a pollution free river and forests teeming with wildlife. Here nature exists in its pristine glory, which adds to the diversity of India. The local people, the Kodavus, are well known for their hospitality, just like all Indians. All these features of Coorg add to the diversity of our country.

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Activity

1. What parts of India have you lived in, or visited? Can you name some popular tourist destinations?

Ans :

I have lived in East India and Rajasthan. Popular tourist destinations are Darjeeling, Kalimpong, Shillong, Jaipur, Jaisalmer etc.

Thinking About the Text

1. Where is Coorg?

Or

Where is Coorg? What is it famous for?

Ans :

2012

Coorg or Kodagu is the smallest district of Karnataka. It is situated midway between Mysore and the coastal town of Mangalore. It is famous for its scenic beauty, pleasant weather and lush green rainforests.

2. What is the story about the Kodavu people's descent?

Ans :

2013

The fiercely independent people of Coorg are descendents of Greeks or Arabs. A section of Alexander's army moved South along the coast

and settled here only when they were unable to return to their country. These people married among the locals.

3. What are some of the things you now know about?
 1. the people of Coorg?
 2. the main crop of Coorg?
 3. the sports it offers to a tourists?
 4. the animals you are likely to see in Coorg?
 5. its distance from Bangalore and how to get there?

Ans :

1. They are fiercely independent people and have descended from the Greeks or the Arabs.
2. Coffee is the main crop of Coorg.
3. It mostly offers adventure sports which include river rafting, canoeing, rappelling, rock climbing and mountain biking.
4. The animals likely to be seen in Coorg are macaques, Malabar squirrel, langurs, slender loris, elephants etc.
5. By road, it is around 250 - 260 km. from Bangalore.

4. Here are six sentences with some words in italics. Find phrases from the text that have the same meaning. (Look in the paragraphs indicated)

1. During monsoons it rains so heavily that tourists do not visit Coorg. (Para 2)
2. Some people say that Alexander's army moved south along the coast and settled there. (Para 3)
3. The Coorg people are always ready to tell stories of their son's and father's valour. (Para 4)
4. Even people who normally lead an easy and slow life get smitten by the high energy adventure sports of Coorg. (Para 6)
5. The theory of the Arab origin is supported by the long coat with embroidered waist-belt they wear. (Para 3)
6. Macaques, Malabar squirrels observe you carefully from the tree canopy. (Para 7)

Ans :

1. to keep visitors away.
2. As one story goes.
3. are more than willing to recount.
4. The most laid-back individuals become converts to the high.
5. draws support from.
6. keep a watchful eye.

These people show utmost courage and exemplary bravery during the war period.

Coorg Regiment is famous for its bravery. The first Chief of Indian Army, General Cariappa was a Coorgi. Even the Government has allowed the Coorgi people to carry firearms with them without a licence.

5. How can one enjoy life in the region of Coorg?

Or

Describe Coorg's weather, main crops and the sports which fascinate the visitors.

Ans :

2014

Coorg is a worth-seeing and worth-enjoying tourist-cum-knowledgeable resort. Its people are famous for valour and hospitality. If one wants to visit, he must visit during September to March. During the Monsoon, heavy rains spoil the charm of the trip. The Kavery river is famous for Mahaseer and Kingfisher. Both are the giant fish. In the forests one can enjoy the company of the squirrels, langurs, slender elephants and so on. The elephant ride is a great attraction for children. Coorg's main crops are spices and coffee.

People having the relaxed mood can enjoy numerous water games. Rock climbing and walking trails are very much favourite with the trekkers. A climb to the Brahmagiri hills gives us the entire view of Coorg. One can enjoy walking over the rope bridge.

6. The Coorgies are thousands of miles away from their origin, Greece and Arab. Yet they carry on their unique values, customs and practices. Does this makes them appreciable to you ?

Ans :

2008

The Coorgies are said to descent of Greek or Arabic. It was by chance that had to settle thousands of miles away along south. But they never forgot their traditions and customs. Coorgies leave a very important message to all of us. We learn that we should not forget our roots. We always appreciate those Indians who inspite of staying in west do not forget their culture. It is our values and customs which bind us. We always inherit traditional family values. A person is mirror of his past. So I think that family and traditional bonding should never be forgotten.

7. The Coorgis are the descendants of the Greeks or the Arabs and are still are able to maintain their traditional practices. Do you agree that following these practices today is important ? Why/Why not?

Ans :

2006

After reading the text, I feel that it is important to follow the traditional practices, as it has kept the tradition of Coorgis known to the people even today. If the people of Coorg had not followed it their tradition would have perished and nobody would have remembered them today because of their culture and traditional practices. According to the text, their traditions can be seen in the martial traditions, religious rites and marriages. The Kodavus even wear the dress which resembles Arabs. Traditional practices also play a very important role in maintaining values amongst people and have an impact on shaping the behaviour of people.

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

Coorg, or Kodagu, the smallest district of Karnataka, is home to evergreen rainforests, spices and coffee plantations. Evergreen rainforests cover thirty per cent of this district. During the monsoons, it pours enough to keep many visitors away. The season of joy commences from September and continues till March. The weather is perfect, with some showers thrown in for good measure. The air breathes of invigorating coffee. Coffee estates and colonial bungalows stand tucked under tree canopies in prime corners.

- What do you understand by the term colonial bungalow?
- What can be inferred from the given line?
"During the monsoons, it pours enough to keep many visitors away"
- State TRUE or FALSE.

Only (b) correctly corresponds to the extract.

- A debate is a formal discussion on a particular topic, usually with two or more people presenting different viewpoints and arguments.
- A description is the pattern of narrative development that aims to make vivid a place, object, character, or group.
- An aside is a brief comment or remark made by a character directly to the audience, which is not intended to be heard by other characters on stage.
- A Ballad is a short poem that tells a simple story and has a repeated refrain.

14. Why are the people of Coorg known as descendants of the Arabs?

Ans :

2005

The theory of the people of Coorg as descendants of the Arabs draws support from the long, black coat with an embroidered waist-belt worn by the Kodavus known as kuppia. It resembles the kuffia worn by the Arabs and the Kurds.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. Pen down a brief travelogue* entry, narrating any personal impression/s about a visit to Coorg. Include your reflections about the differences between the place where you live and the place you've visited.

(*A travelogue is a person's account of a journey to another country or place. It can either be a written report with many factual details or a narrative story about personal impressions and experiences.) You may begin like this...

As I stepped into the land of evergreen forests, I was blown away by the pristine beauty and

Ans :

2021

As I stepped into the land of Evergreen forest, I was blown away by the Pristine beauty and lush greenery of Coorg. The invigorating coffee and spices flavour keep reminding you that you are in Coorg. At this moment I recalled how the polluted air gives an indication when I enter my native place. I visited Coorg to satisfy my urge for a natural adventure that is present in Delhi in a different form altogether. Boarding and deboarding a crowded bus or train is an adventure in itself in metropolitan cities. For the first time, after seeing the monks and the monasteries I realised that the Tibetan culture is so pure and unique. Being a nature lover I understand the value of flora and fauna in maintaining the ecosystem that is getting worse day by day in our city. I hope the Corona pandemic would make people understand the importance of the conservation of the environment.

2. How do Coorg's location, people and natural features add to the diversity of India?

Or

Reading 'Coorg' gives us an opportunity to see the beautiful Coorg and to know the people and beauty of it. This way lies its beauty which adds to the diversity of the country. This value lies in Coorg's location, people and nature. Do you agree

with it? If so write a paragraph on these aspects and the need to know all these.

Ans :

2017, 2016

Coorg is beautifully located and described as a piece of heaven that must have drifted from the kingdom of God. It has rolling hillsides with a pollution free river and forests teaming with wildlife. Here nature exists in its pristine glory, which adds to the diversity of India. Further, it has coffee and spices plantations, quite different from the rest of India. The local people, the Kodavus, are a martial race. Of course, they are well known for their hospitality, just like all Indians. All these features of Coorg add to the diversity of our country.

3. One is known by one's roots. The people of Coorg are also recognized for their values and traits in spite of being thousands of miles away from their places of origin-Greece and Arabia. Describe their values and traits.

Ans :

2017

It is true that one is known by one's roots. So, in the context, the fiercely independent people of Coorg are possibly of Greek or Arabic origin. The Coorgis have their roots in their places of origin, that is, Greece and Arabia. So, their blood or culture is apparent in their martial traditions.

They are more than willing to recount numerous tales of valour related to their sons and fathers. The Coorg Regiment is one of the most decorated in the Indian Army. Although Coorgis are thousands of miles away from their places of origin - Greece and Arabia, they are virtually recognized for their values and traits. They have a tradition of hospitality. They are brave, fierce, independent and daredevil. This quality makes them unique.

4. Explain "The people of Coorg are famous for their tradition of hospitality and valour in the army".

Or

The people of Coorg have a tradition of courage and bravery. How has it been recognized in modern India?

Ans :

2015, 2012

It is quite true that the people of Coorg are famous for their tradition of hospitality, love, respect and fellow-feeling. People visiting Coorg always feel at home there and enjoy the panoramic view of the whole landscape of Coorg. The visitors get pleasure in riding over the elephants and the fresh smell of coffee plantation. The residents are always eager to tell the tales of vigour; bravery and courage only related to their sons and fathers.

4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

Midway between Mysore and the coastal town of Mangalore sits a piece of heaven that must have drifted from the kingdom of God. This land of rolling hills is inhabited by a proud race of martial men, beautiful women and wild creatures.

- i. The meaning of rolling hills is _____.
 - (a) chains of hills
 - (b) hills rounded at the top
 - (c) ancient hills
 - (d) sloping hills
- ii. What does the author mean by a 'piece of heaven that must have drifted from the kingdom of God'?
- iii. In the statement, 'Midway between Mysore and the coastal town of Mangalore sits a piece of heaven' the word 'sits' actually means _____.
 - (a) seated
 - (b) located
 - (c) established
 - (d) placed
- (d) Find the meaning of the word 'warlike or connected with war' from the extract.
 - (a) coastal
 - (b) inhibited
 - (c) drifted
 - (d) martial

Ans :

2013

- i. (a) chains of hills
- ii. The author is referring to the mesmerising natural beauty of Coorg which looks like heaven.
- iii. (b) located
- iv. (d) martial

III

TEA FROM ASSAM

1. INTRODUCTION

The chapter 'Glimpses of India' is divided into three parts. This is the third part of the chapter written by Arup Kumar Datta. This is about two friends - Pranjol and Rajvir. Pranjol, a youngster from Assam, is Rajvir's classmate at school in Delhi. Pranjol has invited Rajvir to visit his home during the summer vacation. The chapter talks about the journey of Rajvir to Assam, the city of tea plantations. Rajvir is impressed by the beauty of the tea plantations and mesmerising natural beauty of the place.

2. CHARACTERS

Pranjol

Pranjol is a native of Assam. He is studying in Delhi and loves to read detective stories.

Rajvir

Rajvir is Pranjol's friend. He loves to do his work meticulously. He is going to Assam to visit the tea estates. He is very excited about it.

3. SUMMARY

Train Journey for Assam

Pranjol and Rajvir are class-fellows in Delhi. The parents of Pranjol are living in Assam. Pranjol's father is a manager of a tea-garden in Upper Assam. So Pranjol has invited Rajvir to visit Assam during the summer vacation. Both are in a train journey. When the train stopped, the vender called out 'Chai garam, garam...chai.' Pranjol ordered for two cups of tea. Other passengers were also sipping tea in the compartment. Rajvir told that over 8,00,000,000 cups of tea were drunk daily in the world. The train proceeded onwards.

Magnificent View of Tea Plants

When they were travelling, they came to view a magnificent sight of tea bushes. There were tea-plants like the stretch of the sea. They saw the tea plants in orderly rows and a smoke was coming out from a tall chimney of an ugly building. Rajvir was excited to see the tea-garden. Pranjol told that it is a tea country. Rajvir told some legends about tea.

Legends about Tea

According to one legend there was an ancient Buddhist ascetic. He felt asleep while meditating. He did not like it and cut off his eyelids and threw on the ground. Ten tea plants grew out of the eye-lids. When their leaves were put in hot water, the drink removed sleep. There is another story of the Chinese emperor. He always boiled water before drinking. One day while boiling the water, a few leaves of the twigs fell into the water. It gave a delicious flavour. It is said that they were the tea-leaves.

Rajvir told that tea was first drunk in China. Chai and Chini are from Chinese. It was in the sixteenth century that tea came to Europe. That time it was used as medicine. Then the train reached Mariani junction. These boys collected their luggage. Pranjol's parents took them in a car towards Dhekiabari. It was Pranjol's father's tea-garden. There were tea bushes on both sides

- iv. Which is the best time to visit Coorg? Answer in about 40 words.

Ans :

2018

- i. The residential unit for members of the British colonial community.
- ii. The given line means that it rains very heavily during monsoons. So, only a very few people visit Coorg during this time.
- iii. True
- iv. The weather of Coorg is pleasant for the tourists during the months from September to March. At this time, the smell of coffee is spread all around making it the best time to visit Coorg.

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

These people married amongst the locals and their culture is apparent in the martial traditions, marriage and religious rites, which are distinct from the Hindu mainstream. The theory of Arab origin draws support from the long, black coat with an embroidered waist-belt worn by the Kodavus. Known as kuppia, it resembles the kuffia worn by the Arabs and the Kurds.

- i. Which things show that their culture is distinct from Hindu mainstream in the above extract?
 - (a) Martial traditions (b) Marriage
 - (c) Religious rites (d) All of these
- ii. What is so similar between Kodavus and Arabs?
- iii. Read the following descriptions (a)-(c) and identify which one correctly corresponds to the extract.
 - (a) An autobiographical account describing the author's feelings and thought regarding an event in her life.
 - (b) A debate is a formal discussion on a particular topic, usually with two or more people presenting different viewpoints and arguments.
 - (c) A brochure which gives us a picture of the places' culture, people and tourist destination.
- iv. What is the author's tone in the given extract?

Ans :

2017

- i. (d) All of these
- ii. A long black coat with an embroidered waist-belt resembling the Kuffia is the point of

similarity between the Kodavus and Arabs.

- iii. (c) A brochure which gives us a picture of the places' culture, people and tourist destination.
- iv. In the given extract, the author's tone is informative.

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

The most laidback individuals become converts to the life of high-energy adventure with river rafting, canoeing, rappelling, rock-climbing and mountain-biking. Numerous walking trails in this region are a favourite with trekkers. Birds, bees and butterflies are there to give you company. Macaques. Malabar squirrels, langurs and slender loris keep a watchful eye from the tree canopy. I do, however; prefer to step aside for wild elephants.

- i. How does Coorg change the most-laidback individuals?
 - (a) Into high energy adventurers
 - (b) Into trekkers
 - (c) Into hikers
 - (d) None of these
- ii. Which high-energy adventure sports can be done in Coorg?
- iii. State true or false.

None of the terms (a)-(d) below, can be applied to the statement - Coorg is the best place for staycation.

 - (a) A hypothesis - a proposed explanation for a phenomenon
 - (b) An assumption - something that is taken for granted or assumed to be true without proof
 - (c) A premise - a proposition that forms the basis of an argument
 - (d) A theory - a well-substantiated explanation for a natural phenomenon
- iv. How does Coorg change the most laidback individuals?

Ans :

2016

- i. (a) Into high energy adventurers
- ii. River rafting, canoeing, rappelling, rock-climbing and mountain-biking can be done in Coorg.
- iii. False
- iv. When in Coorg, the most laidback individuals change to become people who love participating in adventure sports.

Thinking About Language - II

Notice how these -ing and -ed adjectives are used.

1. Chess is an interesting game.
I am very interested in chess.
2. Going trekking in the Himalayas this summer is an exciting idea.
We are very excited about the trek.
3. Are all your School books this boring?
He was bored as he had no friends there.

The -ing adjectives show the qualities that chess, trekking or these books have: they cause interest, excitement, or boredom in you. The -ed/-en adjectives show your mental state or your physical state: how you feel in response to ideas, events or things.

1. Think of suitable -ing or -ed adjectives to answer the following questions. You may also use words from those given above.
How would you describe?
 1. a good detective serial on television?

 2. a debate on your favourite topic 'Homework Should Be Banned'? -----
 3. how you feel when you stay indoors due to incessant rain? -----
 4. how you feel when you open a present?

 5. how you feel when you watch your favourite programme on television? -----
 6. the look on your mother's face as you waited in a queue? -----
 7. how you feel when tracking a tiger in a tiger reserve forest? -----
 8. the story you have recently read, or a film you have seen? -----

Ans :

1. exciting, 2. interesting, 3. bored, 4. excited, 5. interested, 6. disappointed, 7. thrilled, 8. thrilling.

2. Now use the adjectives in the exercise above, as appropriate, to write a paragraph about Coorg.

Ans :

Coorg

A trip to the smallest district of Coorg is very interesting as well as exciting. September to March are the best months that will give you an invigorating effect on your health. The season of monsoon is boring. One can feel excited in the company of birds, beasts, langurs in the forests. The water games like rafting, canoeing and rappelling are worth-exciting and do not

create boredom for the trekkers. Coorgi people show much interest and excitement in the Army. The Coorgi Regiment is famous for its valour and courage. There is the largest Indian Tibetan colony. The monks wear interesting robes of yellow colour.

Speaking and Writing

1. Read the following passage about tea.
India and tea are so intertwined together that life without the brew is unimaginable. Tea entered our life only in the mid-nineteenth century when the British started plantations in Assam and Darjeeling. In the beginning though, Indians shunned the drink as they thought it was a poison that led to unforeseen diseases. Ironically, tea colonised Britain where it became a part of their social diary and also led to the establishment of numerous tea houses.

Today, scientific research across the world has attempted to establish the beneficial qualities of tea - a fact the Japanese and the Chinese knew anyway from ancient times, attributing to it numerous medicinal properties.

[Source : History : Tea Anytime by Ranjit Biswas, Literary Review, The Hindu, Oct. 1, 2006]]

Collect information about tea, e.g. its evolution as a drink, its beneficial qualities. You can consult an encyclopedia or visit internet sites. They form groups of five and play the following roles. Imagine a meeting of a tea planter, a sales agent, a tea-lover (consumer), a physician and a tea-shop owner. Each person in group has to put forward his/her views about tea. You may use the following words and phrases.

- I feel
- It is important to know
- I disagree with you
- I think that tea
- I would like you to know
- I agree with
- It is my feeling
- I suggest
- May I know why you
- I am afraid

Ans :

Tea

It is very important to know that tea has become very favourite with people. None of the festive party or occasion will be graceful without the availability of hot tea. Assam is the tea home of India and it is exported to other countries. The

64. Splash - sprinkling of water
65. Hippo - an African animal
66. So to speak - one could say this
67. Bowl - a small container
68. Overturned - turned over
69. Static - still
70. Provoking - causing excitement
71. Escaped - go away
72. Corridor - varanda
73. Fumbling - trying to do something in a clumsy manner
74. Chromium - name of a metal
75. Trickle - falling in drops
76. Disappointment - dejection
77. Shuffling - moving with dragging
78. Soccer - a form of football
79. Dribble - to move slowly
80. A flick - a quick and light movement
81. Juggles - cheating
82. Drooping - bending
83. Dreaded - fear
84. Prospect - something that would happen in future
85. Transporting - sending in a vehicle
86. Insisted - said forcefully
87. Accustomed to - habitual to
88. Appalling - shocking
89. Spectacle - scene
90. Chinks - peeholes
91. Trickled - falling in drops
92. Whipped off - cause
93. Exhausted - tired
94. Spattered - spots
95. Whimpered - crying with a low voice
96. Shreds - pieces
97. Miserable - troubled
98. Ricochetting bullet - a bullet that changes direction after hitting a surface
99. Take off - getting down
100. Infuriated - very angry
101. Retained - kept
102. Profound - deep
103. Gratitude - obligation
104. Unprepared - not readying
105. In a flash - very soon
106. Disappeared - invisible
107. Squawks - shrill cry
108. Shrieks - cries
109. Screaming - weeping
110. Beneath - under
111. Portly - stout
112. Turbaned - small long cloth-band of the head
113. Resumed - to sit again
114. Curry - a kind of soup
115. Distressed - troubled
116. Craning - lifting the neck
117. Bounded on - climbed on
118. Nuzzle - rub the nose gently
119. Eventful - famous, full of event
120. Terrapin shell - shell of a small turtle in South Africa
121. Pingpong - a kind of game-table tennis
122. Engrossed - completely interested in
123. Damaged - harmed
124. Ambush - suddenly attack from a hidden position
125. Crouching - sat
126. Trot off - jump
127. Precisely - appropriately
128. Compulsive habits - habits impossible to control
129. Rituals - customs
130. Squarely - equally
131. Upright - straight
132. Frontage - front
133. Tug - drag
134. Gallop - jump
135. Distraction - take away one's attention
136. Badger - animal like a bear
137. Mongoose - a small animal
138. Stoat - a kind of animal
139. Mink - a kind of animal
140. Barrage - dam
141. Conjectural - guessed questions
142. Sprayed - sprinkled
143. Random - sudden
144. Walrus - a long tusked carnivorous sea-animal
145. Giggles - laugh in a silly manner
146. Beaver - a kind of animal
147. Brontosaur - a kind of animal
148. Affront - to insult
149. Abreast - side by side
150. Growled - grumbled

5. MESSAGE

The story conveys a message that it is very difficult to look after a pet. It involves a lot of responsibilities both for the keeper and the family as well. One has to think for its proper care, safety, bathing, training, food and other requisite facts.

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Activity

1. Do you have a pet? If you do, you perhaps know that a pet is a serious responsibility. Read in the box below what the SPCA — the Society for the Prevention of Cruelty to Animals — has to say

Ans :

2007

(d) the eye could see

11. What was ordered by Pranjal?

- (a) Two cups of Tea (b) Two cups of Coffee
(c) Two Chapattis (d) None of these

Ans :

2006

(a) Two cups of Tea

12. The newly sprouted tea-leaves were being plucked by:

- (a) paid men labour (b) professionals
(c) the group of women (d) the group of shepherd

Ans :

2005

(c) the group of women

13. The large number of tea plantation is found in:

- (a) Himachal (b) Punjab
(c) Haryana (d) Assam

Ans :

2005

(d) Assam

14. What have the tea plantations been compared to?

- (a) A sea of Tea Bushes
(b) A house of Tea Bushes
(c) A continent of Tea Bushes
(d) None of these

Ans :

2001

(a) A sea of Tea Bushes

Short Answer Type Questions

1. What did Pranjal and Rajvir do during the journey? Why?

Ans :

2023

Pranjal and Rajvir enjoyed their journey to Assam on a train. Rajvir was much excited as it was for the first time he was visiting Assam to see the tea gardens. So, he was looking at the lush greenery outside the train. However, Pranjal read stories and listened to Rajvir as Assam was his home so he had seen everything before.

2. Pranjal buried his head in his detective book while Rajvir was eager to look at the beautiful scenery during the train journey. Why was there a difference in their attitude?

Ans :

2021

Pranjal had seen the tea gardens many times because his father worked in a tea estate. But it was Rajvir's first visit to Assam who was

admiring the scenic beauty outside while Pranjal was busy reading the book as there was nothing new for him to look outside.

3. Rajvir did his study before his visit to the tea plantation. Is it good to do one's research before the start of a new venture or does it take away the thrill of discovery? Elucidate your stance.

Ans :

2021

Researching provides a clear idea of a new venture before it begins. It highlights possible advantages and disadvantages and helps avoid major risks. Rajvir's study of tea plantations increased his knowledge and excitement about Assam's tea gardens. Thus, prior research enhances understanding and can make the experience even more rewarding.

4. Inspired by the diversity in the chapter, 'Glimpses of India', you wrote an article for your school magazine on the topic, 'Diversity-the Uniqueness of India'. Write a paragraph, sharing two key opinions from the article.

Ans :

2021

India is a land of rich cultural and geographical diversity. Every region has its own traditions, lifestyle, and natural features that make it unique. For example, Coorg is known for its martial bravery, beautiful landscapes, and distinct culture, while Assam is famous for its tea plantations due to its favourable geography. This diversity makes India special and vibrant.

5. The culture, lifestyle and traditions of a place are influenced by the people who lived or settled there at some point in time. Cultural assimilation adds flavour to the existing structure of a society. Summarise your opinion on the given idea.

Ans :

2021

People carry their ideas, food habits, culture, and traditions wherever they settle. Over time, these elements blend with the existing culture of a society and enrich it. For example, the Chinese practice of drinking tea has become popular worldwide, while Portuguese bread recipes are now part of many celebrations. Similarly, Indian Ayurveda and Yoga are globally respected today.

6. What excited Rajvir? Why did Pranjal not share his excitement?

Ans :

2018

Rajvir was quite excited because it was his first visit to Assam. He was looking at the tea gardens in amazement. Pranjal didn't share his excitement as he lived in Assam and the tea estates were a

daily affair for him and therefore he didn't find anything special about these as Rajvir did.

7. What happened to the Chinese emperor in "Tea from Assam" who always boiled water before drinking it ?

Or

What is the history of tea in China.

Ans : 2016
A Chinese emperor had the habit of drinking boiled water. One day a twig fell into the pot in which water was being boiled. It gave delicious flavour to the water. It is said that those were tea leaves.

8. How does Rajvir describe the tea-garden at Dhekiabari?

Ans : 2014
The tea-garden at Dhekiabari filled Rajvir's heart with happiness and delight because of its beautiful sight. On both sides of the road were acres of tea bushes, all neatly pruned to the same height. Groups of tea-pluckers, wearing plastic aprons, were plucking the newly sprouted leaves.

9. How are the tea pluckers different from the other farm labourers?

Ans : 2013, 2006
The tea-pluckers are busy during the sprouting period from May to July, whereas the farm-labourers are busy throughout the year. Again, the tea-pluckers wear plastic aprons, with bamboo baskets on their backs, whereas the farm-labourers wear ordinary dress. Thus, they differ from each other both in their style and nature of work as well as in dress.

10. What did Rajvir and Pranjol discuss in their journey?

Ans : 2010
Pranjol and Rajvir were going to Assam in a train. Rajvir had been invited by Pranjol to see the tea plantation. In the way they sipped hot tea. Rajvir told that over 8,00,000,000 tea cups were daily sipped in the world. They were reading the detective stories.

11. What was the Indian legend about the discovery of tea ?

Or

Write down the buddhist legend about tea.

Ans : 2009
An Indian legend goes like this. Once there was a Buddhist, ascetic Bodhidharma who used to feel sleepy during meditations. So he cut off his eyelids. Ten tea plants grew out of the eyelids.

When the leaves of these plants were put in hot water and drunk, they banished sleep.

12. How are the tea leaves collected in Assam ?

Ans : 2005
Assam is a tea country with largest plantation in the world. Ladies in groups go to the fields with bamboo baskets on their backs. They wear plastic aprons. They pluck tea-leaves and collect them in their baskets.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. What are some of the discoveries about tea?

Or

What are the legends associated with the discovery of tea?

Ans : 2016, 2012, 2010
There are two legends associated with the discovery of tea. According to first legend, there was a Chinese emperor. He always boiled his water before drinking it. Once it so happened that leaves from the burning twigs fell into the pot of water. When the emperor drank the water, it had a delicious flavour. These were the tea leaves.

According to another legend, there was an ancient Buddhist ascetic. He was busy in his meditation for God. By chance he fell asleep and his thinking broke. He did not like it. In a state of anger, he cut his eyelids and threw them on the earth. There appeared ten plants out of these eyelids. Then these leaves were put in the hot water. When people drank the hot drink, it banished their sleep.

2. What are the various legends about the origin of tea?

Ans : 2012
No one really knows who discovered tea, but there are various legends about the origin of tea. However, there are two legends about the origin of tea-the first is the Chinese legend, and the second is the Indian legend.

The Chinese legend says that one of the Chinese emperors always boiled water before drinking it. One day, a few leaves of the twigs burning under the pot, fell into the water, giving it a delicious flavour. It is said that they were tea leaves.

The Indian legend says that Bodhidharma, an ancient Buddhist ascetic, cut off his eyelids because he felt sleepy during meditations. Ten tea plants grew out of his eyelids. The leaves of these plants when put in hot water and drunk, banished sleep.

Hence, the legends about the origin of tea as told above is really interesting. In fact, the words, “Chai” and “Chini” come from Chinese. Tea came Europe only in the sixteenth century. It was drunk more as medicine than as beverage.

3. What landscape did Rajvir notice while sitting in the train?

Ans :

2010

Rajvir was fascinated by the scenic beauty of the place. There were vast green tea gardens on both sides of the road. The tall trees at the back of the gardens in the forest on the rolling hills looked beautiful. The women plucking tea leaves looked like dolls. On the way he saw people drinking tea. He also saw an ugly building with smoke coming out of its chimneys. Rajvir was received by Mrs. and Mr. Barua and was taken towards Dhekiabari Tea Estate. On both sides of the gravel road were acres and acres of neatly pruned tea bushes. It was the second sprouting period. Women were wearing plastic aprons and plucking new tea leaves and putting them in the bamboo baskets on their backs.

4. What details do you gather about tea from the lesson, ‘Tea from Assam’?

Or

What information do you gather about the history of tea after reading the lesson, ‘Tea from Assam’.

Ans :

2008, 2004

Tea was first drunk in China. Even the words ‘chaff’ and ‘chini’ are from Chinese. It goes back to 2700 B.C. In the 16th century, tea came to Europe and was drunk more as a medicine than as a beverage. Assam has the largest concentration of tea plantations in the world. There are large groups of women with bamboo baskets on their backs. They pluck the newly sprouted tea leaves from the plants and store them in the baskets.

5. Rajvir felt too excited on reaching Assam while Pranjal showed least interest in his excitement. What could be the reason behind this ? Do you think it is appropriate on Pranjal’s part to react like this? Justify your answer with reason.

Ans :

2005

Pranjal invited his friend Rajvir to spend some days with him in his hometown Assam. On reaching there, Rajvir was stunned to see the beauty of tea plantations. It was an entirely new experience for him while for Pranjal, these were a common sight so he showed least interest in Rajvir’s excitement. I think it is not appropriate on Pranjal’s part to react thus. No doubt his indifference was natural

but it might dampen Rajvir’s spirit. Sometimes we have to act according to the wishes of the person opposite us, especially when the person is very close to us. A true friend is one who understands the feelings of his friend and tries to make him happier. Although Pranjal and Rajvir were very close yet one should always try to strengthen the bond of friendship.

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow :

The train pulled out of the station — Pranjal buried his nose in his detective book again. Rajvir too was an ardent fan of detective stories but, at the moment he was keener on looking at the beautiful scenery. It was green, green everywhere. Rajvir had never seen so much greenery before. Then the soft green paddy fields gave way to tea bushes. It was a magnificent view. Against the backdrop of densely wooded hills a sea of tea bushes stretched as far as the eye could see. Dwarfing the tiny tea plants were tall, sturdy, shade-trees and amidst the orderly rows of bushes busily moved doll-like figures.

- State any one inference about Rajvir from the given context :
“Rajvir too was an ardent fan of detective stories, but at the moment he was keen on looking at the beautiful scenery.”
- State True or False :
The reason Rajvir was interested in looking at the beautiful scenery was that the detective book he was reading, was not interesting.
- People who live in big cities are always fascinated by the natural beauty and abundant greenery. Elaborate in about 40 words, with reference to the extract.
- Which phrase would correctly substitute ‘doll-like figures’, in the given sentence from the extract ?
Dwarfing the tiny tea plants were tall sturdy shade-trees and amidst the orderly rows of bushes busily moved doll-like figures.

Ans :

2024

- Rajvir, while also interested in reading detective stories, was currently captivated by the greenery of the place, choosing to cherish it rather than delve into a novel.
- False

- iii. People residing in metropolitan cities often lack exposure to scenic beauty amidst the hustle and bustle of urban life. When they encounter natural landscapes, they appreciate them. Rajvir exemplifies this; despite his love for detective stories, he opted to enjoy the scenery instead.
- iv. tea pluckers/tiny people

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow :

“Hey, a tea garden!” Rajvir cried excitedly.

Pranjol, who had been born and brought up on a plantation didn't share Rajvir's excitement. “Oh, this is tea country now,” he said. “Assam has the largest concentration of plantations in the world. You will see enough gardens to last you a lifetime!” “I have been reading as much as I could about tea,” Rajvir said. “No one really knows who discovered tea but there are many legends.”

- i. Why was Pranjol not as excited as Rajvir about the tea gardens?
 - (a) He disliked looking at tea gardens.
 - (b) He had worked in tea gardens himself.
 - (c) He had grown up in and around tea gardens.
 - (d) He was bored with tea gardens.
- ii. What does Pranjol mean by saying that Assam has the largest concentration of plantations in the world?
- iii. Fill in the blank with ONE WORD only.
Pranjol's _____ comes through clearly when he exclaims, “You will see enough gardens to last you a lifetime!”
- iv. Select the option that correctly captures the application of the word ‘cried’ as used in line 1 of the extract.
 - (a) Jaspreet cried a lot in spite of winning second place in a competition.
 - (b) Jaspreet cried out loud when she saw a white tiger in the sanctuary.
 - (c) Jaspreet cried for hours when the police were unable to find her lost pet.
 - (d) Jaspreet has barely cried since she was three years of age.

Ans :

2022

- i. (c) He had grown up in and around tea gardens.
- ii. By this statement Pranjol means that Assam has the largest number of plantations in a given area. A high concentration means that

the tea gardens are tightly packed next to each other.

- iii. boredom
- iv. (b) Jaspreet cried out loud when she saw a white tiger in the sanctuary.

Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“Tell me another!” scoffed Pranjol.

“We have an Indian legend too.

Bodhidharma, an ancient Buddhist ascetic, cut off his eyelids because he felt sleepy during meditations. Ten tea plants grew out of the eyelids. The leaves of these plants when put in hot water and drunk, banished sleep.”

“Tea was first drunk in China,” Rajvir added, “as far back as 2700 B.C.! In fact, words such as tea, chai and chini are from the Chinese. Tea came to Europe only in the sixteenth century and was drunk more as medicine than as beverage.”

- i. What is the main idea of this extract?
- ii. Why do you think Pranjol ‘scoffed’? Answer in about 40 words.
- iii. When did tea come to Europe?
- iv. State TRUE or FALSE.
None of the descriptions (a)-(d) correctly corresponds to the extract.
 - (a) A conversation is a talk between two or more people, in which news and ideas are exchange.
 - (b) A soliloquy is a speech given by a character alone on stage, which reveals their innermost thoughts and feelings to the audience.
 - (c) An aside is a brief comment or remark made by a character directly to the audience, which is not intended to be heard by other characters on stage.
 - (d) A climax is a turning point in a narrative the moment when the conflict is at its most intense.

Ans :

2019

- i. Indian legend on tea and how it travelled from China to Europe.
- ii. Pranjol scoffed because he was amused and tickled at what Rajvir shared about tea. He did not believe or found it hard to believe the story shared by Rajvir. The legend of Bodhidharma cutting off his, eyelids and tea plants growing from them is quite extra ordinary and may seem far-fetched to some people.

- iii. Tea came to Europe in the sixteenth century.
- iv. False

4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

They sipped the steaming hot liquid. Almost everyone in their compartment was drinking tea too. "Do you know that over eighty crore cups of tea are drunk every day throughout the world?" Rajvir said.

"Whew!" exclaimed Pranjol. "Tea really is very popular"

The train pulled out of the station. Pranjol buried his nose in his detective book again.

Rajvir too was an ardent fan of detective stories, but at the moment he was keener on looking at the beautiful scenery.

It was green, green everywhere. Rajvir had never seen so much greenery before. Then the soft green paddy fields gave way to tea bushes.

- i. Remove the most unsuitable synonym of the idiomatic expression in, 'Primp! buried his nose in his detective book again' from the options given below.
 - (a) to be a bibliophile
 - (b) to be a bibliographer
 - (c) to be engrossed
 - (d) to be a bookworm
- ii. Which one of the following statements is a testament to the enormous popularity of tea?
 - (a) Almost everyone in the author's compartment was drinking tea with relish.
 - (b) The author and his friend also enjoyed the hot tea.
 - (c) Over eighty crore cups of tea are drunk every day throughout the world.
 - (d) The author is describing his life on a tea plantation in Assam.
- iii. Where were Rajvir and Pranjol going? Answer in about 40 words.
- iv. Substitute the word 'ardent' with another without changing the meaning of the sentence: 'Rajvir too was an ardent fan of detective stories, but at the moment he was keener on looking at the beautiful scenery.'

Ans :

2014

- i. (b) to be a bibliographer
- ii. (c) Over eighty crore cups of tea are drunk every day throughout the world.

- iii. Classmates and friends, Rajvir and Pranjol were travelling by train to Assam. Pranjol's father had tea-estates in Assam and Rajvir had been invited to stay at the estate and get to know about life on a plantation up close.

iv. passionate

5. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

It was a magnificent view. Against the backdrop of densely wooded hills a sea of tea bushes stretched as far as the eye could see. Dwarfing the tiny tea plants were tall sturdy shade-trees and amidst the orderly rows of bushes busily moved doll-like figures. In the distance was an ugly building with smoke billowing out of tall chimneys.

"Hey, a tea garden!" Rajvir cried excitedly.

Pranjol, who had been born and brought up on a plantation, didn't share Rajvir's excitement.

- i. Which figure of speech has been used in 'a sea of bushes'?
 - (a) metaphor
 - (b) simile
 - (c) personification
 - (d) irony
- ii. Who does the author refer to when he says "doll like figures"?
 - (a) estate managers
 - (b) tea-pluckers
 - (c) agricultural machines
 - (d) gardeners
- iii. Which of these words has the same meaning as the word 'billowing' in the passage?
 - (a) rising
 - (b) fluttering
 - (c) flapping
 - (d) inflating
- iv. What can be called or described as the proverbial 'blot on the landscape' in the extract?

Ans :

2012

- i. (a) metaphor
- ii. (b) tea-pluckers
- iii. (a) rising
- iv. The picturesque beauty of tea plantations with thick carpets of tea-bushes spread up to the horizon and tall trees having dense canopies is marred by an ugly building probably, a tea processing unit with billowing chimneys for the author.



CHAPTER 6

MIJBIL THE OTTER

NODIA

1. INTRODUCTION

The writer of the story is Gavin Maxwell. In this story, the writer tells us how his life changed after he decided to keep an otter. Here he is taking us through his journey and his experiences with Mijbil (or Mij) the otter. The journey begins from Iraq to London and via a flight. The Otter created havoc in flight and scared everyone. However, a generous air hostess helped the author to travel with Mijbil. Later in London, people are clueless about the otter and keep guessing the animal's name.

2. CHARACTERS

Gavin Maxwell

Maxwell is the author as well as the narrator of the story. He is a naturalist and author, best known for his work with otters. He describes how he brought a smooth-coated otter back from Iraq and raised it in Camusfearna. Maxwell's life changed due to the presence of the otter.

Mijbil, the Otter

Mijbil is the titular otter who is adopted by the narrator. Mijbil was in fact, of a species previously unknown to science. At last, it was christened *Lutrogale perspicillata* Maxwell by zoologists. He resembled like a very small imaginary dragon of the Middle Ages. It was like a chocolate brown mole. The main characteristic of an otter is to extend and spread every drop of water. The real game which Mijbil enjoyed most was juggling with small objects with his paws lying on his back. His favourite toys for his play were marbles.

3. SUMMARY

Journey to Southern Iraq

The author Maxwell had a dog. It died. He decided to have another dog. In early 1956, he travelled to Southern Iraq. There it came to his mind to have

an otter. It would be a suitable experiment. His mail was due. So with his friend he went to Basra. The Consulate General informed that the mail for the author had not arrived. His friend took his mails and left. After five days his mail arrived. He received his mail and returned.

Otter's Likings

When the author reached his bedroom, he found two Arabs with a note from his friend. In a sack there was an otter. It was a small creature like a dragon. From the head to the tail it was coated with mud-armour. He christened it Mijbil. In the beginning it chose to sleep on the floor. But on the second night it entered the bed until the servant brought tea in the morning. The otter started taking an interest in its surroundings. When it was taken to the bathroom, it plunged and rolled in it with joy. The author knew that the otters are much fond of water and it must be kept on the move. After two days it was found in the bathroom. The author was surprised to see it struggling with the watertap. Soon it became habitual to be called as Mij. It spent most of its time in playing with a rubber ball and marbles. There it would lie on the floor and roll two or more marbles with his back. It enjoyed with them very much.

Packing of Mij

Now the author was staying at Basra. He was to move to England and then to Camusfearna. He approached the British Airlines for taking an otter with him but it refused. Then he had to go to Paris and then to London. On the insistence of the Airlines, Mij was packed in a box of 18 square. The author went for his hurried meal.

Mij in Trouble

When he returned there was silence from the box. He noticed blood from the airholes. He opened it and found Mij troubled and blood-spattered. It whimpered and caught his leg. The time was very short. So he again put the animal into the box and held the lid with his hands. He hired a car that ran like a bullet from the street of Basra.

The aircraft people were waiting for the author. They became angry but soon he was on the front seat.

Mij's Disappearance

He admired the Air hostess who advised the author to keep his pet on his knees. But soon there arose a trouble. The otter disappeared at high speed down the aircraft. There were cries. Even one lady screamed out 'A rat! a rat!' The author too peeped but soon he was covered with curry for its hunt. The air-hostess assured that she would find and hand it over to him. Very soon the otter was on his knees.

Games of Mij

The author remained there in London for a month. There the otter would play for hours with toys, rubber fruit and terrapin shell. During the journey, the author's suitcase became damaged. Mij always intended that the author would keep a ball on the high end and it would run down to its length. The author even took it for exercises and both walked through the London Streets. It worked like a dog. Opposite to his flat, there was a primary school and the front wall was very small. Mij would take the author there and gallop over it.

Different Guesses of Londoners for Mij

In London people did not recognise an otter. They guessed what kind of animal it was. People used to ask the author if it was from the small group of animals called Mustellines. Some thought it to be a walrus mister. The author was in an odd situation. People were guessing it with some other names like a beaver, a bear cub and a brontosaur and so on but for the author it was an otter.

Then the author once saw a labourer in surprise. He was digging a hole in the street. Seeing the animal, he laid down his tools. When the author neared him, there was a surprise on his face. He seemed to say that no joke could be played on him. He growled out, "Here, Mister-what is that supposed to be?"

4. WORD MEANINGS

1. Highlands - hilly area
2. Lonely - solitary, single
3. Serious - heavy
4. Responsibility - liability
5. Owning - having
6. Commitment - pledging
7. Involving - including
8. Considerable - to great extent
9. Acquire - get mica

10. Attracted - fascinated
11. Consideration - thinking about
12. Adopting - act of adoption
13. Vaccination - act of injecting
14. Grooming - taking care of
15. Obedience - act of obeying
16. Socialisation - act of socialism
17. Confined - limited
18. Tied up - bind
19. Chewing - act of grinding from teeth
20. Beforehand - earlier
21. Requirement - necessity
22. Breeds - race, family
23. Otters - a fish eating animal
24. Marshes - wet areas
25. Temperate - part of earth between the tropics and the poles
26. Crossed my mind - came into my mind
27. Ringed - ringing sound
28. A stone's throw - very near
29. Eminently - high in rank
30. Casually - sudden
31. Mentioned - told
32. Tamed - act of looking after and breeding
33. Consulate - an office of government
34. Mail - post
35. Cabled - sent a message by telegraph
36. Breakdown - collapse
37. Squatting - sitting on haunches
38. Sack - a bag
39. Squirmed - moved
40. Phase - period
41. Thrall - being under the control
42. Fixation - a very strong attachment
43. Emerged - came out
44. Spacious - having space
45. Resembled - look like
46. Medievally - the middle age
47. Coated - layer of colour
48. Symmetrical - regularly
49. Armour - covering used in a war
50. Velvet - soft silk material
51. Mole - a spot on skin
52. At length - at last
53. Christened - to give name
54. Hostile - unfriendly
55. Aloof and indifferent - keeping a distance
56. Remained - go on keeping
57. Crook - bending
58. Apathy - absence of interest
59. Wild with joy - remained happy
60. Plunging - jumping
61. Rolling - moving
62. Shooting up - standing up
63. Slash - move irregularly in water

scientific research has established that tea has medicinal qualities. It gives relief in exhaustion, tooth ache and blood pressure. It is a real panacea for cold, cough and flu. Today one can see that there are so many brands of tea. Sipping tea twice a day will never harm our body. More than 8,00,000,000 cups of tea are consumed daily. In order to have a good flavour one can add cardamom, etc.

2. You are the sales executive of a famous tea company and you have been asked to draft an advertisement for the product. Draft the advertisement using the information you collected for the role play. You can draw pictures or add photographs and make your advertisement colourful.

Ans :

Green Tea Label Company of Assam has come out with its new brand "Power Tea". It removes tiredness and energises the body. Pack of 200 gram is available from all local stores throughout India. Every pack has a lottery award and can be received from the shopkeeper.

Assam Tea

Assam Tea

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. Who is the author of "Tea from Assam"?

- (a) Arup Kumar Datta
(b) Lokesh AbrolWS
(c) Lucio Rodrigues
(d) None of these

Ans :

2021

- (a) Arup Kumar Datta

2. How many tea plants grew out of the eyelids?

- (a) Five tea plants (b) Ten tea plants
(c) Twenty tea plants (d) Thirty tea plants

Ans :

2011

- (b) Ten tea plants

3. Why was Rajvir excited?

- (a) because he had spotted coffee garden.
(b) because he had spotted tea garden.
(c) because he had spotted wheat garden.
(d) None of these

Ans :

2021

- (b) because he had spotted tea garden.

4. What is the duration of the second flush or sprouting period?

- (a) June-August (b) October-December
(c) May-July (d) August-November

Ans :

2020

- (c) May-July

5. In Europe, tea was drunk as more of a _____ than _____.

- (a) medicine, beverage
(b) beverage, medicine
(c) sleep waver, medicine
(d) sleep banisher, medicine

Ans :

2016, 2006

- (a) medicine, beverage

6. What is Assam popularly known as?

- (a) Tea country (b) Coffee country
(c) Green country (d) Plantation country

Ans :

2015

- (a) Tea country

The words like 'chai' and 'chini' are derived from _____.

- (a) Indi (b) China
(c) France (d) None of these

Ans :

2013

- (b) China

8. What was Dhekiabari?

- (a) name of a station
(b) tea garden managed by Pranjol's father
(c) tea garden managed by Rajvir's father
(d) name of a hill

Ans :

2012

- (b) tea garden managed by Pranjol's father

9. "You seem to have done your homework before coming," Pranjol's father said in surprise. Which homework is he talking about?

- (a) Holiday homework
(b) Tuition homework
(c) Knowledge about Assam
(d) All of these

Ans :

2010

- (c) Knowledge about Assam

10. The tea-bushes were spread as far as:

- (a) possible (b) the legs could reach
(c) the arm could go (d) the eye could see

about how to care for a pet.

Owning a pet is a lifetime of commitment (up to ten years or more if you own a dog or a cat) involving considerable responsibility. The decision to acquire one, therefore, should be made by the whole family. Without full agreement by everyone, the pet could end up unwanted. Puppies and kittens are so adorable, it is easy to understand why adults and children alike would be attracted to them. Unfortunately their cute looks are often a disadvantage, because people purchase them without consideration and the knowledge on how to take proper care of them. The basic points you should keep in mind before adopting a puppy are :

- an annual dog licence in accordance with government regulations
- its annual vaccination against major diseases
- toilet training
- regular grooming and bathing
- obedience training
- don't forget you should feed your pet a balanced diet
- socialisation (many dogs are kept confined in cages or tied up to stop them from dirtying the garden or from chewing on shoes — this is wrong) is very important
- a daily dose of exercise, affection and play.

Reading up on the subject beforehand is another important requirement and will guide you towards being a responsible pet owner. Selected pet shops and major book stores provide books on the care of various breeds/pets.

Ans :

Yes I have a pet dog and I treat it like my companion. I make sure it is fed proper diet, has regular baths and vet visits.

2. Imagine someone has gifted you a pet. With your partner's help, make a list of the things you need to know about the pet in order to take good care of it. One has been done for you.

- (i) The food it eats.
 (ii) _____
 (iii) _____
 (iv) _____
 (v) _____

Ans :

- (ii) Exercise routine
 (iii) Hygiene
 (iv) Vaccinations
 (v) Regular Checkups

3. Otters are found in large numbers in the marshes (i.e. wet areas near lakes, rivers or seas) near Basra, a town in Iraq. Imagine you wanted to bring an otter from Iraq to London, as a pet. What special arrangements would you need to make for your pet otter? You would need to find a place with lots of water, for example. What other points should you think about? The information about Iraq and London given below may help you.

Iraq	London
Iraq has mostly broad plains and marshes along the Iranian border in the south, with large flooded areas. A large part of Iraq's land area is desert, so it has cool winters and dry, hot and cloudless summers. The mountain areas near Iran and Turkey have cold winters. There is heavy snowfall there, and when the snow melts in spring, it causes floods in central and southern Iraq.	London has a large population and is a very busy city. In addition to multistoreyed buildings, however, it has many open spaces or parks. It has a temperate climate (i.e. it is neither very hot, nor very cold), with regular but generally light rainfall or snow throughout the year. The warmest month is July, and the coolest month is January. February is the driest month. Snow is not very common in London.

Ans :

I will ensure that my pet otter has enough water to play in. I would make a pond for it to frolic in and give it marbles to play with. I would give it fish to eat.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS
 DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

Oral Comprehension Check - 1

1. What 'experiment' did Maxwell think Camusfearna would be suitable for?

Ans :

Maxwell thought that camusfearna would be suitable for the experiment of catching an otter for a pet animal.

2. Why does he go to Basra ? How long does he wait there, and why ?

Ans :

He goes to Basra to collect and answer his mail from Europe. He waited therefore five days because his mail had not arrived.

- Ans :**
(d) mosquitoes
- 19.** What had trickled out of the box?
(a) juice (b) blood
(c) water (d) paint
Ans :
(b) blood
- 20.** What group of animals does otters belongs to?
(a) Elk (b) Hedgehogs
(c) Mustellines (d) By his friend
Ans :
(c) Mustellines
- 21.** How did the otter spend most of his time?
(a) New year of 1955 (b) New year of 1956
(c) New year of 1957 (d) New year of 1958
Ans :
(b) New year of 1956
- 22.** What did the otter look like?
(a) Small dog (b) Small dragon
(c) Small cat (d) Small rabbit
Ans :
(b) Small dragon
- 23.** Early in the new year of 1956 Maxwell travelled to _____.
(a) London (b) Southern Iraq
(c) India (d) None of these
Ans :
(b) Southern Iraq
- 24.** Why does Maxwell go to Basra?
(a) Broke the toy car
(b) Threw the marbles
(c) Torn the lining of box
(d) None of the Above
Ans :
(c) Torn the lining of box
- 25.** Mijbil would spend hours shuffling:
(a) some grains (b) some marbles
(c) a rubber ball (d) some twigs
Ans :
(c) a rubber ball
- 26.** The author travelled to _____ Iraq.
(a) Southern (b) Eastern
(c) Western (d) Northern
Ans :
(a) Southern
- 27.** Camusfearna is a place surrounded by –
(a) Grenary (b) Water
(c) Mountain (d) Forest
Ans :
(b) Water.
- 28.** Otters love _____.
(a) Water (b) Dense forest
(c) Green grass (d) Sand
Ans :
(a) Water.
- 29.** The narrator's friend said that others were commonly found in that river
(a) Tigris (b) Maha Nadi
(c) Ganga (d) Nile
Ans :
(a) Tigris.
- 30.** The narrator and his friend were going to
(a) England (b) Camusfearna
(c) Basara (d) Basana
Ans :
(c) Basara.
- 31.** On the second of calling the telephone exchange was closed due to
(a) Religious holiday
(b) National holiday
(c) Breakdown
(d) Technical fault
Ans :
(a) Religious holiday.
- 32.** Meaning of 'Thralldom' is
(a) New version (b) Thunder
(c) Old fashioned (d) Rough
Ans :
(c) Old fashioned.
- 33.** The Otters full body was covered with –
(a) Grass (b) Mud
(c) Thorn (d) Sand
Ans :
(b) Mud.
- 34.** The fur of the Otter was looking like _____ color made.
(a) Chocolate – brown (b) Red
(c) Black (d) Yellow
Ans :
(a) Chocolate-brown.

Thinking About the Text

1. What things does Mij do which tell you that he is an intelligent animal who needs love?

Ans :

2014, 2013, 2008

Mijbil befriended the narrator on the second night itself, came to his bed and remained asleep in the crook of his knees. He was intelligent and quickly learnt to turn the taps on. Two days after Mijbil came to the writer's house, he entered the bathroom and before the writer could get in Mijbil was up on the end of the bathtub, fumbling at the taps with his paws. Much to the writer's amazement he managed to turn the tap in less than a minute and after a moment he achieved the full flow of water. In the bathtub, he went wild with joy in the water, plunging and rolling in it and shooting up and down. The narrator's love for Mijbil made him follow the narrator even without a lead. He spent most of his time in play and would often lie on his back and juggle with small objects between his paws.

2. What are some of the things we come to know about otters from this text ?

Ans :

Otters are very intelligent animals and friendly creatures on the earth. They are much fond of enjoying games. Mij enjoyed the game with marbles and the terrapin shell very much. He loved the game of the ping-pong ball very much. They are much fond of galloping, jumping and wasting the water. It is their desire that the water should go on flowing before them.

3. Why is Mij's species now known to the world as Maxwell's otter ?

Ans :

The race of the Mijbil was previously unknown to the science. When Maxwell came to London with it, the residents started guessing with so many species. At last, the zoologists Lutrogale Perspicillata Maxwelli. He christened it Maxwell's otter. Since then its species came to be known as Maxwell's otter.

4. Maxwell in the story speaks for the otter, Mij. He tells us what the otter feels and thinks on different occasions. Given below are some things the otter does. Complete the columns below to say what Maxwell says about what Mij feels and thinks.

	What Mij does	How Mij feels or thinks
1.	plunges, rolls in the water and makes the water splash and splash	
2.	screws the tap in the wrong way	
3.	nuzzles Maxwell's face and neck in the aeroplane	

Ans :

- Mij feels and thinks that water should not be saved. Its every drop must be spread about on the place. It gets him happiness.
 - When the tap was screwed, it got disappointment. It felt irritation and was deeply troubled.
 - It shows Mij's deep affection, recognition and love for his master.
5. Read the story and find the sentences where Maxwell describes his pet otter. Then choose and arrange your sentences to illustrate those statements below that you think are true.

Maxwell's description

- makes Mij seem almost human, like a small boy.
- shows that he is often irritated with what Mij does.
- shows that he is often surprised by what Mij does.
- of Mij's antics is comical.
- shows that he observes the antics of Mij very carefully.
- shows that he thinks Mij is a very ordinary otter.
- shows that he thinks the otter is very unusual.

Ans :

- Maxwell's description makes Mij seem almost human, like a small boy.
- Maxwell's description shows that he is often surprised by what Mij does.
- Maxwell's description of Mij's antics is comical.
- Maxwell's description shows that he thinks Mij is a very ordinary otter.

7. How was 'Mijbil' a source of amazement on London streets ?

Ans :

2012

The otter was a constant source of amazement to the Londoners as very few people had ever seen an otter. They were filled with surprise on seeing such a strange animal. They guessed it with different names of animals.

8. Describe the havoc created by Mijbil on the airplane when it came out of the box.

Ans :

2010

When Maxwell opened the box, Mijbil flashed out and disappeared at high speed down the aircraft. He caused a great hue and cry in the aircraft. There were sounds of shrieks across the flight.

9. Where and when did Maxwell think of keeping an otter as a pet ? Why did he think so ?

Ans :

2009

Maxwell happened to travel to Southern Iraq early in the New Year of 1956. Around that time, he thought of keeping an otter as a pet. He thought so because Camusfearna, surrounded by water at a close distance, would be a good place for keeping an otter.

10. "Five days later, my mail arrived." What happened when Maxwell went to his bedroom to read his mail ?

Ans :

2008

When Maxwell's mail arrived five days later, he carried it to his bedroom to read it. There he found two Arabs squatting on the floor and beside them lay a sack that twisted about from time to time. Those men handed him a note from his friend which said : 'Here is your otter.....'

11. How did the otter look when he emerged from the sack ?

Ans :

2008

When the otter emerged from the sack, he was coated with symmetrical pointed scales of mud from his head to the tip of the tail like a mud armour. Between his tips was visible a soft velvet fur like that of a chocolate-brown mole.

12. How did Mijbil behave in the first twenty-four hours ?

Ans :

2007

For the first twenty-four hours Mijbil was neither hostile nor friendly. Rather, he was aloof and indifferent and kept a distance. He chose to sleep on the floor as far from Maxwell's bed as it was possible.

13. What did Maxwell learn is a characteristic of otters ?

Ans :

2007

Maxwell learnt that it was a characteristic of otters that every drop of water must be extended and spread about the place. According to them, water must be kept on the move and made to do things because when the water is static, it is wasted and provoking.

14. What was the 'appalling spectacle' Maxwell noticed when he returned from having a hurried meal ?

Ans :

2006

When Maxwell returned from a hurried meal, he noticed that there was complete silence from the box. But from its airholes and chinks around the lid, blood had trickled and dried. He immediately tore open the box and found that Mij had torn the lining of the box to small pieces and injured himself in the process.

15. "He disappeared at high speed down the aircraft." What did Mij do when he came back to Maxwell's seat ?

Ans :

2006

Maxwell tried to catch Mij in the aeroplane but failed to do so. Later, when he returned to his seat, he suddenly heard from his feet a distressed chitter of recognition and welcome. Immediately, Mij jumped on his knee and began to rub his nose on Maxwell's face and neck.

16. Why was the author not allowed to take a flight of British Airways?

Ans :

2005

The British Airways did not allow pets on its flight, while the author had to carry his pet otter along with him. So he booked a flight to Paris on another airline and from there to London.

17. Why were Maxwell and his friends going to Basra?

Ans :

2004

Maxwell and his friends were going to Basra to the Consulate-General (of Iraq) to collect and answer their mail from Europe. At the Consulate-General, the author found that his friends mail had arrived but he had not arrived.

At the Consulate-General the author found that his friend's mail had arrived but his had not arrived.

18. What happened when Mij disappeared at speed down the aircraft?

Ans :

2002

When Maxwell opened the box, Mijbil flashed out and disappeared at high speed down the aircraft.

- (ii) The iron-railings - Noun
 (iii) The Tigris marshes - Proper noun
 (iv) The London streets - Proper noun
 (v) Soft velvet fur - Adjective plus noun
 (vi) A four-footed soccer player - Adjective plus noun

2. Given below are some nouns, and a set of modifiers (in the box). Combine the nouns and modifiers to make as many appropriate phrases as you can. (Hint : The nouns and modifiers are all from the texts in textbook.)

temple	three girls	triangle	dressess
person	thoughts	boys	roar
gifts	scream	farewell	expression
time	subject	landscape	handkerchief
crossing	flight	chatterbox	profession
physique	coffee	view	celebration

college	rough	hundred	stone	ordinary
love	uncomfortable	white	slang	slack
bare	railroad	tremendous	family	marriage
plump	invigorating	panoramic	heartbreaking	birthday
incorrigible	ridiculous	loud	first	

Ans :

1.	temple	a stone temple
2.	three girls	three (uncomfortable girls)
3.	triangle	a slack triangle
4.	dressess	hundred dresses
5.	a/an person	an ordinary person
6.	thoughts	bare thoughts
7.	boys	rough boys
8.	gifts	birthday gifts
9.	a handkerchief	a white handkerchief
10.	a/an expression	a love expression
11.	time	college time
12.	subject	a rough subject
13.	landscape	a panoramic landscape
14.	crossing	a railroad crossing
15.	flight	a ridiculous flight
16.	profession	a slang profession
17.	physique	plump physique

18.	coffee	invigorating coffee
19.	view	a heart-breaking view
20.	farewell	a family farewell
21.	celebration	a marriage celebration
22.	scream	a loud scream
23.	chatterbox	an incorrigible chatterbox.
24.	roar	aloud roar

NODIA

Read this Sentence :

He shook himself, and I half expected a cloud of dust.

The author uses a cloud of dust to give a picture of a large quantity of dust.

Phrases like this indicate a particular quantity of something that is not usually countable. For example :

a bit of land, a drop of blood, a pinch of salt, a piece of paper.

1. Match the words on the left with a word on the right. Some words on the left can go with more than one word on the right.

- (i) a portion of - blood
 (ii) a pool of - cotton
 (iii) flakes of - stones
 (iv) a huge heap of - gold
 (v) a gust of - fried fish
 (vi) little drops of - snow
 (vii) a piece of - water
 (viii) a pot of - wind

Ans :

- (i) a portion of cotton
 (ii) a pool of water
 (iii) flakes of snow
 (iv) a huge heap of stones
 (v) a gust of wind
 (vi) little drops of blood
 (vii) a piece of fried fish
 (viii) a pot of gold.

NO NEED TO PURCHASE SAMPLE PAPERS
 Download India's Best 20 Sample Papers

DOWNLOAD NODIA APP

**Every School conduct Pre-Board
 From These Sample Papers**

Thinking About Language

I. Describing a Repeated Action in the Past

To talk about something that happened regularly in the past, but does not happen any longer, we use *would* or *used to*. Both *would* and *used to* can describe repeated actions in the past.

- Mij would follow me without a lead and come to me when I called his name.
- He would play for hours with a selection of toys.
- On his way home ... Mij would tug me to this wall.
- When I was five years old, I used to follow my brother all over the place.
- He used to tease me when mother was not around.

To describe repeated states or situations in the past, however, we use only *used to*. (We cannot use *would* for states or situations in the past). So we do not use *would* with verbs like *be*, *have*, *believe*, etc. Look at the following sentences :

- When we were young, we used to believe there were ghosts in school.
(Note : *believe* shows a state of mind)
- Thirty years ago, more women used to be housewives than now. (Note : *be* here describes a situation)

- From the table below, make as many correct sentences as you can using *would* and / or *used to*, as appropriate. (Hint : First decide whether the words in *italic* show an action, or a state or situation, in the past.) Then add two or three sentences of your own to it.

Emperor Akbar	<i>would</i>	be fond of musical evenings.
Every evening we		take long walks on the beach.
Fifty years ago, very few people		own cars.
Till the 1980s, Shanghai	<i>used to</i>	have very dirty streets.
My uncle		spend his holidays by the sea.

Ans :

- Emperor Akbar used to hold his courts once in a week.
- Emperor Akbar would be fond of musical evenings.
- Every evening we used to run a race.

- Every evening we would take long walks on the beach.
- Fifty years ago, very few people used to own cars.
- Fifty years ago very few people would buy cars.
- Till the 1980s Shanghai used to have very dirty streets.
- Till the 1980s Shanghai would have good roads.
- My uncle used to spend his holidays by the sea.
- My uncle would never drive a bicycle.

II. Noun Modifiers

To describe or give more information about a noun (or to modify a noun), we use adjectives or adjective phrases. Look at these examples from the text :

- An *eminently* suitable spot
- Symmetrical* pointed scales
- His *wide*, flat belly
- A *ricocheting* bullet

Nouns can also be used as modifiers

- The dinner party
- A designer dress
- The car keys

We can use more than one noun as modifier. Proper nouns can also be used

- The Christmas dinner party
- A silk designer dress
- The Maruti car keys

In the examples below, there is an adjective phrase in front of a noun modifier :

- The *lovely* Christmas party.
- A *trendy* silk designer dress.
- The *frightfully expensive* golden Maruti car keys.

- Look at these examples from the text, and say whether the modifiers (in *italics*) are nouns, proper nouns, or adjective plus noun :

- An otter fixation
- The iron railings
- The Tigris marshes
- The London streets
- Soft velvet fur
- A four-footed soccer player

Ans :

- An otter fixation - Noun

Ans :

2020

(a) absence of interest

5. What is wasted and provoking when left static?
(according to the otter)

(a) sand (b) tea
(c) juice (d) water

Ans :

2016

(d) water

6. In the beginning, the Otter was _____

(a) friendly
(b) hostile
(c) aloof and indifferent
(d) sad

Ans :

2016

(c) aloof and indifferent

7. How did the airline wanted him to carry Mijbil?

(a) In a separate compartment
(b) In a box
(c) In his bag
(d) None of the above

Ans :

2015, 2004

(b) In a box

8. What is the meaning of “an appalling spectacle”?

(a) a safe space
(b) a funny scene
(c) a mysterious situation
(d) a shocking scene

Ans :

2015

(d) a shocking scene

9. Why did the driver drive through the streets of Basra like a ricocheting bullet?

(a) author was late for his flight
(b) Mijbil had hurt himself
(c) someone was after the driver
(d) All of the above

Ans :

2013

(a) author was late for his flight

10. What did Mij do to the box?

(a) made it wet
(b) tore the lining of the box
(c) overturned it
(d) all of the above

Ans :

2013

(b) tore the lining of the box

11. Maxwell called the _____ “the very queen of her kind”.

(a) airhostess (b) driver
(c) Mijbil (d) Pilot

Ans :

2013

(a) airhostess

12. What do you mean by “compulsive habits”?

(a) destructive habits
(b) good habits
(c) addictive habits
(d) habits impossible to control

Ans :

2013

(d) habits impossible to control

13. What guesses did the Londoners make about what Mij was?

(a) baby seal (b) squirrel
(c) a hippo (d) All of these

Ans :

2012

(d) All of these

14. What kept Mij engaged when they shifted to London?

(a) Ping-pong game (b) the children
(c) the author (d) All of these

Ans :

2012

(a) Ping-pong game

15. Why were Otters known as Maxwell Otters?

(a) they were found by Maxwell
(b) they are found at a place called Maxwell
(c) Its the species name in science
(d) None of the Above

Ans :

2012

(a) they were found by Maxwell

16. Where did the Arabs keep the otter?

(a) in a box (b) in a bag
(c) in a sack (d) in the pocket

Ans :

2012

(c) in a sack

17. What did the woman in the aeroplane think that the otter was?

(a) a dog (b) an otter
(c) a rat (d) a seal

Ans :

2011

(c) a rat

18. In the Tigris marshes otters were as common as _____.

(a) bees (b) lizards
(c) rodents (d) mosquitoes

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

3. How does he get the otter ? Does he like it ? Pick out the words that tell you this ?

Ans :

He obtained the otter with the help of two Arabs. The author liked it. He says that he had an otter fixation. The words 'an otter fixation' tell us this.

4. Why was the otter named Maxwell's otter ?

Ans :

Otter belonged to an unknown race in science. It was first christened by zoologist Lutrogale perspicillata maxwell. So it was called Maxwell's otter.

5. Tick the right answer. In the beginning, the otter was

- aloof and indifferent
- friendly
- hostile

Ans :

Aloof and indifferent.

6. What happened when Maxwell took Mijbil to the bathroom ? What did it do two days after that.

Ans :

2014, 2012, 2011, 2008

When Maxwell took Mijbil to the bathroom, it became wild with joy for about half an hour. Then it rolled and plunged into it. After two days, it went itself and struggled with the chromium tap till it had a full flow. It was very much happy with the water.

Oral Comprehension Check - 2

1. How was Mij to be transported to England ?

Ans :

Mij was to be packed into a box not more than eighteen inches square.

2. What did Mij do to the box ?

Ans :

Mijbil had torn the lining of the box to shreds. He had injured himself.

3. Why did Maxwell put the otter back in the box ? How do you think he left when he did this ?

Ans :

He put the otter in the box again as the airlines did not allow to transport in without a box. The otter had injured itself so perhaps Maxwell felt a deep sympathy for the otter while putting it into the box next time.

4. Why does Maxwell say - the air-hostess was "the very queen of her kind" ?

Ans :

Maxwell says that the air-hostess was very kind and considerate type of lady. It advised the author

that he could keep his animal on his knees. She had the true qualities of a queen.

5. What happened when the box was opened?

Ans :

Mij was travelling in the aeroplane with Maxwell. On the advice of the air-hostess, it was to be put by the author on his knees. When the box was opened, it was out from the box in a flash. It immediately disappeared at high speed down the air-craft.

Oral Comprehension Check - 3

1. What game had Mij invented ?

Ans :

2016

Mij invented his game with a ping-pong ball. During the journey, the suitcase of the author was damaged. It got a slope on one end. Mij discovered if the ball was placed on its high end, it would rather run down the length of the suitcase.

2. What are the 'compulsive habits'? What does Maxwell say are the compulsive habits of

(i) school children

(ii) Mij ?

Ans :

These compulsive habits about school children and Mij are as under :

(i) placing their feet squarely on the centre of each paving block.

(ii) must touch every seventh upright of the iron railings.

(iii) pass to the outside of every second lamp post.

3. What group of animals do otters belong to ?

Ans :

The otter belongs to a comparatively small group of animals. The zoologists call it Mustellines. This group includes animals like - a badger, a mongoose, a weasel, a stout, a mink or others like that.

4. What guesses did the Londoners make about what Mij was ?

Ans :

2015, 2012

The Londoners could not form a confirmed view about Mij. They could not recognise him. For them it was a baby seal, walrus mister, a hippo, a beaver, a bear-cub, a leopard and a brontosaur, etc.

FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS

DOWNLOAD NODIA APP

35. It took a _____ to bring out his actual color.

- (a) Day (b) Year
(c) Month (d) Week

Ans :

2006

(c) Month.

36. Lutrogale Perspicillate Maxwelli was the –

- (a) Scientist (b) Writer
(c) Zoologist (d) Wild
photographer

Ans :

2006

(c) Zoologist.

37. How does Maxwell get the otter?

- (a) by his uncle (b) by his mother
(c) by his father (d) by his friend

Ans :

2003

(d) by his friend

38. What did Mijbil do during the second night?

- (a) Came on to Maxwell's bed soon after
midnight.
(b) Run away from Maxwell's house
(c) Slip away from Maxwell's hand
(d) None of the Above

Ans :

2002

(a) Came on to Maxwell's bed soon after midnight.

39. How would Mij follow the author?

- (a) With a lead (b) Via a thread
(c) Without a lead (d) None of these
(c) Without a lead

Ans :

2002

40. How was Mij to be transported to England?

- (a) By packing in a box
(b) On a seat
(c) Through Ship
(d) None of the Above

Ans :

2001

(a) By packing in a box

2. Maxwell decides to keep an otter as a pet. Elucidate with reference to the fact that owning a pet is a life of commitment.

Ans :

2024

Maxwell's journey back to England with Mijbil highlights the adjustments and considerations pet owners must make. He needed to make sure Mijbil was comfortable on the flight and find an airline that accepted pets. The flight incident demonstrated that having a pet requires being ready for unexpected situations.

3. What does Mijbil's behaviour suggest about the otter's adaptability to urban surroundings?

Ans :

2023

Mijbil's behaviour, such as engaging in playful activities with urban objects like a suitcase and a ping-pong ball, indicates a high level of adaptability to urban surroundings. His ability to create entertainment for himself in a London flat and his acceptance of walks on a lead in the city streets suggest that otters, or at least Mijbil, can adapt and find amusement even in non-natural environments.

4. What special characteristic of Mijbil did Maxwell learn after he took him to the bathroom?

Ans :

2015

Maxwell took Mijbil to the bathroom. For half an hour he went wild with joy in the water, plunging and rolling in it, shooting up and down the length of the bathtub underwater, and making enough slosh and splash for a hippo. Maxwell learnt that Mijbil had immense love for water.

5. Give an example from the text to show that Mijbil is an intelligent animal.

Ans :

2014

One day Mijbil escaped from Maxwell's room and went to the bathroom. When the author reached there he found that the otter had turned the tap in less than a minute and he had managed to get full flow of water for a bath.

6. What was the amusing scene of the otter in the plane?

Ans :

2013

In the plane, Mij was out of the box in a flash. It disappeared speedily down the air craft. There were squeaks and shrieks in the plane. A woman stood up and screamed 'A rat! a rat!' When the author tried to search, his face was covered in curry. Then the author was in his seat. In no time it came on his knee and started nuzzling author's face and neck.

Short Answer Type Questions

1. Mijbil turned out to be a playful pet. Elaborate.

Ans :

2024

Mijbil was a playful pet who created his own games using ping pong balls. He delighted in playing and splashing in the water, as well as engaging with marbles and terrapin shells. His leisure time was predominantly spent playing with a rubber ball.

2. Use a bit of/a piece of/a bunch of/a cloud of/a lump of with the italicised nouns in the following sentences. The first has been done for you as an example.

(i)	My teacher gave me some advice.	My teacher gave me a bit of advice.
(ii)	Can you give me some clay, please.	_____
(iii)	The information you gave was very useful.	_____
(iv)	Because of these factories, smoke hangs over the city.	_____
(v)	Two stones rubbed together can produce sparks of fire.	_____
(vi)	He gave me some flowers on my birthday.	_____

Ans :

- (ii) Can you give me a lump of clay ? please.
 (iii) The piece of information you gave was very useful.
 (iv) Because of these factories a cloud of smoke hangs over the city.
 (v) Two lumps of stones rubbed together can produce sparks of fire.
 (vi) He gave me a bunch of flowers on my birthday.

Speaking

1. You have seen how Maxwell describes Mij the otter's feelings and thoughts by watching him. Play the game of dumb charades. Take turns to express a feeling or thought silently (anger, happiness ...). Let the class speak out their guesses about the feelings or thoughts you are trying to express.

Ans :

All have their different ways of guessing about Mij. Some of the most appropriate guesses can be as follows :

- The pranks of the otters are very comical in nature.
- They are much fond of water and will enjoy rolling and galloping in it.
- Most of their habits are similar to school children.

Writing

1. Write a description of a person or an animal (such as a pet) that you know very well and love very much. Questions (4) and (5) in Thinking About the Text would have given you some ideas about how to do this. Mention some things the person or animal does, what you think the person or animal feels, etc.

Ans :

Description of a Person

There are so many students in my class but Naveen is my most favourite. His interests, antics and thinking are very specific. He always thinks to help all the students and helps the needy with small articles like pen, pencils, rubber and copies, etc. Those who have not done their home task, he helps them in completing the same. During recess he enjoys playing with them. To the depressed students he enhances their spirits with his antics. Before leaving school, he spends half an hour to teach the poor and weak students of his class. He is a friendly, lovely and fun-loving fellow.

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. Who is the author of "Mijbil the Otter"?
- (a) Gavin Maxwell (b) Roald Dahl
 (c) Paulo Coelho (d) Arup Kumar Dutta

Ans :

2021

- (a) Gavin Maxwell

2. Where does the author live?

- (a) London (b) Southern Iraq
 (c) India (d) None of these

Ans :

2021

- (a) London

3. What 'experiment' did Maxwell think Camusfearna would be suitable for?

- (a) to pet a dog (b) to pet an otter
 (c) both of them (d) none of these

Ans :

2020

- (b) to pet an otter

4. What is the meaning of apathy?

- (a) absence of interest
 (b) the ability to understand and share the feelings of another
 (c) unfriendly
 (d) rude

He caused a great hue and cry in the aircraft. There were sounds of shrieks across the flight.

19. What routine did Mijbil follow everyday while on the walk in London?

Ans :

2001

Mij on his way home every day used to tug Maxwell to the low wall of a primary school opposite to his flat. Mij would jump on to it, gallop to the full length of its thirty yards and cause a hopeless distraction to both pupils and staff within the primary school.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. Maxwell decides to keep an otter as a pet. Elucidate with reference to the fact that owning a pet is a life of commitment.

Ans :

2024

Maxwell was very concerned about his pet, Mijbil when he had to undertake the plane journey. He wanted him to get used to the box in which he had to travel. When Mijbil was injured in his attempt to come out of the box, the author was really concerned about his well being. He took his food on the flight. The lesson definitely shows that when we decide to keep a pet, it is a commitment of lifetime. This is so because we are responsible for the well-being of that life and in fact, keeping a pet at home is like bringing up and nurturing a child.

2. How did the otter behave in the beginning? How did he become familiar with the author?

Ans :

2017, 2011, 2009

For the first twenty-four hours the Otter, Mijbil was neither hostile nor friendly. He was simply aloof and indifferent, choosing to sleep on the floor as far from the author's bed as possible. The second night Mijbil came up to his bed in the small hours and remained asleep in the crook of his knees until morning and then during the day he began to lose his feelings of disinterest and started taking an over-keen interest in his surroundings. Later, he went wild with joy, plunging and rolling in the water in the bathtub making enough splash worthy of a hippo.

3. Imagine you are the air hostess of the flight on which Maxwell flew with his otter. Narrate the events on board the plane.

Ans :

2012

I, Marriane Jones, was the air hostess in the flight to Paris in which Mij, the otter was also present with his master Maxwell. Luckily the seat booked

for Maxwell was on the extreme front. He rang for me and handed over to me a parcel of fish for otter to keep in a cool place.

Maxwell took me in his confidence. I made him to allow me to have to otter on the knee. And then Mij was out of the box in a flash and disappeared at a very high speed. Otter ran down the aircraft.

There were squawks and shrieks and a woman stood up on her seat screaming 'a rat, a rat'. Maxwell tried to catch but his face got covered with curry. I offered him my help to get him the animal at his seat. Soon the otter Mij bounded on his knee of its own and began to nuzzle his face and neck during the flight.

4. What do you know about the short stay of Mijbil in London ?

Ans :

2011

In London, Mij and the author stayed for a month. Then Mijbil spent his time in playing with ping-pong balls, toys, marbles, rubber fruit and a terrapin shell. Mij always desired to place the ball on its high end and run down its full length.

The author used to take him for walks in the London streets. It developed certain compulsive habits. It walked like children on the centre of each paving block and must touch every seventh upright of the iron railings. It was also to pass to the outside of very second lamp post. There was a primary school opposite to the flat. Along the frontage there was a low wall of thirty yards length. There it galloped. The school students and the teachers were disturbed through its pranks. On seeing his otter, the Londoners failed to recognize it. The author was reduced to giggles. Then a labourer growled out, 'Here, Mister -what is that supposed to be ?' Thus ended the stay of both of them in London.

5. Why had Maxwell gone to Basra ? How did he get the otter there ?

Ans :

2007

Gavin Maxwell along with his friend had gone to Basra to the Consulate-General to collect and answer their mail from Europe. There they found that the mail of Maxwell's friend had arrived, but Maxwell's had not. He immediately sent a cable to England. Still, when three days later, nothing had happened, he tried to contact telephonically. But in those days the international call had to be booked twenty-four hours in advance. Even after waiting for the required time, for three days he still could not contact anyone by phone. So, his friend left and Maxwell arranged to meet him in a week's time.

had torn the lining of the box to shreds; when I removed the last of it so that there were no cutting edges left, it was just ten minutes until the time of the flight and the airport was five miles distant. I put the miserable Mij back into the box, holding down the lid with my hand. I sat in the back of the car with the box beside me as the driver tore through the streets of Basra like a ricocheting bullet.

- i. Which of the following options correctly states Maxwell's likely feelings, in the situation below?

----- I put the miserable Mij back into the box, holding down the lid with my hand."

- (a) Anxious (b) Disappointed
(c) Terrified (d) Surprised

- ii. What is the appalling spectacle as mentioned in the extract?

- iii. State true or false.

None of the terms (a)-(d) below, can be applied to the statement - While I returned, there was an appalling spectacle.

- (a) A hypothesis - a proposed explanation for a phenomenon
(b) An assumption - something that is taken for granted or assumed to be true without proof
(c) A premise - a proposition that forms the basis of an argument
(d) A theory - a well-substantiated explanation for a natural phenomenon

- iv. Fill in the blank appropriately.

The author put Mij back into the box

Ans :

2012

- i. (a) Anxious
ii. The appalling spectacle was that Mij had shredded the lining of the box and blood from airholes and chinks had come out and dried. Also, there was complete silence from the box.
iii. True
iv. because he was getting late for the flight.

4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

We were going to Basra to the Consulate-General to collect and answer our mail from Europe. At the Consulate-General we found that my friend's mail had arrived but mine had not. I cabled to England, and when three days later, nothing had happened I tried to telephone. The call had to

be booked twenty-four in advance. On the first day the line was out of order; on the second the exchange was closed for a religious holiday. On the third day there was another break down. My friend left and/arranged to meet him in a week's time. Five days later; my mail arrived.

- i. Pick the option that classifies (F) Fact from (O) opinion.

1. I feel the author was in a hurry about his mail.
2. I know the author arranged to meet his friend a week later.
3. Let's not forget, these two friends were wanting their mail from England.
4. But the author had tried to telephone when nothing happened.

(a) F 1 and 2, O 3 and 4

(b) F 2 and 4, O 1 and 3

(c) F 3 and 4, O 1 and 2

(d) F 1 and 4, O 2 and 3

- ii. Which word corresponds to 'booked' as used in the passage?

- iii. In the statement, 'On the first day the line was out of order; on the second the exchange was closed for a religious holiday' another synonym of the underlined words would be

- (a) stumped (b) confounded
(c) breakup (d) breakdown

- iv. Why did Gavin Maxwell got stuck in Basra for five days? What does this tell you about the state of communication in those times? Answer in about 40 words.

Ans :

2010

- i. (a) F 2 and 4, O 1 and 3
ii. pre-arrange
iii. (d) breakdown
iv. Maxwell was waiting for his mail from England but for various reasons it didn't arrive in time. He couldn't place a call because the exchange was closed for a holiday. Communication used to be snail-paced because even a phone call had to be reserved 24 hours in advance.

5. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

Two days later Mijbil escaped from my bedroom as I entered it and/turned to see his tail disappearing round the bend of the corridor that led to the bathroom. By the time I got there he was up on the end of the bathtub and fumbling

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow:

For the first twenty-four hours, Mijbil was neither hostile nor friendly; he was simply aloof and indifferent, choosing to sleep on the floor as far from my bed as possible. The second night Mijbil came on to my bed in the small hours and remained asleep in the crook of my knees until the servant brought tea in the morning, and during the day he began to lose his apathy and take a keen, much too keen, interest in his surroundings. I made a body-belt for him and took him on a lead to the bathroom, where for half an hour he went wild with joy in the water.

- i. Which of the following is not a reason why Mijbil came on to Maxwell's bed in the small hours ?
 - (a) He had started taking interest in his surroundings.
 - (b) He was becoming friendly with Maxwell.
 - (c) He wanted to play with Maxwell on his bed.
 - (d) He wanted to feel safe and not remain indifferent.
- ii. Maxwell says that Mijbil was neither hostile nor friendly, he was simply aloof and indifferent for the first twenty-four hours. Give reasons in not more than 40 words.
- iii. Read the following descriptions (a) - (d) and identify which one correctly corresponds to the extract.
 - (a) Owning a pet is tedious and needs commitment.
 - (b) A pet needs his own space and time to get adjusted to his owner's environment.
 - (c) Maxwell decided to bring Mijbil because he was very sad to lose his dog.
 - (d) Maxwell and Mijbil loved travelling.
- iv. Which characteristic trait of otters is revealed when Mijbil is taken to the bathroom ?

Ans : 2020

- i. (c) He wanted to play with Maxwell on his bed.
- ii. Mijbil was in a new environment, which likely made him feel unsure and cautious. Being in unfamiliar surroundings, he needed time to adjust and feel comfortable around Maxwell, thus initially showing indifference and aloofness as a natural response to the change in his setting.

- iii. (b) A pet needs his own space and time to get adjusted to his owner's environment.
- iv. Joy in water.

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

This, I was to learn, is a characteristic of Otters; every drop of water must be, so to speak, extended and spread about the place; a bowl must at once be overturned or, if it will not be overturned, be sat in and splashed in until it overflows. Water must be kept on the move and made to do things; when static it is wasted and provoking.

- i. What is the scientific name of the species of the Otter referred to in the extract?
 - (a) *Lutrogale maxwelli*
 - (b) *Lutrogale perspicillata*
 - (c) *Lutrogale perspicillata maxwelli*
 - (d) *Maxwelli perspicillata lutrogale*
- ii. What does 'this' refer to in the given extract?
- iii. Read the following descriptions (a)-(c) and identify which one correctly corresponds to the extract.
 - (a) An autobiographical account describing the author's feelings and thought regarding an event.
 - (b) A description of the narrator's experiences and observations.
 - (c) A brochure which gives us a picture of the places' culture, people and tourist destination.
- iv. Which word would correctly substitute 'spills', in the given sentence from the extract? The oil spills when it is poured into a smaller container.

Ans :

2017

- i. (c) *Lutrogale perspicillata maxwelli*
- ii. 'This' in the given extract refers to the otter's infatuation with water. The otter in the given extract loved to play in water.
- iii. (b) A description of the narrator's experiences and observations.
- iv. overflows

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

When I returned, there was an appalling spectacle. There was complete silence from the box, but from its air holes and chinks around the lid, blood had trickled and dried. I whipped off the lock and tore open the lid and Mij, exhausted and blood-spattered, whimpered and caught at my leg. He

However, five days later, Maxwell's mail arrived. When he carried it to his bedroom to read, he saw two Arabs squatting on the floor and beside them lay a sack that twisted about from time to time. Those men handed him a note from his friend that said- "Here is your otter".

6. "Water must be kept on the move and made to do things; when static it is wasted and provoking." Do you think this statement was true in case of Mijbil, the otter ?

Ans :

2007

Yes, I think this statement is true in the case of Mijbil, the otter. Maxwell took Mijbil on a lead to the bathroom and Mij just went wild with joy while in water. Mij was plunging and rolling in water. He was even shooting up and down the length of the bathtub underwater and was making too much slosh and splash.

This, Maxwell learnt, is a characteristic of otters. According to them, every drop of water must be extended and spread about the place. It was further proved when two days later, Mij escaped from Maxwell's bedroom as Maxwell entered it. Maxwell followed Mijbil who had gone to the bathroom and was fumbling at the chromium taps with his paws. Maxwell watched with surprise when Mij, turned the tap, which ultimately achieved full flow. This shows that when an otter is in the water, water must be kept on the move and made to do things because, according to the otter, otherwise it is wasted.

Download NODIA App for All Sample Papers PDFs

7. He spent most of his time in play." How would Mij spend most of his time in play ?

Ans :

2006

After getting comfortable with the author, very soon Mij would follow Maxwell without a lead and would come to him when he called Mij's name. Later, Mij would spend most of his time in play. He would spend hours shuffling a rubber ball round the room. Mij could also throw the ball with a powerful quick, light movement, to a surprising height and distance. But Mijbil's real play would be when he would lie on his back and would juggle with small objects between his paws. Marbles were Mij's favourite toys for this pastime and he would lie on his back rolling two or more of the marbles up and down his wide, flat belly without ever dropping one of the marbles on to the floor.

8. Mij, the otter, was mischievous. Justify the statement with examples from the text.

Ans :

2005

Mij, the otter, was quite mischievous. In the beginning, he was aloof and indifferent, but on the second night he came on to the narrator's bed and remained asleep in the crook of his knees for long.

Once in the bathroom, he would go wild with joy in the water. He would go up on the end of the bathtub and turn the tap on himself, so that he could play in the water.

He spent most of his time in play. He spent hours shuffling a rubber ball like a four-footed soccer player. He could even juggle the marbles between his paws, which was his favourite toy for his pastime.

When the narrator had to transport Mij to London, he put him in a box, but Mij made every attempt to come out of it. Afterwards on the flight, he was out of the box in a flash when the narrator opened the box, but later, after frightening some passengers on the plane, he bounded on to the narrators knee unaffected.

In London, with the ping pong ball he invented a game of his own for his own entertainment. When he was taken for a walk, like a child, he developed a compulsive habit. On his way back from the walk, he would jump on the two feet high wall of a primary school, after dragging the narrator with him. He would gallop the full length of its thirty yards, disturbing everyone inside the school. It seemed like he enjoyed playing one trick or the other just like a mischievous child.

9. Why did Maxwell want to have an otter for a pet? How did he get one?

Ans :

2003

Gavin Maxwell, the author, wanted to own a pet. His pet dog had died recently and he was feeling too sad to think of keeping a dog as a pet again. So, when he travelled to Southern Iraq, he decided to keep an otter instead of a dog. His friend suggested to Maxwell that he could get an otter in the Tigris marshes for they were very common there, like mosquitoes. Moreover, the friend also informed, that otters were often trained by the Arabs. finally Maxwell and his friend went to Basra to the Consulate-General to collect their mail. A few days later the author received his mail. When he went to his bedroom to read his mail, he found two Arabs squatting on the floor with the sack that contained the otter with a letter from his friend that said, "Here is your otter...."

at the chromium taps with his paws. I watched, amazed; in less than a minute he had turned the tap far enough to produce a trickle of water and after a moment or two achieved the full flow.

- i. Which synonym does the word 'fumbling' (as used in the passage) correspond to in the following options?

(a) groping (b) drubbing
(c) mishandling (d) blundering

- ii. Choose the statements that are NOT TRUE.

1. The otter escaped from the bedroom two days later.
2. The author ran after the otter.
3. The otter disappeared round the bed of the corridor.
4. The otter used his paws to turn on the tap.
5. The author helped the otter to turn on the tap.
6. In a moment the otter had achieved the full flow of the tap.

(a) 2 and 5 (b) 1 and 4
(c) 3 and 5 (d) 4 and 6

- iii. Pick the option that classifies (F) Fact from (O) opinion.

1. I think otters are very clever animals.
2. Just look at the way Mijbil turned on the full flow of the tap.
3. I feel Mijbil wanted to be freed.
4. Let's not forget Mijbil could fumble with the chromium tap with his paws.

(a) F 1 and 3, O 2 and 4
(b) F 2 and 4, O 1 and 3
(c) F 3 and 4, O 1 and 2
(d) F 1 and 4, O 2 and 3

- iv. Mijbil was resourceful and dexterous enough to find his way around his master's house and also to amuse himself. Answer with relevant examples in about 40 words.

Ans :

2008

- i. (a) groping
- ii. (a) 2 and 5
- iii. (b) F 2 and 4, O 1 and 3
- iv. Mijbil disappeared into the bathroom and fumbled with the taps within moments, he had produced a trickle and then, a full flow of water to enjoy himself because otters like hippos love water. Mijbil also invented games to amuse himself, juggled with small objects and played with marbles.

6. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

Outside the house I exercised him on a lead, precisely as if he had been a dog. Mij quickly developed certain compulsive habits on these walks in the London streets, like the rituals of children who on their way to and from school must place their feet squarely on the centre of each paving block; must touch every seventh upright of the iron railings, or pass to the outside of every second lamp post.

Opposite to my flat was a single-storied primary school along whose frontage ran a low wall some two feet high. On the way home, but never on his way out, Mij would tug me to this wall, jump on to it, and gallop the full length of its thirty yards, to the hopeless distraction both of pupils and of staff within.

- i. Complete the statement :

The author talks about compulsive habits acquired by Mijbil to ____.

- (a) point at some psychological disorder in him.
(b) tell us about his exclusive playful and bubbly personality.
(c) compare him with the general liveliness of children.
(d) portray that all otters and human children are the same.

- ii. With what objective does the author describe 'the rituals of children'?

- iii. Cite an example of a ritual that Mij developed just like the school children do.

- iv. What does the word 'gallop' in, 'Mij would tug me to this wall, jump on to it, and gallop the full length of its thirty yards' contextually refer to?

(a) charge like a bull
(b) run like a sprinter
(c) fly like a plane
(d) bolt like a cat

Ans :

2005

- i. (c) compare him with the general liveliness of children.
- ii. The author wants to tell the readers that children have their own ways to keep themselves entertained and occupied.
- iii. Mij would regularly gallop the full length of thirty yards of a low wall outside a primary school on the way home from his walk.
- iv. (b) run like a sprinter

Oral Comprehension Check - 1

1. What was Valli's favourite pastime?

Or

What was Valli's favourite pastime and what was the source of unending joy for her?

Ans :

2015, 2012

As Valli had no playmate of her age, so her favourite pastime was to stand in her doorway and watch the street. The street outside used to be full of activities which were enough to keep her amused and engaged.

2. What was a source of unending joy for Valli? What was her strongest desire?

Ans :

2014

The bus was a source of unending joy for her. The bus used to bring a new set of passengers every-time it came from the town. The diversity of people, their activities were a treat to watch for Valli. Her strongest desire was to take a ride in the bus at least once.

3. What did Valli find out about the bus journey? How did she find out these details?

Ans :

2014

Valli tried to listen to her neighbours to get the desired information about the bus journey. She would ask some discrete questions to get more information. She got information about distance of the town from her village and the total journey time it usually took.

4. What do you think Valli was planning to do?

Ans :

Valli had a plan to fulfil her strongest desire which was to go on a bus ride.

Oral Comprehension Check - 2

1. Why does the conductor call Valli as 'madam'?

Ans :

2015

Valli is trying to behave more mature than her age. She is trying to look overconfident and smart. The conductor is amused at her behaviour and in an effort to tease her calls her as 'madam'.

2. Why does Valli stand up on the seat? What does she see now?

Ans :

2013, 2012

Valli's view was obstructed because of a canvas blind on the window and because of her short height as well she was unable to see outside. She stood up on her seat to have a better view of the scenery outside. She could see a canal with palm trees, grasslands, distant mountains and blue sky as backdrop. On the other side, there was a ditch followed by a vast tract of greenery.

3. What does Valli tell the elderly woman when she calls her a child?

Ans :

Valli doesn't like to be called a child. She thinks that she is grown up. She says that she has paid her full fare the way adults do. This is typical behaviour shown by many kids of Valli's age.

4. Why didn't Valli want to make friends with the elderly woman?

Ans :

The elderly woman was having big earlobes with bigger holes. She was chewing betel nut and the betel juice was about to seep out of her mouth. She was giving a sight of unrefined elderly lady. That is why Valli did not want to make friends with her.

Oral Comprehension Check - 3

1. How did Valli save money for her first journey? Was it easy for her?

Ans :

Valli saved every coin that came her way. She made great sacrifices by controlling her normal childish urges of having candies, toys and joyrides. This must have been difficult for her. Kids find it very difficult to resist a candy or to enjoy a toy.

2. What did Valli see on her way that made her laugh?

Ans :

A scared cow was running for her life in the middle of the road. It was jumping with its tail up. The more incessantly the bus driver honked the more furious the cow became. Valli could not control her laughter after seeing this.

3. Why didn't she get off the bus at the bus station?

Ans :

She did not know anything about the town so was afraid of getting lost. Moreover, her meticulous savings plan allowed her enough money to buy only tickets for her journey. Additionally, she had to return before her mother could find her missing.

4. Why didn't Valli want to go to the stall and have a drink? What does this tell you about her?

Ans :

2015

She did not want to take obligation from the conductor. This indicates that she is taught not to accept anything from strangers. She may be a small child but she knows how to behave properly in the outside world.

He asked her not to stand when she had paid for a seat. The bus stopped. Some passengers got on. Valli sat down on her seat lest some passenger should sit over it.

An Old Woman in the Bus

At that time, an elderly woman got into the bus. She sat beside Valli. She questioned her if she was all alone. Valli did not like her. There were big holes in her ears. The earrings were very ugly. She was chewing the betelnut. Valli was fearing lest its juice should fall at any moment. She again interrogated Valli. In turn Valli gave a curt reply and asked her to mind her own business. But the old woman went on with her talk. She tried to know the house number, town and street, where she was going. Valli was much troubled. She asked her not to bother about her. Then Valli turned her face and stared outside the window.

A Very Planned Journey

It was her first journey. She had planned it very well. She had saved all her stray coins that came her way. She even resisted the temptation of buying toys and balloons etc. At the village fair too she controlled herself not to enjoy the ride in the merry-go-round. Thus she had collected enough money for her journey. Her next problem was to slip out of the house. She knew that her mother used to sleep daily after lunch. Valli decided to use these hours for her journey. Most often she used these hours for her excursion.

Journeying in the Bus

The bus was rolling across a landscape. Everything seemed to be fast running. But it was passing smoothly leaving all obstacles safely behind. Valli was happy. She clapped her hands with glee. There came a young cow, running fast, in front of the bus. The driver sounded his horn loudly. But the animal became more and more frightened. It galloped in front of the bus. It was funny for Valli. At last the cow moved off the road. The bus came to a railroad crossing. The train looked like a speck from the distance. The train passed with utmost roar and rattle. It shook the bus even. Then the bus passed through a busy shopping street and came on a wider thoroughfare. Valli was fascinated and happy to see the displays of clothes and the big crowd. She was watching everything. It was the last destination of the bus.

Some Interrogation by the Conductor

Now all the passengers got off the bus. Valli remained there in the bus. The conductor asked if she was not ready to get off the bus. Valli replied that she would return on this same bus and gave her thirty coins to the conductor. He

felt surprised and questioned what the matter was. Valli replied that she only felt to have a ride in the bus and nothing else. The conductor was greatly amused. He requested her to go and look at the lights till the bus started. But Valli replied that she was much afraid. She went on sitting till the bus resumed its journey. She got her ticket. The same wonderful sights were before her eyes.

The Dead Cow

Then she suddenly saw a young cow dead by the road side. She enquired the conductor if it was the same cow. The conductor nodded his head. Now she was overcome with sadness. Her memory haunted her. She thought that she had been a lovely animal a little while ago but all her charm was lost. She no longer wanted to look out of the window. She glued to her seat. It was three-forty when the bus reached her village. She stood up and told the conductor to see him again. The conductor smiled and answered. Madam, whenever you feel like bus ride, come and join us. And don't forget to bring your fare. Valli laughed and went running straight for her home.

Valli Returns Home

When Valli entered her house, she saw her mother talking with one of her aunts. She was from South Street. She was a chatterbox. Her mouth never stopped once she started talking. She asked Valli where she had been. Valli only smiled. Her mother remained busy with her. Both were discussing about the things outside the world. Valli told that so many things were happening without their knowledge. Her aunt was surprised and said that Valli was talking like a grown-up lady.

4. WORD MEANINGS

1. Sensitive - full of feelings
2. Induction - entry
3. Mystery - surprise
4. Fast-moving - that moves fast
5. Suggestions - proposals, advices
6. Curious - anxious
7. Pastime - game, mode of passing leisure
8. Playmates - co-players
9. Enjoyable - full of enjoyment
10. Elaborate - detailed
11. Unusual - extraordinary
12. Fascinating - attractive
13. Passed through - go between
14. Unending - that which do not end
15. Gradually - slowly and steadily
16. Tiny - a bit, a little
17. Crept into - came, entered

CHAPTER 7

MADAM RIDES THE BUS

1. INTRODUCTION

The chapter “Madam Rides the Bus” is written by Vallikkannan. This is about a brave eight-year-old who had a strong desire and along with it, the courage to fulfill it. She liked gazing at the hustle and bustle of the street and her favourite part was the sight of a bus arriving and departing. Thus, she developed a deep desire to travel by bus. For that, she needed all sorts of information about the bus journey, collect the bus fare and then plan it so that she could be back at home before her mother woke up from her afternoon nap. Thus, the story brings us recounts of how innocently but responsibly she fulfilled her deepest desire and her experiences on the bus ride. How an incident makes her realize the reality of death.

2. CHARACTERS

Valliammai

Valliammai, better known as Valli is an eight-year-old girl who wishes to take a ride in the bus that goes to the town everyday. She is a curious girl who collects details about the bus journey. Since she is determined to go, she saves money for the bus journey and rides the bus.

Bus Conductor

The bus conductor is a jolly kind of fellow who calls Valli as ‘madam’ because of her mannerisms. Throughout the journey, he never gets irritated with her. Instead he treats her with affection.

3. SUMMARY

Valli's and Her Pastimes

Valli or Valliammai was a Tamil girl of eight years. She was very much curious about things. She had no playmates. So standing in the doorway of her house had become her favourite pastime. She watched what was happening in the street outside. Thus she had got many new unusual experiences. But she was very much fascinated for the bus ride. It was an unending joy for her.

Collecting Details about Bus Journey

There travelled a bus between her village and a nearest town on an interval of an hour. She stared at the passengers who got on or off the bus. She listened to the conversation between her neighbours and the people who regularly used the bus. More often, she asked a few questions from them. In a way she had collected some details about the bus journey. The last destination of the bus was a town. It was about six miles from her village. The fare was thirty paise for one way. The trip to the town took forty-five minutes. So she planned to take the one o’ clock afternoon bus so that she could return by about two forty-five.

Boarding the Bus

On one afternoon, it was a fine spring day. The afternoon bus was on the point of leaving the village. Valli called ‘Stop the bus! Stop the bus.’ The bus slowed down and the conductor peeped outside. He called to hurry up. Standing outside the bus, Valli told that she had to go to the town. She showed some coins and got into the bus. The conductor was a jolly fellow. He called her a fine madam and pointed towards a seat. It was the slack time of the day. So very few passengers were travelling in the bus. Then the conductor asked her if they could start the bus. All passengers were looking at the conductor and Valli. On hearing the whistle, the bus started. It was a new bus. It had a fine painting of green stripes on the white. The seats were soft and luxurious.

Looking Outside

In the way, Valli was enjoying everything through her own eyes. The road was narrow. On one side there was a canal. Beyond it there were palm trees, grassland, mountains, sky and green fields. To have full view, she stood on the seat. All looked very wonderful for Valli. An elderly man shouted and called Valli as ‘child’. He asked her to sit down. Valli was surprised for calling her a child. The conductor told that she was a very grown-up madam as a mere girl could not travel all alone. In an angry way, she looked towards the conductor and demanded the ticket. The conductor punched a ticket and gave her.

126. In the slightest - a bit
127. Greeted - welcomed
128. Excitement - courage
129. Lying dead - lay in death
130. Nodded - moving the head and saying 'yes'
131. Overcome with sadness - feels troubled
132. Horrible - terrible
133. Spread-eagled - with legs spread out
134. Lifeless - dead
135. Memory - remembrance
136. Haunted - troubled
137. Dampening - wetting
138. Enthusiasm - excitement
139. Glued to - stuck to
140. Stretched - spread
141. Answered - replied
142. Smiling - with laugh
143. Fare - rent of paying to travel
144. Forget - not to learn
145. Straight - direct
146. Awake - got up
147. Chatterbox - who talks much
148. Very casually - off and on
149. Expecting - hoping
150. Conversation - talk
151. Went on - continued
152. Midst - in between
153. Possibly - probably
154. Completely - fully
155. A chit of a girl - a small girl
156. Pokes her nose - speaks in between
157. Grown - old
158. Deepest - keen
159. Desire - wish
160. Confidence - belief, faith

5. MESSAGE

Amongst all the banter and light-hearted situations, the story gives us the serious and philosophical message about the mystery of life and death. It tells that life is beautiful, while death is horrifying. The death of the cow makes the girl realize the transience of life and the inevitability of death. However, the story makes it clear that life never comes to a standstill. It goes on and on, endlessly and rhythmically. Another message from the story is that sometimes we should listen to our elders and what other people are saying to us.

SCAN QR CODE
JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL



6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Activity

1. Look at the words and phrases given below. Then put a tick against the ones you think you will find in the text.

-a set of passengers	-get on the bus
-get off the bus	-platform
-Tickets, please	-a roar and a rattle
-a row of seats	-slowing down to a crawl
-blowing a whistle	

Ans :

Based on the context provided, I would expect to find the following words and phrases in the text:

1. a set of passengers
 2. get off the bus
 3. Tickets, please
 4. a row of seats
 5. get on the bus
 6. a roar and a rattle
 7. slowing down to a crawl
2. You must have travelled by bus more than once. What can you see from a fast-moving bus? Given below are some suggestions. Speak briefly about some of these scenes, or about other such scenes that you have seen; or write a sentence or two about them.

rivers	green fields	hills
roadside shops	market places	railway tracks
moving trains	vehicles on the road	trees
a crowd	clothes in shops	animals

Ans :

While travelling by bus, we see all the above-mentioned things. Some of the scenes from the above list:

1. Rivers : While travelling by bus, we see rivers which look very beautiful. The boatmen in their boats make the scene of river more beautiful.
2. Green fields : From the moving bus, we see fascinating green fields with different crops. The beauty of green fields fill our heart with joy.
3. Market places : We see varieties of shops in the market. We find people with bags and different kinds of goods.

18. Overwhelming desire - a keen desire
19. Stare - look keenly
20. Wistfully - sadly
21. Got on - board
22. Kindle - set alight
23. Longings - desires
24. Describe - explain
25. Sights - scenes
26. Jealous - feeling-ill will
27. Disapproval - unacceptable disagreement
28. Slang expression - using informal words
29. Conversations - discussions
30. Discreet questions - quiet, careful
31. Picked up - got
32. Scarcely - hardly
33. On and on - further and further
34. Commandingly - with order, command
35. Crawl - more slowly
36. Sticking - bringing
37. Conductor - one who gives the tickets
38. Simply - only
39. Jolly - funny
40. Sort - kind
41. Fond of - habitual of
42. Move aside - move/go away
43. Slack time - a time when there is not much work
44. Avoiding - saving, escaping
45. Smiling - laughing
46. Gleaming - shining
47. Stripes - lines
48. Overhead - above head
49. Directly - straightly
50. Windshield - wind screen
51. Luxurious - magnificent
52. Devoured - saw with keenness
53. Canvas - curtain
54. Peered over - seeing through
55. Narrow - with short space to pass
56. Palm trees - a kind of tree
57. Grassland - land with grass
58. Ditch - a narrow trench
59. Suddenly - all of a sudden
60. Startled - surprised
61. Concerned - caring for
62. Annoyed - angry
63. Haughtily - proudly
64. Chimed in - to be in rhyme
65. Mere - small
66. Glance - stare
67. Mimicking - copying
68. Punched - making a hole
69. Handed - gave
70. Comfortable - cosy
71. Hits - strikes
72. Bump - push against
73. Irritably - in an anger
74. Repulsive - causing strong dislike
75. Lobes - soft hanging part of the ear
76. Betelnut - nut of palm
77. Chewing - eating, grinding
78. Threatening - warning
79. Spill over - fall
80. At any moment - in any second
81. Ugh - said in surprise
82. Sociable - who is social
83. Answered - replied
84. Curtly - showing displeasure
85. Drivel - silly nonsense
86. Bother - feel concern
87. Careful - full of care
88. Pains taking - taking pains
89. Thriftly - careful in spending money
90. Saved - kept safe
91. Stray coins. - extra coins
92. Resisting - controlling, opposing
93. Temptation - greed
94. Resolutely - with strong determination
95. Stifled - controlled
96. Slip out - go away without telling other
97. Managed - arranged
98. Nap - a small short sleep
99. Excursions - tours and travels
100. Gobbling up - walking hurriedly
101. Pedestrian - those who walk on foot
102. Smoothly - carefully
103. Obstacles - difficulties
104. Clapped - clapping with both hands
105. Slowed - running slowly
106. Sounded - ringing
107. Honked - ringing with force
108. Frightened - afraid, fearful
109. Galloped - jumped
110. Moved off - to get aside
111. Speck - a small point
112. Tremendous - violent
113. Rattle - shuttering and violent sound
114. Shaking - moving
115. Traversed - lying across
116. Thorough fare - a busy public road
117. Glittering - shining
118. Displays - show
119. Merchandise - things for sale
120. Struck dumb with wonder - keeping mum due to wonder
121. Gaped at - stared at
122. Treat - feast
123. Firmly - with belief
124. Shrugged - move shoulders in helplessness
125. Bored - troubled

Thinking About the Text

1. What was Valli's deepest desire? Find the words and phrases in the story that tell you this.

Ans :

Valli's deepest desire was to enjoy a ride on the bus. Terms like 'overwhelming desire' and 'wistfully' show that Valli was desperate to ride the bus.

2. How did Valli plan her bus ride? What did she find out about the bus, and how did she save up for the fare?

Ans :

Valli had to plan on two aspects. The first aspect was saving enough money to arrange for two-way fare. The second aspect, was to give a slip to her mother because a child of her age would not be allowed to go all alone. She came to know about the distance of the town and total time of journey. She also gathered information about the fare.

3. What kind of a person is Valli? To answer this question, pick out the following sentences from the text and fill in the blanks. The words you fill in are the clues to your answer.

- "Stop the bus! Stop the bus!" And a tiny hand was raised _____.
- "Yes, I _____ go to town," said Valli, still standing outside the bus.
- "There's nobody here _____," she said haughtily. "I've paid my thirty paise like everyone else."
- "Never mind," she said, "I can _____ You don't have to help me. -" I'm not a child, I tell you," she said haughtily."
- "You needn't bother about me. I _____," Valli said, turning her face toward the window and staring out.
- Then she turned to the conductor and said, "Well, sir, I hope _____."

Ans :

(i) commandingly, (ii) simply have, (iii) who's a child, (iv) get on by myself, (v) can take care of myself, (vi) to see you again.

4. Why does the conductor refer to Valli as "Madam"?

Ans :

The conductor is a man of worldly wise nature. He has evaluated that the girl has innocence and ignorance in her behaviour. In order to enjoy a fun and not to make her unhappy, he calls Valli as "Madam" though she is simply a girl of eight year only.

5. Find the lines in the text which tell you that Valli was enjoying her ride on the bus.

Ans :

Valli was enjoying her ride on the bus. The following sentences from the text tell us about it :

- 'Oh, it was all so wonderful!'
- "So, she stood up on the seat and peered over the blind." 'Suddenly Valli clapped her hands with glee.'
- 'Somehow this was very funny to Valli. She laughed and laughed until there were tears in her eyes'
- 'Valli was not bored in the slightest and greeted everything with the same excitement?'

6. Why does Valli refuse to look out of the window on her way back ?

Ans :

Valli became sad to see a cow dead on the road. Some Vehicle ran over it. It was the same cow which Valli met and laughed to see it running in front of the bus. This made Valli less enthusiastic. So, she was not looking outside.

7. What does Valli mean when she says, "I was just agreeing with what you said about things happening without our knowledge?"

Ans :

Valli entered her house after her bus journey. She found her mother conversing with one of her aunts. She overheard their discussion on the things happening in their midst as well as in the world outside. All of them could not know about everything. Even some of them could not be understood by them. At this juncture, Valli too opined likewise and told that many things were happening without their knowledge.

8. The author describes the things that Valli sees from an eight year old's point of view. Can you find evidence from the text for this statement ?

Ans :

The author has rightly described many things from an eight years old Valli's point of view. Some of the sentences can be mentioned as under :

- On seeing her one of her friends describing the sights, Valli would shout "Proud! Proud!!"
- From the regular bus commuters, she would ask a few discreet questions here and there.
- And here's my money.
- I can get on by myself. You don't have to help me.
- There's nobody here who's a child.

driver sounded the horn to warn it but the more he honked, the faster it galloped. Valli found it funny and amusing. She laughed till tears came into her eyes. On her way back, she saw the same cow lying dead on the road. Some fast speeding vehicle must have hit it. It was a horrible sight. It looked quite frightening. It was lying with its legs spread out, a fixed stare in its lifeless eyes and blood around it. The image of the dead cow haunted her, dampening her spirits and making her sad.

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

“But for Valli, standing at the front door was every bit as enjoyable as any of the elaborate games other children played. Watching the street gave her many new unusual experiences.

The most fascinating of all was the bus that travelled between her village and the nearest town. It passed through her street each hour, once going to the town and once coming back. The sight of the bus, filled each time with a new set of passengers was a source of unending joy for Valli”

- i. The author says that ‘Watching the street gave her many new unusual experiences.’ Which of the options given below confirms this statement?
Valli had a habit of _____.
(a) passing time as she had no friends
(b) observing people and everyday happenings
(c) eavesdropping on neighbours and visitors
(d) looking for an opportunity to hop into a bus
- ii. Why was ‘The sight of the bus, filled each time with a new set of passengers was a source of unending joy for Valli?’ Answer in about 40 words.
- iii. Read the following descriptions (a)-(c) and identify which one correctly corresponds to the figure of speech in the given line from the extract.
‘But for Valli, standing at the front door was every bit as enjoyable as any of the elaborate games other children played.’
(a) “Either way, or both, he died like a bug under a microscope.” - Stephen King.

- (b) “And how my soul was as a lampless sea.” - Shelley
- (c) “Dying is a wild night and a new road” - Emily Dickinson

- iv. What does Valli’s interest in a ‘new set of passengers’ as a source of unending joy show about her?

Ans :

2020

- i. (b) observing people and everyday happenings
- ii. Valli had never taken a bus ride. She was confined to her home and her neighbourhood. The bus, the journey, and the town fascinated her no end. She wanted to experience the reality of the outside world. She was envious of her friends who had been to the town and labelled them ‘proud.’
- iii. (a) “Either way, or both, he died like a bug under a microscope.” - Stephen King.
- iv. Valli was sociable and a people person.

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

There was a girl named Valliammai who was called Valli for short. She was eight years old and very curious about things. Her favourite pastime was standing in the front doorway of her house, watching what was happening in the street outside. There were no playmates of her own age on her street and this was about all she had to do.

- i. What was Valli’s favourite pastime?
(a) Watching the street outside
(b) Playing outside
(c) Travelling on a bus
(d) Reading books
- ii. Fill in the blank appropriately.
While standing at the door, Valli was especially excited by the sight of ____.
- iii. Why did Valli choose a different pastime for her?
- iv. Which word would correctly substitute ‘friends’, in the given sentence from the extract?
Being an extrovert, Rajnish had many friends.

Ans :

2018

- i. (a) Watching the street outside
- ii. a moving bus
- iii. Valli chose a different pastime for herself because there were no playmates of her own age in her locality.
- iv. Playmates

- (b) To stand at the front doorway and look every passenger.
 (c) To stand at the back doorway and look every passenger.
 (d) None of these

Ans :

2020

- (a) To stand at the front doorway and look into the street.

5. What was the most fascinating scene for Valli in the street?

- (a) The bus with new set of curtains every time.
 (b) The bus with new set of passengers every time.
 (c) The bus with new driver every time.
 (d) The bus with new conductor every time.

Ans :

2020

- (b) The bus with new set of passengers every time.

6. What can you tell about the conductor from the text?

- (a) he was funny (b) he was grumpy
 (c) he was quiet (d) all of these

Ans :

2016

- (a) he was funny

7. What saddened Valli?

- (a) the dead cow
 (b) car accident
 (c) the handicapped passenger
 (d) all of these

Ans :

2016

- (a) the dead cow

8. What made her laugh on her journey?

- (a) the sight of a running cow
 (b) the old woman's earrings
 (c) the old man
 (d) None of these

Ans :

2016

- (a) the sight of a running cow

9. What did she have to resist on Village Fair Day to save for the ride?

- (a) balloons (b) merry go round
 (c) toys (d) peppermint

Ans :

2015

- (b) merry go round

10. Why did Valli find the woman repulsive?

- (a) she had large piercings in her ears
 (b) she wore ugly earrings

- (c) she was chewing betel nut which could spill out any moment

- (d) all of these

Ans :

2014

- (d) all of these

11. What did the old man say to Valli that annoyed her?

- (a) He shouted at her
 (b) he asked why she's alone
 (c) he merely asked her to sit
 (d) None of these

Ans :

2014

- (c) he merely asked her to sit

12. "Valli would stare wistfully at the people who got on or off the bus." What is the meaning of 'wistfully'?

- (a) fearfully (b) carefully
 (c) willingly (d) longingly

Ans :

2014

- (d) longingly

13. What was Valli's full name?

- (a) Vallikkannan (b) Valliammai
 (c) Valliannai (d) Vallikannam

Ans :

2013

- (b) Valliammai

14. What was her overwhelming desire?

- (a) to have friends (b) to travel by bus
 (c) to top the class (d) None of these

Ans :

2013

- (b) to travel by bus

15. What would make Valli jealous?

- (a) strangers travelling by bus
 (b) hearing stories of her friend's bus journey
 (c) her mother travelling the bus
 (d) all of these

Ans :

2012

- (b) hearing stories of her friend's bus journey

16. Why did Valli stand up?

- (a) She wanted to enjoy the ride
 (b) she wasn't able to look outside properly
 (c) she liked standing
 (d) she was tired of sitting

Ans :

2012

- (b) she wasn't able to look outside properly

17. "Valli found the woman absolutely repulsive".
What do you mean by "repulsive"?

(a) causing strong dislike
(b) showing displeasure
(c) extremely attractive
(d) admirable

Ans :

2012

(a) causing strong dislike

18. Why did the old lady ask Valli so many questions?

(a) she was bothered about Valli
(b) she liked Valli
(c) she was poking her nose
(d) she was bored

Ans :

2011

(a) she was bothered about Valli

19. What was the next challenge once she'd saved enough money?

(a) tell her mom about it
(b) know about the timings
(c) buy a ticket
(d) to sneak out of the house

Ans :

2011

(d) to sneak out of the house

20. Why did Valli not get off the bus for sight-seeing?

(a) she was afraid
(b) she didn't want to
(c) she didn't have the time
(d) she didn't like the city

Ans :

2010

(a) she was afraid

21. Who was a "real chatterbox"?

(a) Valli (b) conductor
(c) her aunt (d) all of these

Ans :

2010

(c) her aunt

22. What was the one way fare from the village to the town?

(a) one rupee (b) 50 paise
(c) 40 paise (d) 30 paise

Ans :

2010

(d) 30 paise

23. How does the conductor address Valli?

(a) as Valli (b) as Madam
(c) as kiddo (d) None of these

Ans :

2010

(b) as Madam

24. Town was _____ miles from the village.

(a) Five (b) Ten
(c) Six (d) Three

Ans :

2009, 2003

(c) Six

25. An old woman sitting beside Valli was _____.

(a) Reading book (b) Sleeping
(c) Chewing betel (d) Listening song

Ans :

2009

(c) Chewing betel

26. Valli's aunt lived in

(a) South Street (b) William street
(c) Elvin street (d) North Street

Ans :

2008

(a) South Street

27. The train looked like a speck

(a) in the distance (b) in the border
(c) in the grass (d) in the delight

Ans :

2008

(a) in the distance

28. She had to make careful and elaborate plans for

(a) her first journey (b) her beautiful dress
(c) her doll (d) her icecream

Ans :

2008

(a) her first journey

29. The outside of the bus was painted

(a) black (b) brown
(c) white (d) green

Ans :

2008

(c) white

30. The word 'fascinating' means

(a) re-creative (b) everlasting
(c) attractive (d) longingly

Ans :

2007

(c) attractive

31. Valli clapped her hands with

(a) tears in eyes (b) smile on lips
(c) delight (d) sadness

Ans :

2006

(c) delight

32. The word 'annoyed' means

(a) became sad (b) became happy
(c) became dull (d) became angry

Ans :

2006

(d) became angry

33. How much money did Valli pay for her to and from journey?

(a) Fifty paise (b) Sixty paise
(c) Seventy paise (d) Hundred paise

Ans :

2006

(b) Sixty paise

34. Valli would stare wistfully at the people as she
- (a) had been watching the bus for a long time.
(b) was inspired by the people travelling on the bus.
(c) had a strong desire to take a ride on the bus.
(d) envied the people who could travel on the bus.

Ans :

2005

(c) had a strong desire to take a ride on the bus.

35. What does the line 'gradually a tiny wish crept into her head and grew there', mean?

(a) The wish developed in her head over a period of time.
(b) The wish was a feeling of wanting to prove her strength.
(c) The wish was planted in her head by someone's suggestion.
(d) The wish was small and was overpowered by a sense of doubt.

Ans :

2005

(a) The wish developed in her head over a period of time.

36. Valli told the conductor to mind his own business and laughed as well. This shows that Valli

(a) was not really bothered about what the conductor said.
(b) didn't like the conductor speaking about her.
(c) disliked what the conductor said but was amused.
(d) was impressed with what the conductor said.

Ans :

2005

(c) disliked what the conductor said but was amused.

37. _____ was a source of unending joy for Valli.

(a) Street seller
(b) Street full of cars
(c) Bus full of passengers
(d) Children playing at the street

Ans :

2004, 2001

(c) Children playing at the street.

38. _____ had become a single wish of Valli.

(a) Riding on the bus
(b) Watching street activity
(c) Playing with other children
(d) Gardening

Ans :

2004

(a) Riding on the bus.

39. After crossing the railroad the bus reached to the

(a) Bus stop (b) Shopping street
(c) Small ally (d) Destination

Ans :

2002

(b) Shopping street.

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

40. What did the conductor offer Valli at the bus stop in the town?

(a) Water (b) Soft Drink
(c) Pizza (d) Burger

Ans :

2001

(b) Soft Drink

Short Answer Type Questions

NODIA

How does education play a transformative role in Bholi's life?

Ans :

2023

Education plays a huge transformational role in Bholi's life. It induced in her confidence and self-esteem. It made her able to take right decisions, choose wisely and speak up for her ownself. Education was her weapon to fight against Bishamber and to stand up for herself.

2. During her journey, Valli absorbed the natural beauty and clapped her hands in happiness on seeing a young cow running very fast. What does this reveal about Valli?

Ans :

2021

This reveals the childish behaviour of Valli. She admired natural beauty on the way. She clapped on seeing the running cow because kids like running and jumping at this age. She thought that the cow was running for fun.

3. Valli didn't like the way adults treated her during her bus journey. Describe how you would feel and react if you were to find yourself in a similar situation.

3. Travelling teaches us many life lessons and enriches us with experiences. You and your classmate have a discussion on this statement and your love for travel. Write the dialogue. You may begin like this...

Friend : I think travelling is one of the best ways to explore the world around you and helps you introspect about life itself.

You :

Friend : Travelling enriches us with so many varied experiences.

You :

Ans :

2021

Dialogue Writing

Friend : I think travelling is one of the best ways to explore the world around you and helps you introspect about life itself.

You : I agree with you.

Friend : Travelling enriches us with so many varied experiences.

You : While travelling we tend to learn new languages from signboards, cab drivers and street hawkers.

Friend : Last year, when I visited Pune city in India I observed that the people of Pune prefer Hindi and Sanskrit language over English from reading their signboards.

You : Travelling lets you taste different cuisines.

Friend : Oh yes. On my Pune trip, I got to taste a protein-packed street food 'Misal pav' which is approved even by the dietitians.

You : I love travelling so much. I wish to explore the whole world!

SCAN QR CODE

JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL



4. After reading the story about Valli; you realise that she had such a small desire and demanded nothing from her mother. After reflecting on this, you decide to write a diary entry on how you felt you have been unreasonable about the demands you have posed to your parents. You also realise that life is not all about materialistic possessions. You may begin like this:

15 August 2020, Saturday 9:00 pm
I feel I have learnt a lesson in life after reading about Valli. I feel ashamed for the way I have been.....

Ans :

2021

15 August 2020, Saturday 9:00 pm
I feel I have learnt a lesson in life after reading about Valli. I feel ashamed for the way I have been so demanding about the materialistic possessions from my parents. Valli had given up a lot of things to save 60 paise to experience a bus ride. Whereas I never care about this meagre amount of money. She sacrificed materialistic possessions to experience something new in her life. Her story taught me a lesson to enjoy the real fun instead of running after costly and branded products. It made me realise that rich people should use a part of their money and resources to help the poor and needy people. I have resolved that from now onwards I would not pressurise my parents by making undue demands from them. I have planned that I would celebrate my birthday with 10 less fortunate kids and take them for a metro train ride and enjoy watching their happy faces.
Bye, dear diary.

5. Valli is very organised, bold and at the same time very sensitive. Comment.

Or

Write a Character sketch of Valli.

Or

Give, in brief, a pen portrait of Valli.

Or

What kind of person is Valli? Illustrate your answer from the text that you have read.

Ans :

2021, 2011

Valli was an eight-year-old girl born in a small village. However, she was a very curious girl. She spend her time standing in the front door way of her house, watching what was happening in the street outside. Watching the street gave her many new and unusual experiences. Her curiosity about travelling on the bus to the town urged her on to plan her trip. She was very meticulous in planning for the trip. She calculated the distance between her home and the town, the time it took for a trip up and down by bus etc. Valli also proved to be very impressive and bold by finally deciding to ride in the bus. Her childish innocence veiled by her smart and bold outlook amused the conductor who offered her a seat in the bus. Valli thoroughly enjoyed her ride to the town, and laughed and clapped when the young cow ran on the middle of the road in front of the bus. But her enjoyable bus ride became a nightmare on her return journey. She saw the same cow lying dead on the road. This right haunted her, dampened her spirits, and

13. How did Valli gather all the information about the bus?

Ans :

2012

Over many days and months Valli had heard carefully the conversations between her neighbours and people who regularly used the bus. She also asked a few discreet questions here and there. This way she gathered all the information about the bus.

14. Where was the town located? What was the fare to travel there by bus?

Ans :

2011

The town was located six miles from Valli's village. The fare to travel to town by bus was thirty paise for one way. The bus passed through the village street each hour, once going to the town and once coming back.

15. What did Valli keep on planning and calculating continuously?

Ans :

2011

Valli kept on planning and calculating which bus to take, how much time it will take to reach the town and the fare that would be required for completing her journey.

16. Why didn't Valli want to talk to the elderly woman?

Ans :

2008

The elderly woman was wearing ugly earrings and was chewing betel nut. The betel juice was about to seep out of her mouth. Valli found all this repulsive and hence did not want to talk to her.

17. How did Valli manage to travel by bus without the knowledge of her mother?

Ans :

2004

Valli managed to travel by bus without the knowledge of her mother as she was asleep when Valli went out. Every day, after lunch, her mother would nap from 1 o'clock to 4 o'clock. Valli always used these hours for her excursions into the village.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. Valli was sensitive, but at the same time, she was fearless and quite determined. Think of another character from your text book, who displayed similar character traits.

Compare and contrast the lives of Valli and the other character, that you have chosen from the text of Two Stories about Flying.

You may begin this way.

The characters who are fearless and determined from two texts are Valli and _____.

Ans :

2024

Valli was a young girl of 8 years who still displayed mature and responsible behaviour in the story. She was bold enough to fulfil her desire of riding a bus without her parents help in any way. I think Anne Frank had the same characteristics. Even after being punished thrice for talking in class, she did not get depressed and accepted the punishment intelligently. Her answers impressed her teacher and he praised her writings in front of other students.

While Valli's flight may have been a personal journey of growth and self-discovery, the seagull's flight could be driven by its natural instincts and the need to find food or migrate. Both experiences highlight the importance of courage and risk-taking in pursuing our dreams and exploring the world around us.

2. You have been asked to give a speech on the topic 'The journey is more important than the destination'. Prepare a draft for the speech, in not more than 120 words, with reference to the texts Madam Rides the Bus and The Black Aeroplane.

You may begin this way:

Good morning, everyone. Today, I would like to talk to you about how the journeys that we experience in life are often more important than their destinations.

You may end this way :

To conclude, I would like to say that...

Thank you.

Ans :

2023

Good morning, everyone. Today, I would like to talk to you about how the journeys that we experience in life are often more important than their destinations.

In 'Madam Rides the Bus', Valli's journey was initially filled with excitement. It was only when she saw the young cow dead on the road that her spirits dampened. This experience made her learn about life and death. Similarly, the pilot in 'The Black Aeroplane' was guided to safety by another plane when his plane went into a storm. However, he later learned that there were no other planes in the sky! Valli's bus ride symbolises a journey of exploration and self-discovery, through the storm represents a journey of courage and resilience.

To conclude, I would like to say that you should enjoy every moment of your journey, because that's where you'll find the true treasures.

Thank you

6. Ugh! who could be sociable with such a person.
7. No, no one will be looking for me, she said.

Speaking

1. This story has a lot of people talking in it. The conductor jokes and laughs with Valli, some passengers try to show their concern for her, and her mother and her aunt spends time chattering. Read the conversations carefully. Then think of similar people or similar situations that you have experienced. Mimic a person or persons who spoke to you, saying what they said, along with your replies.

Ans :

This is an individual activity. It is to be done by the students alone.

Writing

1. Write a page - about three paragraphs - on one of the following topics.
 1. Have you ever planned something entirely on your own, without taking grown-ups into your confidence ? What did you plan, and how ? Did you carry out your plan ?
 2. Have you made a journey that was unforgettable in some way ? What made it memorable ?
 3. Are you concerned about traffic, and road safety? What are your concerns ? How would you make road travel safer and more enjoyable?

Ans :

About these three topics, we can discuss topic number 2.

An Unforgettable Journey

It is about a journey which will remain fresh till there are breaths left with me. The incident goes back to the year 2006 when all the members of my family were returning after worshipping the shrine of Vaishno Devi. We were accompanied by two other families from our neighbourhood. The Jammu Mail started well in time from Jammu. Every thing was in high spirits. All were happy to have a decent trip. In the way we enjoyed with songs tit-bits and other amusing material.

It was 8.00 a.m. when the train passed Jalandhar. There we heard the rattling and roaring. In no time, the train stopped with a sudden and rapid jerk. Many passengers fell from their upper berths. There were wailings, cries and stampede every where. The passengers were jumping from

the compartment to save themselves. All were in a very odd as well as tantalising situation. There was no alternative left with the people. We too got down from- the train and came in the open. On having a close look at the train, we saw eight bogies were derailed with their wheels in the concrete and the small pebbles. On further enquiry it was found that the track was damaged. Near about one full length of the rail measuring seven metres was not there.

All left the place. Ambulance and police arrived in no time. The railway officials and the nearby villagers came running to help the passengers. It was a heart-rending scene. Small children along with their mothers were weeping bitterly. But God be thanked that there was no loss of life! A few passengers got slight injuries otherwise all were okay. Whenever I enjoy a long journey, I immediately think of journey by Jammu Mail.

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. Who is the author of the lesson "Madam rides the Bus"?

(a) Gavin Maxwell	(b) Vallikkannan
(c) Paulo Coelho	(d) Arup Kumar Dutta

Ans :

2021

- (b) Vallikkannan

2. What amused Valli the most?

(a) The sight of buffalo running in front of the bus.
(b) The sight of people running in front of the bus.
(c) The sight of dog running in front of the bus.
(d) The sight of cow running in front of the bus.

Ans :

2021

- (d) The sight of cow running in front of the bus.

3. What did Valli do one fine spring day?

- | |
|------------------------------------|
| (a) Caught the bus to the town. |
| (b) Caught the bus to the village. |
| (c) Caught the car to the town. |
| (d) Caught the car to the village. |

Ans :

2021

- (a) Caught the bus to the town.

4. What was her favourite pastime?

- | |
|---|
| (a) To stand at the front doorway and look into the street. |
|---|

saddened her. This is typical of the tendency of a matured person. She refused to look out of the window thereafter. Valli, on the whole, can be described as a curious, joyful, disciplined smart, bold, and at the same time, a mature girl.

6. Valli's dream was to enjoy a ride on the bus to the nearest town. What preparations did she make to realize her dream?

Ans :

2019

It is quite natural when we want to fulfil our desires; some temptations always come in our way. In the story, we see that Valli had the deepest desire to enjoy a ride on the bus. She usually stood in the front doorway of her house and carefully watched how a bus ran from her village to the nearby town every day. So, a temptation raised in her mind to ride on this bus.

As her desire and temptation go together, so Valli was courageous and confident to fulfil her desire. She collected every desired piece of information about journey such as distance, fare and time of bus journey. So, she took a great risk to ride the bus. However, she slipped out of the house without her mother's knowledge and managed to fulfil her desire of enjoying a bus ride.

Download NODIA App for All Sample Papers PDFs

7. How did Valli save money for her first bus journey? Was it easy for her? What does it show about her?

Or

How did Valli plan herself to have a ride in the bus?

Or

How did Valli save money for her first bus journey?

Or

How did Valli save up money for her first journey? What made her laugh on her way?

Ans :

2016, 2014, 2010

Valli was overwhelmed with a tiny desire of having a bus ride. She had two problems namely fare-money and leaving the house without intimating her mother. In order to overcome both the problems, she planned everything very well. About the fare and the bus, she heard the conversation of daily commuters. Thus she had picked up various small details about the bus journey, fare, timings etc.

About the fare, she saved all the stray coins that came in her hands. The next severe problem pertained when and how to leave the house. Ultimately she decided that the afternoon time was most suitable for that. At that time

her mother had a short nap after lunch. So she decided to ride the afternoon bus and return by two-forty-five.

8. What was Valli's greatest desire? How did she fulfil it?

Ans :

2012

Valli's greatest desire was to ride on the bus that travelled between her village and the nearest town. The sight of the bus, filled each time with a new set of passengers, was a source of unending joy for Valli.

Over many days and months, Valli listened conversations between her neighbours and the passengers who rode the bus. This way, she picked up various small details about the bus journey.

Valli had the desired information about journey like how many miles away the town was, what the fare was and how much time it took to complete the bus journey. Then she started to save money. She did not buy toys, balloons, etc. Even she did not ride on the merry-go-round in the village fair. At last, on a fine spring afternoon, she rode on the bus and started her journey. Thus, Valli fulfilled her indomitable desire to ride the bus.

9. What are the incidents and experiences that present Valli as a mature girl ahead of her age?

Ans :

2005

Valli was an eight-year-old village girl. She had no playmates. Her favourite pastime was to stand at the doorstep and watch things and people. This way she not only satisfied her curiosity but also gained new experiences. Her strongest desire was to go for a bus-ride. She meticulously planned for it - gathered information about the distance, time and ticket money. Showing self-restraint, she resisted the temptation to buy peppermint, toys or a ride on the merry-go-round in order to save 60 paise for the bus journey. She boarded the bus without anyone's help, refused a free treat by the conductor and didn't talk to strangers. This shows her commanding, confident and self-dependent nature. This also shows her determination and maturity at such a little age.

10. Valli's journey to the city makes her unfold the mysteries of life and death. Elaborate.

Ans :

2002

Valli gets introduced to the mystery of life and death on her first bus journey in the outside world. She was wonder struck and enjoyed the beauty of the outside world. She clapped, laughed and enjoyed when she saw a young cow running in the middle of the road in front of the bus. The

Ans :

2021

Had I been riding alone for the first time I would have reacted in a similar manner. Adults keep on nagging children in everything. They forget that once they were also children. Elders think that kids are a fool and cannot take decisions on their own, but this is not so.

4. If you were to advise Valli on the two things she ought to take with her if she were travelling alone for the first time, what would they be and why?

Ans :

2021

I would advise Valli to keep her address and parents phone number in her pocket; in case of any mishappening people can contact her parents. Another important tool is a whistle that can make noise in case of emergency. Other safety tools for females can be a dummy wallet and Pepper powder.

5. Imagine Valli had to plan a day-long budget trip to a domestic destination for her family all by herself.

What things do you think she would keep in mind while planning?

Ans :

2021

Valli has been described as a mature girl who planned her first trip wisely. While planning a domestic tour for her family she would consider the cost of travelling, food, and sightseeing. She would research the places to visit there and she would make a list of important things to be carried with them. For example- Water bottle, torch, ready to eat food items, medicines for emergency and official documents required for travelling.

6. What was the most fascinating thing that Valli saw on the street?

Ans :

2019

The most fascinating thing that Valli saw on the street was the bus that travelled between her village and the nearest town. It passed through her street each hour, once going to the town and once coming back.

7. How was the view outside the bus when it went through the canal?

Ans :

2017, 2015

On one side there was the canal and, beyond it, palm trees, grassland, distant mountains, and the sky. On the other side was a deep ditch and then acres and acres of green fields.

8. How did Valli feel on seeing the dead cow on the road?

Or

How did Valli react when she saw the dead cow by the roadside ?

Ans :

2016, 2015

On seeing the dead cow on the road, Valli was grief-stricken. She thought what had happen to a lovable beautiful creature that was so joyous a little while ago. But having lost its life, it lost its charm and looked so horrible and frightening.

9. Valli was an eight year old girl who was very curious about things. What was her favourite pastime?

Ans :

2016

Valli's favourite pastime was to stand in the front doorway of her house. She did not play like most other children because there were no playmates of her age on her street. Watching the street also gave her many unusual experiences which were equally enjoyable.

10. Give two reasons why Valli found the elderly woman on the bus, repulsive.

Ans :

2015

Valli did not want to make friends with the elderly woman because she found her repulsive as she had big holes in her ear lobes and was wearing ugly earrings. She could smell the beetal nut the woman was chewing.

11. How can you say that the conductor was a good-natured jolly fellow? Support your answer with examples.

Ans :

2014

Undoubtedly, the conductor was a good natured jolly fellow. If we study his behaviour towards Valli, an eight-year-old girl in the story, we can make out his conduct. When she entered the bus, he guided her towards the seat. Jokingly he called her 'my fine madam' as a comment because she behaved like a mature woman.

12. What sight did Valli experience during her first journey by bus?

Ans :

2013, 2001

During her first journey by bus, Valli experienced beautiful sights such as mountains, green grass fields and palm trees on the way. More fascinating was her journey when she saw a cow came galloping in front of the bus. This made her laugh heartily.

SCAN QR CODE

JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL



3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

Over many days and months, Valli listened carefully to conversations between her neighbours and people who regularly used the bus and she also asked a few discreet questions here and there. This way she picked up various small details about the bus journey. The town was six miles from her village.

- i. How did Valli pick up small details about the bus journey?
 - (a) Listening to conversations of neighbours
 - (b) Asking a few discreet questions
 - (c) Both (a) and (b)
 - (d) None of the above
- ii. What did Valli find about the bus journey?
- iii. Read the following descriptions (a)-(c) and identify which one correctly corresponds to the extract.
 - (a) An autobiographical account describing the author's feelings and thought regarding an event in her life.
 - (b) A story narrated from the perspective of an all knowing narrator.
 - (c) A brochure which gives us a picture of the places' culture, people and tourist destination.
- iv. Why did Valli listen to the conversations?

Ans :

2017

- i. (c) Both (a) and (b)
- ii. Valli found at that the bus journey to the town took 45 minutes and the two-way fare was 60 paise.
- iii. (b) A story narrated from the perspective of an all knowing narrator.
- iv. Valli listened to the conversations to gather information regarding the journey in the bus which she wanted to take.

4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"Day after day she watched the bus, and gradually a tiny wish crept into her head and grew there: she wanted to ride on that bus, even if it was just once. This wish became stronger, until it was an overwhelming desire. Valli would stare wistfully at the people who got on and off the bus when it stood at the street corner. Their faces would kindle in her longings, dreams, and hopes. If one of her friends happened to ride the bus and tried to describe the sights of the town to her. Valli

would be jealous to listen and would shout, in English: "Proud! Proud!"

- i. Valli would stare wistfully at the people as she _____.
 - (a) had been watching the bus for a long time.
 - (b) was inspired by the people travelling on the bus.
 - (c) had a strong desire to take a ride on the bus.
 - (d) envied the people who could travel on the bus.
- ii. Pick the option that shows the list of words that collocate with 'overwhelming' (e.g. overwhelming desire).
 1. response, 2. lies, 3. support, 4. majority, 5. pets, 6. places
 - (a) 1, 5 and 6
 - (b) 1, 3 and 4
 - (c) 2 and 5
 - (d) 3, 5 and 6
- iii. Valli would be jealous to listen...' This indicates Valli's _____.
 - (a) longing to ride the bus.
 - (b) nature as an envious person.
 - (c) denial to accept her situation.
 - (d) inclination to trouble travellers.
- iv. A part of the extract has been paraphrased. Choose the option that includes the most appropriate solution to the blanks.
 The desire became so (1) _____ that it transformed into an (2) _____ one. Valli would look (3) _____ at people who boarded the bus and got off.

(a)	(1) active	(2) overt	(3) longingly
(b)	(1) vigorous	(2) overpowering	(3) cheerfully
(c)	(1) staunch	(2) overt	(3) joyfully
(d)	(1) vigorous	(2) overpowering	(3) longingly
- v. What does the line 'gradually a tiny wish crept into her head and grew there', mean?
 - (a) The wish developed in her head over a period of time.
 - (b) The wish was a feeling of wanting to prove her strength.
 - (c) The wish was planted in her head by someone's suggestion.
 - (d) The wish was small and was overpowered by a sense of doubt.

27. Gautama Buddha got married with a princess at the age of

- (a) 16 (b) 18
(c) 17 (d) 15

Ans :

2005

- (a) 16

28. Gautama Buddha spent his royal married life for about _____ year.

- (a) 10 (b) 15
(c) 12 (d) 8

Ans :

2005

- (a) 10

29. Gautama Buddha gave the name to the Peepal tree the Bodhi tree, which means

- (a) Tree of enlightend
(b) Tree of knowledge
(c) Tree of enlightenment
(d) Tree of wisdom

Ans :

2005

- (d) Tree of wisdom

30. Gautama Buddha's first sermon was about

- (a) Truth
(b) Man's unending sufferings
(c) Moksh
(d) Man's true knowledge

Ans :

2005, 2001

- (b) Man's unending sufferings

31. Sakyamuni is the name of _____.

- (a) Mahavira (b) Gautama Buddha
(c) kabir (d) A renowned priest

Ans :

2004

- (b) Gautama Buddha

32. The only way to the path of salvation is to overcome all

- (a) Negativity (b) Sorrow
(c) Merry (d) Happiness

Ans :

2003

- (b) Sorrow

33. When was Budhha sent for Schooling?

- (a) At the age of eight
(b) At the age of ten
(c) At the age of twelve
(d) At the age of fourteen

Ans :

2002

- (c) At the age of twelve

34. Where was Budhha born?

- (a) South India (b) North India
(c) West part of India (d) None of these

Ans :

2002

- (b) North India

35. Kisa Gotami felt tired and

- (a) bored (b) depressed
(c) delighted (d) devoid of hope

Ans :

2002

- (d) devoid of hope

36. She asked the villagers if they had

- (a) lost a loved one in their family
(b) some rice for her
(c) worshipped Buddha
(d) lost their pet

Ans :

2002

- (a) lost a loved one in their family

37. By no means death can be avoided by those

- (a) that have been born
(b) that have never born
(c) that have courage
(d) that have ambition

Ans :

2001

- (a) that have been born

38. What did Kisa Gotami learn in the end?

- (a) Love is common (b) Death is common
(c) War is common (d) None of these

Ans :

2001

- (b) Death is common

39. The mortals are always in danger of

- (a) birth (b) death
(c) sickness (d) rudeness

Ans :

2001

- (b) death

40. Who is the writer of the lesson "The Sermon At Benares"?

- (a) Robert Frost (b) Betty Renshaw
(c) Carolyn Wells (d) Robin Klein

Ans :

2001

- (b) Betty Renshaw

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

CHAPTER 8

THE SERMON AT BENARES

1. INTRODUCTION

The Chapter “The Sermon at Benares” is written by Betty Renshaw. The chapter covers the journey of Gautama Buddha from princehood to his saintly life. After seeing the suffering of the world, he decided to give up all worldly pleasures and sought enlightenment. He finally attained salvation under a tree at Bodhgaya. After this, he delivered his first sermon at Benares, a holy city in Uttar Pradesh. Through his sermon he made the lady Kisa Gotami realize that human beings are mortal and death is inevitable.

2. CHARACTERS

Gautama Buddha

The childhood name of Gautama Buddha was prince Siddhartha. He obtained enlightenment under the Bodhi tree began to share his new understandings with common people through his preachings.

Kisa Gotami

Kisa Gotami lost her only son and went from one house to another asking for medicine to cure her son. It was Gautama Buddha who made her realise that death is inevitable and must come to all.

3. SUMMARY

Early life of Buddha

Gautama Buddha was born in 483 B.C. in northern India. He was a prince known as Siddhartha Gautama. At the age of twelve he was sent away for schooling to read the Hindu scriptures. He returned after four years and was married with a princess named Yashodhara. They had a son. The family was leading a royal life. At the age of twenty-five, he went out for hunting. Till this period he did not know suffering. In the way Buddha happened to see a sick man, an aged man, a funeral procession and a monk begging for alms. These sights moved him very much.

He immediately decided to become a beggar and went out to seek enlightenment.

Sitting Under a Bo-tree

For long seven years, Buddha went on wandering here and there in search of enlightenment but in vain. At last he sat down under a big fig tree and vowed down to stay until enlightenment came. After a period of seven days, enlightenment came upon him. He renamed the tree the Bo-Tree (Tree of Wisdom). Now Gautama started his teachings and he was known as the Buddha. He preached his first sermon at the city of Benares near the holy banks of the river Ganges.

Death of Kisa Gotami's Son

Once the only son of Kisa Gotami died. She went to-and-fro with her dead child. She requested for medicine but people called that she had lost her senses since the boy was dead. At last a man told her to go to Salyamuni, the Buddha. So she saw the Buddha and cried “Lord and My Master, give me the medicine that will cure my boy.” After a deep thought, the Buddha asked to bring a handful of mustard - seed. But it must be from that house where no one had died.

Kisa Gotami's Hopelessness

Kisa Gotami went from house to house for taking the mustard-seed. Side by side she asked if anyone had died in their family. She found no such house where some beloved had not died. Gotami became weary and hopeless. She became sad and troubled. She sat down at the wayside and saw the flickering lights of the city. At last darkness of the night spread everywhere. She realised that the faces of men were like the lights that flickered and extinguished. She thought, “How selfish am I in my grief?” Death is common to all. But there is a path for immortality if one has surrendered all selfishness.

The Buddha's Wisdom

The Buddha said, “Our life is brief. It is mixed with pain. After birth, one has to approach the

Ans :

2015

- i. (c) had a strong desire to take a ride on the bus.
- ii. (b) 1, 3 and 4
- iii. (a) longing to ride the bus.
- iv. (d)
- v. (a) The wish developed in her head over a period of time.

5. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

Valli devoured everything with her eyes. But when she started to look outside, she found her view cut off by a canvas blind that covered the lower pan of her window. So she stood up on the seat and peered over the blind.

- i. The word 'devoured' as used in the passage shows that Valli _____ everything she saw.
(a) ate greedily (b) consumed
(c) obsessed (d) absorbed
- ii. Valli stood up on her seat because _____.
(a) she didn't get enough space on the seat.
(b) she could not see outside the window while seated.
(c) her legs were aching.
(d) she felt uncomfortable.
- iii. What was obstructing Valli's view? Why else was she facing the problem? Answer in about 40 words.
- iv. Which traits of Valli's personality get reflected in this extract?

Ans :

2014

- i. (d) absorbed
- ii. (b) she could not see outside the window while seated.
- iii. The canvas blind of the window that covered the lower part of the window was obstructing Valli's view. She was just an eight-year-old girl and her small height didn't allow her to enjoy the sights while sitting so, she stood up on the seat.
- iv. Valli was observant and noticed everything keenly. She was a naturally curious girl and quite smart for her age. She was aware of her surroundings, the neighbours, and the conversations taking place and absorbed everything like a sponge.

6. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

Her first journey -what careful, painstaking elaborate plans she had had to make for it! She had thriftily saved whatever stray coins came her way, resisting every temptation to buy peppermints, toys, balloons, and the like, and finally she had saved a total of sixty paise. How difficult it had been particularly that day at the village fair, but she had resolutely stifled a strong desire to ride the merry-go-round, even though she had the money.

- i. Valli saved the money for bus fare by resisting the temptations. So she did not _____.
(a) give up the temptations.
(b) give in to the temptations.
(c) give away the temptations.
(d) give off the temptations.
- ii. How was Valli able to save enough for the bus fare? Answer in about 40 words.
- iii. What did Valli have to do for her first bus ride to be successful?
(a) She had to oppress her desire to enjoy at the fair.
(b) She had to restrain herself from eating sweetmeats.
(c) She had to suppress her wish to spend the money on little frills.
(d) She had to oppress herself from going on the merry-go-round.
- iv. What is the contextual antonym of the word 'painstaking' in the passage above? Use it in a sentence of your own.

Ans :

2011

- i. (b) give in to the temptations.
- ii. By not buying peppermints, toys, or balloons, and resisting a joyride on the merry-go-round Valli was able to save enough for to and fro bus fare. Valli's ability to resist temptation tells us that she was a resolute girl who could resist temptation.
- iii. (c) She had to suppress her wish to spend the money on little frills.
- iv. 'fussy'. Mother fussed over the details of the ceremonies at the wedding.



SCAN QR CODE
JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL



89. Repeated - say again
90. Millennia - a period of thousand years
91. Incident - event
92. Appropriate - correct
93. Cope with - go hand in hand
94. Lately - late
95. Recently - just now
96. Unique - special
97. Personal - individual
98. Manifested - to clear
99. Frustration - confusion
100. Reminiscence - remembrance
101. Psychologist - who studies mind, etc.
102. Consolation - peace
103. Solace - peace
104. Wallow - to lie and roll in water or mud
105. Bereft - separated

5. MESSAGE

The chapter gives the message that life is full of sufferings, physical as well as mental; and sooner or later one is bound to become aware of them. It also brings home the idea that death is inevitable and one must submit to it. If one wants to rise above the life of frustration and desolation, one must shed all selfishness. The sermon also teaches us that it is futile to grieve over the departed ones. Grief makes one sick and our lamentations are never able to save the dead or bring them back. In order to be blessed, one must keep oneself free from sorrow.

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Activity

1. What is a sermon? Is it different from a lecture or a talk? Can this word also be used in a negative way or as a joke (as in “my mother’s sermon about getting my work done on time...”)?

Ans :

A sermon is a ‘spoken or written address on a religious or moral subject.’ It is a serious talk. It is different from a lecture or a talk. It is because a lecture or a talk can be on anything. A sermon has to be on religion or a moral subject.

This word can also be used in a negative way or as a joke. In that case it will mean a taunt, an irony or a sarcasm.

2. Find out the meanings of the words and phrases given in the box.

afflicted with	be composed	desolation
lamentation	procure	be subject to

Ans :

1. Afflicted with - affected with bodily or mental trouble.
2. Be composed - to be under mental control or at peace with self.
3. Desolation - in a ruined or neglected state.
4. Lamentation - expressing one’s sorrow or grieving.
5. Procure - to obtain, to get, to find etc.
6. Be subject to - to be under the effect of.

3. Have you heard of the Sermon on the Mount? Who delivered it? Who do you think delivered a sermon at Benares?

Ans :

I think the ‘Sermon on the Mount’ was delivered by Lord Christ. ‘A Sermon at Benaras’ was delivered by Gautama the Buddha. It was his first sermon after he got Enlightenment.

Thinking About the Text

1. When her son dies, Kisa Gotami goes from house to house. What does she ask for? Does she get it? Why not?

Or

After her son’s death, why does Kisa Gotami go from house to house?

Ans :

2012

When her son dies, Kisa Gotami goes from house to house asking for medicine to bring her son back to life. She did not get it because there is no medicine which can bring a dead man back to life.

2. Kisa Gotami again goes from house to house after she speaks with the Buddha. What does she ask for, the Second time around? Does she get it? Why not?

Ans :

2010

After she speaks with the Buddha, Kisa Gotami again goes from house to house asking for mustard-seeds but in vain because there is no house where no one has lost a child, a husband, parent or friend.

3. What does Kisa Gotami understand the second time that she failed to understand the first time? Was this what the Buddha wanted her to understand?

Helping Each Other to Get over Difficult Times

Man is a social animal duly created by His Almighty on this pious earth. During his/her stay, one has to experience both troubles and happiness since at every step there are tension, trouble, stress, difficulties, grief, sorrow, sadness and shock. One can never free himself from these behavioural feelings as these are to occur at any moment.

In the Chapter Gotami is deeply shocked with the death of her only son. She goes from door to door for medicine but to no relief. At the advice of a man, she seeks the Buddha's advice. He asks her to bring the mustard seeds from the house of a man where none has died. But she finds none. She turns back tired and despaired.

In the way she experiences the lights of the city both flickering and extinguishing. Ultimately wisdom enters her and she realises the fate of men. She understands that all are like the lights. Death is common to all. Thus through advice, talks, conversations, examples, sermons or with other kinds of sympathy, we can help other in getting over their times.

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. Why was Kisa Gotami sad?

- (a) Her only son had died.
- (b) Her all property was snatched.
- (c) She was beaten up.
- (d) None of these

Ans :

2021

- (a) Her only son had died.

2. Where did Buddha preach his first sermon?

- (a) Haridwar
- (b) Benares
- (c) Chennai
- (d) Patliputra

Ans :

2021

- (b) Benares

3. What is the world afflicted with?

- (a) Love
- (b) Diseases
- (c) Death and decay
- (d) None of these

Ans :

2020

- (c) Death and decay

4. What does the ripe fruit fear?

- (a) Someone will eat them
- (b) They will rot

- (c) Falling down

- (d) None of these

Ans :

2020

- (c) Falling down

5. Where did Buddha sit?

- (a) Peepal Tree
- (b) Fig Tree
- (c) Mango Tree
- (d) Deodar cedar

Ans :

2016

- (b) Fig Tree

6. According to Buddha, what is an inscrutable kind of suffering?

- (a) Loss of a loved one
- (b) Beating
- (c) Hatred
- (d) Verbal abuse

Ans :

2016

- (a) Loss of a loved one

7. Who is free from sorrow?

- (a) Who overcomes sorrow
- (b) Who does not see sorrow
- (c) Who remains happy
- (d) Who gives sorrow to others

Ans :

2015

- (a) Who overcomes sorrow

8. What did Kisa ask for to bring her son back to life?

- (a) Medicine
- (b) Money
- (c) Doctor
- (d) Prayers

Ans :

2015

- (a) Medicine

9. He got enlightenment after how many days?

- (a) 10
- (b) 15
- (c) 7
- (d) 1

Ans :

2014

- (c) 7

10. What does Kisa search for from house to house in the first place?

- (a) Mustard seed
- (b) A medicine to bring her son back to life
- (c) Pumpkin seeds
- (d) None of these

Ans :

2013

- (b) A medicine to bring her son back to life

11. Both young and adults, fools and wise fall into the power of _____.

- (a) life
- (b) death
- (c) food
- (d) all of these

I. A Guide to Coping With the Death of a Loved One

Martha is having difficulty in sleeping lately and no longer enjoys doing things with her friends. Martha lost her husband of 26 years to cancer a month ago.

Anya, age 17, doesn't feel like eating and spends the days in her room crying. Her grandmother recently died.

Both of these individuals are experiencing grief. **Grief is an emotion natural to all types of loss or significant change.**

Feelings of Grief

Although grief is unique and personal, a broad range of feelings and behaviours are commonly experienced after the death of a loved one.

- **Sadness** : This is the most common, and it is not necessarily manifested by crying.
- **Anger** : This is one of the most confusing feelings for a survivor. There may be frustration at not being able to prevent the death, and a sense of not being able to exist without the loved one.
- **Guilt and Self-reproach** : People may believe that they were not kind enough or caring enough to the person who died, or that the person should have seen the doctor sooner.
- **Anxiety** : An individual may fear that she won't be able to care for herself/himself.
- **Loneliness** : There are reminders throughout the day that a partner, family member or friend is gone. For example, meals are no longer prepared the same way, phone calls to share a special moment don't happen.
- **Fatigue** : There is an overall sense of feeling tired.
- **Disbelief** : This occurs particularly if it was a sudden death.

Helping Others who are Experiencing Grief

When a friend, loved one, or co-worker is experiencing grief - how can we help ? It helps to understand that grief is expressed through a variety of behaviours.

Reach out to others in their grief, but understand that some may not want to accept help and will not share their grief. Others will want to talk about their thoughts and feelings or reminisce.

Be patient and let the grieving person know that you care and are there to support him or her.

II. Good Grief - Amitai Etzioni

Soon after my wife died - her car slid off an icy road in 1985 - a school psychologist warned me that my children and I were not mourning in the right way. We felt angry; the proper first stage, he said, is denial.

In late August this year, my 38-year-old son, Michael, died suddenly in his sleep, leaving behind a 2-year-old son and a wife expecting their next child.

There is no set form for grief, and no 'right' way to express it. There seems to be an expectation that, after a great loss, we will progress systematically through the well-known stages of grief. It is wrong, we are told, to jump to anger - or to wallow too long in this stage before moving toward acceptance.

But I was, and am, angry. To make parents bury their children is wrong; to have both my wife and son taken from me, for ever and a day, is cruel beyond words.

A relative from Jerusalem, who is a psychiatrist, brought some solace by citing the maxim: 'We are not to ask why, but what.' The 'what' is that which survivors in grief are bound to do for one another. Following that advice, my family, close friends and I keep busy, calling each other and giving long answers to simple questions like, "How did your day go today ?" We try to avoid thinking about either the immediate past or the bereft future. We take turns playing with Max, Michael's two-year-old son. Friends spend nights with the young widow, and will be among those holding her hand when the baby is born.

Focusing on what we do for one another is the only consolation we can find.

Ans :

It is very pertinent to note that the teachings of the Buddha are ever-green. They will remain true and beneficial to all the coming generations. But there is a need to console the grieved family.

Writing

1. Write a page (about three paragraphs) on one of the following topics. You can think about the ideas in the text that are relevant to these topics, and add your own ideas and experiences to them.
 1. Teaching someone to understand a new or difficult idea.
 2. Helping each other to get over difficult times.
 3. Thinking about oneself as unique, or as one among billions of others.

Ans :

About these three topics, we can discuss topic number 2.

danger of death. All are subject to death. As ripe fruits are early in the danger of falling, so mortals when born are always in danger of death."

Further, Buddha said that "Neither a father nor a kinsman can save the life. We lament deeply but one by one, mortals are carried off like an ox that is led to the slaughter. The world is affected by suffering, death and decay. Therefore, it is not wise to grieve. We must know the terms of the world. Through weeping or grieving we cannot obtain the peace of mind but our body suffers. We become sick and pale even then the dead are not saved at any cost. We can seek peace by drawing out the arrow of lamentation, complaint and grief. One who has drawn out this arrow has become composed and will obtain peace of mind. Such a man will be free from sorrow and be blessed."

4. WORD MEANINGS

1. Sermon - moral teachings
2. Discuss - talk
3. Delivered - to give a speech
4. Centuries - a period of hundred years
5. Era - time period
6. Princess - daughter of a king
7. Befitted - magnificent
8. Royalty - luxurious
9. While out - go for wandering
10. Hunting - to kill animals, etc.
11. Chanced - happened
12. Funeral procession - a procession of death
13. Monk - holyman
14. Begging for alms - act of begging
15. Sights - scenes
16. Moved - melted
17. Shielded - protected
18. Suffering - troubles
19. Seek - find
20. Enlightenment - knowledge, wisdom
21. Concerning - relating to
22. Sorrows - troubles
23. Witnessed - saw
24. Wandered - roamed aimlessly
25. Fig - a kind of tree
26. Vowed to stay - promised to stay
27. Awakened - a state of knowledge, got up
28. Preached - sermonized
29. Holy - pious
30. Dipping - taking a bath
31. Preserved - protected
32. Printed - published
33. Version - translation
34. Rendered - done
35. Reflects - points out
36. Sacred - holy
37. Scriptures - religious books
38. Here to fore - from here onward
39. Inscrutable - something that can't be understood
40. Senses - conscience
41. At length - in the end
42. Thee - you
43. Repaired - went to
44. Mustard seed - seeds of mustard
45. Procure - bring safe and got
46. Added - said
47. Pitied - had mercy
48. Remind - to recollect
49. Deepest grief - melancholy
50. Beloved - lovely
51. Weary - tired
52. Hopeless - depressed
53. Wayside - path
54. Flickered - shone
55. Extinguished - blew out
56. Reigned - came
57. Considered - thought
58. Fate - fortune
59. Desolation - deep sorrow
60. Leads to - takes
61. Immortality - that never dies
62. Surrendered - dedicated, given up
63. Selfishness - self-interest
64. Mortals - bound to die
65. Troubled - feel sad
66. Combined with - mixed with
67. Means - way
68. Avoid - saved
69. Vessels - utensils
70. Potter - who prepares pot
71. Subject to - liable to
72. Overcome - control
73. Depart - separate
74. Kinsmen - relatives
75. Lamenting - feeling sad
76. Carried off - taken
77. Slaughter - butchered
78. Afflicted with - troubled with pain
79. Decay - ruin
80. Grieve - feel troubled
81. Obtain - get
82. Contrary - in opposition to
83. Lamentation - expression of sorrow
84. Arrow - a pointed stick used to shoot from an arrow
85. Draw out - draw
86. Complaint - to say something against
87. Composed - at peace
88. Blessed - lucky

Ans :

(b) death

2012

12. What did the flickering lights made her realise?

- (a) She is being selfish
- (b) Death is common to all
- (c) Men are mortals
- (d) All of these

Ans :

(d) All of these

2011

13. What was the condition imposed upon the source of the seeds?

- (a) To be borrowed from a man
- (b) To be borrowed from a woman
- (c) To be borrowed from a child
- (d) None of these

Ans :

(d) None of these

2011

14. What did he name the tree?

- (a) Bodhi tree
- (b) Buddha tree
- (c) Gautama tree
- (d) Siddhartha tree

Ans :

(a) Bodhi tree

2011

15. For how many years did he wander?

- (a) 7
- (b) 8
- (c) 9
- (d) 6

Ans :

(a) 7

2011

16. What was Gautama Buddha's early name?

- (a) Sidhha
- (b) Sadhu
- (c) Siddhartha
- (d) Sidhanth

Ans :

(c) Siddhartha

2010

17. What moved him to seek out enlightenment?

- (a) A sick man
- (b) An aged man
- (c) A monk begging
- (d) All of these

Ans :

(d) All of these

2010

18. Where did he vow to stay until his enlightenment came?

- (a) His palace
- (b) Under peepal tree
- (c) Under banyan tree
- (d) Under a tree

Ans :

(b) Under peepal tree

2010

19. Which seed did Buddha ask Kisa to bring?

- (a) Pumpkin seeds
- (b) Mustard seeds
- (c) Sunflower seeds
- (d) Sesame seeds

Ans :

(b) Mustard seeds

2010

20. How did Kisa feel at first on being unable to find such seeds?

- (a) weary
- (b) hopeless
- (c) Motivated
- (d) Both a and b

Ans :

(d) Both a and b

2009

21. What did Buddha tell her about life?

- (a) It is troubled
- (b) It is brief
- (c) Combined with pain
- (d) All of these

Ans :

(d) All of these

2009

22. What is the meaning of lamentation?

- (a) Expression of sorrow
- (b) Expression of gratefulness
- (c) Expression of joy
- (d) Expression of laughter

Ans :

(a) Expression of sorrow

2009

23. How old was Siddhartha when he renounced the princely life?

- (a) 22
- (b) 32
- (c) 35
- (d) 25

Ans :

(d) 25

2008, 2003

24. How can one save his loved ones from death?

- (a) By grief
- (b) By crying
- (c) By both
- (d) None of these

Ans :

(d) None of these

2007

25. The birth year of Gautama Buddha was

- (a) 643 BC
- (b) 563 BC
- (c) 483 BC
- (d) 463 BC

Ans :

(b) 563 BC

2006

26. Gautama Buddha died in the year

- (a) 483 BC
- (b) 583 BC
- (c) 453 BC
- (d) 643 BC

Ans :

(a) 483 BC

2006

Ans :

Kisa Gotami understood the second time that death is the ultimate truth. All creatures that are born must die one day. This is what Buddha wanted her understand.

4. Why do you think Kisa Gotami understood this only the second time ? In what way did the Buddha change her understanding?

Ans :

2010

Kisa Gotami understood the reality of death the second time because Gautama Buddha, by asking her to get a handful of mustard-seeds from a house where no near and dear had died, made her realise that death is inevitable. He did not preach because due to her excessive grief, she was not in a position to understand otherwise. Thus, the Buddha changed her understanding by making her see that every family had faced the loss of their loved one sometime or the other, and that death was actually common to all. When she had sat down at the wayside watching the lights of the city, as they flickered up and were extinguished again and saw at last the darkness of the night spread everywhere, she realised that just like the lights the fate of men was to flicker up with life and in the end be extinguished by death.

5. How do you usually understand the idea of selfishness? Do you agree with Kisa Gotami that she was being 'selfish in her grief'?

Ans :

I think the idea of selfishness is that we are just concerned mainly about ourselves, while ignoring other realities. A selfish person is one who only thinks about himself or herself, and to some extent Kisa Gotami was being selfish because we are humans and it is natural for us to die. We do not easily accept the death of our loved ones. Same has happened with Kisa Gotami. As it was her only child, she did not want him to die, finally went to Buddha to ask for help.

Thinking About Language

1. This text is written in an old fashioned style, for it reports an incident more than two millennia old. Look for those words and phrases in the text, and try to rephrase them in more current language, based on how you understand them.
1. give thee medicine for thy child
 2. pray tell me.
 3. Kisa repaired to the Buddha
 4. There was no house but someone had died in it.
 5. Kinsmen
 6. Mark !

Ans :

1. Give you medicine for your child.
2. Please tell me.
3. Kisa went to the Buddha.
4. There was no single house that had not lost a person.
5. Kith and Kin.
6. Note/notice.

2. You know that we can combine sentences using words like and, or, but, yet and then. But sometimes no such word seems appropriate. In such a case we can use a semicolon (;) or a dash (-) to combine two clauses.

She has no interest in music; I doubt she will become a singer like her mother.

The second clause gives here the speaker's opinion on the first clause.

Here is a sentence from the text that uses semicolons to combine clauses. Break up the sentence into three simple sentences. Can you then say which has a better rhythm when you read it, the single sentence using semicolons, or the three simple sentences ?

For there is not any means by which those who have been born can avoid dying; after reaching old age there is death; of such a nature are living beings.

Ans :

Three sentences can be as under :

1. For there is not any means by which those who have been born can avoid dying.
2. After reaching an old age there is death.
3. All living beings are endowed with such a nature.

The single sentence using semicolons has a better rhythm. This is because the three parts of the sentence are connected to each other in their meanings. The second clause gives further information on the first clause. The third clause is directly related to both the first and the second. Their meanings are better conveyed when they are joined by semicolons.

Speaking

1. The Buddha's sermon is over 2500 years old. Given below are two recent texts on the topic of grief. Read the texts, comparing them with each other and with the Buddha's sermon. Do you think the Buddha's ideas and way of teaching continue to hold meaning for us? or have we found better way to deal with grief? Discuss this in groups or in class.

Short Answer Type Questions

1. What message might the Buddha's story hold for those who are in positions of power and privilege?

Ans : 2024

The Buddha's story teaches those in positions of power and privilege the importance of humility, compassion, and selflessness. It emphasizes the transient nature of worldly wealth and status, urging individuals to seek inner peace and enlightenment rather than clinging to material possessions.

2. How did the Buddha respond to Kisa Gotami's request? What can be inferred about his method of teaching from the same?

Ans : 2023

When Kisa Gotami requested the Buddha to cure her son, he asked her to collect mustard seeds from a house that had not experienced death. He presented her with a task that required her to reflect and learn about the universal nature of suffering. Buddha's method of teaching can be understood as one where he engages his student in a journey of self-discovery.

3. What does the Buddha say about the world?

Ans : 2023, 2012

According to the Buddha, this world is full of sufferings, death and sorrows. And knowing the terms of this temporary world, no wise man should mourn for its loss. Mourning can only bring discord in life while acceptance is the key to peace.

4. How did Kisa Gotami realise that life and death is a normal process?

Ans : 2019, 2016

Kisa Gotami went from house to house but was unable to find any where nobody had died. She grew tired and became hopeless; she sat down at the wayside watching the lights of the city as they flickered up and were extinguished again. She realised that similar to the city lights the human lives also flicker up for some time and then are finally extinguished.

5. Why did Prince Siddhartha leave the palace and become a beggar?

Ans : 2017, 2011

Once Prince Siddhartha, while hunting, saw a sick man, then an aged man, then a funeral procession and finally a monk begging for alms. Looking at their suffering, he left the palace and moved to the path of attaining enlightenment.

6. Where and when did Siddhartha become the Buddha?

Ans : 2016

At the age of twenty five, Siddhartha confronted a sick man then an aged man then a funeral procession and finally a monk. These sights moved him so much that he left the palace and wandered for seven years to seek enlightenment. Finally he sat under a fig tree until enlightenment came. He renamed the tree 'The Bodhi Tree' and got the name Buddha.

Kisa compared human life to an inanimate object. What is it and why does she do so ?

Ans : 2016

Kisa compared human life with the lights of the city which flickered up and then extinguished again and the darkness of the night spreads everywhere. Similarly human life takes birth, flickers up and then extinguished and the darkness of sadness spreads in the life of the remains. She compared so because she was in great grief of the death of his son.

8. Why was Kisa Gotami sad? What did she do in her hour of grief?

Ans : 2015

Kisa Gotami was sad because her only son had died. In her hour of grief, she went from door to door asking for some medicine which would bring her son back to life but could not find it.

9. Why did the Buddha choose Benares to preach his first sermon?

Ans : 2015

The Buddha chose Benares to preach his first sermon because he regarded it the most holy place on the bank of the Ganges. The devotees take a holy dip in it. His sermon reflects wisdom about one kind of suffering beyond one's realization.

10. Why did the Buddha ask Kisa Gotami to bring a handful of mustard seeds?

Ans : 2015

The Buddha asked Kisa Gotami to bring a handful of mustard seeds from a house where no one had died ever, because he wanted her to realize the ultimate truth of life. Now she came to know that no one can escape death as death is common to all.

11. What did the Buddha do after he had attained enlightenment? Why?

Ans : 2014

After the Buddha had attained enlightenment, he began to teach and share his new understandings of truth of life - Death is a universal truth. The

basics of his first sermon were to show the path of immortality to mankind by surrendering 'all selfishness and grief'.

12. Kisa Gotami is being selfish in her grief. What is her selfishness ? Do you agree with her ?

Or

Do you agree that Kisa Gotami was being selfish in her grief? Give a reasoned answer.

Ans : 2012

Kisa Gotami is selfish in her grief. She goes from house to house for the medicine to save her child but there is no alternative. Yes, we agree with her that she had lost her senses when her only son had died.

13. What did Siddhartha Gautama see when he went out for hunting? What impression did it make on his mind?

Ans : 2012

When Siddhartha Gautama went out for hunting, he saw a sick man, then an aged man, then a funeral procession, and finally a monk begging for alms.

These sights moved him so much that he at once went out into the world to seek enlightenment about the sorrows that he had witnessed.

14. How does Buddha illustrate that death to mortals is inevitable ?

Ans : 2010

The Buddha said that the life of mortals in this world is troubled and brief and combined with pain. After reaching an old age there is death. As fruits ripen, they are in danger of falling. So mortals who are born are always in danger of death.

FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS

DOWNLOAD NODIA APP

15. Why did Prince Siddhartha leave the palace and become a beggar ?

Ans : 2009, 2007

While going out for hunting Siddhartha saw a sick man, an aged man and then a funeral procession. Then he saw a monk begging for alms. These sights mourned him very much. He realised that the world is full of sorrows. He thus turned a beggar.

16. How did Gautama Buddha begin life and where was he sent when he was twelve years old ?

Ans : 2008

Gautama Buddha began life as a prince named Siddhartha Gautama in northern India. When he was twelve years old, he was sent away for schooling in the Hindu sacred scriptures.

17. What sights moved Siddhartha to seek the path of enlightenment ?

Ans : 2008

Siddhartha as a prince was kept away from the sufferings of the world. But when he was about twenty-five year old, Siddhartha came across by chance a sick man, an aged man, a funeral procession and a monk begging for alms, which made him seek enlightenment concerning the sorrows of the world.

18. What did Siddhartha do after the enlightenment?

Ans : 2006

Siddhartha reached enlightenment after seven days. After that, he renamed the tree, under which he had achieved enlightenment, as the Bodhi Tree or the Tree of Wisdom, and began to teach and share his new understandings with other people. Thus, he became known as the Buddha, meaning the Awakened or the Enlightened.

19. Where did the Buddha preach his first sermon ? What does the sermon reflect ?

Ans : 2006

The Buddha preached his first sermon at the city of Benares, most holy of the dipping places on the river Ganges. That sermon had been preserved and it reflects the Buddha's wisdom about the kind of sufferings which cannot be understood.

20. Who, according to the Buddha are subject to death ?

Ans : 2001

According to Gautama Buddha, both young and adult, both those who are fools and those who are wise, all fall into the power of death and are all subject to death.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. Grief or sadness is an emotion natural to all types of loss or significant change. You have been asked to present an analysis of the approaches of Lencho and Kisa Gotami in dealing with their respective losses. Write this presentation draft including your insights, and comparing the approaches of both.

You may begin like this :

One acknowledges that Lencho had unwavering faith in God whereas Kisa Gotami in her grief, believed that her son however

Ans : 2024

One acknowledges that Lencho had unwavering faith in God, whereas Kisa Gotami in her grief believed that her son could be brought back to

life, however, she eventually learns a profound lesson on the universality of death. Lencho's faith in divine intervention led him to seek help directly from God, illustrating a deep-rooted belief in the supernatural's benevolence towards human affairs. He was so confident in this belief that he attributed the arrival of help solely to a divine source, overlooking the human agency involved. This faith guided his actions entirely, showing a single-minded reliance on a higher power for resolution.

Conversely, Kisa Gotami's initial denial of her son's death reflects a desperate hope for reversal, a common initial response to grief. Her journey, prompted by the Buddha's task to find a mustard seed from a household untouched by death, gradually unveils to her the universal nature of suffering and loss. This task, while seemingly simple, leads her to the realization that death is an inevitable part of life that affects all, teaching her acceptance and the importance of moving forward.

The contrast between Lencho's unwavering faith in God as a direct benefactor and Kisa Gotami's eventual understanding of death's universality underlines different dimensions of dealing with loss. Lencho's approach is rooted in externalizing hope towards a divine figure, maintaining a somewhat static stance towards his situation. In contrast, Kisa Gotami's journey represents an internal transformation, a move from denial towards acceptance, facilitated by a broader engagement with her community and the human condition itself.

Through these narratives, we observe that while faith and hope can offer comfort in times of loss, the path to acceptance and understanding often requires confronting the reality of our shared experiences of suffering and mortality. Lencho's story teaches us about the strength and resilience that faith in a higher power can provide, whereas Kisa Gotami's story offers a lesson in the healing that comes from acknowledging our shared human vulnerabilities and the cyclical nature of life and death. Both approaches, though different in their methods and outcomes, highlight the complex and multifaceted nature of human response to loss.

2. You have been chosen to address the student gathering from the nearby schools, to speak on "How to Deal with Loss — Personal or Material". Prepare the speech draft in not more than 120 words, with reference to the commonality of themes in John Benyman's 'The Ball Poem' and

'A Sermon at Benaras'.

You may begin this way .

Good Morning everyone. Today, I'd. like to discuss two pieces of literature that offer a powerful insight into how we can learn to deal with loss

You may end in this way :

To conclude, I'd like to say that

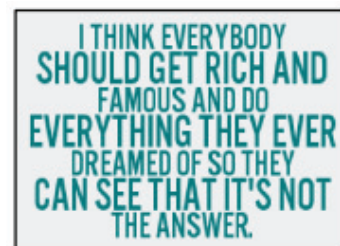
Thank you.

Ans :

2024

Good morning everyone, Today I would like to discuss two pieces of literature that offer a powerful insight into how we can learn to deal with loss. The loss of the ball in the poem leaves the small boy grief stricken as it is his first experience of a loss of a possession. Whereas the mother Kisa Gotami also experienced the same feeling when she lost her only child. The poet who has seen the boy grieving leaves him alone instead of consoling him as he wants him to learn how to take life in its stride and bear the losses bravely. While Buddha made Kisa Gotami learn that loss is inevitable and so should not give a set back to the person. She learns a lesson that death is common to all and no grieving or lamenting can bring back dead to life. To conclude I would like to say that loss of any type is irreparable. but grieving cannot provide respite. So, one should learn to face all the hurdles bravely.

3. Read the given quote by actor Jim Carrey.



Can you relate this to the Buddha's life before and after he attained enlightenment? Provide examples from the text to support your answer

Ans :

2021

Yes, this quote directly applies to Buddha's life. The quotation stresses that getting money and popularity should not be the only aim of a person. Prince Siddharth was born with a silver spoon who had not heard of money or name. He had been living a happy married life. But one day his heart moved on seeing an old and sick man. He realised that his power and position could not buy health and happiness. He renounced his worldly life in the search for real power and peace. After getting enlightenment he got to know the truths

CHAPTER 9

THE PROPOSAL

NODIA

1. INTRODUCTION

The chapter “The Proposal” is written by Anton Chekov, a famous Russian playwright. This is a highly humorous play which satirises marriages of convenience that are solemnized without any feeling of love or affection between the partners. The play, with three quarrelsome characters, is replete with comic situations that generate a lot of humour. In the play, Ivan Lomov, a long time wealthy neighbour of Stepan Chubukov, also wealthy, comes to seek the hand of Chubukov’s twenty-five-year-old daughter, Natalya. But as all three are quarrelsome people, they quarrel over petty issues in the play, and thus, the proposal is in danger of being forgotten amidst all this quarrelling. But economic good sense ensures that the proposal is made after all, although the quarrelling continues.

2. CHARACTERS

Lomov

Lomov is a wealthy young man who visits his neighbour to ask for his daughter’s hand in marriage. He has a dog whom he calls ‘Guess’ and loves his pet very much. He is very argumentative in nature.

Chubukov

Chubukov is Lomov’s neighbour. He has a daughter named Natalya, whom Lomov wishes to marry. He is a wealthy land owner.

Natalya

Natalya is Chubukov’s daughter. She is also argumentative and never steps back in any argument. She also has a pet named ‘Squeezer’ and is very possessive about it.

3. SUMMARY

Arrival of Lomov

Chubukov is sitting in his drawing-room. There enters Ivan Vassilevitch Lomov. He is very well-

dressed. So, Chubukov rises to greet him. He asks the reason of his being nicely dressed. Lomov takes his arm and requests to give a trouble. Chubukov thinks that he will ask for some money. But Lomov goes on having rounds of Chubukov. Chubukov asks him to be clear in his aim. He requests that he has come to ask the hand of his daughter Natalya Stepanovna in marriage. Chubukov becomes happy and embraces Lomov. He gives his blessings as well. Chubukov goes to call Natalya. Lomov is alone. He starts thinking about himself, his age and heart palpitations, etc.

Arrival of Natalya

Natalya arrives and both have a discussion. Lomov is excited and he tells that he has made up a mind to ask her to hear him out in brief. He tells that Lomov and the Chubukovs have remained the most friendly. His Oxen Meadows touch her Birchwoods. Immediately Natalya interferes that they have been the owners of the Oxen Meadows. Lomov points out that they have been his and are in between the Birchwoods and the Burnt Marsh.

Debate over Oxen Meadows

Ivan tells that she is mistaken over it. She can see from the documents that Oxen Meadows remained the subject of dispute once but everybody knows that these belong to Lomov. She must know that his aunt’s grandmother gave the free use of these meadows to the peasants who belonged to her (Natalya’s) father’s grandfather on the condition that they were to prepare bricks for his aunt. Those peasants went on using it for the last forty years and became habitual to call them their own. But Natalya calls it a silly idea. Lomov tells that he can show the documents.

Natalya’s View Point

Natalya tells that they have been using the land for nearly three hundred years. She cannot believe his story. These meadows are worth perhaps 300 roubles and she will not tolerate this unfairness. She tells that she cannot understand about aunts, grandfathers and grandmothers but the meadows belong to Chubukovs. She will not give anything

8. How did Siddhartha Gautama become enlightened? Where did he deliver his first sermon ?

Or

How did Siddhartha Gautama become Buddha?

Ans :

2012

After Siddhartha Gautama was confronted with the sorrows and sufferings of the world, he wandered for seven years. Finally he sat down under a fig tree, where he vowed to stay until enlightenment came to him. At this place, he reached enlightenment after seven days. Immediately, he renamed the tree, under which he had achieved his goal, as the Bodhi Tree, which means the Tree of Wisdom. He then began to teach and share his new understandings with the people. At that point, he became known as the Buddha, which means the Awakened or the Enlightened.

The Buddha preached his first sermon at the city of Benares, a holy place on the banks of River Ganges. That sermon has been preserved and it reflects the Buddha's wisdom about the kind of sufferings which cannot be understood.

9. Sketch Gautama Buddha as the enlightened personality.

Ans :

2010

Gautama Buddha (563 B.C.-483 B.C.) was born in northern India. He was known as a prince named Siddhartha Gautama. When he was about twenty five years old, the Prince happened to while out for hunting. In the way he saw a sickman, and aged man and then a funeral procession. He was deeply touched on seeing a monk begging for alms. All these sights moved him very deeply. Till that day he was always shielded from seeing the worldly sufferings. Now he was a changed personality. He left his house and wandered for seven years. Ultimately he sat under a fig tree. Enlightenment came after seven days under the fig tree. He named the tree the Bo-Tree. He started his teaching and delivered his first sermon at the city of Benares.

10. Kisa Gotami lost her only son, so grief overwhelmed her. How did she learn that death is as normal in life as birth is?

Ans :

2009

Kisa Gotami understood that death is common to all and that she was being selfish in her grief. She understood this only the second time because it was then that she found that there was not a single house where some beloved had not died. The first time around, she was only thinking about her grief and was, therefore, asking for a medicine that would cure her son, when she met the Buddha, he asked her to get a handful of mustard seeds

from a house where no one had died. He did this purposely to make her realize that there was not a single house where no beloved had died and that death is natural. When she went to all the houses the second time, she felt dejected that she could not gather the mustard seeds. Then, when she sat and thought about it, she realized that the fate of men is such that they live and die. Death is common to all. This was what the Buddha had intended her to understand.

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

Poor Kisa Gotami now went from house to house, and the people pitied her and said, "Here is mustard-seed; take it!" But when she asked, "Did a son or daughter, a father or mother, die in your family?" they answered her, 'Alas! the living are few, but the dead are many. Do not remind us of our deepest grief'. And there was no house but some beloved one had died in it.

- i. Kisa Gotami's joy was short-lived because

-----.

- (a) she was not assured any help by her neighbours
- (b) no physician could revive her son
- (c) she could not get mustard seed from each house
- (d) she realised that death could not be averted

- ii. In sending Kisa Gotami from house to house, what was Buddha trying to teach her. Answer in about 40 words.

- iii. Read the following interpretations (a)-(c) of the word 'poor' and identify which one correctly corresponds to its contextual meaning.

- (a) in need or want of money
- (b) weak or feeble
- (c) unfortunate or miserable

- iv. Is it correct to say that had Buddha been alive today, he could have become either a counsellor or a psychologist? Why?

Ans :

2020

- i. (d) she realised that death could not be averted
- ii. Buddha asked Kisa to collect mustard seed from those houses where death had not knocked. His idea was based on the acceptance of two truths: the continuity of life

and the inevitability of death, that humans are mortal and death is the only truth, and cultivating detachment from loved ones and the importance of silence for attaining inner peace.

- iii. (c) unfortunate or miserable
- iv. Yes, he could have been either a counsellor or a psychologist because both provide behavioural therapy to a disturbed person.

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

At twelve, he was sent away for schooling in the Hindu sacred scriptures and years later he returned home to marry a princess. They had a son and lived for ten years as befitted royalty.

At about the age of twenty-five, the prince here to fore shielded from the sufferings of the world, while going out on hunting, chanced upon a sick man, then an aged man, then a funeral procession, and finally a monk begging for alms. These sights so moved him that he at once became a beggar and went out into the world to seek enlightenment concerning the sorrows he had witnessed.

- i. What was the unintended effect of the sights Buddha saw?
 - (a) He felt dejected and sorrowful
 - (b) He renounced royalty
 - (c) He decided to become an ascetic
 - (d) He decided to consult a pandit
- ii. Read the following descriptions (a)-(c) and identify which one correctly corresponds to the extract.
 - (a) A debate is a formal discussion on a particular topic, usually with two or more people presenting different viewpoints and arguments.
 - (b) A soliloquy is a speech given by a character alone on stage, which reveals their innermost thoughts and feelings to the audience.
 - (c) A narrative a story or account of events, experiences, or the like, whether true or fictitious.
- iii. What did the sights Gautama witnessed at the age of twenty-five years drive him to? Answer in about 40 words.
- iv. Why was Prince Siddhartha sent away at the age of twelve?

Ans :

2018

- i. (a) He felt dejected and sorrowful
- ii. (c) A narrative a story or account of events, experiences, or the like, whether true or fictitious.
- iii. The sights Gautama witnessed at the age of twenty-five years drove him to become a beggar. He went out into the world to seek enlightenment concerning the sorrows he had witnessed. He wandered for seven years and finally sat down under a peepal tree, where he vowed to stay until enlightenment came.
- iv. Prince Siddhartha was sent away at the age of twelve for schooling in sacred Hindu scriptures.

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

A. Mark! While relatives are looking on and lamenting deeply, one by one mortals are carried off, like an ox that is led to the slaughter. So the world is afflicted with death and decay, therefore the wise do not grieve, knowing the terms of the world.

- i. Why don't the wise grieve?
- ii. According to the extract, what characteristic can be attached to people who do not grieve?
- iii. Which animal are men compared to?
 - (a) All animals
 - (b) Someone named Mark
 - (c) All wise people
 - (d) An ox
- iv. Which word would correctly substitute 'hence', in the given sentence from the extract?
It's not dark, hence you can see everything properly.

Ans :

2014

- i. The wise don't grieve because they understand that death is inevitable. They understand that the all living beings are afflicted with death and deary.
- ii. According to the extract, those who do not grieve are wise.
- iii. (d) An ox
- iv. therefore'

4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

The Buddha said, "The life of mortals in this world is troubled and brief and combined with pain. For there is not any means by which those that have been born can avoid dying; after reaching old age there is death; of such a nature are living beings. As ripe fruits are early in danger of falling, so mortals when born are always in danger of death."

- i. Where did Buddha say the given lines in the above extract? What does he highlight in this extract?
- ii. Fill in the blank appropriately.
Human life has been compared to _____.
(a) ripe fruits (b) hatred
(c) death (d) belief
- iii. What do you understand by the term 'Buddha'?
- iv. What did Buddha say about death and suffering?

Ans :

2013

- i. The Buddha said the given lines in her sermon at Benares. In the extract, he highlights that no one in this world can escape death.
- ii. (a) ripe fruits
- iii. Buddha means the awakened or the enlightened.
- iv. Buddha said about death and suffering that they are part and parcel of life. None can avoid this truth. We have to meet our destined end one day. Whoever has come to the world, will die one day.

5. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

At about the age of twenty-five, the Prince, therefore shielded from the sufferings of the world, while out hunting chanced upon a sick man, then an aged man, then a funeral procession, and finally a monk begging for alms. These sights so moved him that he at once went out into the world to seek enlightenment concerning the sorrows he had witnessed.

- i. Which statement is not true according to the given passage?
(a) The prince was never exposed to death or sorrow.
(b) Since childhood the prince served the poor and sick.
(c) The prince once witnessed suffering people one after the other.

(d) The sufferings and sorrows of others moved the prince.

- ii. Which of the following sentences expresses the antonym of the word 'shielded'?
(a) The pitch was immediately covered and protected from rain.
(b) The police safeguarded the public property from getting harmed by the protesting crowds.
(c) The mounds of harvested crops lay exposed to rain and infestation.
(d) The abandoned strays have been sheltered in an animal home.
- iii. What do a sick man, an old man, a monk begging for alms and a death symbolised for Gautama Buddha? Answer in about 40 words.
- iv. What would be the antonym of 'enlightenment' as used in the passage? Also use it in a sentence of your own.

Ans :

2012

- i. (b) Since childhood the prince served the poor and sick.
- ii. (c) The mounds of harvested crops lay exposed to rain and infestation.
- iii. They all symbolised various forms of suffering and sorrow. The incidents revealed a great truth- life is short. Beauty, riches, comforts, and youth all are transitory. One should cultivate detachment and free oneself from bondage.
- iv. 'ignorance'
The ignorance of the young generation about the history of the country is appalling to say the least.



of life and he decided to help people to come out of the darkness of ignorance. He explained this truth to a grieved mother by asking her to bring a handful of mustard seeds from a house where no one had died. Buddha's wisdom helped the mother to reflect upon life and accept her son's untimely death.

4. Sermon at Benares could just as well be considered another glimpse of India. If it were part of the story 'Glimpses of India', what ideas, values and/or experiences would it highlight? How would you present this historical part of India?

Ans :

2021

If it were part of the story 'Glimpses of India' the spiritual teachings of Buddha can be included to give mental clarity to the people. The experience of Kisa Gotami can be added to impart a lesson to the grieving people. Benares or Varanasi is one of the seven sacred cities of Hinduism due to the presence of the river Ganges there. Besides Ganga, Bodhgaya and Bodhi trees in Sarnath can be highlighted. Buddha delivered his first sermon there.

The fact that Varanasi or Benares is popular for its traditional silk sarees known as Benarasi saree worldwide is worth highlighting in the history of Benares. Varanasi is also called the city of Lord Shiva. Rare crystal and stone shiva lingas are available here. At last, Gulabi Minakari of Benares can't be left behind in the lessons' highlights.

5. What lesson did Kisa Gotami learn the second time that she had failed to learn the first time?

Or

Life is full of trials and tribulations. Kisa Gotami also passes through a period of grief in her life. How does she behave in those circumstances?

Or

Life is full of trials and tribulations. Kisa Gotami also passes through a period of grief in her life. How does she behave in those circumstances? what lesson does a reader learn from the story of her life? Give any two points how you would like to act in the midst of adverse circumstances

Ans :

2020, 2013

After the death of Kisa Gotami's only child, she became very sad. She carried her dead child to her neighbours in order to get medicine to bring him to life. Her neighbours thought that she had gone insane as she was unable to accept the fact that . It was then that someone suggested her to meet Gautama Buddha. When she met Gautama Buddha he gave her an exercise to do. She was

asked to collect mustard seeds from a house where no one has ever died. She went from one house to another but was unable to find a single house where no one has died. This way she realised that death is a part of life and anyone who is born is bound to die one day. Thus, Buddha changed her understanding of death by this exercise.

'The life of mortals in this world is troubled and brief and combined with pain....' With this statement of the Buddha, find out the moral value that Kisa Gotami learnt after the death of her child.

Ans :

2016

According to Buddha, the life of mortals in this world is troubled and brief and combined with pain. He told Kisa Gotami about this ultimate truth of life.

After the death of her son, she could not find any house where no one had died ever. Now, she came to realize that death is common to all. We cannot console ourselves by weeping and grieving. She also learnt that no one can escape death. As all earthen vessels end in being broken, so is the life of mortals. So, when born, mortals are always in danger of death and agony.

Kisa Gotami learnt that he who does not lament, complain and grieve, would be free from sorrow and will be blessed.

7. The Buddha said, 'The world is afflicted with death and decay, therefore the wise do not grieve, knowing the terms of the world.' Do you think the statement is appropriate even for today's life? Write your views in the context of the above statement.

Ans :

2014

The world is afflicted with death and decay; therefore the wise do not grieve, knowing the terms of the world. This statement of the Buddha is appropriate and relevant even for today's life.

In the context of the above statement, death and decay is inevitable on this earth. Men are led to death as an ox is led to the slaughter. We cannot console ourselves by weeping and grieving, rather it will make us sick and pale. So, the wise never weep on death and never grieve on sorrows as they know that these are the realities and truth of our lives.

I think that the Buddha's statement teaches the humans today that no one can escape from death. So, we should not grieve on death.

of her. Lomov tells that he is acting on principle. If she likes, he can present them. Natalya tells that she can make a present of them herself. She has thought them a good neighbour and a fine friend. But he has been behaving as if they were gipsies. Lomov tells that he is not a land grabber. He will never allow anyone to blame like this but Oxen Meadows are his. Thus, there starts a heating debate between the two. There is much noise.

Arrival of Chubukov

Hearing their noise, Chubukov enters and asks why they have been shouting. Immediately Natalya asks her father to tell Lomov that the Oxen Meadows belong to them. Lomov requests him to be a reasonable man. These meadows were given by his aunt's grandmother for the temporary and free use of his (Chubukov's) grandfather's peasants. They have been using them for the last forty years and became accustomed to call them their own. Chubukov did not agree but he pointed out that the meadows were in dispute.

Lomov told that he could prove that these were his. Calling him his dear one, Chubukov told that he could even give up the meadows to the peasants than to him (Lomov). Lomov pointed out that he (Chubukov) had no right to give away somebody else's property. Chubukov requested him to speak politely and calmly. These words enraged Lomov and told him that it was not fair to call his land theirs (Chubukov's). He called him a grabber. Natalya told that these Oxen Meadows won't be given up.

Threatening By Lomov

Lomov threatened that he would go to the court and show them the reality. Chubukov became angry and called Lomov pettifogger. He even called them drunkard and so on. Lomov too blamed the family of Chubukov for various reasons. Lomov goes to the door and Chubukov warns him never to set foot in his house again. Natalya calls Lomov a rascal and monster, etc. Chubukov called him a blind hen who had come to make a proposal. Immediately Natalya intervened and asked what proposal. Chubukov told that he had come to propose to her.

Wailing of Natalya

Hearing these words, Natalya falls into an easy chair and wails. She calls to bring Lomov back very immediately since she is dying. She starts wailing. Chubukov runs to bring Lomov back. There enters Lomov. Seeing him coming back, Chubukov tells Natalya that she will talk to him herself. Then Chubukov leaves the house.

Talk of Lomov and Natalya

Lomov tells that his heart is palpitating and so on. Natalya feels sorry and tells that the Oxen Meadows have been the property of Lomov. She requests him to sit down and talk something else. Then Lomov tells that his dog Guess has gone lame. His leg must have been bitten by some other dog. He purchased it for 125 roubles from Mironov. Natalya tells that her father purchased Squeezer for 85 roubles. Lomov tells that her Squeezer is better than Guess but he is overshot i.e., it is a bad hunter. Even its lower jaw is shorter than the upper. Both discuss more facts about these dogs. Natalya revealed that Squeezer is a hundred times better than the silly Guess. Immediately Lomov told not to discuss such facts as his heart is palpitating.

There enters Chubukov and asks what has been the matter. Natalya asks her father which has been the better one : Squeezer or Guess.

Chubukov's Pleading

Chubukov told that it was no use arguing and blaming. In between Lomov tells that his foot has gone to sleep. Natalya too points out that her heart is under trouble. So many other talks go on but Lomov falls into an arm chair. A doctor is called for. Natalya asks her father what has gone wrong with Lomov. She too falls into an armchair and calls for a doctor. Chubukov is deeply troubled. Natalya wails and tells that Lomov's dead. Suddenly Lomov moves and drinks some water. Chubukov tells them to get married very soon. He puts Lomov's hand into his daughter's. She is smiling. He gives them his blessing. He asks them to kiss each other. They kiss each other. Natalya says that she is happy. Chubukov tells that he is free from a heavy weight on his shoulders. Chubukov advises them to start their family. He blesses them.

4. WORD MEANINGS

1. Proposal - suggestion, an idea to think about and decide
2. Suspicious - doubtful
3. Gloves - a covering for hands
4. Extremely - very much
5. Squeezes - twists
6. Treasure - very lovely like wealth
7. Get along - move further
8. Honoured - respectful
9. Precious - valuable
10. Privilege - special right
11. Borrow - to get on loan
12. Awfully - very much
13. Deserve - expect

14. Assistance- help
15. Interrupting - disturbing
16. Embraces - shows affection
17. Continual - continuous
18. Idiotic - like an idiot
19. Absolutely - completely
20. Consent - approval
21. Excellent - very fine
22. Palpitations - movement of heart
23. Trembling - shivering
24. Merchant - businessman
25. Apron - dress
26. Splendid - pleasant
27. Stacked - pile up of the straw
28. Aside - on one side
29. Birchwoods - a kind of smooth skinned long trees
30. Meadows - grassy land for grazing
31. Documents - deeds
32. Dispute - quarrel
33. Perpetuity - continuity
34. Peasants - farmers
35. Reckoned - consider
36. Simply - only
37. Dessiatins - currency of Russia
38. Implore - request
39. Principle - rule
40. Threshing machine - a machine for threshing straw
41. Impudent - wicked
42. Mowers - those who cut the grass
43. Hoarse - very sharply
44. Restrain - resist control
45. Excruciating - painful
46. Accustomed to - habitual to
47. Yelling - crying etc.
48. Beloved - lovely
49. Agitating - opposing
50. Grabber - usurper
51. Pettifogger - a contemptible solicitor
52. Embezzlement - fraudulently taking money
53. Lunacy - foolishness
54. Hump - a large lump on the back of an animal
55. Guzzling - like a greedy to consume something
56. Gambler - one who gambles
57. Backbiters - one who back-bites
58. Malicious - wicked
59. Intriguer - attackers
60. Numb - wet
61. Staggers - hesitatingly
62. Rascal - wicked
63. Villain - a wicked person
64. Scarecrow - something to frighten away in the fields
65. Confounded - confusing

66. Stuffed - filled
67. Sausage - minced meat
68. Wizen-faced - wicked
69. Frump - an old fashioned shabby woman Curse - abuse
70. Twitching - twisting
71. Pedigree - ancient descent
72. Overshot - shot beyond the mark
73. Assure - to give belief
74. Thoroughbred - breed of best blood
75. Handsome - much
76. Contradiction - opposition
77. Pretend - excuse
78. Silly - useless
79. Acknowledge - accept
80. Worrying - bothering
81. Blameless - without blame
82. Teasing - troubling
83. Partridge - a kind of animal
84. Screams - cries
85. Damned - unwelcome
86. Champagne - a kind of wine

5. MESSAGE

The chapter "The Proposal" indirectly presents the author's reflection on how not to commence one's married life. Marriage is a solemn bond between two persons which must be based on mutual respect and love. Thus, we should not spoil the sacred relationship of marriage by quarrelling and by being mean and selfish. Marriage is pious and there must be a perfect accord between the partners who should be free from all prejudice and selfishness. Short-temper, rage, intolerance, vain pride and unnecessary arguments ruin relationships. So, these should be controlled and kept under check.

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Activity

1. The word 'proposal' has several meanings. Can you guess what sort of proposal the play is about?
 - (i) a suggestion, plan or scheme for doing something
 - (ii) an offer for a possible plan or action
 - (iii) the act of asking someone's hand in marriage
 - (iii) the act of asking someone's hand in marriage

2. A Russian Wedding

Do you know anything about a Russian marriage ceremony? Read this article about a Russian wedding.

Preparations for a Russian Wedding: A Russian wedding is very simple. The planning only includes arranging for rings, brides' dress, cars, and a reception. Earlier, the bride's family paid for the reception, but now-a-days brides' and grooms' families usually share expenses. A Russian wedding lasts for two days; some weddings last as long as a week, and the occasion becomes something to remember for years. The necessary part of the wedding ceremony is a wedding procession of several cars. The best friends of the groom/bride meet before the wedding a few times, make posters, write speeches and organise contests. When the groom arrives to fetch the bride for the registration, he has to fight to get her! Russians usually live in apartments in tall buildings, and the groom has to climb several stairs to reach his bride. But at each landing he must answer a question to be allowed to go up. The bride's friends ask difficult questions (sometimes about the bride, sometimes just difficult riddles), and the groom must answer with the help of his friends. For example, he may be shown a few photos of baby girls and he must say which one his bride is. If he guesses wrong, he must pay cash to move ahead. After the marriage registration, the newly-married couple leaves the guests for a tour of the city sights. After two or three hours of the city tour the couple arrives at the reception. The couple sits at a specially arranged table with their family, friends and invited guests. The reception starts with toasts to the couple. A wedding toast is a custom where a close friend or relative of the groom or the bride says a few words to wish the couple, then everyone raises their glass of wine, and drink it up at the same moment. The groom is then asked to kiss the bride. After a few toasts, people start eating and drinking, and generally have fun. After some time, the bride gets 'stolen'! She disappears, and when the groom starts looking for her, he is asked to pay a fee. Usually it is his friends who 'steal' the bride. Then there are the bride's friends — they steal the bride's shoe. The groom must pay money for the shoe too. The guests enjoy watching these tussles, and continue partying.

Do you think Indian and Russian weddings have any customs in common? With the help of a partner, fill in the table below.

Customs similar to Indian ones	Customs different from Indian ones

Ans :

Indian and Russian wedding have many customs in common. The information showing it is given below:

	Customs similar to Indian ones	Customs different from Indian ones
1.	Wedding procession	Making posters, writing speeches, organising contests
2.	Groom coming to bride's house to fetch her	Fight involving this
3.	Honeymoon	Climbing stairs and answering questions etc.
4.	Reception	City tour
5.	Stealing of the shoe	Ceremonial toasting
6.	Grooms paying	Kissing the bride
7.		Stealing of the bride

Thinking About the Play

1. What does Chubukov at first suspect that Lomov has come for? Is he sincere when he later says "and I've always loved you, my angel, as if you were my own son"? Find reason for your answer from the play.

Ans :

Chubukov at first suspects that Lomov has come to borrow money. Chubukov is not sincere in saying this. After some minutes, Chubukov starts fighting with Lomov over petty matters. In fact, he sides with his daughter in fighting with Lomov. He even abuses Lomov calling him bad names. This shows his insincerity in saying this flattering sentence.

2. Chubukov says of Natalya : "...as if she won't consent! She is in love; egad, she is like a lovesick cat.." Would you agree? Find reason for your answer.

4. "And it's impossible for me not to marry". Why does he say so?
 (a) He's thirty five already
 (b) He suffer from palpitations
 (c) He has troubled sleep
 (d) All of these
Ans : 2016
 (d) All of these
5. Where do Lomov and Natalya get on the wrong foot?
 (a) While talking about the weather
 (b) While talking about their land
 (c) While talking about their family relations
 (d) While the proposal
Ans : 2016, 2005
 (b) While talking about their land
6. What is Lomov's side of justification about the land?
 (a) Their land extended till Burnt Marsh
 (b) His grandmother always talked about it
 (c) His grandmother gave it to her great grandfather's peasants
 (d) None of these
Ans : 2015
 (c) His grandmother gave it to her great grandfather's peasants
7. Why did Chubukov think it was a curse to be a father of a grown up daughter?
 (a) He had to go to call the man they had just shun out
 (b) He had to go to call the man who insulted them
 (c) He had to go call tthe man who shouted at them
 (d) All of these
Ans : 2014
 (d) All of these
8. Who is the writer of the play "The Proposal"?
 (a) Robert Frost (b) Anton Chekov
 (c) Carolyn Wells (d) Robin Klein
Ans : 2014
 (b) Anton Chekov
9. When does Natalya accept the proposal?
 (a) When Lomov went unconscious
 (b) When they finished arguing
 (c) When he proposed her
 (d) When Lomov came back in
Ans : 2013
 (a) When Lomov went unconscious
10. What had Natalya been doing when Lomov called for her?
 (a) Cleaning the house (b) Washing clothes
 (c) Shelling peas (d) Cooking food
Ans : 2013
 (c) Shelling peas
11. What is the name of Lomov's dog?
 (a) Guess (b) Guard
 (c) Squeezer (d) Sweater
Ans : 2012
 (a) Guess
12. According to Lomov, what amount would be good enough for buying squeezer?
 (a) 60 Roubles (b) 35 Roubles
 (c) 25 Roubles (d) 40 Roubles
Ans : 2012
 (c) 25 Roubles
13. Lomov inherited Oxen Meadows from
 (a) uncle and aunt (b) parents
 (c) sisters (d) brothers
Ans : 2012
 (a) uncle and aunt
14. According to Chubukov, Lomov's younger aunt eloped with
 (a) a singer (b) an architect
 (c) a doctor (d) a carpenter
Ans : 2009
 (b) an architect
15. According to Natalya, they had lent Lomov their
 (a) hunting dog (b) lands
 (c) peasants (d) threshing machine
Ans : 2008
 (d) threshing machine
16. Natalya and Lomov first argued over
 (a) Birchwood (b) Burnt Marsh
 (c) Dog (d) Oxen Meadows
Ans : 2007
 (d) Oxen Meadows
17. The name of Natalya's dog is
 (a) Mrironov (b) Squeezer
 (c) Ivan (d) Guess

Ans :

Words	Pronunciation	Stressing the Syllables
Palpitations	पल-पि-टे-शन्स	pal-pi-ta-tions
Interfere	इन-टर-फिअर	in'-ter-fere
Implore	इम्-प्लोर	im'-plore
Thoroughbred	थॅर-ब्रेड	thorough'-bred
Pedigree	पे-डि-ग्री	Pe'-di-gree
Principle	प्रिन्सि-पल	princi'-ple
Evidence	एँ-विडेन्स	evi'-dence
Misfortune	मिस-फॉर-चून	mis-for'-tune
Malicious	मा-लि-शस	ma'-li-cious
Accustomed	ऐक्-कस्-टम्ड	accus'tomed
Embezzlement	एम-वेज-जलमेन्ट	embezz'lement
Architect	आर्क-इ-टेक्ट	arch'-i-tect
Neighbours	ने-बरस	nei'-bours
Behaviour	बिहे-वियर	behav'-iour
Documents	डॉक्-यू-मेन्टस	doc'-u-ments
Temporary	टेम्परेरि	temp'-rary

3. Look up the following phrases in a dictionary to find out their meaning and then use each in a sentence of your own.

- you may take it that
- He seems to be coming round
- My foot's gone to sleep

Ans :

- You may take it that I am lying, but in fact it will help you in the long run.
- He seems to be coming round after the trauma of his father's death.
- After the three hour long yoga session, my foot's gone to sleep.

Thinking About Language - II

1. Reported speech

A sentence in reported speech consists of two parts : a reporting clause, which contains the reporting verb, and the reported clause. Look at the following sentences :

- "I went to visit my grandma last week," said Mamta.
- Mamta said that she had gone to visit her grandma the previous week.

In sentence (a), we have Mamta's exact words. This is an example of direct speech. In sentence (b), someone is reporting what Mamta said. This is called indirect speech or reported speech. A

sentence in reported speech is made up of two parts - a reporting clause and a reported clause.

In sentence (b), Mamta said is the reporting clause containing the reporting verb said. The other clause - that she had gone to visit her grandma last week - is the reported clause.

Notice that in sentence (b) we put the reporting clause first. This is done to show that we are not speaking directly, but reporting someone else's words. The tense of the verb also changes; past tense (went) become past perfect (had gone).

Here are some pairs of sentences in direct and reported speech. Read them carefully, and do the task that follows :

- Lomov : Honoured Stepan Stepanovitch, do you think I may count on her consent? (Direct Speech)
 - Lomov asked Stepan Stepanovitch respectfully if he thought he might count on her consent. (Reported Speech)
- Lomov : I'm getting a noise in my ears from excitement. (Direct Speech)
 - Lomov said that he was getting a noise in his ears from excitement. (Reported Speech)
- Natalya : Why haven't you been here for such a long time? (Direct Speech)
 - Natalya Stepanovna asked why he hadn't been there for such a long time. (Reported Speech)
- Chubukov : What's the matter? (Direct Speech)
 - Chubukov asked him what the matter was. (Reported Speech)
- Natalya : My mowers will be there this very day! (Direct Speech)
 - Natalya Stepanovna declared that her mowers would be there that very day. (Reported Speech)

You must have noticed that when we report someone's exact words, we have to make some changes in the sentence structure. In the following sentences fill in the blanks to list the changes that have occurred in the above pairs of sentences, One has been done for you.

- To report a question, we use the reporting verb **asked** (as in Sentence Set 1).
- To report a declaration, we use the reporting verb _____.
- The adverb of place here changes to _____.
- When the verb in direct speech is in the present tense, the verb in reported speech is in the _____ tense (as in Sentence Set 3).

5. If the verb in direct speech is in the present continuous tense, the verb in reported speech changes to _____ tense. For example, _____ changes to was getting.
6. When the sentence in direct speech contains a word denoting respect, we add the adverb _____ the reporting clause (as in Sentence Set 1).
7. The pronouns I, me, our and mine, which are used in the first person in direct speech, change to third person pronouns such as _____, _____, _____, or _____ in reported speech.

Ans :

2. declared
3. there
4. Past
5. past continuous, getting
6. respectfully
7. he, him, their, his

Thinking about Language - III

1. Here is an excerpt from an article from the Times of India dated 27 August 2006. Rewrite it, changing the sentences in direct speech into reported speech. Leave the other sentences unchanged.

“Why do you want to know my age? If people know I am so old, I won’t get work!” laughs 90-year-old A K Hangal, one of Hindi cinema’s most famous character actors. For his age, he is rather energetic. “What’s the secret?” we ask. “My intake of everything is in small quantities. And I walk a lot,” he replies. “I joined the industry when people retire. I was in my 40s. So I don’t miss being called a star. I am still respected and given work” when actors of my age are living in poverty and without work. I don’t have any complaints,” he says, adding, “but yes, I have always been underpaid.” Recipient of the Padma Bhushan, Hangal never hankered after money or materialistic gains. “No doubt I am content today, but money is important. I was a fool not to understand the value of money earlier,” he regrets.

Ans :

90 year old A K Hangal, one of Hindi cinema’s most famous character actors laughs asking why did he want to know his age. He added that if people knew that he was so old he won’t get work. For his age, he is rather energetic. When we asked what was the secret he replied that his intake of everything was in small quantities

and he walked a lot. He further told that he had joined the industry when people retired. He was in his 40s so he didn’t miss being called a star. He was still respected and given work when actors of his age were living in poverty and without work. He didn’t have any complaints. He adds that he had always been underpaid. Recipient of the Padma Bhushan, Hangal never hankered after money or materialistic gains. He regrets telling us that no doubt he was contented that day but money was important and that he was a fool not to understand the value of money earlier.

Speaking and Writing

2. Anger Management : As adults, one important thing to learn is how to manage our temper. Some of us tend to get angry quickly, while others remain calm. Can you think of three ill-effects that result from anger? Note them down. Suggest ways to avoid losing your temper in such situations. Are there any benefits from anger?

Ans :

Ill-Effects of Anger are as follows:

1. It directly affects our blood circulation and we increase blood pressure.
2. It has impact on our heart and may create any trouble relating to heart.
3. It creates tension, stress and trouble. There is no benefit from anger.
3. In pairs, prepare a script based on the given excerpt from ‘The Home and The World’ by Rabindranath Tagore. You may write five exchanges between the characters with other direction such as movements on stage and way of speaking etc.

One afternoon, when I happened to be specially busy, word came to my office room that Bimala had sent for me. I was startled.

“Who did you say had sent for me?” I asked the messenger.

“The Rani Mother”.

“The Bari Rani?”

“No, sir, the Choti Rani Mother.”

The Choti Rani! It seemed a century since I had been sent for by her. I kept them all waiting there, and went off into the inner apartments. When I stepped into our room I had another shock of surprise to find Bimala there with a distinct suggestion of being dressed up. The room, which from persistent neglect, had latterly acquired an air of having grown absent-minded, had regained something of its old order this afternoon. I stood there silently, looking enquiringly at Bimala.

She flushed a little and the fingers of her right hand toyed for a time with the bangles on her left arm. Then she abruptly broke the silence. "Look here! Is it right that ours should be the only market in all Bengal which allows foreign goods?"

"What, then, would be the right thing to do?" I asked.

"Order them to be cleared out!"

"But the goods are not mine."

"Is not the market yours?"

"Let them trade in Indian goods, then."

"Nothing would please me better. But suppose they do not?"

"Nonsense! How dare they be so insolent?"

Are you not...."

"I am very busy this afternoon and cannot stop to argue it out. But I must refuse to tyrannise."

"It would not be tyranny for selfish gain, but for the sake of the country."

"To tyrannise for the country is to tyrannise over the country. But that I am afraid you will never understand." With this I came away.

Ans :

Tagore : Who did you say had sent for me? The Messenger : The Rani Mother.

Tagore (inquired with confusion): The Bara Rani?

The messenger (said respectfully) : No, sir, the Chota Rani Mother.

The Chota Rani : Look here! Is it right that ours should be the only market in all Bengal which allows foreign goods?

Tagore : What, then, would be the right thing to do?

The Chota Rani (commandingly) : Order them to be cleared out.

Tagore (inquiringly) : Is not the market yours?

The Chota Rani : It is much more theirs who use it for trade.

Tagore (suggested) : Let them trade in Indian goods, then.

The statements may be done like this...

4. In groups, discuss the qualities one should look for in a marriage partner. You might consider the following points :

1. Personal qualities
 - (i) Appearance or looks
 - (ii) Attitudes and beliefs
 - (iii) Sense of humour
2. Value system
 - (i) Compassion and kindness
 - (ii) Tolerance, ambition
 - (iii) Attitude to money and wealth

3. Education and professional background.

Ans :

It is for group discussion. However, certain more points can be given for help:

- (i) Percentage and their background
- (ii) Caste and religion
- (iii) Traditions prevalent in the community
- (iv) Her consent as well as the consent of the parents on both the sides
- (v) Her behaviour and so on
- (vi) Social status
- (vii) Serving and welfare attitude.

5. Are there parts of the play that remind you of film scenes from romantic comedies? Discuss this in groups, and recount to the rest of the class episodes similar to those in the play.

Ans :

For discussion in groups and at the class level. The student may consider romantic comedy films like Chalti Ka Naam Gaadi, Padosan, Shree 420, Hero No.1, Hangama, etc.

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. What request did Chubukov think Lomov would make?
 - (a) Ask for her daughter's hand in marriage
 - (b) Borrow money
 - (c) Borrow land
 - (d) All of these

Ans : 2020
(b) Borrow money

2. Why was Lomov wearing his evening dress?
 - (a) To pay New Year Eve's visit
 - (b) Ask for his daughter's hand in marriage
 - (c) Borrow money
 - (d) Borrow land

Ans : 2020
(b) Ask for his daughter's hand in marriage

3. Who does Chubukov call a "lovesick cat"?
 - (a) Lomov
 - (b) Himself
 - (c) His maid
 - (d) Natalya

Ans : 2020
(d) Natalya

(d) Because they seem funny while they argue

Ans : 2005

(d) Because they seem funny while they argue

30. When Natalya comes to know that Lomov had come to propose her, she asks her father to

- (a) take him to court
- (b) never allow him again
- (c) bring him back
- (d) get him by the neck

Ans : 2005

(c) bring him back

31. Chubukov had the habit of using the phrase

- (a) that is
- (b) et cetera
- (c) so
- (d) so on

Ans : 2003

(d) so on

32. "The Proposal" is a

- (a) comedy
- (b) tragedy
- (c) farce
- (d) tragi-comedy

Ans : 2003

(c) farce

33. What happens to Lomov when he is in an excited state?

- (a) He started running
- (b) His heart beat increases
- (c) His brain started working
- (d) None of these

Ans : 2003

(a) He started running

34. How much are the meadows worth?

- (a) 100 roubles
- (b) 200 roubles
- (c) 300 roubles
- (d) 500 roubles

Ans : 2003

(c) 300 roubles

35. Who gave the meadows to Natalya's father?

- (a) Aunt's grandmother of Lomov
- (b) Aunt's grandfather of Lomov
- (c) Aunt's sister of Lomov
- (d) Aunt's brother of Lomov

Ans : 2003

(a) Aunt's grandmother of Lomov

36. _____ had given the land to Natalya's father's grandfather.

- (a) Lomov's father
- (b) Lomov's aunt's grandmother

(c) Lomov's grandfather

(d) Lomov's grandmother

Ans : 2001

(b) Lomov's aunt's grandmother

37. Natalya's father's grandfather had used the barren land for

- (a) 50 Years
- (b) 10 Years
- (c) 60 Years
- (d) 40 Years

Ans : 2001

(d) 40 Years

38. Natalya believed that the land belonged to them since past _____ years.

- (a) 300 Years
- (b) 200 Years
- (c) 100 Years
- (d) 40 Years

Ans : 2001

(a) 300 Years

39. According to Lomov the peasants of Natalya's father's grandfather used to make _____.

- (a) Bricks
- (b) Pots
- (c) Houses
- (d) Cut grasses

Ans : 2001

(a) Bricks

40. To prove their ownership Natalya decided to send _____ to that land.

- (a) Grass cutters
- (b) Lawyer
- (c) Mails
- (d) Government officials

Ans : 2001

(a) Grass cutters

Short Answer Type Questions

1. Justify the title of the play "The Proposal" with reference to the characters and plot.

Ans : 2024

The title "The Proposal" is justified as the central theme revolves around Ivan Lomov's intent to propose to Natalya Stepanovna. A string of misunderstandings and humorous confrontations, including arguments about dogs and land, are started by Lomov's visit. Chubukov's support and Natalya's responses in the play highlight how important the proposal is to the plot's development.

2. To what end does the playwright employ Lomov's palpitations in the play?

Ans : 2021

Lomov's palpitations play a main role in the play. In the first scene, his palpitations are used to show his excitement and nervousness. Later on, his heart's weakness is used to terminate the heated argument

Ans :

(b) Squeezer

2007

18. According to Lomov, Chubukov's mother was

- (a) ill-tempered (b) kind hearted
(c) humpbacked (d) insolent

Ans :

(c) humpbacked

2007

19. Lomov is dressed in formal clothes

- (a) because it is New Year's Eve
(b) because he loves Natalya and is going to propose to her
(c) because he has come to propose to Natalya
(d) because he has come to finalize a business deal with Chubukov

Ans :

(b) because he loves Natalya and is going to propose to her

2007

20. Chubukov is delighted with the proposal for the following reasons

- (a) Natalya can at last return her love for Lomov
(b) Lomov loves Natalya
(c) Chubukov had moved this proposal a long time ago
(d) Chubukov would like to see his daughter married

Ans :

(d) Chubukov would like to see his daughter married

2007

21. Lomov, Chubukov and Natalya approach marriage

- (a) with the sense of practicality
(b) with a sense of romanticism
(c) with a sense of idealism
(d) with the sense of cynicism

Ans :

(a) with the sense of practicality

2006

22. Lomov has two considerations regarding marriage

- (a) that he is 35 and must lead a stable life
(b) that he suffers from lunacy and sleeplessness
(c) that he must consolidate property and make gains
(d) that he must enjoy love and passion

Ans :

(a) that he is 35 and must lead a stable life

2006

23. Lomov went to his neighbour, Chubukov's house

- (a) to borrow money
(b) to settle a dispute

(c) to give a marriage proposal

(d) to complain

Ans :

(c) to give a marriage proposal

2006

24. Lomov gave _____ to Mironov for his dog.

- (a) 120 roubles (b) 125 roubles
(c) 25 roubles (d) 85 roubles

Ans :

(b) 125 roubles

2006

25. Lomov's aunt's name is

- (a) Natalya Stepnova
(b) Natasha Vassilvitch
(c) Nastasya Mihailovna
(d) Natalya Mihailovna

Ans :

(c) Nastasya Mihailovna

2006

26. Lomov comes to Chubukov's house

- (a) to propose to his daughter
(b) like a good neighbour
(c) for a formal meeting
(d) to borrow money from Chubukov

Ans :

(a) to propose to his daughter

2006, 2005

27. Natalya suggested that Lomov should not go after foxes but

- (a) catch black beetles
(b) go after horses
(c) shoot partridges
(d) go for the doctor

Ans :

(a) catch black beetles

2005

28. Why doesn't Lomov directly ask Natalya to marry her?

- (a) because he has palpitations
(b) because he is not sure about her reaction
(c) because he is trying to be calm
(d) because he knows Chubukov has already told Natalya

Ans :

(b) because he is not sure about her reaction

2005

29. Why are the arguments funny?

- (a) Because Lomov and Natalya quickly lose sight of the marriage proposal
(b) Because the story of Oxen Meadows is absurd
(c) Because the hunting dogs are ridiculous

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

13. Describe, in brief, the character of Natalya as sketched in 'The Proposal'.

Ans :

2009

Natalya was twenty five years old, daughter of Chubukov. She was a good housekeeper, not bad looking and well educated. She secretly loved Lomov. She was greedy and short-sighted. She was short-tempered as well.

14. Lomov calls himself a 'land grabber'. Justify the statement in about 20-25 words.

Ans :

2008, 2006

Lomov and Natalya argue over the ownership of Oxen Meadows. Natalya calls him a 'land grabber' as he claims his ownership over it. Lomov says that he is not a 'land grabber' as he has never done so and would never let anyone do so.

15. How and why did Lomov come to meet the Chubukov family?

Ans :

2008

Lomov came in a formal evening dress - wearing a jacket and white gloves. He had come to meet the Chubukov family to put his proposal for Natalya. He wanted to marry her.

16. How can you say that Natalya was not convinced that Oxen Meadows were owned by Lomov?

Ans :

2007

Natalya was not convinced as she said that they owned Oxen Meadows for nearly 300 years. It was surprising and ridiculous if someone else claimed it to be his own. Chubukov also joined the quarrel.

17. What is the ailment that Lomov is suffering from?

Ans :

2007

Lomov is thirty five years old. It is high time that he should settle for a quiet and regular life. He is suffering due to a weak heart and sleep-sickness. In need of a companion who may look after him, he wants to get married.

18. What request did Lomov make to Chubukov?

Ans :

2006

Lomov went to Chubukov in a formal dress in order to propose marriage to his daughter, Natalya. Hesitatingly, he told Chubukov that he needed his help and had come to trouble him with a request. He told him that he wanted to marry Natalya.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. "Oh, what a burden, Lord, to be the father of a grown-up daughter!"

Explain what this line conveys about Chubukov as a father.

Ans :

2024

Here Chubukov, the father of Natalya, is the speaker of the above line. He considers himself the most unhappy man in the world.

In Anton Chekhov's one-act play, "The Proposal: Chubukov is a landowner with feudal mindset. He is better described as a shrewd landowner and a businesslike father than a sensible one. He looks at marriage as an economic settlement rather than a personal desire. Chubukov is the father of a grown up daughter Natalya. Chubukov thinks her daughter a liability and wants her to get married soon. Though he does not welcome Lomov cordially, his address is full of tender words. He is happy with Lomov's proposal as it will offer him a permanent relief. This attitude can be found in almost every patriarchal family in our time too.

Thus it clearly appears from his behavioural aspects that Chubukov is out and out a matter of fact father with lack of personality and very little sensible concerns.

2. Based on your understanding of the Play, 'The Proposal', what do you think of relationships ?

Prepare a speech draft on relationships based on Natalya's and Anne Frank's characters.

You may begin this way.

Good morning everyone.

Relationships are the bond between two people based on mutual likes, understanding, need or love. I'd like to discuss relationships as portrayed in the two texts

You may end this way

To conclude, I'd like to say that

Thank you,

Ans :

2024

Relationships are the bond between two people based on mutual likes, understanding, need, or love. I'd like to discuss relationships as portrayed in the two texts, "The Proposal" and "from the Diary of Anne Frank." In "The Proposal," we see the character of Natalya, who embodies the complexities of romantic relationships. Natalya's interactions with her suitor, Lomov, highlight the sometimes absurd and comical nature of courtship. However, beneath the surface, Natalya's behavior also reflects deeper issues such as pride, insecurity,

over Oxen meadows. Finally, the playwright ends the play by showing that the palpitations can extend to an almost heart attack situation.

3. The argument about the dogs reflected that both Lomov and Natalya loved their respective dogs very much. Do you agree? Why/why not?

Ans :

2021

I do not agree with the above statement. They were arguing to show off their richness and superior choice over the other. Dog owners carry a status respective to their dog's breed. The maintenance of high breed dogs is a pricey issue and a status symbol among elite people of society.

4. Read the statements given below:

Statement 1 – 'Lomov is looking to marry.'

Statement 2 – 'Lomov is looking to marry Natalya.'

Bring out the difference between the two statements and explain what it tells you about Lomov.

Ans :

2021

The first statement shows that Lomov is on the lookout for a suitable bride for himself to get married. Whereas the second statement implies that Lomov is considering marriage for himself and Natalya.

It tells us that Lomov is well aware of the fact that he would not get a perfect match as he was already 35. He should compromise at certain points. This shows his urgency of marriage.

5. How did Chubukov react when Lomov asked for the hand of his daughter in marriage?

Ans :

2019

Chubukov was very happy when Lomov asked for his daughter's hand in marriage. He was rather overjoyed and blessed him. He kissed and embraced him.

6. How does the argument about Oxen Meadows start?

Ans :

2017

Both Lomov and Natalya are argumentative in nature. Both of them claim for Oxen Meadows. Natalya is of the opinion that she owns the Oxen Meadows whereas Lomov insists that the Oxen Meadows belong to him. Thus, the argument starts between both of them.

7. Why does Chubukov suspect Lomov's arrival?

Or

Why does Chubukov suspect Lomov when he comes to his house?

Ans :

2016, 2011

Chubukov suspects that Lomov may be going somewhere as he wears formal dress. When Lomov explains that he has come seeking help, Chubukov suspects that he has come to borrow money.

8. Why does Lomov wish to propose to Natalya?

Ans :

2012, 2010

Lomov wishes to propose to Natalya because he is in love with her and wants to marry her. He tells her that their families know each other for a long period. He thinks that she is a good housekeeper.

9. How did Chubukov react when Lomov told him that he had come to propose to his daughter, Natalya?

Ans :

2012

When Lomov told Chubukov that he had come to propose to his daughter, Natalya, Chubukov was very glad to hear of the proposal. He embraced and kissed Lomov. He said that he had been hoping for it for a long time. With a wistful smile, Chubukov said, 'I've always loved you my angel; as if you were my son. May God give you and Natalya his love and help, and so on!'

10. Who is Lomov? Why does he visit Chubukov?

Ans :

2010

Lomov is the long-time wealthy neighbour of Stepan Chubukov. He is a romantic hero of thirty-five, crazy to seek the hand of Natalya, Chubukov's daughter.

Lomov visits Chubukov because he wanted to ask Chubukov for his daughter Natalya's hand in marriage. So he came in a formal dress to propose marriage.

11. Why does Natalya quarrel with Lomov? What is the result?

Ans :

2010

Natalya quarrels with Lomov because Lomov fights with her on the issue of ownership of Oxen Meadows and superiority of their dogs Squeezer and Guess. Lomov says that his dog Guess is better than her Squeezer.

At last, When Natalya came to know about Lomov's marriage proposal, they forgot quarrel, and she was desperate to marry him.

12. What justification did Lomov give to Natalya and Chubukov to prove that he is the rightful owner of Meadows?

Ans :

2009

Lomov told Natalya and Chubukov that his aunt's grandmother gave the Meadows for the temporary and free use of Chubukov's grandfather's peasants. So he is the rightful owner of the open meadows.

Ans :

Yes, Natalya is in love. This is clear in her behaviour when she get to know that Lomov came to propose her. She then starts weeping; she calls her father to bring him back at once. Lomov had left the house after the quarrel. She becomes hysteric.

3. Answer the following questions:

- Find all the words and expressions in the play that the characters used to speak about other, and accusations and insults they hurl at each other. (For example, Lomov in the end calls Chubukov an intriguer; but earlier, Chubukov has himself called Lomov a “malicious, doublefaced intriguer.” Again, Lomov begins by describing Natalya as “an excellent housekeeper. not bad-looking. well-educated.”)
- Then think of five adjectives or adjectival expressions of your own to describe each character in the play.
- Can you imagine what these characters will quarrel about next?

Ans :

- Natalya calls Lomov ‘rascal’, ‘The monster’. Chubukov calls him ‘the villain! The scarecrow!’, ‘that blind hen’, ‘turnip ghost’, ‘the stuffed sausage’, ‘the wizen-faced frump’, ‘malicious, double-faced intriguer’, ‘pup’, ‘old rat’, ‘Jesuit’, ‘milk soap’, ‘fool’. Chubukov calls Lomov’s father as ‘a guzzling gambler’. Lomov calls Chubukov ‘intreguer’, Natalya’s mother as ‘hump-backed’, ‘back-bitters’, etc. Chubukov calls Lomov as ‘my precious’. Lomov calls Natalya as ‘an excellent house keeper, not bad looking, well educated’.
- Adjectives or adjectival expressions that describe the characters in the play are as follows :
 - Lomov : weak hearted bachelor, nervous, short tempered, quarrelsome, rigid.
 - Natalya : excellent housekeeper, good looking, well educated, sharp tongued, short tempered, rigid touchy and sensitive.
 - Chubukov : old, quarrelsome, uses funny abusive language (turnip ghost, stuffed sausage), intriguer, concerned father.
- Perhaps they will quarrel on the quality of champagne.

Thinking About Language - I

- This play has been translated into English from the Russian original. Are there any expressions or ways of speaking that strike you as more Russian than English? For example, would an adult man be addressed by an older man as my darling or my treasure in an English play?

Read through the play carefully and find expressions that you think are not used in contemporary English and contrast these with idiomatic modern English expressions that also occur in the play.

Ans :

Expressions not used in contemporary English are as follows:

- “my darling”, “my beauty”, “my precious”, “my angel”, “my beloved” (here, an older man is addressing an adult man)
- “...and so on...” (here, it is used after a sentence in order to complete it)
- “...and all that sort of thing.” (not explaining what it is, just leaving it as it is)
- “...and all that.” (again leaving the sentence as it is)
- “the scarecrow”, “the stuffed sausage”, “the wizen-faced frump” (In this way, they hurled insults at each other)
- “And how may you be getting on?” (Here, Lomov is asking Chubukov about his well being)

Modern English expressions are as follows:

- “Madam”, “my heart”, “honoured Natalya Stepanovna” (used by Lomov for Natalya)
- “Honoured Stepan Stepanovitch” (used by Lomov for Chubukov)
- “I beg your pardon...”
- “My dear fellow” (Chubukov addressing Lomov)
- “malicious, double-faced intriguer”, “fool” (Chubukov insulting Lomov)

- Look up the following words in a dictionary and find out how to pronounce them. Pay attention to how many syllables there are in each word, and find out which syllable is stressed, or said more forcefully.

palpitations	interfere	implore	thoroughbred
pedigree	principle	evidence	misfortune
malicious	embezzlement	architects	neighbours
accustomed	temporary	behaviour	documents

and societal expectations. Through Natalya's character, we are reminded that relationships can be fraught with misunderstandings and challenges, yet they also have the potential to bring joy and fulfillment when based on genuine affection and understanding.

3. Look at the given matrimonial advertisement published in the Morning Post (newspaper) in December 1822.

It was fairly common practice in the nineteenth century for gentlemen and ladies to seek courtship and matrimony by placing a suitable advertisement.

MATRIMONY.—A Middle-aged Gentleman, of a respectable rank in life, who enjoys an income of Two Hundred Pounds a Year, with fair expectations, and who might otherwise offer a favourable account of himself, wishes to MARRY. The intimations of any Lady, of unblemishable character, of an age not less than thirty, nor more than thirty-seven, and of an income at least equal to his own (as his rank requires such), having a similar wish, and condescending to favour him, will be received with due respect, and attended to with strict honour and inviolable secrecy. Letters to be addressed, post paid, S. H., No. 8, Park-place, Kensington.

- (a) Based on your reading of the play and an understanding of the characters, what details would Lomov provide (and specifically leave out) in a matrimonial advertisement to find a bride like Natalya?
- (b) Think of what might make Chubukov shortlist Lomov's advertisement if he were scanning the matrimonial section of the newspaper.

Ans :

2021

- (a) To find a bride like Natalya, Lomov would include the following points in his matrimonial advertisement –
A tall and average looking boy of high rank who earns more than 500 pounds a year. Having inherited many real estates and owns a magnificent house. He is looking for a suitable bride of equal status, not more than 35 years of age, well educated and should be an excellent housekeeper.
- (b) From the above advertisement, Chubukov would shortlist the points that matter to him the most, like, financial status, monthly income, real estates' net worth. If he finds everything matches with his own status, he would be ready to marry off his daughter Natalya with the advertiser.

4. Natalya and Ivan argued about the ownership of Oxen Meadows and the superiority of their respective dogs in the play, The Proposal. Imagine yourself as the playwright of the play. Based on your understanding of the personality traits of

Natalya and Ivan, write a dialogue based on an imaginary event, showcasing another argument between them.

Ans :

2021

Natalya enters Ivan's house furious.

Natalya : Your dogs have ruined my meadow. Why are you letting them loose?

Ivan : My dogs are in my compound. How do you know it was my dogs, and not anybody else's, that ruined your meadow?

Natalya : It happened in the middle of the night. I heard the cows mooing when the dogs entered the meadow, and woke up.

Ivan : You should have shooed them away. Why didn't you?

Natalya : Before I came out into the meadow, they ran away. They were frightened by the cow mooing. Next time, ensure you tie your dogs to a pole before going to bed. Now, you ensure that my meadow is cleaned up.

She storms out of his house in anger.

5. Among neighbours we should have cordial relations and not lose our temper. How do Natalya and Lomov lose their temper on trivial issues?

Or

Neighbours must have a cordial relationship which Lomov and Natalya do not have. Describe the first fight between them.

Ans :

2018, 2016

Neighbours must have a cordial relationship which Lomov and Natalya do not have. Although he had come there to propose Natalya, he started fighting with her over a small piece of land. This land adjoined her land and his Oxen meadows touched her Birch woods. Lomov tried to explain that the meadows belonged to her but Lomov claimed that the Oxen meadows are his. He further tried to convince Natalya by telling her that his aunt's grandmother gave the meadows for the temporary and free use to Chubukov's grandfather's peasants. They did not demand money for it for a longtime so the Chubukov's misunderstood that the meadows belonged to them. While Chubukov insisted that yelling could not prove anything because everyone knows that those meadows belonged to Chubukov since last three hundred years. Both threatened each other.

6. On what issues did Lomov and Natalya quarrel? What does their quarrel reveal about them?

Ans :

2012

Lomov and Natalya quarrelled over two controversial issues. First issue deals with their point of controversy over the ownership of their land, Oxen Meadows. Lomov argues that his

CHAPTER 1

DUST OF SNOW

1. INTRODUCTION

The poem “Dust of Snow” is written by American poet Robert Frost. It is a simple and short poem, yet with a deeper and larger meaning. The poet explains how an act as petty as experiencing snow on one’s body can brighten one’s day up.

2. SUMMARY

Flakes of Snow

It was a day of winter. It was snowing all around. A fine dust of snow had covered the tops of the trees. A hemlock tree was standing there. The top of the hemlock tree was all covered with the fine dust of snow. The poet was standing under that hemlock tree.

Falling of Snow Dust on Poet

A crow from nowhere came and perched on the top of the tree. The sudden movement of the crow made the dust of snow fall down. The flakes of snow fell on the poet who was standing under that tree.

Simple Natural Happening

The arrival of a crow and its sitting on the hemlock tree is just an ordinary happening. There is nothing great about the incident. On the other hand, the crow stands for an ill omen and the hemlock tree is associated with poison. But these seemingly simple things of nature leave a deep impact on the mind and mood of the poet.

Change in the Mood

This ordinary incident leaves a deep impact on the poet. So far it has been a very dull and disappointing day for the poet. The day has not gone well for him. But the falling of the flakes and the dust of snow on him are welcome signs for the poet. His mood changes for the better and his spirits are uplifted. Now he realizes that the whole day has not gone to waste. Those moments while he is enjoying the fall of snow dust on him are his happy moments. They lift up his mood and gladden his heart. Now he realizes that at

least some part of the day has been spent happily. In the end, satisfaction replaces regret.

3. EXPLANATION

Stanza 1

The way a crow
Shook down on me
The dust of snow
From a hemlock tree

Word Meaning :

1. Shook - shake
2. Hemlock - a poisonous tree with small white flowers

Explanation :

The poem is set in a scene where the poet is in a bad mood and is walking by a tree, a hemlock tree. Hemlock tree is a poisonous tree. As he passes by, a crow happens to throw some snow dust on him. Whether it falls on his head or shoulders is unknown as there is no specific mention in the poem. Also, the readers are left in doubt about the bird’s specific action. Whether the crow was landing, shivering with cold, re adjusting itself on the branch or taking off, it happened to send some particles of snow upon the author. Here, the two agents of nature, the hemlock tree and the crow are signifiers of sadness and gloom just like the poet’s mood was in the opening scene.

Stanza 2

Has given my heart
A change of mood
And saved some part
Of a day I had rued.

Word Meaning :

1. Rued - held in regret

Explanation :

For reasons unknown, the author was having a terrible day. But the falling of the snow on his head lifted his mood instantly. He had already

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow :

LOMOV : It's cold... I'm trembling all over, just as if I'd got an examination before me. The great thing is, I must have my mind made up. If I give myself time to think, to hesitate, to talk a lot, to look for an ideal, or for real love, then I'll never get married. Brr...It's cold! Natalya Stepanovna is an excellent housekeeper, not bad-looking, well-educated. What more do I want? But I'm getting a noise in my ears from excitement. (Drinks) And it's impossible for me not to marry. In the first place, I'm already 35— a critical age, so to speak. In the second place, I ought to lead a quiet and regular life. I suffer from palpitations, I'm excitable and always getting awfully upset; at this very moment my lips are trembling, and there's a twitch in my right eyebrow.

- i. Which of the following is NOT a reason why Lomov thinks he must marry?
 - (a) He is already 35 years old.
 - (b) He suffers from palpitations.
 - (c) He is excitable and easily upset.
 - (d) He is in love with Natalya.
- ii. Why is it fair to say that Lomov's tone, when he says "What more do I want?", is uncertain and questioning? Answer in about 40 words.
- iii. Read the following descriptions (a)-(c) and identify which one correctly corresponds to the extract.
 - (a) A debate is a formal discussion on a particular topic, usually with two or more people presenting different viewpoints and arguments.
 - (b) A soliloquy is a speech given by a character alone on stage, which reveals their innermost thoughts and feelings to the audience.
 - (c) An aside is a brief comment or remark made by a character directly to the audience, which is not intended to be heard by other characters on stage.
- iv. If an actor were to enact this extract, what would he be required to focus on, while modulating his voice?

Ans :

2023

- i. (d) He is in love with Natalya.
- ii. Lomov's tone when he says "What more do I want?" is uncertain and questioning because

he is trying to convince himself that Natalya Stepanovna is a suitable match for him, but at the same time, he seems to be struggling with doubts and fears. His tone suggests that he is trying to reassure himself that he has made the right decision, but he is not entirely convinced.

- iii. (b) A soliloquy is a speech given by a character alone on stage, which reveals their innermost thoughts and feelings to the audience.
- iv. The actor would be required to convey Lomov's nervousness and excitement through his voice modulation.

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

CHUBUKOV : And that blind hen, yes, that turnip-ghost has the confounded cheek to make a proposal, and so on!

NATALYA : What proposal?

CHUBUKOV : Why, he came here to propose to you.

NATALYA : To propose? To me? Why didn't you tell me so before?

- i. Identify Natalya's reaction at this point in the play.
- ii. What made Natalya react so sharply to her father's words? Explain the irony in her words. Answer in about 40 words.
- iii. State TRUE or FALSE.
None of the descriptions (a)-(d) correctly corresponds to the extract.
 - (a) A debate is a formal discussion on a particular topic, usually with two or more people presenting different viewpoints and arguments.
 - (b) A soliloquy is a speech given by a character alone on stage, which reveals their innermost thoughts and feelings to the audience.
 - (c) An aside is a brief comment or remark made by a character directly to the audience, which is not intended to be heard by other characters on stage.
 - (d) A dialogue is the exchange of spoken words between two or more characters in a book, play, or other written work.

- iv. If an actor were to enact this extract, what would he be required to focus on, while modulating his voice?

aunt's grandmother had given the free use of the Meadows to the peasants of Natalya's father's grandfather for forty years. But, the peasants thought that they were owners of the land.

Second issue of controversy is regarding the superiority of their pet dogs, Guess and Squeezer. When Lomov praises his dog, Guess, Natalya tries to prove her dog Squeezer better than his dog. Natalya argues that Squeezer is a thoroughbred animal. Lomov's dog Guess is old and short. So, there is a heated argument between them.

The quarrel between Lomov and Natalya reveals that both of them are quarrelsome and short-tempered. Basically, the quarrel is based on petty issues, but the sweet marriage proposal is made after all, which ensures economic good sense.

7. What type of person is Natalya? Give two examples to show her quarrelsome nature.

Ans :

2012

Natalya is the daughter of Chubukov. She is talkative, short-tempered and quarrelsome. She is very much concerned about her family's honour and ownership of Oxen Meadows, her father's property. She is also extremely argumentative.

We can refer here two examples that will show her quarrelsome nature. First, Natalya quarrels with Lomov about the ownership of Oxen Meadows. She claims that Oxen Meadows have been theirs for long. Lomov argues that his aunt's grandmother had given the free use of the Meadows to the peasants of Natalya's grandfather. So, the Oxen Meadows is theirs. Thus, they start quarrelling each other.

Secondly, they start quarrelling on the point of dispute about the superiority of their dogs. When Lomov praises his dog, Guess, Natalya tries to prove her dog, Squeezer, better than his. Thus, there was a heated argument between themselves.

8. The proposal was forgotten amidst argumentation. Which right approach should have been followed by both parties?

Ans :

2011, 2005

Lomov came to Chubukovs to propose Natalya. Both were neighbours and Lomov was at the right age to marry. But instead of forwarding the proposal both Lomov and Natalya started fighting over trifles. Firstly, they fought over a small piece of land called Oxen meadows. Both of them claimed that the land belonged to them and not to the other one. Somehow, the argument came to an end and they started fighting over dogs and claimed each of their dog to be better than the other one. The proposal was forgotten amidst all these arguments.

The situation might have been different if both the parties had followed the right approach. Oxen meadows would belong to both of them if they got married. Similarly, dogs were too petty a thing to argue about while a marriage is going to take place. There should not have been any ego in between them. They should have been polite and 'patient to each other. They should not have been rigid and stubborn. Their priority should have been their marriage and not meadows or dogs. Only then the proposal could have been carried on.

9. Delineate the character sketch of Lomov.

Ans :

2010

Lomov is a man who is of marriageable age. He also suffers from a weak heart and sleeplessness. So, he is desperate to settle down in life and lead a quiet and regular life. Despite his ailments, Lomov was a rich and prosperous farmer. This makes Chubukov secretly wish him to marry his daughter Natalya. As for Lomov, he did not love her, though he was desperate to have a life partner, and so wanted to marry Natalya. Lomov was however hesitant to ask for her hand from Chubukov. That made him beat around the bush, argue with Natalya and leave without proposing. Thus we can find that Lomov's conditions overpower the other traits he has. He is an eligible, assertive, rich, bachelor, who could be liked by any girl. However, we also know that he is nervous, lacks confidence and is prone to talk in a long-winded manner.

10. Give a brief description of Natalya as a person who is firm and resolute.

Ans :

2007

Natalya was twenty five years old and the daughter of Chubukov. She was a good housekeeper, not bad to look at and educated; that was why Lomov wanted to marry her. She could be a good wife to him. She secretly loved Lomov. She became hysterical when she came to know that Lomov had come to propose to her. She asked her father to call him back. To please Lomov she asked him to forgive her and agreed to his ownership of the Oxen Meadows. She was greedy and short-sighted. She got the whole field of hay cut. She was also very inquisitive and wanted to know why Lomov was dressed up formally. She was touchy and short-tempered and fell into contradiction and argument on two occasions-once over the ownership of Oxen Meadows and second time over the superiority of her dog Squeezer. She is as rigid as Lomov. She is not ready to give up the ownership of her land even after getting ready to marry him.

- (b) The extract is a soliloquy or a speech given by a character alone on stage, which reveals their innermost thoughts and feelings to the audience.
- (c) The extract is an argument or an exchange of diverging or opposite views, typically a heated or angry one.
- iv. On the basis of your understanding of the extract, which common character traits are exhibited by both Natalya and Lomov?

Ans :

2017

- i. (a) Chabukovs' land extended to Burnt Marsh which included Oxen Meadows.
- ii. Natalya and Lomov had been quarrelling over the ownership of Oxen Meadows when suddenly Natalya took a U-turn and admitted to the reality that the Meadows were not worth fighting or arguing over as they only came to five dessiatins and were worth perhaps 300 roubles only.
- iii. (c) The extract is an argument or an exchange of diverging or opposite views, typically a heated or angry one.
- iv. Both Natalya and Lomov are obstinate and argumentative by nature.

5. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

Natalya I can make you a present of them myself, because they're mine! Your behaviour, Ivan Vassilevitch, is strange, to say the least! Up to this we have always thought of you as a good neighbour, a friend; last year we lent you our threshing-machine, although on that account we had to put off our own threshing till November, but you behave to us as if we were gypsies.

- i. Where do Lomov and Natalya get on the wrong foot?
- (a) While talking about the weather
- (b) While talking about their land
- (c) While talking about their family relations
- (d) While talking about their hobbies
- ii. Fill in the blank appropriately. 'Them' here refers to
- iii. What does the given lines tell us about Natalya?
- iv. Which phrase would correctly substitute 'postpone', in the given sentence from the passage?
- I had to **postpone** my plane due to shortage of money.

Ans :

2015

- i. (b) While talking about their land
- ii. Oxen Meadows
- iii. The given lines tell us that Natalya is a short tempered girl ready to fight for the smallest of things.
- iv. put off

6. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"Natalya Stephenova is an excellent housekeeper, not bad looking, well-educated. What more do I want? But I,m getting noise in my ears from excitement. [Drinks! And it,s impossible for me not to marry In the first place, I'm already 35-a critical age, so to speak. In the second place, I ought to lead a quiet and regular life."

- i. When the speaker says, 'What more do I want?', he means that
- (a) he wants to get married soon.
- (b) Natalya is a good match for him.
- (c) he and Natalya are both quarrelsome.
- (d) Natalya would add to his glory.
- ii. What do the given lines tell us about the speaker?
- iii. The statement that is true about the speaker according to the passage is
- (a) he is an old man.
- (b) he suffers from attacks of excitements.
- (c) he wants to make Natalya his business partner.
- (d) he wants to travel to the world.
- iv. What happens to Lomov when he is in excited state? Elaborate in about 40 words.

Ans :

2010

- i. (b) Natalya is a good match for him.
- ii. The given lines tell us that the speaker wanted to live a regular life'
- iii. (b) he suffers from attacks of excitements
- iv. when Lamov is in an excited state his heartbeat increases, lips start to tremble and there is a twitch in his right eyebrow. When he goes to sleep in such'a stale, something pulls him from the left side and he jumps like a lunatic.



28. What happened when the dust of snow fell on the poet?

- (a) The poet became angry
- (b) The poet's mood changed
- (c) The poet's coat got wet.
- (d) The poet moved away from the tree.

Ans : 2008
(b) The poet's mood changed

29. The crow is generally considered as

- (a) a sign of good luck
- (b) a naughty bird
- (c) a friend of man
- (d) a sign of bad luck

Ans : 2008
(d) a sign of bad luck

30. The hemlock tree is considered to be

- (a) a medicinal plant
- (b) a poisonous plant
- (c) a holy plant
- (d) a rare plant

Ans : 2008
(b) a poisonous plant

31. The poem is set on a?

- (a) hot summer day
- (b) pleasant spring day
- (c) cold wintry day
- (d) dry autumn day

Ans : 2008
(c) cold wintry day

32. Robert Frost was a famous poet.

- (a) British
- (b) Russian
- (c) Indian
- (d) American

Ans : 2007
(d) American

33. The fall of snow flakes on the poet made him realize that

- (a) That it is winter
- (b) That the whole day is wasted.
- (c) That the whole day is not wasted
- (d) That crow is a symbol of ill omen

Ans : 2007
(c) That the whole day is not wasted

34. How many lines are there in the poem "Dust of snow"?

- (a) 9
- (b) 8
- (c) 2
- (d) 1

Ans : 2006
(b) 8

35. The poem "Dust of Snow" has how many stanzas?

- (a) 9
- (b) 8
- (c) 2
- (d) 1

Ans : 2006
(c) 2

36. In this line of the poem "of the day I had rued", the word rued means-

- (a) forgotten
- (b) bitterly regretted
- (c) happily passed
- (d) not liked

Ans : 2006
(b) bitterly regretted

37. The message of the poem is

- (a) Stay away from Hemlock trees
- (b) Stay away from crows.
- (c) Nature heals us no matter how bad our day was.
- (d) We must save nature .

Ans : 2005
(c) Nature heals us no matter how bad our day was.

38. Which word in the first stanza rhymes with crow?

- (a) tree
- (b) me
- (c) hemlock
- (d) snow

Ans : 2005
(d) snow

39. By the end of the poem, the poet's mood changed from

- (a) sad mood to angry mood
- (b) happy mood to sad mood
- (c) sad mood to happy mood
- (d) angry mood to sad mood

Ans : 2005
(c) sad mood to happy mood

40. Dust of snow means

- (a) big particles of snow
- (b) tiny particles of snow
- (c) Snow that has become dirty.
- (d) small drops of rain and mist.

Ans : 2003
(b) tiny particles of snow

Short Answer Type Questions

1. What mood of the poet is reflected in the poem 'Dust of Snow' initially ? What images are used by the poet to bring about the effect ? Comment.

Ans : 2024
Initially, the poet's mood in "Dust of Snow" is somber and melancholic. Images of a crow, hemlock tree, and dust of snow evoke a sense of

spent his day in a bad mood but the rest of it was saved by the crow and the hemlock tree. Generally, hemlock tree and crow are used for negative references but the poet used them beautifully to portray that inauspicious things can bring joy and happiness too. One must not take things for granted and should be open and accept whichever way the nature chooses to bless us.

4. LITERARY DEVICES

1. **Rhyme Scheme** - abab cdcd
2. **Alliteration** - the occurrence of the same letter or sound at the beginning of adjacent or closely connected words. The instances of alliteration are as follows:
Has given my heart
And saved some part
3. **Inversion** - when the structure of a sentence is changed by the poet to create rhyme, this poetic license is called inversion. In stanza 1, inversion can be seen.
4. **Assonance** - the prominence of a vowel sound throughout a line is called assonance. In stanza 1, line 2 - "Shook down on me" - 'o' sound is prominent.
5. **Enjambment** - when the same sentence continues to the next line without the use of any punctuation marks, it is called enjambment. It has been used throughout the poem.
6. **Symbolism** - Both crow and the hemlock tree represent sorrow. Frost has used both the negative creatures (crow and the hemlock tree) as the carriers of positivism and strength that transformed his day for the better. By not using birds like sparrow and nightingale and trees like maple, oak or a pine, the poet has tried to break down all the preconceived notions we have about certain agents of nature. He has tried to make us understand that we see the world not as how it is, but as how we want to see it. Thus, the crow sitting and a hemlock tree together made his day better.

5. MESSAGE

The poem conveys the message that one should never be desperate and hopeless. There is always scope for a change. The message of the poem is put into words by Robert Frost:
"Always, always a larger significance...
A little thing touches a larger thing."

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Thinking About the Poem

1. What is a "dust of snow" ? What does the poet say has changed his mood. How has the poet's mood changed ?

Ans :

'Dust of snow' are small particles of snow that remain on the body after the snowfall. The poet was in depressive, and sorrowful mood but with the shower of snow he changed his mood. Now he becomes positive in his mood.

2. How does Frost present nature in this poem ? The following questions may help you to think of an answer.

- (i) What are the birds that are usually named in poems ? Do you think a crow is often mentioned in poems ? What images come to your mind when you think of a crow ?
- (ii) Again, what is 'a hemlock tree' ? Why doesn't the poet write about a more 'beautiful' tree such as a maple, or an oak or a pine?
- (iii) What do the 'crow' and 'hemlock' represent-joy or sorrow ? What does the dust of snow that the crow shakes off a hemlock tree stand for ?

Ans :

- (i) The birds mainly named in poems nightingale, cuckoo, sparrow, pigeon, dove, duck etc. But crow is not often mentioned in poems. If we think about any crow then our mind feels with sad and sorrow.
- (ii) A Poisonous plant having white flowers is a hemlock tree. The poet must have some rough, bitter experiences that made him sad that is why the poet doesn't write about a more 'beautiful' tree such as a maple or an oak, or a pine.
- (iii) The 'crow' and 'hemlock' represent joy. The dust of snow that the crow shakes off a hemlock tree stand for dry, cold, gloomy winter.

3. Have there been times when you felt depressed or helpless ? Have you experienced a similar moment that changed your mood that day ?

Ans :

In our day today we often have times when we feel depressed as well as hopeless. One such similar moment can be detailed here from my daily experience.

My son Ajay had been to Russia for his medical studies. For one week neither the call nor the

mail was received at the house. Not only myself but also everybody in the family was deeply depressed. There was nothing to be done. Even his arrival was due very soon but nothing was being heard. I was pacing here and there in the veranda. My wife was deeply shocked and had not taken anything since morning. All of a sudden at 12.30 in the noon, horn of a car was heard. The car stopped outside the gate. I ran to see what was there. To my surprise my son was there with his maternal uncle Mr. Vijay Aggrawal. All were happy and recovered from shock. His arrival brought a sudden change in our mood.

6. Name the poetic device used in the line “Has given my heart”

(a) alliteration (b) metaphor
(c) oxymoron (d) similie

Ans :

2020

(a) alliteration

7. Name the poetic device used in the line “And saved some part”

(a) alliteration (b) metaphor
(c) oxymoron (d) similie

Ans :

2020

(a) alliteration

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. Who is the poet of the poem “Dust of Snow”?

(a) Leslie Norris (b) Robert Frost
(c) Carolyn Wells (d) Robin Klein

Ans :

2021

(b) Robert Frost

2. Why does the poet call it “dust of snow”?

(a) snow particles were too tiny
(b) they came over him like dust
(c) they felt like dust
(d) they looked like dust

Ans :

2021

(a) snow particles were too tiny

3. The poet says, “Of a day I had rued”. What is the meaning of “rued”?

(a) ruined (b) held in regret
(c) ruled (d) conquered

Ans :

2021

(b) held in regret

4. What uplifted his mood?

(a) falling of snow on his shoulder
(b) the crow
(c) hemlock tree
(d) all of the above

Ans :

2021

(a) falling of snow on his shoulder

5. What is the rhyme scheme of the poem?

(a) baba cdcd (b) abab cdcd
(c) abab cddc (d) abba cdcd

Ans :

2020

(b) abab cdcd

8. What does “Dust of Snow” represent?

(a) healing power of nature
(b) particles of snow
(c) cool weather
(d) none of the above

Ans :

2020

(a) healing power of nature

9. What are the two negative creatures that Frost used as carriers of positivity?

(a) snow, dust
(b) hemlock tree, snow
(c) snow, crow
(d) hemlock tree, crow

Ans :

2020

(d) hemlock tree, crow

10. The crow and Hemlock tree symbolize ____

(a) sorrow (b) happiness
(c) celebration (d) death

Ans :

2016

(a) sorrow

11. How did the dust of snow affect the poet?

(a) It made him energetic
(b) It changed his mood
(c) It made him superior
(d) None of these

Ans :

2016, 2011

(b) It changed his mood

12. What was the mood of the poet in the beginning of the poem?

(a) Sad mood (b) Happy mood
(c) Confuse mood (d) None of these

Ans :

2016

(a) Sad mood

13. What did crow shake on the poet?

- (a) dust of tree (b) dust of garden
(c) dust of snow (d) dust of land

Ans :

2015

- (c) dust of snow

14. What did the poet think of the day before the dust of snow fell on him?

- (a) He was energetic (b) He was rude
(c) He was lucky (d) His day was ruined.

Ans :

2015

- (d) His day was ruined.

15. How does the poet's mood get changed?

- (a) When he started running
(b) When started laughing
(c) When dust of snow fall on him
(d) None of these

Ans :

2014

- (c) When dust of snow fall on him

16. Whose part of the day has been saved?

- (a) Crow's part of the day
(b) Tree's part of the day
(c) Poet's part of the day
(d) None of these

Ans :

2014

- (c) Poet's part of the day

17. Where was the crow?

- (a) Peepal Tree (b) Hemlock Tree
(c) Deodar Cedar (d) Banyan Tree

Ans :

2013

- (b) Hemlock Tree

18. What was saved for the poet?

- (a) crow
(b) tree
(c) some part of the day
(d) snow

Ans :

2012

- (c) some part of the day

19. What does crow generally symbolise?

- (a) Happiness (b) Good fortune
(c) Bad omen (d) Life

Ans :

2012

- (c) Bad omen

20. what fell on the poet?

- (a) dust of snow (b) dust of crow
(c) dust of rain (d) dust of tree

Ans :

2011

- (a) dust of snow

21. The dust of snow falls on the part from the

- (a) Coconut tree (b) Shade of a house
(c) Hemlock tree (d) Sky

Ans :

2011

- (c) Hemlock tree

22. Hemlock is a –

- (a) Poisonous tree (b) Cottage
(c) None of a bird (d) Snowfall

Ans :

2010

- (a) Poisonous tree

23. The poet is in a –

- (a) Cheerful mood (b) Pleasant mood
(c) Gloomy mood (d) Marry mood

Ans :

2010

- (c) Gloomy mood

24. _____ has lifted the mood of the poet.

- (a) View of Hemlock tree
(b) The falling snow
(c) The environment
(d) The sound by crow

Ans :

2009, 2007

- (b) The falling snow

25. Here the rest of the day of the poet was saved by –

- (a) Winself (b) Snow
(c) Weather (d) Crow and Hemlock tree

Ans :

2009

- (d) Crow and Hemlock tree

26. The poet stood under which tree?

- (a) Pine (b) Hemlock
(c) Fir (d) Goldilock

Ans :

2009

- (b) Hemlock

27. What fell on the poet ?

- (a) hailstones (b) raindrops
(c) leaves (d) snow

Ans :

2009

- (d) snow

SCAN QR CODE

JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL



Ans :

2020

- i. shock and anger
- ii. Natalya had been overly critical of Lomov's claims and had mocked him unsparingly without displaying even basic civil behaviour to her neighbour. But the moment she learned about the marriage proposal, she took a U-turn and took her father to task.
- iii. False (description (d) correctly corresponds to the extract.)
- iv. An actor while modulating his voice to enact this extract should pay attention to his pitch and pauses.

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"But, please, Stephen Stepanovitch, how can they be yours? Do be a reasonable man! My aunt's grandmother gave the Meadows for the temporary and free use of your grandfather's peasants. The peasants used the land for forty years and got accustomed to it as if it was their own, when it happened that.....

- i. Why did the peasants treat the land as their own?
 - (a) They used the land for forty years.
 - (b) They got accustomed to using the land.
 - (c) Both (a) and (b)
 - (d) None of the above
- ii. Who is the speaker of the above lines? What light do these lines throw on the speaker's character? What reaction did his words get? Answer in about 40 words.
- iii. Read the following descriptions (a)-(c) and identify which one correctly corresponds to the extract.
 - (a) A debate is a formal discussion on a particular topic, usually with two or more people presenting different viewpoints and arguments.
 - (b) A soliloquy is a speech given by a character alone on stage, which reveals their innermost thoughts and feelings to the audience.
 - (c) None of the above
- iv. Why did his aunt's grandmother give the meadows?

Ans :

2018

- i. (c) Both (a) and (b)
- ii. Lomov said the given lines. The given lines show his poor personality and a bad sense of

talking that seems irrelevant with place and person. He is interrupted by Chubukov who refuted his claim by pointing out that Oxen Meadows' standing as disputed land was the only reason the peasants were permitted to use it at no cost.

- iii. (c) None of the above
- iv. His aunt's grandmother gave the meadows for the temporary and free use of the peasants employed by Stephan Chubukov's grandfather in return for which they were to make bricks for her.

4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

NATALYA : No you're simply joking, or making fun of me. What a surprise! We've had the land for nearly three hundred years, and then we're suddenly told that it isn't ours! Ivan Vassilevitch, I can hardly believe my own ears. These Meadows aren't worth much to me. They only come to five dessiatins, and are worth perhaps 300 roubles, but I can't stand unfairness. Say what you will, I can't stand unfairness.

LOMOV : Hear me out, I implore you! The peasants of your father's grandfather, as I have already had the honour of explaining to you, used to make bricks for my aunt's grandmother, wishing to make them a pleasant ...

- i. Which of the facts given below is the most accurate explanation to complete the statement:
Natalya told Lomov that he was simply joking or making fun of her because _____.
 - (a) Chabukovs' land extended to Burnt Marsh which included Oxen Meadows.
 - (b) he claimed that Oxen Meadows was his ancestral property.
 - (c) he declared that his land extended to Burnt Marsh.
 - (d) Oxen Meadows had belonged to Natalya's mother for generations.
- ii. Why were the Meadows not worth fighting or arguing over between the neighbours? Answer in about 40 words.
- iii. Read the following descriptions (a)-(c) and identify which one correctly corresponds to the extract given to you for analysis.
 - (a) The extract is a debate usually with two or more people presenting different viewpoints and arguments.

gloom. However, the transformative effect of the snow on the poet's mood brings about a shift towards a more positive outlook.

2. It is our attitude towards a situation that makes it positive or negative. Do you agree with it ? Express your views with reference to the poem, 'Dust of Snow'.

Ans :

2024

It is quite true our attitude to a situation determines everything, including our state of mind. Optimistic attitude brings us lasting happiness; on the contrary, negative attitude results in worry, tensions, and depression. In the poem Dust of Snow, the poet's mood was transformed by a nature.

3. Rationalise what you think the poet was probably doing when the dust of snow fell on him?

Ans :

2021

The poet was feeling extremely sad when the dust of snow fell on him. He was lost in his thoughts but the falling of snow changed his mood and attention.

4. 'Dust of Snow' is one of Frost's most loved poems. Elaborate why you think this is so.

Ans :

2021

The poem describes a very simple happening in easy words. It tells us that sometimes even a small incident may prove to be of a larger significance. If one looks beyond the prejudices, he/she will get to know that nature can heal anything and everything.

5. The poem evokes a sense of black and white. Justify.

Ans :

2021

The poem is set in all white surroundings; everything is covered with snow. Amidst this white surrounding, a black crow appears and does something that clears the blackness from the poet's mind and heart. Hence, we can say that crow and sorrow depict 'black' and snow and the happiness of the poet signify white colour in the poem.

6. The crow and hemlock are usually used as negative references in literature. How is this different in this poem?

Ans :

2021

The poet Robert Frost is trying to break the stereotypes that consider a crow and a hemlock tree inauspicious. The poet has represented nature in quite an unconventional manner. He is trying to emphasise that even a crow and a hemlock tree

can bring about positive change in a person's life.

7. What is the underlying message for us in our hectic life with reference to the poem, 'Dust of Snow' ?

Or

What is the central idea of the poem 'Dust of Snow' ?

Or

What does the poet want to convey through the poem 'Dust of Snow' ?

Ans :

2020

In the poem 'Dust of Snow', the poet wants to convey that sometimes certain moments or actions which are simple have larger significance. They can change the mood of life of a person. The way a crow shakes down dust of snow on the poet inspires and gives him the idea to shake off his depressive thoughts, become cheerful and do something useful.

8. How has the poet observed nature in the poem 'Dust of Snow'?

Ans :

2018, 2010

The poet has observed the nature as a positive medium of change for him. The poet had been sorrowful and depressive mood in the poem. But then the way a crow shook snow dust off, it changed his mood. The nature gave him an inspiration to behave in positive manner.

9. What mood of the poet is reflected in the poem ? How does it reflect ?

Ans :

2017

The sorrowful and depressive mood of the poet is reflected in the poem. The use of the bird 'crow', which is ugly and harsh, and hemlock tree, which is a poisonous plant, reflect the poet's mood.

10. Justify the role of the crow in the poem "Dust of Snow" in changing the poet's mood.

Ans :

2017

I think, the way snow dust was shaken off changed his mood. Perhaps it gave the poet inspiration/idea to behave in the same manner-shake off his depressive thoughts and revive his cheerful mood.

11. Why does the poet use such poetically uncommon bird and tree ? What does it reflect ?

Ans :

2015

The poet seems to be in a depressive and sorrowful mood. In such a mood, one cannot think of sweet and beautiful side of nature. The harsh, bitter and poisonous images come to his mind. That is why he uses an uncommon, harsh, ugly crow and poisonous tree like hemlock.

18. _____ is the better option if the world had to perish.

- (a) Fire (b) Ice
(c) Strom (d) Rain

Ans : 2008
(b) Ice

19. _____ is the better option to destroy the world.

- (a) Rain (b) Strom
(c) Fire (d) Ice

Ans : 2008
(d) Ice

20. The poet brings about the contrast between the ice and _____ through this poem.

- (a) Slow Hatred (b) Destruction
(c) Love (d) Fire

Ans : 2008
(a) Slow Hatred

21. The destruction procedure is slow through

- (a) Fire (b) Storm
(c) Ice (d) Rain

Ans : 2008
(c) Ice

22. The cause of man's destruction is

- (a) family (b) gold
(c) lust (d) money

Ans : 2007
(c) lust

23. If the world is to perish twice, the poet favours

- (a) atom bomb (b) water
(c) ice (d) fire

Ans : 2007
(d) fire

24. What enough to destroy the world is

- (a) dictatorship (b) affection
(c) love (d) hatred

Ans : 2007
(d) hatred

25. What does violent desire refer to in this poem?

- (a) fire (b) ice
(c) both a and b (d) None of these

Ans : 2006, 2001
(a) fire

26. According to Robert frost, what will end one day

- (a) Fire (b) Ice
(c) Both a and b (d) the world

Ans : 2006
(d) the world

27. What is the Meaning of 'desire'?

- (a) Favour (b) Repulsion
(c) Quest (d) wish

Ans : 2005
(d) wish

28. What does the poet want to Convey through this poem?

- (a) We should not be greedy
(b) all humans should check their desires and hatred
(c) restrain our desires and love fellow beings
(d) both a and c

Ans : 2005
(d) both a and c

29. What do some people say ?

- (a) they believe that this existing world will end in fire
(b) they believe that this existing world will end in moon light
(c) they believe that this existing world will end in sun light
(d) they believe that this existing world will end in darkness

Ans : 2005
(a) they believe that this existing world will end in fire

30. What do the other say?

- (a) they believe that the world will end in water
(b) they believe that the world will end in Flames
(c) they believe that the world will end Frozen to Ice
(d) they believe that the world will end in Sea

Ans : 2005
(c) they believe that the world will end Frozen to Ice

31. Whom does the poet support?

- (a) the poet stands with those who believe that this existing world will end in fire
(b) the poet stands with those who believe that this existing world will end in Moon light
(c) the poet stands with those who believe that existing world will end sun light
(d) The poet stands with those who believe that this existing world will end in darkness

like that hailstorm that destroyed my crops, it felt like God himself was testing my faith.

Robert Frost: I understand, Lencho. Nature can be both a friend and a foe. Take, for instance, the dust of snow shaken from a hemlock tree. It seems so insignificant, but it changed my entire mood that day. It reminded me that even in the midst of life's challenges, nature can offer unexpected moments of beauty and solace.

Lencho: Indeed, Mr. Frost, your poem reminds me that nature's smallest gestures can have a profound impact on our lives. Perhaps God's response to my letter wasn't just about the money, but a reminder of His presence in the world around me.

Robert Frost: Nature has its own way of speaking to us, often when we least expect it.

3. As a crow you feel highly injured by the incorrect perception humans have about your species. Imagine yourself being a crow and write your opinion about this prejudice. Make a case for breaking stereotypes.

Ans :

2021

"I am a crow. How hard I try to make people happy with my cawing, humans consider me the bringer of bad luck. They shoo me away whenever I try to befriend them. Once a thief was trying to break into a house. I gathered all my crow friends and started nipping him in his head. It saved the house from burglary. The residents, instead of thanking, blamed the crows for the incident. Humans are getting logical and modernized. So, no species should be incorrectly perceived by them and these stereotypes must be broken now. Enough is enough."

4. Imagine that Frost is of present-day and has been invited to write for an ezine – "Teen Talk". He chooses to draw upon his experience with the crow and the dusting of snow to share his thoughts on 'Every cloud has a silver lining'. As Frost, express your thoughts on the e-zine.

Ans :

2021

Every Cloud Has a Silver Lining

I was standing under the hemlock tree and waiting for my office cab. I was heartbroken due to the sudden death of my father. I loved my father so much that I was unable to accept his demise. Suddenly a crow shook off some snow on me, I looked up angrily and picked up a stone to hit the crow. But, he flew fast and disappeared into the clouds. After his disappearance, a thought came to my mind that everyone has to leave one day. We are mortal. we cannot live here permanent.

I consoled my aching heart and diverted my thoughts toward otherworldly matters. I realised that every dark cloud has a silver lining. Our life is a swing of ups and downs, but nature has the power to heal all the sorrow and grief.

Positive attitude in life can make the world a better place to live in. Do you agree or disagree with reference to the poem 'Dust of Snow' ? Express your views bringing out the inherent values.

Ans :

2020

I completely agree with the statement that positive attitude can make the world a better place to live in Robert Frost, in 'Dust of Snow', talks of how an otherwise bad day altered into a not so bad one, due to the action of a crow. It was a seemingly disconnected occurrence that brought about a change of mood in the poet. One lesson that can be learnt from the poet, is to see the brightness amidst the gloom. The crow, the hemlock and the snow are all dark images, and yet, the poet sees the colour of happiness. Another lesson is that life is made up of small joys. It is through them that one can always manage to see positivity in negativity.

6. Simple moment proves to be very significant and saves rest of the day of the poet from being wasted. Explain on the basis of the poem 'Dust of Snow'.

Ans :

2018

The poet is in a depressive and sorrowful mood. Something sad and regretful has happened in his life. He is unable to overcome his negative thoughts.

A moment that seems quite simple, proves to have a larger significance in the poem-Frost makes us understand that little things have a big impact.

A crow on a hemlock tree is irrelevant. It does not offer an enchanting picture. Both the crow and the hemlock tree are dark symbols associated with death and negative thoughts. The crow shakes off the dust of snow on the poet. The crow's action is unintentional. But this small deed has a deep significant impact on the poet.

A moment that seems quite simple, proves to have a larger significance in the poem-Frost makes us understand that little things have a big impact.

The dust of snow is like a shower of blessings from the heaven above. The poet is delighted by the sudden shower. The dust of snow acts as a catalyst and changes his mood. The negative thoughts disappear and the poet is overjoyed that

12. How was the poet's mood before the dust of snow fell down on him ?

Ans :

2014

The poet was in a pensive and regretful mood. He considered that his day was ruined. It is because he felt bad about something that had happened that day. Perhaps, he was not able to achieve what he wanted to achieve on that day.

13. Do you think that the poet presents a very bright or cheerful side of nature in the poem? Give a reasoned answer.

Ans :

2013

No, Robert Frost has presented nature in its elemental and raw form. It is quite a dull and depressive wintry day. But the fall of fine dust of snow does bring a sudden change in the mood of the poet. It refreshes his spirits and brings cheerfulness to his depressed spirits and mood.

14. Where was the poet and what happened to him ?

Ans :

2011

There was snow everywhere. The poet was under a hemlock tree. The tree was covered with snow. Suddenly, a crow shook the tree. The dust of snow fell on the poet. It changed his mood.

15. What aspect of nature do the 'crow' and 'hemlock' represent?

Ans :

2010

'Crow' is a black, harsh-voiced bird and 'hemlock' is a tree with poisonous bitter fruit. Both are ugly and not beautiful. They represent the dark, depressive, sorrowful and bitter side of nature.

16. What does the poet's selection of such poetically uncommon bird and tree reflect?

Ans :

2009

The poet seems to be in a depressive and sorrowful mood. In such a mood, one cannot think of the sweet and beautiful side of the nature. The harsh, bitter and poisonous images come to his mind. That is why he uses an uncommon, harsh, ugly crow and a poisonous tree like hemlock.

17. What emotions and feelings of the poet are projected in the poem?

Ans :

2009

A sorrowful and depressive mood of the poet is reflected in the beginning of the poem. Mentioning of the bird 'crow', which is ugly and harsh, and hemlock tree, which is a poisonous plant, reflect the poet's sad mood which finally transformed into a happy mood.

18. What unusual beings of nature does Robert Frost talk about in his poem?

Or

What do 'crow' and 'hemlock' represent, joy or sorrow.

Ans :

2008, 2005, 2003

Robert Frost talks about a crow, a bird that is generally not mentioned in poems. He then talks about a hemlock tree, which is a poisonous plant and not about a beautiful tree.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. In the poem, 'Dust of Snow', the crow symbolically transforms the narrator's mood, while in the story, 'His First Flight', the baby seagull undergoes a literal transformation as it learns to fly. Analyse how these avian characters play similar or different thematic roles in their respective poem and story.

Ans :

2023

In 'Dust of Snow', the crow and the baby seagull in 'His First Flight', both serve as pivotal symbols of transformation and redemption, in their distinct ways. The crow's sudden interaction with the speaker in the poem brings about an unexpected change in the narrator's mood. The simple act of the crow shaking off snow onto the speaker becomes a metaphor for a transformative moment, shifting the narrator from a state of sadness to a renewed appreciation for the beauty of nature.

On the other hand, the baby seagull's literal transformation through flight in the story signifies a rite of passage and growth. World but also gains a newfound sense of confidence and independence, contributing to the overall theme of self-discovery and growth in the narrative.

The avian characters, while differing in their modes of impact, share the thematic role of catalyzing positive change, whether through a change in perspective or the achievement of a significant milestone.

2. Imagine Robert Frost from 'A Dust of Snow' met with Lencho from 'A Letter to God' and discussed the various ways nature can influence a person's mood. Create this conversation in not more than 120 words.

You may begin this way:

Lencho: As a farmer, my livelihood depends on nature and sometimes nature can be cruel.

Ans :

2023

Lencho: As a farmer, my livelihood depends on nature, and sometimes nature can be cruel. Just

- i. Fill the blank with one word.
The poet was out on the cold snowy day when the dust of snow fell on him and changed his sad ____.
- ii. The poetic device used in the line 'And saved some part' is Alliteration.
What effect does the poet wish to create?
(a) Emphasis (b) Comparison
(c) Humour (d) Personification
- iii. Of the many symbols the hemlock tree represents, state the one that Frost drew upon, in all likelihood, for this poem.
- iv. Comment on the poet's use of language in these lines.

Ans :

2020

- i. mood
- ii. (a) Emphasis
- iii. The symbol of healing is one that Frost drew upon, in all likelihood, for this poem.
- iv. The poet, Robert Frost, uses very simple, everyday and accessible language in the poem and it is through this language that he is able to invoke the strongest of emotions. The poet tells us though his mood at the beginning was sorrowful and despairing, overshadowed by darkness, which is symbolised by the crow, it has changed now to hopeful and devoid of regret, which is symbolised by the snow covered tree. Thus, an in-depth reading of the poem reveals that there's much more going on in what appears to be simple, straightforward lines.

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

The way a crow
Shook down on me
The dust of snow
From a hemlock tree
Has given my heart
A change of mood
And saved some part
Of a day I had rued.

- i. Complete the sentence appropriately.
The poet was out on the cold snowy day when the dust of snow fell on him and ____.
- ii. What is 'dust of snow'?
- iii. The crow and hemlock are usually used as negative references in literature. How is this different in this poem? Answer in about 40 words.

- iv. How does the use of 'a crow' and 'a hemlock tree' impact this extract?
(a) It forces the beauty of nature
(b) Represents prosperity
(c) Sets a gloomy atmosphere
(d) Tells about happy times

Ans :

2018

- i. changed his sad mood.
- ii. The 'dust of snow' means the fine particles of snow
- iii. It is true that the crow and the hemlock tree are considered negative images and symbols of bad omen. However, in the poem, they are shown in a positive light. They are shown to bring about a positive change in the poet who was in sorrow and despair.
- iv. (c) Sets a gloomy atmosphere

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

The way a crow
Shook down on me
The dust of snow
From a hemlock tree
Has given my heart
A change of mood
And saved some part
Of a day I had rued.

- i. Complete the sentence appropriately.
The poet was out on the cold snowy day when the dust of snow fell on him and ____.
- ii. The poetic device used in the line 'And saved some part' is Alliteration.
What effect does the poet wish to create?
(a) Emphasis (b) Comparison
(c) Humour (d) Personification
- iii. Of the many symbols the hemlock tree represents, state the one that Frost drew upon, in all likelihood, for this poem.
- iv. Comment on the poet's use of language in these lines.

Ans :

2018

- i. changed his sad mood
- ii. (a) Emphasis
- iii. The symbol of healing is one that Frost drew upon, in all likelihood, for this poem.
- iv. The poet, Robert Frost, uses very simple, everyday and accessible language in the poem and it is through this language that he is able to invoke the strongest of emotions. The poet tells us though his mood at the beginning

of danger can arise from hatred. Though slow and steady, it has the same effect that desire has on us. So if given an option between fire and ice, ice would be just as destructive as fire to destroy the world.

4. LITERARY DEVICES

1. **Rhyme Scheme** – abaa bcbcb
2. **Alliteration** – Repetition of a consonant sound at the start of two or more closely placed words. The Sound of ‘f’ in favour fire, ‘w’ in world will.
3. **Personification** – It is to give human qualities to inanimate objects. In this poem, ‘fire’ and ‘ice’ are capable of destructions. Thus the poet personifies fire and ice by giving them mind and Power to destroy anything.
4. **Enjambment** – It is defined as the thought or clause that does not come to an end at a line break, rather it moves over to the next line. For example,
‘From what I’ve tasted of desire
I hold with those who favour fire’

5. MESSAGE

Fire and Ice symbolism has a message that is often ignored. It wants to convey the destructive nature of human emotions and how it can take us to such extremes. Notice that for both the emotions, the poet mentions that he has tasted both the fiery desire and ice-cold hatred. He says that these emotions might seem harmless, but they can fester and turn us into someone who does not care about anyone or anything.

It is on us to keep things under control. These human emotions make us humans and we cannot discard them completely, but we have to keep them under control. We cannot let them take hold of us, or the whole world will come to an end’ either from fire or from ice or even both.

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Thinking About the Poem

1. There are many ideas about how the world will ‘end’. Do you think the world will end some day? Have you ever thought what would happen if the sun got so hot that it ‘burst’, or grew colder and colder?

Ans :

Many theories are present about ‘end’ of world. Many scholars think that there is age of sun and after completing the cycle of this age, the world will get ‘end’. But the poet had different theory about it. He thinks that the world will ‘end’ with fire and with ice.

2. For Frost, what do ‘fire’ and ‘ice’ stand for? Here are some ideas :

greed, avarice, cruelty, lust, conflict, fury, intolerance, rigidity, insensitivity, coldness, indifference, hatred

Ans :

For Frost both ‘Ice’ and ‘Fire’ stand for ‘end’.

‘Fire’ stands for : hatred, conflict, fury, avarice, and greed.

‘Ice’ stands for : lust, rigidity, a intolerance, insensitivity, coldness, indifferences.

3. What is the rhyme scheme of the poem? How does it help in bringing out the contrasting ideas in the poem?

Ans :

The rhyme scheme of the poem in the first stanza is abaa and in the second stanza, it is- bcbcb. The lines ending with the same rhyme have the same idea but the line that ends with a different note has the contrasting idea. In the first stanza, the first, third and fourth lines end with the words fire, desire, fire-same rhythm but the second line ends with the word ‘ice’, a different note, also it contrasts with ‘fire’. Thus, the poet has brought out the contrasting ideas in the poem by using different rhyme.

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. Who is the poet of the poem “Fire and Ice”?
(a) Leslie Norris (b) Robert Frost
(c) Carolyn Wells (d) Robin Klein

Ans :

(b) Robert Frost

2021

2. What does the poet compare fire with?
(a) hatred (b) desire
(c) hot (d) both a and c

Ans :

(b) desire

2021

3. What is the meaning of “perish”?
(a) bloom (b) rise
(c) die (d) glow

CHAPTER 2

FIRE AND ICE

1. INTRODUCTION

The poem “Fire and Ice” is written by Robert Frost. It expresses the profound idea that the world would end in either of two ways, either by ice or fire. Both the components are compared with self-destructing human emotions: hatred and desire. The poem, very artistically, underpins the philosophy that we let our emotions rule us and if don't control them they will surely destroy everything around us. Similarly, he thinks fire and ice, both are just as competent in bringing the world to a catastrophic end.

2. SUMMARY

End of the world

Robert Frost wants to aware the humanity that everything is perishable. Even the world will perish one day since it is inevitable. Death will come. It will spare none. The poet deals with a very sublime subject - the end of the world.

Two Different Beliefs

According to the poet people say that the world will end either in fire or in ice. Some say that this world will ‘end in the fire’. The world will be reduced to a fireball in the end. There are others who think that this world will end in ice, freezing all kinds of life into death and destruction.

Poet's View

Poet holds his view with those people who agree that the world will end in fire. ‘Fire’ is a symbol of human passions and unbridled desires. From the deepest desires often comes the deadliest hate that has a great capacity for destruction.

Destruction through Ice

But he also says that if the world had to perish twice, then ice too can be a good weapon of destruction. Ice is lack of warmth, and it represents hate. Hate in any form can lead to only destruction. Thus, ice would too be sufficient to wipe out our existence. So we should shun hatred, avarice and coldness.

3. EXPLANATION

Stanza 1

“Some say the world will end in fire
Some say in ice.
From what I tasted of desire
I hold with those who favour fire”

Word Meaning :

1. Desire – A strong feeling to have something.
2. Favour – Approval, support

Explanation :

In these lines the poet discusses about the possibilities by which the world will come to an end. One such possibility is the world ending in flames of fire. The poet compares the fire with human passion and desire. He also says that he is quite familiar with this concept of desire.

He also knows about the capability of desire which can be produced in human being. The poet frankly confesses that he agrees with those who believe that the world will be burnt to ash. He brings about the idea that human being let their emotions rule them and the consequence of unmonitored longing is chaos.

Stanza 2

“But if it had to perish twice,
I think I know enough of hate
To say that for destruction ice
Is also great
And would suffice

Word Meaning :

1. Perish – die
2. Suffice – be sufficient

Explanation :

In these lines the poet waves off the first option of fire and says that if the world has to expire twice, ice would be equally competent in ending it. He brings about a contrast between ‘ice’ and ‘hatred’. He says that hatred is also an emotion he is familiar with and that he knows what kind

the dust of snow has saved some part of the day that he had rued.

7. In the poem 'Dust of Snow' the poet describes nature in different forms. Explain how he presents nature.

Ans :

2017

The poem 'Dust of Snow' by Robert Frost presents nature as a combination of joy and sorrow. In his poem of two verses, the poet describes the transition of his personality from a depressed person to a happy person. The nature plays a significant role in changing his mood.

In the poem, the poet is sad and depressed and is under a hemlock tree. A hemlock tree is a poisonous tree with small white flowers. It represents grief as its leaves can kill a person. The crow that alights the tree is also a symbol of sorrow. These two appear to heighten the sorrow of the poet. Snow is almost opposite to the crow. The snow represents purity and joy.

So, when the crow shakes off the dust of snow on the poet, the mere touch with pure and joyful nature transforms the personality of the poet. It changes his mood and inspires him to live happily. Hence, the poet is overjoyed that some part of the day or his life that he had rued was saved.

8. There are times when we feel depressed and hopeless. We think that things will never change. Suddenly, a change comes in our mood when cheerfulness replaces the sense of regret. Justify the above statement in the context of the poem 'Dust of Snow'.

Ans :

2014

Change is the law of nature. Man's mood and spirits change like the change of the weather. In the poem, the poet is in a depressed and hopeless mood. He feels that the whole day has been wasted. But fortunately, this is not so. The falling of the fine dust of snow on him brings a sudden change in his mood. He realizes that all is not lost and that there is still hope for redemption. No doubt, a large part of the day has already been lost as it has been rather a bad day so far. But no more now. Now, a part of the day has been redeemed. The change of landscape has changed his mood. Cheerfulness has replaced the feeling of regret. His spirits are no more depressed. The sudden change outside also cheers his heart and mood.

9. Our attitude towards a situation evokes both negative and positive response. Analyze this with reference to the poem, 'Dust of Snow' to bring out the fact that life is unpredictable and uncertain.

Ans :

2011

Whatever situation life throws at us, it evokes both positive and negative responses. The poet, in the poem 'Dust of Snow,' was in a sorrowful mood initially. However, when a crow shook down the 'dust of snow' on him, his bitter mood changed into a more optimistic one. Now, being in a sorrowful or bad mood already, the poet could have got angry at the crow also. However, the dust of snow becomes a positive medium of change for him. It made him cheerful to some extent and helped him forget his sadness, at least for a few moments. Thus, we see that instead of seeing the negative aspect of a happening, one should focus on the positive aspect and as a result one's response may greatly affect the outcome of the incidents.

10. How has the poet succeeded in commenting on the philosophical aspect of life in a light-hearted manner? Highlight its importance in the present day life.

Ans :

2010, 2006

Truly, Frost has used simple language to drive home a very significant message, that little things sometimes, have a big impact. An easy, uncomplicated language, coupled with unusual visual imagery and brevity of words in the poem created the desired effect. The poet's bitterness had found reflection even in the environment around him. The noisy, dark crow, the poisonous hemlock and the icy snow around—all are depressing images. However, despite the negativity, when the crow shakes down the dust of snow onto the poet, it also shakes off some of the author's regretful thoughts. Today, when all of us live in a stressful atmosphere, the poem teaches us to gain happiness from little things. In gloomy time, one must be patient and positive to wait for good things to happen. In modern times, faith in the general goodness of the world and its people can hold great importance in making their situation more positive.

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

The way a crow
Shook down on me
The dust of snow
From a hemlock tree
Has given my heart
A change of mood
And saved some part
Of a day I had rued.

Ans :

2021

(c) die

4. What would suffice if the world were to perish twice?

(a) ice (b) fire
(c) hatred (d) both (a) and (b)

Ans :

2020

(d) both (a) and (b)

5. What would be a better option to end the earth?

(a) fire
(b) ice
(c) both are equally competent
(d) none of these

Ans :

2020

(c) both are equally competent

6. What is the rhyming scheme of the poem?

(a) abaa bcbcb (b) aaba bcbcb
(c) aaab bcbcb (d) abab bcbcb

Ans :

2020

(a) abaa bcbcb

7. Name the poetic device used in the line "I hold with those who favour fire"

(a) Assonance
(b) Alliteration
(c) Both a and b
(d) None of these

Ans :

2015

(c) Both a and b

8. Name the poetic device used in the line "Some say the world will end in fire"

(a) Metaphor (b) Imagery
(c) Alliteration (d) Oxymoron

Ans :

2015

(b) Imagery

9. Name the poetic device used in the line "To say that for destruction ice is also great"

(a) Metaphor (b) Imagery
(c) Alliteration (d) Oxymoron

Ans :

2014

(b) Imagery

10. Where has he used personification?

(a) fire (b) ice
(c) earth (d) both a and b

Ans :

2014

(d) both a and b

11. Why do some people say that the world will end in ice?

(a) because love among people is increasing fast.
(b) because hatred among people is increasing fast.
(c) because lust among people is increasing fast.
(d) None of these

Ans :

2014

(b) because hatred among people is increasing fast.

12. What is 'Ice' a symbol of?

(a) Lust (b) Love
(c) Desire (d) Hatred

Ans :

2013

(d) Hatred

13. What is 'fire' a symbol of?

(a) love and new desires
(b) lust and endless desires
(c) love and beginning of a new thing.
(d) Revolution

Ans :

2012

(b) lust and endless desires

14. What will the world end in?

(a) Fire and Ice (b) Fire
(c) Ice (d) None of these

Ans :

2011

(a) Fire and Ice

15. What will fire do to the world?

(a) put the world to an end.
(b) put the world to a new beginning.
(c) make the world developed
(d) None of the above

Ans :

2010

(a) put the world to an end.

16. The world may end either in fire or in

(a) Ice (b) Rain
(c) Storm (d) Earthquake

Ans :

2010

(a) Ice

17. The poet favours the

(a) Nothing (b) Ice
(c) Fire (d) Storm

Ans :

2009

(c) Fire

was sorrowful and despairing, overshadowed by darkness, which is symbolised by the crow, it has changed now to hopeful and devoid of regret, which is symbolised by the snow covered tree. Thus, an in-depth reading of the poem reveals that there's much more going on in what appears to be simple, straightforward lines.

4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"The way a crow
shook down on me
The dust of snow
From a hemlock tree."

- i. In what way does the language used in this poem challenge traditional ideas of what poetry should be?
- ii. What is the significance of an uncommon bird like a crow and a poisonous tree in the poem? What do they reflect about the poet and his overall mood and tone of the poem? Answer in about 40 words.
- iii. Complete the sentence with the appropriate option.
Of the many symbols the Hemlock tree represents, the one that Frost drew upon in all likelihood, for this poem is _____.
(a) longevity
(b) togetherness
(c) healing
(d) protection
- iv. Identify how has Frost used contrast in the given lines of the poem.

Ans :

2017

- i. Frost uses everyday symbols and language in free verse to expose his disheartened heart to the reader. It resembles more of simple prose but the imagery and the choice of vocabulary more than make up for the missing rhyme.
- ii. The poet seems to be in a sorrowful mood so, he cannot either see or appreciate the beautiful and sweet side of nature. Only bitter and harsh images crop up in his mind. That's why, he uses an uncommon bird like a crow and poisonous hemlock in the poem.
- iii. (c) healing
- iv. Frost has used the contrast between the fortitude displayed by the crow and the poet's own spell of indulging in self-pity to show that life moves forward and survives on hope.

5. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

The way a crow
Shook down on me
The dust of snow
From a hemlock tree
Has given my heart
A change of mood
And saved some part
Of a day I had rued.

- i. Fill the blank with one word.
_____ Figure of speech is used in the phrase 'dust of snow'.
- ii. What does the poet want to convey through the poem?
- iii. Which of the following best describes the use of synecdoche by the poet?
(a) A gun is only use
(b) Has given my heart, A change of mood
(c) And saved some part, Of a day I had rued
(d) A crow, Shook down on me
- iv. Comment on the poet's use of symbolism in these lines.

Ans :

2011

- i. Metaphor.
- ii. Robert Frost wishes to convey that sometimes ordinary moments or simple actions have a larger significance. They have the power to change the mood and sometimes perspective of a person. The shaking off the snowflakes by a crow inspires the poet to shed his bitterness and do something useful.
- iii. (b) Has given my heart, A change of mood
- iv. The poet has used the 'crow' and 'hemlock tree' as symbols to show emotions like dejection, gloom, and depression because he was bitter about life. Although these are ordinarily considered inauspicious, they change the poet's mood and uplift his spirits.



Ans :

2004

(a) the poet stands with those who believe that this existing world will end in fire

32. What has the poet tasted?

- (a) the poet has tasted the fruit juice
- (b) the poet has tasted the sadness
- (c) the poet has tasted the passion and pangs of love and desire
- (d) None of these

Ans :

2002

(c) the poet has tasted the passion and pangs of love and desire

33. Both, Fire and Ice will be enough for _____.

- (a) Humanity
- (b) Nature
- (c) Destruction
- (d) all living beings

Ans :

2002

(c) Destruction

34. Both the elements mentioned in the poem have one similarity what is this similarity?

- (a) they both are very important
- (b) they both are friends to humans
- (c) they both can end the world
- (d) all of these

Ans :

2002

(c) they both can end the world

35. Which word is opposite to 'adequate'?

- (a) fire
- (b) desire
- (c) Perish
- (d) Inadequate

Ans :

2001

(d) Inadequate

Short Answer Type Questions

1. "Fire and Ice" was first published in 1920. Briefly explain how WW I might have influenced the theme of the poem.

Ans :

2021

Ans: The poem is written shortly after the end of the first world war and is greatly influenced. The war proved it right how men's technological, economic and intellectual progress led to self-destruction. The speaker is worried about the survival of the world.

2. The tone of the speaker contrasts with the seriousness of the subject matter. Justify.

Ans :

2021

The speaker is presenting his personal opinion about the possibilities of the end of the world which is a serious matter. But the speaker's tone

is casual and conversational. He talks with the reader as if they are his friend. He is using casual words like, 'some say', 'I hold with', 'I think I know' etc.

3. Fire and Ice project a pessimistic outlook. Comment.

Ans :

2021

The poet links human desire to be the reason for the possible extinction of the world. The poem tries to imply that humanity should not try to innovate and develop new weapons. It projects a pessimistic outlook by suggesting that following dreams and passion by humankind may lead to catastrophic destruction on the earth.

4. The use of symbolism in the poem 'Fire and Ice' conveys the poet's message effectively. Expand with reference to the poem.

Ans :

2020

Poem discusses the way the world can end – Fire stands for greed/lust/human desire; Ice stands for hatred/coldness/human indifference; – world can end with either greed or indifference

5. For the poet, what does 'ice' stand for'? How is it sufficient to bring destruction?

Ans :

2016, 2009

For the poet, 'ice' stands for insensitivity and coldness, indifference and intolerance. These qualities are sufficient to bring destruction because they promote hatred amongst people and ultimately lead to destruction.

6. What do you think would be enough to destroy the world? Can Fire and Ice contribute to it?

Ans :

2015

Our desires and hatred would be enough to destroy the world. According to the poet, 'fire' represents 'desire' and 'ice' represents 'hatred'. Desires like fire, spread rapidly and engulf one's whole life. Similarly, 'hatred' fills the life with poison.

7. What is the underlying idea of the poem 'Fire and Ice'?

Ans :

2014

The poet equates fire with 'desire' and ice with 'hatred'. Both of these are growing with enormous speed. If we don't check them from growing, the world will perish: So we must restrain our desires and love our fellow-beings.

8. Which two ideas about how the world will end have been mentioned in the poem? Which ideas does the poet support more?

Ans :

2013

The two ideas mentioned are that the world will end in fire or in ice. Though the poet thinks both

- Ans :**
(b) in the shadow
- 16.** The tiger has vivid means bright coloured
(a) Skin (b) Eyes
(c) Strips (d) Hair
Ans :
(c) Strips
- 17.** The tiger was moving in the
(a) Forest (b) Bushes
(c) Cage (d) Locality
Ans :
(c) Cage
- 18.** The tiger should take few steps as the cage is too
(a) Big (b) Small
(c) Moving (d) Not male for him
Ans :
(b) Small
- 19.** The tiger is anrry because he
(a) is hungry (b) is ill
(c) is bitten (d) is imprisoned
Ans :
(d) is imprisoned
- 20.** The free tiger could hide itself behind the
(a) Banayan tree (b) Long grass
(c) Cage (d) Big stone
Ans :
(b) Long grass
- 21.** Snarling means
(a) Buzzing sound in the jungle
(b) Sound to make afraid the animals
(c) Sound in the water bodies
(d) Sound made by animal
Ans :
(d) Sound made by animal
- 22.** Pangs means
(a) Sharp tooth of animal
(b) Paws of tiger
(c) One kind of animal
(d) White hair of the animal body
Ans :
(a) Sharp tooth of animal.
- 23.** The free tiger could snarled around the
(a) Zoo
(b) Houses near the forest
- 2014 (c) Forest
(d) City
Ans :
(b) Houses near the forest
- 2014 **24.** The free tiger would terrorise the village people by showing his
(a) Eyes (b) Black stripes
(c) Tooth and claws (d) Huge body
Ans :
(c) Tooth and claws
- 2013 **25.** In reality the tiger is in the
(a) Circus tent (b) Jungle
(c) Cave (d) Concrete cell
Ans :
(d) Concrete cell
- 2013 **26.** Along with the tiger his _____ is also confined believed the cell.
(a) Strength (b) Cuts
(c) Wishes (d) Freedom
Ans :
(a) Strength
- 2011 **27.** At night the tiger hear the sound of
(a) A hunter (b) A patrolling car
(c) An another tiger (d) A deer
Ans :
(b) Patrolling car
- 2010 **28.** At night the tiger imprisoned could only do of
(a) Moving inside the cage
(b) Grambling
(c) Eating his stored food
(d) Staring the stars
Ans :
(d) Staring the stars
- 2010 **29.** The patrolling cars come to _____ at night.
(a) Vigilate the zoo (b) Kill the tiger
(c) Take the animals (d) Visit the place
Ans :
(a) Vigilate the zoo
- 2010 **30.** What sound does the tiger hear at night?
(a) Patrolling cars (b) Flowing river
(c) Truck Horn (d) All of these
Ans :
(a) Patrolling cars
- 2006

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

Long Answer Type Questions

1. Imagine that Nelson Mandela read 'Fire and Ice'. As Mandela, write a diary entry associating the impact of the troubled history of South Africa with the idea expressed in the poem.

You may begin like this:

10 May 1994, Tuesday 10 p.m.

Today, when I am the President of South Africa, I can't help recalling Robert Frost's 'Fire and Ice'.....(continue).....

Ans :

2021

10 May 1994, Tuesday 10 p.m.
 Today, when I am the President of South Africa, I can't help recalling Robert Frost's Fire and Ice. As Frost said if the world had to perish twice ice would suffice. I agree that hatred and indifference are sharper than any weapon to end the world. Half of the population of South Africa was forced to bear the tortures of apartheid.
 Today, we are free but humanity needs real independence from hatred and partiality. People of any colour and caste is no less than the other. The world seems beautiful only when you have beautiful eyes. Everyone has to be empathetic towards the less privileged people and a life-supporting natural environment. All should try to make a strong foundation based on equality and empathy to sustain life on earth.

2. Most of your classmates, like Frost, feel that man's greed and rage or hate would lead the world to its destruction.

You feel that the 'fire and ice' in Mankind can be addressed to create a harmonious world. Write a speech, for your classmates, expressing your belief/s with respect to the poem.

Ans :

2021

Fire and Ice

Good morning teachers and my friends! I do not believe in the pessimistic view of Sir Robert Frost that our desires can take the world near to destruction. I feel that this fire and ice can be tamed to cultivate a harmonious relationship among people.

"Necessity is the mother of invention". A man without desire is no more than an animal. Human has added comfort to his life by keeping passions and desires alive. I agree that unchecked aspirations sometimes turn harmful. However, by making strict rules and staying vigilant, this fire can be kept under control. Fire adds taste to food but burns the house as well if left uncontrolled.

3. How does the poem depict the two contrasting ideas- 'Fire' and 'ice' ? Can hatred destroy us and the world? Explain bringing out values which can make this world a better place to live in.

Ans :

2019

- (i) In this poem, Robert Frost refers to two contrasting ideas- Fire and Ice as predictions of how the world will end. According to him, some people say that the world will end in fire while some other hold that this will end in ice. The poet equates desire with fire and hatred with ice. Both the desire and hatred are growing with such a rapid speed that the world will come to an end either of the way.
- (ii) Yes, hatred can destroy us and the world. Intolerance in behaviour creates hatred that leads to fury and cruelty. One becomes hard-hearted and insensitive to the feelings of others.
- (iii) Love, brotherhood, tolerance, peace, contentment, sensitivity, benevolence, generosity among people can make this world a better place to live in.

4. In the poem 'Fire and Ice', how does the poet support the views of others ? How does he express his own opinion ?

Ans :

2015

'Fire and Ice' is one of Robert Frost's shortest poems. The poet starts the poem with the view of others. The first line of the poem begins with 'Some say the world will end in fire, Some say in ice'. According to the poet, there are some people who say that the world will end in fire and some say in ice.

The poet does not contradict their views. He says that he has tasted desire, therefore he supports those who favour fire. He knows that fire symbolizes greed and jealousy, and is capable of destroying the world.

The poet further says that if by chance the world had to perish twice, ice too could be a potential weapon of destruction. He says that he has experienced hate too and thus knows its capacity for destruction.

According to him, 'fire and ice' both these elements can destroy the world. Fire stands for desire and ice for hatred. The poet says these two can ruin mankind.

5. What do the metaphors of 'ice' and 'fire' convey to the readers ? Don't they represent the two extremes of human behaviour that can lead to the destruction and death of this world ? What is the message that the poet wants to give to the readers ?

are great for destruction, yet he seems to favour the idea of destruction of world in fire a little more than in ice.

9. What does 'fire' and 'ice' stand for and what is the general opinion regarding the world ?

Or

According to the poet what do 'fire' and 'ice' represent? Do you agree with him ?

Ans : 2013

According to the poet, 'fire' represents desire and 'ice' represents hatred. I do agree with the poet. Desires like fire spread rapidly and engulf one's whole life. Similarly 'hatred' fills the whole life with poison. It makes one hard-hearted and cruel.

10. According to some people, how will the world end? Why do they think so ?

Ans : 2011

Some people think that the world will end in fire. Here, fire symbolizes greed, desire, lust and intolerance. People will kill each other for materialistic gain and hence, annihilate mankind.

11. Why does the poet hold with those who believe that the world will end in fire ? How else can the world be destroyed ?

Ans : 2010, 2004

The poet takes side with those who believe that the world will end in fire. In the poem, fire stands for desire, greed and lust. It can burn the bonds of love and destroy mankind.

If the world had to perish twice, ice could also ruin it. Ice stands for lack of warmth. It stands for hatred and indifference, and thus has the capacity for destruction.

12. What message does the poem 'Fire and Ice' convey ?

Ans : 2010

The world can be ruined by negative emotions but the poem does not compare fire and ice. It tells us that both fire and ice are capable of ruining mankind. The poet wants us to live in harmony and give up greed, hatred and intolerance. The poem conveys the message that in order to save the world, we must be kind, loving and contented.

13. Do you think 'Fire and Ice' is a symbolic poem ?

Ans : 2010

Yes, I think that the poem 'Fire and Ice' is a symbolic poem. In the poem, fire stands for greed, avarice, lust and fury. The ice stands for coldness, cruelty, hatred, conflict, intolerance and indifference. Both fire and ice are capable of destroying mankind.

14. What will be the cause of the end of the world if it has to perish twice ?

Ans : 2009

This world is not eternal. Its end is certain. The poet sides with those people who think that 'fire' will cause the end of the existing world. But if this world has to perish twice then 'ice' is just as strong to bring the end of the world as 'fire' is. Icy reasoning devoid of human love and sympathy, and full of hatred is sufficient to bring an end of this world.

15. How does Robert Frost caution the common man?

Ans : 2007

Man is selfish, avaricious, lustful, indifferent and hateful. Robert Frost cautions the common man and says that he should not forget the bitter reality that everything in this world is transitory and death is inevitable.

16. What are the ideas about how the world will end?

Ans : 2006

The ideas of the poet about how the world will end are extremely opposite to each other. Some people say the world will end due to very hot conditions and some others say that it will end because of extreme cold conditions.

17. How does the use of language help in making the poem effective and meaningful ?

Ans : 2006

Frost chooses words from the everyday talk in his poem. The poem is full of colloquial tone and conversational language. The contrast between simple and precise vocabulary, and the vague gravity of its subjects makes the poem serious and meaningful. The abrupt beginning of the opening sets the tone of the speech and makes the poem vivid and lively.

18. "I think I know enough of hate". What does the speaker know about hate ?

Ans : 2005

The poet says that he knows enough of hate, but we are not told if he has first-hand knowledge about hate or if he experienced it at a distance. But the poet's intuitive power reminds him that it is no less dangerous than the fire of lust. It can also play a trick upon anybody as it is a silent killer.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

stands for desire and greed and ice here stands for hatred and rigidity.

- iii. (a) Sarcastic
- iv. Robert Frost cautions the common man and says that he should not forget the bitter reality that everything in this world is transitory and death is inevitable. So man should avoid being too desirous or too indifferent.

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

Some say the world will end in fire
Some say in ice.

From what I've tasted of desire
I hold with those who favour fire

- i. Fill the blank with one word.
The poetic device used in the line 'Some say the world will end in fire' is _____.
- ii. What is the speaker's mood when he talks of 'what I've tasted of desire'?
- iii. State which of the terms given below, can be applied to the statement taking into account the poet's belief system.
The above stanza ponders over whether the world will end due to fire or ice.
(a) It is a hypothesis.
(b) It is an irrefutable belief.
(c) It is a debatable issue.
(d) It is a scientific theory.
- iv. Comment on the poet's use of language in these lines.

Ans :

2018

- i. metaphor
- ii. Frost is pessimistic and hopeless about the politicians' hunger for destruction.
- iii. (b) It is an irrefutable belief.
- iv. The poet has used figurative language with fire as a symbol of war and violence and ice as a symbol of hatred and cold-bloodedness. The word 'desire' denotes the power-hungry heads of governments and militaries. Frost thinks that war will destroy the world.

NODIA



CHAPTER 3

A TIGER IN THE ZOO

1. INTRODUCTION

The poem “A Tiger in the Zoo” is written by Leslie Norris. It explains the agony and helplessness of a caged tiger that lives in a zoo. The poet explains what his life could be if he had been a free animal. The poet has tried to explain about the condition of animals that are caged by human beings for their own fun.

2. SUMMARY

Tiger in the Zoo

This poem contrasts a tiger in the zoo with the tiger in its natural habitat. There is a tiger in the zoo. Lively stripes are visible on his body. In the cage he walks in quiet rage over the pads of quiet velvet. In the zoo, he has no freedom. He is kept in a cemented cell behind the bars. He feels angry, frustrated and helpless.

Tiger in Jungle

When the tiger is in his natural habitat, he lurks in shadow. He slips through the long grass near the water source where he can catch the healthy deer. Basically, the poet wants to say that the actual life of a tiger is to live in jungle

Terrorising the Village

While moving around the houses at the corner of the jungle, he tries to terrorise the village with his bare teeth and claws.

Ignoring Visitors

If he is put behind the bars in a concrete cell, he moves in cage there. He pays no attention to the visitors who came to watch him.

Staring the Stars

At night in the zoo he hears the sounds of patrolling cars. In the silence of the night, he stares at the brilliant stars with his bright eyes.

3. EXPLANATION

Stanza 1

He stalks in his vivid stripes
The few steps of his cage,
On pads of velvet quiet,
In his quiet rage.

Word Meaning :

1. Stalks - follows
2. Vivid - bright coloured
3. Pads - paws of tiger
4. Rage - anger

Explanation :

Here the poet says that the tiger that is confined in the zoo moves around in the cage under his bright coloured skin. He further says that the tiger can take only a few steps because the cage is small and it is not easy to move in it. One cannot hear his footsteps because he has very soft feet, like velvet because of which there is no sound of the tiger's footsteps. The tiger tries to control his anger by quietly walking in the limited area of his cage. He is angry because he is not free.

Stanza 2

He should be lurking in shadow,
Sliding through long grass
Near the water hole
Where plump deer pass.

Word Meaning :

1. Lurking - To be hidden as to wait for your prey

Explanation :

The poet says that if this tiger was free, he would have hid himself behind the long grass near the water bodies so that he could easily catch a deer in order to have it as its food. Basically, the poet wants to say that the actual life of a tiger is to live in jungle where he could catch his prey and eat it but the tiger in the cage can not do so.

Stanza 3

tiger with white fangs
He should be snarling around houses
At the jungle's edge,
Baring his white fangs, his claws,
Terrorising the village!

Word Meaning :

1. Snarling - warning sounds made by animals
2. Baring - uncovered
3. Fangs - Sharp tooth of animals

Explanation :

The poet says that if the tiger would have been free, he would have snarled around the houses located at the outskirts of the forest. He would terrorise people with his sharp tooth and claws. This would create fear among the people living in the villages.

Stanza 4

But he's locked in a concrete cell,
His strength behind bars,
Stalking the length of his cage,
Ignoring visitors.

Word Meaning :

1. Concrete - building made of bricks, cement, sand and water

Explanation :

Now the poet comes to the reality of the tiger that is inside the cage. He says that the tiger is confined in a strong cell which is made of strong building material. He further says that as the tiger is behind bars, so his ferociousness is also behind the bars. He just stalks in the cage. He never tries to terrorise the visitors because his power is restricted by the cage. Therefore, he never tries to terrorise the visitors as he cannot attack them.

Stanza 5

He hears the last voice at night,
The patrolling cars,
And stares with his brilliant eyes
At the brilliant stars.

Word Meaning :

1. Patrolling - to guard, to vigil

Explanation :

The poet says that in the night, the tiger hears the sounds of the patrolling cars. Patrolling cars are the vehicles of police which are used to guard at night. So, in the night the tiger hears the sounds of these cars. He then stares at the shining stars with his shining eyes. The poet wants to say that

the tiger is sad and as he is confined in the cage, so, he cannot do anything. Therefore, he stares at the stars in the night and tries to divert his thoughts towards them.

4. LITERARY DEVICES

1. **Personification** – the tiger is personified, e.g. 'he stalks'
2. **Enjambment** – line continues to next line without any punctuation mark, e.g. sliding through long grass.....deer pass
3. **Oxymoron** – use of adjectives opposite in meaning (quiet rage)
4. **Alliteration** – use of sound 'p' in 'plump pass'
5. **Imagery** – the poet has tried to create an image of tiger's activities (lurking in shadow)
6. **Onomatopoeia** – use of sound words e.g. snarling.

5. MESSAGE

In the poem "A Tiger in the Zoo", the poet is conveying an important message that wild animals should be in their natural habitat.

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS**Thinking About The Poem**

1. Read the poem again, and work in pairs or groups to do the following tasks :
 - (i) Find the words that describe the movement and actions of the tiger in the cage and in the wild. Arrange them in two columns.
 - (ii) Find the words that describe the two places, and arrange them in two columns.
 Now try to share ideas about how the poet uses words and images to contrast the two situations.

Ans :

(i)

Movement in the cage	Movement in the wild
Stalks	lurking
Few steps	sliding
Stalking	snarling
Ignoring	Terrosiring
	hears
	stares

(ii)

Cage	Wild
Pads of velvet quiet	Sliding through long grass
Concrete cell	Water hole
Strength behind bars	Jungle's edge
	Patrolling cars
	Brilliant stars.

In this poem, the poet uses words and images to contrast the condition of the tiger in the zoo and in the jungle. While in the cage' the tiger walk in a proud but stiff and angry manner. That shows that the tiger is not happy there. He hides his violent, uncontrollable anger which is quite evident. He feels helpless because he is locked in a concrete cell. His walking is confined to his cell only. He does not feel free because his strength is behind bars. That is why he does not take any notice of the visitors to the zoo. He just stares longingly at the bright stars.

On the other hand, the poet shows the tiger in the jungle quite free. He is lurking in shadow and sliding through long grass. He is waiting in hiding so that he can prey upon the well-built deer who pass by the water hole. As a free animal, he could be snarling around houses baring his white fangs and his claws so as to terrorise the village people. Thus, in the cage, his movements are quite restrained and restricted But, in the jungle, he is quite free to move and do whatsoever he likes.

2. Notice the use of a word repeated in lines such as these:

- (i) On pads of velvet quiet, In his quiet rage.
(ii) And stares with his brilliant eyes At the brilliant stars.

What do you think is the effect of this repetition ?

Ans :

The effect of the repetition is to add musical rhythm to the poem. The repetition of words show how horrible the situation is. It high-lights the strange atmosphere.

3. Read the following two poems-one about a tiger and the other about a panther. Then discuss : Are zoos necessary for the protection or conservation of some species of animals ? Are they useful for educating the public ? Are there alternatives to zoos?

The Tiger

The tiger behind the bars of his cage growls,
The tiger behind the bars of his cage snarls,
The tiger behind the bars of his cage roars.
Then he thinks.

It would be nice not to be behind bars all
The time

Because they spoil my view

I wish I were wild, not on show.

But if I were wild, hunters might shoot me,

But if I were wild, food might poison me,

But if I were wild, water might drown me.

Then he stops thinking

And...

The tiger behind the bars of his cage growls,

The tiger behind the bars of his cage snarls,

The tiger behind the bars of his cage roars.

PETER NIBLETT

The Panther

His vision, from the constantly passing bars,
has grown so weary that it cannot hold
anything else. It seems to him there are
a thousand bars; and behind the bars, no world.

As he paces in cramped circles, over and over,
the movement of his powerful soft strides

is like a ritual dance around a centre
in which a mighty will stands paralysed.

Only at times, the curtain of the pupils

lifts, quietly. An image enters in,

rushes down through the tensed, arrested muscles,
plunges into the heart and is gone.

RAINER MARIA RILKE

Ans :

We all know the importance of freedom. In the same way animals, birds, beasts and other natural entities like to live in their natural habitats. There they are free to move and act. When any species of an animal is put behind the bars, it loses its freedom. All his actions and activities become controlled in a cell or a cage. For example, a tiger likes to kill his prey itself. It does not like the flesh of an animal killed by others. Its encounter in the jungle gives it more fascination and interest but in the captivity all such things come to a standstill.

It is true that their protection or keeping them in a zoo is a must. It provides handsome knowledge to the public because one cannot go in the jungles for fear of being killed. Further we know that in a free atmosphere one attains the plump personality very soon but the life in prison is nothing but a living hell.

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. The poem draws a contrast between _____ and _____.

(a) animals, human beings
(b) tiger in a zoo, tiger in a forest
(c) tiger in a zoo, humans
(d) humans, tiger in forest

Ans :

2021

(b) tiger in a zoo, tiger in a forest

2. What has been personified in the poem?

(a) tiger (b) forest
(c) zoo (d) all of these

Ans :

2021

(a) tiger

3. Name the poetic device used in the line "In his quiet rage".

(a) metaphor (b) assonance
(c) Oxymoron (d) Consonance

Ans :

2021

(c) Oxymoron

4. Name the poetic device used in the line "He stalks in his vivid stripes".

(a) metaphor (b) assonance
(c) Oxymoron (d) Consonance

Ans :

2021

(d) Consonance

5. Name the poetic device used in the line "On pads of velvet quiet".

(a) metaphor (b) assonance
(c) Oxymoron (d) Consonance

Ans :

2021

(a) metaphor

6. Name the poetic device used in the line "Baring his white fangs, his claws".

(a) metaphor (b) assonance
(c) Oxymoron (d) Consonance

Ans :

2020

(d) Consonance

7. Why should he be lurking in shadow?

(a) out of fear (b) out of anger
(c) to catch the deer (d) both a and b

Ans :

2020

(c) to catch the deer

8. By "ignoring visitors", what is the poet trying to say?

(a) tiger knows his power is restricted
(b) there is no use of showing rage
(c) he is less terrorising because of the cage
(d) all of the above

Ans :

2016

(d) all of the above

9. What describes "tiger in a cell"?

(a) Locked in concrete cell
(b) snarling around houses
(c) shadow, long grass
(d) baring his white fangs

Ans :

2016

(a) Locked in concrete cell

10. What described "tiger in a jungle"?

(a) Locked in concrete cell
(b) his strength behind bars
(c) ignoring visitors
(d) baring his white fangs

Ans :

2015

(d) baring his white fangs

11. At what does the tiger look at in night?

(a) Patrolling cars (b) His House
(c) Stars (d) All of these

Ans :

2015

(c) Stars

12. How do the eyes of the tiger look?

(a) Sad (b) brilliant
(c) dark (d) Light

Ans :

2014, 2011

(b) brilliant

13. How does the caged tiger react to the visitors?

(a) He ignores them (b) With a happy face
(c) With a sad face (d) Proudly

Ans :

2014

(a) He ignores them

14. Who passes near the water hole?

(a) Fat Pig (b) Fat Buffalo
(c) Fat Deer (d) All of these

Ans :

2014

(c) Fat Deer

15. Where should the tiger hide to himself?

(a) behind the tree (b) in the shadow
(c) in the house (d) in the jungle

Ans :

2013

The poet has touched the universal issue of the ending of this existing world. He gives a message as well as a warning to human beings. Man is swaying between two extremes - 'fire' and 'ice'. Sometimes he is torn by his unbridled fire of passions, desires, lusts, longings and fury. This results in greed, avarice and passionate love. All such extremes can lead to unavoidable conflicts and disasters. If not controlled, they can help in bringing an early end of this world. The other extreme behaviour of human beings is born out of cold and 'icy' reasoning. When our cold reasoning becomes completely devoid of human warmth, feelings, love and sympathy, it breeds hatred. Hatred born out of cold indifference, insensitivity and rigidity are strong enough to cause the end of this world. According to the poet humanity can redeem itself and possibly save or delay the end of the world by giving up such extremes of thinking and behaviour.

6. Discuss how extreme behaviour can hasten the end of the world with respect to the poem 'Fire and Ice'.

Ans :

2008

'Fire' symbolises desire and 'ice' symbolises hatred. Desire is a kind of intense love or want that focuses people on getting and possessing and acquiring. Our society is full of people who spend their lives working to get a bigger and better TV, a more stylish car or a more extravagant house. This kind of desire can lead people to destruction in the form of bankruptcy or even broken relationships. Frost's poem speaks on the issue of greed corrupting people and even society. The power of hate, which is symbolised by ice is just as great as desire. While desire consumes quickly, hate produces shy yet restrained devastation. For instance, hate is the root cause of racism and war. It can linger in people's mind for lifetimes. Moreover, it consumes the hater even more than the person hated. It thus, ruins lives.

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow:

But if it had to perish twice,
I think I know enough of hate
To say that for destruction ice
Is also great And would suffice.

- i. Fill the blank with one word.
When the speaker says that ice could also bring about the end of the world, he refers to _____, as the means for destruction.

- ii. What does the speaker's alignment with those who favour ice, suggest?
- iii. Which of the following best describes the speaker's attitude towards destruction caused by ice?
- (a) Indifferent (b) Fearful
(c) Dismissive (d) Respectful
- iv. Comment on the poet's use of language in these lines.

Ans :

2023

- i. hatred/indifference/bitterness/apathy/detachment/rigidity
- ii. The speaker's alignment with those who favour ice suggests that they have seen the destructive consequences of a lack of empathy and emotional connection.
- iii. (d) Respectful
- iv. The language in these lines is simple and easy to understand. The tone of the lines is conversational and states an important message through its simple words. The simplicity of these lines create awareness for a wider audience.

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

Some say that the world will end in fire,
Some say in ice.

From what I've tasted of desire
I hold with those who favour fire.
But if it had to perish twice,
I think I know enough of hate
to say that for destruction ice
is also great and would suffice.

- i. Fill the blank with one word.
According to the poet, fire refers to violent desires passion and _____.
- ii. What does the poet wants to convey through the poem?
- iii. Identify the most likely tone of the poet in the given lines :
'to say that for destruction ice is also great'
- (a) Sarcastic (b) Humorous
(c) Optimistic (d) Encouraging
- iv. How does Robert Frost caution the common man? Answer in about 40 words.

Ans :

2021

- i. jealousy
- ii. Through the poem 'Fire and Ice', the poet wants to convey that the world will come to an end either by fire or by ice. Fire, here

31. Where is the tiger's strength locked?

- (a) behind the jungle (b) behind the bars
(c) behind his nature (d) None of these

Ans :

2006

- (b) behind the bars

32. How does the tiger walk in the cage?

- (a) With sadness (b) With Happiness
(c) With confusion (d) With pride

Ans :

2005

- (d) With pride

33. How does the tiger feel in the cage?

- (a) he was in sad mood
(b) he was in happy mood
(c) he was in angry mood
(d) he was in surprised

Ans :

2005

- (c) he was in angry mood

34. What does a tiger have on his body?

- (a) spots (b) stripes
(c) stars (d) all of these

Ans :

2005

- (b) stripes

35. How does a tiger feel in a cage?

- (a) happy (b) contented
(c) free (d) angry

Ans :

2005

- (d) angry

36. How are the pads of a tiger?

- (a) velvet (b) rough
(c) hard (d) all of these

Ans :

2004, 2001

- (a) velvet

37. What does the tiger hunt near the water hole?

- (a) lions (b) elephants
(c) deer (d) all of these

Ans :

2004

- (c) deer

38. Where do the tigers hunt the deer?

- (a) in the cage (b) near the water hole
(c) near the cage (d) all of these

Ans :

2004

- (b) near the water hole

39. Where should the tiger be snarling?

- (a) at the jungle's edge (b) at the cage's edge
(c) in the cage (d) all of these

Ans :

2003

- (a) at the jungle's edge

40. What is 'brilliant' in the poem 'Tiger in the Zoo'?

- (a) the tiger's eyes (b) the stars
(c) both a and b (d) none of these

Ans :

2001

- (c) both a and b

Short Answer Type Questions

1. How does Leslie Norris use vivid imagery and metaphorical language in, A Tiger in the Zoo, to effectively depict the confinement and oppression, experienced by the captive tiger.

Ans :

2023

Leslie Norris use vivid imagery and metaphorical language in 'A Tiger in the Zoo', to effectively depict the confinement and oppression, experienced by the captive tiger. Phrases such as 'vivid stripes' and 'pads of velvet quiet' define the tiger's physical beauty. However, metaphor like 'quiet rage' and 'ignoring visitors' depict the animal's frustration of being captivated in a small cage.

2. It is said that an animal's eyes have the power to speak a great language. Explain with reference to the tiger.

Ans :

2021

The tiger is ignoring the visitors depicts that he does not want to make eye contact with them. His eyes want to say that he is angry with humans. His act of staring at the stars shows his desire to live in the open sky.

3. How does the poem point to the cruelty of animals in captivity?

Ans :

2021

The poem hints at the cruelty of animals in captivity by thinking about their natural habitat and habits. The poet imagines how a tiger attacks a deer near the water hole, terrorises the villagers living on the outskirts and snarls at night.

4. The poet celebrates the strength of the tiger in this poem. Counter the statement.

Ans :

2021

The poet points out that he is stalking in a small space instead of chasing his prey in the vast forest. His quiet rage has replaced loud roars and velvety paws have substituted his sharp claws.

5. Write the appropriate response comprising of at least two reasons to present a counter to the following:

You may begin this way: That's just one-sided. Zoos are beneficial too. Firstly, they.....
(continue).....

Ans : 2021

That's just one-sided. Zoos are beneficial too. Firstly they provide a glimpse of the vast wildlife in a safe and secure environment. Secondly, the animals on the verge of extinction can be taken care of in a simulated environment and restored to grow their numbers. Animals get a friendly place to live after their natural habitats vanish.

6. On pads of velvet quiet,
In his quite rage.
Who is referred to here? Why does he express his anger quietly?

Ans : 2014, 2009

A tiger caged in the zoo is referred to here. He expresses his anger quietly because he is in the confines of his cage, restricted and quite helpless and he is unable to do anything about it.

7. The tigers in the poem 'A Tiger in the Zoo' has some obvious limitations, describe them in contrast to its natural habitat.

Ans : 2013

Tiger in the zoo was confined to a small space. He was angry that he couldn't be free to move, hunt and do what he pleased forced to be a showpiece; and the cage's bars obstructed his view of the starry night. This was all unlike his natural habitat where he hunted fiercely and slept fitfully.

8. What do you understand by 'His strength behind bars' ? What kind of a cage is he locked in ?

Ans : 2012

The tiger is wretched in its cage. His power is confined behind the bars. He was locked in a small cage where he is devoid of freedom. He feels unhappy, frustrated, restless and angry.

9. What is the theme of the poem ?

Or

What message does the poet want to convey through the poem 'Tiger in the Zoo'?

Ans : 2012

The poet wants to convey that it is cruel to keep the wild animals in small enclosures of the zoo, away from their natural habitat. They feel angry, helpless and unhappy and remember their life and environment in the forest.

10. Why do you think the tiger was stalking in the cage ? What does it show ?

Ans : 2010

I think the tiger was feeling restless and uneasy in that small cage. He seems to be frustrated and helpless as he could not come out of the cage in the open and enjoy his freedom. He did not want to be a mere showpiece and a source of entertainment for the human beings.

11. Stalking the length of his cage,
Ignoring visitors.
What is the tiger doing? Why is he ignoring the visitors?

Ans : 2008

The tiger is moving inside his cage. He is ignoring visitors because he does not like to be confined in the cage. He would rather wander about in his natural habitat, the jungle.

12. "But he's locked in a concrete cell." How does the tiger behave in a concrete cell ?

Ans : 2008

The tiger is locked in a strong and solid concrete cell of the zoo. His strength is restrained behind the bars of the cell. He is walking in his cell in a proud and stiff manner without taking any notice of the visitors. The tiger is wretched in its cage as his power is confined behind the bars.

13. "He hears the last voice at night." What kind of voice is it ? What does the tiger do at night ?

Ans : 2007

While in the cage of the zoo, the tiger hears at night the last voice of the patrolling cars which keep watch over the area. At night, he stares at the very bright stars with his bright eyes.

14. How does the tiger prepare himself for hunting when he is in his natural habitat-the jungle ?

Ans : 2006

The mighty tiger roams freely in his natural habitat - the wilds. He knows how to ambush his prey. He waits for his prey lurking unseen in the shadow of trees. He slides through the long grass quite unnoticed. He comes to the water hole where he can find his favourite prey - plump deer.

15. 'He stalks in his vivid stripes.' Elaborate this line describing how does the tiger look in his cage?

Ans : 2005

The tiger has sharp, clear stripes on his body. He looks majestic as he moves slowly and quietly in his cage. He has soft velvety pads. He makes no noise as he moves. He has brilliant shining eyes.

16. What would the tiger have been doing if he were in the jungle?

Ans :

2005

The tiger would have been lurking in the shadows of trees. He would have been sliding slowly through the long grass or sitting by some water hole and waiting for some plump deer to pass that way.

17. What would the tiger have been doing if he were at the edge of the jungle?

Ans :

2003

The tiger would have been moving around the houses in a nearby village. He would have been growling while moving around. The sight of his white fangs' and his terrible claws would have filled the villagers with terror.

SCAN QR CODE
JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL



Long Answer Type Questions

1. Imagine the tiger writing a diary entry conveying how he feels helpless, angry and frustrated in the concrete cell. He writes about his desire to be free. Write that diary entry. You may begin like this:

15 October 2020, Thursday 9:00 pm
I feel so vulnerable and annoyed at my state. I don't know if I can ever be a free denizen of the forest.

Ans :

2021

15 October 2020, Thursday 9:00 pm
I feel so vulnerable and annoyed at my state. I don't know if I can ever be a free denizen of the forest. I love to eat the fresh meat of a deer or cow after chasing them for hours. Frozen or stale food is not my cup of tea.
Just eating and lying idle makes me fat and chubby. But, I like to flaunt my muscular body. I am born to live in an open jungle. I am the king of a forest and I feel suffocated in this concrete cell. Why do humans interfere in our life and spoil our natural ecosystem? They should mind their own business.

2. Imagine that Man has been accused by the tiger of cruelty in an animal court. What would be the tiger's two major accusations and how would Man defend them? Present your answer in two paragraphs.

Ans :

2021

	Tiger's Accusations	Man's Defence
1.	You have been killing us for our velvety skin	Our ancestors hunted you to show off hair manhood. We have prohibited all sorts of hunting and killing of animals.
2.	You have encroached on our natural habitat	We are making zoos and national parks to safeguard your species

3. The tiger in the poem 'A Tiger in the Zoo' presents a contrasting image with the tiger in the poem 'How to Tell Wild Animals'. Compare and contrast the two tigers with reference to the manner in which they have been presented in both poems.

Ans :

2021

The two tigers have been depicted with a sharp contrast in two different poems. The main point of difference is as follows-

The poem – A tiger in the zoo – talks about the life and mental status of a tiger who is put behind bars in a cage. He is calm and helpless. He is strolling inside a limited area in his cage. He might be missing his days of freedom. He is angry with visitors at the zoo but he prefers to ignore them and does not roar or attack anyone.

Whereas the second poem – How to tell wild animals – references an Asian lion whose roar is enough to push anyone towards death. This large and tawny animal lives freely in the jungles of the East. He is looking for his prey and might not ignore the visitors in the jungle.

4. Some animals are becoming extinct; the tiger is one such animal. What do you think could be the reason? Should this decrease in number be stopped? Why?

Ans :

2020

The primary threats to the survival of tigers are poaching and habitat loss due to intensive development. The tigers are getting extinct. The tigers are on the list of endangered species and the reason behind it is human interference. Humans hunt tigers for their commercial benefits. The loss of habitats also leads to a reduction in prey animals, so the area can support fewer tigers. Moreover, tigers are poached for trophies such as teeth and fur and for traditional medicines. The growing population clears the forest areas to make them agricultural land for food. This create

quiet,” conjures a clear, visual image of the tiger’s majestic yet restrained presence. The juxtaposition of the tiger’s silent, graceful movement against the backdrop of his “quiet rage” effectively communicates the simmering anger and frustration of a magnificent creature trapped within the confines of a cage.

iv. vivid

4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow:

He should be snarling around houses
At the jungle’s edge,
Baring his white fangs, his claws,
Terrorising the village!
But he’s locked in a concrete cell,
His strength behind bars,
Stalking the length of his cage,
Ignoring visitors.

- i. Fill in the blank with one word.
The speaker describes the tiger as ‘stalking’ up and down his cage to show how _____ the tiger felt.
- ii. What could be a reason the speaker mentions the behaviour of the tiger at the jungle’s ‘edge’ and not at its centre? Answer in about 40 words.
- iii. Which of these explains the meaning of the phrase ‘His strength behind bars’?
 - (a) The tiger’s strength is in its ability to break free from the cage it is in.
 - (b) The tiger’s strength is shown when he pushes against the bars of the cage.
 - (c) The tiger’s strength is in his resilience and ability to adapt to a new environment.
 - (d) The tiger’s strength is confined within the bars of the cage and this makes him less threatening.
- iv. Why does the tiger ignore the visitors?

Ans :

2023

- i. restless/trapped/confined
- ii. The author has described the tiger at the ‘edge’ of the jungle to show how a tiger would react and respond to the people encroaching his territory. He would scare them. This is done to contrast how the tiger behaves towards people when caged.
- iii. (d) The tiger’s strength is confined within the bars of the cage and this makes him less threatening.

- iv. The tiger ignores the visitors because he is disinterested in his confined environment and feels indifferent towards the visitors.

5. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow :

He should be lurking in shadow,
Sliding through long grass
Near the water hole
Where plump deer pass.

- i. According to the extract, the poet wishes for the tiger to be ‘sliding’ through the foliage as this would
 - (a) assist in keeping the prey unsuspecting of the predator’s sound.
 - (b) aid in camouflaging the presence of the predator before it rushes in.
 - (c) help the predator pounce on the prey comfortably without getting tired.
 - (d) support the predator’s vision as it eyes its prey.
- ii. Fill the blank with one word.
‘Shadow’ here, refers to the shadow of long _____
- iii. What is the poet trying to convey in the given extract? Answer in about 40 words.
- iv. Which word in the extract means the same as ‘fat’?

Ans :

2020

- i. (a) assist in keeping the prey unsuspecting of the predator’s sound.
- ii. grass
- iii. In these lines, the poet is filled with sorrow for the caged tiger. He feels that a tiger should be free in his natural habitat. He should be hiding in the shadows and quietly moving through the long grass near the water hole. He should be waiting for a fat and healthy deer to pass, in the hopes of getting a heavy meal. The poet wants to convey that the actual life of a tiger is in a jungle and not in a cage.
- iv. plump



- iv. Which phrase would correctly substitute 'quiet rage' in the given sentence from the extract ?

The few steps of his cage on pads of velvet quiet in his 'quiet rage.'

Ans :

2024

- i. In its natural habitat, the tiger would roam freely in the jungle, whereas in the zoo, it is confined to a cage, highlighting the contrast between its freedom and captivity.
- ii. The speaker insinuates that the tiger's natural behavior involves roaming freely in its jungle habitat, near human settlements, where it can assert its dominance and instill fear, unlike the confined and restricted environment of the zoo.
- iii. The poet vividly portrays the tiger's captivity and frustration by contrasting its natural habitat with the confines of the cage. Through imagery like "vivid stripes" and "quiet rage," the poem evokes the sense of confinement and captivity experienced by the tiger.
- iv. Suppressed anger.

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow :

But he's locked in a concrete cell,
His strength behind bars,
Stalking the length of his cage,
Ignoring visitors.

- i. Why is the tiger 'stalking the length of his cage' ?
- ii. What is the significance of the use of the word 'locked' to describe the concrete cell where the tiger is kept and how does it contrast with the tiger's presence in its natural habitat ? Answer in about 40 words.
- iii. Complete the sentence with the appropriate option :
The lines from the poem tell us that the tiger is _____.
(a) enjoying his time in the cell
(b) being indifferent to visitors because it is a daily routine for him
(c) not as strong as his counterpart in the jungle
(d) wanting to be free from the cage
- iv. Identify the type of literary device used in the line:
'But he's locked in a concrete cell'

Ans :

2024

- i. The tiger is 'stalking the length of his cage' likely due to a natural instinct to move and a restless spirit, which is not satisfied with the confines of the cage.
- ii. The use of the word 'locked' emphasizes captivity and the lack of freedom. It contrasts sharply with the tiger's natural habitat, where it would roam freely and be the master of its own domain. In its natural habitat, the tiger would not be confined or controlled, unlike the restrictive and unnatural concrete cell.
- iii. (b) being indifferent to visitors because it is a daily routine for him
- iv. The literary device used in the line 'But he's locked in a concrete cell' is a metaphor. The phrase compares the tiger's cell to a prison, highlighting the confinement and the unnatural state of living for a wild animal.

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow :

He stalks in his vivid stripes
The few steps of his cage,
On pads of velvet quiet,
In his quiet rage

- i. Explain the contrast created by the words, 'stalks' and 'few steps of his cage'.
- ii. Which of the following best describes the tiger's feelings in the context ?
(a) anger (b) conflicted
(c) pessimism (d) apprehension
- iii. Comment in about 40 words on the poet's use of imagery in the above extract.
- iv. Which word in the stanza means the same as 'clear and bright' ?

Ans :

2024

- i. The word 'stalks' suggests a powerful, purposeful, and potentially threatening movement, typically associated with predators in the wild, demonstrating their freedom and dominance. However, this powerful action is confined to the "few steps of his cage," creating a stark contrast that highlights the limitations imposed on the tiger, restricting its natural behaviors and freedom.
- ii. (a) anger
- iii. The poet's use of imagery in this extract vividly captures the tiger's condition and emotions. Describing the tiger's movement as stalking "in vivid stripes" on "pads of velvet

problem of tiger's habitat. Tigers are the backbone of food web and forest, hence should be protected.

5. Animals, big and small, are being used by humans for their selfish ends ? What is your opinion regarding the exploitation of animals ? Mention some examples that you can see a possible solution to this problem.

Ans :

2018

It is true that animals, big and small are being used by humans for their selfish ends. We use them for our own benefits. Animals are killed, poached and captured for commercial benefits. Humans have encroached on their space and sheltered them in zoos which is truly inhuman. In the poem, the poet has showed the plight of a tiger. He is captured and confined in a small cage. He is frustrated, angry and restless. It longs for freedom. Confinement brings bondage and bondage is cruelty.

Everyday we see many animals suffering due to humans. Monkeys bears captured and made to dance on roads. Elephants are chained and forced to lift heavy loads. Many animals are sheltered in zoos for the entertainment of human beings. They are kept in poor conditions. They are treated inhumanly. We should learn to respect nature and its inhabitants. After all, these animals to share the earth with us.

6. Freedom is such an essential virtue that is valued not only by human beings but also by animals alike. Justify the statement with reference to Leslie Norris's poem 'A Tiger in the Zoo'.

Ans :

2015, 2014

Freedom is an essential virtue valued by all. Not only humans but even the denizens of the forest value it. No one knows it better than a caged tiger in a zoo. Animals, particularly the animals of the wilds, feel free only in their natural habitats. Any attempt to 'domesticate' ferocious and mighty animals like lions or tigers by locking them in concrete cells will be against natural justice. The tiger roams around in the jungle hunting its prey at will. He rarely kills his prey for sport. He kills them only when he is hungry. He knows how to ambush his prey. He lurks unnoticed in the long grass before pouncing upon his prey. He also knows where he can find his favourite plump deer. He may come out of the forest sometimes and terrorise the villagers living at the outskirts of the jungle. But he rarely kills them, until he is provoked.

The same tiger feels depressed and low in spirits when he is put behind the bars. He stalks constantly the length of his cage in his 'quiet rage'. He ignores the visitors and feels helpless. Behind

the bars, he keeps on staring at the brilliant stars in the open sky. This sadly reminds him of his loss of freedom and intensifies his grief.

7. "And stares with his brilliant eyes, At the brilliant stars". How does this line sum up the condition of the tigers in the zoo? What is expected of human beings in this regard?

Ans :

2008

The tiger in the poem is wretched in its cage. It longs for freedom. It may be well looked after, but the fact of the matter is that unless one is free, one is not alive. Confinement brings bondage, and bondage is cruelty. One may argue that at least this way they all will not be killed and become extinct. However, taking away one's freedom to keep one alive kills the desire to live anyhow. Even human beings throughout the world oppose the chains of slavery and oppression. But they are inhuman towards other living creatures. Human beings have encroached upon their space, and are sheltering them in zoos which is truly inhuman. Human beings must learn to respect nature.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow :

He stalks in his vivid stripes
The few steps of his cage,
On pads of velvet quiet,
In his quiet rage.
He should be lurking in shadow,
Sliding through long grass
Near the water pole
Where plump deer pass.
He should be snarling around houses
At the jungle's edge,
Baring his white fangs, his claws,
Terrorising the village!

- State any one point of contrast between the tiger in the zoo and in its natural habitat.
- When the speaker suggests that the tiger should be "Snarling around houses at the jungle's edge"? What does he insinuate about the tiger's natural behaviour and habitat?
- The poet's skillful use of imagery effectively depicts the confinement and frustration of the tiger. Elaborate in about 40 words.

CHAPTER 4

HOW TO TELL WILD ANIMALS

1. INTRODUCTION

‘How to Tell Wild Animals’ is a humorous poem by the poet Carolyn Wells. This poem suggests some dangerous ways to identify wild animals. The poet gives a beautiful description of the Asian Lion and the Bengal Tiger. Then she points out about the Leopard and the Bear. She also describes the Hyena for its smiling face and the crocodile for its tears. Later, the poet describes how the Chameleon changes its colour. Basically, in this poem the poet describes the wildlife vividly and in a lively manner.

2. SUMMARY

Identification Between the Lion and the Tiger

The poet asks his readers if they happen to visit a jungle in the east, and if a large and tawny animal advances and roars at them, it is the Asian Lion. Then he tells about a polite type of forest animal. It is the Bengal Tiger. It has black stripes on his body. Being a noble beast, it may greet you. Through their natures, we can identify particular animals.

Difference Between a Leopard and a Bear

The skin of a leopard has spots over its body. It goes on strolling in the forest. It has the nature of attacking the other. So we must know it to be the leopard. It will go on leaping on us. While walking in our yard, we may come across a bear. It will hug and love us. It will give us a touch of love. While differentiating these wild animals a new person can feel confusion.

Crocodile and Hyena

The poet tells that a crocodile shows sadness because it will fall on its victim immediately. Another animal hyena is a happy looking animal. It will fascinate a person with its smiling face but attacks treacherously.

Chameleon and Lizard

The poet tells that a chameleon has neither ears nor wings. It is like a lizard. It is a small type of

creature. We can always find it on the trees in the forest.

Thus we can differentiate different types of forest animals. We can enjoy their roaming, activities; habits and stay in the jungle. It will give us knowledge as well as happiness.

3. EXPLANATION

Stanza 1

“If ever you should go by chance
To jungles in the east;
And if there should to you advance
A large and tawny beast,
If he roars at you as you’re dyin
You’ll know it is the Asian Lion.”

Word Meaning :

1. Tawny - brownish yellow in color
2. Beast - a dangerous animal

Explanation :

The poet warns us against a chance meeting with one of the wild beasts that roam about in the forests of the East. A terrible and ferocious brownish-yellow colour beast can be noticed approaching us. And if that beast frightens us to death with its loud roar, then we can be sure it is the Asian Tiger.

Stanza 2

“Or if some time when roaming round,
A noble wild beast greets you,
With black stripes on a yellow ground,
Just notice if he eats you.
This simple rule may help you learn
The Bengal Tiger to discern.”
Strolling- to walk in a relaxed manner

Word Meaning :

1. Discern - make out
2. Ground - background

6. Can you find other examples of poets taking liberties with language, either in English or in your own language(s) ? Can you find examples of humorous poems in your own language(s)?

Ans :

It is right that much of the humour in the poem arises from the way language is used. But, in the poem, we find many instances of humorous situations also. The way one can find the wild animals is itself presented in a very funny manner. One has to sacrifice one's life just to know or to identify various animals. But the lines which I like most in the poem are :

"Hyenas come with merry smiles ; But if they weep they're Crocodiles".

I like these lines because, first of all, these lines tell us about the fact that the hyenas are the only animals who can laugh. But the most humorous point in the second line is the mockery on the crocodiles who weep. It is an established fact that the crocodiles shed fake tears when they swallow their victim.

7. Much of the humour in the poem arises from the way language is used, although the ideas are funny as well. If there are particular lines in the poem that you especially like, share these with the class, speaking briefly about what it is about the ideas or the language that you like or find funny.

Ans :

The following lines show humour in this poem :

1. He roars at you as you're dying.
2. Twill do no good to roar with pain,
3. Hyena comes with merry smiles.
4. A true Chameleon is small.

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. Who is the author of "How tell wild animals"?
(a) Paulo Coelho (b) Roald Dahl
(c) Carolyn Wells (d) Arup Kumar Dutta
Ans : 2021
(c) Carolyn Wells
2. Which animal would you find in the jungles of the east?
(a) Asian Lion (b) Bengal Tiger
(c) Leopard (d) Bear
Ans : 2021
(a) Asian Lion

3. Which animal's roar is enough to kill you?
(a) Asian Lion (b) Bengal Tiger
(c) Leopard (d) Bear

Ans :

(a) Asian Lion

2020

Which animal is she referring to when she says, "A noble wild beast greets you"?

- (a) Asian Lion (b) Bengal Tiger
- (c) Leopard (d) Bear

Ans :

(b) Bengal Tiger

2020

5. Which animal do you find while walking in a yard?

- (a) Asian Lion (b) Bengal Tiger
- (c) Leopard (d) Bear

Ans :

(d) Bear

2020

6. How does a bear kill you?

- (a) By hugging you hard
- (b) with its roar
- (c) by taking a leap on you
- (d) None of the Above

Ans :

(a) By hugging you hard

2015

7. Which animals are the beasts of prey?

- (a) Hyena (b) Crocodile
- (c) Both (a) and (b) (d) None of these

Ans :

(c) Both (a) and (b)

2015

8. Who cries while catching their prey?

- (a) Hyena (b) Crocodile
- (c) Both (a) and (b) (d) None of these

Ans :

(b) Crocodile

2015

9. Who smiles while catching their prey?

- (a) Hyena (b) Crocodile
- (c) Both (a) and (b) (d) None of these

Ans :

(a) Hyena

2014

10. What is the difference between a chameleon and a lizard?

- (a) Chameleon doesn't have ears and wings
- (b) Lizards don't have ears and wings
- (c) Lizards don't have wings
- (d) Chameleons doesn't have wings

greet you, with black stripes with yellow background.

3. **Metaphor** : This poetic device is used when a covert comparison is made between two different things or ideas. Tiger's paws are compared with velvet (pads of velvet) since both are soft and smooth when touched.
4. **Alliteration** : Alliteration is repetition of the same sound that is used in the beginning of the closely placed words. The phrases 'lep and lep again', 'roaming round', 'very, very hard' and 'novice might nonplus' are examples of alliteration in the poem.
5. **Repetition** : Repetition is a poetic device that is used to repeat single words, phrases or even stanzas at intervals. He'll only lep and lep again. Who hugs you very, very hard
6. **Personification** : This poetic device is used to bestow human qualities on something that is not human. The poet refers to the tiger not as 'it' but as 'he'. In the poem, the 'hyena' and 'crocodile' have been personified. The human qualities of 'smiling' and 'weeping' have been given to the hyena and crocodile respectively.
7. **Irony** : Irony is a poetic device that is used by the poets to bring humour or satire on somebody or something. It is done by giving two meanings to a word or a phrase, i.e., surface meaning and underlying meaning.
 - (i) A noble wild beast greets you.
 - (ii) He'll give you just one more caress.
8. **Poetic Licence** : With the use of poetic licence, the poet not only maintains the rhyme scheme but also creates a humorous effect in the poem. The poet has employed poetic licence in her use of language in the poem. In some stanzas, she has shortened words like 'lept', 'lep', and 'dyin'. Also, certain sentences are framed differently in the poem like 'novice might nonplus' and 'if strolling forth, a beast you view'.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

5. MESSAGE

In the poem "How Tell Wild Animals" the poet suggests in a lighter and humorous way that wild animals are very dangerous and one should exercise extreme caution when one is near them. One should keep a safe distance from them.

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Thinking About The Poem

1. Does 'dying' really rhyme with 'lion'? Can you say it in such a way that it does?

Ans :

If we speak the full word 'dying' then it does not rhyme with lion, but if 'g' of dying is silent, as the poet has done in the poems it does rhyme with lion.

2. How does the poet suggest that you identify the lion and the tiger ? When can you do so, according to him?

Ans :

2000

The poet suggests that though roaring or 'eating' one can identify the lion or the tiger. We can do so according to him though eating across a large and tawny beast or a noble wild beast with black stripes on a yellow ground.

Do you think the words 'leapt' and 'leap' in the third stanza are spelt correctly? Why does the poet spell them like this ?

Ans :

No, the spelling of 'leapt' are not correct. The poet has spelt these words incorrectly for poetic effect.

4. Do you know what a 'bearhug' is ? It's friendly and strong hug-such as bears are thought to give, as they attack you! Again, hyenas are thought to laugh, and crocodiles to weep ('crocodile tears') as they swallow their victims. Are there similar expressions and popular ideas about wild animals in your own language (s)?

Ans :

Yes, I know that it's a bear as the bear hugs his prey tightly with both hands and presses him to death. There are indeed similar expressions and popular ideas about wild animals in every language. For example, Hyenas are the only animals who can laugh. Crocodiles are known for shedding fake tears as they swallow their victims. In my language also are some famous phrases about wild animals

5. Look at the line "A novice might nonplus". How would you write this 'correctly' ? Why is the poet's incorrect line looks better in the poem ?

Ans :

The correct form is 'A novice might get nonplussed'. In the poem, the incorrect line seems better because it helps in maintaining the rhythm of the poem.

Explanation :

The poet tells us that if we come across another animal in the forest and the approaching animal has black stripes on a yellow hide and we are impressed with its size and majesty and if it eats us, then the simple rule would be that it might have been a Bengal Tiger.

Stanza 3

“If strolling forth, a beast you view,
Whose hide with spots is peppered,
As soon as he has lept on you,
You’ll know it is the Leopard.
Twill do no good to roar with pain,
He’ll only lep and lep again.”

Word Meaning :

1. Hide - animal skin
2. Peppered - covered with spots

Explanation :

The poet now introduces us to another animal in the forest. He tells us that if we come across an animal which has spots on its body and it jumps on us, then surely it is a Leopard. It can tear us apart. It will be of no use to cry because it would still jump on us. So we have to be careful.

Stanza 4

“If when you are walking around your yard,
You meet a creature there,
Who hugs you very, very hard,
Be sure it is a Bear.
If you have any doubts, I guess
He’ll give you just one more caress.”

Word Meaning :

1. Yard - a piece of land
2. Caress - love fondly

Explanation :

The poet now tells us if we are walking in a yard and some animal comes and gives a tight hug, then we can be sure it is a Bear. Bears are thought to be very good wrestlers so, it will give us a really tight hug. Though a friendly hug is called a bear-hug but when an actual bear hugs us it may not be that friendly because it hugs us to kill. If we have any doubts, then we can be sure when a bear actually hugs us to death.

Stanza 5

“Though to distinguish beasts of prey
A novice might nonplus,
The crocodile you always may
Tell from the Hyena thus :

Hyenas come with merry smiles;
But if they weep they’re Crocodiles.”

Word Meaning :

1. Novice - someone new to a job
2. Nonplus - be puzzle

Explanation :

The poet once again warns us that a novice may not be able to distinguish between animals he comes across in a forest. Hence the poet helps us to differentiate between a crocodile and a hyena. A hyena always laughs when it swallows its victim and it resembles a human laughing. A crocodile shed tears while eating its victim. Thus, the poet warns us not to wait for a hyena to laugh or a crocodile to weep.

Stanza 6

“The true Chameleon is small,
A lizard sort of a thing;
He hasn’t any ears at all,
And not a single wing.
If there is nothing on the tree,
It’s the chameleon you see.”

Word Meaning :

1. ‘It’s - it is
2. Chameleon - small lizard that can change its color

Explanation :

The poet gives a description of a chameleon which can be found in a garden. It is a small lizard which doesn’t have ears or wings. We will be unable to see it on a tree even when it is sitting there. It is an expert in camouflage. It changes colour as per its surroundings which helps it to escape danger.

4. LITERARY DEVICES

“How to Tell Wild Animals” is a poem of six stanzas, making a total of 36 lines. The rhyme scheme of the poem is ‘ababcc’.

1. **Tone** : The poet narrates the poem in a humorous tone. Her descriptions of how animals like tiger, lion and leopard kill are intended to make us laugh. Her statement about a bear hug is also an example of humorous tone employed in the poem.
2. **Imagery** : The use of descriptive language by a poet or an author that helps the reader to visualise the pictures in one’s mind. For example, the image of Bengal tiger is created when we read the lines ‘A noble beast

Ans :

2013

(a) Chameleon doesn't have ears and wings

11. Name the literary device used in the line "He hasn't any ears at all".

- (a) Assonance (b) Inversion
(c) Enjambment (d) Alliteration

Ans :

2012

(d) Alliteration

12. Where is the Chameleon generally found?

- (a) In the Garden (b) In the trees.
(c) In the sky. (d) In the land.

Ans :

2012

(b) In the trees.

13. The poet was talking about the jungle of _____ in the first stanza of the poem.

- (a) North (b) South
(c) East (d) West

Ans :

2012

(c) East

14. What is the special feature of the crocodile?

- (a) weeps while eating its prey.
(b) happy while eating its prey.
(c) angry while eating its prey
(d) none of the above.

Ans :

2011

(a) weeps while eating its prey.

15. Which animal looks like a lizard?

- (a) Crocodile (b) Hyena
(c) Chameleon (d) Giraffe

Ans :

2011

(c) Chameleon

16. A lion could kill man with its simple

- (a) Look (b) Roar
(c) Paws (d) Jab

Ans :

2011

(b) Roar

17. Who would hush you while walking in the yard?

- (a) Deer (b) Giraffe
(c) Bear (d) Leopard

Ans :

2010, 2009

(c) Bear

18. From which poem has this stanza been taken?

- (a) Dust of Snow
(b) The Ball Poem
(c) Amanda

(d) How to Tell Wild Animals

Ans :

2010

(d) How to Tell Wild Animals

19. Where are the Asian Lions found?

- (a) Eastern countries of the world
(b) Northern countries of the world
(c) Southern countries of the world
(d) Western countries of the world

Ans :

2010

(a) Eastern countries of the world

20. What is the special feature of the Bengal Tiger?

- (a) white stripes on his yellow body.
(b) black stripes on his white body.
(c) red stripes on his yellow body.
(d) black stripes on his yellow body.

Ans :

2008

(d) black stripes on his yellow body.

21. The poet makes a guess that the beast will give you

- (a) a merry laugh (b) a good roar
(c) a loving touch (d) a pleasant smile

Ans :

2008

(c) a loving touch

22. How is the Bengal Tiger described?

- (a) Noble dinosaur (b) Noble wild beast
(c) Noble dragon (d) None of these

Ans :

2007

(b) Noble wild beast

23. What is the special feature of the Hyena?

- (a) Merry smiles (b) Sadness
(c) Happiness (d) None of these

Ans :

2005

(a) Merry smiles

24. How is the leopard's skin?

- (a) has stripes on his skin
(b) has holes on his skin
(c) has spots on his skin
(d) none of the above

Ans :

2005

(c) has spots on his skin

25. The chameleon has been compared to

- (a) a rabbit (b) a lizard
(c) a mouse (d) a snake

Ans :

2003

(b) a lizard

6. **Enjambment** - It is the continuation of a sentence without a pause beyond the end of a line, couplet, or stanza. e.g. "I saw it go merrily, down the street"
7. **Symbolism** - It is the use of symbols to represent ideas or qualities. In the poem, ball and balls represent childhood, possessions and even the father of poet.

5. MESSAGE

The message of the poem "The Ball Poem" is that we get things in our life which become a part of our lives. We feel that they will always remain with us. Thus we form an attachment with them. However a day comes when the thing is no more with us. At such a situation, we feel depressed and hopeless. According to the poet, losing our possessions is a harsh reality of our life on earth. We cannot get away from it. Hence we have to face such a situation and then try to move on.

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Thinking About The Poem

1. Why does the poet say, "I would not intrude on him"? Why doesn't he offer him money to buy another ball ?

Ans :

The poet says, I would not intrude on him, because he has entered a situation where he is not welcomed. He has lost a ball. He doesn't offer him money to buy another ball because he wants the boy to realise that losing anything in life is not good.

2. ".....Staring down/All his young days into the harbour where/His ball went....." Do you think the boy has had the ball for a long time ? Is it linked to the memories of days when he played with it ?

Ans :

Yes, I think the boy had that ball for a long time. The expression 'all his young days into harbour' suggest this. It is also linked with old memories when he used to play with it.

3. What does "In the world of possessions" mean ?

Ans :

It implies that this world is full of persons who want to possess more and more strength, wealth and power.

4. Do you think the boy has lost anything earlier ? Pick out the words that suggest the answer.

Ans :

I don't think the boy has lost anything earlier. The first loss is shocking and full of grief-the line- 'An ultimate shaking grief fixes the boy' reflects it. Also in the 'senses first responsibility' -the word 'first' shows that it was his first loss.

5. What does the poet say the boy is learning from the loss of ball ? Try to explain this in your own words ?

Ans :

The poet says that the boy is learning to cope up with the loss of the ball. He is experiencing grief and learning to grow up in this world of possessions. He learns that there are so many things in life that are to be lost and cannot be brought back. It is useless to feel sorrow for it.

6. Have you ever lost something you liked very much? Write a paragraph describing how you felt then, and saying whether-and how-you got over your loss.

Ans :

Grieving Over The Loss of One Rupee

It is a case of bye-gone times when I was studying in VIth class. My father was a head teacher. We were five brothers and two sisters. At that time only three chaps were school going. He used to give us one rupee each daily. It was made of brass and silver. While leaving for the house from the school, we bought some eatables from the shop. The shopkeeper gave us so many items that we could fill our belly. One day while returning, I lost my rupee from the pocket. I did not accompany my brothers and returned earlier than them. My mother asked about my earlier arrival. I could not contain myself and a river of tears started rolling from my eyes. I hesitatingly uttered ... rupee. She understood the loss of the rupee since it had a great value in those days. Immediately my mother showered me deep affection and gave another rupee. I got relief and felt happiness.

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. Who is the poet of the poem 'The Ball Poem' ?
 (a) Sylvia Plath (b) W.B Yeats
 (c) Robert Frost (d) John Berryman.

Ans :

(d) John Berryman.

2021

12. How does a leopard behave when he sees someone?

Ans :

2007

A leopard has spots on his hide. These spots are black in color and appear on his yellow skin. He has a great speed with which he pounces upon his prey. As soon as he sees a prey, he leaps over him at once. He attacks it and devours it in no time. He is terrifying and powerful.

13. How does the poet describe the bear?

Ans :

2006

The poet describes the bear in a humorous way. As soon as the bear comes near a human being, he embraces him tightly. Then he starts to make his hug tight. He starts squeezing one to death. On some occasions, he will hug him lovingly too. That's why, a warm tight hug is known 'a bear's hug'.

14. How does the poet describe the hyena and a crocodile?

Ans :

2005

The poet describes the crocodile and the hyena in a funny and humorous manner. The crocodile shed tears when it approaches its victim. The hyena has happy smiles on its face when it hunts a prey. The laughter of the hyena is similar to that of a human being.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. 'Many animals can be identified according to the poets' suggestion. Name the animals. Which ones would you like to identify? Are there any lessons for us from this poem?

Ans :

2022

The poet has listed down the ways of identifying seven animals in the poem, viz., the lion, the Bengal tiger, the leopard, the bear, the hyena, crocodiles and chameleons. As for me, I would like to identify the bear, the Bengal Tiger and the leopard. However, putting my life on the line just to identify the tiger and the leopard doesn't seem worth the risk! So if I see a noble beast with black stripes on yellow, I'll know the tiger and the peppered spots will reveal the leopard. The bear hug, I wouldn't mind! The poetess, using humour, seems to warn readers against venturing too close to these animals.

2. The poet has successfully used humour to be able to 'tell' or identify 'Wild Animals'. How do you think we need lots of it in our daily life?

Ans :

2020

Humour is the fuel of life. Without it, it would become difficult to continue living. Today, life of the common man is typically mired in stress, tension, problems and sadness. It is amazing

how the smallest problems may take on epic proportions for a common person. In such a situation, it becomes necessary to have a little humour in life. It gives us the much needed respite from our monotonous routine, and helps us face life more positively. Thus, the poetess' successful use of humour helps liven our minds, and brings a smile on our faces.

3. Every animal is unique and has some special characteristics. What tricks does the poet adopt in distinguishing various wild animals?

Ans :

2015

No doubt, every animal is unique. Every wild animal has his own special trait, colour, size and characteristics. The Asian Lion is found in the jungles of the eastern regions. It is a huge and mighty creature with brownish hide. His roar is enough to terrorise a person to death. The Bengal Tiger is a 'noble' and impressive wild animal. He has yellowish hide and black stripes all over it. The Leopard has dark spots all over his body. He is very agile. The moment he sees its prey, he pounces upon it without showing any mercy. The bear is known by his strong and tight hug. It becomes rather difficult for a novice to distinguish among wild animals. However, hyenas and crocodiles can be easily recognised. Hyenas come smiling merrily while crocodiles appear to be weeping. The chameleon is a small creature like a lizard. He has no ears and doesn't have even a single wing. You can find him sitting on a tree without even knowing it is there.

Carolyn Wells takes liberties with language and employs humour to describe the wild animals. Give some examples of humorous descriptions in the poem.

Ans :

2009

It depends on the subject matter what style a poet chooses to adopt while writing a poem. The poem 'How to Tell Wild Animals' describes wild animals and how to distinguish them. To avoid oversimplification and monotony, the poet uses 'humour' as an effective weapon. The 'humour' used in the poem is suggestive and mild. It is not biting or scathing in effect. If the Asian Lion "roars at you as you're dying". The Bengal Tiger is a 'noble' wild beast that "greet you" when you are roaming round in the jungle. The unsparing Leopard will show no mercy and it will "do no good to roar with pain." If you have any doubts, the bear will "give you just one more caress." The poet uses subtle humour when he says: "Hyenas come with merry smiles; But if they weep, they're Crocodiles".

Ans :

2006

(b) River

19. The boy lost his ball at the –

(a) Street (b) Water
(c) Forest (d) Garden

Ans :

2005

(a) Street

20. Here the ball symbolizes _____ in the poem.

(a) Hope (b) Simple toy far play
(c) Dreams (d) Memories of
childhood

Ans :

2005

(c) Memories of childhood

21. Now the boy should understand the responsibility of _____ of his things.

(a) Taking care (b) Giving value
(c) Loving (d) Giving worth

Ans :

2004

(a) Taking care

Short Answer Type Questions

1. 'The Ball Poem' initially appears simple but it is actually quite impactful and intense. Comment upon the theme of 'The Ball Poem'.

Ans :

2024

"The Ball Poem" delves deeply into themes of loss, maturation, and the harsh reality of impermanence. Through the lens of a boy losing his ball, it reflects on the poignant moment of coming to terms with loss and the inevitable process of growing up, teaching a profound lesson on the acceptance of life's transient nature and the inevitability of letting go.

2. If you were the poet, which toy would you use, instead of a ball. Give a reason for your response.

Ans :

2021

I were the poet of this poem I would have used a remote-controlled car because children like battery-operated toys more nowadays, although a ball is the best option for all ages and generations of children.

3. Explain how, "Out of sight, out of mind" might apply to the boy, towards the end of the poem.

Ans :

2021

The ball flowed away with the water and was out of sight of the boy who was grief-stricken and could not think of anything else so he was out of mind.

4. A popular quote states: Responsibility is self-taught. How does the poem address this thought?

Ans :

2021

The poem addresses the fact that one must be careful about their possessions otherwise they can be lost. After losing the ball the boy will be more responsible and vigilant about his belongings to avoid losing something in future. It is our duty to take care of our possessions to keep enjoying them.

5. What feelings do you think, might be experienced, at the loss of a mobile phone, for a youngster today?

Explain how these would be different from those felt by the boy in the poem.

Ans :

2021, 2009

Mobile phone has become a necessity today. Losing a mobile phone might attract fear and sadness among youngsters today. I think the loss of a mobile phone would be even greater than the boy's loss of the ball because losing a phone means getting disconnected from the virtual world of the internet and social media. They would insist on buying a new phone as soon as possible.

6. "He senses first responsibility/ In a world of possessions." About what does the poet feel the boy has to be aware of ?

Ans :

2015

The poet feels that the boy who has lost his ball should be aware of his first responsibility in a world of possessions. People may cause loss to him and the boy may suffer losses in future also. He wanted him to stand up or bear the loss through self-understanding and trying to console oneself on his own as the boy who lost his ball was trying to do.

7. How did the boy react after his ball fell into the water of the harbour?

Ans :

2013

The falling of the ball in the water was quite sudden. Actually, it was an unexpected loss. The boy was completely shaken but couldn't even move a step. He stood there fixed to the ground like a statue. He continued staring at the point where his ball fell into the harbour. It seemed as if he was thinking of his childhood days which had disappeared forever like the lost ball.

8. Why did the poet not console the boy ?

Ans :

2011

The poet did not console the boy for two reasons- One, the boy was too shocked and grief-stricken to listen to any sense. Second, the poet also observed that the boy was trying to stand up or bear the

- iii. The poet describes the bear in a humourous way. He says that as soon as a bear sees a human being, it hugs him tightly. It clasps its prey very tightly with both his hands and squeezes him to death. If he is still alive, it gives him another tight hug to kill him.
- iv. No, the poet does not seem to have an in-depth knowledge of the animals of the wild. This is so because her descriptions are very common place. People are aware of the general features that the poet describes in the poem.

4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

- If strolling forth, a beast you view,
Whose hide with spots is peppered,
As soon as he has lept on you,
You'll know it is the Leopard.
'Twill do no good to roar with pain,
He'll only lep and lep again.
- i. In what way does the language used in this line challenges the traditional ideas of how poetry should be written?
"I will do no good to roar with pain, He'll only lep and lep again."
 - ii. What is the significance of humour while describing the wild beasts in the poem and how does this contribute to the overall mood and tone of the poem? Answer in about 40 words.
 - iii. Complete the sentence with the appropriate option.
The contextual meaning of the word 'peppered' in the stanza _____.
(a) refers to the spots of the leopard
(b) refers to the camouflage of the leopard
(c) means that the leopard has spotted you
(d) means that you have spotted the leopard
 - iv. Why does roaring with pain will not do any good?

Ans :

2020

- i. The poet has opted for poetic licence by using 'lep and lep' instead of 'leapt and leapt' to maintain rhythm in the poem.
- ii. The poet uses tongue-in-cheek humour to describe the natural instincts of wild animals in a humorous manner: 'A noble beast greets you,' 'A bear-hugs you' Crocodiles weep,'He'll only lep and lep again' and 'Hyena smiles.' These distinctive qualities give them a unique identification and induce laughter.

- iii. (a) refers to the spots of the leopard
- iv. It will not do any good because the leopard will attack you again and again.

5. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

If ever you should go by chance
To jungles in the East;
And if there should to you advance
A large and tawny beast,
If he roars at you as you're dyin'
You'll know it is the Asian Lion

- i. Fill in the blank with ONE word only.
A person's heart begins to beat when the lion roars because he is _____.
- ii. What does the poet mean by 'Jungles in the East'?
(a) Forests in East direction
(b) Forests of India
(c) Forests in Asian countries
(d) Forest in the East of London
- iii. What does the poet say about the Asian Lion in this extract? Answer in about 40 words.
- iv. Which genre is most appropriate for the poem?

Ans :

2018

- i. scared
- ii. (c) Forests in Asian countries
- iii. The poet says that the Asian Lion is a large beast. He is brown-wish yellow in colour and is found in the forests of the eastern countries of the world. Its roar is very loud and terrifying.
- iv. The poem 'How to Tell Wild Animals' is a humorous poem. It depicts the ways to identify different dangerous animals which may not be practical but when read the approaches evoke fun and laughter.



Short Answer Type Questions

1. What is the poet's purpose in using behavioural cues like roaring, smiling, or weeping in the poem 'How to Tell Wild Animals'?

Ans :

2023

The poet's purpose is to humorously educate the reader about identifying wild animals through their behaviours. By linking specific behaviours with certain animals, the poet makes the description more memorable and engaging. These cues add entertainment to the learning process, making the poem enjoyable while offering a light-hearted way to explore the animal kingdom.

2. What is the famous saying associated with crocodiles and what does it mean ?

Ans :

2020

The famous saying associated with crocodiles is that of 'shedding crocodile tears'. It actually means tears or expressions of sorrow that are insincere, and are said to be so named from a belief that crocodiles wept while devouring their prey.

3. What is the theme of the poem 'How to Tell Wild Animals' ?

Ans :

2019

The theme of the poem is to create humour. The poet creates humour by suggesting dangerous ways of identifying wild animals. You can identify most of the beasts while they are attacking you. Instead of shouting for help or trying to protect yourself, you are busy in identifying the attacker- the idea creates humour.

4. How do you know that it is the leopard who leaps and leaps again ?

Ans :

2017

According to the poet, if while roaming round, we happen to see a beast whose skin is covered with round small spots and he suddenly jumps at us, we will know that it is the leopard, who will leap and leap again at us. After that it will be of no use if we cry with pain.

5. How can you differentiate between a hyena and a crocodile ?

Ans :

2016

The poet says that we can easily differentiate between a hyena and a crocodile because a hyena gives a cheerful, lively smile and laughs as it swallows its victim. While, a crocodile weeps and sheds tears while swallowing his victim.

6. What does the poet tell us about the chameleon ?

Ans :

2015

The poet tells us that a chameleon is a lizard-like creature which has neither ears nor wings. It is an expert at camouflage. If we see nothing on the tree, there are chances that we are actually seeing a Chameleon because it can change its colour according to its surroundings.

7. How can you identify the Asian Lion and the Bengal Tiger ?

Ans :

2014

The Asian lion has a very large body and a tawny colour. He is found in the jungles of the eastern regions. It roars loudly which is loud enough to terrorise a person to death.

The Bengal Tiger is a very grand and impressive animal. His hide is yellowish. There are black stripes all over his body. A tiger silently attacks his prey.

8. How can you distinguish between a tiger and a leopard?

Ans :

2011

A tiger has black stripes on its yellow hide. However, a leopard does not have any stripes. It has spots peppered on its body. A tiger attacks only when it is hungry but a leopard can leap at anyone anytime for the pleasure of killing by pouncing continuously on its prey.

9. 'If there is nothing on the tree,
'Tis the chameleon you see.'
How does the poet create humour in these lines?
Write the words that rhyme.

Ans :

2009, 2004

The poet creates humour in these lines through the way he uses language to convey the idea of a chameleon sitting on the tree. The words 'tree' and 'see' rhyme in the above lines.

10. Why does the poet say that a bear's 'hug' may confuse a novice ?

Ans :

2008

It is the tendency of a bear to kill his victim by embracing him. The bear hugs the victim so tight that he usually dies. But a novice who does not know the ways of a bear may misunderstand his hug. He may think that it is a loving embrace.

11. What are the distinctive features of the Asian Lion as given in the poem?

Ans :

2008

The Asian Lion is a large beast. He is brownish-yellow in colour. He roars very loudly and the sound he thus makes is terrible to hear. This makes one almost die due to great fear. He is found in the forests in the Eastern countries of Asia. That's why he is called 'Asian Lion'.

Stanza 2

No use to say 'O there are other balls':
 An ultimate shaking grief fixes the boy
 As he stands rigid, trembling, staring down
 All his young days into the harbour where
 His ball went. I would not intrude on him;
 A dime, another ball, is worthless. Now
 He senses first responsibility

Word Meaning :

1. Grief - sorrow
2. Rigid - fixed
3. Trembling - shaking
4. Harbour - dock, port
5. Intrude - invader
6. Dime - 10 cents (U.S)
7. Worthless - valueless, useless

Explanation :

The poet says that there is no benefit of consoling the boy by saying that he will get another ball because he has other balls too. He says so because the boy is feeling very sad. He is completely surrounded by sorrow. He is sad because all the memories of the childhood days went down the harbour with the ball. Here the poet says that the boy is very sad as the ball which has now gone into the water reminds him of those sweet memories, of the times when he owned it. This loss is unbearable for him and he is grief stricken. The poet says that he can't even tell the boy to take some money from him in order to buy another ball. He says so because the new ball will not bring the sense of belonging to the boy. Further, the poet says that the time has come for the boy to learn the responsibility of taking care of his things.

Stanza 3

In a world of possessions. People will take
 Balls, balls will be lost always, little boy.
 And no one buys a ball back. Money is external.
 He is learning, well behind his desperate eyes,
 The epistemology of loss, how to stand up
 Knowing what every man must one day know
 And most know many days, how to stand up.

Word Meaning :

1. Possessions - ownership
2. External - Here, things with which feelings are not attached
3. Desperate - hopeless
4. Epistemology - The Greek word episteme means 'knowledge'

Explanation :

Here the poet says that the boy has to learn that in this materialistic world, many of his belongings will be lost. He personifies the ball as his belongings, be it the worldly things or the relationships he is in possession of. So, he says that he has to learn to live without them no matter what. He says no one can buy back such things for him. The poet said so because according to him money can't buy you everything. If it does buy you some materialistic thing, still, it will not be able to buy the sense of belongingness. He says that the boy is learning how to stand up against the sense of lost things. This means that the boy is trying to learn the real truth of life which states that you have to accept the miseries of life and stand up again. This is the truth which everyone has to learn in his or her life. The harsh truth of standing up against the odd miseries of life that everyone has to bear.

4. LITERARY DEVICES

1. **Personification** - It is a figure of speech which shows attribution of a personal nature or human characteristics to something non-human. In the poem, the poet describes ball merrily bouncing down the street. Merry means happy. It is a human characteristic which is given to the ball.
2. **Metaphor** - It is a literary device in which a word or phrase is symbolically applied to a thing to which it is not literally applicable. In the poem, poet says, "balls will be lost always". Balls here symbolise possessions which we lose. It also refers to the childhood which if lost never comes back.
3. **Apostrophe** - It is a literary device in which a person is addressed who is either dead or physically not present. In the poem, the poet says, "balls will be lost always, little boy". The boy is physically not present with the poet.
4. **Repetition** - It is a literary device in which a word or phrase is repeated two or more times. In the poem the poet repeats the word "what" two lines. "what, what is he to do?".
5. **Alliteration** - It is the occurrence of the same letter or sound at the beginning of adjacent or closely connected words. e.g. "who has lost his ball", "what, what is he to do?", "no one buys a ball back", "the deep and dark floor of harbour", "move my mind and my heart move with all that move me".

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow :

The true Chameleon is small
A lizard sort of thing;
He hasn't any ears at all,
And not a single wing,
If there is nothing on the tree,
"Tis the Chameleon you see.

- Fill in the blank with one word :
When the speaker says "If there is nothing on the tree, 'Tis the Chameleon you see", he refers to _____ as characteristic trait of a true Chameleon.
- What does the speaker mean when he says, "A lizard sort of thing" ?
- Which of the following best describes the speaker's disposition while describing the Chameleon ?
(a) indifferent (b) playful
(c) dismissive (d) respectful
- Comment on the poet's use of language in these lines. Answer in about 40 words.

Ans :

2024

- Camouflage/Changeability
- a chameleon - very similar to a lizard but not a lizard.
- (b) playful
- The poet employs humor in the above lines to describe the character traits of a chameleon. Despite their potentially dangerous nature, the poet introduces them in a lighthearted manner. Furthermore, the poet explains that chameleons possess the remarkable ability to change their color to match their surroundings, showcasing their adaptability.

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow :

Though to distinguish beasts of prey
A novice might nonplus,
The crocodiles you always may
Tell from the Hyena thus:
Hyenas come with merry smiles;
But if they weep they're crocodiles.

- Select the appropriate option to complete the sentence, according to the extract :
Crocodiles can be identified by their _____.
(a) tears (b) attitude
(c) smiles (d) attacks

- State whether the following statement is True or False:
Hyenas are famous for weeping.
- 'Novice' in line 2 means the same as:
(a) learner (b) beast
(c) tender foot (d) beginner
- In this extract the poet has presented two different behavioural traits of animals. They are _____.
- The poet uses 'A novice might nonplus' instead of the novice might get confused. How does this usage impact the poem?
(a) adds an incorrect option.
(b) it is associated with beasts.
(c) it rhymes and adds humour.
(d) it simplifies the meaning.

Ans :

2023

- (a) tears
- False
- (d) beginner
- the weeping of crocodiles while swallowing its prey and laughter of hyenas while attacking its prey.
- (c) it rhymes and adds humour.

Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

If when you're walking round your yard
You meet a creature there, Who hugs you
very, very hard, Be sure it is a Bear,
If you have any doubts, I guess
He'll give you just one more caress.

- How a bear can be recognised by you?
(a) By its skin colour
(b) By its roar
(c) By its body size
(d) By its tight hug
- How will you judge the poet's style of writing in the given extract?
- How does the poet describe the bear in the extract?
- Would you agree that the poet has an in-depth knowledge of the wild? Support the statement in context of the poem from which the given lines are taken. Answer in about 40 words.

Ans :

2021

- (d) By its tight hug
- The poet's manner and style of writing in the given extract is humorous.

2. What is the boy playing with?

- (a) bat (b) ball
(c) car (d) bus

Ans :

(b) ball

2021

3. Where does the ball go?

- (a) drain (b) well
(c) house (d) water

Ans :

(d) water

2020

4. What does a ball cost?

- (a) 5 dimes (b) 10 dimes
(c) 1 dime (d) 4 dimes

Ans :

(c) 1 dime

2016

5. How does the child react at the loss?

- (a) stands rigid (b) trembles
(c) stares (d) all of these

Ans :

(d) all of these

2015

6. According to the poet, what is the child learning?

- (a) to bear loss (b) to take care of things
(c) to be responsible (d) to be careful

Ans :

(a) to bear loss

2014

7. Does the poet condole the boy?

- (a) can't say (b) yes
(c) no (d) All of these

Ans :

(c) no

2013

8. Why does the poet decide not to condole the boy?

- (a) He is busy (b) He is indifferent
(c) It will be of no use (d) He is happy

Ans :

(c) It will be of no use

2013, 2011

9. Name the literary device used in "Merrily bouncing, down the street, and then Merrily over - there it is in the water!"

- (a) Metaphor (b) Simile
(c) Alliteration (d) Anaphora

Ans :

(d) Anaphora

2012

10. Name the literary device used in "And no one buys a ball back."

- (a) Metaphor (b) Simile
(c) Alliteration (d) Anaphora

Ans :

(c) Alliteration

2011

11. Why are the boy's eyes desperate?

- (a) Because he has lost his ball.
(b) Because he has lost his money.
(c) Because he has lost his gloves
(d) None of these

Ans :

(a) Because he has lost his ball.

2010

12. What does 'in the world of possessions' means?

- (a) Love (b) Lust
(c) Materialistic things (d) None of these
Ans :
(c) Materialistic things

2009

13. Where was the boy staring down?

- (a) the sea (b) the ocean
(c) the harbour (d) the lake

Ans :

(c) the harbour

2009

14. Who would not intrude the boy?

- (a) The Ball (b) The Poet
(c) The Gloves (d) None of these

Ans :

(b) The Poet

2008

15. Why is money called external?

- (a) We need to earn money through hard-worker.
(b) We can replace the lost things with its help.
(c) It is made from artificial way.
(d) None of these

Ans :

(b) We can replace the lost things with its help.

2007

16. What was the reaction of the boy at the loss of his ball?

- (a) Sad (b) Confused
(c) Happy (d) None of these

Ans :

(a) Sad

2007

17. What has the boy lost in the water?

- (a) his ball (b) his bat
(c) his wicket (d) his gloves

Ans :

(a) his ball

2006

18. Later the ball went into the -

- (a) Garden (b) River
(c) Street (d) House

CHAPTER 5

THE BALL POEM

NODIA

1. INTRODUCTION

The poem “The Ball Poem” is written by John Berryman. This poem has described the reality of life which everyone has to face one day. He has touched the topic of how to stand up against the miseries and sorrows of life.

2. SUMMARY

The Boy Loses His Ball

The poem is about a young boy who loses his ball. Usually, losing a ball should not be a big issue. Young boys usually lose their toys and balls quite often. The ball is seen ‘merrily’ bouncing down the street. And ultimately the ball falls down into the water and lost forever. The boy stood there sadly watching the ball go. But he was helpless. Nor could he do anything to get the ball back. The ball here symbolises the innocent childhood of the boy which has slipped away and he wants it back.

Other Balls Too

It is of no use to remind him that it was not a big loss. He can get more balls and continue his game. But for the boy, the loss of the ball is a great loss. There may be other balls and perhaps he can hope to get any one of them. However, the ball that he has lost can’t be retrieved. It has fallen into the deep water of the harbour. The boy is inconsolable. He loses hope in himself and becomes depressed and hopeless. He stands still, trembling and looking at the point where his ball has gone down into the harbour. Here, the lost ball stands for the lost childhood and the harbour stands for the vastness of life. It will not serve any purpose to remind him that the ball costs just a dime and is worth nothing.

Recovering from the Loss

But there comes a change in his mood and thinking. He realises that in this world the loss is the part of the game. He must take such losses

in life in his stride. Achievements will follow losses in life. And a thing that is lost once can’t be retrieved or brought back. Money can’t buy the lost childhood, the lost dreams and the lost feelings back. Money is external to such losses.

Standing Up

The poet feels that when the boy will grow up, this experience of learning from losing something and coping with the losses by himself will help him a lot. There are bound to the losses, by himself or because of others and nobody might be helpful. Then, during his later years, he will be firm and strong to make up or face the losses because he will recall the loss of his ball and how he reacted and learnt. This understanding of the nature of loss will help him what to do when losses occur. It will also help him to be self-reliant and stand up on his feet.

3. EXPLANATION

Stanza 1

What is the boy now, who has lost his ball,
What, what is he to do? I saw it go
Merrily bouncing, down the street, and then
Merrily over - there it is in the water!

Word Meaning :

1. Merrily - cheerful
2. Bouncing - jumping up and down

Explanation :

The poet is talking about a boy who has lost his ball. He wants to know about him and his reaction because he has lost his ball. Further, he asks himself what the boy would do after losing his ball. The poet has seen the ball going away from the boy. He says that the ball was cheerfully jumping up and down in the street. This means that when the ball skipped from the boy’s hand it went into the street and later on, it fell into the nearby river.

loss on his own through self-understanding, which is much more reflective and lasting. The poet's or anybody else's consoling would not be that effective.

9. Express your views on the title of the poem, 'The Ball Poem'.

Ans :

2010

When one reads the title 'The Ball Poem', one assumes that the poem may be a light-hearted one, perhaps about the joys of childhood. But on the contrary, it talks about how we must not feel disheartened, dejected and desperate about some loss in life but try to stand up and bear the loss through self-understanding.

10. "Money is external". What does the poet mean by this expression taken from 'The Ball Poem'?

Ans :

2009

By this expression the poet intends to make us realize the mere material value of money which in no way helps us to understand the essential worth of a commodity. In this world of possessions, the value of money is only to buy things and this does not make us understand the true value of things.

11. 'He is learning, well behind his desperate eyes'. What is the boy learning from the loss of the ball?

Ans :

2009

The boy is learning the epistemology of loss from the loss of the ball. He is understanding what it means to lose something he greatly admires.

12. No use to say 'O there are other balls': What do the words in inverted commas mean? Why does the poet think that it is useless to give this suggestion to the boy?

Ans :

2008

The words in the inverted commas try to suggest that the loss of the ball is not that significant. The poet thinks that it is useless to give this suggestion to the boy as the boy has lost his priceless possession.

13. 'An ultimate shaking grief fixes the boy'. Who is the boy? What is his state of mind? Why is he in such a state of mind?

Ans :

2008

The boy is playing with the ball. He is in the state of grief, sadness and disappointment. His ball has fallen down into the water which can't be retrieved.

14. What is the theme of the poem- 'The Ball Poem'?

Ans :

2007

In this world, sometimes we lose things which we love and are deeply attached to. We must not feel

dejected and lament the loss. We must face the loss with positivity and anticipation of gains in the future. The boy in the poem who lost the ball he loved, was trying to learn to accept his loss and move ahead in life .

15. What does show that the ball was valuable for the boy?

Ans :

2005

The ball was valuable for the boy is obvious from the way he reacts after losing it, he was under shock, remained fixed, trembled with grief staring at the place where the ball had fallen. All this shows that he loved the ball and it was valuable for him.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. You have been chosen to address the school assembly, to speak on the epistemology of loss and the resilience of the human spirit during times of crisis. Prepare the speech draft, with reference to the commonality of themes in 'The Ball Poem' by John Berryman and 'From the Diary of Anne Frank'.

You may begin this way :

Good morning everyone.

Today, I'd like to discuss two pieces of literature that offer a powerful insight into how to deal with loss and the resilience of the human spirit required during times of crisis.

You may end this way :

To conclude, I'd like to say that _ _ _ _ _

Thank you.

Ans :

2024

Good morning everyone!

Today, I'd like to discuss two pieces of literature that offer a powerful insight into how to deal with loss and the resilience of the human spirit required during times of crisis. In "The Ball Poem" by John Berryman and the excerpt from Anne Frank's diary, we see a common theme of loss and its impact on individuals. In Berryman's poem, a young boy is shown struggling after losing his ball. Comparably, during the turbulent years of World War II, Anne Frank writes in her diary about her feelings of loss and loneliness. These works impart lessons about the struggles of life and the importance of resilience in the face of challenges.

To conclude, I'd like to say that these pieces of literature serve as poignant reminders of our capacity to grow from the challenges that life throws at us rather than giving up.

Thank you.

20. Amanda's mother instructed her to clean up her room as well as

- (a) Shoes (b) Clothes
(c) Bed (d) Table

Ans : 2007
(a) Shoes

21. After getting tired from her mother's interference Amanda wanted to be

- (a) Mermaid (b) Rapunzel
(c) Cinderella (d) High tower

Ans : 2006
(d) High tower.

22. Amanda wanted _____ like Rapunzel.

- (a) Soft heart (b) Long hair
(c) Magic stick (d) Bright face

Ans : 2006, 2004
(b) Long Hair.

23. Amanda thinks that she'll never let down her

- (a) white hair (b) bright hair
(c) yellow hair (d) bronze hair

Ans : 2006
(b) bright hair

24. What does Amanda wish to do in the sea?

- (a) catch the fishes
(b) hunt various animals
(c) watch soft-moving waves
(d) None of these

Ans : 2005
(c) watch soft-moving waves

25. How is silence described?

- (a) Golden (b) Silver
(c) Platinum (d) Love

Ans : 2004
(a) Golden

her parents and she also wants the freedom to do whatever she pleases.

2. Explain why Amanda wants to be an orphan. Refer to the given lines, from the text — I am an orphan, roaming the street. I pattern soft dust with my hushed, bare feet. The silence is golden, the freedom is sweet.

Ans : 2024

Amanda wants to be an orphan so that she can live without parental interference. She does not like restrictions on her freedom. The poem tells us that Amanda's mind wanders to imaginary scenarios where she is a mermaid, an orphan or Rapunzel. This shows that she craves to be alone so that she will not be bothered by her parents and she also wants the freedom to do whatever she pleases.

3. How does the repeated use of the name 'Amanda' influence the overall tone of the poem?

Ans : 2023

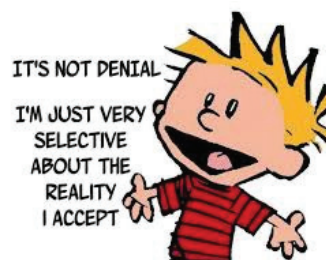
The repetition of the name also adds a sense of familiarity and intimacy to the tone. It suggests a close relationship between the speaker and Amanda, indicating that the instructions and restrictions come from a place of care and concern.

4. What kind of an image does "languid, emerald sea" evoke?

Ans : 2021

It evokes the image of a calm and green sea. The word 'languid' means 'relaxed' which points towards silent water. 'Emerald' is a green coloured gemstone that refers to the green colour of seawater.

5. This is Calvin, a character from a comic strip created by Bill Watterson. Do you think this might be something Amanda would say? Why/why not? Give reasons.



Ans : 2021

Yes, Amanda can say this because the last part of all the stanzas show up that she is selective about her life. She is not denying things but she wants to choose things as per her wish. Like most teenagers, she does not want to receive instructions for her routine work.

Short Answer Type Questions

1. In every alternate stanza, Amanda drifts into fantasy and yearns for more freedom and silence. Justify and elaborate the reason.

Ans : 2024

In every alternate stanza, Amanda drifts into fantasy and yearns for more freedom and silence. Amanda does not like restrictions on her freedom. The poem tells us that Amanda's mind wanders to imaginary scenarios where she is a mermaid, an orphan or Rapunzel. This shows that she craves to be alone so that she will not be bothered by

- ii. The poet says that money is external. What inference can be drawn from this statement?
Answer in about 40 words.
- iii. Which of the following best describes the speaker's attitude towards material possessions?
(a) indifferent (b) emotional
(c) casual (d) respectful
- iv. Identify the poetic device used in "And no one buys a ball back".

Ans :

2024

- i. resigned
- ii. The inference drawn from the poet's statement that "money is external" is that material wealth cannot compensate for emotional losses. It suggests that the true value of sentimental possessions cannot be replaced or restored with monetary means.
- iii. (a) indifferent
- iv. Alliteration.

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow :

And no one buys a ball back, Money is external
He is learning, well behind his desperate eyes
The epistemology of loss, how to standup.

- i. When the poet says that "no one buys a ball back", what does he refer to in the context of the poem ?
- ii. Complete the sentence with an appropriate option:
The lines from the poem tell us that the boy is experiencing _____.
(a) distress (b) terror
(c) realisation (d) elation
- iii. What is the significance of the term "desperate" used to describe the boy's eyes in the poem, and how does it contribute to the overall mood and tone of the poem ?
- iv. Identify and discuss the poet's use of metaphor in the poem

Ans :

2024

- i. When the poet says that "no one buys a ball back," he is referring to the irrevocable nature of loss. In the context of the poem, it symbolizes that certain things, once gone, cannot be retrieved or replaced, highlighting the permanence of some losses in life.
- ii. (c) realisation
- iii. The term "desperate" used to describe the boy's eyes signifies a deep sense of loss and an

earnest desire to reclaim what has been lost, conveying a sense of helplessness and sadness. It contributes to the overall mood and tone of the poem by evoking a feeling of empathy from the reader, as it captures the profound impact of loss and the struggle to come to terms with it, adding depth to the emotional landscape portrayed in the poem.

- iv. The poet's use of metaphor in "The ball Poem" is pivotal, as the lost ball represents much more than a physical object; it symbolizes the boy's first encounter with loss and grief. The ball thus, becomes a metaphor for innocence, the carefree nature of childhood, and the things in life that are lost and cannot be replaced. This metaphor extends to teach a broader lesson about growing up and learning to handle loss, suggesting that such experiences are integral to personal development and understanding the value of what we hold dear.

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow :

An ultimate shaking grief fixes the boy
As he stands rigid, trembling, staring down
All his young days into the harbour where
His ball went. I would not intrude on him; ...

- i. In the line, "ultimate shaking grief fixes the boy", what does the following tell us?
(a) "ultimate" - This tells us _____
(b) "fixes" - This tells us _____
- ii. Complete the following with a correct option.
The use of "rigid" and "trembling" in the same line creates a powerful contrast between _____.
(a) unchangeable circumstances and visible sobbing
(b) defence mechanism and submission to a situation
(c) emotional numbness and physical quivering
(d) strong beliefs and unexpected reality
- iii. State why the following is FALSE.
The line "All his young days into the harbour where/His ball went" refers to losing the ball as just a material loss.
- iv. Fill the blank with an appropriate phrase from those given in the brackets.
The speaker chooses not to intrude on the boy. The decision of not to intrude, reflects a sensitivity to the boy's emotional state and a respect for the _____ of the grieving

5. What could Amanda do if she were a mermaid?

Ans :

Amanda wishes to be a mermaid so she could carelessly move along on a languid emerald sea. She just wishes to be carried away by the green sea waves slowly and gradually. Amanda longs for a place where she is all by herself as her happiness is not dependant on any other human being. Hence, she desires to be a mermaid because for a child, mermaid is a symbol of freedom and wonder.

6. Is Amanda an orphan? Why does she say so?

Ans :

No, Amanda is not an orphan, though she wishes to be one. She is so much stressed with the continuous nagging of her parents that she imagines herself to be better without them. The mere presence of her parents around her depresses her. Amanda is a little girl who seeks 'golden' silence and 'sweet' freedom. She wishes to roam around the streets and draw patterns with her bare feet. Indeed, it is horribly depressing that Amanda expects being an orphan.

7. Do you know the story of Rapunzel? Why does she want to be Rapunzel?

Ans :

Rapunzel's story revolves around her life in a tower. Rapunzel was made to live in a high tower, by a witch. She eventually got used to living there. She was happy and satisfied with her life. Rapunzel had very long golden hair, using which the witch used to pay her a visit. The fate of Rapunzel took a turn when one day a prince came to meet her using her hair. The witch had punished both of them by separating them. Finally, they met after a couple of years only to be united forever this time. Amanda wishes to live like Rapunzel in a high tower away from everyone. She seeks peace and harmony. That is the reason Amanda wishes so. However, she also makes a point that in order to avoid being disturbed, she would never let her hair down for anyone to climb to her. She needs no one to make her life happy.

8. What does the girl yearn for? What does this poem tell you about Amanda?

Ans :

2007, 2002

Amanda yearns for freedom and space for herself. She is incapable to fulfill the expectations of her parents. Amanda is no less than a symbol for all the children who face similar fate irrespective of class, colour or nationality. Traditional societies demand a certain type of behaviour from the individuals and the training to produce such

begins at a very young age. Parents ignore the innocence and understanding level of their children and thereby the young ends up killing their imagination and thoughts.

9. Read the last stanza. Do you think Amanda is sulking and is moody?

Ans :

No, Amanda is neither sulking nor moody. She is simply not interested enough in the nagging business of her parents. Amanda cares more about her imagination and thought process over the manners her parents are trying to inculcate into her.

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. Who is the poet of the poem "Amanda"?

(a) Leslie Norris (b) Robert Frost
(c) Carolyn Wells (d) Robin Klein

Ans :

2021

(d) Robin Klein

2. What could Amanda do if she were a mermaid?

(a) be in the green sea
(b) lead a relaxing life
(c) both a and b
(d) None of these

Ans :

2021

(c) both a and b

3. Name the literary devices used in the line "Stop that slouching and sit up straight".

(a) Anaphora (b) Assonance
(c) Metaphor (d) Alliteration

Ans :

2021

(d) Alliteration

4. Name the literary device used in the line: "Don't bite your nails, Amanda!

Don't hunch your shoulders, Amanda!"

(a) Anaphora (b) Enjambment
(c) Metaphor (d) Alliteration

Ans :

2020

(a) Anaphora

5. Name the literary device used in the line "freedom is sweet"

(a) Anaphora (b) Enjambment
(c) Metaphor (d) Alliteration

CHAPTER 6

AMANDA!

1. INTRODUCTION

The Poem 'Amanda' is written by Robin Klein. This poem focuses on the upbringing of a small child, whose name is Amanda. It focuses on the struggles which a child is facing. Poet Robin Klein makes the important point that the children should never be deprived of their freedom. However, it is the parents who are responsible for the proper upbringing of their child. But that should not make the children feel imprisoned. The whole trajectory of this poem is something with which we are all very much familiar.

2. SUMMARY

Advice by the Speaker

The speaker advises Amanda neither to bite her nails nor to bend her shoulders. He advises her to sit straight.

Reply by Amanda

On hearing him, Amanda replies that there is a very decent green sea. It is her dwelling place. She feels rest and relaxed in it. She is a mermaid who enjoys her life with highest happiness.

Interrogation with Amanda

The poet interrogates Amanda if she had finished her home task and cleaned her room. He had already asked her to clean her shoes. He advises her not to eat chocolate. She must remember her acne. He asks her if she will look at him on speaking.

Amanda's Views

Amanda replies that she is an orphan who roams in the street and makes pattern with dust from her feet. She believes that the silence is golden and the freedom is sweet. She calls herself Rapunzel who lives in a tower where life is very much peaceful. She will never let down her golden hair.

Final Words of the Speaker

In the end the poet advises her to stop sulking as she is always very moody. People may think

that he is finding fault in the girl but he is rather advising her.

3. EXPLANATION

Stanza 1

Don't bite your nails, Amanda!
Don't hunch your shoulders, Amanda!
Stop that slouching and sit up straight,
Amanda!

Word Meaning :

1. Hunch - bend
2. Slouching - sitting in a lazy way

Explanation :

The poet is describing Amanda, a little girl who is always pointed out by her mother for her mistakes and how she imagines her life to be. The poet says that the mother is pointing out Amanda for biting nails which is a bad habit. Next she asks her to sit straight without bending her shoulders. Amanda who has habit of bending her shoulders and sitting lazily is being pointed out because her mother wants her to sit in the right posture.

Stanza 2

(There is a languid, emerald sea,
where the sole inhabitant is me-
a mermaid, drifting blissfully.)

Word Meaning :

1. Languid - relaxed
2. Emerald - here, green color
3. Inhabitant - resident
4. Drifting - moving slowly, carried slowly by the water
5. Blissfully - happily

Explanation :

When Amanda is being scolded by her mother, she imagines herself to be in a deep green sea.

2. The poem deals with a child understanding loss for the first time. Matches and championships too, deal with a different sense of loss. Explain how games and sports are a good way to train children to take losses in their stride.

Ans :

2021

The ball poem shows the pain of a child after losing his favourite toy, a ball. It is important to teach children to accept losses and defeats in a positive way. Matches and championships are a better way to inculcate this habit during their childhood itself. The participants of a match know beforehand that there is an equal probability of losing the match. Still, they strive hard to win. A child must not feel depressed or demotivated rather he should think about working harder the next time. Besides the loss acceptance, matches bring about a feeling of team spirit, endurance, hard work and, of course, celebrating every win in life.

3. If the Buddha were to summarise the life lessons of 'the Ball poem' what would that sermon be? Think and create this address for people of your age.

Ans :

2021

If Buddha were to summarise the life lessons of 'the ball poem' it would be as follows:

Life is a never-ending process of sacrifices, whatever you get in life, maybe seized at any time without prior notice. So, don't get emotionally attached to any living or nonliving things. Attachment gives pain on separation. Nothing is permanent in this world, one who has come here will definitely take leave. When you did not bring anything with you how can you claim ownership over anything? You might be the owner of this ball today but tomorrow it may tear off, stolen or broken. You will get new toys in life as you grow. Make a habit of enjoying things and relations as if they might not stay tomorrow.

4. Why is it important for everyone to experience loss and stand up after it ?

Ans :

2010, 2007

It is important for everyone to understand the epistemology of loss. Loss is inevitable. Every human being has to face loss in one form or another. Too much grieving can hinder progress and make a person depressed. It is important to understand the nature of loss and overcome it. One must learn to cope with loss.

All human relations, different stages of life and all memories are prized possessions that can be lost due to one reason or another. It is

our responsibility to keep all our precious things carefully. But if lost, we must learn to move on without harming ourselves. A sad mind cannot unfurl its full potential so it is important to understand that life should go on in spite of any kind of loss. The poet does not console the boy, or offer to get him any other ball. Because, the one who has lost some needs to stand up, learn to face reality, and cope with the loss and should not keep grieving.

5. How is the lost ball, the metaphor of the lost childhood of the boy ? Why doesn't the poet want to 'intrude on' the boy by offering him money to buy another ball ?

Ans :

2008

Perhaps the boy has a lot of love for the ball and has been keeping it for a long time. He must have developed a lot of attachment and love with the ball. Suddenly, while he is playing, the ball bounces down the street. And after a few bounces, it falls down into the harbour. Thus, it is lost forever. The boy stands there shocked and fixed to the ground. He continuously goes on staring at the spot where his ball fell down into the water. Outwardly, the loss seems to be quite small. The boy seems to be making a big fuss over a small loss. Many boys have lost such balls and will lose so in future as well as. A new ball can be easily bought in a dime. But the metaphor of the lost ball is beautifully linked to the loss of sweet childhood. No amount of money can buy the ball back that has been lost forever. Similarly, no worldly wealth can buy back the lost childhood. The poet doesn't want to sermonise on this issue. The boy himself has to learn epistemology or the nature of the loss. He has to move ahead in life forgetting all the losses he has suffered in the past.

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow :

In a world of possessions. People will take
Balls, balls will be lost always, little boy.
And no one buys a ball back. Money is external
He is learning, well behind his desperate eyes,
The epistemology of loss, how to stand up
Knowing what every man must one day know
And most know many days, how to stand up.

- i. Fill in the blank with one word.

When the speaker says "People will take balls, Balls will be lost always, little boy", his tone is _____.

such an unstable mood. She also scolds her by saying that her behavior will one day make people think that Amanda was constantly being harassed by her mother. So, here we can say that though Amanda is always pointed out by her mother on every small thing but she can't react to this. If she reacts towards this by getting emotional her mother takes this against her sense of pride and scolds her that she should not behave like this as others would think that Amanda's mother is very dominating towards her child.

NODIA

- a. Don't bite your nails, Amanda!
Don't hunch your shoulders, AinaliA!
Each sentence in this example starts with "Don't" which stresses the authoritative tone of the mother.
- b. Did you finish your homework, Amanda?
Did you tidy your room, Amanda?
Here, each line begins with 'Did you' and emphasizes the harsh treatment of Amanda at the hands of her mother.

4. LITERARY DEVICES

The poem 'Amanda!' is a poem of seven stanzas. The rhyme schemes of stanzas are aaba ccc aada eee aafa ggg aaha respectfully.

1. **Alliteration** : Repetition of initial consonant sounds in the same line.
 - a. Stop that slouching and sit up straight
 - b. I thought I told you to clean your shoes
 - c. Stop that sulking at once, Amanda!
2. **Allusion** : A reference to statement, person, place etc. from history, religion, literature or any other field.
 - a. Mermaid – To be free and contained in their own. (Taken from fairy tales)
 - b. Rapunzel – Who lived alone on a tower for a long time. (Part of German fairy tale)
3. **Metaphor** : A device which compares two things or qualities which are unlike.
 - a. Orphan – Who don't have nagging parents above their head as Amanda's.
 - b. Languid, emerald sea – languid and emerald type qualities are assigned to sea.
 - c. Silent is golden
 - d. Freedom is sweet
4. **Repetition** : Poets often repeat single words or phrases, lines, and even whole stanzas at intervals to create a musical effect to emphasize a point, to draw the readers' attention or to lend unity to a piece. In the poem the name of 'Amanda' has been repeatedly used to emphasize the commanding manner in which the mother addresses the young girl.
5. **Anaphora** : A poetic device in which a word or group of words is used repeatedly at the beginning of sentence or clauses to create a special effect or to emphasise something. For example,

5. MESSAGE

This poem conveys the moral that children need to be allowed more freedom. Excessive nagging may make them disobedient and hence they may develop a type of dislike for real life and start escaping into the world of dreams and imagination. In fact, the poem indirectly emphasizes the need of a healthy bond between parents and children. Parents should understand the psychology of children, who in turn, should be respectful and responsible to their parents.

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Thinking about the Poem

1. How old do you think Amanda is? How do you know this?
Ans :
Amanda is little school going girl having the age of 7 or 8 years. Amanda is strictly advised by her mother for all matter and for her home work.
2. Who do you think is speaking to her?
Ans :
Perhaps, Amanda's parents are speaking to her.
3. Why are stanzas 2, 4 and 6 given in parenthesis?
Ans :
They are in parenthesis because the ideas in them are different. They effect the inner thoughts of the girls and not response to the mother's instructions.
4. Who is the speaker in stanzas 2, 4 and 6? Do you think this speaker is listening to the speaker in stanzas 1, 3, 5 and 7?
Ans :
Speaker of the stanzas 2, 4 and 6 is the child, Amanda. No, she is not paying any attention to the speaker of stanzas 1, 3 and 5 as she is lost in a world of her own. Her imagination provides her an escape from the harsh reality.

process. (universal occurrence/passing over/
personal nature)

Ans :

2023

- i. (a) that the grief experienced by the boy is profound ; (b) that the grief becomes a central and unshakeable part of the boy's emotional state.
- ii. (c) emotional numbness and physical quivering
- iii. The given claim is False because the loss of the ball signifies a moment of transition, a loss of innocence, and a realisation of the complexities of life which is far more than just a material loss.
- iv. personal nature

4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

What is the boy now, who has lost his ball,
What, what is he to do? I saw it go
Merrily bouncing, down the street, and then
Merrily over-there it is in the water!

- i. In what way does the language used in this poem challenge traditional ideas of what poetry should be?
- ii. What is the significance of the use of no punctuation after the words 'What is the boy now, who has lost his ball,' and the use of a dash in 'Meetly over-there it is in the water!' in the poem and how does this contribute to the overall mood and tone of the poem?
Answer in about 40 words.
- iii. Complete the sentence with the appropriate option.
The poet seems to have indicated the merry bouncing of the ball to _____.
(a) create a sense of rhythm in these lines.
(b) support the happiness of the experience of playing.
(c) contrast with the dejected feeling of the boy.
(d) indicate the cheerful mood of the boy.
- iv. Identify the use and purpose of repetitive sounds used in the given lines of the poem.

Ans :

2020

- i. The poem is written in free verse with ample use of enjambment. These features combine to show a very unusual and unconventional style of writing poetry.
- ii. The unusual use of punctuation makes the loss of the boy more final and transformational. It

suggests that the boy is nothing now that his ball is gone. A dash after 'Merrily over' helps draw attention to a specific moment in the poem for a dramatic pause or a suspenseful moment. The ball has gone for good.

- iii. (c) contrast with the dejected feeling of the boy.
- iv. The poet repeatedly uses 'what' to address the absent audience. He uses assonance by repeating the vowel 'o' in "now, who has lost his ball" 'bouncing', 'over.' He has repeated the word 'what' in lines 1 and 2 and 'merrily' in lines 3 and 4 for emphasis and rhythmic effect.



Ans :

2020

(c) Metaphor

6. What does she imagine being when she pictures herself in a tower?

(a) Mermaid (b) Orphan
(c) Rapunzel (d) None of these

Ans :

2015

(c) Rapunzel

7. What will Amanda's behaviour make people think?

(a) her mother loves her
(b) her mother harasses her
(c) her mother is understanding
(d) both a and c

Ans :

2015

(b) her mother harasses her

8. What made Amanda sulk and become moody?

(a) When she had to complete her homework
(b) When her mother gives her too many instructions
(c) When she has to clean her shoes
(d) None of these

Ans :

2014

(b) When her mother gives her too many instructions

9. Why should Amanda not eat chocolate?

(a) it causes heart disease
(b) it will damage liver
(c) it causes acne
(d) it causes cancer

Ans :

2014

(c) it causes acne

10. If Amanda is an orphan, what will she do?

(a) She will roam about in the streets
(b) She will tease everyone in the streets
(c) She will not complete her homework
(d) All of the above

Ans :

2014

(a) She will roam about in the streets

11. What should Amanda not to do to her soldiers?

(a) Straight (b) Hunch
(c) Ring (d) None of these

Ans :

2013

(b) Hunch

12. What is the meaning of "slouching"?

(a) Bend (b) Sit in a lazy way
(c) lie down (d) bend backwards

Ans :

2012

(b) Sit in a lazy way

13. Rapunzel is a character from a _____ fairy tale.

(a) German (b) Irish
(c) English (d) Indian

Ans :

2012

(a) German

14. How should Amanda sit?

(a) Long Sit (b) Side Sit
(c) Straight (d) Ring Sit

Ans :

2011

(c) Straight

15. What does Amanda want to do as an orphan?

(a) walk freely in the streets
(b) play in dust with bare feet
(c) both a and b
(d) None of these

Ans :

2011

(c) both a and b

16. Amanda's mother instructed her not to eat _____ for her acne.

(a) Oil (b) Sweets
(c) Chocolate (d) Fast food

Ans :

2010, 2007

(c) Chocolate

17. What was Amanda to finish?

(a) her homework (b) her hair
(c) her bath (d) catch the fishes

Ans :

2009

(a) her homework

18. Meaning of 'hunch' is

(a) Bend (b) Sudden attack
(c) Bite (d) Laugh

Ans :

2008

(a) Bend

19. Amanda imagined herself as a _____ of emerald sea.

(a) Flower (b) Mermaid
(c) Island (d) Fish

Ans :

2007

(b) Mermaid.

She says that she wants to be the only resident of this beautiful green sea. She imagines herself like a mermaid who is alone there and leads her life in a very relaxing way. She says that she wants to be carried away by the current of water and feel the relaxing environment there.

Stanza 3

Did you finish your homework, Amanda?
Did you tidy your room, Amanda?
I thought I told you to clean your shoes,
Amanda!

Word Meaning :

1. Tidy - clean up

Explanation :

Here the poet says that Amanda's mother is inquiring her about whether she has done her homework or not? And then she asks her whether she has cleaned her room or not. Moreover she is also reminded to clean her shoes. So, here we can see that the mother is constantly asking her questions regarding her homework being done or not or whether she had cleaned up her room and shoes or not.

Stanza 4

(I am an orphan, roaming the street.
I pattern soft dust with my hushed, bare feet.
The silence is golden, the freedom is sweet.)

Word Meaning :

1. Orphan - a child whose parents are dead
2. Pattern - make patterns
3. Hushed - quiet and still place

Explanation :

Amanda is listening to her mother's instructions, she imagines herself to be an orphan who is roaming in the streets. This means that she imagines if she would have been without parents she would have walked freely in the streets. She would have drawn designs on the soft dust with her uncovered feet very quietly. So, we can see that she thinks opposite to her mother. Her mother wants her to keep everything neat and clean. But Amanda wants to play in dust with her bare feet. Moreover, she is so fed up of these constant instructions from her mother, that she says silence is golden which means that silence is very crucial and precious. She further says that freedom is sweet. This means she never feels free when she is with her mother.

Stanza 5

Don't eat that chocolate, Amanda!
Remember your acne, Amanda!
Will you please look at me when I'm speaking to you,
Amanda!

Word Meaning :

1. Acne - Pimples

Explanation :

Next, Amanda's mother is disallowing her to eat chocolates. She reminds her of pimples that Amanda faces due to eating chocolates. At last she scolds her for not paying attention to what her mother says.

Stanza 6

(I am Rapunzel; I have not a care;
life in a tower is tranquil and rare;
I'll certainly never let down my bright hair!)

Word Meaning :

1. Rapunzel - A girl in the fairy tale by Brothers Grimm
2. Tranquil - calm, quiet
3. Rare - uncommon

Explanation :

Amanda imagines herself to be Rapunzel. Rapunzel was a character from a fairy tale that was captured in tower by a witch. The witch used to climb the tower with the help of long hair of Rapunzel that were let down by her through the window. So, now Amanda wants to be Rapunzel because she feels that life in the tower will be peaceful and unusual. She thinks she will be free and live in a peaceful environment in the tower. She also confirms to herself that she will never let her hair down to anyone so that nobody could come to her in the tower.

Stanza 7

Stop that sulking at once, Amanda!
You're always so moody, Amanda!
Anyone would think that I nagged at you,
Amanda!

Word Meaning :

1. Sulking - be in a bad mood
2. Moody - unstable
3. Nagged - harass

Explanation :

Amanda's mother now warns her for behaving in a very odd manner. She asks her to stop being in a bad mood. Moreover she blames her of having

6. 'The silence is golden, the freedom is sweet' Why does Amanda say so?

Ans :

2017, 2011, 2010

Amanda says that 'the silence is golden, the freedom is sweet' because she wants to lead a life without any restrictions. She likes silence because she wants to roam freely and undisturbed in a calm green sea like a mermaid. Again, she likes freedom in life like an orphan to escape the nagging of her parents and have the liberty to roam freely on the streets.

7. What is Amanda asked to do or not to do?

Ans :

2012

Amanda is asked not to bite her nails, not to hunch her shoulders and not to eat chocolate. She is asked to sit up straight, to finish her homework, to tidy her room and to clean her shoes. In fact, she is constantly asked to do this or not to do that.

8. Amanda imagines herself to be Rapunzel, yet would not like to do what all she did. Identify and state the reasons for her decision.

Ans :

2011, 2009

Amanda wants to be Rapunzel to live a peaceful life in a tower, where no one gives any instruction and she doesn't have to do any work. But she doesn't want to escape with a prince like Rapunzel. She never wants to escape and leave such a peaceful atmosphere, with no instruction and no work to do.

9. Who is the mermaid in 'Amanda', what does she wish to do ?

Ans :

2011

The mermaid is Amanda herself, as imagined by Amanda. She wishes to drift blissfully on a dreamy, emerald emerald sea, without anyone else accompanying her.

10. What is the theme of the poem 'Amanda' ?

Ans :

2010

Too many instructions and too much control is resented by children. They get bored and fed up. Then, they listen to their parents half-heartedly and indulge in daydreaming.

11. What is Amanda asked to do about her nails, shoulders and how is she asked to sit ?

Ans :

2009

Amanda is a little girl who is asked not to bite her nails. She is asked not to raise and bend her shoulders. She is asked to sit up straight and not in a lazy, drooping way.

12. Justify the title of the poem, 'Amanda !' Why has an exclamation mark been used in the title ?

Ans :

2007

The poem centres on Amanda and her mother, who repeatedly calls out her name while giving instructions. Since Amanda often ignores her mother and remains lost in her own world, the mother calls her name with emphasis. Therefore, the title is appropriate, and the exclamation mark highlights the mother's strong tone.

13. Do you consider Amanda's mother to be a nagging mother ?

Ans :

2006

Amanda's mother is indeed a nagging mother. She is all about instructions and finding faults. No doubt it is her responsibility to instil good values into her daughter, but not at the cost of her child's happiness. One should know how to strike a balance between maintaining responsibilities and taking good care.

14. What are the instructions that Amanda gets which all school-going children must follow?

Ans :

2005, 2003

Amanda gets instructions to finish her homework, to tidy her room, to clean her shoes, to walk straight, to not to eat chocolates, not to bite her nails and finally to stop sulking.

15. What does Amanda imagine doing as an orphan?

Ans :

2004

Amanda imagines herself as an orphan just roaming about carelessly in the streets. She makes patterns on the dust with her bare feet. There is no one to nag her and her freedom is sweet.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. Amanda from the poem 'Amanda!' is a teenager like Anne Frank and lives in her fantasy world whereas Anne is a chatter box. What conversation will Anne Frank have with Amanda about different perspectives of life ? Write your answer in about 120 words.

Ans :

2024

In a conversation between Anne Frank and Amanda, Anne, the chatterbox, would likely share her experiences of living in hiding during the Holocaust. She would emphasize the importance of facing reality and finding strength in adversity. On the other hand, Amanda, living in her fantasy world, might express her desire to escape from harsh realities. Anne would encourage Amanda to find courage in confronting life's challenges,

CHAPTER 7

THE TREES

1. INTRODUCTION

The writer of the poem is Adrienne Rich who is a fine writer of this century. Her writings mostly pertain to the freedom. In this poem as well, there are trees in her house. She pictures that a forest without trees is meaningless. The trees, roots, leaves and boughs are struggling hard to move out of the house but the poet is unable to bear their departure. On the other side nature is waiting to welcome them. Thus the idea of freeness is very much prominent here. It is natural with all to have freedom and stay in their surroundings.

2. SUMMARY

A Forest Without Trees

There are trees in the house of the poet which are moving out into the forest. The forest without trees looked empty and the birds and insects do not stay in it. In the absence of the shadow no rays of the sun could pass.

A Good Comparison

The night remains busy in her work. The roots of the trees try to separate themselves from the cracks in the floor of the veranda. The leaves and twigs try to move and come out of the glass. The poet compares the happiness as well as struggle of the branches which are trying to come out under the roof of the poet's house. They are as happy as the patients who have been discharged from the clinic and are ready to move to their houses.

Poet's Sadness

The poet is much sad at the departure of the trees from the house. She is unable to mention it in her letters. The night has started with the shining of the moon in the sky. She can experience the smell and voice of the leaves and lichen. She is troubled at their whispering.

Breaking of the Moon

In the night the trees are struggling to come forward in the forest. Their encounter to come out from the house has broken the glass. In the night, the wind is working and it is rushing to welcome

them. The moon too has broken into the pieces and its flash can be seen on the highest place on the oak as if it were in a crown.

3. EXPLANATION

Stanza 1

"The trees inside are moving out into the forest, the forest that was empty all these days where no bird could sit
no insect hide
no sun bury its feet in shadow
the forest that was empty all these nights
will be full of trees by morning."

Word Meaning :

1. Empty - vacant
2. Bury - cover something so that it is not visible

Explanation :

The poet observes that the trees in his house have been moving outside into the forest which was empty since so long. The trees are not actually moving. The poet has used imagery to convey that human beings have been destroying nature and falsely have been trying to maintain it in their houses. Since the forests outside have been empty, there have been no birds sitting on the branches of the trees, no insects could hide into the trees and sunlight could never disappear under the shadow of the trees. The poet expects that the forest would be full of trees by next morning.

Stanza 2

"All night the roots work
to disengage themselves from the cracks
in the veranda floor.
The leaves strain toward the glass
small twigs stiff with exertion
long-cramped boughs shuffling under the roof
like newly discharged patients
half-dazed, moving
to the clinic doors."

is a wide gap between the behaviour of adults and children. Parents set limitations on children's thoughts and behaviour. They want their children to behave in a socially acceptable manner rather than what gives pleasure to the child. Adults want to decide children's clothes, toys, professions and even life partners. In this race of social show off they forget that every child has his own likes and dislikes and he or she should be left free to live his life. No doubt, adults want to instil good values into their children but not at the cost of children's happiness. They should know how to strike a balance between maintaining responsibilities and taking good care. They must examine their narrow-mindedness and see the world through their child's eyes.

5. What advice might "chatterbox" Anne (Frank) have for the quietly imaginative Amanda? Present this as a conversation between the two. You may begin this way:

Anne : Gosh! You do run off into some strange worlds, don't you?

Amanda : (nods) Well...

Ans :

2021

Anne : Gosh! You do run off into some strange worlds, don't you?

Amanda : (nods) Well, change places with me to understand my plight. I am always surrounded by instructions that I don't want to follow anymore.

Anne Frank : Adults do not feel like children. Why don't you share your thoughts with your true friend?

Amanda : I don't have a true friend. Have you got one?

Anne Frank : Yes, Kitty, my diary, is my best friend. I share my personal talks with her and feel light-headed.

Amanda : But, I don't know how to write a diary. Will you help me, Anne?

Anne Frank : Of course, it will give me pleasure.

do and what not is her own choice. She should not be dictated by her mother. Her mother's constant nagging leads her away from her. She creates a world of her own. Her world is not the world of harsh realities, but it is an imaginary world of fairies and mermaids. There she finds solace as she can wander in a lonely island blissfully like a mermaid. She can enjoy freedom by roaming around the streets like an orphan. She craves to live in a lonely tower leading a peaceful life like Rapunzel. This way, she avoids her mother as she doesn't like her constant nagging. She doesn't even look at her while she is speaking to her.

7. How does Amanda tackle the nagging nature of her parents ? Explain with examples from the poem. What values does it portray about Amanda ?

Ans :

2013, 2008

Amanda is a small girl who is termed as moody for her careless behaviour. But it is very surprising to know that this is her defence mechanism to shield her self against her nagging parents. Amanda is getting instructions from her parents, which become too much to handle for the small girl. She is told not to eat her nails and sit in a proper position. Amanda's response to it is her work of imagination where she is a mermaid drifting effortlessly by the languid river. Further, she is asked about cleaning her room and finishing her homework to which she reacts by imagining herself being an orphan roaming in the street and making patterns with her bare feet. Amanda then faces the heat for eating a chocolate, which had once caused her acne. This time in her imagination, she takes the form of Rapunzel and wishes to live on top of a tower away from everyone. Amanda's parents are upset over her behaviour and casualness, but she stays in her own world. All these portray Amanda in a positive light while her parents in a negative light.

FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS

DOWNLOAD NODIA APP

6. Why does Amanda escape into the dreamy world of mermaids, fairies and orphans ? Does she find any solace there ?

Ans :

2018

Amanda is a teenager. Like all teenagers, she too loves freedom. She wants to lead her own kind of life. She doesn't want to be an overprotected child. Nor does she want that her parents should control and guide her activities. What she should

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow :

Don't eat that chocolate, Amanda!

Remember your acne, Amanda!

Will you please look at me when I'm speaking to you, Amanda!

(I am Rapunzel, I have not a care;
life in a tower is tranquil and rare;)

- i. What is the central idea of the poem as reflected in the lines above? Answer in about 40 words.

- 10.** What rushes out to meet the trees?
 (a) Wind (b) Man
 (c) Water (d) Fire
Ans : 2015
 (a) Wind
- 11.** What does the poetess compare the tree branches to?
 (a) An old patient.
 (b) A newly discharged patient.
 (c) A Doctor
 (d) None of the above
Ans : 2014
 (b) A newly discharged patient.
- 12.** Name the poet of the poem 'The trees'
 (a) Adrienne Rich (b) Robert Frost
 (c) Carolyn Wells (d) Walt Whitman
Ans : 2014
 (a) Adrienne Rich
- 13.** What type of trees are described in the poem 'The 'Frees'?
 (a) Tall Trees (b) Short Plants
 (c) Decorative trees (d) All of these
Ans : 2014
 (c) Decorative trees
- 14.** Name the literary device used in "The moon is broken like a mirror,"
 (a) metaphor (b) simile
 (c) alliteration (d) imagery
Ans : 2013
 (b) simile
- 15.** The roots are entangled in the
 (a) earth (b) pot
 (c) cracks (d) stone
Ans : 2012
 (c) cracks
- 16.** The cracks have appeared on
 (a) the ceiling (b) the flower pots
 (c) the roof (d) the veranda floor
Ans : 2012
 (d) the veranda floor
- 17.** The word 'disengage' means
 (a) combine (b) separate
 (c) join (d) refuse
Ans : 2012
 (b) separate
- 18.** The dramatic changes in body features associated with puberty are mainly because of the secretions of:
 (a) Estrogen from testes and testosterone from ovary
 (b) Estrogen from adrenal gland and testosterone from pituitary gland
 (c) Testosterone from testes and estrogen from ovary
 (d) Testosterone from thyroid gland and estrogen from pituitary gland
Ans : 2011
 (c) Testosterone from testes and estrogen from ovary
- 19.** The number of pairs of nerves which arises from the spinal cord is:
 (a) 21 (b) 31
 (c) 41 (d) 51
Ans : 2011
 (b) 31
- 20.** A big tree falls in a forest, but its roots are still in contact with the soil. The branches of this fallen tree grow straight up (vertically). This happens in response to:
 (a) Water and light (b) Water and minerals
 (c) Gravity and water (d) Light and gravity
Ans : 2011
 (d) Light and gravity
- 21.** Trees are usually the shelter of –
 (a) Birds (b) Human beings
 (c) Rabbits. (d) None of these
Ans : 2011, 2004
 (a) Birds
- 22.** What do the roots do all night?
 (a) try to free themselves
 (b) try to respire
 (c) try to appear long
 (d) none of the above
Ans : 2010
 (a) try to free themselves
- 23.** The plant hormone which triggers the fall of mature leaves and fruits from the plant body is:
 (a) Auxin (b) Gibberellin
 (c) Absciscic acid (d) Cytokinin
Ans : 2010
 (c) Absciscic acid

4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

(There is a languid, emerald sea,
where the sole inhabitant is me-
a mermaid, drifting blissfully.)

- i. Complete the sentence with the appropriate option.
“There is a languid, emerald sea,
where the sole inhabitant is me”
The poet has used _____ poetic device in the given lines.
(a) Assonance (b) Personification
(c) Enjambment (d) Synecdoche
- ii. Comment on the imagery that the poet creates in these lines in about 40 words.
- iii. Why does Amanda want to be sole inhabitant of sea?
- iv. Why is this stanza given within brackets in the poem?

Ans :

2017

- i. (c) Enjambment
- ii. While Amanda’s mother reprimands her, she imagines herself as a mermaid in a deep green sea. She imagines being the only resident of the sea who lives her life in a very relaxing way. Her mother’s constant nagging drives her to escape into her imagination wherein she can live a peaceful and solitary life. She imagines it to be a life of freedom
- iii. Amanda wants to be away from this noisy and disturbing atmosphere and hence wishes to be the sole inhabitant of the sea
- iv. This stanza is given within brackets because it reveals the inner thoughts of Amanda. Brackets have been used for visual contrast between what Amanda is saying and what her mother is instructing.

5. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

I am an orphan, roaming the street,
I pattern soft dust with my hushed, bare feet.
The silence is golden, the freedom is sweet.
Don’t eat that chocolate, Amanda!
Remember your acne, Amanda!
Will you please look at me when I’m speaking to you,

- i. Fill the blank with one word.
The extract shows that the speaker, Amanda’s mother is _____ about Amanda’s acne and cares for her.

- ii. How does the use of metaphor impact this extract?
- iii. Why is Amanda imagining being an orphan? Answer in about 40 words.
- iv. What is the poet estimating by making silence golden?
(a) The worth of silence
(b) The worth of beauty
(c) The value of independence
(d) The worth of privacy

Ans :

2015,

- i. concerned
- ii. The use of metaphor impacts the extract by an imagination and by helping the writer convey more emotions.
- iii. Amanda is imagining being an orphan to live a life of freedom. She is constantly scolded by her mother. So, she escapes into her own world of imagination wherein she lives a peaceful life, all alone.
- iv. (a) The worth of silence



while Amanda might enlighten Anne about the power of imagination as a coping mechanism. Their conversation would highlight the contrast between facing reality and seeking solace in fantasy, illustrating the different perspectives people adopt to navigate life's complexities.

2. You have been asked to present an evaluation of the approaches of the mothers of both, the baby seagull and Amanda, towards helping their children. Write this presentation draft including your insights, in about 120 words, comparing the approaches of both parents.

You may begin this way:

One acknowledges that both parents, Amanda's mother and the baby seagull's mother both.... however, ...

Ans :

2023

One acknowledges that both parents, Amanda's mother and the baby seagull's mother both were quite harsh on their children. While they were attentive of their children's flaws and scope of improvements, their methods of correcting them were a bit strict. The seagull's mother was determined to make his child take his first flight. So much so she let him starved in order to achieve the goal.

On the other hand, Amanda's mother was slightly harsher than the baby seagull's mother as she continuously corrected her daughter's flaws and nagged at her for the same throughout the day. Instead of understanding her daughter's emotions and her abilities, she bickered at her for everything. However, the intention of both the mothers were just to help their children with their lives and bring the best out of them.

Even though both mothers have good intentions and want to better their children's lives, their methods, in part, may be misguided or ineffective. The seagull's mother could benefit from being more sensitive to her child's emotions, while Amanda's mother could benefit from focusing on her daughter's strengths and building her self-esteem.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

3. Look at the given image of a book cover. If the author, Jason Kotecki were to ask a grown-up Amanda to help with his book by writing one of the 8 secrets based on her experiences, what might she share? Elaborate based on your understanding

of the poem.

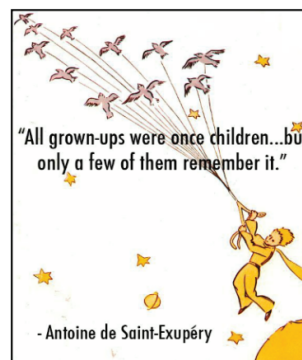


Ans :

2021

Amanda would say that she had gone through a distressing childhood. In the words of Amanda- "My mother always expected perfect behaviour from me. I never denied completing my daily tasks but my mother wanted me to perform everything as per her will and time. My mom never understood that I wanted to enjoy my life in solitude. I wanted to enjoy making patterns in the sand but she was worried about people and society. I did not like to keep everything well tucked and inside the cupboards. Why I was not allowed to keep my things handy in my room? Why was my mum always tense about my homework? I was so fed up with all these repeated naggings that I wanted to live alone as an orphan. I thought even the orphans would have been living a better life than me. I wanted to enjoy that phase of my life but I was not allowed and now my childhood has passed. sadly, I will never be able to enjoy that childhood fun for the rest of my life.

4. Read the quote given below carefully. Based on your understanding of the poem, explain how and why this quote can be applied to the poem.



Ans :

2021

"All grown-ups were once children but only a few of them remember it". Poem Amanda wants to give the same message to all the parents. There

Word Meaning :

1. Exertion - pressure
2. Twigs - topmost part of a tree
3. Cramped - shrunk
4. Disengage - get free

Explanation :

It seems that the trees work silently at night in order to complete their mission of getting free from the boundaries of the house. They work to free themselves from the cracks of the verandah floor. The leaves of the trees put a lot of pressure on the glass so that it breaks. As a result, the twigs have hardened. The large branches of the trees have shrunk because they didn't have enough space to spread out. They try to move out slowly like newly discharged patients who are half shocked to enter the outside world.

Stanza 3

"I sit inside, doors open to the veranda
writing long letters
in which I scarcely mention the departure
of the forest from the house.
The night is fresh, the whole moon shines
in a sky still open
the smell of leaves and lichen
still reaches like a voice into the rooms."

Word Meaning :

1. Departure - leaving
2. Lichen - crusty patches on a tree
3. Scarcely - hardly

Explanation :

The poet sits in the house, the doors of which open into the veranda. She is writing letters but hardly mentions about the trees which are trying to move out to the empty forests. The conflict between man and nature is presented by the poet. Man uses nature to decorate the interiors of his house and cuts down trees to make a house for himself. Nature has been shown to rebel against man as the trees strive to move out in the moonlight where night is fresh. The poet can smell the leaves and lichens coming from the trees that reach her room like voices.

Stanza 4

"My head is full of whispers
which tomorrow will be silent.
Listen. The glass is breaking.
The trees are stumbling forward
into the night. Winds rush to meet them.

The moon is broken like a mirror,
its pieces flash now in the crown
of the tallest oak."

Word Meaning :

1. Flash - shine
2. Stumbling - walk unsteadily
3. Silent - quite

Explanation :

The poet hears the sounds coming from the leaves and lichens of the trees. These sounds will vanish in the morning when the trees would have moved out of the house into the forests. The poet can hear the glass breaking due to the efforts of the twigs of the tree. As the trees move outside they fall on each other and get struck. As they move out the wind seems to come to meet them. The tall trees can stand straight as they are now free. These trees have broken the moon into pieces like broken mirror. The moon now sits on the trees like a crown. The use of moon is an imagery to show that in between the land and the sky are the trees. One can only see moon in parts and not the complete moon because of these trees.

4. LITERARY DEVICES

"The Trees" is a free verse poem of four stanzas, making a total of 32 lines. There is no set rhyme scheme and no regular metric beat pattern, each line is different rhythmically, and the lines vary from short to long.

In this poem there is an uncertainty as the poem progresses. Some lines end without punctuation, but no true enjambment is in evidence (For example, lines 2, 3, 4 and 5) suggesting the reader is free to carry on regardless or, treat the line ending as a natural caesura (pause).

1. **Repetition :** Repetition (anaphora) occurs in the first stanza (the forest that was empty), reinforcing the idea that previously there was no life outside. Take note also of: where no bird/no insect/no sun.
2. **Simile :** Similes, in the second, third and final stanzas, involve both human and domestic elements: like newly discharged patients/like a voice/like a mirror.
3. **Personification :** Personification is to be found in the first stanza (no sun bury its feet in shadow), the second stanza (small twigs stiff with exertion/long-cramped boughs shuffling) and the fourth stanza (The trees are stumbling forward).

- ii. Complete the sentence with the appropriate option. "Will you please look at me when I'm speaking to you, Amanda!" tells us that the mother's attitude is _____.
 (a) loving (b) relaxed
 (c) authoritative (d) thoughtful
- iii. Identify any one poetic device used in the above extract.
- iv. For what reason does Amanda imagine herself to be Rapunzel?

Ans :

2024

- i. The central idea of the poem is the conflict between parental authority and the desire for independence experienced by the speaker, Amanda. The repeated instructions of her mother highlight the mundane concerns and pressures that Amanda faces.
- ii. (c) authoritative.
- iii. Repetition.
- iv. Amanda imagines herself as Rapunzel to express her longing for freedom and escape from the constraints and authority imposed upon her, similar to Rapunzel's situation in the tower.

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow:

I thought I told you to clean your shoes, Amanda!
 (I am an orphan, roaming the street.
 I pattern soft dust with my hushed, bare feet.
 The silence is golden; the freedom is sweet.)
 Don't eat that chocolate, Amanda! (Amanda!)

- i. Which of the following best describes the symbolic meaning of the soft dust and hushed, bare feet in Amanda's orphan daydream?
 (a) A sense of isolation and loneliness
 (b) Freedom and independence
 (c) Poverty and hardship
 (d) Conformity and obedience
- ii. What does the contrast between the speaker's commands and Amanda's daydream suggest about her imaginative escape? (Answer in 30-40 words)
- iii. Complete the sentence appropriately:
 The lack of the special use of parentheses would have resulted in _____.
 _____.
- iv. How does the line, "I thought I told you to clean your shoes, Amanda!" help us infer that Amanda's actions are being closely monitored and directed?

Ans :

2023

- i. (b) Freedom and independence
- ii. The stark contrast between the speaker's commands and Amanda's daydreams suggests that Amanda uses her imagination as a form of escape from the demands and pressures placed upon her.
- iii. in a loss of the distinct separation between Amanda's inner thoughts and the external demands of the speaker.
- iv. The use of "I thought" suggests a reminder/frustration on the part of the speaker, supporting the idea that Amanda's behaviour is under close scrutiny. (This implies a relationship where Amanda is expected to adhere to specific instructions and fulfill assigned tasks, reinforcing a sense of external control and authority over her actions.)

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow :

There is a languid, emerald Sea
 where the sole inhabitant is me—
 a mermaid, drifting blissfully.

- i. The colour of the sea is
 (a) blue
 (b) yellow
 (c) red
 (d) None of these
- ii. Identify the poetic device used in the lines 2 and 3 of the extract.
- iii. Why is the extract given in parenthesis?
- iv. What does Amanda want to be a mermaid? Answer in about 40 words.

Ans :

2018

- i. (d) None of these
- ii. Metaphor
- iii. The extract is given in parenthesis as they are the thoughts of the child (Amanda) in between the instruction she is being given by her mother.
- iv. Amanda is an escapist. She imagines herself to be a mermaid and wants to live on an island where she is the only inhabitant. She loves freedom and wants to drift, blissfully like a mermaid on that lonely island.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS
 DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

Modern life with all kinds of physical comfort has also brought a lot of moral downfall. Our lives have become busy and we have become selfish and greedy. Man would also want to enjoy the beauty of nature and go out in the open and be free, just like trees.

5. You may read the poem “On Killing a Tree” by Gieve Patel (Beehive-Textbook in English for Class IX, NCERT). Compare and contrast it with the poem you have just read.

Ans :

In the poem “On Killing a Tree” the poet Give Patel explains that killing a tree is not an easy task and it takes time to completely kill a tree. The tree has absorbed sunlight, air and water for many years and therefore, it has deep roots which have been securely held in the earth for many years. Hence, to kill a tree, as the poet sarcastically explains, one has to completely uproot and pull it out. After that, when the tree gets dried, hardened, twisted and withered and turns brownish, that is when it has been completely killed. In other words, through this poem the poet inspires us not to “kill” trees.

Meanwhile, the poem ‘The Trees’ also points out that man is devoiding the forests of their flora and fauna and is thus ‘killing’ trees. Man plants trees and plants in the houses of the concrete jungles built by him where the frees feel suffocated and cramped. Therefore, the poet Adrienne Rich imagines them moving back to forests ‘where no bird could sit’ and ‘no insect hide’ because the forest was ‘empty’ of the trees. But later, the ‘winds rush to meet them’ and greet the trees when they finally to the forests, their rightful place. Thus, both the poems are a sensitive commentary on, how we should not treat the trees or how the frees must be treated and makes us aware of the deteriorating condition of nature.

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. Who has been personified in the line “no sun bury its feet in shadow”

- (a) sun (b) feet
(c) shadow (d) none of these

Ans :

- (a) sun

2021

2. What are the trees compared to?

- (a) insects
(b) newly discharged patients
(c) birds
(d) children

Ans :

- (b) newly discharged patients

2021

3. What reaches like a voice into the rooms?

- (a) Noise of the roots
(b) shuffling of the branches
(c) smell of leaves and lichens
(d) light of the moon

Ans :

- (c) smell of leaves and lichens

2021

4. What rushes to meet the trees?

- (a) wind (b) light
(c) Sun (d) Moon

Ans :

- (a) wind

2020

5. The pieces of the moon can be seen in the crown of which tree?

- (a) Apple tree (b) Hemlock tree
(c) oak tree (d) walnut tree

Ans :

- (c) oak tree

2020

6. What had been empty?

- (a) trees (b) forest
(c) house (d) World

Ans :

- (b) forest

2016

7. What is the poetess doing?

- (a) writing long letters (b) reading
(c) sleeping (d) watching television

Ans :

- (a) writing long letters

2016, 2007

8. Name the literary device used in ‘The moon is broken like a mirror,’

- (a) metaphor (b) simile
(c) alliteration (d) imagery

Ans :

- (b) simile

2015

9. By morning, the forest will be full of _____

- (a) insects (b) Sun
(c) trees (d) birds

Ans :

- (c) trees

2015

5. MESSAGE

The message of the poem “The Trees” is that freedom and equality should be for all the living organisms in the world. Whether we take this poem as nature’s poem or a feminist oriented poem, the poet gives a clear message that we should have equal rights. No one’s freedom should be taken away.

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Thinking About The Poem

1. (i) Find, the first stanza, three things that cannot happen in a treeless forest.
- (ii) What picture do these words create in your mind: “...sun bury its feet in shadow” ? What could the poet mean by the sun’s feet?

Ans :

2017

- (i) In a treeless forest, no bird can sit, no insect can hide, no sun can bury its feet or rays in shadow.
 - (ii) The words mean that the sun is setting. These words show that it is the time of dusk. The sun is not shining at this time. The shadow starts falling down.
2. (i) Where are the trees in the poem ? What do their roots, their leaves and their twigs do ?
 - (ii) What does the poet compare their branches to ?

Ans :

2017, 2007

- (i) The trees are in the room attached with the veranda. The roots try to move out from the cracks in the veranda floor. The leaves try to struggle to come near the glass. The twigs are shrivelled and they try to come under the roof like the newly discharged patients from the hospitals.
 - (ii) The poet compares their branches with the newly discharged patients who are leaving from the hospitals.
3. (i) How does the poet describe the moon :
 - (a) at the beginning of the third stanza, and
 - (b) at its end. What causes this change?
 - (ii) What happens to the house when the trees move out of it?
 - (iii) Why do you think the poet does not mention “the departure of the forest form the house” in her letter? (could it be that we are often silent about important happening that are so unexpected that they embarrass us ? Think

about this again when you answer the next set of questions.)

Ans :

- (i) The poet describes the Moon
 - (a) One can see the whole moon shining in the open sky.
 - (b) The moon is broken like a mirror and its pieces flash now in the crown of the tallest oak.
 - (ii) When the trees move out of the house, the smell of leaves and crusty patches or bushy growth on tree trunks or bare ground still reaches like a voice into the rooms of the house.
 - (iii) The poet does not mention these words in her letter because she is silent about important happening that are so unexpected that they embarrass her. The trees are morning out of the gouse.
4. Now that you have read the poem in detail, we can begin to ask what the poem might mean. Here are two suggestions. Can you think of others ?
 - (i) Does the poem present a conflict between man and nature ? Compare it with %Tiger in the Zoo.’ Is the poet suggesting that plants and trees, used for ‘interior decoration’ in cities while forests are cut down, are ‘imprisoned’, and need to ‘break out’?
 - (ii) On the other hand, Adrienne Rich has been known to use trees as a metaphor for human beings; this is a recurrent image in her poetry. What new meanings emerge from the poem if you take its trees to be symbolic of their particular meaning.

Ans :

- (i) Yes, the poem presents a conflict between man and nature. Man has always caused much harm to nature, without realizing that it actually is a harm to the human race. Humans cut down forests for forest goods, which has destroyed a lot of natural beauty. By keeping trees inside walls and denying them their natural home, they are denying them their freedom. That is why, the trees want to move out. Similarly, in the poem A Tiger in the Zoo, the poet shows that animals feel bounded by cages and they want to get free and run wild in the open.
- (ii) If trees have been used as a metaphor for human beings, then the poem would mean that like the trees, humans too want to break free of the boundaries that life puts on them.

24. Why can't birds sit and insects hide in them?

- (a) Because they are very tall.
- (b) Because they are too much short.
- (c) Because they are decorative trees
- (d) All of the above

Ans :

2009

- (c) Because they are decorative trees

25. Where do the decorative plants grow?

- (a) in open areas
- (b) in small pots and pans
- (c) in houses
- (d) none of these

Ans :

2008

- (b) in small pots and pans.

26. In a summer tree

- (a) Make a cool shelter
- (b) Give us no cool shelter
- (c) Make us warmer
- (d) None of these

Ans :

2007

- (a) Make a cool shelter

27. The poet is writing long letters sitting

- (a) in a garden
- (b) on ther of
- (c) outside
- (d) inside

Ans :

2007

- (d) inside

28. What shines in the night?

- (a) halogen light
- (b) full sun
- (c) full moon
- (d) night bulb

Ans :

2005

- (c) full moon

2. What is the central idea of the poem, 'The Trees'?

Ans :

2022

The central idea of the poem is the conflict between man and nature. A plant is brought inside the house when it is a sapling. But as it grows into a tree, it gets suffocated with the limited space available. So it departs to feel free. The tree is thus, moving out to occupy the now empty forest, made so by man's indiscriminate felling of trees. Humans must understand the negative impact of their actions on nature and mend their ways before it is too late.

3. Why is the description of the moon different in the beginning and at the end of the third stanza?

Ans :

2020

At the beginning of the third stanza, the poet says that one can see the whole moon shining in the open sky, but in the end, the moon seems to be broken like a mirror and its pieces shine in the crown of the tallest oak tree. The change is caused by the shifting of the trees outside.

4. Justify the revolt of the trees and state two values which the man should possess to stop the revolt.

Ans :

2020

The trees inside the house get suffocated as they grow. They try to free themselves from the cracks of the veranda floor and the leaves stretch out as if to move towards the glass. They are justified in their revolt. Men should learn the importance of trees.

5. How does the poet describe the night? How does she feel?

Ans :

2017

It is night time. The night is fresh. In the open sky, the full moon is shining. The poet feels the smell of leaves and lichen reaching inside the room. Her head is full of whispers. But she thinks that the next day these whispers will be silent.

6. Why are the trees described in the first stanza not useful for birds or insects?

Ans :

2017, 2012

The trees described in the first stanza are either decorative plants kept inside a house, or they are shown only in a painting or picture. Therefore, they are not useful for birds or insects. Birds cannot sit on their branches. Insects cannot hide in them.

7. What happens to the roots and leaves of these trees at night?

Ans :

2016

The roots of these trees are engaged into the cracks of the veranda floor. At night, these roots try to

NODIA

Short Answer Type Questions

1. "The Trees" is a symbolic poem and Adrienne Rich has used trees as a metaphor for human beings. What do they symbolize? Explain.

Ans :

2024

In "The Trees," Adrienne Rich uses trees as a metaphor for human resilience, growth, and liberation. They represent the ability of humans to transform, liberate themselves from limitations, and welcome new beginnings. The journey of human transformation and reconnection with nature is mirrored in the trees' journey from captivity to the forest.

4. **Transferred Epithet** : The phrase 'on silent haunches' is an example of transferred epithet. Here, 'haunches' are not 'silent'. Rather, the phrase refers to how a cat silently sits on its back legs.

5. MESSAGE

The poem 'Fog' gives the message of change and hope. Change is the integral part of nature as well as of humans. Everything changes. In the poem, we find that the city was quiet and everything was normal. However soon fog appears and puts everything into halt. However it does not remain there forever and finally goes away.

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Thinking About The Poem

- What does Sandburg think the fog is like ?
 - How does the fog come ?
 - What does 'It' in the third line refer to ?
 - Does the poet actually say that the fog is like a cat ? Find three things that tell us that the fog is like a cat.

Ans :

- The poet Sandburg thinks the fog is like the cat.
 - The fog comes silently like a cat.
 - In the third line, 'It' refers to Fog.
 - following points can be given for reference (Comparison between the fog and the cat) :
 - Fog comes on little cat feet.
 - It sits looking silently on haunches.
 - It moves away.
- You know that a metaphor compares two things by transferring a feature of one thing to the other (see Unit 1).
 - Find metaphors for the following words and complete the table below. Also try to say how they are like. The first one is done for you.

Storm	tiger	pounces over the fields, growls.
Train		
Fire		
School		
Home		

- Think about a storm. Try to visualize the force of the storm, hear the sound of the storm, to feel the power of the storm and the sudden calm that happens afterward. Write a poem about the storm comparing it with some animal.

Ans :

(i)

Storm	tiger	pounces over the fields, growls.
Train	snake	crawls, wriggles.
Fire	flood	ruins and disturbs.
School	knowledge tree	provides wisdom and fills qualities of a good citizen.
Home	mother	breeds, looks after.

(ii)

A Storm

A storm and a tiger both are same
 One is violent, other is ferocious in name
 They howl, growl, roar and ruin
 Read their nature since they are mean
 No fear, no rear, no hear, no drop
 Create troubles unable to sleep
 Look dangerous, spill and spat
 Visit silently like fog and cat.
 God save us from both of them
 They remain there like the sheltering helm.

- Does these poem have a rhyme scheme ? Poetry that does not have an obvious rhythm or rhyme is called free verse.

Ans :

This poem has no rhyming scheme. So it is a free verse.

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

- What has the poet compared the fog with?
 - Dog
 - Cat
 - Woman
 - None of these

Ans :

(b) Cat

- Where does the fog arrive?
 - City
 - Harbour
 - Village
 - Both (a) and (b)

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

3. The trees in the poem stretch out their branches, break barriers and struggle hard to move out in open in their natural environments. Analyse the efforts that one puts into break away captivity and strive for freedom.

Ans :

2010

For anyone, freedom is much more important than any kind of comfort, growth or development. Even, when we have all the riches in the world but no freedom, we do not really have anything. And those, who live with bare minimum necessities but are able to live freely are always the happiest. Just like the trees in the poem, freedom is gained after a lot of effort. For example, the freedom movements of countries all around the world, where people give up their lives to get freedom.

4. How does the poem 'The Trees' make a strong plea against deforestation?

Ans :

2009

The poem, 'The Trees' sends home a strong message against deforestation. At the beginning of the poem, the poetess indirectly highlights importance of trees when she says that if there is no forest, there is no place for birds to sit, insects to hide and the sun to bury its feet in shadow. As a sapling, the plant adds to the beauty of the surroundings when placed inside the house. But as it grows, it spreads its branches, leaves and roots around. It gets suffocated unless it is brought into the open. Thus, in the poem, the trees are said to 'depart' from the house to be welcomed by the strong winds and the moon. But there is no forest inside the house any more, as there are no trees. The poetess does not want to mention the departure of the forests as she feels guilty for merely looking silently at them as they depart. This way she subtly points out the thanklessness of man towards forest.

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow :

My head is full of whispers
Which tomorrow will be silent.
Listen. The glass is breaking.
The trees are stumbling forward
into the night. Winds rush to meet them.
The moon is broken like a mirror,
its pieces flash now in the crown
of the tallest Oak.

- i. Identify the figure of speech used in the line:
"The Trees are stumbling forward into the night".

- ii. Explain the significance of the line :
"The moon is broken like a mirror, its pieces flash now in the crown of the tallest Oak."
Answer in about 40 words.

- iii. Complete the sentence with the appropriate option. In the third line, the word 'Listen' is used to _____.

- serve no purpose but to complete the sentence.
- emphasize listening carefully to the sound of glass breaking.
- emphasize listening carefully as a change is about to take place.
- make the reader more attentive.

- iv. What does the line : "My head is full of whispers which tomorrow will be silent" tell us about the poet's state of mind ?

Ans :

2024

- personification
- The moon is metaphorically compared to a mirror, appearing fragmented as the shadow of the oak tree splits it into many pieces.
- (c) emphasize listening carefully as a change is about to take place.
- The poet describes the sensation of her head being filled with the slow sounds emitted by trees, which seem eager to escape. However, the poet feels regretful, knowing that these sounds will not be audible the following day, as everything will become silent.

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

All night the roots work
to disengage themselves from the cracks
in the veranda floor.
The leaves strain toward the glass
small twigs stiff with exertion
long-cramped boughs shuffling under the roof
like newly discharged patients
half-dazed, moving
to the clinic doors.

- In what way does the language used in this extract challenge traditional ideas of what poetry should be?
- What is the significance of the use of the word 'roots' and 'disengage' to describe the social change in the poem and how does this word choice contribute to the overall mood and tone of the poem? Answer in about 40 words.

- iii. The leaves strain through the glass, small twigs are stiff with exertion and long-cramped boughs are shuffling under the roof- all indicate the presence of these poetic devices:
 (a) metaphors and imagery.
 (b) enjambment and allusion.
 (c) allusion and alliteration.
 (d) personification and imagery.
- iv. Complete the statement.
 The words 'in the veranda floor' clearly suggest that the change is taking place _____ and _____.

Ans :

2020

- i. The poem has been penned in free verse and uses heavy symbolism.
- ii. Roots constitute the base of trees. They symbolise the courage and the traditional role of women. The women are struggling to disengage (liberate) from the cracks of the veranda floor. The veranda floor symbolises the burden of domestic duties and cracks refer to the breaking of the patriarchal notions. The mood and the tone are optimistic.
- iii. (d) personification and imagery.
- iv. in domestic setups and society.

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

.... Winds rush to meet them.
 The moon is broken like a mirror,
 its pieces flash now in the crown
 of the tallest oak.

- i. Fill in the blank with suitable words on the basis of your understanding of the given lines. The figure of speech used by Adrienne Rich in '.... Winds rush to meet them' is _____.
- ii. Why does the moon look like a broken mirror?
- iii. Who is the wind rushing to meet?
 (a) the birds and the insects
 (b) the trees
 (c) the poet
 (d) the sun and the moon.
- iv. Comment on the poet's use of language in these lines in 40 words.

Ans :

2018

- i. personification.
- ii. The way a mirror with cracks reflects a fractured image similarly, the moon looks broken like a mirror because the poet sees it through the branches of a tall, oak tree.
- iii. (b) the trees

- iv. The wind symbolises the welcoming spirit of the outside world which also favours the freedom of women. The simile of the moon broken like a mirror is a symbol of the broken dominance of a patriarchal hierarchy and the tall oak stands for the victory of the strugglers i.e. the women.

4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"Where no bird could sit
 no insect hide
 no sun bury its feet in shadow
 the forest that was empty all these nights
 will be full of trees by morning."

- i. Fill the blank with one word.
 When the speaker rattles off her thoughts in a run-on manner, she is using this figure of speech _____.
- ii. What is the symbolism in the 'forest' and why is the forest empty?
- iii. Complete the statement with reference to the extract.
 The poet uses the trees as a symbol of _____.
 (a) the emancipation of women from their confinement.
 (b) the fight of people for their civil rights.
 (c) the emancipation of trees from the room.
 (d) the fight of people for their political rights
- iv. Comment on the poet's use of poetic devices in these lines.

Ans :

2015

- i. Enjambment.
- ii. Adrienne Rich describes the confinement and the escape of the trees to their new environment. They have been forced to abandon the forest. She uses extended metaphors in the poem. Trees are women who are in need of healing or having been healed, are now ready for their true purpose, and will renew the empty forest soon.
- iii. (a) the emancipation of women from their confinement.
- iv. The poet has personified the sun by using 'bury its feet' for it. she makes good use of kinaesthetic imagery by giving us a visual description throughout the stanza.



CHAPTER 8

FOG

1. INTRODUCTION

Fog is a very small poem written by Carl Sandburg. He has described the process of arrival of the fog into a city and the harbour. He has very beautifully compared it to cat. Carl Sandburg has portrayed the nature and its silent working. He tells that the fog comes without a noise like a cat. It leaves us in the same way after sitting for some time. The poet impresses the point of doing work.

2. SUMMARY

Poet Compares the Fog to a Cat

Carl Sandburg has given a very fine picture of fog. It is a natural phenomenon. The poet has compared its arrival just like a cat. The cat arrives silently, slowly, suddenly and gradually leaves without making any kind of noise. It does not disturb us.

Landmark of Success

Then the poet tells that the fog does not interfere. It sits. It goes on falling and looking silently and vigilantly over the harbours and cities. It sits silently on her knees like the cat. After sometime it leaves us completely. Thus the activities in the nature go on perennially. Following its principle, we must remain busy in our work. This is the landmark of success.

3. EXPLANATION

Stanza 1

“The fog comes
on little cat feet.
It sits looking
over harbour and city
on silent haunches
and then moves on.”

Word Meaning :

1. Harbour - port for ships
2. Haunches - hips

Explanation :

The poem is an expression of how the poet sees the fog. The poet feels that fog is not just a natural phenomenon but a creature. A parallel between the fog and a cat has been drawn. Just as a cat comes slowly and slyly, the fog appears very slowly and engulfs the entire city avoiding anyone noticing it. The presence of the fog over the city seems as if a cat is sitting silently on its haunches and looking over the harbour and the city. When the fog moves out of a city, it seems as if a cat has silently stepped out of the place.

4. LITERARY DEVICES

The poem does not have a rhyme scheme since it is written in free verse.

1. **Metaphor** : Sandburg extensively uses metaphors in the poem to draw comparisons between nature and a cat. In the line ‘The fog comes on little cat feet’, Sandburg has indirectly compared the fog with a cat. He also compares the fog settled over the city to a cat sitting on its hind legs in the line ‘It sits looking over harbour and city on silent haunches and then moves on’. In the same line, the poet says that fog leaving the city is like a cat leaving a place quietly.
2. **Personification** : The words ‘It sits looking/ over harbour and city’ are an example of personification. The fog, which is a thing, has been shown doing the actions of sitting and ‘looking’ here.
3. **Imagery** : Sandburg uses simple words to create a vivid description of the fog. The phrases ‘the fog comes on’, ‘sits looking’ and ‘moves on’ invoke imagery of movement in the poem. They create an image of the fog entering, settling over and, then finally moving away from the city. The phrases along with ‘little cat feet’ and ‘silent haunches’ come together to compare the actions of the fog to that of a cat.

free themselves from the cracks. The leaves try to move towards the glass. Twigs become harden and the boughs try to expand under the roof.

8. How does the poet describe the growth of the trees inside the house?

Ans :

2016

These trees grow in pots and pans. So their roots feel cramped. These roots try to free themselves from the cracks of the veranda floor. The leaves need light. So they move towards the glass. The twigs are stiff and the boughs are like the newly discharged patients coming out of clinic doors.

9. Why does the poet use the metaphor of newly discharged patients?

Ans :

2015

A patient feels depressed in a hospital. As soon as he recovers, he is eager to leave the hospital. He rushes towards the clinic doors. In the same way, the plants in the pots feel suffocated. They are deprived of adequate light. So they stretch themselves towards the glass door, in the hope of finding the light.

10. How are the branches “shuffling under the roof” ?

Ans :

2014

The poet feels that the moving of the branches of the trees from the house to the forest is like the movement of the patients who have just been allowed to leave the clinic after a really long stay. That is why, they looked so bewildered and dazed as they rushed out of the house eagerly.

11. Why does the poet compare the branches with patients?

Ans :

2009, 2005

The poet compares the branches to newly discharged patients who move to the Clinic doors in a half-dazed state of mind because like the patients these branches are not sure where exactly to go and what the future holds in store for them.

12. Where are the trees at present? What do their roots, and leaves do?

Ans :

2005

At present, the trees are in the house. The roots try to free themselves from the cracks of the veranda floor, and the leaves make efforts to move towards the glass, perhaps in search of light. The small branches become stiff as they try to pull themselves towards the light.

13. Describe the atmosphere outside while the poet sits to write long letters?

Ans :

2004

Ans. At that time the night is fresh and the full moon is shining in an open and clear night sky. The smell of leaves and lichens of the departed trees still reaches into the rooms of the house.

14. What all can the poet listen to at the conclusion of the poem ‘The Trees’?

Ans :

2003

The poet can listen to the breaking of glass, the stumbling forward of the trees into the night and the gushing sound of the wind which seems to move out to meet the trees.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. ‘Departure is painful’. So is the departure of the trees painful for the poetess. What will happen after their departure?

Ans :

2016

Just like the departure of someone close to us is painful, so also is the departure of a tree. When they are planted as a sapling they look nice and enhance the beauty of our surroundings. But as they grow and spread out their branches, they look wild and require more space for their growth. The roots create cracks in the floor and the leaves stretch out as if to move towards the glass, perhaps in need of sunlight. The soft twigs become strong and stiff. So the trees need to be removed from the house. No more do the leaves cover the sky, but the trees breathe and they are welcomed by the wind. The moon resembles a broken mirror, reflecting off the leaves. The poetess reveals that she will feel lonely after the trees’ departure.

2. A conflict between Man and Nature is going on. In this civilization pursuit men are disregarding the natural growth of plants and trees. In total confinement, nature also rebels against civilization and becomes destructive. Elaborate.

Ans :

2014

In the conflict between man and nature, man has caused much harm to nature. With civilization, man has learnt to acquire a lot of material goods but forgotten the importance of nature and cut down large forests, killed animals, destroyed water bodies and done several other such acts. But, man wrongly judges nature to be weak, while nature is the most powerful. No matter how much technologically advance we become, we can never prevent any natural disaster from taking place. Such destructive forms of nature, like flood, earthquake, volcanoes, tornadoes, etc. teach man that the real power lies with nature and it can do anything.

Ans :

2020

(d) Both (a) and (b)

3. What is the rhyme scheme of the poem?

- (a) ababab (b) aababa
(c) aabaab (d) No rhyme scheme

Ans :

2020

(d) No rhyme scheme

4. What has been personified in the poem?

- (a) Fog (b) City
(c) Cat (d) Harbour

Ans :

2015

(a) Fog

5. The feet of the fog are like feet of _____

- (a) cat (b) lion
(c) tiger (d) dog

Ans :

2015

(a) cat

6. What does the fog do while it looks over the city and the harbour?

- (a) Sits (b) Moves
(c) Stands (d) Dances

Ans :

2015, 2006

(a) Sits

7. After sitting, the fog _____

- (a) disappears (b) sits there only
(c) moves on (d) gets dense

Ans :

2015

(c) moves on

8. What does the fog look over?

- (a) Over houses
(b) Over the harbour and the city
(c) Over offices
(d) None of the Above

Ans :

2014

(b) Over the harbour and the city.

9. How does the fog come?

- (a) Slowly and silently
(b) Faster and silently
(c) Faster and making noise
(d) None of the Above

Ans :

2012

(a) Slowly and silently

10. The feet of the fog are like _____ feet.

- (a) cat (b) lion
(c) tiger (d) dog

Ans :

2011

(a) cat

11. How does fog comes on ?

- (a) little dog feet (b) little rat feet
(c) little birds feet (d) little cat feet

Ans :

2010

(d) little cat feet

12. Where does the fog sit on ?

- (a) harbour and city
(b) top of the mountains
(c) top of the tall trees
(d) top of buildings

Ans :

2010

(a) harbour and city

13. Name the poet of the poem "Fog".

- (a) Carl Sandburg (b) Robert Frost
(c) Carolyn Wells (d) Walt Whitman

Ans :

2011

(a) Carl Sandburg

14. The fog is compared to what ?

- (a) mouse (b) cat
(c) dog (d) ant

Ans :

2010

(b) cat

15. What is the rhyming scheme of poem?

- (a) aabb (b) abab
(c) Free Verse (d) None of these

Ans :

2007

(c) Free Verse

16. How does the cat sits ?

- (a) on its paws (b) on its back
(c) on its haunches (d) on its stomach

Ans :

2007

(c) on its haunches

17. Fog comes like a

- (a) Cat (b) Bear
(c) Dog (d) Skyline

Ans :

2005

(a) Cat

18. Here fog has compared with the cat because of his –

- (a) Soft nature
(b) Unpredictable manner
(c) Silent manner
(d) Witty manner

CHAPTER 9

THE TALE OF CUSTARD THE DRAGON

1. INTRODUCTION

The poem 'The Tale of Custard the Dragon' is written by Ogden Nash. It is written in the style of a ballad (A song or a poem that tells a story - usually about courage or valour or heroism). But this poem is a humorous ballad, which is quite close to a parody. In the poem, Belinda lived in a little white house with a little black kitten called Ink, a little grey mouse called Blink, a little yellow dog called Mustard and a little pet dragon called Custard. The poet says that all of them are very brave except the dragon. But his perception changes when the dragon saves everyone from the attack of pirates on Belinda's house.

2. SUMMARY

Pets at the House of Belinda

There lived a girl named Belinda in a little white house. She had pets, i.e., a black kitten, a grey mouse, a dragon and a yellow dog. All were little. They had their names namely, Ink, Blink, Custard and Mustard. All praised their bravery. The Custard had big sharp teeth. There were scales underneath its body but the top had spikes. Its mouth was like a fireplace and nose like a chimney. Belinda was brave but Mustard was brave like a tiger. The Custard always cried for a safe cage.

Tickling by Belinda

It was the habit of Belinda to tickle the custard. All three Ink, Blink and Mustard called him Percival. They were sitting in the little red wagon with the coward dragon. All of a sudden, Belinda shook the house. All the pets cried but Belinda spoke that a pirate had climbed in the window. She told that he had pistols in his hands. There was a sharp sword in his teeth. He had a black beard. His one leg was of wood.

Trouble of Belinda

Immediately Belinda cried for help. Mustard ran away with a terrifying yelp. Ink went down of the household and the Blink hid in the mousehole.

The Custard was sleeping and snorting like an engine knowing about the pirate. He attacked him with a fierce sound but the pirate was trying to overpower the Custard. Very soon the Custard started gobbling him slowly.

Showering Affection

Finding free from the danger, Belinda embraced the Custard. Mustard too licked him. But there was none who could mourn at the pirate. Ink and Blink were happily circling around the Dragon. They all boasted of their bravery. The Custard agreed that all were brave except himself. Belinda was in her white house with the black kitten, grey mouse and the yellow dog. She told that she was brave as a barrel full of bears. Ink, Blink, and the Mustard too called themselves brave. But the Custard went on crying for a nice safe cage.

3. EXPLANATION

Stanza 1

Belinda lived in a little white house,
With a little black kitten and a little grey mouse,
And a little yellow dog and a little red wagon,
And a realio, trulio, little pet dragon.

Word Meaning :

1. Wagon - a vehicle used for transporting goods or another specified purpose.
2. Realio - really (used in the poem for effect)
3. Trulio - truly (used in the poem for effect)

Explanation :

The poet says that once there was a little girl named Belinda. She lived in a little white house. She lived with some creatures who were her pets. They were a black kitten, a grey mouse, a yellow dog, a little red wagon and a creature that the poet says was really and truly a dragon.

FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP

2. Nature has many wonders that people take for granted and never pay attention to. How is the poem 'Fog' different from this perspective?

Ans :

2016

The poet has taken utmost pleasure in nature and natural phenomenon like fog. Fog is so special to the poet that he cared enough not only to write about it, but also thinks of its resemblance with other things in the world. In his close attention to fog, he found fog resembles a cat, in the way it moves and sits on its haunches. The fact that such a resemblance was found by the poet shows how connected he is to various things in nature. This poem serves as a motivation for people, who take nature for granted to find such interesting comparisons and similarities around them.

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

The fog comes
on little cat feet.
It sits looking
over harbour and city
on silent haunches
and then moves on.

- The fog arrives and departs _____.
(a) suddenly (b) silently
(c) loudly (d) quickly
- Which image does the poet give to the fog? What are the similarities between that image and fog? Answer in about 40 words.
- Identify the figure of speech is prominent in the poem 'Fog' _____.
- What is fog doing?

Ans :

2017

- (b) silently
- The poet looks at fog as a living creature and compares it to a cat. The fog covers a place suddenly and disappears in the same manner just like the coming and going of a cat. The fog remains over any area like a cat sitting by folding its knees. Just like a cat that cannot sit and relax in one place, the fog is also a temporary visitor to a place. Both move on after some time.
- The figure of speech prominent in the poem 'Fog' is metaphor.
- Fog is sitting silently and watching over the harbour and city.

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

It sits looking
over harbour and city
on silent haunches
and then moves on.

- In the given extract, the poet uses the poetic device, _____ in which one line runs onto another without any punctuation mark.
- What is the significance of the use of the word "silent" to describe the fog in the poem and how does this word choice contribute to the overall mood and tone of the poem?
- The poet has used the poetic device 'transferred epithet' in the third line. What does the poet wish to emphasize?
(a) The sneaky movement of the fog and those of a cat.
(b) The purring of the fog and the cat.
(c) The fluffiness of the fog and a cat's fur.
(d) The playfulness of the fog and a cat.
- Comment on the poet's use of language in these lines.

Ans :

2015,

- Enjambment
- The fog sneaks in slyly and quietly enveloping the entire harbour and the city. It sits on 'silent haunches' like a cat observing life around it and then moves on. Fog is personified by Carl Sandsberg and its movement and conduct are compared to a cat.
- (a) The sneaky movement of the fog and those of a cat.
- The poet uses a common weather occurrence and an ordinary cat for comparison and uses the commonality of their movements in a striking manner using consonance, enjambment and personification. The choice of words is simple but effective because it pops up vivid images or visuals.



Ans :

2005

(b) Unpredictable manner

Short Answer Type Questions

1. What effect does the short structure of the poem Fog have on its meaning?

Ans :

2023

The short and precise nature of the poem creates a clear and focused message. It conveys the simplicity of the fog's presence. The concise structure allows for vivid and impactful visual imagery. Each line presents a distinct image, such as the fog sitting "looking over harbour and city" or "on silent haunches." Each visual image depicted contributes to the overall mood and atmosphere of the poem.

2. 'The fog comes on little cat feet'
How does the poet compare the fog with the cat? Which poetic device is used here?

Ans :

2015, 2009

The poet compares the fog to a cat as just like a cat the fog comes on its little cat feet and seems to settle over the city on its silent haunches. A personification is used here, the fog is personified as a cat.

3. What are the three things that tell us that the fog is like a cat?

Or

Does the poet actually say that the fog is like a cat? Find three things that tell us that the fog is like a cat.

Ans :

2007, 2006

The three things that tell us that the fog is like a cat, are that the fog comes on little cat feet, it looks quietly over the harbour and the city and moves on silent haunches.

4. With what does the poet compare the fog ?

Ans :

2007

The poet compares fog to a cat. The fog comes suddenly and stealthily just like the little feet of a cat. It looks over harbour and city on its haunches, just as a cat looks over sitting with knees bent (haunches). And then like a cat the fog moves on soon, because a cat does not stay in one place for long.

5. What is the message of the poem 'Fog' ?

Ans :

2007

The poem 'Fog' by Carl Sandburg describes fog in a simple yet interesting way. He describes the fog, as if it were a cat. When it is foggy and things around us cannot be seen clearly, one should be

patient and must not give up because the fog disappears as suddenly it comes.

Similarly, the difficulties in life are like the fog, meaning unpredictable. They come suddenly, stay for some time, cause discomfort but then one day, they too disappear. This is the message that the poet is trying to convey through the poem.

6. How does the poet describe the fog as if it were a living being ?

Ans :

2006

The poet uses 'metaphor' and assumes the fog to be a cat. He says that the fog comes on little cat feet and sits looking over the harbour and the city on its haunches, a position a cat usually sits in, and then moves on.

7. What image does the poet give to the fog? What are the similarities between that image and fog?

Ans :

2003

The poet looks at fog as a living creature and compares it to a cat. The fog moves like a cat on little cat feet and sits on haunches like a cat.

8. Explain the nature of fog.

Ans :

2002

The fog arrives silently and covers the city. But it is temporary and has a fickle state. As a result, it does not stay at one place for long. After engulfing the entire city for some time, it moves away like a cat.

NODIA

Long Answer Type Questions

"Difficulties do come in our lives, but they are not there to stay forever." Comment on this statement with reference to the poem 'Fog' by Carl Sandburg.

Ans :

2020

When people face difficulties in their lives, at the end, these problems tend to leave them hopeless and shattered. It takes a lot of courage for anyone to overcome their problems and to even try to solve it. But if we take a lesson from this poem 'Fog' and compare our difficulties to a fog, we find that just like a fog, the difficulties also come and go. They are not a permanent resident in our lives and hence, don't stay forever.

There is no need for us to become hopeless and lose courage when are faced with problems. We should rather try to think of those difficulties or problems as a fog, meaning that think of it as something that has not come to stay for long, but something will always leave, like every other bad period of our lives.

Stanza 2

Now the name of the little black kitten was Ink,
And the little grey mouse, she called him Blink,
And the little yellow dog was sharp as Mustard,
But the dragon was a coward,
and she called him Custard.

Word Meaning :

1. Mustard - a yellow coloured flower
2. Coward - weakling

Explanation :

The poet explains the name of all the animals that are tamed by Belinda. He says that the name of black kitten is ink. The name of grey mouse is blink. The little yellow dog had yellow colour and so she calls him mustard and the dragon that was a coward means was a weakling was called custard.

Stanza 3

Custard the dragon had big sharp teeth,
And spikes on top of him and scales underneath,
Mouth like a fireplace, chimney for a nose,
And realio, trulio daggers on his toes.

Word Meaning :

1. Spikes - thin pointed surface
2. Scales - Thin bony plates protecting the skin of fish and reptiles.
3. Underneath - situated directly below
4. Fire place - An outdoor structure of brick, stone or metal for an open fire
5. Chimney - a long pipe that opens on the roof to let out the smoke released from the fireplace.
6. Dagger - A sharp knife

Explanation :

The poet describes the dragon that it had big sharp teeth and spikes on top. This means that its skin was pointed on the top. On the lower part it had scales which were bony plates to protect the skin. His mouth has been compared to a fireplace because it is assumed that dragons can release fire from the mouth. Even his nose is compared to a chimney which is used to pass out smoke. His feet are like a sharp knife i.e. a dagger.

Stanza 4

Belinda was as brave as a barrel full of bears,
And Ink and Blink chased lions down the stairs,
Mustard was as brave as a tiger in a rage,
But Custard cried for a nice safe cage.

Word Meaning :

1. Barrel - drum
2. Chased - hunt, follow
3. Rage - anger

Explanation :

So, now the poet explains the inner strength or the bravery of various characters of the poem. He says that Belinda was as brave as a group of bears and ink and blink were so brave that they could hunt lions. So here he has shown the bravery of the kitten and the little mouse that could hunt even a lion. The dog was very brave just like an angry tiger. But to contrast of all of them was Custard. Custard, the dragon was not brave he was so afraid of everything that he always demanded a safe cage.

Stanza 5

Belinda tickled him, she tickled him unmerciful,
Ink, Blink and Mustard, they rudely called him
Percival,
They all sat laughing in the little red wagon
At the realio, trulio, cowardly dragon.

Word Meaning :

1. Tickled - stroke, here it means to tease
2. Unmerciful - cruel
3. Rudely - not in a civil manner or mannerlessly
4. Percival - A knight in King Arthur's court

Explanation :

Belinda used to stroke the dragon in a very cruel way. Ink, blink and mustard made fun of him by comparing him to a knight named Percival who was thought to be brave but ran away due to lack of courage. They used to tease the dragon while sitting in their little red wagon.

Stanza 6

Belinda giggled till she shook the house,
And Blink said Weeck! which is giggling for a
mouse,
Ink and Mustard rudely asked his age,
When Custard cried for a nice safe cage.

Word Meaning :

1. Giggled - to laugh
2. Weeck - Here it is the sound made by the mouse

Explanation :

The poet says that Belinda used to laugh so loudly that her voice echoed in the house. Blink, the mouse used to laugh and make a sound of weeck. On the other hand, ink and mustard would tease him by

one, who fears a lot and looks for a nice safe cage for himself. Belinda is as brave as a barrel full of bears, Ink and Blink can chase lions and Mustard is as brave as an angry tiger.

3. “Belinda tickled him, she tickled him unmerciful..” Why ?

Ans :

2020

Tickling always works on people, who are a little softer. So, Belinda tickled the dragon unmerciful as it worked a lot on him. Despite being a dragon, a tickling could disturb him and this showed his cowardice on which everyone laughed.

4. The poet has employed many poetic devices in the poem. For example, “Clashed his tail like iron in a dungeon”- the poetic device here is simile. Can you, with your partner, list some more such poetic devices used in the poem ?

Ans :

In the poem, ‘The Tale of Custard, the Dragon’, the poet has used a lot of poetic devices. Following are the devices used in the poem :

1. **Simile** : mouth like a fireplace
2. **Repetition** : the repetitive use of the word ‘little’ in stanza 1.
3. **Alliteration** : Belinda lived in a little white house.
Here ‘i’ sound has been repeated.
4. **Metaphor** : Chimney for a nose.
Here the poet compares the dragon’s nose with a chimney because it jutted out sharply like a chimney. No word of comparison ‘like’ or ‘as’ has been used.
5. **Anaphora** : In stanza 1, lines 3 and 4 begin with ‘And’, and in stanza 2 lines 2 and 3 begin with ‘And the little...’
6. **Allusion** : Ink, Blink and Mustard, they rudely called him Percival.

Here is a reference to the legendary knight Percival, one of the knights of King Arthur, who was renowned for his strength and fighting prowess. The poet alludes to Percival to mock at the cowardly demand of the dragon for a nice, safe cage. The contrast makes the poem humorous.

7. **Oxymoron** : In this poem, the poet uses the device of an oxymoron when he writes the phrase ‘pet dragon’. We know that dragons are dangerous creatures, and therefore, cannot be kept as pets.
8. **Personification** : The poet uses the device of personification with respect to Belinda’s

kitten, mouse, and dog. In the 2nd line of the 5th stanza, he gives them all the human ability to speak to and tease another being.

9. **Onomatopoeia** : The poet uses the device of onomatopoeia in the 2nd line of the 6th stanza, where he uses the word ‘weeck’ to describe the sound a mouse makes while giggling.

5. Read stanza three again to know how the poet describes the appearance of the dragon.

Ans :

The poet describes that the dragon has big sharp teeth. There are spikes on its top. Below its body one can see scales. He has compared its mouth with a fireplace and nose with a chimney. There are daggers on his toes. They can harm anyone. But it is very coward and always longs for a safe cage.

6. Can you find out the rhyme scheme of two or three stanzas of the poem?

Ans :

The poem consistently follows the same rhyme scheme in all the stanzas i.e. ‘aabb’, except for the last but two stanza i.e. stanza 13, which is a six line stanza with the rhyme scheme ‘aabbcc’.

7. Writers use words to give us a picture or image without actually saying what they mean. Can you trace some images used in the poem?

Ans :

It is the device of putting an impact on the reader. Through them they try to put the readers into reality. Some of the words showing the images can be given as under :

1. Big sharp teeth
2. Mouth like fireplace
3. Chimney for a nose
4. Tail like iron.

8. Do you find the Tale of Custard the Dragon to be a serious or a light-hearted poem ? Give reasons to support your answer.

Ans :

‘The Tale of Custard the Dragon’ is a very light and funny poem meant to be enjoyed by everyone. The way the poem has been written with a fix rhyme scheme, makes it very easy and enjoyable to read. The poet has even used wrong spelling to maintain the rhyme scheme. The features of Belinda and her pets described in the poem make it quite funny. Belinda’s bravery has been compared to a barrel full of bears, a liquid substance. All the tiny creatures such as the kitten and the mouse have been shown so brave that they can scare a

4. Flagon - a container made of silver in which drink is stored
5. Gobbled - swallowed hurriedly

Explanation :

The pirate got so shocked by the dragon's reaction that he opened his mouth wide with shock. To gather some strength, he drank some alcohol from a container in his pocket. After gathering some courage, he fired two bullets on the dragon but missed it. Custard the dragon ate every bit of this fierce looking pirate.

Stanza 12

Belinda embraced him, Mustard licked him,
No one mourned for his pirate victim.
Ink and Blink in glee did gyrate
Around the dragon that ate the pirate.

Word Meaning :

1. Embraced - to hug
2. licked - to touch with tongue
3. Mourned - feel sorrow for the death of someone
4. Victim - sufferer
5. Glee - delight
6. Gyrate - danced

Explanation :

When the pirate was dead, Belinda hugged the dragon and mustard licked him. No one was sad for the death of the pirate, they all were happy. Both ink and blink were running around the dragon in happiness. So, here the poet says that all the characters were happy and they were showing their gratitude towards the dragon as he had saved them.

Stanza 13

But presently up spoke little dog Mustard,
I'd have been twice as brave if I hadn't been flustered.
And up spoke Ink and up spoke Blink,
We'd have been three times as brave, we think,
And Custard said, I quite agree
That everybody is braver than me.

Word Meaning :

1. Flustered - upset or confused
2. Quite : completely

Explanation :

After they thanked and showed their love towards the dragon, they changed their mind. They were reminded of how they used to make fun of this coward dragon and now they all were praising

him. So at once the dog said that it was just because of some confusion that he wasn't able to do anything otherwise he would have been twice as brave as custard. Both ink and blink also said that they would have been three times braver than custard. To this, the dragon said that he fully agreed to this that all of them were more powerful and braver than him.

Stanza 14

Belinda still lives in her little white house,
With her little black kitten and her little grey mouse,
And her little yellow dog and her little red wagon,
And her realio, trulio little pet dragon.

Word Meaning :

1. Wagon - a carriage, a cart
2. Realio - really (used in the poem for effect)
3. Trulio - truly (used in the poem for effect)

Explanation :

After the incident of the pirate breaking into the house and being killed by the dragon, Belinda still lives in the white house with her pets as she lived earlier. There is the black kitten, Ink, the grey mouse, Blink, the yellow dog Mustard and her really, truly pet dragon, Custard. Belinda still has the red wagon.

The stanza is a repetition of the opening stanza and it gives unity to the poem. It also shows that life for Belinda and her pets has returned to normalcy after the pirate incident.

Stanza 15

Belinda is as brave as a barrel full of bears,
And Ink and Blink chase lions down the stairs,
Mustard is as brave as a tiger in a rage,
But Custard keeps crying for a nice safe cage

Word Meaning :

1. Barrel - a box (usually used for keeping liquids)
2. Chase - to follow in order to capture
3. Rage - anger

Explanation :

Repeating the fourth stanza, here the poet satirically remarks that Belinda has the bravery equal to that of a number of bears. Ink and Blink are considered to be brave enough to be able to give a chase to the lions down the stairs. Mustard's bravery may be compared to that of an angry tiger. And Custard, the dragon still longs for the comfort of a nice safe cage.

5. Who was Mustard?
 (a) Belinda's little yellow rat.
 (b) Belinda's little yellow mouse.
 (c) Belinda's little yellow dog.
 (d) Belinda's little grey dragon.
Ans : (c) Belinda's little yellow dog. 2016
6. Where did Belinda live?
 (a) In a little white house
 (b) In a little yellow house
 (c) In a little grey house
 (d) In a little pink house
Ans : (a) In a little white house 2016
7. What did Custard do to the pirate?
 (a) Ate him (b) Scared him away
 (c) Held him hostage (d) None of these
Ans : (a) Ate him 2016
8. Who did Belinda used to tease?
 (a) Kitten (b) Mouse
 (c) Dragon (d) Dog
Ans : (c) Dragon 2015
9. What all does the dragon possess?
 (a) Big sharp teeth (b) Spikes on top of him
 (c) Sharp toes (d) All of these
Ans : (d) All of these 2015
10. Who is described as the most timid of all?
 (a) Kitten (b) Mouse
 (c) Dragon (d) Dog
Ans : (c) Dragon 2014, 2011
11. What was the name of the black kitten?
 (a) Custard (b) Ink
 (c) Blink (d) Mustard
Ans : (b) Ink 2014
12. What was the name of the grey mouse?
 (a) Custard (b) ink
 (c) blink (d) mustard
Ans : (c) blink 2013
13. Name the poetic device used in the line "And the little yellow dog was sharp as mustard"
 (a) Oxymoron (b) metaphor
 (c) Assonance (d) Simile
Ans : (d) Simile 2013
14. Name the poetic device used in the line "mouth like a fireplace"
 (a) Oxymoron (b) metaphor
 (c) Assonance (d) Simile
Ans : (d) Simile 2013
15. Who saved everyone from the pirate?
 (a) Kitten (b) Mouse
 (c) Dragon (d) Dog
Ans : (c) Dragon 2013
16. The pirate attacked the dragon by firing _____ bullets.
 (a) 3 (b) 2
 (c) 4 (d) 5
Ans : (b) 2 2013
17. Belinda was as brave as a group of
 (a) Lion (b) Tiger
 (c) Bear (d) Elephant
Ans : (c) Bear 2012
18. The pirate had a wooden _____.
 (a) leg (b) teeth
 (c) hand (d) pistol
Ans : (d) pistol 2012
19. Belinda lived in a little _____ coloured house.
 (a) white (b) brown
 (c) red (d) yellow
Ans : (a) white 2012
20. What happened to the pirate?
 (a) He got hurt by dragon
 (b) He got a new ship
 (c) He got a new workers.
 (d) He was killed by the dragon.
Ans : (d) He was killed by the dragon. 2011

- c. Pistol in his left hand, pistol in his right. Here, the repetition of 'pistol' emphasizes that the pirate was well-armed. The repetition lends a rhythm and musicality to the line.
 - d. In the last stanza 'as brave as' is used twice to mock at the false bravery of Belinda and Mustard.
 - e. Suddenly, suddenly they heard a nasty sound
The word 'suddenly' has been repeated to emphasize that the sound heard by everyone was sudden and unexpected.
 - f. The self-coined words 'realio' and 'Indio' have also been repeated four times.
 - g. The first and the fourth stanzas appear at the end of the poem once again with change in the tense to show that life still goes on without any change for Belinda and her pets. However, the repetition has irony underlying it as it emphasizes the incorrigible nature of Belinda and her pets.
5. **Anaphora** : A literary device in which the writer repeats the same beginning of a clause or a sentence, chiefly with the purpose of emphasis on the repeated element, but also to create rhythm in the writing.
 - a. In stanza 1, lines 3 and 4 begin with 'And', and in stanza 2 lines 2 and 3 begin with 'And the little...'
 6. **Allusion** : Allusion means an indirect reference or suggestion. It is a figure of speech in which a passing but significant reference is made to a well-known person, place, thing or idea of a historical, mythological, cultural, literary or political significance. It does not describe in detail the person or thing it refers to.
 - a. Ink, Blink and Mustard, they rudely called him Percival
Here is a reference to the legendary knight Percival, one of the knights of King Arthur, who was renowned for his strength and fighting prowess. The poet alludes to Percival to mock at the cowardly demand of the dragon for a nice, safe cage. The contrast makes the poem humorous.
 7. **Oxymoron** : In this poem, the poet uses the device of an oxymoron when he writes the phrase 'pet dragon'. We know that dragons are dangerous creatures, and therefore, cannot be kept as pets.

8. **Personification** : The poet uses the device of personification with respect to Belinda's kitten, mouse, and dog. In the 2nd line of the 5th stanza, he gives them all the human ability to speak to and tease another being.
9. **Onomatopoeia** : The poet uses the device of onomatopoeia in the 2nd line of the 6th stanza, where he uses the word 'weeek' to describe the sound a mouse makes while giggling.

5. MESSAGE

The poem "The Tale of Custard the Dragon" conveys the message that we must not judge people from their appearances or from their own claims because appearances usually prove to be deceptive and claims prove to be false. A true evaluation of a person can be made only in times of adversity. Another message the poem gives is that those who are really brave, need not to boast of their bravery. Their mettle is proved only when they encounter a dangerous situation. Thus, instead of boasting, we should do something worth valuable.

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Thinking About The Poem

1. Who are the characters in this poem ? List them with their pet names.

Ans :

The characters in the poem are a little girl, Belinda, and her pets; a little black kitten, a little grey mouse, a little yellow dog, a little pet dragon and a pirate.

Character	Pet Name
A little girl	Belinda
Dragon	Custard
Kitten	Ink
Mouse	Blink
Dog	Mustard

2. Why did Custard cry for a nice safe cage? Why is the dragon called 'cowardly' dragon?

Ans :

Custard cried for a nice safe cage because it was a coward and was scared very easily. It is called "cowardly dragon" because everyone else in the house is very brave while the dragon is the only

asking the dragon his age whenever he used to demand for a nice safe cage.

Stanza 7

Suddenly, suddenly they heard a nasty sound,
And Mustard growled, and they all looked around.
Meowch! cried Ink, and ooh! cried Belinda,
For there was a pirate, climbing in the winda

Word Meaning :

1. Nasty - bad or unpleasant
2. Growled - bark
3. Pirate - A person who robs ship in the sea
4. Winda - it is used for window

Explanation :

So, while all of them were making fun of the dragon, they heard a sound of someone entering the house. When they looked towards the window they saw a pirate climbing up the wall. The dog barked at him and the kitten meowed to him. Belinda cried 'ooh' because all of them were scared of the pirate (who robs ships).

Stanza 8

Pistol in his left hand, pistol in his right,
And he held in his teeth a cutlass bright,
His beard was black, one leg was wood;
It was clear that the pirate meant no good

Word Meaning :

1. Pistol - a handgun
2. Cutlass - a short sword with a curved blade.
3. Meant : intended

Explanation :

The poet describes the appearance of the pirate. He says that the pirate was holding handguns in both his hands and had a little sword too. He was holding his sword with his teeth. He had a black beard and his one leg was made of wood. This means that though the pirate was a disabled person but still he was frightening all the other characters. Moreover, he intended to harm them.

Stanza 9

Belinda paled, and she cried Help! Help!
But Mustard fled with a terrified yelp,
Ink trickled down to the bottom of the household,
And little mouse Blink strategically mouseholed

Word Meaning :

1. Paled - turn yellow due to fear
2. Terrified - horrified
3. Yelp - a short sharp cry

4. Trickled - here, run, step down
5. Strategically - planned
6. Mouseholed - here it is the hole where the mouse lives.

Explanation :

When all of them saw the pirate they got frightened. Belinda was so frightened that she turned yellow due to fear and started crying for help. Mustard the dog started crying for help too. The kitten ink ran down towards the bottom of the house as if he had already planned for it. The mouse ink ran into his little mouse hole in order to save himself.

Stanza 10

But up jumped Custard, snorting like an engine,
Clashed his tail like irons in a dungeon,
With a clatter and a clank and a jangling squirm,
He went at the pirate like a robin at a worm.

Word Meaning :

1. Snorting - make a sudden explosive sound through one's nose
2. Clashed - fought, strike
3. Dungeon - an underground prison
4. Clatter Clank - sound of hard object falling on each other
5. Jangling squirm - sound of hard object falling on each other
6. Robin - A bird

Explanation :

When all the other characters that were earlier defined as very brave got frightened, the dragon did the most unexpected thing. He jumped onto the pirate and made such a strong sound with his nose as if the engine was producing a sound. Not only this, he hit his tail on the ground with great force that it produced a heavy sound of metal being rubbed against each other in the underground prisons. He attacked the pirate just like robin bird that attacks the worms.

Stanza 11

The pirate gaped at Belinda's dragon,
And gulped some grog from his pocket flagon,
He fired two bullets, but they didn't hit,
And Custard gobbled him, every bit.

Word Meaning :

1. Gaped - stared with mouth wide open
2. Gulped - swallow
3. Grog - a drink

lion and the dog's bravery is like a tiger's rage. The biggest of them all, the dragon is the only one, who has been shown as a coward and soft being, who looks for a cage for himself, which is very ironic, hence making the poem funny.

9. This poem, in ballad form, tells a story. Have you come across any such modern song or lyric that tells a story? If you know one, tell it to the class. Collect such songs as a project.

Ans :

"An Elegy on the Death of a Mad Dog" is a ballad that has been read. It is a good ballad and tells a good story.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

Writing

- Have fun writing your ballad. Gather information (choose/decide an idea/theme), organise your materials under characters and story and then write. Revise and edit your ballad to make it entertaining. Use the following guidelines to write your ballad.
 - Purpose of writing the ballad: to entertain and interest
 - To whom I am writing: decide for whom you are writing
 - How should I structure features?:
 - Tell a simple narrative
 - A few major characters
 - A strong rhythm and rhyme
 - May have a refrain (single or two line(s) repeated often)
 - Divide into verses

Ans :

When writing the ballad, follow all of the requirements provided. Create a system and organise your thoughts on the characters. Maintain the poem's rhyme scheme.

Explanation:

Draw a tale and give your ballad a title. It must be written in plain terms. Write the lyrics and assign the characters roles. Set appropriate music that relates to the ballad's theme. The four-line stanzas usually follow the ABCB pattern. Divide it into verses and make it a 13-line ballad. To create a rhyme system, use the ABAB pattern, BCBC pattern, or ABAC pattern. Make a single or two-line refrain and repeat it. Keep the rhyme till the conclusion.

The first and third lines should have four syllables, while the second and fourth lines should

have three.

The song should be structured by describing all of the events in the plot and ending with a dramatic finale.

Verse

Fountain, grooviest spurt,
The fresh cascade of love,
Where all the darling birds welcome
For soothing-but one,
A widow turtledove,
Mournfully lamenting,
At when the nightingale,
That wicked bird showed by,
And told these honied phrases:
"My woman, if you will,
I shall be your bonds slave."
"You are my foe:
Foregone, you are not real!"
Green scions not most time prop me,
Nor any suckering clump.

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

- Who is the poet of the poem "The Tale of Custard the Dragon"?

(a) Carl Sandburg	(b) Ogden Nash
(c) Carolyn Wells	(d) Walt Whitman

Ans : (b) Ogden Nash 2021
- Who mourned over the death of the pirate?

(a) Blink	(b) Custard
(c) Ink	(d) None of these

Ans : (d) None of these 2021
- What did the dragon cry for?

(a) Because he was hurt.
(b) For a new mouse
(c) For a nice safe cage.
(d) None of these

Ans : (c) For a nice safe cage. 2020
- Who was called cowardly?

(a) Blink	(b) Custard
(c) Ink	(d) Rither

Ans : (b) Custard 2016

2. Belinda and other animals have been described as brave. But on seeing the pirate they behaved in a cowardly way. How did they react ?

Ans :

2024

On seeing the pirate, Belinda became pale with fear and cried for help. Meanwhile, Mustard the dog ran away fast, uttering a short, sharp cry. On the other hand, Ink went slowly, down to the bottom of the house and Blink hid himself in his mousehole.

3. What makes Custard, the dragon look fearsome? Explain.

Ans :

2024

Custard, the dragon, looks fearsome due to his large size, sharp claws, and fiery breath. His intimidating appearance, coupled with his reputation for causing mischief and chaos, instills fear in the townspeople. However, beneath his fearsome exterior lies a timid and gentle nature.

4. How does the poem 'The Tale of Custard The Dragon' differ from the traditional ballad ?

Ans :

2023

The poem 'The Tale of Custard the Dragon' is not a traditional ballad as a ballad narrates the tale of courage and heroism and are usually not humorous. However, this poem is different as it is a humorous ballad that ends with a parody.

5. Custard humbly accepts that other animals are braver than him. Give a reason to support your stance that humility is a virtue worth possessing.

Ans :

2021

Humility is a great virtue as it shows real maturity, confidence and strength. Custard knew of his capabilities and showed it through his action rather than speaking in front of others. He was a humble dragon.

6. The usage of words like 'realio trulio' creates a wonderful poetic effect. How?

Ans :

2021

This poem is a Ballad. The poet has changed the spellings of the words 'real' and 'true' to realio and trulio. It has created a musical effect on the poem. These words would not have added the same effect with their correct spelling.

7. The poet could have included a burglar or an intruder in the poem but chose to include a pirate. Explain this choice.

Ans :

2021

A normal burglar or intruder could not portray the frightening appearance correctly. The pirate can easily be visualised as a man carrying pistols

and cutlass. The attributes of a black beard and wooden leg adds to the terror.

8. Describe how Custard's reaction was different from that of others, on seeing the pirate?

Ans :

2021, 2020

Custard's reaction was different from that of others, on seeing the pirate. When the pirate arrived, others ran away to hide. But it was only Custard who went bravely to attack the pirate like a robin at a worm.

9. In which kind of a house did Belinda live ? And with whom ?

Ans :

2019

Belinda lived in a little white house with a little black kitten called Ink, a little grey mouse called Blink, a little yellow dog called Mustard and a little pet dragon called Custard.

10. How brave are Belinda, Ink, Blink and Mustard as shown in first part of the poem ?

Ans :

2018

In the first part of the poem, Belinda is described as brave as a barrel full of bears, while Ink and Blink could chase lions down the stairs. Meanwhile, Mustard the dog was as brave as a tiger who was in an angry mood.

11. Why did everyone make fun of the dragon?

Ans :

2017

Everyone in the house used to laugh at the dragon because he always cried for a safe cage whereas others used to boast about their bravery.

12. How was Custard considered and treated by others ?

Ans :

2016

Custard was considered a coward by Belinda and others because he always cried for a nice and safe cage. Belinda would tickle him unmercifully because he was a scaredy-cat, and even Ink, Blink and Mustard would be quite rude to him. All of them would usually laugh at the cowardly dragon.

13. How did the pirate appear in the house of Belinda?

Or

Give a brief description of the pirate in the poem 'The Tale of Custard the Dragon'.

Ans :

2014

The pirate appeared in Belinda's house with a pistol in his left hand and another one in his right hand, and he even held a short sword in his teeth. His beard was black and one of his legs was wooden and it was quite obvious that he had not come with good intentions.

21. What name was given to the dragon?

- (a) Blink (b) Custard
(c) Shrake (d) Rither

Ans :

- (b) Custard

2010

22. Who was Blink?

- (a) Belinda's little grey rat.
(b) Belinda's little grey mouse.
(c) Belinda's little grey dog.
(d) Belinda's little grey dragon.

Ans :

- (b) Belinda's little grey mouse

2010

23. Belinda had a _____ coloured kitten.

- (a) white (b) brown
(c) black (d) chocolate

Ans :

- (c) black

2010

24. The colour of the rat was

- (a) yellow (b) grey
(c) red (d) white

Ans :

- (b) grey

2009

25. Belinda also had yellow coloured _____.

- (a) wagon (b) cat
(c) dragon (d) dog

Ans :

- (d) dog

2009

26. _____ was named as mustard.

- (a) Dog (b) Dragon
(c) Kitten (d) Mouse

Ans :

- (a) Dog

2009, 2007

27. The dragon was named as custard as he was

- (a) silly (b) brave
(c) fat (d) coward

Ans :

- (d) coward

2008

28. The dragon's feet was like _____.

- (a) knife (b) sword
(c) fireplace (d) chimney

Ans :

- (a) knife

2008

29. _____ was as brave as an angry tiger.

- (a) Ink (b) Mustard
(c) Belinda (d) Custard

Ans :

- (b) Mustard

2007

30. _____ Compared with a coward knight Percival.

- (a) Custard (b) Ink
(c) Mustard (d) Belinda

Ans :

- (a) Custard

2005

31. A _____ suddenly came to Belinda's house through window.

- (a) thief (b) pirate
(c) lizard (d) bird

Ans :

- (b) pirate

2005

32. The pirate was holding pistol in his _____.

- (a) right hand (b) both hands
(c) left hand (d) jacket

Ans :

- (b) both hands

2005

33. The dragon made a sound like Alan _____ after seeing the pirate.

- (a) Engine (b) Tiger
(c) Horn of bus (d) Chimney

Ans :

- (a) Engine

2004, 2001

34. The dragon hit the pirate with his _____.

- (a) leg (b) fire mouth
(c) tail (d) thorn

Ans :

- (c) tail

2004

35. The colour of the wagon was

- (a) red (b) white
(c) black (d) yellow

Ans :

- (a) red

2002

NODIA

Short Answer Type Questions

'The Tale of Custard the Dragon' is a humorous ballad. How does Ogden Nash create humour and entertainment in the poem ?

Ans :

2024

The Tale of Custard the Dragon' is a humorous ballad. Humour and light-heartedness are pervasive themes in the poem, Ogden Nash uses playful language, clever wordplay, and exaggerated descriptions to create a whimsical and amusing tone. This theme contributes to the poem's overall joyous and entertaining nature.

Here, the satire is obvious as the cat, the mouse and the dog have cut a sorry figure at the critical hour when their help is needed. But Custard, considered to be timid hearted like a baby, has displayed exemplary bravery and saved the life of all the inmates by killing the pirate.

The stanza shows that Belinda, the cat, the mouse and the dog are incorrigible braggarts. The dragon, on the other hand, is modest. After the pirate incident, the remarks about Belinda and her pets are ironical.

4. LITERARY DEVICES

There are a total of 15 stanzas in the poem each having four lines in it. Only the 13th stanza contains six lines. The poem consistently follows the same rhyme scheme in all the stanzas i.e. 'aabb', except for the last but two stanza i.e. stanza 13, which is a six line stanza with the rhyme scheme 'aabbcc'.

1. **Alliteration** : An Alliteration is the occurrence of the same sound at the beginning of adjacent or closely connected words. It creates a musical effect and enhances the pleasure of reading a literary work.
 - a. Belinda lived in a little white house
Here 'i' sound has been repeated.
 - b. Belinda was as brave as a barrel full of bears
Here, 'b' sound has been repeatedly used.
 - c. And he held in his teeth a cutlass bright
Here we find the repetition of 'h' sound.
 - d. With a clatter and a clank
Here there is repetition of 'k' and 'i' sounds.
 - e. He gulped some grog from his pocket flagon
'g' sound has been repeated in this line.
2. **Simile** : A simile is a figure of speech that makes a comparison, showing similarities between two different things. Unlike a metaphor, a simile draws resemblance with the help of words 'like' or 'as'. Therefore, it is a direct comparison.
 - a. And the little yellow dog was sharp as Mustard
Here the poet compares Belinda's dog with Mustard because of its sharpness as Mustard seeds have sharp, pungent taste.
 - b. Mouth like a fireplace
Here the mouth of Custard, the dragon is compared to a furnace.

- c. Belinda was as brave as a barrel full of bears
Belinda's bravery is compared to that of a group of bears.
- d. Mustard was as brave as a tiger in a rage
Here the bravery of Mustard, the dog is compared to the bravery or ferociousness of a tiger in anger.
- e. Snorting like an engine
The loud snorting of Custard is compared to the sound of an engine.
- f. Clashed his tail like irons in a dungeon
The tail of the dragon is compared to the chains in prison.
- g. He went at the pirate like a robin at a worm
The attack of Custard on the pirate is compared to that of the bird 'robin' on a worm.

3. **Metaphor** : A metaphor is a figure of speech that is used to make a comparison between two things that aren't alike but do have something in common. Unlike a simile, where two things are compared directly using 'like' or 'as', a metaphor's comparison is more indirect, usually made by stating 'something is something else'. A metaphor is very expressive; it is not meant to be taken 'literally'.
 - a. Chimney for a nose
Here the poet compares the dragon's nose with a chimney because it jutted out sharply like a chimney. No word of comparison 'like' or 'as' has been used.
 - b. And realio, trulio, daggers on his toes
Here the poet compares the sharp nails on the toes of the dragon to daggers without using 'like' or 'as'.
4. **Repetition** : Poets often repeat single words or phrases, lines, and sometimes even whole stanzas at intervals to create a musical effect; to emphasize a point; to draw the readers' attention or to lend unity to a piece.
 - a. The word 'little' has been used six times in stanza 1, three times in stanza 2, and six times in stanza 13 to emphasize that the white house of Belinda and all its inmates were small in size. It also makes the lines musical and lyrical.
 - b. Belinda tickled him, she tickled him unmerciful.
Here the repetition of 'tickled' shows the repeated action of tickling.

14. How did Belinda, Ink, Blink and Mustard react on seeing the pirate ?

Ans :

2013, 2011

On seeing the pirate, Belinda became pale with fear and cried for help. Meanwhile, Mustard the dog ran away fast, uttering a short, sharp cry. On the other hand, Ink went slowly, down to the bottom of the house and Blink hid himself in his mousehole.

15. 'But Custard cried for a nice safe cage.' Who is Custard? Why did he cry for a 'nice safe cage'?

Ans :

2010

Custard is a small pet dragon of Belinda. He was a coward and cried for a nice safe cage because he wanted to hide in it in case of any danger. He felt that he would be safe in the cage.

16. Why did Belinda cry for help? Who came to her help?

Ans :

2010

Belinda cried for help because she was afraid of the pirate. Custard came to her help.

17. What did Custard do when he saw the pirate?

Ans :

2009

When Custard saw the pirate, he jumped up emitting an explosive sound and clashed his tail on the floor. Then with a loud rattling sound he went to the pirate and ate the pirate hurriedly, noisily and completely.

18. What did others do when Custard gobbled the pirate?

Ans :

2008

After Custard had gobbled the pirate, Belinda embraced him and Mustard licked him. At the same time, Ink and Blink moved around Custard with joy and no one mourned the dead pirate.

19. Describe the fight between the dragon and the pirate.

Ans :

2007, 2002

The dragon had big sharp teeth, and spikes on top of him and scales underneath but everyone laughed at him as he always cried for a safe cage whereas everyone boasted about their bravery. But when the pirate entered, all were scared and ran away and disappeared except Custard who faced him boldly, attacked him, hit him hard with his forceful tail and gobbled every bit of him. All of them, later felt obliged to Custard for saving their lives.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. Being impressed by Custard's feat, the young seagull's sister wrote a letter to Custard seeking advice on addressing the situation with her young brother. Write Custard's response to this letter. Base the advice from his experiences.

You may begin like this:

Dear Ms Seagull,

Thank you for seeking me out. I am humbled. Based on my limited experiences I feel...

Ans :

2021

Dear Ms Seagull,

Thank you for seeking me out. I am humbled. Based on my limited experiences I feel if we run away from the difficult situation it becomes monstrous. A courageous person is always ready to face the inverse conditions without boasting of his bravery. Cowards run away when the real problem comes up and give baseless explanations for their fleet.

The case with your brother is somewhat different. he is not a coward but he is unable to muster up the courage for his first flight. He is worried about the consequences of falling down. Try to explain to him that birds are born with innate flying skills and he should not worry about falling down. If he focuses on his aim, success will automatically follow.

Custard though mocked for his cowardice, displayed courage and was the one who saved the day in the end.

Pick a character from any of the units (lessons/poems) in First Flight, who displayed similar characteristics, like Custard and overcame a troubling issue?

What similarities and differences do you find between the character and Custard?

Ans :

2021

Similarities and Differences between Custard and the Seagull

I think the young Seagull from the lesson 'His first flight' resembles Custard dragon. Though he is different from custard on some criteria. Let's discuss it one by one. Custard, the dragon, was very humble to talk about his strengths but he was not afraid to face any problem. Whereas the seagull was worried and unable to take his first flight. The dragon did not involve in any celebrations after defeating the pirate. Rather he calmly accepted that other pets are braver than him. In contrast, the seagull celebrated his first flight with screams and dancing. His family members joined him in his victory over his fear.

that the poet wants to convey that whether someone is truly brave or not can only be discovered in the face of real danger

- iii. Custard jumped in front of the pirate to fight with him. He then swallowed the pirate whole.
- iv. simile

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"Ink trickled down to the bottom of the household,
And little mouse Blink strategically mouse-holed.
But up jumped Custard, snorting like an engine,
Clashed his tail like irons in a dungeon,
With a clatter and a clank and a jangling squirm,
He went at the pirate like a robin at a worm."

- i. What is the poet's purpose of using onomatopoeic words in the extract ?
- ii. What does the poet want to convey through these lines? Answer in about 40 words.
- iii. Select the appropriate option that supports the idea in the extract.
 - (a) You get in life what you have the courage to ask for.
 - (b) Fear has a large shadow, but he himself is strong.
 - (c) Fear makes strangers of people who would be friends.
 - (d) Courage doesn't mean you don't get afraid. Courage means you don't let fear stop you.
- iv. The extract mentions 'irons' in dungeons. According to the extract, 'irons' refers to _____.

Ans : 2020

- i. The poet's purpose of using such words is to emphasise on the might and boldness of Custard.
- ii. The poet wants to convey that the animal, which was considered by all to be a coward, was actually braver than them. While the rest of Belinda's pets cower in fear at the sight of the pirate, it is Custard the cowardly dragon that attacks him and saves everyone. This shows that the poet wants to convey that whether someone is truly brave or not can only be discovered in the face of real danger.
- iii. (d) Courage doesn't mean you don't get afraid. Courage means you don't let fear stop you.
- iv. iron chains holding the prisoners captive

4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

Belinda embraced him, Mustard licked him,
No one mourned for his pirate victim.
Ink and Blink in glee did gyrate
Around the dragon that ate the pirate.

- i. Fill in the blanks.
The figure of speech other than alliteration in 'Ink and Blink in glee did gyrate' is _____ because of _____.
- ii. What is the reason for this sudden show of affection? Which words indicate this change in behaviour and mood in the extract?
- iii. Which of the following best describes the way the dragon drove fear into the heart of the pirate?
 - (a) He whistled like an engine.
 - (b) He snorted like an engine.
 - (c) He cluttered, clinked, and jingled.
 - (d) He clashed and crushed the pirate.
- iv. Comment on the poet's use of repetition of sounds in these lines.

Ans : 2019

- i. assonance; the repetition of the vowel sound 'i'.
- ii. Custard, the cowardly dragon gobbling up the pirate who was threatening Belinda and her pets the reason for this sudden show of affection. The words that indicate this change in the mood and behaviour in the extract are 'embraced', 'licked' and 'gyrate.'
- iii. (b) He snorted like an engine.
- iv. The poet uses consonance and assonance for rhythm and rhyme by repeating the sounds 'd', 't', 'I', and 'r' in lines 1 to 4 respectively. The alliterative sound 'g' in 'glee did gyrate' adds to the rhythm. The poet sticks to the regular rhyme scheme aabb in the extract for rhyming purposes.

5. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

Belinda giggled till she shook the house,
And Blink said Weeck! which is giggling for a mouse,
Ink and Mustard rudely asked his age,
When Custard cried for a nice safe cage.
Suddenly, suddenly they heard a nasty sound,
And Mustard growled, and they all looked around.

- i. In what way does the dragon's desperate wish to remain in a cage challenge the traditional behaviour of dragons?

Ans :

2010

The dragon appeared to be a coward as he always cried for a safe cage so he was called a cowardly dragon. Later, when the pirate entered the house with pistols in his left and right hand, everyone was scared and ran away and disappeared, except Custard who faced him boldly-attacked him, hit him hard with his forceful tail and gobbled every bit of him. Belinda should have been nice to him. She should have made him feel comfortable and safe in the house instead of laughing and making fun of him with other pets. Belinda should have been protective towards him.

8. Why did Custard cry for a nice safe cage? Why the dragon is called 'cowardly dragon'? How did he prove everyone wrong?

Ans :

2008

The Custard every time cried for a nice safe cage because he thought that the little white house in which he lived with Belinda and her other friends was not safe.

The dragon appeared to be a coward as he always cried for a safe cage so he was called a dragon. Later when the pirate entered the house everyone was scared and ran and disappeared, except Custard who faced him boldly, attacked him, hit him hard with his forceful tail and gobbled every bit of him.

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow :

Belinda was as brave as a barrel full of bears,
And Ink and Blink chased lions down the stairs,
Mustard was as brave as a tiger in a rage,
But Custard cried for a nice safe cage.

- Comment upon the contrast that is reflected in the last two lines of the extract.
- Fill in the blank with one word.
While describing Ink and Blink, the speaker says that they could chase lions down the stairs. By saying so, he is revealing the _____ characteristic of their personality.
- Comment on the poet's use of language in these lines in about 40 words.
- Which of the following best describes the theme of the poem ?
(a) Bravery and heroism
(b) Humility leads to bravery
(c) Valour and diligence
(d) Crisis reveals character

Ans :

2024

- The contrast in the last two lines reflects the disparity between the purported bravery of Mustard, likened to a tiger in a rage, and the reality of Custard's fear, expressing a wish for the safety of a cage. Despite Mustard's aggressive comparison, it's Custard's honest expression of fear that stands out.
- While describing Ink and Blink, the speaker says that they could chase lions down the stairs.
By saying so, he is revealing the imaginary characteristic of their personality.
- The poet's use of language is playful and uses hyperbole to humorously contrast the bravado of the characters with Custard's openly admitted fear. The vivid and exaggerated comparisons enhance the comedic tone of the poem.
- (d) Crisis reveals character

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

But up jumped Custard, snorting like an engine,
Clashed his tail like irons in a dungeon,
With a clatter and a clank and a jangling squirm
He went at the pirate like a robin at a worm.

- What is the poet's purpose of using the onomatopoeic words given in the extract?
(a) It is to emphasise on the might and boldness of Custard.
(b) It is to introduce the character Custard to the readers.
(c) It is to impress upon the readers that Custard was ready.
(d) It is to make Custard bold enough to face the situation.
- Mention what the poet wants to convey through these lines. Answer in about 40 words.
- What does Custard do to the pirate?
- Fill the blank with one word.
Custard's comparison to an engine shows a literary device of _____.

Ans :

2022

- (a) It is to emphasise on the might and boldness of Custard.
- The given lines show that the animal, that was considered by all to be a coward, was actually braver than them. While the rest of Belinda's pets cower in fear at the sight of the pirate, it is Custard the cowardly dragon that attacks him and saves everyone. This shows

CHAPTER 10

FOR ANNE GREGORY

1. INTRODUCTION

The present poem 'For Anne Gregory' is written by William Butler Yeats. This poem is one of his one of his best poems specifying love. It is between a man and a woman. It does not entail in turning of yellow or white hair but love is sweet and a highly blissful form. It is done from the core of one's heart. The poet is in deep love with Anne. But the lady is mystified by a religious man who has told that her lover has got a text stating that God could love her alone.

2. SUMMARY

Love for Anne

The poet is in love for Anne. But Anne thinks her lover is in great despair because of her yellow hair. These are visible on the back of her ear. She thinks that he will not mind her hair but love her.

Ready to Dye Her Hair

She is ready to dye them brown, black or carrot for his sake so that he may love her alone and not her yellow hair.

Hearing a Religious Man

She heard a holy man yesterday night with a declaration. It is from her lover. It states that only God could love her. There the yellow hair had got no meaning. So to attain supreme bliss, we must love God.

3. EXPLANATION

Stanza 1

"Never shall a young man,
Thrown into despair
By those great honey-coloured
Ramparts at your ear,
Love you for yourself alone
And not your yellow hair."

Word Meaning :

1. Despair - hopelessness
2. Ramparts - lock of hair around ears

Explanation :

The poem begins with the speaker addressing Lady Gregory. He says that her beautiful honey—coloured hair make any man fall for her. This love is not for her but for her hair and beautiful features. Her hair have been compared to walls that symbolize external beauty that prevents anyone from looking inside her soul. This beauty can captivate any man's attention but no man would ever be able to see the beauty of her character. This is why the speaker believes that no man can love Anne for what she is without her beauty.

Stanza 2

"But I can get a hair-dye
And set such color there,
Brown, or black, or carrot,
That young men in despair
May love me for myself alone
And not my yellow hair."

Word Meaning :

1. hair dye - colour used for hair

Explanation :

Anne replies to the speaker saying that what is visible from the surface is very superficial and is less important than the inner beauty of a person. She supports her statement by saying that she could dye her hair and change their colour to black, brown or carrot. Just as the colour of her hair is changeable, the external beauty is also prone to change and hence not enduring. She tells the speaker that anyone falling in love with her must also peep inside her soul.

FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS

DOWNLOAD NODIA APP

- ii. What is the significance of the use of the words 'giggled' and 'weeek' to describe laughter in the poem and to what effect is this word choice used by the poet? Answer in about 40 words.
- iii. What can you infer from the repetition 'suddenly, suddenly' in the above extract?
 - (a) There was an immediate change in the scene.
 - (b) It focuses on the hasty attack and the loud noise.
 - (c) It emphasises that an unexpected noise was heard.
 - (d) It draws our attention to the loud cry that occurred.
- iv. Identify the contrasting belief about dragons that does not apply to Custard in the poem.

Ans :

2017

- i. For Custard, his cage was his refuge and he desperately wished to remain in the safety of his sanctuary because he was a coward.
- ii. Ogden Nash has used the onomatopoeic words 'giggled' and 'weeek' to describe the giggling of Belinda and the mouse Blink respectively. The poet has used hyperbole to obviously exaggerate Belinda shaking the house with her giggling and has imagined how the mouse would sound in this fun mood for comic effect.
- iii. (c) It emphasises that an unexpected noise was heard.
- iv. All dragons are brave and fearsome animals.

6. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

Now the name of the little black kitten was Ink,
And the little grey mouse, she called him Blink,
And the little yellow dog was sharp as Mustard,
But the dragon was a coward, and she called him Custard.

- i. The animals mentioned in the given lines live
 - (a) with Belinda in her house
 - (b) in a circus owned by Belinda's father
 - (c) in a zoo managed by Belinda's family
 - (d) at Belinda's animal farm
- ii. What was the name of the little yellow dog? What has it been compared to and why?
- iii. Complete the sentence using ONE word only. The poetic device used in the third line of the extract is _____.
- iv. Did Custard match his physical appearance?

Ans :

2015

- i. (a) with Belinda in her house
- ii. The name of the little yellow dog is not mentioned in the extract. It has been compared to mustard as the taste of mustard is sharp and so is the dog.
- iii. simile
- iv. No, Custard did not match his appearance, as he looked dangerous but actually was a coward. He always cried for a nice and safe cage, while everyone laughed at him for his cowardice.

7. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

Pistol in his left hand, pistol in his right,
And he held in his teeth a cutlass bright,
His beard was black, one leg was wood;
It was clear that the pirate meant no good.

- i. Fill in the blank appropriately. 'he' in the given extract refers to _____.
- ii. What did everyone do when the pirate came?
- iii. Describe the appearance of the pirate.
- iv. What is the rhyming scheme of the given stanza?

(a) aabb	(b) abcb
(c) ababc	(d) ababa

Ans :

2012

- i. the pirate
- ii. When the pirate came, Belinda cried for help and became pale with fear. Mustard ran away with a terrified cry and Ink hid himself at the bottom of the house, while Blink disappeared in his hole. It was only Custard who jumped in front of the pirate and showed the courage to face the pirate.
- iii. The pirate had a beard and a wooden leg. He held a gun in both his hands and a knife between his teeth. All in all, his appearance was quite sinister.
- iv. (a) aabb



They both displayed their true courage when the situation fell on them. They were underestimated by their families. They proved that real courage is in facing danger.

3. Imagine that Custard writes a blog on 'Overcoming fears'. A part of the blog focuses on ways to overcome the fears within. As Custard, write this part of the blog. You may proceed like this: While we agree that fear is like a big monster that resides within us. This monster shall continue to overpower us if we do not overpower it.....

Ans :

2021

While we agree that fear is like a big monster that resides within us. This monster will continue to overpower us if we don't overpower it. I shall discuss with you some easy ways to overcome the fear

1. first of all keep a positive approach towards life.
2. don't think about the problem too much.
3. courage has to be activated from within yourself.
4. be prepared to face the consequences of fighting with the problem.
5. don't accept failure without trying.
6. don't think about the consequences of failing; failure opens the door for success.

4. Blowing one's trumpet is a well-known idiom. Disagree with a friend's opinion in the context of this idiom.

Friend: It's important to recount your achievements whenever there's an opportunity. People need to know about your qualities, accomplishments and awards. Always project yourself as superior.

You: Gosh! I disagree. What's the point blowing one's own trumpet? You see, (continue).

Ans :

2021

Dialogue writing over the idiom- "Blowing one's trumpet"

Friend: It's important to recount your achievements whenever there is an opportunity. People need to know about your qualities, accomplishments and awards. Always project yourself as superior.

You: Gosh, I disagree. What is the point of blowing one's own trumpet, you see.

Friend: If you do not speak about your work or qualities how would others know about it.

You: I feel actions speak louder than words. The quality of work done by a person tells everything on its own.

Friend: But it takes a lot of time to get noticed by people.

You: When you don't boast of yourself, people trust you and get attracted to you like a magnet. Humbleness is a virtue worth possessing.

Friend: I believe it has lost its value in today's time.

You: Everything depends on one's perception and personal nature.

5. What values should Belinda have possessed so that Custard too could have been among her favourites?

Ans :

2016

The dragon appeared to be a coward as he always cried for a safe cage so he was called a cowardly dragon. Later, when the pirate entered the house with pistols in his left and right hand, everyone was scared and ran away and disappeared, except Custard who faced him boldly-attacked him, hit him hard with his forceful tail and gobbled every bit of him. Belinda should have been nice to him. She should have made him feel comfortable and safe in the house instead of laughing and making fun of him with other pets. Belinda should have been protective towards him.

6. Who was the real hero ? How did he save the other animals ? Was he proud of his bravery? Justify your answer with instances from the poem.

Ans :

2016, 2014

Custard the dragon was the real hero in the poem. When the pirate had entered their house, he had proved his bravery while the others had escaped to safety.

On hearing the sound of the pirate's entry, Custard had jumped up and snorting like an engine, he had attacked the pirate. On the other hand, the pirate had gulped some grog and fired two bullets at him, but they had not hit the dragon at all. So, Custard went a head and gobbled up the pirate.

As he had saved everyone's lives, everybody appreciated his bravery. But the dragon did not acknowledge his bravery as he was a humble dragon. Moreover, when the others boasted about their bravery, Custard readily agreed that everyone was braver than him.

In the end, though he was the saviour who had gobbled up the pirate, Custard kept crying for a nice safe cage and went back to his cowardly ways.

7. Why do you think Custard, the dragon, was called a coward? How was Custard able to save all his house-mates from the pirate? What values should Belinda have possessed so that Custard too could have been among her favourites?

Stanza 3

"I heard an old religious man
But yesternight declare
That he had found a text to prove
That only God, my dear,
Could love you for yourself alone
And not your yellow hair."

Word Meaning :

1. Declare - to announce

Explanation :

The speaker replies to Anne's statement about love for internal beauty not just for external beauty. He mentions an old religious man who announced that he had found a text in which it is written that only god is capable of looking beyond the external beauty. He means to say that human beings are not capable of having a deep understanding of things beyond the concrete. Human beings easily get carried away by the shine and splendor of things. Therefore the speaker concludes that only god can love Anne for her inner beauty.

4. LITERARY DEVICES

If we divide this poem of 18 lines into 3 units of 6 lines each, then each of these units will be found to follow the rhyme scheme abcbdb.

1. **Metaphor** : In the poem, the phrase 'honey-coloured ramparts' is an example of metaphor. Yeats, through the metaphor, compares Anne Gregory's hair to the walls of a fort. Just like the walls of a fort hide and protect the city, the hair hides the true self of Anne Gregory.
2. **Apostrophe** : Yeats is seen talking to Anne Gregory, but the readers don't see her at any point in the poem. The poet makes use of apostrophe to address the poem to Anne, an absent audience.
3. **Alliteration** : The phrase 'your yellow hair' is an example of alliteration. Yeats uses alliteration to enhance the musical quality of his poem.
4. **Repetition** : The phrase 'yellow hair' has been repeated many times in the poem. By repeating this phrase, the poet is reinforcing the notion of external beauty. The word 'despair' is also repeated in the poem. It reflects the young men's feelings for Anne Gregory.
5. **Metonymy** : The poet uses the device of metonymy in the 9th line when he uses the word "carrot" to mean the colour orange

while making suggestions about what colour she can dye her hair in.

5. MESSAGE

The poem "For Anne Gregory" conveys the message that we should give importance to the inner beauty and not to the physical appearance. The poem talks about the poet and his beloved Anne. The lady has yellow hair and she wants to dye them in order to impress her lover because she believes that he likes it that way. She wants to look good and beautiful in her lover's eye. However, after a point in time, she understands that it is only God who can love her unconditionally and that she must not worry about the poet's love. She realizes that it is the inner beauty that matters and not the physical appearance and she need not change her outer self for someone.

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS**Thinking About The Poem**

1. What does the young man mean by great honey coloured/ramparts at your ear ? Why does he say that young men are 'thrown with despair' by them ?

Ans :

'Great honey coloured' here means the yellow coloured grey type hair. It is this colour which is possessed by honey. Ramparts at your ear means the back position of head above the ear. He says so that most of the youth become despaired on seeing the white, or grey colour of the lady. They think her to be old.

2. What colour is the young woman's hair ? What does she say she can change it to ? Why would she want to do ?

Ans :

The colour of the young woman's hair is yellow. She says she can change it to brown, black or carrot. She wants to do so in order to get man's love for herself.

3. Objects have qualities which make them desirable to others. Can you think of some objects (a car, a Phone, a dress....) and say what qualities make one object more desirable than another ? Imagine you were trying to sell an object : What qualities would you emphasise ?

Ans :

Yes, there are many objects like a television, a refrigerator, washing machine, microwave oven

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

Short Answer Type Questions

1. Do you think you can love a person for his/her inner beauty alone and not care about the physical appearance ?

Justify with reference to the theme of the poem 'For Anne Gregory'.

Ans :

2024

Yes, it is possible to love someone for inner beauty rather than physical appearance. In the poem "For Anne Gregory," the poet suggests that human beings often admire external beauty, such as Anne's yellow hair. However, God loves people for their inner qualities, not their outward appearance. Thus, true love should value inner beauty over physical looks.

2. Explain, why the speaker mentions God in the poem "For Anne Gregory".

Ans :

2024

The speaker mentions God in "For Anne Gregory" to emphasize the transcendental beauty and perfection he seeks in Anne's appearance. By invoking God's name, the speaker highlights Anne's ethereal qualities, portraying her as a divine being worthy of admiration and reverence.

3. In the poem "For Anne Gregory", Anne Gregory's suggestion to dye her hair serves two main purposes. What are these?

Present your response this way:

- (a) One purpose is _____.
(b) Another purpose is _____.

Ans :

2023

- (a) One purpose is to gain genuine love by proposing that she can change her hair colour to make young men love her for her inner self, not just her yellow hair.
(b) Another purpose is to prove her point to the speaker who initially expressed doubt that anyone would love her for anything other than her external beauty.

4. Describe the method Anne Gregory suggested in order to prove that she is loved for who she is.

Ans :

2021

She said that she would change her hair from yellow to some other colour by applying a hair dye to confirm that she is loved for her inner beauty and not for her outer personality.

5. Highlight the central theme of the poem "For Anne Gregory".

Or

Write the central idea of the poem "For Anne Gregory."

Ans :

2021, 2017

People are often charmed and fascinated by the beautiful appearance of a person. We should love a person for his/her qualities of head and heart and not go after his/her appearance for appearance changes. It is transitory but one's qualities are lasting and remain with him/her till he/she lives.

6. How would you, as a young adult of your times, title this poem. Give a reason for your choice.

Ans :

2021

As a young adult I would title this poem- Is love really blind. The poem says that true love should not look at the physical appearance of a person. But I think it is not possible to love anyone without looking at them and without knowing them.

7. The advice given by elders is crucial to young lives. Explain in the context of the poem "For Anne Gregory".

Ans :

2021

Elders are more experienced and aged. They can guide the younger generation with their knowledge and experience. It can save time and energy for the youth to learn from elders' mistakes.

8. The "yellow hair" is a symbol in the poem. Briefly support the statement with reference to the poem "For Anne Gregory".

Ans :

2021

In some countries, yellow or blonde hair is considered appealing in contrast to dark hair. Girls with lighter hair colour are portrayed as beautiful in movies and stories. So the yellow hair of Anne Gregory in the poem emphasises her beautiful outlook.

9. Write the reaction of a 21st century teenager (boy or girl), to the idea of being loved for one's appearance or the things one represents/possess. Give a reason for the reaction.

Ans :

2021

It is a common perception that women with lighter hair or lighter skin are beautiful. This idea is so pervasive that everyone takes it for granted and believes in it blindly. So the teenagers of the 21st century would behave the same way. Moreover, people have become more looks conscious with the invention of Smartphones. Teenagers' selfie obsession is known to everyone.

10. The poem is interactive. Between whom does the conversation take place ?

Ans :

2016

The poem is a conversation between the poet and Anne Gregory. The poet is adamant that all the young men will like Anne only for her yellow hair. Anne firmly contradicts him. She says that the

Ans :

2016

(d) all of them

7. What is the mood of the young man?

- (a) sad (b) happy
(c) romantic (d) miserable

Ans :

2015, 2012

(a) sad

8. Name the literary device used in "Never shall a young man, Thrown into despair By those great honey-coloured".

- (a) Oxymoron (b) metaphor
(c) Assonance (d) Enjambment

Ans :

2015

(d) Enjambment

9. What hair colour is the lover attracted to?

- (a) carrot (b) black
(c) brown (d) yellow

Ans :

2012

(d) yellow

10. What does the girl want?

- (a) To be loved for herself
(b) to be loved for her hair
(c) to be loved for her appearance
(d) to be loved for her riches

Ans :

2012

(a) To be loved for herself

11. What did the young lady expect?

- (a) her lover should love her for wealth.
(b) her lover should love her for herself only.
(c) her lover should love her for behaviour only.
(d) None of the above

Ans :

2011

(b) her lover should love her for herself only.

12. Who was it that the poet had heard?

- (a) A Priest
(b) An old religious man.
(c) A King
(d) None of these

Ans :

2010

(b) An old religious man.

13. What matters for God more to love human beings?

- (a) the outer qualities of human beings
(b) the inner qualities of human beings
(c) their rituals
(d) none of the above

Ans :

2010, 2008

(c) The outer part of the woman's ear

14. What is the colour of the ramparts of the young lady?

- (a) Golden (b) Honey
(c) Silver (d) Brown

Ans :

2009

(b) Honey

15. How will the young man react to seeing the honey coloured ramparts?

- (a) He will be thrown into despair.
(b) He will be thrown into happiness.
(c) He will be thrown into confused.
(d) None of the Above

Ans :

2008

(a) He will be thrown into despair.

16. The old man declared that only god could love her

- (a) for himself alone (b) for herself alone
(c) for the humanity (d) none of these

Ans :

2008

(b) for herself alone

17. What feature of the woman has put the young man into despair?

- (a) The outer part of the woman's nose
(b) The outer part of the woman's eyes
(c) The outer part of the woman's ear
(d) The outer part of the woman's lips

Ans :

2007

(c) The outer part of the woman's ear

18. Her ears are compared with

- (a) fans (b) fangs
(c) leaves (d) ramparts

Ans :

2005

(d) ramparts

19. Why does she want to dye her hair?

- (a) So that young men may not for her brown hair.
(b) So that young men may not for her green hair.
(c) So that young men may not for her yellow hair.
(d) None of the above

Ans :

2005

(c) So that young men may not for her yellow hair.

etc. Love and affection make one object more desirable than other. If I were trying to sell one object, I would emphasise the qualities of true love for it. And for all of us this love will not be for its outer but for innerself.

4. What about people ? Do we love others because we like their qualities, whether physical or mental? Or is it possible to love someone “for themselves alone” ? Are some people ‘more lovable’ than others ?

Discuss this question in pairs or in groups, considering points like the following.

- (i) a parent or caregiver’s love for a newborn baby, for a mentally or physically challenged child, for a clever child or a prodigy.
- (ii) the public’s love for a film star, a sportsperson, a politician or a social worker.
- (iii) your love for a friend, or brother or sister.
- (iv) your love for pet, and the pet’s love for you.

Ans :

We love other people not only because of their qualities but also due to certain other factors. It is also possible to love someone for themselves alone. In this universe some people are more lovable than others. It depends upon their category. For example, a parent will always love his child. The love of a parent for grandmother, mother, son, wife, daughter, brother, sister, leader, friends or pet etc. will differ according to their category, quality, characteristics etc.

5. You have perhaps concluded that people are not objects to be valued for their qualities or riches rather than for themselves. But elsewhere Yeats asks the question : How can we separate the dancer from the dance ? Is it possible to separate ‘the person himself or herself from how the person looks, sounds, walks and so on ? Think of how you or a friend or member of your family has changed over the years. Has your relationship also changed? In what way ?

Ans :

It is an accepted fact that people are not objects. They are living beings. They have power to think and act. They have wisdom. They have life since objects are deprived of such qualities. We should value a man for his self only keeping in view his qualities as well.

The poet wants to express here that we cannot separate a man from his characteristics. He quotes an example that a dancer cannot be separated from dance. But it is possible since time and circumstances have their own role to play in this universe. His connection, category,

looks, sounds, walks and other factors also work. Circumstances and luck can make or mar the destiny of a person. Here are many cases where we can see them in a great change. Within years they become so prosperous that none can believe. But a real person maintain his relationship in the most appropriate and desirable way. He never expresses his/her pride in any case.

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. Who is the poet of the poem “For Anne Gregory”?
- (a) Carl Sandburg
 - (b) William Butler Yeats
 - (c) Carolyn Wells
 - (d) Walt Whitman

Ans :

2021

- (b) William Butler Yeats

2. Name the literary device used in the line “honey-coloured ramparts at your ear”

- (a) Oxymoron
- (b) metaphor
- (c) Assonance
- (d) None of these

Ans :

2021

- (b) metaphor

3. Name the literary device used in the line “and set such colour there”

- (a) Oxymoron
- (b) Alliteration
- (c) Assonance
- (d) None of these

Ans :

2021

- (b) Alliteration

4. Who can love us for who we are and not for how we look?

- (a) poet
- (b) young boy
- (c) God
- (d) None of these

Ans :

2020

- (c) God

5. What does the girl think she can do to get rid of lovers?

- (a) cut her hair
- (b) dye her hair
- (c) cover her hair
- (d) all of these

Ans :

2020

- (b) dye her hair

6. What colour will the girl dye her hair into?

- (a) black
- (b) brown
- (c) carrot
- (d) all of these

colour of her hair is not important as she could easily use hair-dye and change it, but regardless of her hair colour, her inner beauty is permanent and will remain the same.

11. Why does the young woman want to dye her hair?

Ans : 2012
The young woman wants to dye her hair in black, brown or carrot colour, so that the young men in despair may love her for herself alone and not for the yellow colour of her hair.

12. How does the poet try to justify his statement ?

Ans : 2010
The poet does not believe in what Anne tells him about internal and external beauty. He justifies his view by telling her that an old religious man had found a text which clearly proved that only God can love a person for himself or herself and not for the physical appearance.

13. Why do young men love Anne for her hair and not for herself alone?

Ans : 2010
Anne Gregory is so beautiful that no man is capable of ignoring her external beauty and looking inside her real nature. Her attractive external features stop men from knowing the real person. This is what that makes the speaker say that young men love Anne for her hair and not for herself alone.

14. What are Anne's views on external beauty?

Ans : 2010
Anne does not believe in external beauty and wants to be loved for herself. She says that her beautiful hair that attracts so many men can be changed and colored differently. This shows that Anne thinks that external beauty is not important and is changeable.

15. What has, According to the speaker, an old religious man found?

Ans : 2009
The speaker says that an old religious man has found a text that proves that only God is capable of looking at a person's real self, beyond the external beauty.

16. Why is only God capable of loving Anne for herself?

Ans : 2008, 2005
Only God is capable of loving Anne for herself because humans do not have the power to look the beauty of soul. Only God is capable of not caring for the outer beauty and looking the beauty of one's soul.

17. "That only God, my dear,
Could love you for yourself alone
And not your yellow hair."

What do these lines suggest about God's ideas about love?

Ans : 2007
The poet suggests that God loves you not only for your uniqueness but for what qualities you possess. Only God has this ability to love you for your qualities as a human being and not for your physical appearance.

18. How will the hair-dye help Anne?

Ans : 2006
The hair-dye will help Anne to get any kind of colour like brown, black or carrot, on her hair. This will improve her appearance and enable the young men to love Anne for her appearance.

19. What did the religious man tell the poet?

Ans : 2004
The religious man declared to the poet that he had found a text to prove that only God could love you for your uniqueness. He will never discriminate people on the basis of their appearance.

20. What message does the poem convey?

Ans : 2003
The poem conveys the message that love should be unconditional and should not depend on physical appearance. Young men may love women based on their beauty but God alone is the only one who loves all human beings for who and what they are.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. Imagine Anne Gregory grows up to be a motivational speaker. As Anne Gregory, write a short speech on the importance of loving oneself. You may begin this way:

Dear friends

The importance of believing in oneself can never be overstated. It becomes most important, therefore, to love oneself. I learnt this, as a young teen, the day a poet pointed out that (continue)

.....

Ans : 2021

Motivational Speech

Dear friends

The importance of believing in oneself can never be overstated. It becomes most important therefore to love oneself. I learnt this as a young teen, the day a poet pointed out that men are attracted towards females' outer beauty. Does it mean the not so beautiful people are not loved

- ii. (b) Her desire to be loved for her inner beauty.
- iii. red
- iv. (c) The dessert needs to set for two hours before being served.

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

I heard an old religious man
But yesternight declare
That he had found a text to prove
That only God, my dear,
Could love you for yourself alone
And not your yellow hair.

- i. The above stanza strongly defies the idea of _____.
- (a) internal qualities
- (b) external beauty
- (c) spiritual self
- (d) divinity
- ii. What does the poet mean by the word 'yesternight', in the extract?
- iii. What wisdom was imparted to the poet and by whom it was imparted? Answer in about 40 words.
- iv. Where did the religious man find that God loves everyone selflessly?

Ans :

2020

- i. (b) external beauty
- ii. The poet means 'the previous night' by the word 'yesternight.'
- iii. An old religious man imparted the wisdom to the poet. He quoted a text and according to it only God could love a person for himself regardless of his appearance or other attributes.
- iv. The religious man found it in a religious text that God loves everyone selflessly.

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"Never shall a young man,
Thrown into despair
By those great honey-coloured
Ramparts at your my;
Love you for yourself alone
And not your yellow hair."

- i. What is the contextual meaning of the word 'rampart'?
- ii. Why does Anne want to change the colour of her hair? Answer in about 40 words.

- iii. Choose the phrase that best represents, 'love you for yourself alone'.
- (a) one-sided love
- (b) mutual love
- (c) unconditional love
- (d) blind love
- iv. Comment on the poet's use of language in these lines.

Ans :

2016

- i. A lock of hair
- ii. Anne's hair is yellow. She says that she could get her hair dyed to brown, black or carrot colour so that the young men in despair would love her only and not her yellow hair. She wanted them to love her for what she was and not for her appearance. She wishes to emphasise that external beauty is not real.
- iii. (c) unconditional love
- iv. The language used is conversational and simple. The use of poetic devices is straightforward. The poet has applied the poetic device metonymy-'carrot' to show orange colour; the repetition of the sound 'u' in "Love you for yourself alone," and 'your yellow hair' for alliterative purposes; and used a metaphor in 'Ramparts at your ear.'



6. The poet's views about beauty are not justified. Anne's arguments are correct. Express your views in support of Anne.

Ans :

2015, 2009

The poet in the poem 'Tor Anne Gregory' tells Anne that a young man will love her only for her lovely yellow hair and not for anything else. He says that her inner beauty does not matter because a man only looks at the outward appearance to fall in love. The speaker even tries to influence Anne by telling her that a text found by an old religious man proves that only God can love a person for who he/she is, while all the other people in the world only look for external appearance. Meanwhile, Anne argues against the speaker's views by saying that her beauty lies in her values and good qualities and not in her yellow hair. She says that she can easily change the colour of her hair but it will be impossible to change who she is as a person or human being.

Therefore, what actually matters is the true inner-self because superficial beauty is not genuine. As the physical appearance or beauty is neither real nor permanent, internal beauty is what each one of us should look for in our friends, lovers or anybody else.

7. Evaluate the poem in the context of the given quote.

"If only our eyes saw souls instead of bodies, how very different our ideals of beauty would be." You may begin like this: The poet shares that God loves us unconditionally, for who we are and not our appearance. This quote (continue).....

Ans :

2012

The poet shares that God loves us unconditionally for who we are and not for our outer appearance. If humans could love or praise each other on the basis of inner qualities, our ideals of beauty would be somewhat different. We could have talked more about a true, confident, reliable, kind, honest or sympathetic person. People would be less concerned about skin or hair colour or texture. If our eyes could see souls instead of bodies, humans would be praised for their generosity or kind behaviour. Similarly, girls or boys would be disliked for their non-cooperative nature or the habit of backbiting.

8. Why do you think the other speaker mentioned the old religious man and the text that proves that only God can love Anne for herself alone?

Ans :

2010

The speaker mentioned the text found by an old religious man that proves that only God can

love Anne for herself alone. It is so because the speaker wanted to tell Anne that her desire that men should not see her outer beauty is not going to be fulfilled. The speaker tells Anne that only God can be so great as to avoid external beauty and look beyond it. Man, on the other hand, falls for all things that appear pretty from outside and never bothers about what lies inside.

Extract Based Questions

Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow :

But I can get a hair-dye
And set such colour there,
Brown, or black, or carrot,
That young men in despair
May love me for myself alone
And not my yellow hair."

- i. What causes the young men to 'despair', according to the extract?
- ii. Identify the reason for the speaker's need to colour her hair, as per the extract.
 - (a) Her conviction that she is beautiful inside.
 - (b) Her desire to be loved for her inner beauty.
 - (c) Her need to change people's perceptions about beauty.
 - (d) Her control over what makes her look beautiful.
- iii. Complete the analogy about the speaker's hair.
yellow: blonde :: _____ : carrot
- iv. Select the sentence in which the word 'set' is used in the same manner as in line 2 of the extract.
 - (a) The set for the school play looked quite grand.
 - (b) Do you have another set of the books that I can read?
 - (c) The dessert needs to set for two hours before being served.
 - (d) I want to set him up and get my work done this time.

Ans :

2022

- i. The young men experience despair after being attracted to Anne's external beauty, but their feelings are not reciprocated. Anne desires a genuine connection with someone who loves her for her true self.

in this world? I think to escape this situation an individual should invest their time in self-love. It's the unconditional support and compassion that translates to good health, great self-esteem, happiness, and well-being. Self-love allows us to fill in the gaps external sources of love may leave. No one has a better understanding of our innermost thoughts and needs than we do. Everyone is born with a unique set of characteristics so we should not compare ourselves with others and let ourselves down. But it should not be confused with selfishness or singing one's own praises.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

2. Just as a love for outer appearances is not true love, love for the sake of money is not true love either. Pen down a dialogue exchange between Anne Gregory and any character from "The Proposal" where Anne tries to explain how loving others simply for who they are is the most important virtue that everyone must possess.

Ans :

2021

Dialogue exchange between Anne Gregory and Lomov-

Lomov : Will you be my girlfriend?

Anne Gregory: I am sorry. I don't like your attitude.

Lomov : Don't you know, I have a lot of money.

Anne Gregory: Money does not form a solid base for true friendship.

Lomov : Girls want to marry me just because I am a rich man

Anne Gregory: That means they are your money's friend and not yours.

Lomov : I can buy them a lot of gifts with my money

Anne Gregory: Sorry to say, but I like to be with people whom I like for their character, attitude and etiquettes rather than their financial status. Moreover, money is volatile, it never stays in a single pocket.

Lomov : As you wish, but money is second to God.

Anne Gregory: Yes you are right, it is second but not first. I will wait for my true love.

3. Imagine the poem was written for Anne Gregory's brother, Miller Gregory.
- Would that poem be different from the original poem? If so, highlight the differences it would have.
 - Pen down the advice, you think the poet persona would have given to Miller Gregory.

Ans :

2021

Yes, the poem would be different in the following aspects:

- Had the poem been written for a boy it would emphasize some other bodily features of the masculine body. For example, the hair falling over the ear can add to the beauty of a woman but for a man, his muscular body, long height, and wide chest deserves a mention. Besides, fair-skinned guys attract girls quite easily.
- The poet persona would advise Miller Gregory that he will never be loved for his virtues but for his physical appearance. Girls would fall in love with him on seeing his shoulders, strong chest, moustache or beard sometimes. Women search for masculinity in boys. According to the poet only God has the capability to see through a person's inner traits. Common man loves others for their skin, hair and other physical attributes.

4. How right or wrong is it to judge someone on the basis of his/her physical appearance?

Ans :

2020

Physical appearances never give the true account of a person as it can be changed with the help of clothing, make-up and other such things.

Something which is not true and real should not be used to judge the person carrying it. A person must be judged on the basis of his behaviour that shows the true characteristics of his personality. This is explained by Anne in her reply to the first speaker that her beautiful hair-colour which attracts men is changeable, hence, men should not fall in love with her based on her-hair colour.

5. "The poet in the poem 'For Anne Gregory' conveys that we should give importance to the inner beauty and not the physical appearance. Elaborate with reference to the poem.

Ans :

2018

In the conversation that takes place between Anne Gregory and another speaker, the poet has tried to show that inner beauty is real beauty whereas physical appearance is changeable and hence, unimportant. The first speaker says to Anne that young men love her for her beautiful yellow hair and may never love her for what she really is. To this, Anne replies that her hair-colour can be changed into black, brown or carrot, meaning that external beauty is all superficial and men should not love her for that. Through Anne's reply, the poet has made clear his preference for internal beauty over physical appearance.

CHAPTER 1

A TRIUMPH OF SURGERY

1. INTRODUCTION

The Story “A Triumph of Surgery” is written by James Herriot. It is about a small dog Tricki who is pampered a lot by his rich mistress, Mrs. Pumphrey. He (Tricki) falls sick as a result of being overfed and is cured by Mr. Herriot, a veterinarian, at his surgery.

2. CHARACTERS

Mrs. Pumphrey

Mrs. Pumphrey is a wealthy single woman. She is very much attached to her dog, Tricki. She is very loving but weak at heart.

James Herriot

James is a veterinary surgeon who proves to be a capable doctor and a wise individual. He is an animal lover and a caring guardian.

Tricki

Tricki is a lazy and fat dog who loves food. He is very fond of his owner. He turns out to be energetic and lively after recovering from his illness.

3. SUMMARY

Tricki's illness

The narrator of the story is Mr. Herriot. He is a veterinary surgeon. He was really worried about the dog. Its name was Tricki. He was shocked to see it with its mistress. It had become hugely fat. Its eyes had become red. Its tongue came out from its jaws. It was in a state of disease.

Tricki's Mistress Made Tricki ill

The mistress of the dog was Mrs. Pumphrey. She told Mr. Herriot that the dog seemed to have no energy. So she gave it more malt and cod liver oil and a bowl of Horlicks. She also gave it some cream cakes and chocolates despite Herriot's refusal. It was a rich diet.

Herriot's Warning to Mrs. Pumphrey

Herriot looked at the dog again. Its big trouble

was that it had become greedy. It did not refuse food. Herriot asked Mrs. Pumphrey if she had been giving the dog plenty of exercise. She said she had not. Herriot warned her. If she didn't cut its food and gave it more physical exercise, it would be really ill. She said that he was right. But it was difficult for her.

Tricki To Be in Hospital

Within next few days Mrs. Pumphrey told Herriot that Tricki didn't eat anything. It refused to eat even its favourite dishes. It spent all its time lying panting. The narrator had made his plans in advance. He suggested that Tricki should be hospitalised for about a fortnight. The lady almost became unconscious. She was sure that it would die if he did not see it.

Tricki in Hospital

The narrator took the dog in his car. Mrs. Pumphrey gave Tricki's belongings like bed, cushions, toys, various bowls, coats etc. At the hospital Tricki looked down at other dogs. They sniffed around it and ignored it.

Tricki's Treatment

The narrator kept an eye on Tricki for two days. He gave it plenty of water but no food. On the third day, it started whimpering on seeing other dogs. It followed them down the garden. Later that day other dogs had their food. When they had finished, Tricki walked round the bowls. He also licked them. It meant he was hungry. It was given some food.

Tricki Shows Improvement

Tricki started to show progress. It was given no medicinal treatment. It ran about with the dogs all day. It discovered the joy of being with other dogs. Meanwhile Mrs. Pumphrey continued ringing regularly. She asked various questions about Tricki. But the narrator told her that the dog was out of danger.

When Tricki Becomes All Right

Mrs. Pumphrey started to bring round fresh eggs to build up Tricki's strength. The narrator began

24. Tricki's owner used to give a bowl of apart from his regular diet along with malt and cod liver oil –

- (a) Milk (b) Horlicks
(c) Water (d) Juice

Ans : 2006

(b) Horlicks

25. _____ and _____ were Tricki's favourite thing.

- (a) Rice and chicken
(b) Cakes and chocolates
(c) Kichdi and Fish
(d) Cakes and cookies

Ans : 2006

(b) Cakes and chocolates

26. The narrator Mr. Herriot instructed Mrs. Pumphery to cut down _____ from the diet of Tricki

- (a) Sweets (b) Meat
(c) Milk (d) Rice

Ans : 2005

(a) Sweets

27. The reason behind the garden's not coming to take Tricki out for playing was –

- (a) Fever (b) Cold
(c) Lower back pain (d) Stomach pain

Ans : 2005

(c) Lower back pain

28. Tricki was wearing _____.

- (a) Coat (b) Jacket
(c) Rain Coat (d) Pull over

Ans : 2004

(a) Coat

29. Mr. Herriot was a _____ by profession.

- (a) Business person (b) Service holder
(c) Veterinary doctor (d) Banker

Ans : 2004

(c) Veterinary doctor

30. Mr. Herriot suggested Mrs. Pumphrey to get Tricki hospitalized and keep him under observation for _____ days.

- (a) 3 (b) 15
(c) 5 (d) 20

Ans : 2004

(b) 15

31. Tricki was wrapped in a _____ while sending to the hospital.

- (a) Rain coat (b) Mat
(c) Cotton (d) Blanket

Ans : 2004

(d) Blanket

32. Mr. Herriot made a bed for Tricki in a

- (a) Warm box (b) Blanket
(c) Warm hour (d) Cage

Ans : 2004, 2000

(a) Warm box

33. For the first two days Mr. Herriot kept Tricki just on –

- (a) Soup (b) Milk
(c) Water (d) Juice

Ans : 2004

(c) Water

34. At night Tricki used to go for hunting _____ with his other fellow dogs.

- (a) Rats (b) Hews
(c) Cats (d) Birds

Ans : 2003

(a) Rats

35. For Tricki's fastest recovery Mrs Pumphery started sending _____ daily.

- (a) One dozen egg (b) Three dozen eggs
(c) Two dozen eggs (d) 5 eggs

Ans : 2003

(c) Two dozen eggs

36. To improve the quality of blood, Mrs Pumphery started sending _____ for Tricki.

- (a) Milk (b) Code liver oil
(c) Juice (d) Wine

Ans : 2002

(d) Wine

37. What was Tricki's real disease?

- (a) stomach pain
(b) vomiting due to over-feeding
(c) cholera
(d) fever

Ans : 2002

(b) vomiting due to over-feeding

38. The dogs at the clinic took no interest in Tricki because he was:

- (a) dull and boring

any medicine to the dog. He just gives him water to drink for three days.

3. Why is he tempted to keep Tricki on as a permanent guest ?

Ans :

Mrs. Pumphrey sends eggs and brandy and wine for the dog. But the narrator gives nothing to the dog. Instead he himself uses them. So, he is tempted to keep Tricki on as a permanent guest.

4. Why does Mrs. Pumphrey think the dog's recovery is "a triumph of surgery"?

Ans :

Mrs. Pumphrey is an innocent lady. She loves her dog too much. She cannot understand that her too much love has made the dog ill. So, when the dog gets recovered at the surgery, she calls it a triumph of surgery.

Think About It

1. What kind of a person do you think the narrator, a veterinary surgeon, is ? Would you say he is tactful as well as full of common sense ?

Ans :

Doctor Herriot was a veterinary surgeon. He had a deep regard for Mrs. Pumphrey and concern for Tricki. He was worried for the health of Tricki. Herriot took great care of Tricki at the surgery. He felt happy on watching Tricki improve. He is a person with human quality of being tactful and full of commonsense. It is his tact which makes Mrs. Pumphrey agree to send Tricki to the surgery. He felt happy on watching Tricki improve. At the surgery it is the triumph of Mr. Herriot which is mainly earned through his commonsense.

2. Do you think Tricki was happy to go home ? What do you think will happen now ?

Ans :

No, I think Tricki was not happy to go home. At home Tricki had no company, no friends to play with but in the hospital he knew the pleasures of sharing his food and things and he played with other animals. He even enjoyed catching rats. Naturally, he would not feel comfortable at Mrs. Pumphrey's house with no friends and no games at all.

3. Do you think this is a real-life episode, or mere fiction? Or is it a mixture of both ?

Ans :

The story seems to be quite real because rich people overfeed their children. As Mrs Pumphrey loved Tricki like her own child she overfed him. She was very emotional towards the cute puppy

and could not bear the separation from her doting pet. There is nothing unusual in a wardrobe of dresses for the dog as rich people believe in showing the world that they are very rich to spoil even their pets.

Talk About It

This episode describes the silly behaviour of a rich woman who is foolishly indulgent, perhaps because she is lonely. Do you think such people are merely silly, or can their actions cause harm to others ?

Ans :

Mrs. Pumphrey was quite a rich lady. She had a small pet dog and named it Tricki. This episode describes the behaviour of the rich woman who indulges in foolish behaviour. It makes her keep such delicacies as cushions, toy, rubber rings, breakfast and all stuff. When Tricki is sent to the surgery, the delicacies are sent to the hospital. The tears in her eyes at Tricki's departure are real. Every day she makes a phone call at the surgery.

The worry and concern shown by her are merely silly. She is just busy in her own world and would not cause harm to others.

2. Do you think there are parents like Mrs. Pumphrey?

Ans :

Of course, there are parents like Mrs. Pumphrey. They take too much care of their children. They never let their children play outside and overfeeds them when they seem weak. It results in making their children ill. They become hugely fat and often suffer from many diseases. Then they consult the doctors as Mrs. Pumphrey does. Children of such parents also suffer many mental diseases. They become coward. They lose confidence. In fact pampering is a crime for a child.

3. What would you have done if you were (i) a member of the staff in Mrs Pumphrey's household (ii) a neighbour ? What would your life have been like, in general ?

Ans :

- (i) If I were a member of the staff in Mrs. Pumphrey's household, I certainly would have tried to make her understand that pampering is bad. I would advise her not to show excessive love towards Tricki.
- (ii) If I were her neighbour I would again have advised her not to spoil the dog by pampering him. These actions of her certainly would cause harm to others also.

In general, my life would have been simple as I certainly might have convinced Mrs. Pumphrey that pampering is not good.

4. What would you have done if you were in the narrator's place ?

Ans :

If I were in the narrator's place I would have done the same as the narrator had done to cure Tricki. Since Mrs. Pumphrey was very ignorant and was not realising the seriousness of matter, only this step was left to take Tricki out of the house. One must be very tactful and full of common sense while handling such a situation. The narrator knew that Tricki needed nothing else except plenty of exercises. Again the writer successfully came out of the temptation of keeping Tricki as a permanent guest. So, what the narrator had done was absolutely correct and I would have done the same.

5. Who is Hodgkin?
(a) dog owner (b) gardener
(c) Veterinary surgeon (d) Dog

Ans :

(b) gardener

2016

6. What was the dog unable to play?
(a) ring-throw (b) walk
(c) hide and seek (d) all of these

Ans :

(a) ring-throw

2016

7. What did the doctor advise?
(a) cut his food
(b) give him more exercise
(c) keep him on a very strict diet
(d) all of the above

Ans :

(d) all of the above

2015

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. Who does "I" refer to in the story?
(a) Tricki (b) Mrs. Pumphrey
(c) Veterinary surgeon (d) none of these

Ans :

(c) Veterinary surgeon

2020

2. What is the name of the veterinary surgeon?
(a) Tricki (b) Mrs. Pumphrey
(c) Hodgkin (d) Mr. Herriot

Ans :

(d) Mr. Herriot

2020

3. What problem does Mrs Pumphrey think Tricki has?
(a) diarrhoea (b) malnutrition
(c) allergies (d) all of these

Ans :

(b) malnutrition

2020

4. Did Mrs Pumphrey cut down on sweets as was advised?

(a) yes
(b) no
(c) only for a while
(d) she was not advised anything like that

Ans :

(c) only for a while

2016

8. How was Tricki acting?
(a) refusing to eat his favourite food
(b) didn't go for walks
(c) vomiting
(d) all of the above

Ans :

(d) all of the above

2014

9. What was best according to the vet?
(a) to take him to the hospital
(b) to take him for a walk
(c) to let him have sugar
(d) both b and c

Ans :

(a) to take him to the hospital

2014

10. Why did the other dogs ignore Tricki?
(a) he was an uninteresting object
(b) he was ill
(c) he was furious
(d) all of the above

Ans :

(a) he was an uninteresting object

2014

11. What did the dogs know about food?
(a) last ones will be liable to have competition for the leftover food
(b) there was no competition
(c) it wasn't good
(d) it was the best part of the day

Ans :

2013

(a) last ones will be liable to have competition for the leftover food

12. What does the narrator refer to Tricki as, in the group of other dogs?

- (a) silky little object
(b) shaggy little object
(c) he didn't say anything
(d) none of the above

Ans :

2013

(a) silky little object

13. How did the staff benefit from Mrs Pumphrey's overdoing?

- (a) breakfast with eggs (b) lunch with wine
(c) dinner with brandy (d) all of these

Ans :

2012

(d) all of these

14. What made the narrator call Mrs Pumphrey after a fortnight?

- (a) Tricki got recovered
(b) Tricki got unwell
(c) he knew she is suffering
(d) both a and c

Ans :

2012

(d) both a and c

15. Who is the author of the story "A Triumph of Surgery"?

- (a) James Herriot (b) Ruskin Bond
(c) Robert Arthur (d) Victor Canning

Ans :

2012

(a) James Herriot

16. Why is the narrator tempted to keep Tricki as a permanent guest?

- (a) because he loved Tricki
(b) he thought Mrs. Pumphrey wouldn't take good care of Tricki
(c) they would lose all Luxuries like eggs, wine and brandy
(d) none of the above

Ans :

2010

(c) they would lose all Luxuries like eggs, wine and brandy

17. What was Tricki's main fault?

- (a) fatness (b) inactivity
(c) laziness (d) greed

Ans :

2010

(d) greed

18. What did Mrs Pumphrey think her dog is suffering from?

- (a) fever (b) malnutrition
(c) stomach pain (d) footsore

Ans :

2010

(b) malnutrition

19. "I think I know a cure for you." Who is 'I'?

- (a) Mrs Pumphrey
(b) Mrs Pumphrey's husband
(c) Mr Herriot
(d) Mrs Pumphrey's servant

Ans :

2010

(c) Mr Herriot

20. What did the doctor give Tricki at his clinic?

- (a) many injections
(b) medicines
(c) no food for two days
(d) only milk and chocolate

Ans :

2009

(c) no food for two days

21. What did Mrs Pumphrey bring at first?

- (a) two dozen fresh eggs
(b) four dozen fresh eggs
(c) wine
(d) both a and c

Ans :

2009

(b) four dozen fresh eggs

22. When Mr Herriot took Tricki to his clinic, Mrs Pumphrey was:

- (a) happy
(b) excited
(c) wailing
(d) thanking the doctor

Ans :

2008

(c) wailing

23. I think "I know a cure for you." What is the 'cure'?

- (a) controlling Tricki's diet
(b) giving him a surgery
(c) giving injections
(d) keeping under observation

Ans :

2008

(a) controlling Tricki's diet

giving Tricki wine before and during the meal. The dog began to drink brandy also. Tricki now had one extra egg in the morning. It had wine at noon and brandy in the evening. After a fortnight, the narrator rang her up saying the dog was all right.

Mrs. Pumphrey Comes to Take Tricki Home

Mrs. Pumphrey arrived at the narrator's Surgery in a big car. She asked him if the dog was better. The narrator told her that the dog was fine. He would bring it to her. When Tricki saw its mistress, it ran into Mrs. Pumphrey's lap. It began licking her face and barking.

Tricki's Cure - A Triumph of Surgery

The narrator helped the driver to bring out Tricki's various things. These were Tricki's beds, toys, cushions, coats and bowls. They had not been used. As the car moved away, Mrs. Pumphrey leaned out of the window. Tears shone in her eyes. Her lips trembled. She told the narrator that it was a triumph of surgery.

4. WORD MEANINGS

1. Bloated - swollen; excessive in size.
2. Bloodshot - inflamed or tinged with blood.
3. Tottering - moving in a feeble or unsteady way.
4. Tweed - a rough-surfaced woollen cloth.
5. Harness - a set of straps and fittings.
6. Bouts - a short period of intense activity of a specified type.
7. Roused - made active or excited.
8. Gasping - catching one's breath with an open mouth.
9. Surged - moved suddenly and powerfully forward or upward.
10. Whimper - make a series of low, feeble sounds expressive of fear, pain, or unhappiness.
11. Trotted - ran at a moderate pace with short steps.
12. Slopped - spilt over the edge of a container, typically as a result of careless handling.
13. Jostling - pushing or bumping against someone roughly, typically in a crowd.
14. Rapid - happening in a short time or at a great rate.
15. Scrimmages - confused struggle or fights.
16. Bowled over - pushed and made to fall on the ground.
17. Dodged - avoided

18. Reverently - with deep and solemn respect.
19. Chauffeur - a person employed to drive a private or hired car.
20. Hurtling - moving or causing to move at a high speed, typically in an uncontrolled manner.
21. Leap - jump to a great height.
22. Startled - felt sudden shock or alarm.

5. MESSAGE

This story conveys the message that excess of anything is not good. Exercise is equally important for the well being along with nutritious food. Pampering spoils physical as well as mental health. Many kids get spoilt because they are unreasonably pampered by their parents. Mrs. Pumphrey can be related to an overindulgent mother who pampers Tricki like her own child, spoils him without thinking about the consequences and becomes the cause of his misery, unintentionally.

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Read And Find Out - 1

1. Why is Mrs. Pumphrey worried about Tricki ?
Ans :
Tricki has become hugely fat. He has lost interest in everything. He seems to be lost his strength. So, she is worried about Tricki.
2. What does she do to help him ? Is she wise in this ?
Ans :
She starts giving him more food to eat. She thinks that he is suffering from malnutrition. But she is not wise in doing this.
3. Who does 'I' refer to in this story ?
Ans :
'I' in this story refers to the author 'James Herriot'.

Read And Find Out - 2

1. Is the narrator as rich as Tricki's mistress ?
Ans :
No, the narrator is not as rich as Tricki's mistress. He is a vet.
2. How does he treat the dog ?
Ans :
He treats the dog very wisely. He knows the real reason of the dog's illness. So, he does not give

- (b) not of their race
- (c) of small size
- (d) more powerful than them

Ans :

2002

- (a) dull and boring

39. When Tricky was seriously ill, who did Mrs Pumphrey make a frantic call?

- (a) to her son
- (b) to her husband
- (c) to a vet doctor Mr Herriot
- (d) to her maid-servant

Ans :

2001

- (c) to a vet doctor Mr Herriot

40. Tricky falls ill because

- (a) he met an accident
- (b) of bad weather
- (c) he did not get proper food to eat
- (d) his mistress overfed him

Ans :

2001

- (d) his mistress overfed him

Short Answer Type Questions

1. What does Mr. Herriot mean by “happy period” for himself and his partners ? Explain.

Ans :

2024

Mr. Herriot was tempted to keep Tricky as a permanent guest as he and his friends enjoyed eggs for breakfast, wine and brandy for lunch. He therefore calls it a happy period.

2. The story, A Triumph of Surgery is a powerful example of the importance of saying “no”. Explain.

Ans :

2023

The story, ‘A Triumph of Surgery’ is a powerful example of the importance of saying “no”. When Dr. Herriot met Tricky with her owner Mrs. Pumphrey, he asked her to say “no” to overeating for Tricky as it would lead him to get ill. However, she was not able to say “no” to Tricky’s overfeeding and over-pampering and thus, had to send him to the hospital as he got seriously ill.

3. What was the impact of the goodies that came for Tricky during his convalescence, on the household?

Ans :

2023

The impact of all the goodies on the household was that they led to a period of indulgence and luxurious living. The household members, including the doctor and his partners, enjoyed the

extra eggs, wine, and brandy. It added a sense of festivity to their daily routines, with lunch becoming a ceremonial occasion and evenings by the fire becoming more enjoyable.

4. What was Mr. Herriot’s strict advice? Did Mrs. Pumphrey agree to his advice?

Ans :

2023

Mr. Herriot’s strict advice to Mrs. Pumphrey was to restrain from giving her pet dog Tricky, unnecessary rich diet that would cause him serious illness and to give him plenty of exercises. No, Mrs. Pumphrey did not agree to his advice as she continued spoiling her dog’s health by giving him unrequited things like malt, cod liver, cupcakes, etc and no exercise.

5. What do you think would happen to Tricky after he went back to Mrs Pumphrey?

Ans :

2021

I think Tricky would again be over-pampered by Mrs Pumphrey. He might develop the same health issues gradually because Mrs Pumphrey was not aware of the actual treatment given to him.

6. “I was really worried about Tricky this time.” Comment on the writer’s choice of beginning the story in this manner. What purpose does it serve?

Ans :

2021

The writer chose this statement to begin the story to put the reader’s focus entirely on Tricky and his health from the very beginning of the lesson. Moreover, Tricky is the main character of the story.

7. “Tricky’s only fault was greed”, says the narrator. What might be Mrs. Pumphrey’s “only fault”?

Ans :

2021

Mrs Pumphrey’s only fault was her richness and over caring nature. She had provided luxurious things to an animal that replaced his actual needs and made him ill and obese.

8. How did Mrs. Pumphrey and her servants behave when Tricky was being sent to the surgery?

Ans :

2018

Mrs. Pumphrey began to cry loudly when Dr. Herriot carried Tricky in a blanket to his car. She gave out a despairing cry when the doctor moved off with Tricky. The entire staff was roused and maids were rushed in and out bringing Tricky’s day bed, night bed, favourite cushions, toys and bowls. As Dr. Herriot drove away with Tricky, Mrs. Pumphrey, with a despairing cry, threw an armful of little coats through the window.

help him to choose right path in life. The story conveys another beautiful message that we should not betray the trust reposed on us by a person. Once the trust of a person is lost, everything is lost. Kindness touches hearts and brings about a change in even in the worst person.

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Read and Find Out - 1

1. Who does 'I' refer to in this story ?

Ans :

'I' is Hari Singh, the narrator of the story.

2. What is he 'a fairly successful hand' at ?

Ans :

He is a fairly successful hand at stealing.

3. What does he get from Anil in return for his work?

Ans :

He is promised to get food in return for his work.

Read and Find Out - 2

1. How does the thief think Anil will react to the theft ?

Ans :

He thinks Anil would show only a touch of sadness but not for the loss of money but for the loss of trust.

2. What does he say about the different reactions of people when they are robbed ?

Ans :

According to him a greedy man shows fear, a rich man shows anger and a poor man shows acceptance.

3. Does Anil realise that he has been robbed?

Ans :

Of course, Anil realises that he has been robbed after finding the notes wet.

Think About It

1. What are Hari Singh's reactions to the prospects of receiving an education? Do they change over time ? (Hint : Compare, for example, he thought "I knew that once I could write like an educated man there would be no limit to what I could achieve" with these later thoughts: "Whole sentences, I knew could one day bring me more than a few hundred rupees. It was a simple matter to steal and sometimes just as simple to be caught. But to be a really big man, a clever and respected man, was something else ? What makes him return to Anil?

Ans :

Hari Singh is in his teens. He is a successful thief. He always changed his name. However he had not lost all his goodness. He aspired to learn how to read and write. Though Anil did not pay him but still he knew that if he could write like an educated man there would be no limit to what he could achieve.

Still forced by circumstances and habit Hari Singh robs Anil of rupees six hundred. He goes to board the train but his conscience pricks him. He returns and puts the money under the mattress. He knew that he could learn to become an honest man. So the desire to become big man, a clever and respected man was something which made him return.

2. Why does not Anil hand the thief over to the police? Do you think most people would have done so ? In what ways is Anil different from such employers ?

Ans :

Anil is a writer by profession. He writes for magazines. His income was not regular. He could understand the condition of Hari Singh. Anil shows compassion towards Hari Singh. He even agreed to pay him fifty rupees regularly. He knows that handing him over to police would never make him a respectable gentleman. Being noble minded he did not wish to expose his theft. He turned a thief into a respectable person. A very good employer would excuse such behaviour of the servants.

Talk About It

Do you think people like Anil and Hari Singh are found only in fiction, or are there such people in real life ?

Ans :

Human nature is very complex. Relations are more complex than human nature. Anil and Hari Singh are no figment of imagination. They are also characters of blood and flesh. Hari Singh is a thief not by wish but by circumstances. Compulsion turns a person to take up dishonest means. Sometimes lack of love and care are also great factors. By heart Hari Singh is a good fellow. His conscience pricks him and makes him change into a good human being. Many hard core criminals have also been transformed by love and compassion.

Anil is a writer though not very successful. He cannot earn a handsome figure. He is a careless fellow but with feelings of kindness. Such a character like Anil can exist in real life. It is goodness of such people in the world which makes the evil diminish.

Tricki's cushions were being turned regularly or was he wearing the correct coat according to the weather.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. "We are often over-indulgent towards people we care about." Explain with reference to the context of the story "A Triumph of Surgery".

Ans :

2024

In the story "A Triumph of Surgery" from James Herriot's collection, the over-indulgence towards those we care about is depicted through the relationship between Mrs. Pumphrey, a wealthy lady, and her Pekingese dog, Tricki. Mrs. Pumphrey's deep affection for Tricki leads her to pamper him excessively with luxurious treats and little exercise, mistakenly believing that this is the best way to express her love. This indulgence results in Tricki becoming grossly overweight and lethargic, a direct consequence of his owner's overbearing love and lack of understanding of his actual needs. The story illustrates how our affection can sometimes cloud our judgment, leading to actions that may not be in the best interest of those we care for. It's a cautionary tale on the importance of balancing love with wisdom, especially when it comes to the health and well-being of others.

2. Imagine that Mrs. Pumphrey from 'A Triumph of Surgery', reflects upon her behaviour, learns from her mistakes, and writes a diary entry about the consequences of overindulgence. Write this diary entry as Mrs. Pumphrey in about 120 words.

Ans :

2023

January 20XX, Tuesday
9 p.m.

Dear Diary,

Today, I had a dreadful realisation. I love my dear Tricki, but I fear that that love has caused me to excessively indulge and pamper my dear pet. The sight of him, bloated and unhealthy, broke my heart. I believed that showering him with treats was a sign of care.

But instead, I was causing him more harm than good. Thank goodness for Mr. Herriot. He aptly deduced that the reason for Tricki's decline in health was my lack of strict boundaries with Tricki. When he noticed that I was not following his advice, he took Tricki away from me to take care of him. During Tricki's absence, I began to reflect on my actions. Old habits die hard, but I will try my best to be a better caretaker for Tricki now that he is back home.

Mrs. Pumphrey

3. Imagine that one of Mr Herriot's partners can understand dogs' language and listen to Tricki on his last night with them

- (a) What might Tricki share about his experience?
- (b) How would he evaluate it in comparison to his home experience?

Ans :

2021

- (a) Tricki might share that he gets less to eat at the surgery but he feels more energetic there. He has to fight with other dogs to grab his share of the meal. Though his mates kick him and bowl him over, he loves and enjoys their company. He might say that he is getting to be quite stronger at the surgery.
- (b) He would evaluate from Tricki's experience that overprotectiveness and overeating without exercise can make anyone unhealthy. We must understand that life is not about eating all the time. Besides every discomfort does not need medicine or surgery. Lifestyle disorders can be treated with the right routine and eating habits. He might conclude from Tricki's experience that richness does not guarantee health and happiness.

4. Mrs Pumphrey and Dr Herriot have been invited to speak at a community pet adoption drive. There were some differences in Mrs Pumphrey and Dr Herriot's notions of responsibility and experiences of keeping a pet. As a reporter for the local pet magazine, write an article recording and comparing their perspectives. Don't forget to give it an interesting title.

Ans :

2021

Community Pet Adoption Drive

The veterinary society invited Dr Herriot, a senior vet and Mrs Pumphrey to share their experiences of keeping a pet on the occasion of the Pet adoption drive. Mrs Pumphrey believes in providing luxurious clothes and toys and tasty food to pets. Whereas Dr Herriot explained that overfeeding without any physical work or exercise can make the animals ill and sluggish. According to him discipline and simple food is the key to the pets' health. Both shared different pet parenting tips for pet lovers. Every dog has its day, they say. The event came to an end with the handing over of 10 pets to the interested veterinarians. Finally, the pets looked happy with their new family.

Other Interesting Titles for this answer- Community pet adoption drive, Adoptathon, Rich vs Poor Pet, Paws for a cause

CHAPTER 2

THE THIEF'S STORY

NODIA

1. INTRODUCTION

The story “The Thief’s Story” is written by Ruskin Bond. The story is about a 15 year old thief who changes his name every month to stay ahead of the police and old employers. This time he kept his name Hari Singh. The other person in the story is a 25 year old writer named Anil. The thief meets Anil and asks him if he can work for him. The story unfolds on how the thief betrays Anil by committing a theft but retracts later on.

2. CHARACTERS

Hari Singh

He is a 15 year old, fair handed thief. He is keen on learning how to read and write. He is so experienced robber that he knows how different people will react when they are robbed.

Anil

He is a 25-year-old, tall and lean man. He earns his living by writing. He is a kind, simple and an easy-going person.

3. SUMMARY

Hari Singh Approaches Anil

Hari Singh approached Anil while he was watching a wrestling match, as he seemed to be an easy target to him. Hari used some flattering words to gain Anil’s confidence and soon they started conversing. After a while, when Anil started to walk off, Hari followed him with his most appealing smile. He expressed his wish to work for Anil. But Anil bluntly expressed his inability to pay Hari. Hari questioned Anil if he could feed him. Anil agreed to feed Hari only if he knew how to cook. Hari said that he knew how to cook but this was a lie.

Anil Brings Hari to His Room

Anil took Hari to his room over Jumna Sweet Shop and let him occupy the balcony to sleep. Anil gave that night’s meal to a stray dog because

the meal cooked by Hari was terrible. Anil had realised that Hari didn’t know how to cook. He asked Hari to go off to sleep, but Hari hung around, giving his most appealing smile. Anil patted Hari’s head and told him that he would teach him how to cook.

Anil Teach Hari to Read and Write

Anil taught Hari to write his name and promised to teach him how to write whole sentences and to add numbers eventually. Hari was happy and grateful for this as he knew that he could achieve anything he wanted once he knew how to read and write like an educated man. He liked working for Anil. He started making tea in the morning and buying the day’s supplies later. He used to make a profit of about a rupee on buying the day’s supplies but knew that Anil didn’t mind.

Hari Had Gained Anil’s Trust

One evening Anil came back with a bundle of currency notes he had got from selling a book he had written to a publisher. He kept the money under the mattress and slept peacefully. Hari had been working for Anil for almost a month and he had gained Anil’s trust. Hari saw the opportunity to rob Anil. It was not an easy task as he knew that Anil will be sad about the loss of money. He brushed away his thought and decided to execute the robbery the same night, as Anil would’ve otherwise wasted the money on his friends.

Hari Robbed Anil

Hari considered the situation and crawled up to the bed when Anil was asleep. He slid his hand under the mattress and drew the money out quietly. He rushed out of the room and began to run on the road. He had secured the money with the string of his pyjama. He was heading towards the railway station to catch 10:30 express to Lucknow as planned. He was elated when he counted the money on his way.

Hari didn’t Board the Train

Hari reached the station just when the train was about to pick up speed. He could have managed to get into one of the carriages but something

have had a positive impact on Tricki. Because within some days, Tricki ran about with the dogs, joining in the friendly scrimmages. Eventually, in two weeks, he had been transformed into a lithe, hard-muscled animal.

10. “A Triumph of Surgery” highlights the absurd and negligent behaviour of rich people like Mrs. Pumphrey who may harm their near and dear ones by their extra caring nature. Tricki’s declined health was the outcome of Mrs. Pumphrey’s over-caring nature. Do you think such people’s actions can prove to be detrimental for the health of their kinds?

Ans :

2001, 2000

Mrs. Pumphrey was a wealthy lady with a fat pet dog named Tricki. Tricki was too dear to Mrs. Pumphrey. Hence, she took extra care of him. She had pampered the dog with all kinds of comforts. The dog had many coats worn according to the weather, had different cushions for his comfort and also had various dishes to eat. Some extras between meals were given to him, some malt, cod-liver oil and a bowl of Horlicks at night to make him sleep. He was also given cream cakes and chocolates. This made him fat and lethargic. He became hugely fat like a bloated sausage. His eyes bloodshot and rheumy, stared straight ahead and his tongue lolled from his jaws. I think Mrs. Pumphrey’s extra-caring nature resulted in Tricki’s declined health. Such an attitude can be fatal for the health of their kins. One should not over care of them. Exercise and proper meal are important for one’s health. The same was taken care by Dr Herriot, which resulted in the speedy recovery of Tricki.

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow :

The expected call came within a few days. Mrs. Pumphrey was distraught. Tricki would eat nothing. Refused even his favourite dishes; and besides he had bouts of vomiting. He spent all his time lying on a rug, panting. Didn’t want to go for walks, didn’t want to do anything.

I had made my plans in advance. The only way was to get Tricki out of the house for a period. I suggested that he be hospitalised for about a fortnight to be kept under observation.

- i. Which of the following is not a reason why Mr. Herriot thinks Tricki needs to be taken out of the house for a period ?

- (a) He wanted to keep Tricki away from Mrs. Pumphrey.
(b) He wanted to keep Tricki under observation.
(c) He wanted to do an experiment on Tricki.
(d) He wanted to improve Tricki’s health.

- ii. What was the main reason for Mrs. Pumphrey to be distraught ? Answer in about 40 words.

- iii. State True or False :

When Mr. Herriot says, “I had made my plans in advance” —what he actually means is, he had already seen this trauma coming for Tricki.

- iv. Which of the following best describes Mrs. Pumphrey?

- (a) unkind and inconsiderate
(b) impractical but compassionate
(c) anxious and ambitious
(d) fearful but confident

Ans :

2024

- i. (c) He wanted to do an experiment on Tricki.
ii. Mrs. Pumphrey was distraught because Tricki, her beloved pet, refused to eat any of his favorite dishes and had bouts of vomiting. He spent all his time lying on a rug, panting, and showed no interest in going for walks or doing anything.
iii. True
iv. (b) impractical but compassionate

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

All the while Mrs. Pumphrey hovered anxiously in the background, ringing a dozen times a day for the latest bulletins. I dodged the questions about whether his cushions were being turned regularly or his correct coat worn according to the weather, but I was able to tell her that the little fellow was out of danger and convalescing rapidly. The word ‘convalescing’ seemed to do something to Mrs. Pumphrey. She started to bring round fresh eggs, two dozen at a time, to build up Trick’s strength. For a happy period, my partners and I had two each for breakfast, but when the bottles of wine began to arrive, the real possibilities of the situation began to dawn on the household.

- i. State any one inference about Mrs. Pumphrey from the given context.

Mrs. Pumphrey ‘hovered anxiously in the background’.

- ii. State TRUE or FALSE.
None of the options displays how the doctor 'successfully' tackled Mrs. Pumphrey's constant queries regarding Tricki's health and convinced her.
- He was vague about the details of Tricki's coats and cushions.
 - He told her that Tricki was stable after the surgery.
 - He told her that Tricki was eating well and exercising.
 - He told her that Tricki was well and recovering.
- iii. The word 'convalescing' seemed to do something to Mrs. Pumphrey. Elaborate in about 40 words, with reference to the extract what does the conduct of the lady portray about her?
- iv. Which phrase would correctly substitute 'ducked,' in the given sentence from the extract?
The batsman at the crease ducked and avoided a bouncer that came at him with lightning speed.

Ans :

2022

- She called the vet at least a dozen times a day for details of Tricki's recovery.
 - FALSE (option (a) and (d) display how the doctor successfully tackled Mrs. Pumphrey's constant queries regarding Trick's health and convinced her)
 - The word 'convalescing' had a magical effect on the incorrigible Mrs. Pumphrey. She was happy and hopeful to have Tricki back home soon. In her enthusiasm, she began to bring fresh eggs two dozen at a time to build up Tricki's strength. Later, she sent in bottles of wine too to nourish her pet.
 - dodged
- ii. State true or false.
None of the terms (a) - (d) can be applied to the statement - She started to bring round fresh eggs, two dozen at a time, to build up Tricki's strength.
- A hypothesis - a proposed explanation for a phenomenon
 - An assumption - something that is taken for granted or assumed to be true
 - A hyperbole - exaggerated statements or claims not meant to be taken literally
 - A premise - a proposition that forms the basis of an argument
- iii. Which phrase would correctly substitute 'convalescing' in the given sentence from the extract?
The word 'convalescing' seemed to do something to Mrs. Pumphrey.
- iv. What did Mrs. Pumphrey do when she heard that Tricki was recovering?

Ans :

2018

- It can be inferred from the given extract that Mrs. Pumphrey was very attached to her dog, Tricki. She loved him a lot, which is why she became very worried when he fell sick.
- True
- recovering
- When Mrs. Pumphrey heard that Tricki was recovering, she started to bring two dozen eggs to build up Tricki's strength. Later, she started bringing bottles of wine which would help in enriching his blood.

Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow :

I was really worried about Tricki this time. I had pulled up my car when I saw him in the street with his mistress and I was shocked at his appearance. He had become hugely fat, like a bloated sausage with a leg at each corner. His eyes, bloodshot and rheumy, stared straight ahead and his tongue lolled from his jaws.

Mrs. Pumphrey hastened to explain, "He was so listless, Mr. Herriot. He seemed to have no energy. I thought he must be suffering from malnutrition, so I have been giving him some little extras between meals to build him up, some malt and cod-liver oil and a bowl of Horlicks at night to make him sleep — nothing much really"

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow :

The word 'convalescing' seemed to do something to Mrs. Pumphrey. She started to bring round fresh eggs, two dozen at a time, to build up Tricki's strength. For a happy period my partners and I had two eggs each for breakfast, but when the bottles of wine began to arrive, the real possibilities of the situation began to dawn on the household.

- State any one inference about Mrs. Pumphrey from the given extract.

- The author describes the dog's obesity as "like a bloated sausage". State any one inference about Mrs. Pumphrey from the given context.

- ii. State TRUE or FALSE that none of the terms (a) to (d) given below, can be applied to the question given below.

What is Mrs. Pumphrey's belief that "Tricki was so listless, Mr. Herriot. He seemed to have no energy. I thought he must be suffering from malnutrition" based on?

- (a) A hypothesis — a proposed explanation for a phenomenon.
 - (b) An assumption — something that is taken for granted or assumed to be true without proof.
 - (c) A premise — a proposition that forms the basis of an argument.
 - (d) A theory — a well-substantiated explanation for a natural phenomenon.
- iv. 'I thought he must be suffering from malnutrition, so I have been giving him some little extras between meals to build him up...' What does the above statement reflect about both the mistress and her dog? Elaborate in about 40 words, with reference to the extract.
- iv. Which phrase would correctly substitute 'bloated' in the given sentence from the extract?
He had become hugely fat, like a bloated sausage with a leg at each corner.

Ans :

2016

- i. The dog's mistress had been overindulging him despite the doctor's earlier advice.
- ii. (b) An assumption — something that is taken for granted or assumed to be true without proof.
- iii. If Mrs. Pumphrey was blindly into pampering and fussing over her pet, the dog was also greedy and didn't mind hogging the extra helpings day in and day out. It made him sick and listless and ironically, he was fed more to overcome this.
- iv. overstuffed

5. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

In two weeks he had been transformed into a lithe, hard-muscled animal; he was keeping up well with the pack, stretching out in great bounds, his chest almost brushing the ground.

I carried him back along the passage to the front of the house. The chauffeur was still holding the car door open and when Tricki saw his mistress he took off from my arms in a tremendous leap and sailed into Mrs Pumphrey's lap. She gave a

startled "Ooh!" And then had to defend herself as he swarmed over her, licking her face and barking.

- i. State any one inference about Tricki's show of emotions from the given context.

And then had to defend herself as he swarmed over her licking her face and barking.

- ii. Which of the explanations given below can be applied to this statement that captures Tricki's mood? Label it TRUE making others automatically FALSE.

The chauffeur was still holding the car door open and when Tricki saw his mistress he took off from my arms in a tremendous leap and sailed into Mrs Pumphrey's lap.

- (a) Tricki had not enjoyed his stay at the vet's hospital.
- (b) He was relieved to be rescued from the big, shaggy dogs.
- (c) Tricki had recognised his dog-parent and was happy to see her.
- (d) He wanted to go home and be pampered again.
- (c) '...he was keeping up well with the pack, stretching out in great bounds, his chest almost brushing the ground.' Which treatment had transformed Tricki?
Elaborate in about 40 words, with reference to the extract.
- (d) Which phrase would correctly substitute 'lithe' in the given sentence from the extract?

He (Tricki) had been transformed into a lithe, hard-muscled animal.

Ans :

2013

- i. Tricki overwhelmed Mrs. Pumphrey with his love because he had never stayed apart from her.
- ii. (c) Tricki had recognised his dog-parent and was happy to see her.(TRUE)
- iii. Tricki had become as healthy as the pack, discovering the joys of being bowled over, tramped on, and squashed every few minutes. He also learned to fight like a tiger for his share at mealtimes and hunt rats in the old henhouse at night with his gang.
- iv. agile or active



5. Tricki was more a member of the family than a mere dog. Explain by giving examples from the text.

Ans :

2014, 2012, 2009, 2008

Tricki was more a member of the family of Mrs. Pumphrey than a mere dog. She was always concerned about his health and unwittingly over-fed him. When he is taken to hospital all the household got emotional. The entire staff was roused and maids rushed in and out bringing his day bed, his night bed, favourite cushions, toys and rubber rings, breakfast bowl, lunch bowl, supper bowl. During his stay in the hospital, Mrs. Pumphrey kept asking whether his cushions were being turned regularly or his correct coat worn according to weather. Mrs. Pumphrey had over-pampered the dog as normally children are over-pampered by the parents.

6. Give a brief character sketch of Mrs. Pumphrey. What values are reflected through her character ?

Ans :

2006

Mrs. Pumphrey was a rich lady with a lot of love for pet dog, Tricki. She loved to live comfortably in a luxurious way. She took an extra care of Tricki by overfeeding him. She was not very intelligent as she was not able to make out that the excess of weight and the fur coats do not allow the dog to move and play. She thought that her loving pet was serious. She was so fond of her dog that she had got a wardrobe separate for daytime and night-time beds, and a number of lovely fur coats. She pampered Tricki by giving him the food, that should not be given to a dog. She was really a loving lady as the news about the surgery of her pet dog shocked her and her eyes brimmed with tears. She could not refuse delicious and favourite food to Tricki which made him overweight and inactive. Even in the hospital, she sent him eggs and brandy. Her fondness for the dog and extra care showed that she had motherly attitude towards Tricki.

7. How did the 'parting scene' between Tricki and Mrs. Pumphrey's household come to end ?

Ans :

2005, 2001

Tricki, the dog was very ill. He had to be sent to the surgery for a fortnight. There was quite a sensation at the time of parting. Mrs. Pumphrey the owner, started wailing. The entire staff was roused. The maids rushed in and out. They ran to collect Tricki's things.

Mr. Herriot saw that his car could not hold all these things. So he sat in with Tricki and started his car. Mrs. Pumphrey was carrying a number of coats on her arm which she threw in through the

window of Mr. Herriot's car. Mr. Herriot reached the corner of the street. He looked in the mirror and noticed everybody was in tears.

8. Herriot seems to be a duty-bound doctor who values others' emotions' than his personal interests. Elucidate the above statement. Mention those values of Herriot which you would like to emulate in yourself also and give reasons for the same.

Ans :

2005

Herriot was a duty bound veterinary doctor. He used to visit Mrs. Pumphrey's house regularly for the regular check-up of her dog Tricki. Mrs. Pumphrey was a very rich lady who had pampered her dog. Dr. Herriot was quite worried about Tricki's health. He knew that the dog was over-fed by his owner. He advised Mrs. Pumphrey to keep him off rich diet and give him a lot of exercise. But she didn't bother. Hence, in order to improve Tricki's health, he decided to take him away from Mrs. Pumphrey. He told her that Tricki needed a surgery. He made Tricki cut down his diet and made him do certain exercise which improved his health. Although he knew Mrs. Pumphrey was very rich and much attached to the dog, he did not take any advantage of it. He just performed his duties. We should also learn the same values in our life.

9. Compare and contrast Tricki's condition in the beginning and in the end of the story.

Ans :

2004

In the beginning of his the story, we find Tricki to be extremely fat. His eyes were bloodshot and rheumy, while his tongue lolled from his jaws. He was lethargic and listless and never seemed to have any energy. So, it was very difficult for him to move along the road. On the other hand, he was very greedy. He would not refuse food at any hour of the day. Therefore, as the days passed, his condition worsened. He even refused to touch food and did not want to go for walks.

Because of his declining health, Tricki refused his favourite dishes and besides, he had bouts of vomiting. He spent all his time lying on a rug, panting. He didn't want to do anything. He was in such a pathetic state that he could hardly wag his tail. Later, at the surgery when he was put down, he lay motionless on the carpet. He looked at the household dogs with dull eyes. The other dogs, after sniffing round him for a few seconds, found him to be an uninteresting object and ignored him.

At this place, he was given no food but plenty of water on the first day. This place seemed to

unexplainable stopped him. He was left behind on the station. He decided to leave the station and thought while walking through the bazaar about how would Anil feel when he would come to know about the theft. Hari had realised by then that he could not only cook the meals or go to the market to buy daily supplies, but he had also lost the chance to learn how to read and write. Due to these thoughts and his feeling of guilt, he decided to go back to Anil, if only for the sake of learning how to read and write.

Hari Kept The Money Back

Hari hurried towards the room. He opened the door cautiously so as not to wake Anil up. He quickly took out the currency notes which were damp because of the rain. He crept up to the bed and placed the notes under the mattress. After that, he went off to sleep in the balcony.

Anil Reacted Normally in the Morning

Hari woke up late in the morning. He found that Anil had already prepared tea. Anil gave a fifty rupee note to Hari, telling him that he had earned some money by selling a book to a publisher and now he would pay him regularly. Hari was motivated but he could make out that Anil knew everything though he didn't say anything to him about it.

4. WORD MEANINGS

1. Lean - thin
2. Flattery - excessive and insincere praise
3. Modestly - in an unassuming manner; without vanity or arrogance.
4. Employers - a person or organization that employs people.
5. Grunting - make a low, short guttural sound.
6. Appealing - attractive or interesting.
7. Misjudged - form a wrong opinion or conclusion about.
8. Balcony - a platform enclosed by a wall or balustrade on the outside of a building, with access from an upper-floor window or door.
9. Terrible - extremely bad or serious.
10. Patted - touch quickly and gently with the flat of the hand.
11. Pleasant - giving a sense of happy satisfaction or enjoyment.
12. Supplies - a stock or amount of something supplied or available for use.
13. Fits and Starts - not working on something consistently

NODIA

14. Borrow - take and use (something belonging to someone else) with the intention of returning it.
15. Lend - grant to (someone) the use of (something) on the understanding that it will be returned.
16. Queer - strange; odd.
17. Tuck - push, fold, or turn (the edges or ends of something, especially a garment or bedclothes) so as to hide or secure them.
18. Line of work - the principal activity in your life that you do to earn money
19. Beam - a ray or shaft of light.
20. Crept - move slowly and carefully in order to avoid being heard or noticed.
21. Drew - pull or drag
22. Sighed - emit a long, deep audible breath expressing sadness, relief, tiredness.
23. Startled - feeling or showing sudden shock or alarm.
24. Dashed - Quickly ran towards something
25. Carriages - any of the separate sections of a train that carry passengers.
26. Hesitated - pause in indecision before saying or doing something.
27. Deserted - (of a place) empty of people.
28. Curious - eager to know or learn something.
29. Robbed - take property unlawfully from (a person or place) by force or threat of force.
30. Maidan - a park
31. Drizzle - light rain falling in very fine drops.
32. Shelter - a place giving temporary protection from bad weather or danger.
33. Clock Tower - a tower, typically forming part of a church or civic building, with a large clock at the top.
34. Damp - slightly wet.
35. Hurried - done in a hurry; rushed.
36. Undetected - not detected or discovered.
37. Clouded - make or become less clear or transparent.

5. MESSAGE

The story "The Thief's Story" conveys the message that human values and relations are important in life and it can change a person. True values and kindness wins everyone's heart, even a thief's heart. Even a person's honesty can change an evil person and a person's life could be changed if he meets a mentor who could guide and

9. Why did Mrs. Pumphrey call the doctor ?

Or

Why did Mrs. Pumphrey take Tricki to the doctor?

Ans :

2016, 2012

Tricki was not eating anything for the past few days. He had refused even his favourite dishes and had bouts of vomiting. Moreover, he was spending his time lying on a rug, panting. He was not going for walks. All these symptoms, forced Mrs. Pumphrey to visit the doctor.

10. What makes you know that Mrs. Pumphrey was a rich lady ?

Ans :

2016

Mrs. Pumphrey was a wealthy lady as she had many servants and maids. She also had a pet. She used to feed her pet with lot of dishes, sweets and snacks. Moreover, she had a separate room and wardrobe for her pet. All these things show that she was a rich lady.

11. What was Mrs. Pumphrey's reaction when Dr. Herriot suggested Tricki's hospitalization?

Ans :

2014

Dr. Herriot had made his plan in advance. So when Mrs. Pumphrey reported Tricki's illness, he at once suggested him to be hospitalized for about a fortnight to be kept under observation. The poor lady almost swooned. She was sure he would pine and die if he did not see her every day.

12. Why is Mrs. Pumphrey worried about Tricki?

Ans :

2011

Mrs. Pumphrey has dog named Tricki. It becomes listless and seems to have no energy. It falls ill so, Mrs. Pumphrey gets worried about Tricki. Ironically, she herself is responsible for the miserable condition of the dog.

13. How did lunch become 'a ceremonial occasion for Mr. Herriot and his partners'?

Ans :

2010

Mrs. Pumphrey used to send extra eggs and wine and even brandy to build Tricki up. All these were consumed by Mr. Herriot and his partners. Thus for a fortnight, lunch became 'a ceremonial occasion' for them.

14. How did Tricki become an accepted member of the gang and start enjoying company of other dogs?

Ans :

2008

Tricki was given no food but plenty of water for two days. He began to show some interest in his surroundings. He began to participate in social activities of the other dogs. He ran about with the

dogs, joining in their friendly scrimmages. Soon he became an accepted member of the gang.

15. Why was Tricki an uninteresting object for other dogs at the surgery?

Ans :

2008

At the surgery, the household dogs surged around Dr. Herriot to see Tricki. Tricki looked down at the noisy pack with dull eyes and when put down, lay motionless on the carpet. The other dogs sniffed around for a few seconds and then deciding he was an uninteresting object and ignored him.

16. What was Mrs. Pumphrey's reaction when Tricki showed little enthusiasm for exertion?

Ans :

2008

When Tricki showed little enthusiasm for exertion Mrs. Pumphrey assumed he had no energy and thought he was suffering from malnutrition. She decided to give him some little extras between meals to build him up.

17. Which two suggestions did Mr. Herriot give to Mrs. Pumphrey at the initial stage? Did she follow?

Ans :

2008, 2004

At the initial stage Dr. Herriot told Mrs. Pumphrey to cut down Tricki's food and to give him more exercise or he would become really ill. No, she did not follow his advice.

18. What immediate step did Dr. Herriot take to save Tricki?

Or

"I think I know a cure for you." What was Dr. Herriot's 'cure' for Tricki?

Ans :

2007, 2000

Seeing the miserable condition of Tricki, Dr. Herriot at once decided to keep him away from his mistress Mrs. Pumphrey for a while. So, he suggested that Tricki should be hospitalized for about a fortnight as he had to be kept under observation.

19. How do you know that Tricki had an affluent life?

Ans :

2004

Tricki led an affluent life which included extravagant meals of horlicks, cream cakes, chocolates etc. His beds, cushions, toys, bowls and coats were of premium quality and rather expensive.

20. What were Mrs. Pumphrey's queries when she called to enquire about Tricki in the hospital?

Ans :

2002

Mrs. Pumphrey rang a dozen times for the latest bulletins on Tricki. Her queries were whether

2. Do you think it a significant detail in the story that Anil is a struggling writer ? Does this explain his behaviour in any way ?

Ans :

Anil is a writer. He writes for magazines. But he is a struggling writer. We come to this conclusion as the narrator says that Anil earns by fits and starts. He borrows one week, lends the next week. He keeps worrying about his next cheque. He had become an extravagant. As soon as he gets money, he goes out and spends on his friends. He is also very careless.

3. Have you met anyone like Hari Singh ? Can you think and imagine the circumstances that can turn a fifteen year old boy into a thief ?

Ans :

No, I have not met anyone like Hari Singh. But I can understand that no one is born thief. The circumstances make a person thief. The parents of a child are not careful and they do not give full attention towards the child, certainly the child will grow up into a thief. Besides it, an orphan child has more chances to become a thief. The child does not get proper love and attention and becomes so.

4. Where is the story set ? (You can get clues from the name of the persons and places mentioned in it.) What language or languages are spoken in these places. Do you think the characters in the story spoke to each other in English ?

Ans :

The story is set in 'India'. We come to this conclusion as the names of the characters as Anil and Hari Singh are Indian. Again, the places mentioned in the story are Indian as Lucknow, maidan and bazaar. The currency, rupee also tells us that the story is set in India. In these places Hindi languages is spoken. The characters in the story did not speak English. Rather they used Hindi.

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. Who is the author of the story "The Thief's story"?

(a) James Herriot (b) Ruskin Bond
(c) Robert Arthur (d) Victor Canning

Ans :

(b) Ruskin Bond

2021

2. What is he "a fairly successful hand" at?

(a) wrestling (b) stealing
(c) deceiving (d) working hard

Ans :

(b) stealing

2021

3. What was the boy's age?

(a) 15 (b) 25
(c) 20 (d) none of these

Ans :

(a) 15

2021

4. What was Anil's age?

(a) 15 (b) 25
(c) 20 (d) none of these

Ans :

(b) 25

2021

5. How has the narrator described Anil?

(a) simple (b) kind
(c) easy-going (d) all of these

Ans :

(d) all of these

2020

6. What was Anil doing when the boy met him?

(a) cooking (b) watching a match
(c) playing (d) writing an article

Ans :

(b) watching a match

2020

7. How did the narrator attempt at being friends with Anil?

(a) flattering him
(b) teasing him
(c) introducing himself
(d) none of these

Ans :

(a) flattering him

2015

8. What did the boy ask Anil for?

(a) to give him food (b) to employ him
(c) to give him money (d) to teach him

Ans :

(b) to employ him

2015

9. How often did he change his name?

(a) every day (b) every week
(c) every month (d) every year

Ans :

(c) every month

2014, 2010

10. He changed his name in order to stay ahead of
-----.

(a) police (b) employers
(c) both a and b (d) none of these

Ans :

(c) both a and b

2014

11. What name did he tell Anil?

(a) Anil Singh (b) Hari Lal
(c) Hari Singh (d) Anil Lal

Ans :

(c) Hari Singh

2014

12. What do you mean by the word "grunting"?

(a) make a low inarticulate sound
(b) say something which is clearly audible
(c) shouting
(d) none of the above

Ans :

(a) make a low inarticulate sound

2013

13. How was the meal he cooked first night?

(a) delicious (b) mouth-watering
(c) finger-licking good (d) terrible

Ans :

(d) terrible

2013

14. How did he infer that about his food?

(a) Anil said he liked it
(b) Anil couldn't have enough of it
(c) Anil was licking his fingers
(d) Anil gave it to a stray dog

Ans :

(d) Anil gave it to a stray dog

2013

15. What did Anil promise him to teach?

(a) write his name (b) cook
(c) write full sentences (d) all of these

Ans :

(d) all of these

2013

16. "a queer way to earn money". What is the meaning of the word "queer"?

(a) strange (b) famous
(c) rare (d) illegal

Ans :

(a) strange

2012

17. Who was the most trusting person narrator had ever met ?

(a) Anil (b) publisher
(c) Anil's friends (d) none of these

Ans :

(a) Anil

2012, 2005

18. Who is easier to rob?

(a) a careless man (b) a greedy man
(c) a trusting man (d) Anil

Ans :

(b) a greedy man

2012

19. What takes all the pleasure out of work?

(a) robbing a careless man
(b) robbing a greedy man
(c) when someone doesn't notice they've been robbed
(d) both a and c

Ans :

(d) both a and c

2012

20. How much money did he steal?

(a) 500 Rupees (b) 600 Rupees
(c) 700 Rupees (d) 800 Rupees

Ans :

(b) 600 Rupees

2012

21. How, according to the narrator, would Anil feel upon finding out?

(a) angry (b) fear
(c) acceptance (d) sad

Ans :

(d) sad

2011

22. Why does Hari return the money?

(a) he wanted to learn to write
(b) he was worried about how Anil would feel
(c) he felt bad
(d) none of the above

Ans :

(a) he wanted to learn to write

2011

23. What do you mean by the word "unlined"?

(a) in a line
(b) not in a line
(c) showing no sign of worry or anxiety
(d) none of the above

Ans :

(b) not in a line

2010

24. Who does "I" refer to in the story?

(a) Hari (b) Anil
(c) a greedy man (d) none of these

Ans :

(a) Hari

2010

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

25. What promise did Anil make to the thief boy?

- (a) giving him a good job
- (b) giving him good clothes
- (c) teaching him reading and writing
- (d) playing with him

Ans :

2010

- (c) teaching him reading and writing

26. Which of the following traits describes Anil?

- (a) easy-going
- (b) careful
- (c) greedy
- (d) extravagant

Ans :

2010

- (a) easy-going

27. What was the boy's real profession?

- (a) a household servant
- (b) theft
- (c) cheating
- (d) working honestly

Ans :

2009

- (b) theft

28. What did Anil do for a living?

- (a) wrote articles for magazines
- (b) wrestling
- (c) acting
- (d) business

Ans :

2009

- (a) wrote articles for magazines

29. What was the name of the thief boy?

- (a) Anil
- (b) Ajit Singh
- (c) Hari Singh
- (d) Chander

Ans :

2009

- (c) Hari Singh

30. At the beginning of the story the thief met with a fellow named

- (a) Anil
- (b) Ali
- (c) Amit
- (d) Amal

Ans :

2009

- (a) Anil

31. Anil was a _____.

- (a) Wrestler
- (b) Footballer
- (c) Cricketer
- (d) Chess player

Ans :

2008

- (a) Wrestler

32. The house of Anil was over the

- (a) Jamuna sweet shop
- (b) Bhajram sweet shop
- (c) Jamuna Textile
- (d) Sharma Motors

Ans :

2008

- (a) Jamuna sweet shop

33. Anil instructed the thief to sleep on the

- (a) Study
- (b) Balcony
- (c) Dining room
- (d) Drawing room

Ans :

2008

- (b) Balcony

34. Anil put the money

- (a) Inside the cupboard
- (b) Inside the locker
- (c) Under the mattress
- (d) Inside the drawer

Ans :

2007

- (c) Under the mattress

35. There was a little light over Anil's bed because of

- (a) Bedside lamp
- (b) Road light
- (c) Tube light
- (d) Moonlight

Ans :

2007

- (d) Moonlight

36. Hari planned to leave the city by _____ after stealing the money from Anil.

- (a) 10:30 p.m.
- (b) 1'O clock
- (c) 12:30 p.m.
- (d) 1 p.m.

Ans :

2007

- (a) 10:30 p.m.

37. Hari planned to catch _____ while escaping.

- (a) Dhanbad mail
- (b) Delhi mail
- (c) Lucknow Express
- (d) Satabdi Express

Ans :

2007

- (c) Lucknow Express

38. Hari kept all the stolen notes in his

- (a) Hand bag
- (b) Pocket
- (c) Pyjama
- (d) Hand

Ans :

2006

- (c) Pyjama

39. It was the time of _____ when the incident happened.

- (a) Mid December
- (b) January
- (c) Early February
- (d) Mid November

Ans :

2006

- (d) Mid November

40. At the incident night Hari took shelter

- (a) Under the clock tower
- (b) In the tea shop
- (c) At the church
- (d) In the barandah of the house

Ans :

2005

- (a) Under the clock tower.

perhaps also because Hari was not a hardened criminal. He had probably become a thief due to circumstance, not by choice. His innate goodness and natural capacity to distinguish right from wrong stopped him from doing further wrong. These values help others too.

9. Give a character-sketch of Hari Singh.

Ans :

2010

Hari Singh had become an experienced, seasoned and successful thief at the age of fifteen. He stole from his employers and escaped every time. He changed his name occasionally to avoid being caught by the police or his previous employers. He started working for Anil, a writer. He made profit from the daily supplies.

He got many opportunities to rob Anil. However, he did not like to rob a careless fellow who would fail to notice his skill. One day, he made off with Anil's money and reached the station. He did not board the slow-moving train intentionally.

Hari Singh could show false smile on his face to exploit the situation. He was a man of noble conscience. He was a grateful person. He was not a betrayer. He was career-conscious.

10. The chapter shows Hari Singh's journey from a thief to an honest man who value friendship and other human values. Do you think it was Anil's selfless friendship that he Hari to redeem himself? Give reasons in support of your answer.

Ans :

2002

The chapter reveals Hari Singh's transformation from a thief into an honest. It was Anil's selfless friendship that helped Hari to redeem himself. Gradually Hari Singh began to understand human values such as friendship and trust. When he robbed Anil, he felt guilty of having violated the trust that Anil had reposed in him. He could not board the train and missed his chance to get away. Moreover, he valued Anil's feelings towards him as he knew that after discovering the theft, Anil would not be sad for the loss of money, but for loss of trust.

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow :

I went back to the bazaar and sat down in the shelter of the clock tower. The clock showed midnight. I felt for the notes. They were damp from the rain.

Anil's Money. In the morning he would probably have given me two or three rupees to go to the cinema, but now I had it all.

I couldn't cook his meals, run to the bazaar, or learn to write whole sentences any more.

I had forgotten about them in the excitement of the theft. Whole sentences, I knew, could one day bring me more than a few hundred rupees. It was a simple matter to steal- and. sometimes just as simple to be caught.

i. Which of the following is NOT a reason why Hari Singh thinks he would not be able to write whole sentences ?

- (a) Anil would not be there to teach him.
- (b) He had robbed Anil and left.
- (c) He would not go back to Anil to learn.
- (d) He had no money to take admission in school.

ii. Why is it fair to say that Hari Singh's tone, when he says "I couldn't cook his meals, run to the bazaar or learn to write whole sentences any more," is filled with remorse and regret ? Answer in about 40 words.

iii. What do you infer about Hari Singh from this statement ?

'Whole sentences, I knew, could one day bring me more than a few hundred rupees.'

iv. State True or False with reference to the given extract.

The reason Hari Singh was filled with a feeling of guilt was because Anil trusted him

Ans :

2024

i. (d) He had no money to take admission in school.

ii. Anil had complete remit in Hari Singh and even taught him how to cook. When Hari Singh stole money from Anil, his conscience troubled him, realizing he had betrayed Anil's trust.

iii. Hari Singh was confident that by learning to read and write, he could potentially earn more money and cease working as a servant

iv. True.

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

I found myself in the maidan and sat down on a bench. The night was chilly-it was early November-and a light drizzle added to my discomfort. Soon it was raining quite heavily. My shirt and pyjamas stuck to my skin, and a cold wind blew the rain across my face. I went back to the bazaar and sat down in the shelter of the clock tower. The clock showed midnight. I felt for the notes. They were damp from the rain. Anil's money. In the morning

7. Why did Hari Singh think that Anil's job was queer?

Ans :

2019

Hari Singh thought Anil's job was queer because he did not have a fixed source of income. At times he had to borrow; and at times he would lend. He often waited for his cheque. It appeared he wrote for a magazine. As soon as the cheque arrived, he would celebrate by spending it lavishly.

8. Why was it difficult for Hari Singh to rob Anil ?

Or

Why was it not easy for the thief to rob Anil?

Ans :

2016, 2007

It was difficult to rob Anil because he was the most trusting person Hari Singh had ever met. According to Hari Singh, it's easy to rob a greedy man because he can afford to be robbed but it's difficult to rob a careless man because he doesn't even notice that he's been robbed and that takes all the pleasure out of the work.

9. How did Hari Singh realize that Anil knew that his money had been stolen?

Ans :

2016, 2010

The next morning Anil gave him fifty rupees and the note was still damp. He informed that now he would be paid regularly. Hari Singh understood that Anil had known about the theft. Anil told him that he would teach him writing sentences. It means he had been forgiven for his mistake.

10. What did Anil' and Hari agree upon to be the mode of payment ?

Ans :

2015., 2011

When Anil stated his inability to pay Hari, Anil questioned Hari if he could feed Hari. Hari realised that he had misjudged his target and moulded the situation for his benefit. Anil then agreed to feed him if he knew how to cook.

11. Why did Hari Singh feel bad after stealing the money?

Ans :

2015

Anil had trusted Hari Singh completely and also taught him how to cook. Anil also started teaching him how to read and write. Thus, when Hari stole money from Anil, his conscience pricked him as he had broken Anil's trust.

12. What did Hari Singh do with the money he stole from Anil?

Ans :

2015, 2013, 2009

Hari Singh at once left Anil's room and rushed to the railway station to catch train. But he realised his mistake and came back to Anil's room late at night. He put the money under the mattress.

13. Why did Hari Singh decide to come back to Anil ?

Ans :

2013, 2011

Hari Singh decided to come back to Anil because he felt that when Anil would come to know about the theft, he would feel sad, not for the loss of money but for the loss of trust. He did not want to lose his trust.

14. How did Hari Singh know that Anil had forgiven him?

Ans :

2011, 2009

It seems Anil knew about theft but neither his lips nor his eyes showed anything. He gave him fifty rupees and told him that now he would be paid regularly. He informed him that he would teach him writing sentences. It shows that Anil had forgiven him.

15. How, according to Hari Singh, would the greedy man, the rich man and the poor man react when they had lost their goods?

Ans :

2008

Hari Singh had made a study of men's faces when they had lost their goods. According to the thief on losing their goods- a greedy man's face would show fear, the rich man's face would show anger and the poor man's face would show acceptance.

16. Did Hari like working for Anil ? Give reasons in support of your answer.

Ans :

2008

Yes, Hari liked working for Anil. He was happy to carry on the chores for him and was grateful for the education he was receiving. He used to make profit of about a rupee a day as well, which was a decent amount besides being fed.

17. How did Hari Singh justify himself his intentions of stealing Anil's money?

Ans :

2005

Hari Singh thought that he had been out of practice for a fairly long time period. If he didn't take the money, Anil would squander it on his friends and celebration. He further justified his intention arguing that Anil did not even pay him.

18. At the station, why did the thief lose his chance to get away with the money?

Ans :

2004

When the thief reached the railway station, the 'Lucknow Express' was just moving out. He would have been able to jump into one of its carriages but for some inexplicable reason he hesitated to board the train and lost his chance to get away.

- (a) Anil didn't have any malicious intent.
 - (b) Anil was just being funny and easy.
 - (c) Both were trying to make pleasant conversation.
 - (d) Both needed each other.
- iii. Hari found Anil 'simple enough for my purpose'. What does he mean by this? Elaborate in about 40 words, with reference to the extract.
- iv. Which phrase would correctly substitute 'easy-going', in the given sentence from in the extract?
- He was about 25-a tall, lean fellow-and he looked easy-going, kind and simple enough for my purpose.

Ans : 2014

- i. Hari, who was now fifteen, became a thief at a very young age.
- ii. False
- iii. He means that Anil was too gullible and trusting for his own good. Hari describes him as 'kind and simple enough' for his purpose which was to rob him after winning his confidence with sweet talk.
- iv. laid-back

5. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

Later, he patted me on the head and said never mind, he'd teach me to cook.

He also taught me to write my name and said he would soon teach me to write whole sentences and to add numbers. I was grateful. I knew that once I could write like an educated man there would be no limit to what I could achieve.

- i. What did Hari do to earn his living?
- ii. What could he do as an educated man?
- iii. Why was the narrator patted on his head?
- iv. State true or false.

None of the terms (a)-(d) can be applied to the statement -The narrator was feeling happy at the prospect of being educated.

- (a) A hypothesis - a proposed explanation for a phenomenon
- (b) An assumption - something that is taken for granted or assumed to be true
- (c) A hyperbole - exaggerated statements or claims not meant to be taken literally
- (d) A premise - a proposition that forms the basis of an argument

Ans :

2013

- i. Had used to steal for a living.
- ii. As an educated man, Hari could achieve anything and everything respectfully.
- iii. The narrator had cooked a meal last night that was not up to the mark. His master, Anil, gave the meal to a stray dog and asked the narrator to leave his place. The narrator was puffed on his head as a mark of encouragement from his master and to forget what happened earlier.
- iv. False

6. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

When the train had gone, I found myself standing alone on the deserted platform. I had no idea where to spend the night. I had no friends, believing that friends were more trouble than help.

- i. Why was the speaker standing alone on the platform?
- ii. The speaker did not catch the train deliberately while he could catch it easily. Why?
- iii. Why did the speaker not have any friends?
- iv. State true or false.

None of the terms (a)-(d) can be applied to the statement -The narrator has bought a ticket for the train journey.

- (a) A hypothesis - a proposed explanation for a phenomenon
- (b) An assumption - something that is taken for granted or assumed to be true
- (c) A hyperbole - exaggerated statements or claims not meant to be taken literally
- (d) A premise - a proposition that forms the basis of an argument

Ans :

2011

- i. The speaker was standing alone on the platform because the train had left.
- ii. The speaker did not catch the train deliberately while he could catch it easily because his inner conscience held him back. Further, he didn't want to lose the chance of learning.
- iii. The narrator did not have any friends. He refrained from making friends as he thought that the trouble caused by friends outweighed the benefits of having friends.
- iv. True



life story, recognizing the underlying factors influencing his actions.

4. A character arc is the transformation or development of a character throughout a story and refers to the changes a character undergoes as a result of their experiences, challenges, and interactions with other characters.

In the light of the above information, trace the character arc of the thief in Ruskin Bond's 'The Thief's Story', in about 120 words.

Ans :

2023

The thief's character arc in the story shows a transformation from a career criminal to a person who learns to trust and work hard for a living.

At the beginning of the story, Hari Singh is portrayed as an experienced criminal who is focused on staying ahead of the law. He is initially attracted to Anil because he believes he can exploit the young man's trusting nature. As the story progresses, he begins to develop a friendship with Anil, who teaches him how to cook, write, and read. This transformation of the thief's character reaches a climax when he is presented with an opportunity to steal money from Anil but instead chooses to resist the temptation and considers the consequences of his actions. This is a significant change from the beginning of the story, when the thief was only interested in self-gain.

5. Based on the given context, write a diary entry, as the narrator, on what you experienced and the possible reason for it. I should have been able to jump into one of the carriages, but I hesitated - for some reason, I can't explain - and I lost the chance to get away.

Ans :

2021, 2012

Diary Entry

8.00 pm, 7 August 2020

Dear Diary,

I should have been able to jump into one of the carriages but I hesitated for some reason I can't explain and I lost the chance to get away. Earlier I was so quick to run away in similar situations. But this time I could not get it because Anil's trust and simplicity shackled my legs and brain. I could not breach his trust. He had entrusted the keys of his home to me to come and go whenever I wished. I imagined that he would feel bad in the morning not for the loss of money but for the loss of trust. If I had run away that evening I would have not forgiven myself for my whole life. These considerations turned me back to Anil with the money. I hope I took the right decision.

6. Anil plays a major role in the transformation of Hari Singh. Comment on the statement by highlighting the values possessed by Anil which touched Hari's heart and made him return to his honest ways fearings his livelihood. Write in about 100-120 words.

Ans :

2016

Anil was a struggling writer who befriended Hari Singh. Hari Singh was an experienced, 15 year old thief. He found Anil an easy target to steal. Anil offered him to stay with him and to teach how to read and write. Gradually, Anil develops trust in Hari Singh. But Hari Singh was waiting for the right opportunity to do what he was best at. After stealing money, he tried to go away forever but some inner voice stopped him from doing so. He returned to Anil because he wanted to live a life of respect. Anil did not show that he knew the incident and accepted Hari with open hands. Thus, a well intentioned person, Anil changed Hari Singh and brought him on right path. The story shows that trust and spirit to forgive someone can bring big changes in someone's life.

7. What does the thief say about the reactions of the people whom he had robbed? What did he think would be Anil's reaction?

Ans :

2016, 2012

Standing at the platform the thief reflected upon his career. In his short career as a thief, he had robbed many types of people. He had made a study of their faces when they had lost their goods. He remembered their reactions. The greedy man showed fear; the rich man showed anger; the poor man showed acceptance. He had never seen a man so trusting as Anil. He knew that Anil's face, when he discovered the theft, would show only a touch of sadness. Not for the loss of money, but for the loss of trust.

8. Hari Singh believed that it was difficult to rob a man like Anil. Do you think that he really appreciated kind people ? Why do you think he found it difficult to cheat a man like Anil ? Discuss the values that stop a person from doing something wrong.

Ans :

2011, 2001

Hari did appreciate and kind people as is evident from the story. In the descriptions that he gives about various people, Anil stands apart. Perhaps it was the first time that anyone had done so much for Hari.

Later, as he was running away after robbing Anil, his conscience kept pricking him. He was unable to betray the trust of the kind Anil. It was

41. Anil gave Rs _____ to Hari from the stolen money.

(a) 100 (b) 50
(c) 20 (d) 150

Ans : 2005
(b) 50

42. 'I hadn't had much luck of late' means that the boy hadn't

(a) ever conned people successfully.
(b) been successful in duping people lately.
(c) understood the consequences of thievery till date.
(d) considered the role of fate in deceiving others.

Ans : 2004
(b) been successful in duping people lately.

43. The thief boy was grateful to Anil for:

(a) giving him a job
(b) giving him money
(c) watching wrestling match with him
(d) talking with him

Ans : 2004
(a) giving him a job

44. What did Anil do with the money when he received a cheque?

(a) deposited it in his account
(b) bought household things
(c) went out to celebrate
(d) paid salary to the boy

Ans : 2003
(c) went out to celebrate

45. What did Had Singh want from Anil?

(a) help (b) shelter
(c) money (d) work

Ans : 2003
(d) work

2. What was the thought behind using appealing smiles frequently on Anil?

Ans : 2021
One can attract others through the right gestures and facial expressions. The narrator wanted to appear honest and trustable in front of Anil, hence, he used appealing smiles frequently on him to win over his trust.

3. How do you think the narrator made a profit of about a rupee a day?

Ans : 2021
He might have charged Anil a higher price of vegetables and groceries than he actually paid. This way he managed to save some money himself.

4. Why do you think the narrator used to feel that 'friends were more trouble than help'?

What could have led him to believe this?

Ans : 2021
He was a robber and a conman and did not want to share his secrets and whereabouts with anyone. In his profession, even minor dishonesty might take him behind the bars. Moreover, he used to take a new name every month to hide from the police and his previous employers.

5. At the end of the story, we realise that Anil knew about the incident of the previous night, yet he chose to overlook such a breach of trust. Explain.

Ans : 2021
Anil chose to overlook such a breach of trust because he wanted Hari Singh to get an education and live a respectable life. He knew that handing him over to the police would only spoil him. His coming back proved that he had realised his mistake. That's why Anil had given him a chance to improve his lifestyle.

6. Hari Singh says- "He knew it but neither his lips nor his eyes showed anything."

Anil successfully addressed the situation by not addressing it at all. Elaborate based on your reading of The Thief's Story.

Ans : 2020

- Despite knowing that the money had been taken (dampness of notes) Anil chose to remain quiet about the matter
- Pretended that all was normal – realised that Hari Singh's honesty had prevailed over his temptation
- Wanted to reward him/encourage him
- Discussing the theft would have been counterproductive.

Short Answer Type Questions

1. Why does Anil not hand over Hari Singh to the police?

Ans : 2023
Anil didn't hand over Hari to the police because if Anil had done it, Hari would have never reformed. He would have gone back to his old ways of cheating and stealing from people, which Anil didn't want. Thus, by doing so, he gave Hari another chance to reform.

he would probably have given me two or three rupees to go to the cinema, but now I had it all.

i. State TRUE or FALSE.

None of the terms (a)-(d) below, can be applied to the sentence - Hari came to the maidan from the railway station.

- (a) A hypothesis - a proposed explanation for a phenomenon
- (b) An assumption - something that is taken for granted or assumed to be true without proof
- (c) A premise - a proposition that forms the basis of an argument
- (d) A theory - a well-substantiated explanation for a natural phenomenon

ii. How is Hari feeling in the given extract?

iii. State any one point for the following question: What was Hari Singh thinking while sitting in the shelter of clock tower?

iv. What study was done by Hari Singh? Answer in about 40 words.

Ans :

2020

- i. True
- ii. Hari is feeling very doubtful for his action of stealing from Anil.
- iii. I should go back to Anil for the sake of learning to read and write.
- iv. Hari Singh had made a study of men's faces when they had lost their goods. As per his observation, the greedy man showed fear; the rich man showed anger; and the poor man showed acceptance.

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

I think he knew I made a little money this way but he did not seem to mind. Anil made money by fits and starts. He would borrow one week, lend the next. He kept worrying about his next cheque, but as soon as it arrived, he would go out and celebrate. It seems he wrote for magazines-a queer way to make a living!

- i. Why did 'I' feel that uniting for magazines was a queer way to make a living? Answer in about 40 words.
- ii. State TRUE or FALSE
None of the terms (a)-(d) can be applied to the statement — I think he knew I made a little money this way but he did not seem to mind.

- (a) A hypothesis - a proposed explanation for a phenomenon
- (b) An assumption - something that is taken for granted or assumed to be true
- (c) A hyperbole - exaggerated statements or claims not meant to be taken literally
- (d) A premise - a proposition that forms the basis of an argument

iii. The information in the extract suggests that Anil could be a ____.

iv. What did the narrator mean by 'I made a little money this way'?

Ans :

2018, 2016

- i. 'I' (Hari Singh) was not an educated person, so he could not understand what Anil wrote. He was surprised to know that writing for magazines could be a profession and that people paid Anil for writing in magazines.
- ii. False
- iii. freelancer
- iv. The narrator meant that he used to earn money by keeping the change left from buying daily's supplies.

4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

I was still a thief when I met Anil. And though only 15, I was an experienced and fairly successful hand. Anil was watching a wrestling match when I approached him. He was about 25-a tall, lean fellow-and he looked easy-going, kind and simple enough for my purpose. I hadn't had much luck of late and thought I might be able to get into the young man's confidence.

"You look a bit of a wrestler yourself," I said.

A little flattery helps in making friends.

"So do you," he replied, which put me off for a moment because at that time I was rather thin.

- i. State any one inference about Hari from the given context.
"I was an experienced and fairly successful hand."
- ii. State TRUE or FALSE
None of the terms (a)-(d) given below, can be applied to the following lines.
"You look a bit of a wrestler yourself," I said. A little flattery helps in making friends. "So do you," he replied, which put me off for a moment because at that time I was rather thin.

19. Had Anil really forgiven Hari Singh ? Support your answer with evidence.

Ans :

2003

Anil did not make much money, so the amount stolen by Hari must have been very important. The situation must have made him very angry. But when he found out that Hari had made an attempt to change his habits, Anil forgave him. He thought that if Hari was given a chance, it will help transform him. So, he forgave him and gave him an opportunity improve himself. He even gave him Rupees 50 and promised to pay him regularly from then on.

20. Why did Anil decide to pay Hari Singh regularly?

Ans :

2002

Anil handed Han Singh fifty-rupee note as payment for his services. He went on to that since he had started making money, he would pay Hari regularly. However, Anil knew about Han and did not want him to be tempted again for want of money.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. Imagine that Hari Singh from 'The Thief's Story' by Ruskin Bond, writes a diary entry, exploring the theme of human values and relations that are essential in life and can transform a person in the context of his own experience. Write this diary entry as Hari Singh.

Ans :

2024

Today has been a roller coaster of emotions for me. Meeting Mr. Anil changed my life. He didn't see me as just another street kid; he saw potential in me and taught me the importance of trust, kindness, and honesty. He gave me a chance to learn to read and write, opening up a whole new world for me.

But tonight, I made a huge mistake. I stole money from Mr. Anil, thinking only of the immediate gain. However, sitting here in the cold, I realize how wrong I was. Money isn't everything. It's the human connections and trust that truly matter.

I've decided to go back to Mr. Anil tomorrow, return the money, and apologize. I'm scared, but I hope he can forgive me and give me another chance. I've learned a valuable lesson about the true value of relationships and honesty. This diary entry is a promise to myself to be a better person, to value what matters, and to make Mr. Anil proud. Tomorrow is a new beginning, and I'm ready to face it with everything I've learned.

2. Hari Singh says "He knew it but neither his lips nor his eyes showed anything." Anil successfully addressed the situation by not addressing it all. Elaborate based on your reading of 'The Thief a Story.

Ans :

2024

Yes, it is absolutely true that anil addressed the situation but he behaved like he had not addressed anything. It was not only because of his kind heart. There were many things that made him to do that. Anil had a great trust on Hari Singh. He made Hari his selfless friend. Hari Singh took the money but after that he didn't escaped. This is because he felt anil's trust, love and compassion towards him. He didn't wanted to break the trust, so he returned. As he understood his mistake so anil showed the similar behaviour . Anil also felt that if he would address him as a thief and send him to jail then there could be a greater possibility that the small thief would be converted into a criminal after coming out. so not to destroy Hari Singh future was one of the thought that made anil to the act in a simple manner. Hari Singh also required studies. Anil always taught Hari due to which his education level was also increasing. so Anil believed that if he would continue his teaching then there could be the possibility that Hari Singh would change his mood and passion.

3. Examine how Anil's identity as a writer could have contributed to his understanding of Hari Singh.

Ans :

2023

Anil's identity as a writer plays a significant role in the narrative and contributes to his understanding of Hari Singh in several ways. Firstly, being a writer allows Anil to possess a heightened sense of observation and empathy. Writers often possess a keen understanding of human behaviour, enabling them to read between the lines and determine shades in people's actions and expressions. This skill becomes crucial in Anil's interaction with Hari Singh, as he could perceive more than what meets the eye. Additionally, Anil's profession as a writer might have made him more open-minded and receptive to diverse experiences and personalities. Writers often explore a wide range of characters in their work, fostering a broader understanding of human nature. This openness could have enabled Anil to approach Hari Singh with empathy and without immediate judgment. Lastly, Anil's familiarity with constructing narratives may have enabled him to appreciate the complexity of Hari Singh's

CHAPTER 3

THE MIDNIGHT VISITOR

1. INTRODUCTION

‘The story The Midnight Visitor’ by Robert Arthur depicts how two secret agents, Ausable and Max, try to outsmart each other to gain access to some important documents. Meanwhile, this interaction is being looked upon by Fowler, a writer, who had at first thought that Ausable was someone who defied the stereotype of secret agents he had seen in movies or read in books, and lead a boring life.

2. CHARACTERS

Ausable

He is a different kind of secret agent. Generally, secret agents that are described in detective books and shown in films, are very smart and gun-friendly. Wine and dark-eyed beauties are associated with them. However, Ausable doesn't present such a romantic picture. He is very fat and sloppy. Physically, he may be fat but mentally he is very agile and quick-witted. He knows all the tricks of his trade. He is very quick to react and can cook up stories that may fit in all kinds of situations. He convinces even the crafty Max that there is a balcony below the window of his room.

Max

Max is a secret agent and a rival and enemy of Ausable. He is slender, a little less than tall. He appears crafty and has a countenance of a fox. There is nothing especially menacing about him except his pistol. He enters Ausable's room to take away a very important paper concerning some new missiles.

Fowler

Fowler is a young and romantic writer. He wants to write a book on detectives. Fowler forms a very romantic and grand picture of a secret agent in

his mind. He finds Ausable not cracking pistols or surrounded by dark-eyed beauties like James Bond. He feels let down after meeting Ausable.

3. SUMMARY

Ausable, A Secret Agent

Ausable was a secret agent in an organisation. He was a fat man with a strange accent. He was an American and could speak German and French fluently. He lived in a small room on the top floor of a French hotel in Paris.

Fowler's Visit

Fowler was a young and romantic writer. One day, he visited Ausable in the hope of finding some unusual happenings there. He was also a spy and dealt in espionage and danger. However, he felt disappointed at Ausable's sight.

A Telephone Call

Ausable and Fowler spent the evening in a French music hall. Fowler was feeling bored. Ausable informed him that he would soon receive an important paper. The paper might affect the course of history. It had also made many men and women risk their lives. He had got a telephone call making an appointment in his room.

Max's Presence

Ausable switched on the light after closing the door. They saw a man with a pistol standing half way across the room. Fowler was thrilled. Ausable was surprised to see Max (another secret agent belonging to another agent's organisation) in his room. On being asked, Max informed him that he had come there at the odd hour to take from him the prospective report about some new missiles.

Handling the Situation

Ausable sat in an armchair in a serious and angry mood. He started saying that it was the second time in a month that somebody had got

however, had concocted a very convincing story, and knew that what awaited him was a drop from the sixth floor. Hence, he was confident that Max would never return.

8. How and why did Max come inside Ausable's room ?

Ans : 2016
Max had come into the room using a pass key. He had come to get the secret report about some new missiles which, he was sure, was with Ausable.

9. How did Ausable kill Max without using a weapon?

Ans : 2016
Ausable was an intelligent spy. When he found Max waiting for him in his room, he made a story of a balcony under his window. He convinced Max about the balcony. And thus, when someone knocked at the door, Max fearing it to be the police, jumped out of the window and died.

10. Why was Ausable angry with the hotel's management?

Ans : 2016, 2012, 2004
Ausable pretended to be angry with the hotel's management to misguide Max. He said that he had complained to the hotel management to block off the balcony extended under the window of his room. They did not act upon and this was the second time in a month an intruder entered his room.

11. Why did Fowler want to meet Ausable? Why was he disillusioned?

Ans : 2013, 2008, 2000
Fowler was a very young and romantic writer. He wanted to meet Ausable, the secret agent to learn how Ausable tackled with some exciting events. He was disillusioned because he thought Ausable was an unfit secret agent on account of his fat body and American accent.

12. Who was in Ausable's room? Why had he come there?

Ans : 2010, 2007, 2004
It was Max who was in Ausable's room. He was another secret agent. He wanted to grab the important report on a new missile which was supposed to be delivered to Ausable that night.

13. How did Ausable manage to make Max believe that there was a balcony attached to his room?

Ans : 2009
Ausable made up a story very beautifully. He showed disappointment that in spite of his

complaint to block off the balcony attached to his room, no action had been taken. He said that it was the second chance in a month that an intruder had entered his room through balcony.

14. What role did the non-existent balcony play in the story "The Midnight Visitor"?

Ans : 2009
The non-existent balcony plays a very important role in the story. It is on this balcony that Max jumps to save himself from being caught by the police but instead ends up being a dead man.

15. What was someone expected to bring to Ausable's room?

Ans : 2007 (DB), 2007 (OD)
Ausable was expecting a very important paper to be delivered to him that night. He told Fowler that many men and women have endangered their lives to obtain that paper. The paper might well affect the course of history someday soon.

16. What did Ausable tell Max about the balcony of his hotel room ?

Ans : 2004
Ausable told Max that another person before him had also entered his room through the balcony sometime back. Ausable said that it was not the balcony of his room but the balcony of the next apartment, that extended under his window now. Because his apartment and the next apartment used to be one unit once.

17. How was Max outwitted by Ausable in the end of the story 'The Midnight Visitor' ?

Ans : 2004
Ausable made Max believe that there was a balcony outside the window of his hotel room, when there was none. Ausable also made Max believe that the policemen were knocking at the door. Therefore, Max dropped out to the balcony to avoid the police but died due to the fall, six storeys below.

18. Why did Fowler come to meet Ausable? Was he able to achieve his target?

Ans : 2001
Fowler was a young and romantic writer. He had come to see Ausable to know about the life of a secret agent. Fowler was fascinated by them and thought of them as mysterious and romantic. He was not able to achieve his target as Ausable was a boring man. His physical appearance didn't match with that of a normal detective.

2. How does Ausable say he got in ?

Ans :

Ausable says that he got in through the balcony of the room.

Think About It

1. "Ausable did not fit any description of a secret agent Fowler had ever read" What do secret agents in books and films look like, in your opinion ? Discuss in groups or in class some stories or movies featuring spies, detective and secret agents, and compare their appearance with that of Ausable in this story. (You may mention characters from fiction in languages other than English. In English fiction you may have come across Sherlock Holmes or Hercule Poirot, or Miss Marple. Have you watched any movies featuring James Bond?)

Ans :

Fowler, the young and romantic writer got disillusioned and disappointed when he failed to find something unusual. Ausable did not fit the description of a secret agent. Ausable was fat, very fat. He spoke French and German passably. Fowler had imagined to see a mysterious figure. The setting in which Fowler met Ausable also disappointed him.

In books and films the secret agents are some mysterious character. They are the members of C.B.I. or C.I.D. Interpol, an international organisation has one of the best detectives. We would find them mostly to be very active and smart unlike Ausable. Sherlock Holmes one of the best detectives in fiction leaves the readers shocked.

2. How does Ausable manage to make Max believe that there is a balcony attached to his room ? Look back at his detailed description of it. What makes it a convincing story?

Ans :

Ausable was a clever secret agent. When he entered his room, he found another person from other organisation in his room. Ausable did not lose his calm. He made up a false story. He said that it was the second time, someone had entered his room through the balcony under the window. Max took the story to be true.

It becomes a convincing story due to the simplicity and ease with which Ausable behaves. He does not even panic on finding pistol in hand of Max. If Ausable had acted smartly, Max would not have believed him. The story might have turned into a different one.

3. Looking back at the story, when do you think Ausable thought up his plan for getting rid of Max ? Do you think he had worked out his plan in detail right from the beginning ? Or did he make up a plan taking advantage of events as they happened ?

Ans :

Ausable didn't have the slightest idea that there would be someone in his room. When he entered the room, he blinked his eyes a few times. He got a shock to find Max in his room. Ausable was not handsome, attractive and smart. But being a good spy he did not panic. With his intelligence and presence of mind he was able to find the solution. He collected the facts and planned very fast. He convinced Max that there was a balcony outside the window. He also told that there was police knocking at the door though he knew that it was the waiter knocking. He gave Max no time to think. He did not use strength but mind to overcome the danger.

So, it is true to say that nothing was planned. It was by taking the advantage of the situation things were worked out.

Talk About It

1. In this story, Ausable shows great 'presence of mind,' or the ability to think quickly, and act calmly and wisely, in a situation of danger and surprise. Give examples from your own experience, or narrate a story, which shows someone's presence of mind.

Ans :

Just like Ausable showed great 'presence of mind' or the ability to think quickly and act calmly and wisely in a situation of danger and surprise, we all must stick to our senses and wits and behave in a composed yet clever manner in times of crisis. I too remember having behaved in such a way some months back. While playing in the park one day, one of my friends fell from the swing and was hit hard on his head. He fainted and his head started bleeding. We were five friends playing in the park and there was nobody around us. Everybody was scared and started crying. I sent one of them to that boy's place to call his parents and rushed to fetch my bag which had a water bottle in it. I sprinkled some water on my friend's face after which he regained consciousness. By this time, his parents came and they thanked me for acting wisely in such a situation and took him to the doctor timely. My parents were also very impressed with me.

21. Whose knocking did Ausable claim it to be ?

- (a) police (b) waiter
(c) Max (d) none of these

Ans :

- (a) police

2011

22. Who was actually knocking on the door?

- (a) police (b) waiter
(c) Max (d) none of these

Ans :

- (b) waiter

2010

23. Who jumped off the window believing there was a balcony?

- (a) Max (b) Police
(c) Ausable (d) Fowler

Ans :

- (a) Max

2010, 2004

24. How would you describe Ausable?

- (a) witty (b) lazy
(c) selfish (d) all of these

Ans :

- (a) witty

2010

25. How did Ausable made Max believe there was a balcony?

- (a) he made him see it
(b) with detailed description
(c) there was actually a balcony
(d) none of the above

Ans :

- (b) with detailed description

2010

26. How did Fowler feel at the end of the story?

- (a) disappointed (b) thrilled
(c) sad (d) unhappy

Ans :

- (b) thrilled

2009

27. Who fell down from the top floor of the hotel?

- (a) Fowler (b) Max
(c) Ausable (d) Waiter

Ans :

- (b) Max

2008

28. What story Ausable cocked up to Max?

- (a) about the report (b) about a balcony
(c) about his fatness (d) about Fowler

Ans :

- (b) about a balcony

2008

29. Why did Max enter Ausable's room?

- (a) to meet Ausable
(b) to snatch an important report
(c) to give information to Ausable
(d) to spend the night

Ans :

- (b) to snatch an important report

2007

30. Max entered Ausable's room through the _____

- (a) balcony (b) main door
(c) back door (d) roof

Ans :

- (b) main door

2007

31. Who was Max?

- (a) the manager of the hotel
(b) another secret agent
(c) Ausable's friend
(d) Fowler's friend

Ans :

- (b) another secret agent

2007

32. Who knocked at Ausable's door?

- (a) a policeman (b) Max
(c) the waiter (d) Fowler

Ans :

- (c) the waiter

2006

33. Who came to meet Ausable?

- (a) Ausable's father (b) Policeman
(c) Fowler (d) Max

Ans :

- (c) Fowler

2006

34. Ausable was brought to Paris twenty years ago from:

- (a) London (b) Berlin
(c) Kathmandu (d) Boston

Ans :

- (d) Boston

2005

35. Where was Ausable's room situated in the hotel?

- (a) on the ground floor
(b) on the sixth and top floor
(c) on the first and third floor
(d) on the fourth floor

Ans :

- (b) on the sixth and top floor

2005

36. What was Ausable expecting?

- (a) An important magazine
(b) An important paper

Ans :

2020

(a) making a sound when you can't breathe easily

5. Where was Ausable staying?

- (a) Fowler's home (b) French hotel
(c) Max's home (d) French Inn

Ans :

2020, 2007

(b) French hotel

6. Which floor was he staying at?

- (a) ground floor (b) first floor
(c) second floor (d) top floor

Ans :

2020

(d) top floor

7. What language did Ausable speak?

- (a) German (b) French
(c) Both (a) and (b) (d) None of these

Ans :

2015

(c) Both (a) and (b)

8. Where did he come from?

- (a) Paris (b) Germany
(c) Boston (d) None of these

Ans :

2015

(c) Boston

9. When did he move to Paris?

- (a) 5 years ago (b) 10 years ago
(c) 20 years ago (d) 25 years ago

Ans :

2015

(c) 20 years ago

10. "he had never lost this _____ accent".

- (a) American (b) French
(c) British (d) None of these

Ans :

2014

(a) American

11. What is the meaning of the word "espionage"?

- (a) spying (b) writing
(c) hunt (d) None of these

Ans :

2014

(a) spying

12. Who is Fowler?

- (a) secret agent (b) personal investigator
(c) spy (d) writer

Ans :

2013

(d) writer

13. How did Fowler feel after meeting Ausable?

- (a) excited (b) overwhelmed
(c) disappointed (d) None of these

Ans :

2013

(c) disappointed

14. What was Fowler's "first thrill of the day"?

- (a) meeting Ausable
(b) sight of a man with automatic pistol
(c) seeing a very important paper
(d) none of the above

Ans :

2013

(b) sight of a man with automatic pistol

15. What is different about Ausable ?

- (a) doesn't look like an agent
(b) doesn't get messages slipped by dark-eyed beauties
(c) gets only a phone call for appointments in his room
(d) all of the above

Ans :

2013

(d) all of the above

16. What is the meaning of the word "slender"?

- (a) weak (b) slim
(c) fat (d) none of these

Ans :

2012

(b) slim

17. How, according to Ausable did Max enter?

- (a) a passkey (b) balcony
(c) window (d) none of these

Ans :

2012, 2010

(b) balcony

18. Where did Max actually enter from?

- (a) door (b) balcony
(c) window (d) none of these

Ans :

2011

(a) door

19. Ausable was going to raise the issue of the balcony with _____.

- (a) government (b) management
(c) Max (d) Fowler

Ans :

2011

(b) management

20. What did Max have in his hand ?

- (a) a knife (b) an important report
(c) a pistol (d) all of these

Ans :

2011

(c) a pistol

into his room through a balcony. Max had no knowledge about the balcony. He reported that he had a passkey. Ausable explained that the balcony belonged to the next apartment which used to be the living room. The balcony extended under his window. The management had still not blocked it off and intruders could get on it from the apartment.

Max's Warning

Max asked Fowler to sit down, rather than stand stiffly for half an hour till the report arrived. Ausable was at a loss to find how Max had learnt about the incoming report.

Knock At the Door

Just then, there was a knock at the door. Fowler jumped at it. Ausable concocted another story that the police might have come to provide him security for the important paper.

Max's Nervousness

Ausable told Max that the police would enter the room any way and shoot if he did not open the door. Max got unnerved.

Max's End

Max got infuriated and started backing swiftly towards the window. He opened the window with one hand behind. He wanted to escape through the balcony. He informed Ausable that he would wait on the balcony. He would shoot and take his chances if Ausable did not send the police away. The knocking became louder. Somebody called Ausable repeatedly. Max dropped to the balcony and screamed loudly.

Fowler's Surprise

A waiter entered the room with a bottle and two glasses set on a tray, the drink ordered by Ausable. Fowler got perplexed. Ausable explained that he was waiting for the waiter and not for the police. Fowler was afraid lest Max should shoot them from the balcony. Ausable assured Fowler that Max would never return.

4. WORD MEANINGS

1. Gloomy - nearly dark
2. Chuckled - laughed quietly
3. Passably - just well enough.
4. Wheezily - with a whistling sound
5. Espionage - spying
6. Envisioned - imagined
7. Sloppy - carelessly dressed

8. Prosaic - routine
9. Chuckled - laughed quietly
10. Wheezed - spoke noisily, spoke breathing noisily and heavily
11. Missiles - weapons directed by remote control or automatically.
12. Accent - way of pronouncing words in a language
13. Slender - gracefully thin
14. Menacing - irritating
15. Grimly - seriously
16. Inflection - change of
17. Moodily - tone sadly
18. Check on - meet
19. Deftly - skillfully
20. Uncorked - removed the top
21. Shrilly - at a high pitch

5. MESSAGE

The story conveys the message that in any situation we should not panic instead we should take a step and face the situation with our presence of mind.

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Read And Find Out - 1

1. How is Ausable different from other secret agents?
Ans : 2016, 2009

Ausable, unlike other secret agents, was very fat with an accent of both French and German. Fowler was expecting a smart and active agent having messages slipped into his hand by a dark beauty. Whereas, Ausable received a telephone call making an appointment in his room.

2. Who is Fowler and what is his first authentic thrill of the day ?

Ans :

Fowler is a writer. His authentic thrill of the day is finding a man with pistol in Ausable's locked room.

Read And Find Out - 2

1. How has Max got in ?

Ans :

Max has a pass key. He has got in through the main door.

(c) An important information

(d) All of these

Ans :

2004

(b) An important paper

37. What did Max carry with him while trying to get the paper from Ausable?

(a) Pistol

(b) Tobacco

(c) Rifle

(d) Knife

Ans :

2004

(a) Pistol

38. What were the qualities of Ausable's fertile brain?

(a) invent and cook up stories

(b) invent and cook up situations that would confuse and unnerve his rivals

(c) work under pressure

(d) Both (a) and (b)

Ans :

2003

(d) Both (a) and (b)

39. What did Ausable not live up to?

(a) to the romantic picture of a secret agent from a book or movie

(b) to his commitment

(c) to his parents' advice

(d) all of these

Ans :

2003

(a) to the romantic picture of a secret agent from a book or movie

40. How was Ausable's physical appearance?

(a) Fat and sloppy

(b) Fair and heightened

(c) Extremely good looking

(d) Tall, dark and handsome

Ans :

2002

(a) Fat and sloppy

Short Answer Type Questions

1. One should never judge a book by its cover. Explain with reference to Ausable and how he outwits Max with his presence of mind.

Ans :

2024

Ausable's character in "The Midnight Visitor" exemplifies the adage "never judge a book by its cover." Despite his unassuming appearance, Ausable proves to be quick-witted and resourceful, outsmarting Max through his cleverness and presence of mind, which contrasts with his initial impression.

2. Who was Henry? What role did he play in Ausable's plans.

Ans :

2024, 2003

Henry was a waiter at the hotel where Ausable was staying in France. He unknowingly helped Ausable in his plan by knocking at Ausable's door at the right moment. His persistent knocking helped Ausable in getting rid of the intruder.

3. Discuss, briefly, the reasons owing to which Fowler was interested in meeting Ausable.

Ans :

2021

Fowler was a writer by profession. He wanted to meet Ausable, a secret agent, to learn about his interesting cases and how he solved them. He might be interested to use the information in creating his stories or drama.

4. Ausable was always one step ahead of everyone. Highlight any two instances from "The Midnight Visitor" when this holds true.

Ans :

2021

In the first instance, Ausable guessed rightly what was going on in Fowler's mind even in their first meeting. Later on, very cleverly he framed a story on the spur of the moment to move Max out of the room by telling him the fake incident of the balcony and the intruder.

5. Henry unintentionally saved Ausable's life. Briefly comment.

Ans :

2021

Henry had come to serve water in the room. But, Ausable took the benefit of his knocking at the door. He warned Max that it was police and he would be caught soon if he did not jump out of the window. In this way, Ausable was saved by Henry, though, intentionally.

6. Ausable displays an acute sense of awareness of his surroundings. Justify with any two instances from the text.

Ans :

2021

Ausable displayed an acute sense of awareness of his surroundings at two incidences. He was fully aware of his hotel room's entrance and exit. He confirmed it already that his room did not have an attached balcony. He had calculated well in advance the time for the waiter's arrival for room service.

7. Why was Ausable confident that Max would never return ?

Ans :

2017

Believing Ausable's story about the balcony to be true, Max stepped out of the window. Ausable,

drink ordered by him. He used his presence of mind and informed Max that it would be the police. Even in the most difficult situation when a man was standing aiming a pistol at him, he did not lose his nerves. He said that he demanded extra police protection and asked them to check on him regularly so nothing went wrong with him. He said that the room was unlocked and the police would not hesitate to shoot Max. Max unwittingly jumped outside the room and got injured. Thus Ausable with his sheer intelligence got through an unimaginable difficult situation.

5. How did Ausable get rid of Max?

Or

How did Ausable fool Max and get rid of him?

Ans :

2013, 2010, 2009, 2007, 2003, 2002

Ausable got rid of Max by using his intelligence, alertness and presence of mind. Max met his end by jumping out of a window, which Ausable said had a balcony outside, but there was no balcony and Max dropped down dead. Max's own foolishness makes him an easy prey to Ausable's clever thinking. When there was a knock on the door, Ausable told Max it was the police who had come to check on him. Max was convinced and in a bid to escape jumped out of the window without thinking.

6. Give a brief character sketch of Fowler ? What are the values reflected in his character ?

Ans :

2010

Fowler is a young romantic writer, who loves reading mysterious stories. He has a fantasy to meet a secret agent or to see mysterious figures in the night, the crack of guns, drugs in wine, etc. He is not much interested in meeting dull people. He gets easily bored and disappointed.

Though he is a writer, he is very timid by heart. He easily loses his cool and gets nervous. The moment he enters Ausable's room and his eyes meet Max with an automatic pistol in his hand, he is thrilled. He is scared, the moment he realises that it is a waiter and not the police who has knocked at the door. He wants to know about the man in the balcony. He has a horrible experience with Ausable tackling risky situations so calmly.

7. How did Ausable get rid of Max ? Would you call the act of Ausable a violent act ? Do you support violence in prevention of crime ?

Ans :

2009

Max was in Ausable's room with a pistol in his hand. When there was a knock at the door Ausable

convinced Max that it was police. He excited him to hide himself on the non-existent balcony. Max, in terror, jumped from the sixth floor and met his end. No, it cannot be called nonviolence. Ausable saved himself but led Max to death. He made him jump from the eighth floor. He concocted the story of a non-existent balcony and convinced him to hide there. He trusted him and jumped to death. Violence should never be supported but in prevention of crime it is inevitable. We cannot tackle the criminals without the use of weapons and violence is inevitable.

8. Suppose you are Fowler. Write a diary entry about your first impression of Ausable after meeting him in a French music hall.

Ans :

2008

Wednesday

May, 20xx

10:50 p.m.

Dear Diary,

Being a young and romantic writer, I have read many books depicting the heroic deeds of secret agents. I have always imagined them to be romantic, mysterious, smart and dashing people.

So, I was thrilled when I got a telephonic appointment with Ausable, a very famous secret agent. He told me to meet him at a French music hall in the evening. I was happy because I was going to meet a renowned mysterious figure. But later, I was disappointed to see an extremely fat man wearing casual clothes. This secret agent spoke French and German passably with a slight American accent. In fact, the more time I spent in his company, the more I got bored and disillusioned. He lived in an ordinary hotel and used an ordinary telephone for the purpose of communication, nothing like the life I had imagined for a secret agent.

I am disillusioned. Waiting for some action.

In disappointment.

Fowler

9. Why was Fowler "disillusioned" and why did Ausable tell him to "take cheer" ?

Ans :

2008

Fowler was a young and romantic writer. He thought that the secret agents were mysterious figures who lived adventurous lives. Therefore, he was very eager and keen to meet Ausable. But he found Ausable to be an extremely fat man who lived in a mediocre French hotel and used an ordinary telephone to communicate with others. After passing a dull evening with Ausable in a French music hall, Fowler got bored and disillusioned.

19. Why did Fowler feel let down when he met Ausable?

Ans :

2000

Fowler felt let down and disappointed to meet Ausable. He had a different picture of a secret agent in his mind. He thought they looked very mysterious and romantic but he found Ausable a very fat and boring man.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. "Despite his unusual appearance, Ausable's presence of mind helped him get rid of Max." Comment with reference to the story 'The Midnight Visitor'.

Ans :

2024

In "The Midnight Visitor," Ausable, despite not fitting the stereotypical image of a cunning and physically agile secret agent due to his unusual appearance, showcases his exceptional presence of mind and quick thinking. When confronted by Max, an adversary, in his hotel room, Ausable cleverly invents a story about a non-existent balcony and an imaginary police arrival. His ingenious bluff about the hotel room being under surveillance with the police due to arrive through a fictional balcony convinces Max. This mental agility and the ability to think on his feet enable Ausable to outwit Max, leading to Max's panicked attempt to escape through the supposed balcony, which results in his downfall. Ausable's sharp mind, therefore, compensates for his physical appearance, proving that intellect and psychological tactics can be far more effective in espionage than mere physical prowess.

2. Ausable wins over a very critical situation by his sheer presence of mind without using any physical force. Justify giving examples from the text.

Or

Ausable has the ability to think quickly, act calmly and wisely in a situation of danger and surprise. Do you agree? Support your answer from the story that you have read.

Or

We need intelligence more than physical strength in a difficult situation. How is it proved true in the story, "The Midnight Visitor"?

Ans :

2017, 2014, 2013, 2011, 2010, 2009

Ausable wins over a very critical situation by his sheer presence of mind without using any physical force. When Ausable entered the hotel room he found Max Standing with a pistol aimed at him.

Ausable showed no nervousness and sat in an armchair. He used his presence of mind and made up a story at once. He made Max believe that there was a balcony attached to his room. When there was a knock at door, Ausable took no time to announce that it was police to provide him extra protection as he was expecting an important paper. Max feared to be caught and to save his life he jumped through the window and met his end.

Ausable's ability to think quickly, act calmly and wisely in a situation of danger and surprise gets him through unharmed.

3. Ausable knew Fowler was very disappointed on seeing him. What did Ausable say to him and how did he console him?

Or

What impression do you form of Ausable as a secret agent after reading story "The Midnight Visitor"?

Or

Ausable did not fit any description of a secret agent Fowler had ever read." Elaborate, Justify from text?

Ans :

2016, 2009, 2004, 2004

Ausable knew that Fowler was pretty disappointed on seeing him. Fowler had been told that he was to meet a secret agent, a spy, dealing in espionage and danger. He had wished to meet Ausable because Fowler was a young and romantic writer who imagined a secret agent to be associated with mysterious figures in the night, the crack of pistols and drugs in the wine. Instead, Fowler had to spend a dull evening in a French music hall with a sloppy fat man who, instead of having messages slipped into his hand by dark-eyed beauties, got only an ordinary telephone call making an appointment in his room. Though Ausable's appearance did not match that of a secret agent and he did not really fit the description of one, he was indeed a very intelligent and smart agent. Ausable understood Fowler's disillusionment and told him to take cheer because he would presently see an important paper for which several people had risked their lives and that could well affect the course of history.

4. How did Ausable use 'the knock' at the door in his favour? What light does this throw on his character?

Ans :

2014

There was a sudden knock at the door. Ausable knew it that the water had come to serve the

2. Discuss what you would do in the situations described below. Remember that presence of mind comes out of a state of mental preparedness. If you have thought about possible problems or dangers, and about how to act in such situations, you have a better chance of dealing with such situations if they do arise.

- (i) a small fire starts in your kitchen.
- (ii) a child starts to choke on a piece of food.
- (iii) an electrical appliance starts to hiss and gives out sparks.
- (iv) a bicycle knocks down a pedestrian.
- (v) it rains continuously for more than twenty four hours.
- (vi) a member of your family does not return home at the usual or expected time.

Ans :

- (i) Fire in a kitchen can make us turn panicky. Infact in kitchen there is a gas cylinder, which can burst any moment. If a small fire starts in our kitchen, the first step should be to close the regulator and try to open the doors and window of the kitchen. In such a situation we should also put off the main switch. If possible try to put sand over the fire.
- (ii) Food choked in the mouth of a child can be quite risky. Calm and patience are must for any kind of calamity. The child should be asked to keep quiet and his back should be rubbed softly. If need arises a glass of water can be given to drink. The child should be advised that while eating he should not talk.
- (iii) Electrical fires can be very dangerous. They can not be put off by throwing water. There can cause short circuit and even bring the whole structure down. In case of such fires, the foremost priority should be to put off the main switch. One should never touch any switch with wet hands and always keep your foot covered.
- (iv) If you are a passer-by and witness a pedestrian being knocked down. In such a situation, some people simply laugh and create fun. But you must act sensibly. Go near the pedestrian. Try to see where he has been hurt. If need arises, take him to the nearby doctor. At least try to give him first-aid. Such a good act will always pay you in later life. If the injury is serious, take him to the hospital and inform his relatives.
- (v) Continuous rain can also have some unforeseen consequences. The pipes can get

choked and cause a kind of danger to the building structure. Call a plumber to get all the pipes checked. The road may form pits and become breeding grounds for mosquitoes. The danger of accident also increases. Try to form a group with friends of your own age. Sort of community participation would be of great help. Insecticides can be sprayed in stagnant water and water should be cleared off the roads.

- (vi) It is human nature to show worry for our near and dear ones. If a member of our family does not return home at the usual time then first of all we should check at the place where he was expected to go. After knowing about his time of departure, check with his friends and other associates. If no whereabouts are found out report at the nearest Police Station. You may suggest other such situations.

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. Who is the author of the story “The Midnight Visitor”?

- (a) James Herriot (b) Ruskin Bond
- (c) Robert Arthur (d) Victor Canning

Ans :

- (c) Robert Arthur

2021

2. “_____ did not fit any description of a secret agent”.

- (a) Fowler (b) Ausable
- (c) Max (d) None of these

Ans :

- (b) Ausable

2021

3. Ausable was a _____ fellow.

- (a) fat and sloppy
- (b) fat and enthusiastic
- (c) thin and sloppy
- (d) thin and enthusiastic

Ans :

- (a) fat and sloppy

2020

4. What is the meaning of the word “wheezily”?

- (a) making a sound when you can't breathe easily
- (b) sneezing
- (c) coughing
- (d) None of the above

But Ausable told Fowler 'to take cheer' or to be happy because in his hotel room he would show Fowler a very important paper. He further told Fowler that several men and women had risked their lives to get that paper and that some day in the near future, that paper might as well affect the course of history.

10. How did Max meet his end? Do you sympathise with him? Why? Why not? Justify your answer.

Ans :

2007, 2001

Max jumped through the window to escape from the police, he thought there was a balcony. But he fell down and met his end. We do sympathise with him because he was too easily fooled by Ausable. Even he was armed but he could not outwit Ausable. Max was gullible and Ausable easily made him believe that there was a balcony attached to his room. When there was a kAusable was a successful secret agent. What qualities can be attributed to him? Give some examples.

Ans :

2001

Ausable didn't look like a usual secret agent. Ausable was very fat. He appeared to be a slow and sluggish person. But inside that fat body, he had a very sharp brain. It was through his presence of mind, intelligence and cleverness that he got rid of Max easily. When Max heard a knock at the poor Ausable told him that it was the police whom he had called for the extra protection of the papers. Max wanted him to send them off quickly till he waited on the balcony. Ausable had ordered for drinks and it was the waiter who had knocked the door. Max was frightened thinking Ausable's cooked up story to be true. He jumped from the window thinking he would land up on the balcony but he fell on the ground from the sixth floor. Ausable's presence of mind was his greatest asset and he used this asset to get rid of Max.

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow:

Ausable did not fit any description of a secret agent Fowler had ever read. Following him down the musty corridor of the gloomy French hotel where Ausable had a room, Fowler felt let down. It was a small room, on the sixth and top floor, and scarcely a setting for a romantic adventure.

Ausable was, for one thing, fat. Very fat. And then there was his accent. Though he spoke French and German passably, he had never altogether

lost the American accent he had brought to Paris from Boston twenty years ago.

"You are disappointed," Ausable said wheezily over his shoulder. "You were told that I was a secret agent, a spy, dealing in espionage and danger. You wished to meet me because you are a writer, young and romantic. You envisioned mysterious figures in the night, the crack of pistols, drugs in the wine."

- i. Which of these describes how Fowler felt at the beginning of the extract?

- (a) His heart sank.
- (b) He was shaken up.
- (c) His stomach was in knots.
- (d) He was at the end of his rope.

- ii. State one observation about Ausable based on the way he handled Fowler's disappointment with him.

- iii. How did the atmosphere of the French hotel influence Fowler's mood? Answer in 40 words.

- iv. Which of these means the same as 'romantic' in the line below?

It was a small room, on the sixth and top floor, and scarcely a setting for a **romantic** adventure.

- (a) great
- (b) exciting
- (c) idealistic
- (d) passionate

Ans :

2020

- i. (a) His heart sank.
- ii. We can infer that Ausable was smart and quick-witted in the way he responded to Fowler's disappointment.
- iii. The French hotel is described as 'gloomy', 'musty' and 'small'. This sombre atmosphere of the hotel added to Fowler's feeling of disappointment. He expected a grand atmosphere of mystery and danger, and was disappointed by the reality of the situation.
- iv. (b) exciting

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"It's not my balcony," Ausable said with extreme irritation. "It belongs to the next apartment." He glanced explanatorily at Fowler "You see," he said, "this room used to be part of a large unit, and the next room-through that door there-used to be the living room. It had the balcony, which extends under my window now. You can get onto it from the empty room two doors down-and somebody did, last month. The management

6. What made Horace believe that the lady was the actual lady of the house ?

Ans :

2013

The young lady had a quiet, firm voice. Entering the room, she walked gracefully to the fireplace and straightened the ornaments there as if she was the owner of the house. Her natural reaction and at ease behaviour, made Horace believe that she was the actual lady of the house.

7. "Society must be protected from men like you." Do you find this statement ironic ?

Ans :

2013

The lady in the red dress was very shrewd and cunning. She talked about protecting the society from the criminals like Horace when in fact, the lady was the greater culprit. She had come into that house with the same intention as Horace, but had somehow made Horace the culprit when she was the one who had actually stolen the jewels from the house.

8. What do you think is the meaning of the phrase 'honour among thieves' ?

Ans :

2012

The phrase 'honour among thieves' means that amongst the thieves there ought to be mutual trust, and that thieves do not compromise the theft or activities of other thieves. They are supposed to be honest among fellow criminals and thus, honour each other's feeling of trust.

9. A small dog was lying in the kitchen. It stirred, made a noise, and moved its tail in a friendly way.

(a) What is the name of the dog and where is the kitchen located ?

(b) What tact did Horace apply here ?

Ans :

2012

(a) The name of the dog is Sherry. The kitchen was located in a house at Shotover Grange.

(b) Horace was very tactful. He had a simple way to keep the dogs quiet. All he had to do was to call them by their right names and show them love.

10. What did Horace Danby wonder about for a moment? What did he think and decide ?

Ans :

2010

On seeing the poor painting in the drawing room, behind which the safe was, Horace Danby wondered for a moment whether he should collect pictures instead of books. But they took up too much room so he soon gave up the idea, as in a small house like his books were better.

11. How often did Horace Danby commit a robbery every year? What did he do with the stolen material?

Ans :

2009, 2007, 2000

Horace Danby robbed only one safe every year. Each year he planned carefully just what he would do. He stole enough to last him for twelve months and with the rest of the money he bought rare and expensive books, that he loved, through an agent.

12. Why did Horace Danby feel sure of his success in that year's robbery?

Ans :

2008, 2005

Horace Danby felt sure of his success in that year's robbery as he had been studying rooms, electric wiring, paths and gardens of the house at Shotover Grange for two weeks. He knew that the family was in London and the two servants who lived in the house had gone to watch movie that afternoon.

13. What story did the lady tell Horace to get the jewels?

Ans :

2007 (DB), 2007 (OD)

The lady made up a story that before going to London, she promised her husband to take her jewels to their bank; but she left them there in the safe. She wished to put on the jewels to a party that night. Above all she had forgotten the numbers to open the safe. Thus she convinced Horace to open the safe.

14. Why did the police arrest Horace Danby when he had not kept the jewels stolen from Grange safe?

Ans :

2006, 2005

The police arrested Horace Danby even when he had not kept the jewels stolen from the Grange Safe because his fingerprints were all over the room. No one believed him when he said that the wife of the owner of the house had asked him to open the safe for her and his story was termed as utter 'nonsense'.

15. Why would Horace get angry when anyone talked on honour among thieves ?

Ans :

2005

Horace got angry when anyone talked about honour among thieves because being a thief lady in red played a trick on Horace, another thief. She played foul with him and grabbed the entire jewellery. She should have disclosed her identity and shared booty with Horace.

16. What did Horace Danby know about the Shotover Grange House ?

making an appointment in his room. You have been bored!” The fat man chuckled to himself as he unlocked the door of his room and stood aside to let his frustrated guest enter.

- i. State any one inference about Detective Fowler from the given context.
“You have been bored!”
- ii. State which of the options from (a) to (d) can be applied to the given statement or context.
 - (a) Aside- a direct address to the audience that other characters aren't privy to,
 - (b) Monologue- a long speech delivered by a character during a conversation
 - (c) Point of View- narration of a story can be from a first, second, or third person's point of view
 - (d) Soliloquy- a long speech with no audience in the story
- iii. The speaker talks about many disappointments for the listener. Which was the primary cause of disappointment? Elaborate in about 40 words, with reference to the given extract.
- iv. Which phrase would correctly substitute ‘chuckled’ in the given sentence from the extract?
The fat man chuckled to himself as he unlocked the door of his room and stood aside to let his frustrated guest enter.

Ans :

2015

- i. Detective Fowler's expectations about Ausable were belied because the latter was too fat to be a secret agent.
- ii. (c) Point of View- narration of a story can be from a first, second, or third person's point of view
- iii. The evening was rather unexciting with no beautiful girls hovering around. Fowler had spent a dull day waiting for some excitement but his biggest disappointment was Ausable—a sloppy, fat detective, not a dashing dressed secret agent.
- iv. laughed quietly

5. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

Keeping his body twisted so that his gun still covered the fat man and his guest, the man at the window grasped the frame with his free hand to support himself. Then he swung his other leg up and over the window-sill.

The doorknob turned. Swiftly Max pushed with his left hand to free himself from the sill and

drop to the balcony. And then, as he dropped, he screamed once, shrilly.

- i. State any one inference about the armed man from the given context.
The man at the window was holding a gun at the fat man and his guest.
- ii. State TRUE or FALSE that none of the terms (a) to (d) given below, can be applied to the question.
The writer says ‘And then, as he dropped, he screamed once, shrilly.’ Why did the man scream?
 - (a) A hypothesis: the balcony was two floors down.
 - (b) An assumption: he thought that there was a balcony.
 - (c) A premise: the existence of the balcony was a calculated lie.
 - (d) A theory: had the man known about the absence of the balcony, he wouldn't have jumped.
- iii. Who was at the door? Were the police able to apprehend the armed man? Elaborate in about 40 words, with reference to the given extract.
- iv. Which phrase would correctly substitute ‘shrilly’ in the given sentence from the extract?
And then, as he dropped, he screamed once, shrilly.

Ans :

2009

- i. He was planning his escape by jumping out the window into the balcony below.
- ii. (c) A premise: the existence of the balcony was a calculated lie (True)
- iii. Ausable fooled Max by saying that it was the police who wanted to come inside to provide him protection. Actually, it was a waiter bearing drinks for Fowler and Ausable. Since Max wanted to avoid the police, he jumped out the window.
- iv. piercingly



CHAPTER 4

A QUESTION OF TRUST

1. INTRODUCTION

‘A Question of Trust’ is an interesting and thrilling story which has been well written by Victor Canning. In the story, Horace Danby commits theft once in a year to buy some rare and expensive books he loves to read. For this purpose, when he goes to rob the safe in a house at Shotover Grange, he finds a young lady, posing and pretending to be the owner of the house, who asks him to open the safe.

2. CHARACTERS

Horace Danby

Horace Danby was about fifty years old and unmarried. Everyone thought him a good and honest citizen. He was otherwise very well and happy except for attacks of hay fever in summer. He made locks and was fairly successful at his business. Horace Danby was good and respectable but not completely honest. He used to rob a safe every year. He used to do so because he needed money to buy books. He had a passion for buying rare and costly books. He would rob only the rich person. He never hurt anyone and carried no weapon with him. He was not very aggressive and didn't want to go to prison.

The Lady in Red

The lady in red is gifted with a rare personality. She is full of confidence. She acts like a perfect actress presenting herself as the lady of the house. Even the dog was rubbing against her in a friendly manner. In a very subtle way, she told Horace that she wanted to wear the jewels in the safe to a party that night. She made him open the safe without gloves. Horace willingly hands over the jewels and she decamps with them.

3. SUMMARY

Horace Danby

He was generally considered to be a good and respectable citizen. He was a fifty year old

bachelor. He lived with a housekeeper. He was an expert lock maker. However, he was not completely honest. He had been to prison, fifteen years ago for stealing teweels. He had no desire to become honest. He was careful lest he should run into difficulties for his dishonesty.

Likings and Dislikings

Horace Danby hated prison. He was heartily fond of rare and expensive books. He used to commit one theft a year on the average. The stolen money lasted for the year. He chose the house at Shotover Grange to commit his next burglary. He studied the design of the house carefully for a fortnight. He found that the family had gone to London and the servants to the movies. He broke into the house one afternoon. He hoped to get fifteen thousand pounds worth of jewels from the safe. The jewellery would enable him to buy the books he wanted. He put on his gloves. He took the key from its usual place. He pacified the pet dog by addressing it with love. He reached the safe, placed in the drawing room behind a painting. He was suffering from hay fever. The smell of the flowers at the table made him sneeze.

Appearance of a Woman

Just then, a young beautiful woman in red clothes entered the house. She posed to be the mistress of the house. She suggested to him that he should see a doctor if he was serious about his work. His sneezing has brought her down from the top of the house. She thanked her stars that she had returned in time not expecting to see a burglar in the house. To avoid trouble, Horace started conversing with her in a pleasant manner. He replied that he too had not expected to find her there. She got furious when he asked her to let him go. She threatened to get him arrested. The thought of going to prison made Horace shudder. He pledged that he would never repeat such kind of thing if he was let off.

The Woman's Mischievous Role

The woman took a cigarette from a silver box. Horace took off his gloves and held his lighter

towards her. She promised to let him go if he did something for her. Horace readily consented to the proposal. The woman said that she had come to take her jewels as she had to attend a party. She had forgotten the numbers to open the safe. She bade Horace to open it. She would get the safe repaired. Horace broke the safe open and gave her the jewels. Then he was allowed to go.

Horace was arrested

Horace's fingerprints were found on the safe, He was arrested for the jewel robbery on the third day. The house lady was an aged woman of sixty. He realised that he was befooled by a lady who was also a thief.

4. WORD MEANINGS

1. Safe - an iron almirah
2. Rare - uncommon
3. Housekeeper - male servant
4. Usually - normally
5. Except - leaving aside
6. Expensive - costly
7. Secretly - without anybody's knowledge
8. Remained - stayed
9. Movie - picture, film
10. Tickle - light touch
11. Fingerprints - signs of fingers
12. Stirred - moved
13. Wondered - got amazed
14. Bowl - pot
15. Arranged - put in order
16. Burglar - a breaker of house
17. Described - given full account details
18. Mentioned - referred to, spoken about.
19. Hindering - obstructing
20. Treatment - cure
21. Serious - solemn, grave
22. Firmness - steadiness
23. Pretty - good looking
24. Straightened - unfolded, spread
25. However - nevertheless, anyhow
26. Amused - in a merry mood
27. Expect - hope
28. Nodded - made a sign with the head
29. Inconvenience - uneasiness
30. Hurt - strike
31. Paused - halted
32. Frighten - terrify, threaten
33. Persuaded - convinced
34. Desperate - in despair
35. Watching - observing
36. Shaking - waving
37. Picked up - lifted
38. Eager - anxious, curious

39. Mended - repaired
40. Plan - project, scheme
41. Nonsense - meaningless
42. Profession - line of action
43. Honour - self-respect

5. MESSAGE

The story conveys the message that we should not trust anyone without discovering out about that person. The story gives us another beautiful message that theft is theft, regardless of whether it is done for a good or noble cause And no after how smart a thief is, he or she will be caught one day.

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Read and Find Out - 1

1. What does Horace Danby like to collect ?
Ans :
Horace Danby likes to collect rare and expensive books.
2. Why does he steal every year ?
Ans :
He is a lock maker. He leads a good life. But he steals once a year to buy rare and expensive books as he loves them.

Read And Find Out - 2

1. Who is speaking to Horace Danby ?
Ans :
The lady in red is speaking to Horace Danby.
2. Who is the real culprit in the story ?
Ans :
The real culprit in the story is the lady in red.

Think About It

1. Did you begin to suspect, before the end of the story, that the lady was not the person Horace Danby took her to be ? If so, at what point did you realise this and how ?
Ans :
Yes, I started to suspect, before the end of the story, that the lady was not the person Horace Danby took her to be.
I realised this when the lady told Horace that she had forgotten the numbers to open the safe and she asked him to break open the safe. She also promised him that she would let him go if

only he opened the safe. In fact on one would do this kind of act if she is the real owner of the house.

2. What are the subtle ways in which the lady manages to deceive Horace Danby into thinking she is the lady of the house ? Why doesn't Horace suspect that something is wrong ?

Ans :

The lady in the red dress was very clever. She was also a thief like Horace. She was also a good planner. She called the dog by its name. She told Horace that she had heard him from the top of the house. She also suggested him to go to some good doctor for the treatment of his hay fever. She threatened to call the police. There was a firmness in her voice. She showed full confidence. Thus Horace was trapped. Since he was a thief, he could not resist and he also did not get time to think. He was caught red handed and was so trapped in that he could not suspect that something was wrong.

3. 'Horace Danby was good and respectable-but not completely honest', why do you think this description is apt for Horace ? Why can't he be categorized as a typical thief ?

Ans :

Horace Danby was unmarried. He was about fifty years old. He was a good-natured man. Therefore, everyone liked him. He was fairly successful in his profession of lock making. As he lived peaceful so he was considered a respectable citizen. But he was not completely honest. He had a keen fondness of rare and expensive books. He needed a great deal of money to buy books.

He can't be described as a typical thief because he committed just one theft every year. Moreover, he would rob only rich people. He never hurt anyone and did not carry any weapons. He was submissive and did not want to go to the prison. So we can justify to say that he was not a typical thief.

4. Horace Danby was a meticulous planner but still he faltered. Where did he go wrong and why ?

Ans :

Horace Danby robbed a safe every year which was enough to last for twelve months. He planned his robbery very meticulously. For two weeks he had been studying the complex situation of the house at Shotover Grange. In the magazine he had read the situation of rooms, electric wires, paths and its garden. He had studied the detailed plan of the drawing room. He had seen the housekeeper hang the key. He had even learnt the name of the dog.

The only major mistake had been that he had not even once met the owner of the house. He did not know that the land lady was quite an old lady of sixty. If he had known the lady of the house than the lady in red could not have tricked him. The other mistake was that he had not cut the telephone wires. He also opened the safe without gloves, which left his fingerprint all over. He was easily found and arrested for the jewels robbery.

Talk About It

1. Do you think Horace Danby was unfairly punished, or that he deserved what he got ?

Ans :

Horace Danby was a thief but not a typical thief. He had planned robbery at Shotover Grange but not with any bad intention. In this story Horace was punished for the crime which he had not directly done. He had not got the jewels from the Grange Safe. It was his carelessness which had got him caught. He was held culprit and was arrested though he did not get a single jewel. The lady in red posed to be the mistress of the house. She made Horace open the safe. She took all the jewellery in her possession.

So it is wrong to say Horace Danby was punished for his crime. He was unfairly punished.

NODIA

2. Do intentions justify actions ? Would you, like Horace Danby, do something wrong if you thought your ends justified the means ? Do you think that there are situations in which it is excusable to act less than honestly ?

Ans :

Intentions and actions go hand in hand. Intentions and actions are two sides of a coin. If we have good intentions then we will never stoop to do bad even if we are going to be rewarded high.

No, I would not do anything wrong like Horace Danby. Even if I am being promised a rich reward, I would not do wrong acts. We know that even a bad company or witnessing a crime can be bad.

Honesty is the best policy but still at times we have to keep aside true honesty. Suppose we have not completed our destined task then we have to make some untoward excuses. Such excuses can save us for the moment and save our prestige.

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. Who is the author of "A Question of Trust"?

- (a) James Herriot (b) Ruskin Bond
(c) Robert Arthur (d) Victor Canning

Ans :

2021

- (d) Victor Canning

2. What did everyone think about Horace Danby?

- (a) good (b) honest
(c) both (a) and (b) (d) none of these

Ans :

2021

- (c) both (a) and (b)

3. Where did the family who lived in the Grange go?

- (a) London (b) Las Vegas
(c) Los Angeles (d) None of these

Ans :

2015

- (a) London

4. What was Horace fond of?

- (a) books (b) robbing
(c) locks (d) none of these

Ans :

2015, 2010

- (a) books

5. Where was the safe?

- (a) bedroom (b) kitchen
(c) bathroom (d) drawing room

Ans :

2015

- (d) drawing room

6. Where was the safe hidden?

- (a) behind a painting (b) inside an almirah
(c) it was kept open (d) none of these

Ans :

2014

- (a) behind a painting

7. "How _____ people are when they own valuable things, Horace thought"

- (a) selfish (b) foolish
(c) lucky (d) fortunate

Ans :

2014

- (b) foolish

8. How did he come to know about the safe ?

- (a) servant (b) eavesdropping
(c) by spying on them (d) a magazine article

Ans :

2014

- (d) a magazine article

9. Who is talking to Horace?

- (a) servant (b) sherry
(c) Horace himself (d) none of these

Ans :

2013

- (b) sherry

10. What was Horace's first thought?

- (a) to kill them (b) to shout
(c) to run (d) to blackmail them

Ans :

2013

- (c) to run

11. How did she respond when he told her to forget she ever saw him?

- (a) she forgot she saw him
(b) she told him she won't pretend anything like that
(c) she didn't respond
(d) none of the above

Ans :

2012

- (b) she told him she won't pretend anything like that

12. How does he justify his act?

- (a) by saying he steals for a good reason
(b) by saying he steals only from those who already have plenty
(c) by saying he is not harming the society
(d) all of the above

Ans :

2012

- (d) all of the above

13. What happened on the third morning?

- (a) he prepared a new plan
(b) he ran away
(c) he got arrested by the police
(d) none of the above

Ans :

2012

- (c) he got arrested by the police

14. What was the piece of evidence against him?

- (a) his lighter (b) his gloves
(c) his fingerprints (d) all of these

Ans :

2010

- (c) his fingerprints

15. What did the lady say about his story?

- (a) it was nonsense (b) it was true
(c) it was a joke (d) none of these

Ans :

2010

- (a) it was nonsense

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— Why does this happen? —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

- 16.** What makes him angry?
 (a) talking about the woman
 (b) prison
 (c) talking about honour among thieves
 (d) none of the above
Ans : 2010, 2007
 (c) talking about honour among thieves
- 17.** What was Horace allergic to ?
 (a) dust (b) smell of flowers
 (c) pollen (d) milk
Ans : 2010
 (b) smell of flowers
- 18.** Where had the servants gone?
 (a) doctor (b) movie
 (c) shopping (d) to meet relatives
Ans : 2009
 (b) movie
- 19.** Where were the house keys kept?
 (a) under the pot (b) hung on a hook
 (c) under the doormat (d) in the letter box
Ans : 2009
 (b) hung on a hook
- 20.** How did Horace think that she was the owner's wife?
 (a) she was confident
 (b) she knew the place well
 (c) Sheery rubbed against her
 (d) all of them
Ans : 2008
 (d) all of them
- 21.** Why did the woman want him to break the lock of the safe?
 (a) she wanted him to steal
 (b) she had forgotten the numbers
 (c) she wanted to see if he could break it
 (d) none of these
Ans : 2007
 (b) she had forgotten the numbers
- 22.** What does Horace do in jail?
 (a) Clean floor
 (b) Assistant Librarian
 (c) Typist
 (d) Accountant
Ans : 2007
 (b) Assistant Librarian
- 23.** Why did Horace take-off his gloves?
 (a) to break the safe (b) to leave that place
 (c) to light the lighter (d) to give her the jewels
Ans : 2006
 (c) to light the lighter
- 24.** How was Horace in his business of lock making?
 (a) failure (b) very successful
 (c) not took interest (d) was in a big debt
Ans : 2006
 (b) very successful
- 25.** When Horace was busy doing his work of theft, what thing proved a hindrance in his work?
 (a) the dog Sherry (b) flowers
 (c) the lady (d) the heat of the day
Ans : 2006
 (b) flowers
- 26.** Sherry was the name of _____.
 (a) a servant
 (b) dog at Shotover Grange
 (c) a safe in the Grange
 (d) the lady in red
Ans : 2006
 (b) dog at Shotover Grange
- 27.** What did the young lady threaten to do?
 (a) to inform the police
 (b) to let Sherry loose at him
 (c) to raise alarm
 (d) to call the neighbours
Ans : 2005
 (a) to inform the police
- 28.** Where did Horace decide to make a theft this time?
 (a) Montex Grange
 (b) Shotover Grange
 (c) Westbury Grange
 (d) Mintunbury Grange
Ans : 2005
 (b) Shotover Grange
- 29.** Horace Danby was fond of:
 (a) watching movies
 (b) listening to music
 (c) going to public parks
 (d) reading rare and expensive books
Ans : 2005
 (d) reading rare and expensive books

30. Horace Danby _____.

- (a) was unmarried
- (b) was going to be married
- (c) had one son
- (d) had two sons and a daughter

Ans :

2005

- (a) was unmarried

31. Horace Danby was _____ years old.

- (a) 50
- (b) 40
- (c) 60
- (d) 45

Ans :

2004, 2002

- (a) 50

32. How many times did Horace Danby make a theft in a year?

- (a) only once
- (b) twice
- (c) thrice
- (d) every month

Ans :

2004

- (a) only once

33. What was Horace allergic to?

- (a) dust
- (b) smell of flowers
- (c) pollen
- (d) milk

Ans :

2004

- (b) smell of flowers

34. There were _____ very interesting books coming up for sale in the autumn.

- (a) Five
- (b) Three
- (c) Four
- (d) Two

Ans :

2003

- (b) Three

35. The woman did not want to let Horace go as she wanted to protect the _____.

- (a) House
- (b) Society
- (c) Herself
- (d) Thief

Ans :

2003

- (b) Society

36. The safe was in the _____ room, behind the painting.

- (a) Bed room
- (b) Drawing
- (c) Study
- (d) Dining

Ans :

2003

- (b) Drawing

Short Answer Type Questions

1. "Horace Danby is a thief who was cheated by another thief." Justify.

Ans :

2024

Horace Danby's portrayal in "A Question of Trust" reflects the irony of his situation. While he is indeed a thief, his trust is betrayed by another thief, Mr. Cornelius. This deception underscores the complexity of trust and the unpredictable nature of human behavior, even among criminals.

2. How did the lady in red manage to outsmart and out maneuver the other thief, Horace Danby, by robbing the safe without leaving a single fingerprint ?

Ans :

2024

The young lady in red was also a thief but she presented herself as the lady of the house. ... Horace thought that he was opening the safe for the lady of the house. He handed the jewels over to her and went out happily. He had forgotten to wear his gloves and left his fingerprints on the safe.

3. What was Horace Danby's hobby? How did he manage to fulfil it?

Ans :

2018, 2016

Horace Danby had the hobby of collecting rare and expensive books. He managed to fulfill it by robbing a safe every year. Each year he planned carefully just what he would do to steal enough to last for twelve months, and secretly bought the books he loved through an agent.

4. Why did Horace mistake the young lady for the mistress of the house ?

Ans :

2015

The young lady snubbed the house-dog with authority as well as love. She stared at Horace with an imposing air of confidence. She spoke that she had returned just in time. Her manner of speaking and actions made Horace mistake her for the mistress of the house.

5. What made Horace sneeze frequently at the house in Shotover Grange ?

Ans :

2014, 2010

Horace had hay fever or was allergic to flowers. There was a great bowl of flowers lying on the table in the house he was supposed to rob in Shotover Grange. Therefore, he felt his nose tickle and he sneezed. He sneezed loudly whenever the smell of flowers came to him again and again in that house.

promised to block it off. But they haven't." Max glanced at Fowler, who was standing stiffly not far from Ausable, and waved the gun with a commanding gesture. "Please sit down," he said. "We have a wait of half an hour, I think

- i. State any one inference about the balcony spoken at length by Ausable from the given context.
The management promised to block it off. But they haven't.
- ii. State TRUE or FALSE.
None of the options from (a) to (d) can be applied to the given question or context- "It's not my balcony," Ausable said with extreme irritation. "It belongs to the next apartment." When Ausable said this, what was he relying on?
 - (a) A hypothesis: Max had no idea about the balcony.
 - (b) An assumption: Fowler had no idea about the balcony.
 - (c) A premise: Only he knew that there was no balcony.
 - (d) A theory: The waiter had no idea about the balcony.
- iii. 'It had the balcony, which extends under my window now. You can get onto it from the empty room two doors down-and somebody did, last month. The management promised to block it off But they haven't.'
Why does Ausable explain the existence of a balcony at such great length to Fowler? Elaborate in about 40 words, with reference to the extract.
- iv. Max told Fowler that they had to wait for a good thirty minutes for a paper to arrive.
The paper here refers to _____.

Ans :

2019

- i. Ausable dropped a hint for Max that the balcony could be used for escaping in an emergency.
- ii. False. (option (c) can be applied to the given question or context)
- iii. Max was armed. Ausable, sensing the danger, fabricated a story about the non-existent balcony. When there was a knock at the door, Ausable again fooled Max saying that it was the police. Max jumped out the window hoping to land on that non-existent balcony and died.
- iv. a report regarding some new missiles.

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

Max was slender, a little less than tall, with features that suggested slightly the crafty, pointed countenance of a fox. There was about him - aside from the gun nothing especially menacing. "The report," he murmured. "The report that is being brought to you tonight concerning some new missiles. I thought I would take it from you. It will be safer in my hands than in yours." Ausable moved to an armchair and sat down heavily. "I'm going to raise the devil with the management this time, and you can bet on it," he said grimly. "This is the second time in a month that somebody has got into my room through that nuisance of a balcony!"

- i. State True or False.
None of the terms (a) - (d) can be applied to the statement - The report that is being brought to you tonight concerning some new missiles.
 - (a) A hypothesis - a proposed explanation for a phenomenon
 - (b) An assumption - something that is taken for granted or assumed to be true
 - (c) A statement - a definite or clear expression of something in speech or writing.
 - (d) A premise - a proposition that forms the basis of an argument.
- ii. Which word replaces 'sat down heavily' in the sentence- Ausable moved to an armchair and sat down heavily'?
- iii. Was there a balcony in Ausable's room?
- iv. How was Max described in the extract?
Answer in about 40 words.

Ans :

2017

- i. (c) A statement - a definite or clear expression of something in speech or writing.
- ii. Flumped.
- iii. No. there was no balcony in Ausable's room.
- iv. Max was described as slender, little less than tall with crafty features that suggested slightly the crafty, pointed countenance of a fox. There was about him-aside from the gun-nothing especially menacing.

4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"Instead, you have spent a dull evening in a French music hall with a sloppy fat man who, instead of having messages slipped into his hand by dark-eyed beauties, gets only a prosaic telephone call

Ans :

2005

Horace Danby had studied the house carefully. He took note of its rooms, electric wiring, paths and garden. He also knew that the family had gone to London. He had seen the servants hanging the keys to the kitchen door and going to pictures.

17. Why did Horace feel sure that year's robbery at Shotover Grange would be as successful as all the others ?

Ans :

2005, 2000

Horace Danby chose the house at Shotover Grange to commit his next burglary. He studied the design of the house carefully. He took note of the rooms, electric wiring, paths and garden. He also knew that the family had gone to London. He had seen the servants hanging the keys to the kitchen door and going to pictures.

18. Why did the lady report to the police though she promised that she would not report to the police?

Ans :

2002

The lady was very clever and shrewd. She promised Horace that she would not report to the police if he helped her in getting the jewels from the safe. Horace broke the safe and helped her. But she didn't keep her promise as she was also a thief and did not want to get into trouble.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. Who do you think is the real culprit in the story 'A Question of Trust'?

Ans :

2020

Obviously the young lady who pretended to be the member of the family was real culprit. She innocently asked Horace to open the safe as she would need the jewels to wear in the party that day. Horace found himself trapped in a tricky situation and could not make out how to escape. He readily opened the safe; unwittingly leaving his fingerprints. He was arrested and nobody believed that the lady of house asked him to open the safe. It seems the young lady outwitted experienced Horace. She cheated and deceived Horace scrupulously.

2. Horace stated that he robbed only those who had a lot of money. Was he really a threat to the society ? Did he lack the qualities of a good citizen ? Discuss the values he needs to imbibe to lead a path of righteousness.

Ans :

2017

I don't think Horace was a threat to the society. He never threatened anyone and rather stole for a very good reason. He used to rob a safe every year to pursue his hobby of getting rare and expensive

books to read. He was not a professional thief. Moreover, he never harmed anyone. He was considered a good and honest citizen by everyone. He was about fifty years old and unmarried. He had all the qualities of a good citizen. He was not a criminal or a typical thief. He did so only to fulfil his need.

He was an honest and good man. He believed in the lady's story and gave away all the jewels to her. If he had been a criminal, he would have killed the lady or would have never handed the jewels to her.

3. Horace Danby requested the lady to forget what she saw. Was Horace afraid of being caught ? Did he lack courage to accept his crime publicly? Explain the values one must imbibe to accept one's mistake.

Ans :

2012, 2009

Yes, Horace Danby was afraid of being caught. He lacked the courage to accept his crime publicly. He was not a professional criminal or thief. He was considered a good and honest man by everyone. He was about fifty years old and unmarried. His house was looked after by a housekeeper. He used to rob only one safe every year to pursue his habit of getting rare and expensive books to read. He used to rob only those who were rich.

He had a good reputation in the society and hence did not want anyone to know about his crimes. Although he helped the lady, but was caught by the police for the crime he did not commit. He learnt from his mistake.

4. Describe how Horace Danby planned his robbery of Shotover Grange.

Or

Horace was the thief who planned his work carefully. Describe what he did before attempting to rob the house at Shotover Grange.

Ans :

2009, 2008

A magazine article had described the house Shotover Grange, giving a plan of all the rooms and a picture of the room where the safe was located. The writer had even mentioned that a painting hid the safe.

He had studied the house, looking at its rooms, its electric wiring, its paths and gardens for two weeks. He knew that the family lived in London and the two servants who remained in the house had gone to watch movie that afternoon. So he was sure that it was going to be a successful robbery.

NODIA

- iii. 'he' (Horace Danby) was passionate about collecting rare and expensive books. To satisfy his passion, Danby needed money and arranged it by robbing one safe every year and then secretly buying the books through an agent.

iv. carefully

4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

Everyone thought that horace danby was a good, honest citizen. He was about fifty years old and unmarried, and he lived with a housekeeper who worried over his health. In fact, he was usually very well and happy except for attacks of hay fever in summer. He made locks and was successful enough at his business to have two helpers. Yes, Horace Danby was good and respectable — but not completely honest.

- i. State any one inference about Horace Danby from the given context.

Everyone thought that horace danby was a good, honest citizen.

- iii. State which of the options from 1 to 4 can be applied to the given question or context: True (T), False (F), Partially true (PT), Not applicable (NA).

Which of these proverbs fits the personality of Horace Danby?

1. Where there's smoke, there's fire.
2. If you can't beat them, join them.
3. Don't judge a book by its cover.
4. All that glitters is not gold.

- (a) 2 - T, 1 - E 3 - PT, 4 - NA
- (b) 1 - T, 2 - E 3 - PT, 4 - NA
- (c) 3 - T, 1 - E 4 - PT, 2 - NA
- (d) 4 - T, 3 - E 2 - PT, 1 - NA

- ii. 'We can say that Horace Danby was quite well off'

Elaborate in about 40 words, with reference to the extract.

- iv. Which phrase or word would be the correct antonym of 'respectable' in the given sentence from the extract?

Yes, Horace Danby was good and respectable — but not completely honest.

Ans :

2013

- i. It was hard to think of him as a thief who stole money to buy expensive books because he had an established business.
- ii. (c) 3 - T, 1 - F, 4 - PT, 2 - NA

- iii. Horace Danby was a successful businessman of manufacturing locks. Two helpers kept his business in good shape. He also had a housekeeper to look after his house and him. He didn't have a family to spend his money on.

iv. disreputable

5. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

There was a great bowl of flowers on the table, and Horace felt his nose tickle. He gave a little sneeze and then put down his bag. He carefully arranged his tools. He had four hours before the servants returned.

The safe was not going to be hard to open. After all, he had lived with locks and safes all his life. The burglar alarm was poorly built.

- i. State any one inference about Danby from the given context.

He carefully arranged his tools.

- ii. State which of the options from (a) to (d) can be applied to the given question or context? Which of the reasons CANNOT be used to complete this statement?

The safe was not going to be hard to open.

- (a) True because Horace knew the code.
- (b) False because he had lived with locks and safes all his life.
- (c) Partially true because he had all the tools.
- (d) Not applicable because the servants were out for four hours.

- iii. Horace Danby sneezed. What caused it? Elaborate in about 40 words, with reference to the given extract.

- iv. Which phrase would correctly substitute 'tickle' in the given sentence from the extract? There was a great bowl of flowers on the table, and Horace felt his nose tickle.

Ans :

2011

- i. Horace was a meticulous thief and took his job seriously.
- ii. (a) True because Horace knew the code.
- iii. Horace Danby suffered from attacks of hay fever because he had an allergy to pollens. A big bowl of flowers kept in the drawing room caused him to sneeze.
- iv. tingle or itch



- ii. Which word in the passage means the same as 'cordial'?
- (a) Friendly (b) Hurting
(c) Ignorant (d) Distant

- iii. Whom did Horace Danby see in the kitchen? How did they greet each other? What tact did Horace apply there? Answer in about 40 words.

- iv. The kitchen referred to is located in _____. 2019

Ans :

- i. (c) A statement - a definite or clear expression of something in speech or writing.
- ii. (a) Friendly
- iii. Horace Danby saw the family dog, Sherry, in the kitchen. The dog greeted Horace by stirring, making a noise and wagging its tail in a friendly way. Horace greeted the dog by tactfully calming it down, calling it by its name and showing love to it.
- iv. Shotover Grange.

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

But Horace found that the flowers were hindering him in his work. He buried his face in his handkerchief. Then he heard a voice say from the doorway, "What is it? A cold or hay fever?"

Before he could think, Horace said, "Hay fever," and found himself sneezing again.

The voice went on, "You can cure it with a special treatment, you know, if you find out just what plant gives you the disease. I think you'd better see a doctor, if you're serious about your work. I heard you from the top of the house just now."

- i. State any one inference about Danby from the given context. But Horace found that the flowers were hindering him in his work.
- ii. State TRUE or FALSE.
None of the options from (a) to (d) can be applied to the given question or context.
Who asked Horace, "What is it? A cold or hay fever"?
- (a) Probably, it was the mistress of the Grange.
(b) Maybe, it was another thief.
(c) It could have been the housekeeper of the Grange.
(d) In all probability, it was a neighbour keeping an eye on the Grange.

- iii. What advice did the lady give Horace regarding his hay fever? Was she really interested in his health? Elaborate in about 40 words, with reference to the extract.

- iv. Which phrase would correctly substitute 'buried' as given in the extract?

He **buried** his face in his handkerchief

Ans :

2016

- i. The flowers made Horace Danby's nose itch because of hay fever.
- ii. False (option (b) can be applied to the given question or context)
- iii. The lady advised Horace that he could find a cure for hay fever by trying to find which plant he was allergic to. She was not interested in his allergy or its cure; she was rather making fun of him.
- iv. concealed or covered.

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

So, he robbed a safe every year. Each year he planned carefully just what he would do, stole enough to last for twelve months and secretly bought the books he loved through an agent.

- i. What did 'he' plan carefully every year?
- ii. State true or false.
None of the terms (a)-(d) can be applied to the statement - He was an expert locksmith.
- (a) A hypothesis - a proposed explanation for a phenomenon
(b) An assumption - something that is taken for granted or assumed to be true
(c) A hyperbole - exaggerated statements or claims not meant to be taken literally
(d) A premise - a proposition that forms the basis of an argument
- iii. What was 'he' passionate about and how did 'he' satisfy his passion?
- iv. Which word would correctly substitute 'thoughtfully', in the given sentence from the extract?
Vidushi arranged all the books **thoughtfully** so that she could find them easily at a later time.

Ans :

2014

- i. 'He' carefully planned his robbery every year.
ii. False

wanted to be alone. She thought that her guest was an eccentric scientist. She didn't mind his strange habits and irritable temper. Griffin's cash finished. He told a lie that he was expecting a cheque at any moment.

Clergyman Burgled

A strange episode occurred. A clergyman and his wife were awakened by the noises in the study very early in the morning. They came downstairs and heard the chink of money being taken from the desk. With a poker in his hand, the clergyman flung open the door. He shouted, "surrender!" He was surprised to see the room empty. They looked under the desk, behind the curtains and even up the chimney. No one was there. They found the desk open and the money missing. They were highly surprised but couldn't understand anything.

Mrs. Hall's Furniture Shows Strange Behaviour

The landlord and his wife (Mrs. Hall) woke up very early. They found Griffin's door wide open. Usually, it was shut and locked. They peeped around but found nobody. They found Griffin's clothes and bandages lying about. All of a sudden Mrs. Hall heard a sniff close to her ear. A hat leapt up and dashed itself into her face. The chair became alive. They turned away in fear. Then the chair pushed both of them out of the room. Even the door was slammed and locked after them. Mrs. Hall almost fell down the stairs and started crying. She was sure that the room was haunted by spirits. The villagers suspected that the trouble was caused by witchcraft. When the news of burglary at the clergyman's home became known, everyone doubted Griffin's hand in it. This suspicion grew stronger when Griffin suddenly showed some ready cash. He had no cash a few days before.

Invisible Man Shows Himself

Mrs. Hall went to Griffin's room. He was there. She asked what he had done to her chair upstairs. She also asked how he had entered a locked room. The scientist lost his temper. He became furious and cried "I'll show you." Suddenly he threw away all bandages, whiskers, spectacles and even nose. The horrified men in the bar stared at a headless man.

Encounter with Constable Jeffers

The police constable who had been informed, arrived now. He was totally surprised to find that he was to arrest a man without a head. There followed a wonderful scene. The scientist (Griffin) started throwing his clothes one by one. He was

becoming more and more invisible as he threw off one garment after another. Finally, the man became invisible. Some people who tried to hold him were beaten by the unseen blows that came from nowhere. In the end, Jeffers was knocked unconscious. Nervous and excited people started crying "Hold him!" Griffin was invisible and free now. No one knew where to lay hands on him.

4. WORD MEANINGS

1. Imprints – impressions
2. Gazed – looked fixedly
3. Remarkable – strange
4. Descending – coming down
5. Progressing – moving
6. Faint – dim
7. Mystery – secret
8. Bewildered – confused/surprised
9. Carried out – conducted
10. Rare – not often seen
11. Drug – medicine
12. Eject – to force someone out
13. Revenge – vindictive feeling
14. By no means – not at all
15. Regard – concern
16. Wrappers – covers
17. Grocery – provisional store
18. Quilts – warm covers
19. Settled down – laid comfortably
20. Managed – succeeded in
21. Panicked – be afraid
22. Gave chase – followed
23. Shivering – trembling
24. Side-whiskers – beard
25. Callously – without mercy
26. Set all tongues wagging – made all people talk about
27. Solitude – loneliness
28. Eccentric – whimsical
29. Temper – nature
30. Presently – soon
31. Episode – event
32. Clergyman – priest
33. Creeping – moving quietly
34. Chink – sound of coins
35. Poker – rod for poking fire
36. Grasped – held firmly
37. Firmly – steadily

CHAPTER 5

FOOTPRINTS WITHOUT FEET

1. INTRODUCTION

The story “Footprints Without Feet” is an excerpt from the novel “The Invisible Man” written by H.G wells. The novel deals with the adventures of a scientist - Griffin, who discovers a mysterious drug that could make the human body invisible. This story is about how instead of using that rare drug for benefit of people, Griffin misused it for his selfish purpose and troubled other people.

2. CHARACTERS

Griffin

He was an extraordinary and brilliant scientist. He discovered that the human body could become invisible and transparent as a sheet of glass.

Mrs Hall

The landlord’s wife at the local inn in Iping.

Jaffers

He is the village constable.

3. SUMMARY

Muddy Imprints

Two boys were highly surprised. They saw muddy impressions on the steps of a house in London. They were the fresh footmarks of a barefooted man. The boys followed them. The impressions got fainter and finally disappeared.

The Mystery of Footmarks

The mystery of footmarks was quite simple. The boys were following a scientist. He had just discovered how to make the human body transparent.

Griffin

Great but Eccentric Scientist: Griffin was a great scientist. He carried out many experiments to prove that the human body could become invisible. In the end, he swallowed some rare

drugs and his body became transparent. He was a lawless person. His landlord disliked him and tried to eject him. In revenge, Griffin set his house on fire.

Unseen when Naked

Griffin had to remove all his clothes if he wanted to be unseen by the people. He became a homeless wanderer without clothes. He had no money. He left footmarks as he moved.

In a Big London Store

The air was bitterly cold. Griffin was naked. Instead of walking about the streets, he entered a London store for warmth. He enjoyed the pleasure of clothes and food freely. He fitted himself out with warm clothes there. He became fully dressed up with shoes, an overcoat and a hat. After putting on clothes, he became visible. He had cold meat and coffee, sweets and wine from the grocery store. He slept on a pile of quilts. He didn’t wake up until the assistants arrived the next morning. When they came near, he panicked and began to run. But he could become invisible only when he was totally naked. So he took off his newly found clothes. Once more he became naked in the chilling January air.

In Drury Lane

He hurried to Drury Lane, the centre of the theatre world. He entered the shop of a theatrical company to become invisible. He came out of the shop wearing bandages around his forehead, glasses, false nose, side-whiskers and a large hat. Then, he attacked a shopkeeper and robbed him of all the money he could find.

Arrival in Iping Village

Griffin wanted to get away from the crowded London. He came to the village of Iping. He booked two rooms in a local inn. He paid the rent in advance. The arrival of a stranger of such strange appearance became the talk of the town. Mrs. Hall tried to be friendly with her guest Griffin. He told her that he didn’t want to be disturbed. He

- (c) both (a) and (b)
(d) none of the above

Ans :

2012, 2009

- (a) he had paid in advance

19. What does the first encounter tell us about Mrs Hall?

- (a) She is not friendly
(b) She is money-minded
(c) she is disinterested in her guests
(d) all of the above

Ans :

2012

- (b) She is money-minded

20. What is being referred to as the “strange incident” that happened in the study?

- (a) Griffin stealing money while being invisible
(b) Griffin arriving at the inn during off season
(c) Griffin pretending to be waiting for a cheque
(d) none of the above

Ans :

2012

- (a) Griffin stealing money while being invisible

21. Who called the incident “an extraordinary affair”?

- (a) clergyman (b) clergyman’s wife
(c) Mrs Hall (d) all of these

Ans :

2011

- (a) clergyman

22. What did she think had happened to her furniture?

- (a) nothing
(b) the scientist had put spirits in them
(c) the scientist was playing with them
(d) the furniture had gone mad

Ans :

2011

- (b) the scientist had put spirits in them

23. What do you mean by the word “hysterics”?

- (a) a normal reaction
(b) an exaggerated reaction
(c) no reaction
(d) none of these

Ans :

2011, 2009

- (b) an exaggerated reaction

24. What caused the villagers to suspect the scientist?

- (a) the robbery
(b) the furniture incident
(c) unexpected availability of cash on him
(d) all of the above

Ans :

2011

- (a) the robbery

25. “The scientist was always _____; now he became furious.”

- (a) patient (b) quick-tempered
(c) calm (d) none of these

Ans :

2010

- (b) quick-tempered

26. Where was the theatrical company shop situated?

- (a) Dury lane (b) Drury lane
(c) Druy lane (d) Druri Lane

Ans :

2010

- (c) Druy lane

27. At Iping where did Griffin stay?

- (a) in a hotel (b) in an inn
(c) in a church (d) in a but

Ans :

2010

- (b) in an inn

28. According to Mrs Hall, what type of a scientist was her guest?

- (a) good (b) brilliant
(c) eccentric (d) all of these

Ans :

2009

- (c) eccentric

29. What did Griffin do in the big London store?

- (a) he wore shoes
(b) he wore an overcoat
(c) he ate cold meat and sweets
(d) all of the above

Ans :

2009

- (d) all of the above

30. Why was it a bad time to wander about in London without clothes?

- (a) it was very hot (b) it was a rainy season
(c) it was bitterly cold (d) none of these

Ans :

2009, 2005

- (c) it was bitterly cold

31. Who were following the muddy footprints?

- (a) the landlord (b) two girls
(c) Mr and Mrs Hall (d) two boys

Ans :

2009

- (d) two boys

32. Griffin swallowed certain rare drugs and his body became as _____ as a sheet of glass.

- (a) shining (b) thin
(c) transparent (d) thick

38. Surrender – submit
39. Affair – matter
40. Furious – very angry
41. Bedpost – leg of bed
42. Slam – shut forcefully
43. Hysterics – great excitement
44. Extraordinary – unusual
45. Convinced – sure
46. Haunted – visited by ghosts
47. Moaned – cried in pain
48. Witchcraft – sorcery/black magic
49. Burglary – theft
50. Suspected – doubted
51. Quick tempered – short tempered
52. Horrified – frightened
53. Warrant – written official order
54. Blows – (here) attack of fists
55. Knocked – hit
56. Unconscious – fainted
57. Nervous – anxious
58. Lay hand on - catch

5. MESSAGE

The chapter conveys a message that misuse of science and its great discoveries can make even a brilliant scientist like Griffin a monster and a threatening lawless person. An another message given in this chapter is that excessive greed can have unintended and disastrous consequences as is evidently reflected in the story.

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Read And Find Out - 1

1. How did the invisible man first become visible ?
Ans :
 The invisible man entered into a big London store. When the store was closed, he broke open the boxes and put on warm clothes. Only then he became visible.
2. Why was he wandering the streets ?
Ans :
 He was wandering the streets to get rid of the two boys who were following his footprints. He had set fire to the house and was homeless.

Read And Find Out - 2

1. Why does Mrs. Hall find the scientist eccentric?
Ans : 2008
 Griffin looked very strange with his uncommon appearance. He also told her that he did not wish to be disturbed. He had no desire to talk to anyone. So, she found him eccentric.
 2. What curious episode occure in the study ?
Ans : 2008, 2006, 2003
 The clergyman and his wife awoke to hear noises in the study. They heard the chink of money being taken from the drawer. They flung open the door. But they were amused to find the room empty. No body was there yet the drawer was opened and the money was missing. It was the curious episode.
- What other extraordinary things happen at the inn ?
Ans :
 The extraordinary things happened at the inn are
- (a) The bedroom chair of the scientist became alive. It attacked Mrs. Hall and then pushed her and her husband out of the room. Then it slammed and locked the room.
 - (b) The scientist appeared from his empty bedroom.
 - (c) The scientist became first a headless man and then completely invisibly by throwing off his clothes.

Think About It

1. 'Griffin was rather a lawless person.' Comment.
Ans : 2009
 Griffin was not a true scientist as he misused his scientific discovery. Once he had a quarrel with his landlord. He had to eject Griffin. In revenge Griffin set fire to the house. To get away without being seen, he had to remove his clothes. Thus he became a homeless wanderer, without clothes, without money and quite invisible.
 He decided to steal money from the clergyman's house. He made himself invisible and entered his study. The clergyman and his wife woke-up, when they heard noise in their study. They heard the chunk of money being stolen from the desk. They opened the door with a poker but there was no trace of the burglar.
 Griffin misued his scientific discovery without making benefit to the mankind.

2. How would you assess Griffin as a scientist ?

Ans :

2008, 2007

Griffin was a brilliant scientist. He had carried out a number of experiments to develop (technique) of making human body transparent and making it invisible. He swallowed rare drugs and his body became transparent. He could have easily used this knowledge of his for betterment of society but rather he was a lawless scientist. He hit the shopkeeper and stole his money. At the inn he entered the clergyman's study and stole money from his desk. Thus he proved to be an eccentric scientist who used his scientific knowledge for wrong doings and posed a threat to the society. He misused his scientific discovery. We can call him stupid, false and a childish scientist.

Talk About It

1. Would you like to become invisible ? What advantages and disadvantages do you foresee, if you did ?

Ans :

Yes, becoming invisible can both be a curse as well as a boon. I would love to become invisible as this would give me a chance to face the difficulties and joys of life. If even I become invisible I would try to use this for spreading message of peace over humanity. If I realise that I can scatter wealth to help the poor even if it is at the cost of rich people, I would feel delighted. At times invisibility can be a great help to spy over the enemies and to catch the culprits.

2. Are there forces around us that are invisible, for example, magnetism? Are there aspects of matter that are "invisible" or not visible to the naked eye ? What would the world be like if you could see such forces or such aspects of matter ?

Ans :

There are many forces around us that are invisible. For example, magnetism or the gravitational force is the force which we can feel but cannot see. It is the existence of such a force which has held the planets in their respective position and make the things fall to the earth. Had these forces not existed we would have been floating in the atmosphere.

Some heavenly bodies can be seen with the help of the naked eye. While there are some stars which cannot be seen with the help of naked eyes. Such stars are so far off that visibility is not possible.

If we could see such forces then the world would be surrounded by various rays which will be crossing each other like a maze. The confusion

will be so great that one will not be able to understand which path to follow or which is restricted.

3. What makes glass or water transparent (what is the scientific explanation for this)? Do you think it would be scientifically possible for a man to become invisible, or transparent ? (Keep in mind that writers of science fiction have often turned out to be prophetic in their imagination!)

Ans :

Glass or water are substances in which the molecules are not rigid. Such flexibility in the molecules gives them ability of free movement. When they move freely cohesive forces are weakened. Such an aspect makes them invisible or transparent.

The man becoming invisible is just a figment of imagination. It would not be possible and can just be imagined and felt. There are some things. We can feel but can't see. Scientifically it would not be possible for a man to be invisible. It is like we imagine. We have wings of fancy and touch the limitless horizons and soar higher. But these are just thought which have made-us believe that we are soaring higher but actually we are on the ground. So this is just a kind of hypnotism of our feelings and thoughts.

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. Who is the author of the chapter "Footprints without feet"?

(a) HG Wells (b) James Herriot
(c) John Keats (d) WB Butler

Ans :

2021

(a) HG Wells

2. "The two boys started in surprise at the fresh muddy imprints of a pair of _____".

(a) bare feet (b) shoes
(c) tyres (d) none of these

Ans :

2021

(a) bare feet

3. He was leaving his imprints in _____

(a) Paris (b) London
(c) Iping (d) Canada

Ans :

2021

(b) London

4. What is the meaning of “bewildered”?

- (a) perplexed (b) confused
(c) puzzled (d) all of these

Ans :

2021, 2012

- (d) all of the above

5. Who were the boys following?

- (a) a scientist (b) a dog
(c) a rat (d) none of these

Ans :

2020

- (a) a scientist

6. What was he working on?

- (a) making fake footprints
(b) making human bodies invisible
(c) making a fool of children
(d) all of the above

Ans :

2020

- (b) making human bodies invisible

7. “Brilliant scientist though he was, Griffin was rather a _____ person.”

- (a) lawless (b) lawful
(c) good (d) rude

Ans :

2015

- (a) lawless

8. What did he do for revenge?

- (a) burned himself
(b) burned the landlord
(c) burned the house
(d) he didn't do anything for revenge

Ans :

2015

- (c) burned the house

9. Griffin's body became as transparent as _____

- (a) glass (b) ice
(c) air (d) none of these

Ans :

2015

- (a) glass

10. What suggests that he was a homeless wanderer?

- (a) no clothes (b) no money
(c) invisible (d) all of these

Ans :

2015

- (d) all of the above

11. Why was it a bad time to wander in London?

- (a) it was mid winter
(b) he was without clothes
(c) both (a) and (b)
(d) none of these

Ans :

2014

- (c) both (a) and (b)

12. Where did he find comfort in London?

- (a) at the inn (b) a big store
(c) theatre store (d) none of these

Ans :

2014, 2010

- (b) a big store

13. How did Griffin finally escape?

- (a) by hitting them
(b) by taking off all his clothes
(c) by running away as fast as he could
(d) by hiding

Ans :

2014

- (b) by taking off all his clothes

14. what was an unusual event?

- (a) a guest at the inn during winters
(b) a guest at the inn during summers
(c) a guest at the inn during spring
(d) nothing was unusual there

Ans :

2013

- (b) a guest at the inn during summers

15. How did he justify his disinterest in having a conversation with Mrs Hall?

- (a) desired solitude
(b) didn't want to be disturbed during work
(c) both (a) and (b)
(d) none of the above

Ans :

2013

- (c) both (a) and (b)

16. What do you mean by the word “eccentric”?

- (a) uncommon (b) extra
(c) catchy (d) none of these

Ans :

2013

- (a) uncommon

17. Why does Mrs Hall find the scientist eccentric?

- (a) he visited during off season
(b) his intention was only to work
(c) he looked weird
(d) all of the above

Ans :

2013

- (d) all of the above

18. Why was Mrs Hall prepared and ready to tolerate strange habits and irritable temper?

- (a) he had paid in advance
(b) he was a scientist

5. Describe how the lady in red was a more professional thief than Horace Danby.

Or

How did the lady in red prove to be smarter and cleverer than Horace Danby?

Ans :

2009, 2003

Horace Danby missed to get enough information about all the members of the house. He seems to be too occupied with collecting information about house map, wiring and location of valuable things. Although he was smart enough to know the dog's actual name but overlooked getting identity of each and every member of the house. Once he was in problem then probably his clever mind gave way to carelessness leading him to open the safe without wearing gloves.

On the other hand, the young lady's confident walk, her act of touching up her make-up and the ease with which she picked cigarette from the right place were enough to make Horace believe that she was lady of the house. Horace was too frightened to think properly so he didn't suspect anything.

6. Why did Horace choose that house in Shotover Grange for committing a theft ?

Ans :

2006

Horace knew that there were about fifteen thousand pounds worth of jewels in the safe of that house in Shotover Grange. That is why, he decided to commit a theft in that house. He expected to get at least five thousand pounds by selling the jewels one by one, which would make him happy for another year.

Horace wanted this money to buy three very interesting books, which were coming for sale the next winter. Moreover, a magazine article had described that house in detail, giving a plan of all the rooms along with the pictures. The magazine had even mentioned that the painting in the room hid the safe. On top of that, the two servants had gone to the movies and the family was in London. Because of all of these circumstances, Horace Danby had chosen that house as the place for committing a theft.

7. Horace Danby represents such people who adopt the wrong ways to fulfil their wishes. What values would you like such people to imbibe to reform themselves?

Ans :

2004

Horace Danby was a successful businessman. He was about fifty years old and a respectable citizen but had a habit that led him to do robberies. Danby loved rare, expensive books and to get them he used to rob a safe every year. Every

year he planned carefully just to get what he wanted. Danby adopted wrong ways to fulfil his wishes and hence, later got trapped in a plot by a thief like him. People should imbibe good values. They should learn that hard work is the only key to success. One should work hard to fulfil one's desires. I think such people should imbibe the values of honesty, responsibility, hard work, dedication and self-confidence in order to reform themselves. One should either curb one's wishes or try to fulfil them by working hard. There is no shortcut to hard work.

8. "Horace had some hope because she seemed to be amused at meeting him." Why did Horace feel so? Did he consider the young lady compassionate towards him? Did he find her free from biases? Discuss the values Horace should have imbibe understanding of the person.

Ans :

2002

Horace was a fifty-year-old man who used to rob only to buy rare and expensive. This time he decided to rob Shot over Grange. But as soon as he entered the room, a young lady appeared. She posed to be the lady of the house. She was very confident in her way of mannerism. Then she tried to be polite and nice to him. On hearing her, Horace felt that he had a hope of escaping. He found her a bit compassionate towards him. He was amused at Horace. She acted in quite a subtle manner and showed her sympathy and admiration towards a simple and honest man. He could not judge her ace. She made Horace promise that he would never commit the crime again. Horace should have been clever, shrewd and witty like the lady.

NODIA

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

A small dog was lying in the kitchen. It stirred, made a noise, and moved its tail in a friendly way. 'All right, Sherry,' Horace said as he passed. All you had to do to keep dogs quiet was to call them by their right names, and show them love.

- i. State TRUE or FALSE.

Which of the following (a)-(c) can be applied to the statement - A small dog was lying in the kitchen.

- (a) A hypothesis - a proposed explanation for a phenomenon
- (b) An assumption - something that is taken for granted or assumed to be true
- (c) A statement - a definite or clear expression of something in speech or writing.

Ans : 2009
(c) transparent

33. Griffin discovered a medicine that could make his body _____.

- (a) large (b) small
(c) invisible (d) all

Ans : 2008
(c) invisible

34. Why was Mrs Hall prepared and ready to tolerate strange habits and irritable temper?

- (a) he was a scientist
(b) he had paid in advance
(c) both a and b
(d) none of these

Ans : 2008
(b) he had paid in advance

35. After making a theft in the shop of a theatrical company where did Griffin decide to go?

- (a) Iping village (b) Oxford city
(c) Paris (d) London

Ans : 2008
(a) Iping village

36. Who did Griffin attack and rob all the money?

- (a) the landlord
(b) the assistance of the London store
(c) the owner of the big London store
(d) the owner of the theatrical company

Ans : 2008
(d) the owner of the theatrical company

37. How did Griffin escape from the assistants?

- (a) by running hard
(b) by removing his newly worn clothes
(c) by hitting the assistants
(d) by hiding in a shed

Ans : 2007
(b) by removing his newly worn clothes

38. Griffin the scientist was making

- (a) A walking plant (b) A talking plant
(c) Invisible footprints (d) An invisible man

Ans : 2006
(d) An invisible man.

39. Griffin was a lawless man as he once

- (a) Discovered a nus
(b) Burned the house of his landlord
(c) Took the advantage of his best friend

(d) Took the money of his landlord

Ans : 2005
(b) Burned the house of his landlord.

40. Only _____ can prove the presence of griffin after getting invisible.

- (a) Mud (b) Grass
(c) Water (d) Clothes

Ans : 2005
(a) Mud.

41. Griffin ran away to the village named _____ after the incident of robbery.

- (a) Lping (b) Leong
(c) Iping (d) Irish

Ans : 2004
(c) Lping.

42. Mrs. Hall was the _____ of the landlord.

- (a) Manger (b) Wife
(c) Daughter (d) Housekeeper

Ans : 2003
(b) Wife.

43. Griffin again robbed money from _____.

- (a) Mrs. Hall (b) Another shopkeeper
(c) Clergy man (d) Bank

Ans : 2003, 2001
(c) Clergy man.

44. Mrs. Hall got angry by seeing the door of the _____ open.

- (a) Drawing room (b) Bed room
(c) Guest room (d) Study room

Ans : 2003
(c) Guest room.

45. Finally Jaffers failed to catch Griffin as he

- (a) Ran away (b) Proved his innocence
(c) became invisible (d) Was a great scientist

Ans : 2001
(c) Became invisible.

Short Answer Type Questions

1. Griffin's brilliance as a man of science fades before his darker traits. Give reasons from the text to support your answer.

Or

Griffin's brilliance as a man of science fades before his darker traits. Comment.

Ans : 2024, 2020
Griffin was a lawless person, he was disliked by most people, was quick tempered, burnt the house

create. I can only hope that future generations will learn from my mistakes and wield science responsibly, for the betterment of humankind.
Griffin

3. Based on your reading of the textual cue given below, write a conversation between the two characters – Mrs. Hall and Griffin.

“Mrs. Hall, the landlord’s wife made every effort to be friendly, but Griffin had no desire to talk.”

Ans : 2023

Conversation between Mrs. Hall and Griffin

Mrs. Hall : It is such a pleasure to have you as my guest, Mr.

Griffin : Never mind my name, Madam. I guess I have made my payment in advance, and you should not bother me any further.

Mrs. Hall : Well, yes of course. Thanks a lot for the payment. I was just wondering if you would need any help with something since you seem to be in a terrible state, these bandages and all.

Griffin : O h, n o! All is fine with me. N o concern required at all. Now, if you may please leave me to do my important work for which I sought solitude in this village on the outskirts of the city.

Mrs. Hall : Sure. Its fine with me. Still, ... I mean in case you ever need any assistance, feel free to call me...

Griffin : Madam, stop being overindulgent. I can manage all my needs. Please leave and close the door behind you.

4. Did Griffin from ‘Footprints without Feet’ follow the saying ‘With great power comes great responsibility’? Justify your answer in 120 words.

Ans : 2023

No, Griffin did not follow the saying ‘with great power comes great responsibility’. Since Griffin did not think of anyone else except himself, this saying is not what he followed. After he managed to make himself invisible, he did not use his powers of invisibility for good. Instead, one of the first things he did was set fire to his landlord’s house in an act of revenge. He did not think of helping anyone with his newfound powers; instead, he harmed other people for his own gain. He stole clothes and food for himself without feeling any remorse. When his money ran low once more, he again resorted to stealing and robbed a clergyman. Finally, when the police were about to catch him, instead of going quietly and accepting his arrest, he fought back and escaped. At no time did Griffin take any responsibility for his actions.

5. How did the invisible scientist first become visible? What compelled him to become invisible again in the chilly air of January?

Ans : 2017, 2009

The invisible scientist first became visible when he slipped into a big London store for warmth from the bitterly cold weather. There he broke open boxes and wrappers and fitted himself into warm clothes. Fully dressed he was now also a fully visible person. Finally he settled down to sleep but he did not manage to get up on time, before the shop assistants arrived. Seeing them approach Griffin panicked and began to run. The shop assistants began chasing him and he could only escape by quickly taking off his newly found clothes. So once more he became invisible in the chilly January air.

6. Mrs. Hall found the scientist rather eccentric. How can he be helped to lead a normal life ? Highlight the values that can help him become a better person.

Ans : 2016

Griffin was an eccentric scientist who had come to Ping in a desire for solitude. He did not wish to be disturbed and moreover, he had come to the town at that time of winter when no one comes. Mrs. Hall found him eccentric also because of his looks. He was over dressed with all parts of his body covered. He was wearing dark glasses, big bushy side whiskers and a large hat all the time, even at night.

He could be helped to lead a normal life by guiding him patiently. He should be counselled to work for the welfare of the society.

The values of empathy, social responsibility, kindness, helpfulness, honesty to his profession, generosity can help Griffin to become a better person.

7. What did the scientist do when he became furious? What happened to the constable and the people at the bar?

Ans : 2012, 2007

When the scientist was furious, in anger he threw off bandages, whiskers, spectacles and all other worn costumes over the shoulders and became a headless man. The people in the bar were horrified because they found themselves staring at a headless man. The constable tried to arrest the scientist. He threw off his clothes one by one in order to become invisible. After sometime he could not be seen at all. Then the constable was trying to get hold of the invisible scientist. Some people tried to help him, but found themselves getting back blows which seemed to come from

Ans :

2010

No, Griffin was not keen to mix with people in the village of Iping. He told Mrs. Hall that his reason for coming to Iping was a desire for solitude. He even told her that he did not want to be disturbed in his work.

16. Why was “the strange scientist strongly suspected of having had a hand” in the burglary at the clergyman’s home ?

Ans :

2010

The news of the burglary at the clergyman’s home had become known throughout the village. The people of the village strongly suspected the strange scientist Griffin of having a hand in it. Moreover, he had suddenly produced some ready cash, when he had admitted not long before that he had no money anymore.

17. What did Griffin do in the shop of a theatrical company ?

Ans :

2009

Griffin wanted to conceal his identity and move away from London. So he entered the shop of a theatrical company, invisibly and wore bandages around his forehead. He even wore dark glasses, a false nose, big bushy side whiskers and a large brimmed hat to hide his appearance. After getting ready, he attacked the shopkeeper and ran away after taking all of his money.

18. How did he save himself from the chasing staff of the store?

Ans :

2008

Griffin took advantage of his being invisible and took shelter in a store at night. When Griffin saw that the salesmen of the store were coming near him, he took off all his clothes and became invisible. He did not have any other choice to save himself.

19. What happened when Griffin didn’t wake up in time?

Ans :

2007

Griffin did not wake up in time and when he saw the assistants at the shop approaching the next morning, he just panicked and ran. They gave him a chase and he could escape only after he took off his clothes. So, he was once again out in the open without clothes in the chilly air of January.

20. Why did Mrs. Hall ignore Griffin’s strange habits?

Ans :

2006, 2003

Mrs. Hall ignored Griffin’s strange habits because she was satisfied that her guest was an eccentric scientist and above all he had paid her in advance. Arrival of a stranger at an inn in winter was in any case an unusual even in Iping.

21. Mr. Griffin entered the shop of the theatrical company. What did he do there?

Ans :

2003

Mr. Griffin entered the shop to find clothes. He covered himself above his shoulders with bandages. He then wore dark glasses, a false nose and a large hat. He hit the shopkeeper and robbed him.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. A character arc is the transformation or development of a character throughout a story and refers to the changes a character undergoes as a result of his/her experiences, challenges and interactions with other characters.

In light of the above information, trace the character arc of Griffin in H.G. Wells’ Footprints without Feet’.

Ans :

2024

Griffin in H.G. Wells’ ‘Footprints without Feet’ undergoes a significant character arc throughout the story. Initially, he is portrayed as a brilliant yet eccentric scientist obsessed with achieving invisibility. However, as the narrative progresses, his obsession leads him down a path of moral degradation. Griffin’s character arc is marked by his descent into madness and amorality as he abuses his newfound power of invisibility for personal gain and revenge. By the end of the story, Griffin’s transformation is complete, culminating in his tragic demise as a cautionary tale about the dangers of unchecked ambition and hubris.

2. Imagine that Griffin’s conscience pricks him and he decides to write a diary entry, about misusing science and endangering society, in the context of his own experience.

Write this diary entry, as Griffin, in about 120 words.

Ans :

2024

10 March 20XX, Monday

9:00 pm

Dear Dairy,

Today, as I reflect on my actions, I am overwhelmed by a profound sense of guilt and remorse. My pursuit of scientific discovery has led me down a dark path, blinding me to the ethical implications of my experiments. In my quest for power and invisibility, I have misused science to satisfy my own selfish desires, heedless of the consequences for society. My actions have endangered countless lives and unleashed chaos upon the world. The weight of my transgressions bears heavily upon my conscience, and I am haunted by the realization that I have become the very monster I sought to

of the landlord to take a revenge on him, stole money at priest's house. Thus we can say that he was undoubtedly brilliant scientist but his brilliance eclipsed by his negative traits.

2. Scientists contribute to make the world a better place. Griffin is an antithesis to this statement. Justify.

Ans :

2024

Griffin was a brilliant scientist but he was an antithesis because he use his mind for making a good drug that is which can make anyone body invisible but he use that drug in wrong way.

3. Why did Griffin go inside a big London store ?

Ans :

2016, 2005

Griffin went inside a big London store to gain some warmth, find a place for the night, and also to put on some clothes.

4. Why were the two boys surprised when they saw the imprints of a pair of bare feet ?

Ans :

2016, 2015

The two boys could see muddy footprints on the steps of a house in central London, descending towards the street. It was surprising to see the footprints without seeing anybody making them.

5. How did Horace fulfil his desire of reading books after he was arrested ?

Ans :

2016

After Horace was arrested, he became the assistant librarian in the prison and fulfilled his desire of reading books.

6. How did Griffin try to get rid of Mrs. Hall's accusations?

Ans :

2016

Griffin got furious with Mrs. Hall's accusation of stealing money and of not paying her rent. He threw off his bandages, spectacles and became invisible. He hit everyone and escaped from there.

7. Why did Griffin set the landlord's house on fire ?

Ans :

2016

Griffin was not liked by his landlord. He decided to take revenge on him, so one day he set his house on fire. Moreover, he did not want anyone to know about his secret discovery.

8. How did Griffin escape from the London store ?

Ans :

2016

When two attendants of the store discovered Griffin, they chased him. Hence, in order to protect himself he threw away his clothes and became invisible and escaped from the London store.

9. Why were the landlord and his wife surprised to see the scientist's door open ?

Ans :

2015

They were surprised because typically the door to the scientist's room was shut and locked, and he would be very angry if anyone entered it.

10. Why did Griffin not get a suitable house to live in ?

Ans :

2015

Griffin was a lawless person, who was largely disliked by all. When his landlord tried to evict him, he set fire to the house, and escaped due to his invisibility. Thereafter, it became difficult for him to find a proper place to live in.

11. How did Griffin try to become visible?

Ans :

2015

Griffin went into a shop in Drury Lane, the heart of the theatre world, with the aim of finding something to wear, and becoming visible. He emerged from the shop wearing bandages around his forehead, dark glasses, a false nose, bushy sideburns and a large hat.

12. Why was Mrs. Hall angry with Griffin, the strange scientist ?

Ans :

2014

Griffin had attacked Mr. and Mrs. Hall and even threw her mother's chair at her. Moreover, Griffin had not paid the rent for a long time. This made Mrs. Hall angry.

13. What kind of discovery had Griffin made ? What was Griffin's nature ?

Ans :

2013

Griffin was a brilliant scientist. He had made an unusual discovery due to which a man could become invisible. But, at the same time, he was short-tempered, selfish and engaged in unlawful activities. He had set his landlord's house on fire and hit the shopkeeper and the policeman just for his own selfish needs and gains.

14. What reasons does Griffin give to Mrs. Hall for coming to Iping ?

Ans :

2011

Griffin remained secluded in the village of Iping. He did not speak and mix with anybody in the village. He told Mrs. Hall that he wanted solitude and did not wish to be disturbed in his work. He further added that an accident had affected his face so he should just be left alone.

15. Did Griffin reciprocate when Mrs. Hall wanted to be friendly with him ?

nowhere. At the end, the constable was knocked down unconscious by the scientist.

8. How did the scientist look when he came to the inn? Give examples to show that he was a man of irritable temperament.

Ans :

2012

The scientist came to the inn with an uncommon appearance. He had bandages around his forehead. He had put on dark glasses and had also put a false nose with big bushy side whiskers and was wearing a large hat. The scientist was indeed a man with an irritable temper because he foiled all of Mrs Hall's attempts to be friendly with him and told her that he had no desire to talk. His irritable temper also forced him to tell Mrs Hall that he wanted solitude and did not wish to be disturbed in his work.

9. Imagine that you are Jaffers, the village constable. Write a letter to your wife Isabel telling about your encounter with an invisible man.

Ans :

2007, 2005

Police Quarters,
Iping,
U.K.

7 December, 20xx

My dear Isabel,

Today I had a very strange experience. It has never happened in my life before. Can you believe me if I say that today I had an encounter with a man, who threw off his clothes one by one, and became invisible. It happened just before my own eyes. The man who turned invisible was a strange scientist who had hired two rooms at the village inn. He was suspected of having stolen clergyman's money from his house.

Today, I had gone to arrest him with the magistrate's warrant. I fought bravely, but he took advantage of his invisibility. I was hit by so many unseen blows that I soon became unconscious. He knocked me down and escaped.

Yours affectionately,
Jaffers

10. Describe the scene which took place after the arrival of Mr. Jaffers, the constable, in the story 'Footprints Without Feet'.

Or

Describe the scene when Mr. Jaffers tries 'to arrest a man without head'.

Ans :

2006

Mr. Jaffers, the constable, arrived and he was quite surprised to find that he had to arrest a man without a head. But it does not matter. There followed a remarkable scene as the policeman tried

to get hold of a man who was becoming more and more invisible as he was taking off one garment after another. Finally the constable found himself struggling with someone invisible. Some people tried to help him, but found themselves hit by blows that seemed to come from nowhere.

In the end the constable was knocked unconscious as he made a last attempt to hold on to the Invisible scientist.

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions given below :

The arrival of a stranger at an inn in winter was in any case an unusual event. A stranger of such uncommon appearance set all tongues wagging. Mrs. Hall, the landlord's wife, made every effort to be friendly. But Griffin had no desire to talk, and told her, "My reason for coming to Iping is a desire for solitude. I do not wish to be disturbed in my work. Besides, an accident has affected my face." Satisfied that her guest was an eccentric scientist, and in view of the fact that he had paid her in advance, Mrs. Hall was prepared to excuse his strange habits and irritable temper.

- State any one inference about Griffin from the given context :
"My reason for coming to Iping is a desire for solitude. I do not wish to be disturbed in my work. Besides, an accident has affected my face."
- State True or False :
Even though Mrs. Hall was satisfied with Griffin, she was skeptical to excuse his strange habits and irritable temper.
- It was not difficult for Griffin to convince the landlord and his wife about his strange appearance and eccentric behaviour.
Elaborate in about 40 words with reference to the context.
- Which phrase would correctly substitute 'set all tongues wagging' in the given sentence from the extract ?
A stranger of such uncommon appearance

Ans :

2024

- An inference about Griffin from the given context is that he is a private person who values his solitude, is possibly working on something that requires concentration and isolation, and has experienced some

2. You must have read about cells and DNA in your science books. Discuss Richard Ebright's work in the light of what you have studied. If you get an opportunity to work like Richard Ebright on projects and experiments, which field would you like to work on and why?

Ans :

It is known that origin of life on earth is an established fact. By the process of gradual and continuous change, living organisms have evolved. After many number of experiments, scientists have established that gene is a segment of a large molecule called DNA. DNA carries genetic information from generation to generation.

Richard Ebright worked on his basis. He raised flock of butterflies and raised the eggs of female Monarch. He studied the various stages of female Monarch. He further studied the cause of a viral disease that killed all Monarch caterpillars. Next he tried to find similarities between viceroy butterflies and monarchs. Study of insects' hormone further give a new theory on the life of cells. Then he found the hormone behind butterfly's full development. Thus, all these experiments led him to form a theory that cells grew from a monarch's wings. The cell would divide and grow in a normal butterfly. If they were fed into a hormone from the gold spots. Thus, he proved a new cell theory which formed the blue print of DNA.

If I am given a chance I would like to work in the sphere of stem cells which has a very wide range and would be a great keep for future.

Talk About It

1. Children everywhere wonder about the world around them. The questions they ask are the beginning of scientific inquiry. Given below are some questions that children in India have asked Professor Yash pal and Dr. Rahul Pal as reported in their book, 'Discovered Questions' (NCERT 2006)
- What is DNA fingerprinting? What are its uses?
 - How do honeybees identify their own honeycombs?
 - Why does rain fall in drops?

Can you answer these questions? You will find Professor Yash Pal's and Dr Rahul Pal's answers (as given in 'Discovered Questions') on page 75.

Ans :

2006

Yes, we can answer these questions. The answers given by Dr. Yash Pal and Dr. Rahul Pal are very helpful. These answers have helped us from

a great opinion and get deep into the concepts involved.

- DNA carries genetic information to each living thing. DNA is inherited from our parents. DNA fingerprinting is important in Forensic Department. Even from a single hair or a drop of blood DNA can help us to find out the true culprit.
- Honeybees use such as a guide. They also appear to have a good memory. They try to find through a clever dance language. The dance indicates the direction and distance of the food source. Thus they have a well developed direction finding mechanism and a way of reckoning distance.
- Rain is formed as a result of condensation of vapour when air is cooled below the dew point. The raindrops start out as tiny ice crystals and on the way they collect moisture. The crystals change into water droplets and fall on the ground as drops.

2. You also must have wondered about certain things around you. Share these questions with your class and try and answer them.

Ans :

There are many questions which are a question of worry for me:

- Is there any material which does not burn in fire?
- Why do rain bearing clouds appear black?
- Why do some people snort during sleep?

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. Who is the writer of the lesson "The Making of a Scientist"?

- HG Wells
- Robert W. Peterson
- Ruskin Bond
- Guy De Maupassant

Ans :

2021

- Robert W. Peterson

Name Richard's college room mate

- John
- James
- Jack
- Jeff

Ans :

2021

- John

4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

Brilliant scientist though he was, Griffin was rather a lawless person. His landlord disliked him and tried to eject him. In revenge Griffin set fire to the house, to get away without being seen he had to remove his clothes. Thus, it was that he became a homeless wanderer, without clothes, without money and quite invisible-until he happened to step in some mud and left footprints as he walked!

- i. The writer says that Griffin was a brilliant scientist. Elaborate in about 40 words with evidence.
- ii. State TRUE or FALSE.
None of the terms (a)-(d) can be applied to the statement - His landlord disliked him and tried to eject him.
 - (a) A hypothesis - a proposed explanation for a phenomenon
 - (b) An assumption - something that is taken for granted or assumed to be true
 - (c) A hyperbole - exaggerated statements or claims not meant to be taken literally
 - (d) A premise - a proposition that forms the basis of an argument
- iii. State the reason he was wandering on the streets.
- iv. Which phrase would correctly substitute 'a lawless' in the given sentence from the extract?
Brilliant scientist though he was, Griffin was rather a lawless person.

Ans :

2018

- i. It can be said that Griffin was a brilliant scientist because he carried on various experiments to prove that human body could become invisible.
- ii. True
- iii. He was wandering on the streets because he had set fire to his landlord's house.
- iv. An anarchic

5. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

He broke open boxes and wrappers and fitted himself out with warm clothes. Soon, with shoes, an overcoat and a wide-brimmed hat, he became a fully dressed and visible person.

- i. Why does the author state "he became a fully dressed and a visible person"?
- ii. Where was he?

- iii. Why did 'he' come to the place where he was in?

- iv. Which word would correctly substitute 'completely', in the given sentence from the extract?

The PM was completely aware of the shortcomings of his government.

Ans :

2017

- i. The author state "he became a fully dressed and a visible person" because the protagonist was invisible.
- ii. He was at the London Store.
- iii. 'he' (Griffin) decided to ship into a big London store because it was mid-winter season. Due to this it became difficult to wander around without clothes in London.
- iv. fully

6. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

He pretended, however, that he was expecting a cheque to arrive at any moment. Shortly afterwards a curious episode occurred. Very early in the morning a clergyman and his wife were awakened by noises in the study. Creeping downstairs, they heard the chink of money being taken from the clergyman's desk.

- i. What is the 'curious episode' referred to in the extract?
- ii. Why did they creep downstairs?
- iii. To whom did Griffin pretend that he was expecting a cheque soon? Why?
- iv. Which word would correctly substitute the phrase 'looking forward', in the given sentence from the extract?
Shamshu looking forward to meeting his old friends at the reunion.

Ans :

2015

- i. The curious episode referred to in the extract is a theft by an unknown force at the clergyman's house.
- ii. They crept downstairs because they heard some noises coming from their study.
- iii. Griffin pretended to Mrs. Hall that he was expecting a cheque soon. He did this because all his stolen money had been spent and now he did not have any money to pay rent to Mrs. Griffin.
- iv. expecting



CHAPTER 6

THE MAKING OF A SCIENTIST

1. INTRODUCTION

The chapter “The Making of a Scientist” is written by Robert W. Peterson. This is a biographical sketch of a renowned scientist, Richard H. Ebright, who excelled in his research on butterflies. His work on the hormones from the spots on a monarch pupa and his resultant findings about the chemical structure of the hormones came out as an answer to one of biology’s major puzzles.

2. CHARACTERS

Richard Ebright

Richard Ebright was a person of perseverance and positive attitude. Although he earned top grades in school he faced many failures in his life but he used each of his failure as a springboard to achieve succeed. Ebright possessed all the qualities of a scientist. First-rate mind, curiosity and mix in the will to win opened the world of science for him.

3. SUMMARY

Richard H. Ebright, a Scientist

At the age of twenty-two Ebright formed a new theory on how cells work. He started his experiments with butterflies. He had to stop many of his childhood activities.

Role of Ebright’s Mother

Ebright’s mother always encouraged him. She was his best companion who bought all kinds of instruments needed. Mother also brought ‘The Travels of Monarch X’ which also opened the world of science.

Raising of Butterflies

Ebright caught a female monarch, took her eggs and raised them through life cycle. As required, he lost interest in tagging butterflies.

Losing at Science Fair

When he was in seventh grade, he lost on his slide of frog tissues. He realised that real experiments were needed. Then Ebright worked to find the

cause of viral diseases that killed monarch caterpillars. This theory led testing viceroy butterflies copy monarchs. His project which concluded that starling would not eat ordinary bird food, was highly acclaimed by the zoology division.

Probe into Need of Tiny Gold Spots on a Monarch Pupa

Earlier these spots were regarded ornamental. A device was built to study about the spots producing hormone. This project was praised at International Science and Engineering Fair and Walter Reed Army Institute of Research. He concluded that cells would divide and develop into normal butterfly wing if fed on the hormone from gold spots.

Discovery of New Theory About Cell Life

While taking x-ray photos of structure of hormone, DNA, blueprint for life was discovered. This theory was a big step to understand process of life.

Other Qualities Developed in Ebright

Apart from being a scientist, Richard Ebright became a champion debater, public speaker and good canoeist. He also became expert photographer of nature. Mr. Weiherer was his social studies teacher.

Qualities As a Scientist

First-rate mind, curiosity and mix in the will to win opened the world of science for him.

4. WORD MEANINGSS

1. Excited - to rouse
2. Proceedings - action, operation
3. Journal - daily record of transactions
4. Determination - fix attention
5. Eager - strongly desirous
6. Leagues - team
7. String - series or rope
8. Achievements - attainments
9. Activities - deeds
10. Fossils - remains of the dead preserved in rocks

11. Mounting - to climb over the other
12. Companion - an associate
13. Probably - more likely than not
14. Migrate - to go to other country
15. Adhesive - apt to stick
16. Tags - a flap of garment
17. Basement - lowest part of building
18. Tedious - wearisome
19. Recaptured - to capture again
20. Tissues - a fine woven cloth
21. Display - exhibition
22. Competitive - a situation in which people act against each other
23. Stack - a pile of hay
24. Research - a careful inquiry
25. Ornamental - serving to adorn
26. Hormone - a chemical secretion from certain glands of the body
27. Entomology - study of insects

5. MESSAGE

The chapter "The Making of a Scientist" conveys the message that if one wants to succeed in life and reach great heights like Ebright, one must have sincerity of purpose, single-minded devotion and determined will. One needs to put in extraordinary and consistent efforts to achieve rare distinctions. In addition, one must be keen to learn and also have a "driving curiosity" to utilize the potential of a bright mind. The desire to work for the right cause, supplemented with a healthy competitive spirit, are added qualities that help a genius to gain recognition.

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Read and Find Out - 1

1. How did a book become a turning point in Richard Ebright's life?

Ans :

2012

The book "The Travels of Monarch X" opened the world of science for Richard. After reading it, he became interested in tracking the migration of butterflies. This interest led him to other projects and experiments. Finally, he became a great scientist.

2. How did his mother help him?

Ans :

2019

Richard's mother proved to be a great help. She took him on trips and bought scientific equipments for him. She encouraged the scientific temperament in Richard. She spent all her time

in setting out challenges for him. This helped him learn a lot.

Read and Find Out - 2

1. What lesson does Ebright learn when he does not win anything at a science fair?

Ans :

2021

When Ebright does not win anything at a science fair, he learns that winner had tried to show real experiments.

2. What experiments and projects does he then undertake ?

Ans :

He decided to do a real experiment. He tried to find the cause of a viral disease that kills nearly all monarch caterpillars every few years. Then he began his research into discovery of an unknown insect monarch.

3. What are the qualities that go into making of a scientist ?

Ans :

2011

There are many qualities (ingredients) that go into making of a scientist. Richard Ebright became a scientist since he was competitive and put in that extra effort. He had a first-rate mind with curiosity and mix in the will to win for the right reasons.

Think About It

1. How can one become a scientist, an economist, a historian Does it simply involve reading many books on the subject? Does it involve observing; thinking and doing experiments?

Ans :

One can perform a job to the best of his capabilities if one is really interested in it. Once we choose a goal or an aim, we should strive hard to achieve it. I think reading books is just one aspect of learning. This is an exercise in information gathering. It is how your brain processes the information that affects the degree of learning. The first and the foremost criterion to become a genius in one's chosen field is to have great curiosity and unending hunger to discover more. Next criterion is a good sense of observation which helps you correlate your findings with what you see or experience in the real world. Experiments are must to test your findings against possible variables and in real life situations. And last, but not the least criterion is an urge to work really hard on your area of interest. Hard work is actually the key to success. One should have perseverance and strong will-power to achieve what one aspires to.

misfortune or incident that has disfigured his face, which he is sensitive about.

- ii. False
- iii. It was relatively easy for Griffin to convince the landlord and his wife about his need for privacy due to his upfront payment and the explanation that he was an eccentric scientist affected by an accident, which seemed to provide a sufficient reason for his unusual behavior and appearance.
- iv. sparked everyone's curiosity.

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

As she and her husband turned away in terror, the extraordinary chair pushed them both out of the room and then appeared to slam and lock the door after them. Mrs Hall almost fell down the stairs in hysterics. She was convinced that the room was haunted by spirits, and that the stranger had somehow caused these to enter into her furniture.

"My poor mother used to sit in that chair," she moaned! To think it should rise up against me now! The feeling among the neighbours was that the trouble was caused by witchcraft.

- i. State any one inference about Mrs. Hall 'moaning' about 'the extraordinary chair' from the given context.
'the extraordinary chair pushed them both out of the room and then appeared to slam and lock the door after them.'
- ii. State TRUE or FALSE.
The spirits haunted the house and the furniture in Griffin's room was surely possessed according to the Halls.
None of the terms (a)-(d) below, can be applied to the given statement.
(a) a hypothesis
(b) an assumption
(c) just a superstition
(d) a theory waiting to be proved
- iii. Elaborate in about 40 words, with reference to the extract.
Mrs. Hall 'was convinced that the room was haunted by spirits' and other people thought so too.
- iv. Which phrase would correctly substitute 'in hysterics' as given in the extract?
Mrs. Hall almost fell down the stairs in hysterics.

Ans :

2022

- i. Mrs. Hall was alarmed as well as pained on realising that the eccentric stranger had caused even her mother's favourite chair to be possessed by an evil spirit that was out to harm her.
- ii. False (term (c) can be applied to the given statement)
- iii. The violent conduct of the chair convinced the Halls about the furniture being haunted and that the stranger had somehow caused spirits to enter into their furniture. Even the neighbours believed that the trouble was caused by witchcraft.
- iv. getting panic attacks.

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

The village constable was secretly sent for. Instead of waiting for the constable, Mrs. Hall went to the scientist, who had somehow mysteriously appeared from his empty bedroom. "I want to know what you have been doing to my chair upstairs," she demanded. 'And I want to know how it is you came out of an empty room and how you entered a locked room.' The scientist was always quick-tempered; now he became furious. "You don't understand who or what I am!" he shouted. "Very well — I'll show you."

- i. Why did Mrs. Hall feel that the room was haunted by spirits?
- ii. State TRUE or FALSE.
The neighbours thought the trouble was caused by 'witchcraft'. This statement tells us that the neighbours were superstitious.
- iii. Why was the village constable secretly sent for? Answer in about 40 words.
- iv. What did the scientist do on becoming furious?

Ans :

2020

- i. Mrs. Hall felt that the room was haunted by spirits because she had witnessed strange things like a chair mysteriously pushing her out of the room had happened there.
- ii. True
- iii. The village constable was sent for because the neighbours felt that Griffin had stolen the clergyman's money. Moreover, they also believed that he was involved in some kind of witch craft.
- iv. He threw off bandages, whiskers, spectacles and even nose.

3. Name Ebright's social science teacher.

- (a) Mr Weiherer (b) Dr Urquhart
(c) James R Wong (d) Taplow

Ans : 2020
(a) Mr Weiherer

4. What groundbreaking research did Ebright do?

- (a) working of body (b) working of DNA
(c) Working of heart (d) none of these

Ans : 2015
(b) working of DNA

5. Who did he write to get an idea for a real science experiment?

- (a) his mother
(b) his friend
(c) Dr Frederick A. Urquhart
(d) his father

Ans : 2014, 2010
(c) Dr Frederick A. Urquhart

6. Which butterflies were not eaten by birds?

- (a) viceroy (b) monarch
(c) both a and b (d) none of these

Ans : 2014
(b) monarch

7. He tried to grow _____ in the presence of betties

- (a) butterflies (b) caterpillar
(c) rats (d) snakes

Ans : 2014
(b) caterpillar

8. What did he collect during his childhood?

- (a) coins (b) rocks
(c) butterflies (d) all of these

Ans : 2014
(d) all of these

9. When did he find the cause of a viral disease common among caterpillars?

- (a) in the 7th grade (b) in the 8th grade
(c) in college (d) none of these

Ans : 2013
(b) in the 8th grade

10. How many species of butterflies had he collected till second grade?

- (a) 20 (b) 21
(c) 24 (d) 25

Ans : 2013
(d) 25

11. "It was his fascination for _____ that opened the world of science to him."

- (a) cats (b) dogs
(c) birds (d) butterflies

Ans : 2013
(d) butterflies

12. Which of the following is a part of the life cycle of butterflies?

- (a) egg (b) caterpillar
(c) pupa (d) all of these

Ans : 2012
(d) all of these

13. At what grade did Richard get a hint of what real science is?

- (a) fourth grade (b) fifth grade
(c) sixth grade (d) seventh grade

Ans : 2012
(d) seventh grade

14. Which book did Ebright's mother give him to?

- (a) Travels of Monarch X
(b) Travels of Ebright
(c) Travels of Dr Urquhart
(d) Travels of Viceroy X

Ans : 2012
(a) Travels of Monarch X

15. Which of the following is a type of butterflies?

- (a) viceroy (b) monarch
(c) both (a) and (b) (d) none of these

Ans : 2012
(c) both (a) and (b)

16. Ebright tried to grow caterpillars in the presence of :

- (a) betties (b) snakes
(c) wasps (d) all of these

Ans : 2011
(a) betties

17. At what age did he invent the theory on how cells work?

- (a) twenty (b) twenty one
(c) twenty two (d) twenty four

Ans : 2011
(c) twenty two

18. How did his mother help him?

- (a) took him on trips
(b) bought him telescopes and microscopes

- i. State any one inference about the butterfly specimens from the given context.
The butterfly collecting season around Reading lasts six weeks in late summer
- ii. State which of the options from (a) to (d) is True and can be applied to the given statement.
Ebright tagged the butterflies to determine their movement and migration patterns because he was working on _____.
(a) a hypothesis: what happens if a butterfly species do not migrate?
(b) an assumption that all butterflies migrate.
(c) a premise that monarch butterflies fly thousands of miles.
(d) a theory that all winged insects migrate.
- iii. 'He would catch a female monarch, take her eggs, and raise them in his basement through their life cycle, from egg to caterpillar to pupa to adult butterfly'- What does this show us about Ebright? Elaborate in about 40 words, with reference to the extract.
- iv. Which phrase would correctly substitute 'basement' in the given sentence from the extract?
For several years his basement was home to thousands of monarchs in different stages of development.

Ans :

2013

- i. It is practical to have your own stock of specimen butterflies for research.
- ii. (c) a premise that monarch butterflies fly thousands of miles.
- iii. Ebright's basement was host to thousands of monarch butterflies in different stages of development that he painstakingly preserved and observed. It shows Ebright's perseverance, dedication, and resolve as a researcher.
- iv. cellar or mezzanine floor

5. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

When he saw those photos, Ebright didn't show, 'Eureka!' or even, 'I've got it!' But he believed that, along with his findings about insect hormones, the photos gave him the answer to one of biology's puzzles: how the cell can 'read' the blueprint of its DNA. DNA is the substance in the nucleus of a cell that controls heredity. It determines the form and function of the cell. Thus, DNA is the blueprint for life. Ebright and his college room-mate, James R. Wong, worked

all that night drawing pictures and constructing plastic models of molecules to show how it could happen. Together they later wrote the paper that explained the theory.

- i. State any one inference about Richard Ebright from the given context.
When he saw those photos, Ebright didn't shout, 'Eureka!' or even, 'I've got it!'
- ii. State which of the options from (a) to (d) can be applied to the given statement or context. According to the extract, DNA can be considered the fulcrum around which the nucleus of a cell, the form and function of the cell revolve.
(a) A hypothesis (b) An assumption
(c) A premise (d) A theory
- iii. 'Together they later wrote the paper that explained the theory.' What were the repercussions of the theory going to be for mankind? Elaborate in about 40 words, with reference to the extract.
- iv. Which phrase would correctly substitute 'blueprint' in the given sentence from the extract?
"Thus, DNA is the blueprint for life."

Ans :

2011

- i. Ebright displayed a well-rounded, mature personality.
- ii. (d) A theory
- iii. If the theory about cell life would prove correct, it will be a big step toward understanding the processes of life. It might also lead to new ideas for preventing some types of cancer and other diseases.
- (d) plan or design



BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

29. The cell theory got published in the proceeding of the

(a) World Academy of technology
(b) National Academy of science
(c) National science and technology
(d) World innovative science

Ans :

2006

(b) National Academy of Science.

30. Richard's interests on experiments started with a small things i.e.

(a) Rat (b) Money Plant
(c) Bed bug (d) Butterfly

Ans :

2006

(d) Butterfly.

31. Ebright wanted to become

(a) A scientist (b) A Journalist
(c) An astronomer (d) A writer

Ans :

2005

(c) An astronomer

32. The book, which encouraged Ebright and turned his life towards science was

(a) The travels of Monarch (X)
(b) 100 Shade o butterflies
(c) The 50 collection of butterflies
(d) The travels of Monarch (XI)

Ans :

2005

(a) The travels Monarch (X)

33. At the end of the children's book the readers were invited to tag butterflies to Dr. Frederick A. Urquhart of the university of

(a) Zurich (b) London
(c) Toronto (d) Oxford

Ans :

2004

(c) Toronto

34. After doing experiment on the theory that viceroy butterflies copy monarchs, Ebright won the _____ division in the zoology department and _____ position in the overall science fair.

(a) 2nd and 3rd (b) 1st and 3rd
(c) 2nd and 1st (d) 1st and 2nd

Ans :

2004

(b) 1st and 2nd

35. The _____ tiny gold spots on monarch pupa produced a necessary hormone for the full development of butterfly from a pupa.

(a) 10 (b) 11
(c) 13 (d) 12

Ans :

2004

(d) 12

36. The research on growing cells from a _____ helped him to win the first prize at the international fair.

(a) Monarch's wing (b) Frog's body
(c) Monarch's body (d) Pupa

Ans :

2003

(a) Monarch's wing

37. Ebright also identified the chemical structure of

(a) Chlorine (b) Calcium
(c) Hormone (d) Clorofluro Carbon

Ans :

2003

(c) Hormone

38. The most important discovery of Ebright was

(a) Cell life
(b) Atomic structure
(c) Chemical structure of Hormone
(d) Viceroy butterfly copies Monarch butterfly

Ans :

2003

(a) Cell life

39. _____, the room-mate of Ebright helped him to draw pictures and to construct the plastic models of molecules.

(a) J.K Upright (b) James K long
(c) Thomas Wilson (d) James R. Wong

Ans :

2002

(d) James R. Wong

40. Ebright used to admire his _____ teacher.

(a) SST
(b) Science
(c) Mathematics
(d) Language teaches

Ans :

2002

(a) SST

Short Answer Type Questions

1. How can one say that Ebright's curiosity/inquisitiveness drove him to become a scientist ?

Ans :

2024

In "The Making of a Scientist," Ebright's curiosity played a key role in shaping his scientific career. He constantly asked questions, searched for answers, and explored new ideas. His strong desire to understand the world encouraged him to conduct experiments and learn more, which eventually led him to become a scientist.

(c) encouraged him to learn

(d) all of these

Ans :

2010, 2008

(d) all of these

19. When did he get a hint of real science?

(a) in the 7th grade

(b) when he entered a county science fair

(c) when he lost

(d) all of these

Ans :

2010

(d) all of these

20. Which butterflies copied monarchs to prevent being eaten by birds?

(a) vice president

(b) viceroy

(c) vice principal

(d) vices

Ans :

2009

(b) viceroy

21. What was the purpose of the gold spots on the monarch pupa?

(a) ornamental

(b) secreted hormones

(c) they were the breathing points

(d) none of these

Ans :

2008

(b) secreted hormones

Download NODIA App for All Sample Papers PDFs

22. Which theory is discovered by Ebright?

(a) how mutation works (b) how motion works

(c) how cells work (d) all of these

Ans :

2008

(c) how cells work

23. What did Ebright start searching in the 2nd year of high school?

(a) An unknown hormone in the gold spots of butterflies

(b) An unknown hormone in the green spots of leaves

(c) An unknown hormone in the different species of butterflies

(d) An unknown hormone in the gold spots of monarch butterflies

Ans :

2008

(a) An unknown hormone in the gold spots of butterflies

24. What did the book 'The Travels of Monarch X' give Ebright a thorough knowledge about?

(a) Knowledge about the monarch rocks

(b) Knowledge about the monarch fossils

(c) Knowledge about the monarch butterflies

(d) Knowledge about the monarch coins

Ans :

2007

(c) Knowledge about the monarch butterflies

25. Richard H Ebright is a leading scientist who has contributed significantly to which branches of science?

(a) Biochemistry

(b) Molecular Biology

(c) Biology

(d) Both (a) and (b)

Ans :

2007

(d) Both (a) and (b)

26. What did Ebright realise?

(a) that this wasn't his foray

(b) that chasing the butterflies one by one won't enable him to catch many

(c) that it was a difficult task

(d) all of the above

Ans :

2007

(b) that chasing the butterflies one by one won't enable him to catch many

27. What did the book 'The Travels of Monarch X' describe?

(a) how monarch butterflies migrate to Southern America

(b) how monarch butterflies migrate to Northern America

(c) how monarch butterflies migrate to Central America

(d) how monarch butterflies migrate to Western America

Ans :

2006

(c) how monarch butterflies migrate to Central America

28. What did Ebright start tagging?

(a) insects

(b) monarch butterflies

(c) vibrant butterflies

(d) none of these

Ans :

2006

(b) monarch butterflies

11. What were the factors which contributed to making Ebright a scientist?

Ans :

2014

There are some genuine factors that contribute to making Ebright a scientist. First, he had a 'driving curiosity along with a bright mind' and zeal to do new ideas. Secondly, his mother's encouragement and inspiration stood him in good stead to create interest in science. Finally, 'The Travels of Monarch X' opened the world of science to Ebright.

12. Mention any two of Ebright's contributions to the world of science.

Ans :

2012

In his senior year in the high school, Ebright began to search an unknown hormone in the gold spots of the butterflies. He proved that the cells of a monarch would develop into a normal butterfly wing only if they were fed the hormone from the gold spots.

Another contribution of Ebright in the world of science is that he discovered how the cell could read the blue print of its DNA.

13. Why did Richard Ebright give up tagging butterflies?

Ans :

2010

Richard Ebright gave up tagging butterflies because he gradually lost interest in it. He found it absolutely a tedious work. Moreover, there was not much feedback. He tagged many butterflies but only two of them were captured. In fact, in the book, "The Travels of Monarch", readers were asked by Dr. Frederick to tag butterflies for research.

14. What other interests besides science did Richard Ebright pursue?

Ans :

2010

Richard Bright had other interests besides science. To his credit, he became a champion debater and public speaker. He was also a good canoeist and an all-around outdoor person. He was also an expert photographer, particularly of nature and scientific exhibits.

15. Which children's book opened the world of science to the young Ebright?

Ans :

2009

Ebright's mother got him a children's book called 'The Travels of Monarch X'. That book, which told how monarch butterflies migrate to Central America, opened the world of science for the young Richard Ebright.

16. From where had Richard Ebright graduated? What did he do immediately after graduation?

Ans :

2008

Richard Ebright had graduated from Harvard with highest honours, being second in his class of 1,510. After graduation, he went on to become a graduate student researcher at Harvard Medical School.

17. What can Ebright's theory of cell life lead to if it is proved correct ?

Ans :

2007, 2003

If Ebright's theory of cell life is proved correct, it will be a big step towards understanding the process of life. It might also lead to new ideas for preventing some types of cancer and other diseases.

18. Identify four values which Richard Ebright projected as a man of substance.

Ans :

2006

Ebright was not only a good scientist but also a keen observer. He was good as a champion debater and a public speaker. He was an expert photographer particularly of nature and scientific exhibits.

19. Why do viceroy butterflies copy monarchs ?

Ans :

2005

Elbright's theory proved that viceroys look like monarchs because monarchs don't taste good to birds. But viceroys taste good to birds. Therefore, butterflies try to look like (copy) monarchs so that they can be saved.

20. "When he saw those photos." Which photos did he see and what discovery did this lead to ?

Ans :

2005

He saw photos of the chemical structure of a hormone in the X-ray. This photo enabled him to answer one of the biology puzzles. His doubt on DNA was solved. He determined that DNA is the substance in the nucleus that controls heredity. So DNA was established to be the blueprint for life.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. You have been requested to write a brief blog post for a Science blog for kids on the theme-'Science is Real'. Based on your understanding of the chapter, write the blog highlighting how science pervades every aspect of our lives.

You may begin like this :

Scienceforkidsblogger.com

Monday, October 19, 2021

9. Imagine that you are Richard Ebright. Write a diary entry stating how your mother looked after you and encouraged you.

Ans :

2010

Diary Entry

Wednesday,
25 May, 20XX
10.30 p.m.

It makes me proud to think that how great my mother is. She has not only taken very good care of me but has also always encouraged me to learn more and more. She took me on trips, bought me telescopes, microscopes, cameras, mounting materials and other equipments. She has also helped me in many other ways that cannot be highlighted in words.

She even devoted her complete attention to me, until I started going to the school. After that she would bring home friends for me. Unfortunately, my father died when I was in third grade. But still, as always she wished that I should learn more and more. Above all, my mother got me a children's book called 'The Travels of Monarch X.' This book had a great impact on me and my fascination for collecting and tagging butterflies grew more and more. This fascination opened a world of science to me and this was all because my mother has always supported me.

Richard Ebright

Download **NODIA** App for All Sample Papers PDFs

10. Dr Urquhart contributed significantly to Ebright's growth as a scientist. Explain.

Ans :

2005

Richard had become bored with collecting butterflies. His mother got him a book on the migration of butterflies. Richard came in contact with Dr. Urquhart through the book. Dr. Urquhart directed him to study the migration pattern of butterflies.

When he did not win any prize in the science fair in seventh grade, he again wrote to Dr Urquhart to guide him. The scientist gave him many suggestions for new experiments. Richard performed these experiments throughout his high school and won many prizes. Later, he worked on why bright spots are found on a monarch pupa, motivated by Dr. Urquhart. It led to the discovery of a new hormone. The discovery of this new hormone further led to an important theory. The theory was about how cells read their DNA. In this way Dr. Urquhart proved to be his true mentor.

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow :

The question he tried to answer was simple: What is the purpose of the twelve tiny gold spots on a monarch pupa?

"Everyone assumed the spots were just ornamental," Ebright said.

"But Dr. Urquhart didn't believe it."

To find the answer, Ebright and another excellent science student first had to build a device that showed that the spots were producing a hormone necessary for the butterfly's full development. This project won Ebright first place in the county fair and entry into the International Science and Engineering Fair. There he won third place for zoology. He also got a chance to work during the summer at the entomology laboratory of the Walter Reed Army Institute of Research.

- State one inference about Dr. Urquhart from the given context:
Everyone assumed the spots were just ornamental," Ebright said, "But Dr. Urquhart didn't believe it."
- State TRUE or FALSE.
None of the terms (a) - (d) below, can be applied to the question - What is the purpose of the twelve tiny gold spots on a monarch pupa?
 (a) A hypothesis - a proposed explanation for a phenomenon.
 (b) An assumption - something that is taken for granted or assumed to be true without proof.
 (c) A premise - a proposition that forms the basis of an argument.
 (d) A theory - a well-substantiated explanation for a natural phenomenon.
- Ebright's approach towards finding the purpose of the gold spots on a monarch pupa was highly effective. Elaborate in about 40 words, with reference to the extract.
- Which phrase would correctly substitute 'a chance', in the given sentence from the extract?
He also got a chance to work during the summer at the entomology laboratory of the Walter Reed Army Institute of Research.

Ans :

2023

- From the given context, it can be said that Dr. Urquhart was a great scientist who had a curiosity to question assumptions.

into a habit in Richard and he kept on probing things. His scientific bent of mind led him to carry on experiments after experiment and reach a purposeful conclusion. Although to reach his goal he was helped by many people in his journey, especially his mother whose contribution is commendable. He had patiently waited for almost a year to study butterflies' migration. This shows that he never stopped midway and finally became a great scientist.

5. Imagine you are Richard. You have been invited by Mr Weiherer to deliver a short address to the students at your erstwhile school. You have been asked to encourage them to take an interest in the study of Science and how research in Science can help the world. Write that short speech.

Ans :

2021

Hello, my dear young friends

It is an honour to stand amongst you and say a few words on how the study of science changed my life. I think curiosity is the key to invention. You know, as a child, I was always curious to know why things happened in a particular way. Curiosity led me to experiment and experiments led me to conclusions and eventually inventions. You must be knowing that all the inventions are backed by a series of research by great scientists. Scientific developments have created all the facilities we enjoy in our lives today. From a small needle to a big aeroplane everything is the product of scientists' hard work and patience. I feel that every child should take up the study of science in school to grow with confidence in life. Stop cramming and start experimenting.

6. Richard Ebright displayed a well-rounded personality. Do you agree ? Elucidate in the context of the given text.

Ans :

2020, 2016

Richard's genius was obvious by the time he was in his second grade. He managed to collect all twenty-five species of butterflies around his hometown and classify them. He also loved to collect coins, fossils and rocks. Science was not his only passion. He was an active member of his school's oratory club and model United Nations club and was an effective debater and a public speaker. He loved photography as well.

He was an enthusiastic canoeist and an all-around outdoors person. Learning was easy for him. So he found it simple to devote time and energy to many other interests. He became a champion in whatever he did. He believed in the spirit of competition to win. But, he did not wish to defeat others just to win. He wanted to win to

do his best. Thus, he displayed a well-rounded personality.

7. What other interests besides science did Richard Ebright pursue? What opinion did Mr. Weiherer, his social studies teacher, have about Ebright?

Or

What opinion did Mr Weiherer, his social studies teacher, have about Ebright?

Ans :

2013, 2012

Besides science, Richard Ebright had also interest in other fields. He also became a champion debater and public speaker. He was a good canoeist and an all-round outdoors-person. He was an expert photographer, particularly of nature and scientific exhibits. In high school, Richard Ebright was a straight-A student. He rendered a lot of energy towards the Debating and Model United Nations Club.

Mr Weiherer, his social studies teacher, cherished a high opinion about Richard Ebright. He admired for the extra efforts that Richard gave for doing debate research besides his research with butterflies and other interests. Mr Weiherer emphasized that Richard was winning because he wanted to do the best job he could do. For the right reasons, he wanted to be the best of the best.

8. What was the impact of the book 'The Travels of Monarch X' on Richard Ebright ?

Ans :

2010

Richard Ebright had started collecting butterflies when he was in kindergarten. So, to maintain his interest in this field in his later years, his mother had got him a children's book called 'The Travels of Monarch X.' This book had told how monarch butterflies migrate to Central America. The impact of this book was so strong on Ebright's mind that it opened the world of science for him. At the end of this book, readers had been invited to help study butterfly migrations. They had been asked to tag butterflies for research by Dr. Frederick A. Urquhart of the university of Toronto, Canada. Ebright's mother wrote to Dr. Urquhart, and soon Ebright was also taking part in the study by attaching light adhesive tags to the wings of the monarchs. According to the research, anyone who found a tagged butterfly was asked to send the tag to Dr. Urquhart. Ultimately, it was Richard's fascination for butterflies that opened the world of science to him. It also indirectly led to his theory on how cells work.

Science Is Real

.....
.....
.....
.....

Ans : 2021
Scienceforkidsblogger.com
Monday, October 19, 2021

Science Is Real

Science is present in every aspect of our life. science is not just a theory to learn from books. It has to be observed minutely because science is real. If you want to understand science in an easy and practical way, you should visit the kitchen or the garden in your house. Try to understand the science working behind the small objects present in our kitchens – lemon squeezer, garlic presser, grater etc. Have you ever asked your mother why the ginger turns to pink colour when lemon juice was poured on it? One can understand the concept of condensation by taking up the lid from a cooking utensil. If you have a scientific temperament you can experience that science is real and it pervades every field of our life.

Download NODIA App for All Sample Papers PDFs

2. Richard’s mother had been invited to a talk show after Richard’s graduation from Harvard with the highest honours. You attended that talk show. Write the most memorable thing she spoke about and what you think it reveals about her.

Ans : 2021

The Talk Show With Richard’s Mother

Host : Well, Ms Ebright, how do you feel about Richard’s homecoming with the greatest Honours from Harvard.

Mother : It feels really great! My son has brought honours to me and our country.

Host : Was he a special child or an average child?

Mother : He was absolutely an average child in his school. He used to observe things happening in nature very keenly and It helped him a lot. He kept himself busy researching whatever fascinated him.

Host : Do you want to give any parenting tips?

Mother : Keep your kids busy with constructive ideas and try to understand their talent at the initial stage itself.

Host : Do you see any change in Richard’s attitude now?

Mother : Oh yes, he is more sincere, more determined and more dedicated now.

3. Imagine Richard wrote a letter to his mother when he was studying at Harvard University for motivating him and being a constant source of support throughout his growing up years. Write that letter of gratitude as Richard.

You may begin like this :
Harvard University
Cambridge
Massachusetts
20 September 1981
Mrs Ebright
Reading
Pennsylvania
Dear Mom
It’s been long since I’ve written to you.

Ans : 2021

Letter of gratitude as Richard

Harvard University
Cambridge
Massachusetts
20 September 1981
Mrs Ebright
Reading
Pennsylvania
Dear Mom,
It has been long since I have written to you. You will be glad to know that all the teachers here praise me for my real knowledge of Science. You know, all the credit goes to you. I can never forget your friendly and fun-filled ways to enable me to learn new things. The evenings we spent together at the dining table were proved to be most helpful. I don’t know how you managed to buy those toys and materials after my father’s death.

Your foresightedness in buying the ‘The Migration of Monarch’ changed my life all the way for good.

Mumma, I am blessed to have a mother like you. I wish you to be my mother in every birth.
Take care
Goodbye
Your loving son
Richie

4. Albert Einstein said, ‘The important thing is to never stop questioning.’ Richard was a genius who proved this quote true. Justify.

Ans : 2021

Surely, this statement is true in the case of Richard Ebright because he always kept himself busy in constructive experiments since his early childhood. Richard had a habit of asking questions about new things and his mother answered all his questions in the most satisfying manner. This question and answer round turned

- ii. True.
- iii. Ebright's approach towards finding the purpose of the gold spots on a monarch pupa was indeed highly effective. He built a device that showed the spots were producing a hormone that was necessary for a butterfly's full development. His approach cleared the assumption that the spots were just ornamental on the butterflies.
- iv. an opportunity.

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"Richard would always give that extra effort, Mr. Weiherer said. What pleased me was, here was this person who put in three or four hours at night doing debate research besides doing all his research with butterflies and his other interests. 'Richard was competitive,' Mr. Weiherer continued, 'but not in a bad sense'. He explained, "Richard wasn't interested in winning for winning's sake or winning to get a prize. Rather, he was winning because he wanted to do the best job he could. For the right reasons, he wants to be the best."

- i. Why did Mr. Weiherer consider Richard to be a hard worker?
- ii. State TRUE or FALSE.
Only option (d) correctly corresponds to the extract.
 - (a) A review (b) An interview
 - (c) An analysis (d) A comment
- iii. Why did Mr. Weiherer call Richard a true winner?. Answer in about 40 words.
- iv. Why was Richard trying to win?

Ans : 2021

- i. Mr. Weiherer considered Richard to be a hard worker because he put in three or four hours at night doing debate research besides doing all his research with butterflies and his other interests.
- ii. True
- iii. Mr. Weiherer called Richard a true winner because he wasn't interested in winning for winning's sake or winning to get a prize. Rather, he wanted to give his best.
- iv. Richard was trying to win because he wanted to do the best job he could.

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

Ebright and his college roommate, James R Wong, worked all that night drawing pictures and

constructing plastic models of molecules to show how it could happen. Together they later wrote the paper that explained the theory. Surprising no one who knew him, Richard Ebright graduated from Harvard with highest honours, second in his class of 1510.

- i. How did Richard Ebright graduate?
- ii. State true or false.
None of the terms (a)-(d) can be applied to the statement — Ebright was a spectacular student.
 - (a) A hypothesis - a proposed explanation for a phenomenon
 - (b) An assumption - something that is taken for granted or assumed to be true
 - (c) A hyperbole - exaggerated statements or claims not meant to be taken literally
 - (d) A premise - a proposition that forms the basis of an argument
- iii. What paper was written by Ebright and his friend? Where was it published?
- iv. Which word would correctly substitute 'making', in the given sentence from the extract?

My friend, Rahul, was busy making a 3D-wallpaper when I went to see him.

Ans : 2017

- i. Richard Ebright graduate with highest honours as second in a class of 1510 from Harvard University.
- ii. False
- iii. The paper about a theory of how cells work was written by Ebright and his friend. It was published in the scientific journal 'Proceedings of the National Academy of Science'.
- iv. constructing

4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

The butterfly collecting season around Reading lasts six weeks in late summer. If you're going to chase them one by one, you won't catch very many. So the next step for Ebright was to raise a flock of butterflies. He would catch a female monarch, take her eggs, and raise them in his basement through their life cycle, from egg to caterpillar to pupa to adult butterfly. Then he would tag the butterflies' wings and let them go. For several years his basement was home to thousands of monarchs in different stages of development.

2. Justify how Ebright's mother played an important part in his becoming a scientist.

Or

How did Ebright's mother encourage his interest in learning ?

Or

How did Ebright's mother help him in becoming a scientist?

Or

How did Richard Ebright's mother help him?

Or

Describe the role of Ebright's mother in making him a scientist

Ans :

2024 , 2019, 2015, 2013, 2012

Ebright's mother played a crucial role in his scientific journey by nurturing his curiosity and providing him with books and resources to explore his interests. She encouraged his inquisitive nature and instilled in him a love for learning, laying the foundation for his future success as a scientist.

Download NODIA App for All Sample Papers PDFs

3. How important is curiosity to scientific exploration and discovery? Justify your answer with examples from the story 'The Making of a Scientist'.

Ans :

2023

Curiosity is extremely important to scientific exploration and discovery. It was Ebright's curiosity that led him to collect items such as butterflies, fossils and coins. His desire to explore and constantly learn served as the foundation for his future scientific pursuits.

4. What opinion did Mr. Weiherer, Ebright's Social Science teacher have about him?

Ans :

2023

Mr. Weiherer was of a great opinion about Ebright. According to him, Ebright was competitive in a true sense as he didn't want to just win the competition for the sake of winning it but he wanted to prove his experiments truly and contribute to the field of science.

5. Richard's mother was his companion and spent a lot of time with him. A parent should try to be a companion to a child. Justify.

Ans :

2021

A parent can best judge a child's needs and psychology. If a parent spends time with his child, like a friend, the child can feel confident, safe and motivated. Richard's mother supported him by recognising his inclination towards butterflies that helped him in becoming a great scientist.

6. Why do you think Mr. Weiherer was pleased that Richard Ebright not only put in the nightly research hours towards butterflies, but also his other interests?

Ans :

2021

Mr. Weiherer was pleased that Ebright balanced academics as well as recreational pursuits, his hobbies etc. He was impressed by Richard's commitment towards his work. As a teacher, he wanted Ebright's growth as a well-rounded personality.

7. Why do you think Mr. Weiherer was pleased that Richard Ebright not only put in the nightly research hours towards butterflies, but also his other interests?

Ans :

2020

Mr. Weiherer was pleased that Ebright balanced academics as well as recreational pursuits (hobbies etc.); – As a teacher, he wanted Ebright's growth as a well-rounded personality.

8. What lesson did Ebright learn when in the seventh grade he entered a country science fair?

Or

What lesson did Ebright learn when he could not win a prize at the science fair?

Ans :

2017, 2016, 2013, 2012, 2011

Ebright exhibited slides of frog tissues at a country science fair. He did not get any prize. He learnt an important lesson that science is not just about display. It is about projects and real experiments. He began conducting experiments from that day onwards.

Which book did Ebright's mother get for him? How did it change his life?

Ans :

2017

Ebright's mother got him a children's book called 'The Travels of Monarch X.'

1. The book described how Monarch butterflies migrate to Central America.
2. This opened the world of science to young Ebright.

10. What, according to Mr. Weiherer, makes Richard Ebright a winner ?

Or

According to Mr. Weiherer, what makes Richard Ebright a winner?

Ans :

2017, 2014

According to Mr. Weiherer, Richard Ebright was not interested in winning for winnings sake or winning to get a prize. Rather, he was a winner because he wanted to do the best job he could.

CHAPTER 7

THE NECKLACE

1. INTRODUCTION

The chapter “The Necklace” is written by Guy De Maupassant. The story describes the unfortunate disaster that befalls a lower middle class woman who was never content with who she was and what she had. She always felt sad at the absence of a lavish lifestyle and succumbed to this urge one day. She borrowed a diamond necklace from a rich friend in order to attend a ball. Unfortunately, she lost this piece of jewellery and had to undergo a difficult struggle to compensate this loss.

2. CHARACTERS

Matilda

Matilda is a very pretty woman born in a very poor family. She always dreams of living a luxurious life and be a part of elite society group. But she is married to a middle class man who is a clerk by profession. Though he makes every effort to fulfil his wife’s desires, she remains unhappy. She yearns for expensive clothes and jewellery. All this troubles her a lot. In order to fit in the ‘rich society group’ she borrows a necklace from her rich friend as she has to attend a ball hosted by the minister. However, she loses it at the party, Matilda assuming that it was a real one, starts working hard enough to earn money so that she can buy a similar one and return it to her friend. Her husband too, works day in and day out to earn enough money for the same consequently, during all this Matilda’s life is ruined.

Monsieur Loisel

Monsieur Loisel is contented with his life and does not seek unnecessary materialistic pleasures. He makes every effort to ensure that he is able to fulfill his wife’s desires. When Matilda loses the necklace, Monsieur Loisel sacrifices his own future to help her repay the debt. He pays dearly for something he had never wanted in the first place.

3. SUMMARY

Matilda - An Introduction

She was a young and pretty girl. She was born into a family of clerks. She was simple and had married a petty office clerk. She got annoyed at her poor condition. She loved to have frocks, jewels and silver dishes in vain. She dared not visit even her friendly school mate’s house which was richly furnished lest she should be full of despair.

Husband Elated but Wife Depressed

One day, Mr. Loisel and Mme Loisel (Matilda) got an invitation to dinner from the Minister of public instruction and his spouse at their residence. This select invitation caused different reactions in the minds of the couple. The husband got elated to get the select invitation. The wife got irritated and threw the invitation card away. She didn’t have proper clothes or jewellery to wear at the ball. She started shedding tears. She had no desire to have a poor look amidst rich ladies adorning themselves with jewels. She declined to wear natural flowers which would provide her shabby look.

Mme Forestier’s Help

At her husband’s suggestion, Mme Loisel went to Mme forestier’s house. On hearing her story of distress, Mme forestier got ready to lend her, her entire jewellery. However, she borrowed only the diamond necklace.

Mme Loisel at the Ball

Mme Loisel danced at the ball with enthusiasm. She won the hearts of all the men with her pretty looks and elegant smile. She proved a roaring success at the ball. It made her swell with joy.

Pleasure Spoiled

Mme Loisel enjoyed the company of other dancing ladies till dawn. Then she wrapped her shoulders in poor wraps. They hired a carriage and reached home. Both of them were deadily tired. Mr. Loisel went to the apartment to take rest. Mme Loisel removed the wraps from her shoulders before the

glass. Instantly she noticed that the necklace was missing. She started crying.

Loisels' Dismay

Mr Loisel and Mme Loisel looked in the folds of the dress and in the pockets. They could not find the necklace. He went over the track where they had gone on foot. He lodged a report with the police and put an advertisement in the newspapers in vain.

Thought of Replacing Necklace

The Loisels found a chaplet of diamonds in a shop. It was exactly like the lost necklace. They borrowed eighteen thousand francs from lenders and bought the chaplet for thirty six thousand francs. They handed the jewel box to Mrs. Forestier. Mrs. Forestier did not open the jewel box.

Loisels' Changed Living

The Loisels sent away the maid and lived in rented rooms in an attic. Mine Loisel did all the household work. Mr. Loisel worked evenings and nights to earn small wages. They led quite a humble and poor life for ten years. Thus they repaid their loan. Mme Loisel had become a physical wreck.

A Strange Revelation

One day Mrs Loisel happened to meet Mme Forestier while they were taking a walk. She told Mme Forestier how they had replaced her necklace. They had led a miserable life because they had to repay the heavy loan. Mrs. Forestier revealed that her false necklace was only worth five hundred francs.

4. WORD MEANINGS

1. Destiny - fortune
2. Distinguished - marked out
3. Petty - small
4. Incessantly - continuously
5. Tureen - a dish
6. Delighted - merry
7. Exquisite - marvellous
8. Despair - hopelessness, disappointment
9. Spitefully - with envy
10. Occasion - chance
11. Irritated - offended
12. Impatiently - restlessly
13. Stammered - stuttered
14. Stupefied - made stupid
15. Dismay - grief
16. Moist - damp
17. Consequently - as a result
18. Costume - dress

19. Reflected - meditated
20. Exclamation - surprise
21. Economical - careful in spending
22. Hesitating - halting
23. Finally - in the end
24. Pale - yellowish
25. Nevertheless - however
26. Approached - arrived
27. Seemed - appeared
28. Anxious - worried
29. Vexed - distressed
30. Chic - fashionable
31. Humiliating - downgrading
32. Closet - a private room
33. Admirable - praiseworthy
34. Superb - excellent, grand
35. Elegant - graceful
36. Gracious - pleasing
37. Enthusiasm - high spirit
38. Admiration - praise
39. Salons - large and well-fitted room
40. Detained - prevented from going
41. Descended - got down
42. Hailing - calling
43. Wraps - loose scarf or shawl
44. Coachman - cab driver
45. Shivering - trembling
46. Wearily - as if tired
47. Apartment - chamber
48. Already - beforehand, in advance
49. Matter - affair
50. Towards - in the direction
51. Excitedly - out of stimulation
52. Folds - wrapping
53. Cloak - loose upper garment
54. Utterly - totally
55. Cast down - ashamed
56. Track - path
57. Reward - prize
58. Bewilderment - perplexity
59. Frightful - horrible
60. Disaster - misery, calamity
61. Clasp - (here) link
62. Replace - to substitute
63. Chaplet - wreath
64. Possessed - owned
65. Ruinous - (here) false
66. Usurers - moneylenders on interest
67. Depositing - laying, placing
68. Frigid - cold
69. Perceive - notice
70. Robber - thief
71. Horrible - dreadful, frightful
72. Lodgings - place of residence
73. Attic - loft, room in the roof

74. Odious - hateful
75. Hagglng - quarrelling over prices
76. Restored - paid back
77. Crude - rude
78. Awry - twisted
79. Tone - voice
80. Pails - buckets
81. Former - previous, bygone
82. Flattered - given false praise
83. Singular - rare, remarkable
84. Affected - moved in feelings
85. Certainly - by all means
86. Approached - went near
87. Astonished - amazed
88. Familiarly - as if known quite well
89. Stammered - spoke haltingly
90. Miserable - wretched
91. Recall - remember
92. Ball - a social assembly for dancing
93. Content - satisfied
94. Replace - to put back in place
95. Perceive - to see minutely

5. MESSAGE

The story "The Necklace" conveys the message of contentment. It is advisable to count one's blessings instead of yearning for false glory. Unreasonable desires can prove to be disastrous as it did in the case of the Loiseles. Matilda had enough to live with dignity but her desire for the excesses and extravagance deprived her even of the little that she had. Therefore, her story gives us a message that one should live within one's means.

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Read and Find Out - 1

1. What kind of a person is Mme Loisel - why is she always unhappy?

Ans :

Mme Loisel is a dreamy woman. She gives much value to her dreams. She over-looks the realities of life. That is why, she is always unhappy because dreams can't be true. She wants them to be true.

2. What kind of a person is her husband?

Ans :

Her husband is a very simple hearted person. He is an ordinary person. He is a caring husband. He wants to see Mme Loisel happy.

Read and Find Out - 2

1. What fresh problem now disturbs Mme Loisel?

Ans :

The fresh problem is that Mme Loisel doesn't have a pretty and proper dress.

2. How is the problem solved?

Ans :

The problem is solved when her husband gives her four hundred francs. It is to buy a pretty dress.

Read and Find Out - 3

1. What do M. and Mme Loisel do next?

Ans :

M. and Mme Loisel decide to borrow a diamond necklace. It is from her friend Mine Forestier.

2. How do they replace the necklace?

Ans :

They borrow money. They shift to a cheap house. They see every seen possibility. Mme Loisel does all her work herself. They buy a new diamond necklace to replace the lost one.

Think About It

1. The course of Loisel's life changed due to necklace. Comment.

Ans :

Life underwent a lot of change when because of the necklace Loisel fell in a debt trap which forced her to live like an ordinary lower middle class housewife. She started doing all the household chores which a lady of her status normally does. This was good for her as it taught her to cut her coat according to her cloth. People should always try to live within their means. Aspirations have no limits but one should never forget the ground realities. She had a loving husband who always wanted her to stay happy but she didn't want to remain happy with whatever she had. She craved for money and for a good life-style. She pressurised her husband for buying an expensive dress though he couldn't afford to.

2. What was the cause of Matilda's ruin? How could she have avoided it?

Ans :

2015, 2013

Matilda wanted to live life like a queen. Her family background did not permit this. She was not ready to accept her life's realities. She was bent on showing off. She could have avoided it by learning to accept her current situation. Another way could have been to try getting a job or starting a business. One should either try to work hard to realise one's dreams or stop dreaming altogether.

3. What would have happened to Matilda if she had confessed to her friend that she had lost her necklace?

Ans :

2012

At the end of the story we get to know that the necklace Matilda borrowed was made of fake diamonds so it was possible that Matilda and her husband did not have borrow beyond their means. Another angle worth attention is the good nature of her friend. The ease by which she showed all her jewellery to Matilda suggests that even if it was of original diamonds she would not have been angry at getting it lost or she might have told her to pay some of the amount as and when she could.

4. If you were caught in a situation like this, how would you have dealt with it?

Ans :

I would have probably behaved in the same way as Loisel and her husband did. Scarcity of money does not give confidence to most of the people to tell the truth. Most of the people would be caught in similar debt trap as the couple in this story. But in case I had shared a good rapport with my friend, I would have told her the truth and asked for her forgiveness.

Talk About It

1. The characters in this story speak in English. Do you think this is their language? What clues are there in the story about the language its character must be speaking in?

Ans :

No, I don't think that English is the language of the characters mentioned in this story. According to me, the language of its characters is French. We get its clues in the story through use of words like frank, sou, Madame and M. Franc is a unit of money that is used in France and in few other countries. Sou is a former French coin of low value. Madame is a form of address for a woman in French. M. is the abbreviation for Monsieur which is a form of address for a man in French. Moreover the capital of France, Paris has been mentioned in the story, which confirms that the story is set in Paris and the language of its characters is French.

2. Honesty is the best policy. Comment.

Ans :

Honesty is the best policy as an honest person doesn't feel any burden on his conscience on account of any dishonest deed. He doesn't feel any kind of guilt. And as a result, he remains fearless and does not feel intimidated by any thing.

3. We should be content with what life gives us.

Ans :

We should be content with what life gives us. But it doesn't mean that we should stop having dreams and aspirations about a better tomorrow. Because if we stop dreaming, we will not be able to progress and better our conditions. The right policy is to make our best efforts for a better tomorrow. But if luck doesn't favour us and we fail in our efforts, then we should be content with what life offers to us. And we should continue to make our endeavours to improve us.

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS

Multiple Choice Type Questions

1. Who is the author of the story "The Necklace"?
 (a) HG Wells
 (b) Robert W. Peterson
 (c) Guy De Maupassant
 (d) None of these

Ans :

2021

- (c) Guy De Maupassant

2. What all did they do to repay?
 (a) Sent away the maid
 (b) Change their lodgings
 (c) Husband working the evenings and nights too
 (d) All of the above

Ans :

2021

- (d) All of the above

3. What did they do to buy themselves time?
 (a) Stopped answering the friend's calls
 (b) Wrote to her that the jewel needs repair
 (c) Distracted her from the necklace
 (d) None of the above

Ans :

2021

- (b) Wrote to her that the jewel needs repair

4. Why did she utter a cry?
 (a) Seeing other ladies wrapping themselves in fur
 (b) Poverty
 (c) The jewels were not to be seen when she reached home
 (d) None of the above

Ans :

2021, 2009

- (c) The jewels were not to be seen when she reached home

5. How did she look on the day of the ball?

- (a) Elegant (b) Gracious
(c) Full of joy (d) All of these

Ans :

2020

- (d) All of these

6. What solution did her husband come up with?

- (a) Helping her find a dress
(b) Telling her to wear natural flowers in the name of jewels
(c) He didn't suggest anything
(d) None of these

Ans :

2020

- (b) Telling her to wear natural flowers in the name of jewels

7. What did his face look like upon hearing the amount her wife asked from him?

- (a) Pale (b) Fine
(c) Unbothered (d) None of these

Ans :

2020

- (a) Pale

8. How did the husband expect her to react on handing her the letter?

- (a) Happy (b) Sad
(c) Jealous (d) None of these

Ans :

2015

- (a) Happy

9. When would she weep for whole days?

- (a) After dinner
(b) After lunch
(c) After visiting her friend
(d) Any time

Ans :

2015

- (c) After visiting her friend

10. What tortured and angered her?

- (a) Shabby walls (b) Worn chairs
(c) Poverty (d) All of these

Ans :

2015

- (d) All of these

11. What does she think she deserves?

- (a) Suffering (b) Luxury
(c) Delicacies (d) Both (b) and (c)

Ans :

2014

- (d) Both (b) and (c)

12. What was the actual cost of Mme Forestier's necklace?

- (a) Five hundred francs
(b) Ten thousand francs
(c) One hundred francs
(d) Five thousand francs

Ans :

2014

- (a) Five hundred francs

13. How did the loan affect Mrs Loisel's life?

- (a) She learned the odious work of a kitchen
(b) She washed the dishes
(c) She took down the refuse to the street
(d) All of the above

Ans :

2014

- (d) All of the above

14. How much Loiseles had to spend to replace the necklace?

- (a) Eighteen thousand francs
(b) Thirty-six thousand francs
(c) Forty thousand francs
(d) Fifty thousand francs

Ans :

2013

- (b) Thirty-six thousand francs

15. What spoiled Mr and Mrs Loisel pleasure?

- (a) The loss of necklace (b) The loss of the dress
(c) The loss of money (d) All of these

Ans :

2013

- (a) The loss of necklace

16. What did Mrs Loisel borrow from Mme Forestier?

- (a) A bracelet (b) A necklace
(c) A Venetian Cross (d) All of these

Ans :

2012

- (b) A necklace

17. For what had Loisel saved four hundred francs?

- (a) To buy a gun (b) To buy a T.V.
(c) To buy a shirt (d) To buy a bicycle

Ans :

2012

- (a) To buy a gun

18. How did Loisel feel on receiving the invitation?

- (a) Sad' (b) Elated
(c) Puzzled (d) Surprised

Ans :

2011

- (b) Elated

19. Whom was Matilda married to?

- (a) A petty clerk (b) A minister
(c) An officer (d) A businessman

She laid off all the housemaids and did all the household work on her own and never complained about it.

5. Why do you think M. Loisel was a loving husband?

Or

How did M. Loisel try to make his wife happy?

Ans : 2019, 2017, 2014

M. Loisel tried to make his wife happy by offering to give her four hundred francs to buy a suitable costume, that he had saved that sum to buy a gun to join some hunting parties the next summer.

6. Why did Matilda (Mme Loisel) leave the ball in a hurry? What does it show about her character ?

Or

Why was Matilda in a hurry to go to her house after the ball?

Ans : 2018, 2015

Matilda left the ball in a hurry because she did not want to be seen with the ordinary wrap that she carried, as its poverty contrasted with the elegance of the other ladies, who were wrapping themselves in rich furs.

7. How did Loisel and Matilda arrange the money to buy the necklace?

Ans : 2017

The necklace that Loisel and Matilda was going to buy to replace the necklace, was valued at forty thousand francs. However, they could get it for thirty-six thousand francs. So, for them, it was a difficult task because they possessed only eighteen thousand francs. So, they borrowed money from the money lenders with high interest to buy the necklace.

8. Why did Matilda not like to visit her rich friends?

Or

Why did Matilda not want to see her rich friends?

Or

Why did Matilda not like to visit her friend Mme Forestier

Ans : 2016, 2010, 2007

Some of Matilda's schoolmates were rich and full of money power. She felt envious and small in front of these rich schoolmates. Moreover, she would weep from despair and disappointment after visiting them.

9. How did the Loiseles react when they realized that the necklace had been lost?

Ans : 2015

The Loiseles became very unhappy when they understood that the necklace had been lost. They

were sure that the loss of the necklace would make their life miserable because Mr Loisel was a poor clerk. So, it was very difficult for them to replace the lost diamond necklace.

10. What changes came in the lifestyle of Matilda after she had lost the necklace?

Ans : 2012

After the loss of the necklace, Matilda had to sacrifice all her comforts and even all her needs to get money to buy a new necklace and give it to her friend. Because of overwork, tension and lack of care, she became a physical wreck. Happiness of one night changed her whole life's ways and style.

11. What had Matilda's husband saved the money for? Why did he decide to part with that money ?

Ans : 2011

Matilda's husband had saved a substantial amount of money to buy a gun for himself, so that he could join the hunting parties the next summer. But, he gave the entire money to Matilda to buy a pretty dress for herself to go to the ball.

12. How and when did, Matilda find the borrowed necklace missing?

Ans : 2010

Matilda went home from the ball at about four o'clock in the morning. After reaching home, she removed the wraps from her shoulder before the glass so that she could have a final view of her glory. It was at that time that she found her necklace missing.

13. How did Matilda gain time from Mme Forestier for returning her necklace?

Ans : 2009

When the lost necklace was not found, Matilda wrote to her friend Mme Forestier that she had broken the clasp of the necklace, and it had been sent for repairs. She did so to gain time for arranging money to buy a similar necklace.

Download NODIA App for All Sample Papers PDFs

14. What did Matilda's husband bring home one evening? Why was he so elated?

Ans : 2009

One evening, Matilda's husband brought an invitation card inviting them to the residence of the Minister of Public Instruction. He was quite elated to receive the invitation because it was a rare honour, and on top of that, he thought that his wife would feel delighted to attend the ball.

33. Both the couple noticed that _____ was missing after returning from the party.

- (a) Diamond Necklace (b) Money
(c) Diamond earrings (d) Fur wrap

Ans :

2007

(a) Diamond Necklace

34. In reality the necklace borrowed by Matilda from Mme Forestier was not a real diamond necklace and was not worth more than

- (a) 500 Francs (b) 600 Francs
(c) 100 Francs (d) 1000 Francs

Ans :

2006

(a) 500 Francs

35. How much time did they take to repay the loan?

- (a) Two years (b) Five years
(c) Ten years (d) Twenty years

Ans :

2006

(c) Ten years

36. How did Mrs Loisel perform at the ball?

- (a) She had great success
(b) None noticed her
(c) She did not enjoy the ball
(d) All of the above

Ans :

2006

(a) She had great success

37. Monsieur Loisel underestimates the depth of his wife's _____.

- (a) Intelligence
(b) Confidence
(c) Unhappiness
(d) Resourcefulness

Ans :

2005

(c) Unhappiness

38. What change came in the life of Loiseles after raising a big loan?

- (a) They sent away the maid
(b) They changed their lodgings
(c) They rented some rooms in an attic
(d) All of the above

Ans :

2005

(d) All of the above

39. From where did Mrs Loisel borrow the necklace?

- (a) Mme Hillary (b) Mme Forestier
(c) Mme Many (d) Mme Anne

Ans :

2003

(b) Mme Forestier

40. Why did Mrs Loisel throw the invitation spitefully?

- (a) She had no jewellery to wear
(b) She had not any beautiful dress to wear
(c) She did not like parties
(d) Both (a) and (b)

Ans :

2003

(d) Both (a) and (b)

Short Answer Type Questions

1. What is the twist at the end of the story 'The Necklace'?

Ans :

2024

The twist at the end of the story "The Necklace" is the fact that Mathilde borrowed the necklace to appear more beautiful but ended up losing her beauty completely. She borrows Madame Forestier's necklace made with fake diamonds to give the appearance of being rich but lost both her money and looks.

How does the writer's use of the literary device a twist in the tale, towards the story's end, impact the narrative of 'The Necklace'?

Ans :

2023

It significantly impacts the narrative. The revelation that the lost necklace was a mere imitation rather than a valuable piece turns the story on its head. This twist adds irony, and highlights the story's theme of materialism. The impact leaves a lasting impression on our understanding of the characters' choices and the consequences of relentless desire. It transforms the narrative into a cautionary tale, and makes us reflect on the true worth of one's aspirations.

3. How does the story, 'The Necklace' teach a moral lesson on the importance of contentment?

Ans :

2023

The story teaches a powerful moral lesson on the importance of finding contentment in what one already has. Matilda's desire for social status and material possessions led to her own downfall and a decade of hardship. Had Matilda simply been grateful and content with all that she had, she could have avoided a lot of pain.

4. Madam Loisel now knew the horrible life of necessity. Do you think Madam Loisel accepted this change willingly? Give two reasons in support of your answer.

Ans :

2021

Madam Loisel accepted this change willingly because she agreed to shift to a smaller apartment.

Ans :

(a) A petty clerk

2011

20. What did she dream of while having dinner?

- (a) Elegant dinner (b) Exquisite food
(c) Marvellous dishes (d) All of these

Ans :

2010

(d) All of these

21. Who did he receive an invitation from?

- (a) The Minister of Public Instruction
(b) The Minister of Public Health
(c) The Minister of Public Safety
(d) The Minister of Public Education

Ans :

2010, 2006

(a) The Minister of Public Instruction

22. What do you mean by the word “stupefied”?

- (a) Make someone unable to think
(b) Make someone to think
(c) To think
(d) None of these

Ans :

2010

(a) Make someone unable to think

23. What do you mean by the word “dismay”?

- (a) Shock (b) Surprise
(c) Concern (d) All of these

Ans :

2010

(d) all of these

24. What was he planning to do with the money he had saved?

- (a) Buy her a dress
(b) Buy a gun for himself
(c) Invest somewhere
(d) All of these

Ans :

2009

(b) Buy a gun for himself

25. What seemed as the next problem to her?

- (a) Not finding a dress good enough
(b) Having no jewels
(c) There was no problem
(d) None of the above

Ans :

2009

(b) Having no jewels

26. What solution did she come up to?

- (a) Wearing natural flowers in the name of jewels
(b) Asking her friend to lend some of her jewels

(c) Buy some new jewellery

(d) None of the above

Ans :

2009, 2007

(b) Asking her friend to lend some of her jewels

27. What all did she do there?

- (a) Danced with enthusiasm
(b) Intoxicated with pleasure
(c) Thought of all the admiration
(d) All of the above

Ans :

2009

(d) All of the above

28. What all did they do as an attempt to find the necklace?

- (a) He went looking for it
(b) Went to the police
(c) Posted an advertisement for it offering a reward
(d) All of the above

Ans :

2009

(d) All of the above

29. How did they pay for the new jewels?

- (a) Using the money gave by his father
(b) Borrowing
(c) Her money
(d) Both (a) and (b)

Ans :

2008

(d) Both (a) and (b)

30. How long did the struggle continue for?

- (a) 6 months (b) 1 year
(c) 2 years (d) 10 years

Ans :

2008

(d) 10 years

31. What did her friend say when she was told the entire story?

- (a) She was angry
(b) She hated her for that
(c) She cursed her
(d) She told that hers were false

Ans :

2008

(d) She told that hers were false

32. Which word does ‘delicacies’ NOT correspond to?

- (a) Etherealness (b) Elegance
(c) Exquisiteness (d) Robustness

Ans :

2007

(d) Robustness

15. What happened at the ball ? Was her dream fulfilled?

Ans :

2008

At the ball, Matilda was drunk with pleasure and filled with joy. She danced joyfully and excitedly. Fascinated with her charm and beauty, all the men wanted to be introduced to her. The officials of the ministry even desired to dance with her. She danced with passion and forgot everything in the victory of her glory.

16. What was the financial position of Matilda's husband?

Ans :

2007

Matilda's husband was a petty clerk in the office of the Board of Education. He was both poor and economical. He could not afford even to purchase a party dress or some jewels for his wife. She had to attend the dance party after borrowing a necklace from Mrs. Forestier. He had to do menial jobs to earn paltry sums.

17. What were the changes that take place in Matilda's life after the ball?

Ans :

2005

After the ball Matilda lost Mrs. Forestier's necklace. She and her husband bought a chaplet of diamonds by borrowing eighteen thousand francs. Both the husband and wife led a life of misery. Matilda send away the maid. She lived in a rented room and did all the household work. She lived a wretched life for ten years.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. A character arc is the transformation or development of a character throughout a story and refers to the changes a character undergoes as a result of their experiences, challenges, and interactions with other characters.

In the light of the above information, trace the character arc of Matilda in Guy De Maupassants 'The Necklace', in about 120 words.

Ans :

2024

Mathilde Loisel is the protagonist of Guy de Maupassant's The Necklace, a short story that depicts her character arc from a dissatisfied and vain woman to a humble and hardworking one. Mathilde's character arc is driven by the events and consequences of losing a borrowed diamond necklace, which she wears to a high-society party to impress others and escape her middle-class life.

At the beginning of the story, Mathilde is unhappy with her modest lifestyle and marriage. She believes that she deserves more wealth, luxury, and admiration, and she envies her rich

friend Madame Forestier. She is obsessed with appearance and status, and she neglects the simple pleasures and comforts that her husband provides. She is also ungrateful and selfish, as she does not appreciate her husband's efforts to please her and make her happy.

2. Imagine that M. Loisel, from The Necklace by Guy de Maupassant, writes a diary entry, exploring the theme of class and social status, and the nature of social mobility, in the context of his own experience.

Write this diary entry, as M. Loisel, in about 120 words.

Ans :

2023

November 19XX, Wednesday

9:00 pm

9 p.m.

Dear Diary

Today, I recall my experience of class and social status and the predicaments it brought to me and my wife Matilda. Both me and my wife were happy until one night we fell into this ugly trap of upward social mobility which leads to the destruction of houses.

This whole circle of social mobility, from end to top, is quite vicious. The rich gets richer while the poor gets poorer. The middle class gets entirely stuck in between and tries to make ends meet with his little bucks but pretends to be classy. Matilda was too a victim of this fake pretence and this gave us a very tough time for several years when she lost the borrowed necklace. Had she not tried to pretend the upper class that night, we would have been living a different life. People should never lose their happiness for such unattainable dreams.

M. Loisel

3. Mme Forestier writes a diary entry after having met Matilda, knowing the truth and seeing the transformation in her friend. Write a short diary entry as Mme Forestier about your encounter and how you felt.

You may begin like this:

20 th July, Monday	9:00 pm
I couldn't recognise Matilda at all. I wish she had told me the truth about the necklace.	

Ans :

2021

20th July, Monday

9:00 pm

Dear diary,

I couldn't recognise Matilda at all. I wish she had told me the truth about the necklace. She had to undergo a troubled life to repay the price of the

necklace which was actually 400 francs only. She is no more a pretty woman now. I am surprised that despite being sharing good relations with each other she did not share the news about the accidental loss of the piece of jewellery.

I remember that she always criticised her status. But, the hard time has made her realise that one should value their possessions. That's all for now.

Bye

4. Matilda goes home after meeting Mme Forestier after ten years and shares the fact with M Loisel that the necklace was a false one. Write the dialogue between Matilda and M Loisel
Matilda : I don't know how to tell you this but I met Mme Forestier today and she told me that her necklace was

M Loisel : What! I can't believe my ears. That huge debt was for nothing!

Matilda :

.....

M Loisel :

.....

Ans : 2021

Matilda : I don't know how to tell you this but I met Mme Forestier today and she told me that her necklace was an artificial one.

M Loisel : What! I can't believe my ears. That huge debt was for nothing!

Matilda : Ah! What a fool I was! Why it didn't strike me that I should have checked it once with Mme Forestier.

M Loisel : Unbelievable! Did you ask her or did she tell it herself? I mean how the topic started.

Matilda : When I greeted her, she could not recognise me. And the story began from there. Meanwhile, she disclosed that the necklace was not of a real diamond.

M Loisel : We can do nothing now. It is gone.

Matilda : Why not? We can ask her to give back our real diamond. She is a genuine lady and a good friend of mine.

M Loisel : Do as you wish.

5. Your teacher conducted Turn Tables in class, and asked you to put forth your views on 'Frugality in Life is the Ideal Way to Live'.
Write the debate script with points to supplement your stand, both for and against the motion and conclude with your own views.

Ans : 2021

Frugality in Life is the Ideal Way to Live

I have always heard from my parents that a penny saved is a penny earned. For many years, I did

not like their idealism of spend thriftiness. If we have the resources we should use them fully because life is so uncertain. Moreover, a phase in life gone never comes back. So, one should have a big heart to enjoy life to the fullest. But, life taught me a lesson when Covid 19 hit the world and specifically my family badly. During that time the money that my parents saved miserly helped us to sustain. Now, I had understood that we should not waste our resources unnecessarily. If we adopt minimalism, we can help the poor and needy and hence the nation. Spending money on useless things does not serve any purpose. Money keeps changing hands. Life is so uncertain, today's meagre savings can become a great reliever in times of need. So, I believe that 'Frugality in Life is the ideal way to live'.

6. Ostentation and vanity often land people in trouble. Matilda is an apt example of this. Justify.

Or

Matilda wanted to live a life above her status. How did this desire of hers lead to her sufferings?

Ans : 2020, 2019

Matilda always wanted a life above her status. This desire of hers had led her to sufferings as for the party she had borrowed her friend's diamond necklace. After the party when she lost it she decided to bend the truth. She lied that the necklaces' clasp was broken and it was away for mending. She instead bought a very similar looking diamond necklace. Due to that she and her husband were under the debt of many people. They had to shift into a new and a smaller apartment, She had to leave the maid and do everything by herself, She had to bargain for every penny, Her voice had become cracked and she seemed old and weary.

When she told her friend about the four painful years she was shocked and told Matilda that her necklace was an imitation one and it did not cost over five hundred francs.

7. Give the character-sketch of Matilda.

Ans : 2012

Matilda was a pretty and young lady. She was born in the family of clerks and was married to a clerk. Having been born in a poor family she had no dowry, no hopes, no means of becoming known, loved or married by some rich man of dignity. She always suffered from poverty both at the homes of her husband and parents.

She was a short-tempered but tactful lady. She convinced her poor husband to buy her a party dress simply by rejecting the invitation to

the ball. She was of showy nature and loved only delicacies and luxuries. She borrowed a necklace only to be noticed by the spectators. She repented when the necklace was lost. She suffered poverty for ten years after replacing the false necklace with a genuine necklace. She ever remained in distress. She was not a considerate and contented character.

8. Give the character-sketch of Mr. Loisel.

Ans :

2012

Mr. Loisel was a petty clerk in the office of the Board of Education. He had no other source of income. Therefore, he lived from hand to mouth. He was very economical. He ate humble food in cheap dishes. He lived in a humble apartment. He was meek and gentle. He was considerate to the wishes of his short-tempered, pretty and sophisticated wife.

Loisel forgoes buying a gun to purchase a pretty dress for his wife. To keep her in good cheer, he urged her to borrow a necklace from her friend. He tried his level best to search the lost necklace. He was adventurous. He did not hesitate in spending his entire inherited money and even borrowing from money-lenders to replace the lost necklace. He was of flexible nature but a man of good character. He was a loving husband and had poor tastes.

9. Why did Jeanne not recognise her friend?

Or

Why could Mme Forestier not recognize her friend Matilda at the end of the story?

Ans :

2013, 2011

Matilda had to undergo a lot of hardships and miseries to repay the debt. All this had happened because she had lost the necklace she had borrowed from her rich friend Mme Forestier or Jeanne. Because of this debt, they had to move to a cheaper room and even remain without a servant. Matilda had to do all the household work and shopping by herself. She had to fetch water, wash the floor, utensils and dirty clothes by herself. It took them ten years to finally repay the debt. But after those difficult ten years, Matilda now looked like an ordinary woman, wearing simple clothes. She even looked older than her age. That is why, Jeanne was not able to recognise Matilda.

SCAN QR CODE
JOIN NODIA WHATSAPP CHANNEL



Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

She was not convinced. 'No', she replied, "there is nothing more humiliating than to have a shabby air in the midst of rich women."

Then her husband cried out, "How stupid we are! Go and find your friend Madame Forestier and ask her to lend you her jewels."

She uttered a cry of joy. 'It is true!' she said. "I had not thought of that."

- i. Why did she need the jewels?
 - (a) To go to a party of rich people
 - (b) For a photoshoot
 - (c) To get a replica made
 - (d) For wearing them at home
- ii. What did Matilda's husband suggest her?
- iii. Read the following descriptions (a)-(c) and identify which one correctly corresponds to the extract.
 - (a) A debate is a formal discussion on a particular topic, usually with two or more people presenting different viewpoints and arguments.
 - (b) A soliloquy is a speech given by a character alone on stage, which reveals their innermost thoughts and feelings to the audience.
 - (c) A dialogue is a conversation between two or more people as a feature of a book, play, or film.
- iv. What kind of a person is Mme Loisel and why is she always unhappy? Answer in about 40 words.

Ans :

2020

- i. (a) To go to a party of rich people
- ii. Matilda's husband suggested that she should borrow jewels from her rich friend.
- iii. (c) A dialogue is a conversation between two or more people as a feature of a book, play, or film.
- iv. Mme Loisel was a pretty young lady but she belonged to a poor family. She was married to a clerk. She had great aspirations in life. Her poverty and lack of recognition made her angry and unhappy.

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

'No, I am Matilda Loisel'.

Her friend uttered a cry of astonishment, 'Oh!

My poor Matilda! How you have changed!’ “Yes, I have had some hard days since I saw you; and some miserable ones-and all because of you ...”.

- i. Why did Matilda have ‘some hard days’?
- ii. What change had come in Matilda?
- iii. Why did Matilda say that her friend is responsible for the ‘hard days’?
- iv. Which word would correctly replace ‘tough’, in the given sentence from the extract?
Pranutan had a tough time after losing her job.

Ans :

2017

- i. Matilda had some hard days because she and her husband had to pay back the loans they had taken.
- ii. Ten years of poverty and hardship had stolen away Matilda’s youth and beauty. She became a strong and hard woman, who is poorly dressed with untidy hair and red ragged hands.
- iii. Matilda said that her friends is responsible for her ‘hard days’ because they had to take loan to return her friend’s necklace.
- iv. hard

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

She was one of those pretty, young ladies, born as if through an error of destiny, into a family of clerks. She had no dowry, no hopes, no means of becoming known, loved, and married by a man either rich or distinguished; and she allowed herself to many a petty clerk in the office of the Board of Education. She was simple, but she was unhappy.

She suffered incessantly, feeling herself born for all delicacies and luxuries.

- i. State any one inference about Matilda from the given context.
“She could not many a rich and distinguished man.”
- ii. State which of these statements are facts (F) and which ones are opinions (O)?
I. She was born into an ordinary family.
II. She dreamt of being famous and popular.
III. She married a government clerk.
IV. We know she led a simple life.
V. I think she was frustrated at heart.
VI. She perhaps loathed her life.
(a) I, II and IV. (F) III, V and VI (O)

(b) I, III and IV (F) II, V and VI (O)

(c) I, III and V (F) II, IV and VI (O)

(d) II, III and IV (F) I, V and VI (O)

- iii. What kind of person is Mme Loisel- why is she always unhappy? Elaborate in about 40 words, with reference to the extract.
- iv. Which phrase/word would correctly substitute ‘luxuries’ in the given sentence from the extract?
She suffered incessantly, feeling herself from for all delicacies and luxuries.

Ans :

2015

- i. Her middle-class family could not arrange a dowry for her.
- ii. (b) I, III and IV (F) II, V and VI (O)
- iii. Mme. Loisel is a woman who lives in the world of dreams. She gives much value to her dreams and hence overlooks the realities of life. That is why she is always unhappy as her dreams are wild and borne of overambition. They can’t come true.
- iv. extravagances

4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

She went home towards four o’clock in the morning. Her husband had been half asleep in one of the little salons since midnight, with three other gentlemen whose wives were enjoying themselves very much.

He threw around her shoulders the modest wraps they had carried whose poverty clashed with the elegance of the ball costume. She wished to hury away in order not to be noticed by the other women who were wrapping themselves in rich furs.

- i. State any one inference about M Loisel from the given context.
He threw around her shoulders the modest wraps they had carried whose poverty clashed with the elegance of the ball costume.
- ii. State which of the options from I to 4 can be applied with reference to the given question or context: True (T), False (F), Partially or maybe true (PT), Not applicable (NA).
Which of the following interpretations best describes the attitudes of the men and women in the extract?
1. All the women were social beings; the men were private.
2. The men had vanity but the women were modest.

3. The men were reasonably balanced but the women were vain.
4. The men were social beings; the women were private.
- (a) 3 - F 2 - PT, 1 - T, 4 - NA
 (b) 2 - T, 1 - PT, 3 - E 4 - NA
 (c) 4 - T, 1 - F, 2 - PT, 3 - NA
 (d) 3 - T, 2 - F, 1 - PT, 4 - NA
- iii. 'She went home towards four o'clock in the morning'
 What does this description tell us about Matilda? Elaborate in about 40 words, with reference to the extract.
- iv. Which phrase would correctly substitute 'the modest wraps' in the given sentence from the extract?
 "He threw around her shoulders the modest wraps they had carried."

Ans :

2009

- i. M Loisel was a caring husband who didn't want his wife to fall sick due to cold.
- ii. (d) 3 - T, 2 - F, 1 - PT, 4 - NA
- iii. Matilda enjoyed to the hilt at the ball. She danced with enthusiasm and was intoxicated with all the attention she received. The night of the ball had been the realisation of a long cherished dream for her when every eye admired her. She didn't want to leave the party early.
- iv. an ordinary shawl

5. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

How would it have been if she had not lost the necklace? Who knows? How singular is life, and how full of changes!

How small a thing will ruin or save one!

One Sunday as she was taking a walk in the Champs-Elysees to rid herself of the cares of the week, she suddenly perceived a woman walking with a child. It was Mme Forestier, still young, still pretty, still attractive. Mme Loisel was affected. Should she speak to her? Yes, certainly. And now that she had paid, she would tell her all. Why not?

- i. State any one inference about Mme Loisel from the given context.
 'One Sunday as she was taking a walk in the Champs-Elysees to rid herself of the cares of the week'

- ii. State which of the options from I to 4 can be applied with reference to the given statement or context :

True (T), False (F), Partially true (PT), Not applicable (NA).

Mme Loisel says, Wow singular is life, and how full of changes! How small a thing will ruin or save one! Because _____.

1. she had had a remarkable life.
 2. her life had changed for the better.
 3. her stubbornness had wrecked her life.
 4. she had lived an ordinary life.

- (a) 3 - F, 2 - PT, 1 - T, 4 - NA
 (b) 3 - T, 1 - PT, 2 - F, 4 - NA
 (c) 4 - T, 1 - F, 2 - PT, 3 - NA
 (d) 2 - T, 1 - F, 3 - PT, 4 - NA

- iii. 'Mme Loire! was affected. Should she speak to her? Yes certainly. And now that she had paid, she would tell her all. Why not?'
 Why does the author say, 'Mme Loisel was affected? Elaborate in about 40 words, with reference to the extract.

- iv. Which phrase would correctly substitute 'singular' in the given sentence from the extract?
 How singular is life, and how full of changes!

Ans :

2007

- i. Matilda was taking a break after a long week of hard labour.
- ii. (b) 3 - T, 1 - PT, 2 - F, 4 - NA
- iii. Matilda chanced to meet Mrs. Forestier who still looked young and pretty whereas Matilda had grown old and tough because of her blind ambition and vanity. She now decided to confess the loss and replacement of the necklace and face the truth.
- iv. remarkable



- 21.** Who was her father?
 (a) Village Numberdar (b) Village Sarpanch
 (c) Village Tehsildar (d) none of these
Ans : 2009
 (a) Village Numberdar
- 22.** Why did she talk very little?
 (a) she stammered
 (b) other kids mimicked her and made fun of her
 (c) she was an introvert
 (d) none of the above
Ans : 2009
 (b) other kids mimicked her and made fun of her
- 23.** What was the purpose of the Tehsildar's village visit?
 (a) to inaugurate a girl's school
 (b) to address complaints of the village
 (c) to meet the people of the village
 (d) none of these
Ans : 2009
 (a) to inaugurate a girl's school
- 24.** Who is the author of the story "Bholi"?
 (a) KA Abbas (b) Guy De Maupassant
 (c) Mark Twain (d) Sinclair Lewis
Ans : 2009
 (a) KA Abbas
- 25.** How did Ramlal's wife react about sending her girls to school?
 (a) she laughed (b) she got angry
 (c) no reaction (d) she cried
Ans : 2008
 (d) she cried
- 26.** What was Bholi's first reaction on hearing that she was going to school?
 (a) she cried with tears of joy
 (b) she cried with fear
 (c) she screamed
 (d) she was excited
Ans : 2008
 (b) she cried with fear
- 27.** Why did the girls laugh at Bholi?
 (a) at her dress (b) at her looks
 (c) at her stammering (d) all of these
Ans : 2008
 (c) at her stammering
- 28.** Whose paintings did she see in the classroom wall?
 (a) cow (b) goat
 (c) parrot (d) all of these
Ans : 2007
 (d) all of these
- 29.** What according to you, was wrong in Bishamber marrying Bholi?
 (a) his age (b) his limbs
 (c) another village (d) all of these
Ans : 2007
 (a) his age
- 30.** How did he react on seeing Bholi's face?
 (a) got frightened
 (b) asked for compensation
 (c) both of these
 (d) none of these
Ans : 2007
 (b) asked for compensation
- 31.** How does she describe her prospective husband?
 (a) mean (b) greedy
 (c) coward (d) all of these
Ans : 2006
 (d) all of these
- 32.** Who is referred to as the "artist" in the lesson?
 (a) Bholi's friend (b) Bholi
 (c) Bholi's cow (d) Bholi's teacher
Ans : 2006
 (d) Bholi's teacher
- 33.** Who came to marry Bholi?
 (a) Bishamber Nath (b) Hari Nath
 (c) Pran Nath (d) Deena Nath
Ans : 2006
 (a) Bishamber Nath
- 34.** Who was Ramlal's eldest daughter?
 (a) Radha (b) Rama
 (c) Megha (d) Champa
Ans : 2005
 (a) Radha
- 35.** Which post did Ramlal hold in the village?
 (a) Sarpanch (b) Tehsildar
 (c) Numberdar (d) Headmaster
Ans : 2005
 (c) Numberdar

attracted her. The teacher asked her name. Bholi stammered. She kept her head down. The other girls were laughing at her. She kept sitting there even after the last bell. She kept sobbing. The teacher's soft and soothing voice calling her Bholi touched her heart.

Kindly Teacher

The teacher asked Bholi to tell her name. Fearfully, Bholi made an effort. The teacher encouraged her. On the second chance, Bholi succeeded in telling her name. The teacher patted her. She asked Bholi to come to school everyday. Bholi could say the word "yes" properly.

Picture-book

The book contained pictures and words in big black letters. The sight of the pictures made Bholi's heart glad. The teacher's encouraging and soothing words did a miracle. Her heart was beaming with a new hope.

Changes in Village

The village became a small town. The primary school was raised to the high school. The town became a railway station. A cinema hall and a cotton ginning mill were also set up there.

Decision about Bholi's Marriage

Ramlal found a match for Bholi without her consent. His name was Bishamber. He had a big shop, a house of his own and a fat bank balance. He was under fifty and had limps. He was a widower with grown up children. He was from another village. He had no knowledge about Bholi's pock marks and lack of sense. The parents considered Bholi as a witless girl like a dumb cow. She had heard them say so.

Bholi's Wedding Day

Bishamber Nath came to Bholi's house with his marriage party in all splendour. Everybody including Bholi's sister rejoiced at her luck. Bholi was brought to the altar. Bishamber got ready to garland her. A woman removed Bholi's silken veil. The bridegroom got shocked on seeing pock marks on her face. He did not garland Bholi. On the contrary, he demanded five thousand rupees. He did not listen to Ramlal's appeals.

Ramlal's Role

To keep his honour in the village, Ramlal paid five thousand rupees to Bishamber. Then Bishamber got ready to garland Bholi.

Bholi's Role

There was contempt in Bholi's eyes when her veil was slipped back. She threw away the garland and the veil. She asked her father in clear words to take back his money. She declined

to marry the coward and lame old man who was also mean, greedy and contemptible. She was no more a dumb cow. She called Bishamber a heartless creature. She took a vow to remain unmarried lifelong and earn her living as a teacher. She would serve her parents in old age.

4. WORD MEANINGS

1. Stammered - spoke haltingly
2. Interest - fondness, care
3. Expectations - hopes
4. Simpleton - quite simple
5. Cot - bed
6. Perhaps - probably
7. Permanently - for ever
8. Disfigured - made ugly
9. Pock-marks - marks (spots) left by small pox
10. Mimicked - aped, imitated
11. Prosperous - progressive, flourishing
12. Settled - fixed
13. Bridegrooms - male matches
14. Worried - anxious
15. Intelligence - quick understanding
16. Ceremony - religious rites
17. Representative - one who acts for others
18. Consulted - sought counsel
19. Frightened - scared
20. Terror - dread
21. Grip - hold
22. Decent - (here) proper, nice
23. Mend - repair, stitch
24. Shrunk - to have folds
25. Matted - entangled
26. Several - few, not many
27. Squatted - sitting on heels
28. Glad - quite happy
29. Fascinated - attracted
30. Suddenly - instantly
31. Noticed - observed, viewed
32. Daring - having the courage
33. Scurried out - hurried out
34. Lowered - bent low
35. Sobbing - weeping in a suppressed manner
36. Soothing - becalming
37. Command - order
38. Sweat - perspiration
39. Disgrace - humiliate
40. Encouraged - urged
41. Relieved - got a sense of freedom
42. Achievement - attainment
43. Patted - gave mild strokes on the back
44. Affectionately - lovingly
45. Nodded - shook the head
46. Aloud - loudly

CHAPTER 8

BHOLI

1. INTRODUCTION

The Chapter “Bholi” is written by K. A. Abbas. The story of Bholi alias Sulekha takes the readers through the complicated social structures of a section of Indian families that are biased in their attitudes towards daughters. The manner in which Bholi is victimized by the patriarchal mindset of her family and the people around her, evokes both pity and anger. In addition, the ill-treatment meted out to differently abled children as depicted in the story compels the readers to think about such silent evils that plague our society. However, the courageous defiance by Bholi in the end, assures a ray of hope.

2. CHARACTERS

Bholi

Bholi was the fourth daughter of Ramlal. She was neglected by her family and always looked down upon. In fact she was considered a burden. Her life changed when she was sent to school. She was fortunate to have teachers who encouraged her and ensured that she is able to perform well enough academically. Moreover, her teacher's encouragement had instilled in her tremendous confidence. She rejected a marriage proposal because the groom had demanded dowry in order to get married to Bholi.

Bholi's Father

Bholi's father Ramlal had seven children three sons and four daughters, and the youngest of them was Bholi. He was a prosperous man. He loved his children and ways always concerned regarding Bholi especially her wedding. He like other family members considered Bholi as a burden only and therefore was more than willing to get off her married to man who was much elder than Bholi.

Bholi's Teacher

Bholi's teacher was a great source of inspiration in Bholi's life. It was her teacher only who encouraged

her to overcome her fears and gave her the confidence that she too, like other children had the potential to read and write. She supported Bholi's decision of rejecting Bishamber Nath as a groom because he was greedy being.

3. SUMMARY

Bholi, the Simpleton

Since her childhood, Sulekha was called Bholi. She was the fourth daughter of Numberdar, Ramlal. Her brain got damaged when she fell off the cot at the age of ten months. Therefore, she was a little slow and was known as Bholi.

Victim of Small Pox

The pretty girl had an attack of small pox. She had pock-marks all over her body. She started speaking at the age of five. She stammered. She talked little because the children made fun of her.

Bholi's Family

Bholi was born in a prosperous farmer's family. Bholi was the youngest and weakest child of Ramlal. Her brothers were studying in the city. Her sister, Radha, Mangla and Champa were healthy, strong and good looking girls. Ramlal found good bridegrooms for them.

Bholi, the Cause of Ramlal's Anxiety

Bholi had ugly looks and had absence of brain. She was seven years old. A primary school for girls was opened in her village. Ramlal, the revenue official of the village longed to send his daughters to school. His wife objected because no one married an educated girl. However, she agreed to send Bholi to school.

Bholi at the School

Bholi was unwilling to go to school. She pulled her hand away when her father desired to take her to school. She was given a clean dress to wear. Ramlal took her to school. She was afraid of other girls but was glad to be amidst them. They were of her age. She wished to befriend some girl. Bholi looked at pictures on the wall. Their colours

Read and Find Out - 3

1. Why do Bholi's parents accept Bishamber's marriage proposal?

Ans :

Bholi's parents accept Bishamber's marriage proposal because if they don't accept it, she will not be married for the rest of her life.

2. Why does the marriage not take place?

Ans :

The marriage does not take place because the groom demands dowry.

Think About It

1. Bholi had many apprehensions about going to school. What made her feel that she was going to a better place than her home?

Ans :

The day she was going to school her parents were forced to dress her nicely. She was bathed and her hair was properly done. Until then she was not being taken care of. The special treatment she received, made her feel that she was going to a better place.

2. How did Bholi's teacher play an important role in changing the course of her life?

Ans :

Bholi's teacher talked affectionately with Bholi. This gave her the required confidence. Moreover, the teacher's appreciation and encouragement helped her overcome her low morale.

3. Why did Bholi at first agree to an unequal match? Why did she later reject the marriage? What does this tell us about her?

Ans :

It is the tradition in India that girls seldom oppose their parents' choice for a groom. The upbringing of daughters brings a kind of mental conditioning which doesn't give them enough courage to rebel against their parents' wishes. Bholi more or less followed the tradition of being an ideal Indian girl. Later on when the prospective groom depicted his greed for money it repulsed Bholi and made her reject the marriage. This incident highlights the fact that education does produce some positive effects in terms of sense of empowerment. Unlike her sisters, Bholi is educated and has a mind of her own. She is as independent as any modern girl of a big city.

4. Bholi's real name is Sulekha. We are told this right at the beginning. But only in the last but one paragraph of the story is Bholi called Sulekha again. Why do you think she is called Sulekha at that point in the story?

Ans :

The word Bholi means a simpleton. Throughout the story she had been a simpleton hardly expressing her opinion. The word Sulekha means the person with beautiful sense of letters. In this story this word has a larger meaning of being a literate, intelligent and mature individual. After her education Bholi has really changed to Sulekha and her assertion during marriage is her announcement to the world that she is no more a Bholi but Sulekha. She had been a suppressed child since her childhood. She was an innocent girl who didn't have her own say. But her teacher helped her overcome social barriers by encouraging and motivating her. She then becomes more assertive and feels that there is a world beyond.

Download NODIA App for All Sample Papers PDFs

5. Bholi's story must have moved you. Do you think girl children are not treated at par with boys? You are aware that the government has introduced a scheme to save the girl child as the sex ratio is declining. The scheme is called Beti Bachao Beti Padhao. Save the Girl Child. Read about the scheme and design a poster in groups of four and display on the school notice board.

Ans :

In some parts of India, girls children's are not equally treated as boys. Boys are given more benefits. Some families feel that girl child is a burden for them. They think that educating a girl child is useless as one day she has to get married and move to her in-laws house.

Poster

Save Girl Child, Save Nation

Educating a women = Educating a Nation

There is no HE if there is no SHE

Educating Women is equal to developing a society or nation.

Girl Child's are not a burden ; they are a gift from God.

Download NODIA App for All Sample Papers PDFs

BETTER THAN BOOK — IN THE MARKET —

Why students are choosing this book 



School teachers **already** use **this content** to set papers.

Still not sure?

-  Match this **PDF** with your question papers
-  See the similarity yourself

— **Why does this happen?** —

- ✓ Teachers have its **PDF & Word** files
- ✓ Easy access
- ✓ Direct copy-paste questions
- ✓ Same pattern followed

Don't miss out—get the **advantage** today!

47. Astonished - amazed, surprised
48. Slightest - least
49. Blossomed - put forth flowers
50. Throbbled - pulsated
51. Ginning - separate raw cotton from its seeds
52. Proposal - scheme
53. Certainly - definitely
54. Moreover - besides
55. Wonder - to get surprised
56. Witless - foolish
57. Muttered - spoke, uttered
58. Whispered - spoke in low tone
59. Conversation - personal talk
60. Grocer - a dealer in general
61. Wedding - marriage
62. Procession - persons in orderly succession
63. Decorated - adorned
64. Splendour - grandeur
65. Occasion - chance
66. Envious - jealous
67. Auspicious - of good sign
68. Moment - a short period of time
69. Clad - dressed
70. Bridal - relating to marriage
71. Sacred - pure
72. Prompted - urged
73. Veil - mask
74. Glance - look
75. Poised - held in balance
76. Humiliate - downcast
77. Considerate - regard for others
78. Streaming - flowing
79. Placed - put, kept
80. Triumphant - victorious
81. Prospective - would be
82. Contempt - hatred
83. Streak - a long irregular line of colour
84. Lightning - electric flash from clouds
85. Flung - thrown
86. Startled - amazed
87. Thunderstruck - amazed
88. Regard - respect
89. Lamé - disabled in limbs
90. Mean - low-graded
91. Contemptible - hateful
92. Coward - fearful person
93. Violently - rashly, wildly
94. Creature - an animate being
95. Confused - bewildered
96. Bowed - bent
97. Grief- sorrow
98. Steady - firm
99. Satisfaction - gratification
100. Contemplates - meditates

5. MESSAGE

The chapter “Bholi” conveys a clear message that certain evils in the Indian social system must be rooted out. The writer, K. A. Abbas, voices his displeasure about the discrimination between sons and daughters that is practised in rural middle class families. In his own inimitable style, he is critical of the practice of keeping the daughters illiterate. He also brings to light the inhuman reaction of people towards those who are differently abled. This shatters the self-confidence of those affected and pushes them further into darkness. The evil of dowry system is also criticized in the story to convey the message of equality for women and men. Thus, through the story, the author gives the message to build a society where girls will be at par with boys.

FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS

DOWNLOAD NODIA APP

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Read and Find Out - 1

1. Why is Bholi's father worried about her?

Ans :

Bholi's father is worried about her as she has neither good looks nor intelligence. He does not know how he will find a suitable groom for her.

2. For what unusual reasons is Bholi sent to school?

Ans :

2018, 2015, 2012

Bholi is sent to school because there is little chance of her getting married, with her ugly face and lack of sense.

Read and Find Out - 2

1. Does Bholi enjoy her first day at school?

Ans :

Yes, Bholi enjoys her first day at school as she is glad to find so many girls almost of her own age present there. She hopes that one of these girls may become her friend.

2. Does she find her teacher different from the people at home?

Ans :

Yes, she finds her teacher different from the people at home as the teacher is polite and this touches her heart.

6. How did she leave school on the first day?

- (a) sad
- (b) with a ray of hope for new life
- (c) depressed that she'll stay where she is
- (d) none of the above

Ans :

2020

- (b) with a ray of hope for new life

7. What did it take for Bholi to believe she was being taken to a place better than home?

- (a) clean dress
- (b) hair oiling
- (c) a bath
- (d) all of these

Ans :

2015

- (d) all of these

8. Why did she suggest they send Bholi to school?

- (a) there was little chance of her getting married
- (b) her husband couldn't disobey Tehsildar's orders
- (c) she took it to teachers at school to worry about her
- (d) all of the above

Ans :

2015

- (d) all of the above

9. What did the Tehsildar ask Ramlal to do?

- (a) drop him back to the city
- (b) have dinner with him
- (c) send his daughters to school
- (d) none of the above

Ans :

2014

- (c) send his daughters to school

10. How is the situation of the house described?

- (a) poor
- (b) miserable
- (c) prosperous
- (d) fine

Ans :

2014

- (c) prosperous

11. At what age did she begin to speak?

- (a) 2
- (b) 5
- (c) 4
- (d) 1

Ans :

2014

- (b) 5

12. What damaged some part of her brain?

- (a) falling off a cot
- (b) falling off the stairs
- (c) small-pox
- (d) falling off a verandah

Ans :

2013

- (a) falling off a cot

13. What do you mean by the word "simpleton"?

- (a) simple
- (b) foolish
- (c) basic
- (d) none of these

Ans :

2012

- (b) foolish

14. What did Bishamber demand as dowry?

- (a) two thousand rupees
- (b) five thousand rupees
- (c) ten thousand rupees
- (d) twenty thousand rupees

Ans :

2011

- (b) five thousand rupees

15. How did Bholi find the teacher on her very first day in the school?

- (a) cruel
- (b) hard
- (c) kind and loving
- (d) all of these

Ans :

2011

- (c) kind and loving

16. Who was Lakshmi?

- (a) Bholi's mother
- (b) Bholi's cow
- (c) Bholi's teacher
- (d) Bholi's classmate

Ans :

2010

- (b) Bholi's cow

17. How was Bholi treated in the family?

- (a) she was not given new clothes
- (b) none cared to wash her clothes
- (c) none cared to comb her hair
- (d) all of the above

Ans :

2010

- (d) all of the above

18. How many children did Ramlal have?

- (a) four
- (b) five
- (c) six
- (d) seven

Ans :

2010

- (d) seven

19. How many daughters did Ramlal have?

- (a) one
- (b) two
- (c) three
- (d) four

Ans :

2010

- (d) four

20. What was Bholi's real name?

- (a) Champa
- (b) Radha
- (c) Mangla
- (d) Sulekha

Ans :

2009

- (d) Sulekha

Talk About It

1. Bholi's teacher helped her overcome social barriers by encouraging and motivating her. How do you think you can contribute towards changing the social attitudes illustrated in this story?

Ans :

Bholi's teacher has indeed played a commendable job. She gave such encouragement to Bholi which made her face the world. When Bholi was brought to the school, she could hardly speak her name. The teacher provided all help to her and inspired her. She developed the qualities of confidence. It was her efforts which made her challenge the dowry-seeker.

This story plays a very important role in giving message to those people who keep their daughter uneducated. The society should understand that education can do any wonders and can help to do away with curse like dowry. Bholi has shocked the world with her confidence and such serials should be telecast to change the attitude.

2. Should girls be aware of their rights and asserts them? Should girls and boys have the same rights, duties and privileges? What are some of the ways in which society treats them differently? When we speak of 'human rights', do we differentiate between girls rights and boys rights?

Ans :

Yes, according to me girls should be aware of their rights as well as they should assert them. Boys and girls have equal rights and privileges. Even the law has granted them equal rights in property, job, etc. At present, women are excelling in every profession.

The traditional trend to restrict women folk of the house to only domestic chores is still continuing, especially in rural areas. In rural areas, where the education and awareness are less, the boys are favoured than girls to the extent that they are given more nutritious diet and higher education than girls.

People still believe that a person will be able to attain salvation only if his last rites are performed by his son. And the father's name is carried forward only through a son. These false myths are chiefly responsible for girl infanticide. Innumerable girl foetus are destroyed through illegal sex detection. Hence when we speak about human rights, we do not differentiate between the rights of girls and boys. But the real picture is far different and grim than this.

3. Do you think the characters in the story were speaking to each other in English? If not, in

which language were they speaking? (You can get clues from the names of the persons and the non-English words used in the story.)

Ans :

According to me, the characters of the story don't talk in English with each other. Their names Bholi, Bishamber, Ramlal, Radha, Mangla, Champa, Sulekha, Lakshmi, etc. are all Hindi names. Moreover, the use of certain Hindi words like Numberdar, Tehsildar, Pitaji, Sahib, disclose that the characters must be speaking in Hindi among themselves.

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS**Multiple Choice Type Questions**

1. Who is the artist's work of art?
(a) Bholi's friend (b) Bholi
(c) Bholi's cow (d) Bholi's teacher

Ans :

(b) Bholi

2021

2. What did he demand as dowry?
(a) money (b) refrigerator
(c) television (d) all of these

Ans :

(a) money

2021

3. What was in her eyes when the veil was pulled down the second time?
(a) hate (b) fear
(c) contempt (d) none of these

Ans :

(c) contempt

2021

4. What is the meaning of the word "envious"?
(a) jealous
(b) looking down on someone
(c) hatred
(d) none of these

Ans :

(a) jealous

2020

5. Why did Bholi's parents accept Bishamber's marriage proposal?
(a) he has a big shop
(b) he has a house
(c) he has good bank balance
(d) all of the above

Ans :

(d) all of the above

2020

36. Of the four daughters of Ramlal, who was sent to school?

- (a) Radha (b) Mangla
(c) Champa (d) Bholi

Ans :

2005

(d) Bholi

37. How old was Bholi when she suffered an attack of smallpox?

- (a) 2 years old (b) 3 years old
(c) 4 years old (d) 5 years old

Ans :

2004

(a) 2 years old

38. What transformation did education bring in Bholi?

- (a) She became fearless
(b) She became courageous
(c) She became confident
(d) All of the above

Ans :

2004

(d) All of the above

39. Why was Bholi always discriminated in the chapter 'Bholi'?

- (a) She had pock-marks on her face
(b) She stammered
(c) She was a simpleton
(d) All of the above

Ans :

2002

(d) All of the above

40. Why was Ramlal very worried about Bholi?

- (a) She was neither good looking nor intelligent
(b) She was too cunning
(c) She was too talkative and outgoing
(d) All of the above

Ans :

2002

(a) She was neither good looking nor intelligent

2. Do you think Bholi could have confidently refused to marry Bishamber if she wasn't educated? Give reasons.

Ans :

2024, 2021

Without education, she could not have mustered up the courage and confidence to refuse to marry the groom of his parents' choice. Now, she could earn and feed her old parents with self-respect.

How does education play a transformative role in Bholi's life?

Ans :

2023

Education plays a huge transformational role in Bholi's life. It induced in her confidence and self-esteem. It made her able to take right decisions, choose wisely and speak up for her ownself. Education was her weapon to fight against Bishamber and to stand up for herself.

4. How did you feel when you read about Bholi being ignored and ill-treated by her parents as a child?

Ans :

2021

I felt bad about her parents' ill-treatment. She was unfortunate that destiny did not favour her. Her parents' dejection worsened her situation and pushed her even backwards. Parents should always work for the upliftment of their children.

5. Bholi's parents accepted the match for her though Bishamber Nath was nearly the same age as her father. Bholi also accepted her parents' decision without voicing her opinion.

(a) What does this tell you about the social conditions prevailing in our society?

(b) How do you think these problems can be addressed?

Ans :

2021

(a) This story tells us that girls were considered a burden on their parents and they were not discussed on any matter not even for selecting their life partner. Earlier girls too accepted it as their fate and did not raise voices against any partiality.

(b) These problems can be addressed by educating the whole society. People should be made aware that men and women have equal rights.

6. Bholi was a neglected child. Explain.

Ans :

2020

No new clothes for Bholi, old dresses passed on to her, nobody cared for or mended her clothes, parents sent her to school as they thought there was a little chance of her getting married.

NODIA

Short Answer Type Questions

1. Why did Bholi's teacher feel like an artist admiring her masterpiece?

Ans :

2024

Bholi's teacher felt like an artist admiring her masterpiece, when she realised how her soothing words, education, and motivation gave confidence to Bholi to face the world and transformed her from a girl who was unsure about herself and a backward child, to a bold and confident girl.

out by initially sending mature and wise people from one culture to the other to establish contact before deciding to wage war. Think-Tank had sent an initial probe, but the crew members of the probe were not sufficiently intelligent or mature to understand Earth's culture. That is why they literally interpreted the nursery rhymes and caused misunderstanding in the mind of Think-Tank.

Another beautiful message of the play is that half-fed knowledge is always dangerous.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

6. NCERT TEXTBOOK QUESTIONS

Read And Find Out - 1

1. Why was the twentieth century called "The Era of the Books" ?

Or

What does the Historian say about the twentieth century ?

Ans : 2010, 2009, 2008

Twentieth century was called the 'Era of the book' because there were books about everything. Books taught people how to, and when to, and where to, and why to. They illustrated, educated punctuated and even decorated.

2. Who tried to invade the earth in the twenty-first century ?

Ans :

The Martain tried to invade the earth int he twenty-first century.

Read And Find Out - 2

1. What guesses are made by Think-Tank about the books found on earth ?

Ans :

Think-Tank of Mars guesses so many things about the books found on the earth. He guesses that they may be hats, sandwiches and secret codes.

Think About It

1. Noodle avoids offending Think-Tank but at the same time he corrects his mistakes. How does he manage to do that ?

Ans :

Think-Tank is a great and mighty character who is Commander-in-Chief. He is taken to be the most powerful and intelligent creature. Noodle is

a very clever creature. He knows that Think-Tank being Commander-in-Chief has to be obeyed. There is no escape from his clutches. So very cleverly, Noodle keeps on praising Think-Tank and also passing sarcastic remarks. The adjectives used by Noodle make the situation all the more exaggerated.

2. If you were in Noodle's place, how would you handle Think-Tank's mistakes ?

Ans :

If I had been in place of Noodle, I would not have been able to praise Think-Tank for no reason. His behaviour might have turned the situation into a conflict. At some places when things sound too exaggerated, I might have acid harsh. It is very difficult to act like Noodle who is the best flatterer in the play.

3. Do you think books are being replaced by the electronic media? Can we do away with books altogether?

Ans :

In a way Yes we can say that books are being replaced by the electronic media . Most of the children no longer read story books and prefer to watch television and use internet. Although textbooks are still there but they may soon be replaced by electronic version. Books have their own utility value because one can read a book at his own pace and a book does not need to be powered by electricity. But as the technology is advancing and newer versions of it are being discovered every day a time may come when books will become a thing of the past.

4. Why are books referred to as a man's best companion ? Which is your favourite book and why ? Write a paragraph about that book ?

Ans :

Books are regarded as the man's best friends as they have more patience than human beings. We can visit any country, talk to anybody, fly to any heights through books. Books are those companions which never desert us when we fall prey to bad times. They are constant source of our happiness.

I have always enjoyed reading books and till now I have read innumerable books. But the book which has left deep impact on my mind is "The Wings of Fire". This book is the autobiography of our former President Dr. Abdul Kalam. It gives such a joy to know that how a simple boy rose to become the President of India. No angle of his life has been left out. Very minute details are included, which make the work very interesting.

17. Why were new and decent dresses given to Bholi when she started going to the school?

Ans : 2007

Bholi was the youngest daughter of the revenue official Ramlal. He was worried about the reputation of his family in front of the teachers and other school girls, if Bholi was not sent to the school properly dressed. Because of this reason, Bholi was given dresses she had never worn before.

18. How did Bholi's teacher encourage her to speak without stammering?

Ans : 2005

Bholi's teacher encouraged her by trying to convince her that one day she would be the most learned one in the village, if she kept on studying. Then people would not laugh at her but listen to her with respect, at that time she would also be able to speak without the slightest stammer.

19. Why were the relatives surprised when Bholi started speaking and refused to marry Bishamber?

Ans : 2004

Bholi was not able to speak properly and had stammered since her childhood. But that day, she had spoken in a clear and loud voice asking Bishamber to return the five thousand rupees. Moreover, her courage in refusing to marry Bishamber for being greedy and humiliating her father, startled everybody.

20. What did Bholi relate the pictures in the school wall to ?

Ans : 2002

There were a lot of pictures on the school wall. Bholi related the picture of a horse with that of the Tehsildar's horse, the picture of a goat with the goat in her neighbourhood, the picture of parrot she related to the parrots she had seen in the mango orchards and the cow looked like their cow Lakshmi.

friends because of my pock-marked face. People used to call me Bholi because they considered me a simpleton whom nobody would marry. My teacher showed me a world where my stammering voice and pockmarked face didn't define me with her patience and kind words. Where others saw limitations, she saw potential in me. I've discovered my voice in education. I defied injustice today by declining to wed a man who treated me like a commodity. My education has given me the confidence to dream bigger and to challenge social norms.

Bholi

2. You and your friend have a conversation about prevalent discrimination between boys and girls, even today. Write the dialogue. You may begin like this:

Friend: I don't think discrimination in terms of gender is a thing of the past.

You:

Friend: Hmmm. Yes, I agree, though we are in the 21st century it continues blatantly in many parts of the country.

You:

Ans : 2021

Friend : I don't think discrimination in terms of gender is a thing of the past.

You : No, we are living in the 21st century where girls and boys are treated equally.

Friend : Hmmm. Yes, I agree, though we are in the 21st century it still continues blatantly in many parts of the country.

You : Exceptions are always there. Some states of India still face gender discrimination. I think our government is doing a lot to curb this practice. The 100% equality can be brought in only when the public participates.

Friend : What can we do?

You: We should educate our children and spread awareness among adults to stop discrimination among boys and girls.

Friend: I think you are right.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. Imagine that Bholi writes a diary entry, exploring the themes of 'Girl Child' and 'Impact of Education', in the context of her own experiences. Write this diary entry, as Bholi.

Ans : 2024

February 20XX, Monday
9:00 pm

Dear Diary,

Today, I am feeling utmost proud of myself for rejecting the marriage with the old man (Bishamber Nath). From the moment I was born, I was ridiculed by my family members and

3. After reading Bholi's story you decide to write a blog on the importance of educating the girl child and how it empowers her. Write that blog expressing your views.

Ans : 2021

Power of Education

Yesterday, I read the story of Bholi, a neglected child. It provoked me to rethink the importance of education; especially for a girl child. They say, "A teacher affects eternity, you never know how much the impact lasts". Additionally, a mother is

- (a) She was not intimidated by the new environment.
 - (b) She knew a good deal about animals and colours.
 - (c) She was observant by nature.
 - (d) She must have known every nook and corner in the village.
- iii. And suddenly Bholi noticed that the teacher was standing by her side, smiling at her' this changed something in Bholi. Elaborate in about 40 words, with reference to the extract.
- iv. Which word or phrase would correctly substitute 'orchard' as given in the extract?
The parrot was green like the parrots she had seen in the mango orchard.

Ans :

2020

- i. She was overwhelmed by everything in school: the pictures, the students, and the teacher.
- ii. False
- iii. The teacher was polite and kind to Bholi who had never been treated like this by anyone. She recognized Bholi's low confidence and told her that with practice she could become a learned person who could speak without stammering. This filled little Bholi with hope and led to a change in the course of her life.
- iv. fruit garden or plantation.

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"What's the matter with you, you fool? Shouted Ramlal. "I am only taking you to school." Then he told his wife, "Let her wear some decent clothes today or else what will the teachers and the other school girls think of us when they see her? New clothes had never been made for Bholi. The old dresses of her sisters were passed on to her. No one cared to mend or wash her clothes. But today she was lucky to receive a clean dress which had shrunk after many washings and no longer fitted Champa. She was even bathed and oil was rubbed into her dry and matted hair. Only then did she believe that she was being taken to a place better than her home! When they reached the school, the children were already in their classrooms."

- i. Why was Bholi's hair matted?
- ii. State TRUE or FALSE.
None of the terms (a)-(d) can be applied to the statement - What's the matter with you, you fool?
(a) A hypothesis - a proposed explanation for a phenomenon

- (b) An assumption - something that is taken for granted or assumed to be true
- (c) A statement - a definite or clear expression of something in speech or writing.
- (d) A premise - a proposition that forms the basis of an argument

- iii. Bholi had many apprehensions about going to school. What made her feel that she was going to a better place than her home? Answer in about 40 words.
- iv. How did Bholi feel at the end of her first day in school?

Ans :

2017

- i. Bholi's hair was matted because it was never oiled or combed.
- ii. True
- iii. Bholi had many apprehensions about going to school because the day she was going to school she was forced by her parents to dress nicely. She was bathed and her hair was oiled. She was even given a clean dress to wear. The special way in which everyone treated her made her feel that she was going to a better place.
- iv. Hopeful and elated

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

Ramlal was thunderstruck. The guests began to whisper, "So shameless! So ugly and so shameless." "Bholi, are you crazy?" shouted Ramlal. "You want to disgrace your family? Have some regard for our izzat!"

- i. Why was Ramlal 'thunderstruck'?
- ii. State true or false.
None of the terms (a)-(d) can be applied to the statement — Bholi refused for the marriage because Bishamber had demanded dowry.
(a) A hypothesis - a proposed explanation for a phenomenon
(b) An assumption - something that is taken for granted or assumed to be true
(c) A hyperbole - exaggerated statements or claims not meant to be taken literally
(d) A premise - a proposition that forms the basis of an argument

8. The story, 'Bholi' throws light on some social evils being practised in our society. Bholi took a stand and succeeded in overcoming social barriers. What can you contribute to change the social attitudes illustrated in the story?

Ans :

2014

In our society, we find that social evils are being practised due to illiteracy and ignorance. In the story, we see that Bholi is a classic example of how the social evils deprived her of getting equal opportunities. The social attitudes, particularly in Indian villages, are making the girls underprivileged and discriminated against to get their rights in the society.

In the story, we see that Bholi's teacher helped her overcome social barriers by encouraging and motivating her to understand her rights in the society. Bholi took a stand and succeeded in overcoming social barriers, challenging the age-old superstitions - dowry and child marriage.

We can challenge these social barriers like dowry and male domination by empowering the women through spreading the light of education among them. We can contribute towards changing the social attitudes illustrated in the story by educating the people, especially girls because education makes them self-confident, courageous, responsible and intelligent.

9. On the basis of your understanding of the story, sketch the character of Bholi and describe the role the teacher played in her life.

Or

Bholi was known to be "dumb cow". How did she turn out to be an outspoken and fearless girl ?

Or

On the basis of your understanding of the story, sketch the character of Bholi.

Ans :

2013, 2012, 2011

Bholi was a simpleton. She lacked sense, her body was disfigured with the pockmarks and she looked ugly. Moreover, she stammered while speaking. That is why, she was ignored and was often laughed at. Therefore, she suffered from inferiority complex and felt ashamed of herself.

But with the encouragement and affection of her teacher, her entire life changed for the better. It was her education which moulded her into a bold and courageous girl. She could now take her own decisions and could not be cowed down by anyone. She refused to marry the man, who humiliated her father. On top of that, she did not stammer anymore and spoke clearly. It was all due to the role her teacher played in her life, which transformed her into a girl who was bold

enough to take independent decisions. At the end, she was determined to be a teacher in the school from where she had gained a lot.

10. Why did Bholi at first agree to an unequal match? Why did she later reject the marriage? What does this tell us about her?

Ans :

2010

At first, Bholi agreed to marry Bishamber, an aged grocer, not because of her own choice and consent but because of her parents' choice. She knew that it was absolutely an unequal match. Even then Bholi agreed and said, "I was willing to marry this lame old man for the sake of izzat of my parents."

Bholi later rejected the marriage because she came to know that Bishamber was greedy, mean and contemptible. She was not a dumb cow, a stammering fool. She could speak well. She understood the social evils - the injustice to a backward girl. So, she threw the garland into the fire. Bholi proved herself to be a fearless, intelligent, responsible and confident girl. Bholi's example shows that social barriers and attitudes towards girls can be challenged through proper education.

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

The lady teacher who was in the class was saying something to the girls but Bholi could understand nothing. She looked at the pictures on the wall. The colours fascinated her-the horse was brown just like the horse on which the Tehsildar had come to visit their village; the goat was black like the goat of their neighbour; the parrot was green like the parrots she had seen in the mango orchard; and the cow was just like their Lakshmi. And suddenly Bholi noticed that the teacher was standing by her side, smiling at her

- i. State any one inference about Bholi from the given context.

The lady teacher who was in the class was saying something to the girls but Bholi could understand nothing.

- ii. State TRUE or FALSE.

None of the options from (a)-(d) can be applied with reference to the given question or context :

What does the fact that Bholi could associate the colours in the pictures with the real animals prove?

the first teacher of a child. If a mother is educated she can make a difference to the whole family's thought process. Education broadens her intellect and awareness. Thus, she safeguards herself from dominating men in society. Bholi's parents were marrying her off to a lame, greedy and middle-aged man. But, the power of education made her capable of raising her voice against it. Besides, she was confident enough to face the consequences of challenging the age-old stereotypes. Today, women can work in any field and earn money equal to their male counterparts. We must try to narrow the gap of gender discrimination by educating our girl children.

4. Imagine you are Bholi and you have been invited by a girl's secondary school in another village to address a group of students about being independent, fearless and breaking stereotypes. Write that speech.

Ans :

2021

Hello students!

It is an honour to stand here and share my life experiences with you. Today, you find me a confident and self-dependent girl. But it was totally opposite before I joined a school. I was fearful, dependent, ignorant and a stammerer. But, my school helped me to get educated and my teacher supported me in bringing out my hidden confidence.

Education is a weapon. You get a chance to explore your latent talents and capabilities through education which makes you fearless. A confident person can distinguish between right and wrong. You must think twice before accepting the stereotypes laid down by society for us. Through education, I could muster up the courage to refuse to marry a greedy man who disgraced my parents. Today, I can earn like my brother and give financial support to my old parents. In the end, I want to say that you must educate yourself and show your real worth to the world.

Good Luck to all of you!

5. What do you know about Bishambar Nath? Why did Bholi refuse to marry him?

Ans :

2020

Bishambar Nath was a middle aged man. He was a well-to-do grocer and lived in another village. He was a widower and had children from his first wife. He was of the same age as Bholi's father and was a rich man. He owned a house, a shop and much money in the bank. When he showed his willingness to marry Bholi, her parents were more than happy that she would get married to someone who was not asking for any dowry.

Bholi too agreed to the match at first to fulfil her parents wishes. Later on, she rejected the marriage when the bridegroom asked for dowry. This tells us that Bholi was not a timid and dumb girl. She was aware of her rights. She also knew how to fight for her own dignity and feared no-one. She had become confident and bold after being educated. So she refused to marry a lame, old, greedy man, Bishambar Nath.

6. 'Don't you worry, Pitaji! In your old age I will serve you and mother.' Through this statement the narrator wants to highlight the moral values Bholi was imbued with. Based on the reading of the lesson, what made Bholi aware of her rights and how did she use them?

Ans :

2016

'Don't you worry, Pitaji! In your old age I will serve you and mother.' Through this bold statement of Bholi (now Sulekha), we understand her sense of responsibility, courage and confidence in life.

It is the teacher of her school who inculcated a sense of responsibility in Bholi and taught her how to lead a respectable life. She made her aware of her rights in the society in order to change social norms.

Bholi is the narrator's voice in story that represents the drama of her life. Once she was a simpleton - a dumb cow, now a responsible, fearless and intelligent woman to perform her basic rights. In the context, Bholi refused to marry greedy Bishambar, and proved the woman's rights, assuring her parents that she would shoulder their responsibility.

7. Bholi was believed to be a 'dumb cow'. What turned her into a fearless, bold and confident girl?

Ans :

2016, 2010

There is no doubt that Bholi was believed to be a 'dumb cow'. Everybody used to call her Bholi, the simpleton, because she stammered. But, the teacher's love, inspiration and affection impressed her a lot. The teacher taught her how to lead a respectable life. She motivated her to be the most educated person in the village. So, Bholi got a new hope and a new life at school. It is her teacher who changed her life and brought a sea change in her personality.

In the end of the story we see that Bholi's refusal to marry greedy Bishambar proved that she was courageous enough and could distinguish between right and wrong. Thus, it is her education and the teacher's help that turned her into a fearless, bold and confident girl.

- iii. What had Bholi done to make the guests react in this manner?
- iv. Which word would correctly replace 'mad', in the given sentence from the extract?
Vinayak acted in a mad manner by throwing articles at his boss.

Ans :

2015

- i. Ramlal was 'thunderstruck' because Bholi had refused to marry Bishamber.
- ii. True
- iii. Bholi had stopped her marriage by throwing the garland that Bishamber was going to place round her neck into the fire. She also threw away her veil and asked her father to take back his money as she was not going to marry Bishamber. All this made the guests react in this manner.
- iv. crazy

4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

Bholi was seven years old when Mangla was married. The same year a primary school for girls was opened in their village. The Tehsildar Sahib came to perform its opening ceremony. He said to Ramlal, "As a revenue official you are the representative of the government in the village and so you must set an example to the villagers."

- i. When did the Tehsildar come to Bholi's Village?
- ii. Which kind of example must be set by Ramlal as per the Tehsildar?
- iii. Why did the Tehsildar come to Ramlal's village?
- iv. How was this event significant for Bholi?

Ans :

2011

- i. The Tehsildar Shahib had come to the village to open the primary school for girls.
- ii. As per the Tehsildar, Ramlal must set an example by sending his daughter to school.
- iii. The Tehsildar came to Ramlal's village to perform the opening ceremony of a girls school.
- iv. Due to the opening of a primary school in her village, Bholi was sent to the village school. This transformed her into a bold girl. Her teacher's hope and affection gave her a new hope and new life. As a result of this, she became a sharp, outspoken and fearless girl.

5. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"Yes, certainly," his wife said. "Bholi will be lucky to get such a well-to-do bridegroom. A big shop, a house of his own and I hear several thousand in the bank. Moreover, he is not asking for any dowry."

"That's right, but he is not so young, you know — almost the same age as I am — and he also limps. Moreover, the children from his first wife are quite grown up."

- i. State any one inference about Bishamber from the given context.
"Moreover, he is not asking for any dowry."
- ii. State which of the options from (a) to (d) cannot be associated with social maladies as mentioned in the given extract?
 - (a) Remarriage for men was an option but not for women.
 - (b) A rich man could marry a girl young enough for his daughter.
 - (c) A physical or other handicap didn't matter in a man's marriage.
 - (d) The more ordinary a girl, the bigger the demand for dowry
- iii. The extract clearly mentions the reasons why Bishamber was considered a suitable groom for Bholi. What apprehensions did Ramlal and his wife have other than those mentioned in the extract? Elaborate in about 40 words, with reference to the extract.
- iv. Which phrase would correctly substitute 'limps' in the given sentence from the extract? That's right, but he is not so young, you know — almost the same age as I am — and he also limps.

Ans :

2005

- i. For Bholi's family, that had many daughters, Bishamber was a good catch.
- ii. (d) The more ordinary a girl, the bigger the demand for dowry
- iii. Bholi's father was worried about her as she had neither good looks nor intelligence. He did not know how he would find a suitable groom for her. Her mother thought she was a burden because she had pock-marks on her face and would therefore, need a big dowry.
- iv. hobbles



7. Why was Sulekha nicknamed Bholi?

Ans :

2016

When ten months old she fell off from the cot. Head and some part of her brain got damaged, stammered. She remained a backward child and came to be known as Bholi, the simpleton.

8. How did Bholi console her father in the end?

Or

How did Bholi console her father after she had refused to marry Bishamber?

Ans :

2016, 2015

Bholi consoled her father that even if she did not get married, she would take care of her parents in their old age. She also tells them that she would teach in the same school where she had learnt so much.

9. What two actions did Bholi take to stop her marriage to Bishamber ?

Ans :

2016

Bholi's marriage was going to take place with Bishamber who himself was forty five or fifty years old. He also limped and had two children from his first wife. Even then he demanded 5000 rupees as dowry. Bholi stopped the marriage by throwing away the garland in the fair. She threw away the veil and asked her father to take back the money and refused to marry Bishamber.

10. Why did Bishamber's marriage with Bholi not take place?

Ans :

2015

Bishamber's marriage with Bholi did not take place because at the time of garland ceremony, he saw pock-marks on Bholi's face and demanded five thousand rupees. At this Bholi refused to marry such a greedy person and threw the garland into the fire.

11. What kind of mother was Ramlal's wife?

Or

What kind of a mother, do you think, Ramlal's wife was?

Ans :

2015, 2012

Ramlal's wife, mother of Bholi, was quite indifferent to Bholi. She thought that she was a burden on them. Secondly, her consent to Bholi's marriage with greedy Bishamber, shows that she was blind to social evils due to her illiteracy and ignorance.

12. How did the teacher build up Bholi's confidence on her first day at school?

Ans :

2014

On the first day at school, Bholi was very

frightened. When her teacher asked her name, she only stammered. At this, other children laughed at her, but her teacher motivated her to speak affectionately. At last she was able to speak her name to her teacher. Thus, the teacher built up Bholi's confidence on her first day at school.

13. Why was Ramlal worried about Bholi and not about his other children?

Ans :

2013

Numberdar Ramlal was worried about his fourth child Bholi because her entire body was permanently disfigured by deep black pock-marks due to the attack of small pox. Secondly, she had neither good looks nor intelligence, and stammered from childhood due to her accident. Lastly, he was worried about her marriage because of her ugly face and lack of sense.

14. When did Bholi begin to believe that she was going to a better place than her home?

Or

When did Bholi realize that she was going to a better place than her home?

Ans :

2012, 2010

When Ramlal decide to send Bholi to school and asked her to come to school along with him, she was frightened because she did not know anything about school. She refused to go school. But, when she was dressed up properly with a clean dress, bathed and oiled her hair, she thought that she was going to a place better than her home.

**FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS
DOWNLOAD NODIA APP**

15. Why did Ramlal not send all his daughters to school?

Ans :

2009

Ramlal had four daughters. Their names were Radha, Mangla, Champa and Bholi. The Tehsildar had asked Ramlal to send his daughters to school. Ramlal dared not disobey the Tehsildar. However, Ramlal did not send all his daughters to school because three of them were already married.

16. In what respect was Bholi different from her sisters?

Ans :

2008

Bholi was the weakest and youngest child of Ramlal. Bholi had ugly looks and absence of brain. Her sisters Radha, Mangla and Champa were healthy, strong and good looking. They had been happily married.

book. There are two thousand books stored in a library. Martians have never seen such books in their lives. So they make wild guesses about the books. Great and Mighty Think-Tank makes a ridiculous guess about the books. He identifies books as sandwiches.

Books As Sandwiches

Think-Tank identifies that those peculiar items (books) are nothing but sandwiches which are the staple diet of the Earthlings. He identifies the library as a store of hay. To confirm his theory that those items (books) are actually sandwiches, he asks captain Omega to eat one of them. At last, Oop bites down on a corner of the book. He doesn't find it delicious. Noodle intervenes and saves the situation. He tells that he has noticed through films that the Earthlings don't eat those sandwiches. They are actually communication devices. Think-Tank orders Omega to listen to them. Omega takes a book and brings it close to his ears. But he hears nothing. Noodle again saves the situation. He discloses that the Earthlings don't listen to sandwiches (books) but they open and watch them. Think-Tank gives his judgement. He declares that those sandwiches are not for ear communication. They are for eye communication. He orders captain Omega to observe a large colourful sandwich (book) and tell what he has observed.

Misinterpretation of Rhymes

Oop sees thousands of little lines and dots alongside the pictures on them. Think-Tank feels that the Earthlings are not as primitive as they have thought. He orders to find out the real meaning of the code language. Clever Noodle manages the situation. He suggests that their space people should be given vitamins to increase their intelligence. Vitamins are brought and everyone pops the vitamins into their mouth.

Rhymes of 'Mistress Mary'

Omega reads the rhyme of 'Mistress Mary'. Think-Tank interprets the rhymes. He declares that the Earthlings have discovered how to combine agriculture with mining. They can actually grow crops of rare metals such as silver. He interprets that 'cockleshells' are actually explosives and the Earthlings can also grow high explosives.

Rhyme of 'Hey Diddle Diddle!'

Then Iota reads the "Hey diddle!" Think Tank finds this rhyme more alarming. The Earthlings have reacted to a high level of civilisation. They have taught their domestic animal's music culture and space techniques. They may be launching an interplanetary attack on million cows soon.

Rhyme of 'Humpty Dumpty'

Opp shows Think-Tank a picture of Humpty Dumpty. He looks like Think Tank. Think-Tank suddenly screams. He declares that the Earthlings have seen him. They are after him. They plan to capture Mars Central Central Control and him. He orders Noodle to prepare a space capsule for him.

Orders for Evacuation of Mars

Think-Tank orders the space people to leave Earth at once. He tells Omega that they will go a hundred Million miles away from mars. He even orders the invasion fleet to evacuate the entire planet of Mars.

A Book of Nursery Rhymes Saves the World

Historian chuckles that how one dusty old book of nursery rhymes 'Mother Goose' saves the world from a Martian invasion. Historian also informs that the wise and wonderful Noodle replaces great and mighty Think Tank. Friendly relations are resumed between the Earthlings and Martians. The people of Earth teach Martians the differences between sandwiches and books.

4. WORD MEANINGS

1. Historian - an expert in History
2. Era - period of time
3. Zulus - ethnic group of people
4. Easel - wooden frame to support a board
5. Peevishly - feeling irritation
6. Apprentice - trainee
7. Primitive - very ancient
8. Riffing - turning pages
9. Intellectually - showing intellect
10. Barn - large farm building for storing grain
11. Crew - group of people who operate in a ship or aircraft
12. Haberdashery - shop selling clothes and other things

5. MESSAGE

The play "The book That Saved The Earth" Conveys a message that misunderstanding of cultural differences between various races can cause confusion and conflict. The confusion in the mid of Think-Tank occurred due to the literal interpretation of the nursery rhymes in the book- 'Mother Goose'. to ensure that conflicts are checked so that peace and harmony are maintained, cultural differences should be sorted

CHAPTER 9

THE BOOK THAT SAVED THE EARTH

1. INTRODUCTION

The play 'The Book That Saved The Earth' is set in the twenty-fifth century. The Historian of the 'Museum of Ancient History : Department of the Twentieth Century' tells the audience that the twentieth century was often called the Era of the Book, because in those days there were books about everything. She further tells the audience that the strangest thing a book ever did was to save the Earth from the Martian invasion in the year 2040.

2. CHARACTERS

Think Tank

The Think-Tank may be a living being from Mars who has a large and oval head. He wears a protracted gown embellished with stars and circles. He considers himself to be the foremost powerful and intelligent creature within the whole universe. He thinks himself to be the ruler of Mars and commands the Mars area. He is the leader of a crew that has captain Omega, Lieutenant Iota, and Sergeant Oop and apprentice Noodle. He likes to be praised owing to his intelligence and authority. As he's from Mars, he considers books as communication sandwiches. He smacks his mirror because it delays in complimentary him. He boasts of his intelligence and power however decides to evacuate his planet and escapes as shortly as he gets to understand that the folks from Earth had planned to take management the Mars.

Noodle

Noodle is the apprentice of Think-Tank. He is a smart and intelligent fellow. Though he is the one to make the right decisions, he makes sure that his boss gets all the praise. This shows his modesty and humility. He is good at handling tasks by himself. He is wise and uses logical reasoning, which is evident in the way he recognizes that the books are some means of communication. He

is also a great leader, which can be seen in the conclusion of the play. After 500 years, the people of earth are in good relationship with Martians with Noodle as the commander.

3. SUMMARY

Introduction

The play is set in the twenty-fifth century. But Historian turns on the hysteroscope back. He shows a very important historical event that took place in the twentieth century. So all the actions in the play and characters are set in the 20th

Wintory of Martian Invasion

The play 'The Book that Saved the Earth' describes a great historical event of 2040. It was the Martian invasion on the planet Earth. However, that invasion was averted. Surprisingly, an old book of rhymes 'Mother Goose' was able to avert that disaster and it saved the world from Martian invasion.

Great and Mightly Think Tank

Great and Mightly Think Tank was the Commander-in-Chief and the ruler of Mars. He behaved like a despot. He relished being praised and flattered by all who were under him. He was called the most powerful and the most intelligent creature in the whole universe. He was feared and obeyed. No one dared to disagree or argue with him. Disobedience of great and Mightly Think Tank was unimaginable.

He ordered apprentice Noodle to make him talk to their manned space probe to the planet Earth. He looked into his magical minor and felt satisfied. He declared that Martians are a handsome race in comparison to the ugly Earthlings.

Think Tank Makes Wild Guesses About Books

Captain Omega informs that they have arrived on Earth without any trouble. They have taken shelter in a square place. Omega wants to know the exact location. Iota can't tell it. She holds a

Talk About It

1. In what ways does Think-Tank misinterpret innocent nursery rhymes as threats to the Martians ? Can you think of any incidents where you misinterpreted a word or an action ? How did you resolve the misunderstanding ?

Ans :

Think-Tank interprets the rhymes in a complete verbal manner. He does not go into the depth of the words and the context in which they are used. The rhyme Mistress Mary makes him ponder over the discovery of the Earth. He is shocked to know that Earthlings here combined agriculture and mining. Moreover silver crop and high explosives can be grown.

The other rhyme “Hey diddle, diddle” makes Think-Tank more alarmed. He is surprised to find that earthlings have reached a high level of civilization. At such level the animals have mastered space techniques and must be planning for interplanetary attack.

The next rhyme “Humpty Dumpty had a great fall” is making Think-Tank scream. He interprets “Had I great fall to the fall of Mars. He immediately turns to his plans of action of capturing Earth.”

Such an incident occurred with me when I did not know any meaning of phrases. I had a fight with my brother and he shouted at me saying “Empty vessels make much noise”. I could not understand anything and started hitting all the empty vessels. In the process many vessels broke and later I realised my foolishness.

2. The Aliens in this play speak English. Do you think this is their language? What could be the language of the Aliens ?

Ans :

The Aliens in this play speak English which seems to be quite a probable language. It may be possible that they are speaking English with a different accent and slangs. Had they not known English it would not have been possible to decipher the code. This makes them understand the code of the books

7. OTHER IMPORTANT QUESTIONS**Multiple Choice Type Questions**

1. “You haven’t heard about the Martian invasion of _____?”
 (a) 2010 (b) 2020
 (c) 2040 (d) 2050

Ans :

(c) 2040

2021

2. Which century is named the “Era of the Book”, according to the Historian?

(a) twentieth century
 (b) twenty-first century
 (c) twenty-second century
 (d) none of the above

Ans :

(a) twentieth century

2021

3. Who is the Commander-in-Chief of the Mars Space Control?

(a) Oop (b) Omega
 (c) lota (d) Think Tank

Ans :

(d) Think Tank

2021

4. Who is the lieutenant of the rew?

(a) Oop (b) Omega
 (c) lota (d) Think Tank

Ans :

(c) lota

2020

5. Which “ridiculous little planet” is being talked about?

(a) Mars (b) Earth
 (c) Jupiter (d) Saturn

Ans :

(b) Earth

2016

6. What is the place according to the Think Tank where they are about to take a refuge?

(a) hat
 (b) storage barn
 (c) haberdashery
 (d) crude refreshment stand

Ans :

(d) crude refreshment stand

2016

7. Who tasted the “sandwich”?

(a) Oop (b) Omega
 (c) lota (d) Noodle

Ans :

(a) Oop

2015

8. What is the “sandwich” used for on Earth, according to Noodle?

(a) satiating hunger (b) communication
 (c) dessert (d) none of these

Ans :

(b) communication

2015

20. Who was Omega? Why did he try to eat the book?

Ans :

2001

Omega was the captain of the space control Probe One, on the earth. Think-Tank asked him to pick up the most colourful sandwich (book) and report him about his observation on it.

21. Why books referred to as a man's best companion? Which book saved the Earth from Martian invasion?

Ans :

2001

Books are our best friends and companions. They are never demanding but always giving knowledge and pleasure. They give us company. The book that saved the Earth from Martian invasion was 'Mother Goose.'

NODIA

invade the Earth. The crew landed in a library and could not make out what the books were actually. It was believed that the books were a sort of communication device. Think-Tank asked the members to decipher the code of the 'sandwiches'. The nursery rhymes were totally misinterpreted and it was believed that the Earthlings had developed an advance civilization and were planning to invade the Mars. The mission was called off and the Martians escaped to a remote place to save their lives. Thus the books saved the Earth.

What guesses are made by Think-Tank about the books found on Earth?

Or

What does Noodle tell Think-Tank about the book?

Or

Noodle avoids offending Think-Tank but at the same time he corrects his mistakes. How does he manage to do that?

Ans :

2016, 2013, 2009

Think-Tank at first thinks the book found on Earth was a sandwich. His next opinion was that they were actually communication sandwiches which were meant for ear communication. Later, on Noodle's suggestion, he agrees that the book is meant for eye communication. Noodle asks Think-Tank to observe these so-called 'sandwiches' by consuming certain vitamins given to the space people by the chemical department to increase their intelligence. The meaning of the code would then slowly unfold before them. In this way Noodle manages to correct him without offending him.

4. How do the three nursery rhymes frighten Think-Tank in the story, 'The Book That Saved the Earth'?

Ans :

2016, 2012

The rhyme 'Mistress Mary, quite contrary' makes Think-Tank believe that the Earthlings have discovered how to combine agriculture and mining. He thinks that they can grow explosives. The rhyme 'Hey diddle diddle!' makes him conclude that the Earthlings have reached a high level of civilization; even their animals have musical culture and know space techniques. He fears that at that very moment, the Earthlings might be launching an interplanetary attack of millions of cows. Oop reads the rhyme 'Humpty Dumpty' and shows him a picture of Humpty Dumpty. Think-Tank concludes that it is his picture and the Earthlings are planning to invade Mars.

Long Answer Type Questions

1. How did Apprentice Noodle act smartly by suggesting something about the book without offending Think-Tank ?

Ans :

2024

In "The Book That Saved the Earth," Apprentice Noodle acts smartly by suggesting that the book, initially misunderstood as a "sandwich" by Think-Tank, might be a communication device—specifically, a "corn communicator" due to its resemblance to corn, which they speculate could be Earth's primary form of communication. This suggestion cleverly shifts Think-Tank's perception of the book without directly contradicting or offending him, preserving his ego. Noodle's tactful approach allows Think-Tank to reconsider his stance without feeling challenged, showcasing Noodle's ability to navigate the delicate situation wisely. This move not only prevents direct confrontation but also plays a crucial role in the unfolding events, highlighting how diplomacy and creative thinking can influence outcomes positively.

2. It is morally incorrect to invade another country/planet for one's own benefit. The Martians did not understand the value of peaceful coexistence. How did the book of nursery rhymes save the Earth from the Martian invasion?

Ans :

2017, 2016

Great and Mighty Think-Tank believed that the Martians were a superior race so they must invade and put the Earth under his generous rulership. He scornfully called the Earth 'primitive ball of mud'. The Martians did not understand the value of peaceful co-existence and sent a mission to

Ans :

(c) Commander

2009

25. What did Think Tank think books were for?

- (a) hearing (b) reading
(c) eating (d) smelling

Ans :

(c) eating

2008

26. How many moons does Mars have?

- (a) 1 (b) 2
(c) 4 (d) 5

Ans :

(b) 2

2008

27. Who was the ruler of Mars?

- (a) Omega (b) Iota
(c) Think-Tank (d) Oop

Ans :

(c) Think-Tank

2007

28. What does Think-Tank consider the books?

- (a) sandwiches
(b) ear communication devices
(c) eye communication devices
(d) all of the above

Ans :

(d) all of the above

2007, 2004

29. Who was Great and Mighty?

- (a) Think-Tank (b) Noodle
(c) Oop (d) Omega

Ans :

(a) Think-Tank

2007

30. Who is the writer of the play "The Book that saved the Earth"?

- (a) KA Abbas
(b) Guy De Maupassant
(c) Claire Boiko
(d) Sinclair Lewis

Ans :

(c) Claire Boiko

2007

31. What was the name of the sergeant spacecraft crew?

- (a) Think-Tank (b) Iota
(c) Oop (d) Noodle

Ans :

(c) Oop

2007

32. Who was the captain of the spacecraft crew?

- (a) Think-Tank (b) Omega
(c) Iota (d) Oop

Ans :

(b) Omega

2006

33. Which book saved the earth from invasion?

- (a) a book of science
(b) a world encyclopedia
(c) a book of military techniques
(d) a book of nursery rhymes

Ans :

(d) a book of nursery rhymes

2006

34. Who was the deputy of Think-Tank?

- (a) Omega (b) Iota
(c) Noodle (d) Oop

Ans :

(c) Noodle

2006

35. Who tried to invade the earth in the twenty-first century?

- (a) Martians (b) Earthlings
(c) Anteaters (d) Zulus

Ans :

(a) Martians

2006

36. With what name is the twentieth century called?

- (a) The era of the Book
(b) Era of the Science
(c) Era of the Mars
(d) Era of the Invasion

Ans :

(a) The era of the Book

2005

37. Who included the crew of the Martian Space Craft?

- (a) Omega (b) Iota
(c) Oop (d) All of these

Ans :

(d) All of these

2003

38. The story 'The Book That Saved the Earth' is set in:

- (a) twentieth century
(b) twenty-fifth century
(c) twenty-fourth century
(d) twenty-first century

Ans :

(b) twenty-fifth century

2003

FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS

DOWNLOAD NODIA APP

9. How did they find codes insider the sandwich?

- (a) through hearing communication
- (b) through eye communication
- (c) by tasting it
- (d) all of the above

Ans :

2014

- (b) through eye communication

10. What did they infer from the picture of Humpty Dumpty?

- (a) Think tank's balloon brain
- (b) Earthians are after Think Tank
- (c) Earthians have seen Think Tank
- (d) all of the above

Ans :

2014

- (d) all of the above

11. Which book saved the planet Earth from Martian invasion?

- (a) nursery rhymes
- (b) noble encyclopedia
- (c) book about rockets
- (d) book about missiles

Ans :

2014

- (a) nursery rhymes

12. What did Think Tank mistake books for ?

- (a) CD
- (b) Cassette
- (c) Sandwich
- (d) Burger

Ans :

2013

- (c) Sandwich

13. What did Think Tank think books were for ?

- (a) hearing
- (b) reading
- (c) eating
- (d) smelling

Ans :

2013, 2012

- (c) eating

14. At first, what did Noodle suggest that the books were for ?

- (a) hearing
- (b) reading
- (c) eating
- (d) smelling

Ans :

2013

- (a) hearing

15. In the second instance, what did Noodle suggest that the books were for ?

- (a) hearing
- (b) reading
- (c) eating
- (d) smelling

Ans :

2013

- (b) reading

16. The invaders were from _____.

- (a) Jupiter
- (b) Mercury
- (c) Venus
- (d) Mars

Ans :

2012

- (d) Mars

17. In which century did the invasion occur?

- (a) 24th
- (b) 20th
- (c) 21st
- (d) 25th

Ans :

2012

- (d) 25th

18. Name the book of nursery rhymes which saved Earth.

- (a) Mother goose
- (b) Father goose
- (c) Baby goose
- (d) None of these

Ans :

2011

- (a) Mother goose

19. Name the capital of Mars.

- (a) Martian
- (b) Mart
- (c) Marsopolis
- (d) Martyr

Ans :

2011

- (c) Marsopolis

20. What are the invaders called ?

- (a) Marser
- (b) Martian
- (c) Martina
- (d) Marsant

Ans :

2010

- (b) Martian

21. Who suggests that the book is a hat?

- (a) Oop
- (b) Iota
- (c) Omega
- (d) Think Tank

Ans :

2010

- (a) Oop

22. What do the Martians eat in order to read the books?

- (a) Fruits
- (b) Vitamins
- (c) Vegetables
- (d) Bread

Ans :

2009

- (b) Vitamins

23. According to Think Tank's decoding, which animal can fly on the Earth?

- (a) dog
- (b) cat
- (c) cow
- (d) horse

Ans :

2009

- (c) cow

24. What is the rank of Iota?

- (a) Sergeant
- (b) Marshall
- (c) Lieutenant
- (d) Commander

used. The rhyme “Humpty Dumpty had a great fall” is making Think-Tank scream.

He interprets “Had I great fall to the fall of Mars. He immediately turns to his plans of action of capturing Earth.

9. How does Think-Tank compare the Martians with the people on Earth? What does he call the Earth mockingly?

Ans :

2011, 2010

Think-Tank considers earth ‘a ridiculous little planet’ and intends to put under his generous rulership. He feels the earth is actually an unimportant place where ugly earthlings, with their tiny heads, reside. He believes the Martians to be a superior race. He mockingly calls the earth ‘primitive ball of mud’.

10. What was Oop’s opinion about the ‘sandwiches’ he had eaten?

Ans :

2008, 2004

Oop was forced to eat ‘sandwiches’ and he made terrible faces while chewing. He said that it was not delicious; rather as dry as Martian dust. He remarked that he could not understand how the Earthlings could get those ‘sandwiches’ down without water.

11. What was Noodle’s version to describe the so-called ‘sandwich’?

Ans :

2008, 2004

Noodle hesitantly told Thin-tank that he had ‘insignificant’ information about those ‘sandwiches’. He informed him that he had seen surveyor films of those films. He had noticed that the Earthlings did not eat them. They used them as some sort of communication device.

12. What things does Historian speak about the books ?

Ans :

2008

The Historian spoke very high about the books. Books taught people how to and when to and where to and why to. The books also helped in illustration, education and even decoration. The best thing books did was to save the earth.

13. What information do you gain about Lieutenant Iota?

Ans :

2008

Lieutenant Iota is introduced to us to be counting books in a book case. He is confused about his destination. He regards the books to be peculiar items. The place where books are kept must be a sort of a storage barn. Iota is also very cunning. He makes Oop eat up the so-called sandwich.

14. How does Think-Tank interpret the poem on The Cat and the fiddle ?

Ans :

2007

Think-Tank gets alarmed at this poem. He feels that Earthlings have reached a high level of civilization by teaching their domesticated animals musical culture and space techniques. He interprets jumping of cow over the moon as an invasion.

15. Which book does Think-Tank ask Captain Omega to observe ?

Ans :

2005

Think-Tank asked Captain Omega to take the large colourful ‘sandwich’ that he pointed at and tell him what she observed in it. The book Omega picked up was actually a very large volume of ‘Mother Goose’, a book of nursery rhymes.

16. How does Think-Tank react after seeing the picture of Humpty Dumpty in the book ‘Mother Goose’ ?

Ans :

2004

After seeing the picture of Humpty Dumpty in book ‘Mother Goose’, Think-Tank screamed, and holding his head, he said that the picture was of him and his Great and Mighty Balloon Brain. He further explained that the Earthlings had seen him and were now after him.

17. Why did Think-Tank react in alarm to the third passage to read?

Ans :

2003

Think-Tank reacted in alarm as he misunderstood the meaning of the poem and thought that they could actually grow crops of rare metals and even explosives also, which were dangerous for him.

18. Why did Think-Tank send his crew on the earth?

Ans :

2002

Think-Tank, the ruler of Mars regarded the earth as a mass of mud, and Earthlings as ugly, tiny-headed creatures. He planned to invade the earth and expand his domain. He sent Probe One to Earth to get more information about the Earthlings.

19. How does Think-Tank describe the people on the earth? Why does he command Noodle to contact the Space probe?

Ans :

2002

Think-Tank thought Earthlings were weak, ignorant, uncivilized persons and hence planned to invade the earth. He sent his commander Noodle to make contact with the crew of the manned space probe, now on Earth to seek more information about the Earth.

39. At the end who is replaced for Think Tank?

- (a) Omega (b) Noodle
(c) Oop (d) Iota

Ans : 2003
(b) Noodle

40. Finally, who decides not to invade the earth?

- (a) Omega (b) Think-Tank
(c) Noodle (d) all of these

Ans : 2002
(b) Think-Tank

Short Answer Type Questions

1. A well known book of nursery rhymes saved the world from a Martian invasion. Comment with reference to 'The Book that Saved the Earth'.

Ans : 2024
In 'The Book that Saved the Earth,' a book of nursery rhymes inadvertently saves the world from a Martian invasion by confusing the alien invaders with its nonsensical verses. The Martians, unable to comprehend the illogical content, retreat in confusion, highlighting the unexpected power of literature in unexpected circumstances.

2. How did Think-Tank interpret the following nursery rhyme:
"How does your garden grow with cockle shells and silver bells?"

Or

How does Think-Tank interpret the nursery rhymes on Mistress Mary ?

Ans : 2024, 2019, 2013
Think-Tank was alarmed at learning that pretty maids are growing in a garden. Think-Tank is surprised at the discovery of Earthlings who have combined agriculture and mining. They can grow crops of rare metals such as silver and high explosives. Think-Tank orders Noodle to contact their invasion fleet.

3. A satire is when a person, idea, or institution is criticised by highlighting their faults and weaknesses using humour. Describe how 'The Book That Saved the Earth' can be considered a satire with supporting examples from the text.

Ans : 2023
The Martians misinterpret Earth's books, especially the nursery rhymes. This creates a satirical commentary on cultural misunderstandings and the dangers of jumping to conclusions. In the end, it was a simple book of nursery rhymes that became the key to saving the Earth from the

invasion by an alien military force, creating an ironic and satirical twist to the story.

4. Why did Think-Tank decide to evacuate the Mars?

Ans : 2019
Think-Tank misinterpreted the rhymes and thought the earthlings were a threat to him as well as to Mars. He got scared and called back Probe One, dropped the idea 'of invading and escaped to Alpha Centauri, a hundred million miles away from Mars.

5. What high levels of civilization have Earthlings reached according to Think-Tank?

Ans : 2017
According to Think-Tank the 'high levels of civilization' that Earthlings have reached is that they have taught their domesticated animals musical culture and space techniques. Even their dogs have a sense of humour and at that moment they were launching interplanetary attack of millions of cows.

6. What happened between the Earthlings and Martians in the twenty-fifth century?

Ans : 2017
In the twenty-fifth century the Earthlings resumed contact with Mars and even became very friendly with Martians. By then the Great and Mighty Think-Tank had been replaced by the very clever, wise and wonderful Noodle. The Earthlings taught the Martians the difference between sandwiches and books and even taught them how to read. They also established a model library in the capital city of Marsopolis.

7. How did the book change Think-Tank's opinion about the Earthlings?

Ans : 2014
Think-Tank used to believe that the Martian was a superior race to the Earthlings. But after cracking the so-called code of an old nursery rhyme book, he changed his view about the Earthlings. He now thought that the Earthlings had reached a high level of civilization and planning to invade the Mars. It made him call off his mission.

8. In what way did Think Tank misinterpret the following innocent nursery rhyme as a threat to the Martians ?

'Humpty Dumpty sat on the wall
Humpty Dumpty had a great fall....'

Ans : 2012, 2009
Think-Tank interprets the rhymes in a complete verbal manner. He does not go into the depth of the words and the context in which they are

5. Attempt character sketch of Great and Mighty Think-Tank.

Ans :

2007

Great and Mighty Think-Tank is introduced to us to be the most mighty, powerful and intelligent creature. He is regarded as the ruler of Mars who is very proud of being Martian. His pride makes him consult mirror to hear self-praise. He has a quick mind and wishes to attack the Earth in a great hurry.

The ways he makes guesses about the book are also funny. He has respect for no one in front of him and regards others views as trifling. But still his wit is too great. He makes Omega swallow the vitamin to decipher the code. At every nursery rhyme, he prepares to go to Earth for invasion. He is also fickle-minded. One moment he orders the invasion to be taken next day and then he orders for immediate invasion. He ordered the invasion flat to evacuate the entire planet and head for Alpha Centauri. It is his commanding power which earns him name of general.

6. Justify the title of the play 'The Book that Saved the Earth'.

Ans :

2006

A good title should reflect the theme, idea or the traits of a character. It should revolve around any of the above. The story or the play should be woven around any one of them.

In the play 'The Book that Saved The Earth', a book of nurse rhymes of 'Mother Goose' is responsible for stopping the Martian invasion on Earth. Think-Tank, the ruler of Mars plans to invade Earth before lunch and sends Probe One to get more information about the Earthlings. They enter a library but can't figure out what items books are. They take vitamins, increase their intelligence then read the rhymes from 'Mother Goose'. Think-Tank misinterprets the rhymes, takes them as threats to him and the Mars. Scared, he calls back Probe One, drops the idea of invading and escapes with his subjects to Alpha Centauri, a hundred million miles away from Mars.

Thus, the book 'Mother Goose' was responsible for stopping the Martian invasion of Earth. The title 'The Book That Saved the Earth', reflect the theme of the play, so it is an apt (appropriate) title.

7. How was the crew of Space Probe One able to describe the code of the book 'Mother Goose' ?

Ans :

2004

Think-Tank had asked Captain Omega to take the large, colourful 'sandwich' he had pointed at

and tell him what was observed by her. The book Omega had picked up was a very large volume of 'Mother Goose', a book of nursery rhymes, which Think-Tank thought was a sandwich. Captain Omega had said that the book appeared to contain pictures of the Earthlings. Iota had said that there seemed to be some sort of code written in the book as well.

Think-Tank had then asked Sergeant Oop to describe the code, and he had told him that there were little lines and squiggles and dots-thousands of those codes alongside the pictures. At that moment, Noodle had politely pointed out that their chemical department people had given the space people vitamins to increase their intelligence. Saying that he had a thought of magnificent brilliance, Think-Tank then asked Omega and the others to take the vitamins immediately. They swallowed those vitamins and therefore were able to describe the code.

8. What does Think-Tank say the Earthlings can grow ? How does he react to it ?

Ans :

2003

Think-Tank misinterpreted the lines of the nursery rhyme :

Mistress Mary, quite contrary,

How does your garden grow ?

With cockle shells and silvers bells,

And pretty maids all in a row.

Oops commented jokingly that pretty maids were growing in a garden. But Think-Tank asked him to stop his foolishness. Alarmingly, Think-Tank commented that the Earthlings had discovered how to combine agriculture and mining. He said that the Earthlings could actually grow crops of rare metals such as silver, cockle shells and even grow high explosives. Think-Tank had then told Noodle to contact their invasion fleet immediately and to tell them to hold the invasion because he had realised that he should not underestimate the Earthlings.

9. 'Pride has a fall'. Justify this statement giving relevant points from how Think-Tank reacted to the readings from Mother Goose.

Ans :

2002

Martians invaded the earth and reached in a library. Think-Tank was their boss. He was very proud of his wisdom, as he was having a big balloon like head. He thought that he was the wisest person on Mars. Nobody could disobey him, or even dare to speak against him. He claimed that he had a quick mind. He had no respect for anyone and regarded other's views as trifling. He was also fickle-minded.

Noodle : Sir, sir. Great and Mighty Think-Tank. I beg your pardon, but an insignificant bit of data floated into my mind about those sandwiches.

Think-Tank : It can't be worth much, but go ahead. Give us your trifling bit of data.

- i. Why did Oop coughed?
- ii. State true or false.
None of the terms (a)-(d) can be applied to the statement — The sandwiches referred to in the extract are actually books.
 - (a) A hypothesis - a proposed explanation for a phenomenon
 - (b) An assumption - something that is taken for granted or assumed to be true
 - (c) A hyperbole - exaggerated statements or claims not meant to be taken literally
 - (d) A premise - a proposition that forms the basis of an argument
- iii. What is the 'trifling bit of data' that floated into Noodle's mind?
- iv. Which word would correctly substitute 'unimportant', in the given sentence from the extract?

The couple fought over **unimportant** issues.

Ans :

2015

- i. Oop coughed because he had difficulty in swallowing the sandwich.
- ii. True
- iii. Noodle told Think-Tank that he had seen surveyor films of those sandwiches. The 'trifling bit of data' that came to his mind after that was that the Earthlings did not eat them. They used them as some sort of communication devices.

- iv. trifling

5. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

Omega : Listen to them?

Iota and Oop: (To each other, puzzled): Listen to them?

Think-Tank: Do you have marbles in your ears? I said, listen to them. (Martians bow very low).

Omega: It shall be done, sir. (They each take two books from the case and hold them to their ears, listening intently.)

Iota : (whispering to Omega) Do you hear anything?

Omega : (Whispering back) Nothing. Do you hear anything, Oop?

Oop : (Loudly) Not a thing! (Omega and Iota jump in fright.)

Omega and Iota : Sh-h-h! (They listen intently again).

Think-Tank : Well? Well? Report to me. What do you hear?

Omega : Nothing, sir. Perhaps we are not on the correct frequency.

Iota : Nothing, sir. Perhaps the Earthlings have sharper ears than we do.

Oop : I don't hear a thing. Maybe these sandwiches don't make sounds.

- i. Where are Omega, Oop and Iota in this conversation?
- ii. How does Think-Tank explain the books to his probe crew?
- iii. Describe Think-Tank in your own words.
- iv. Who made the next guess about what the sandwiches actually were? What was the guess?

Ans :

2013

- i. Omega, Oop and Iota are at the Centerville Public Library.
- ii. Think-Tank told his crew that the books were communication devices and asked the probe crew to listen to them.
- iii. Think-Tank was the ruler of the planet Mars. His head is huge and egg-shaped. He wears a robe decorated with stars and circles. He considered himself very mighty and was very proud of his intelligence.
- iv. Noodle made the next guess about what the sandwiches actually were. He guessed that the sandwiches were something to be watched.



- ii. State TRUE or FALSE.
Think-Tank thought that the crew had landed in a strange food stand stacked with tough to-eat sandwiches.
None of the terms (a)-(d) below, correctly corresponds to the idea of Think-Tank.
- a hypothesis or a possible explanation for something that has not yet been found to be true or correct
 - an assumption that is accepted without any proof.
 - a misconception is a wrong idea or understanding of something.
 - a theory or a set of ideas that tries to explain something.
- iii. Oop says, "Well, the Earthlings certainly have a strange diet." What was wrong with the diet of human beings according to the aliens? Elaborate in about 40 words, with reference to the extract.
- iv. Which phrase or word would correctly substitute 'rudimentary,' in the given sentence from the extract.
I made my own rudimentary garden furniture that was beautiful but uncomfortable.

Ans :

2021

- They were all dumb and clueless about earth and earthlings despite claiming to be more intelligent and visiting seven galaxies.
- False (term (c) correctly corresponds to the idea of Think-Tank)
- Think-Tank thought that books were actually sandwiches-the staple diet of Earthlings. Oop also wondered how could Earthlings swallow those sandwiches without water because they were as dry as Martian dust. No wonder they found this 'diet' strange.
- crude

3. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

"It's me! It's my Great and Mighty Balloon Brain. The Earthlings have seen me, and they're after me. "Had a great fail".... That means they plan to capture Mars Central Control and me! It's an invasion of Mars! Noodle, prepare a space capsule for me. I must escape without delay. Space people, you must leave Earth at once, but be sure to remove all traces of your visit. The Earthlings must not know that I know"

- State any one inference about the speaker from the given context.
It's an invasion of Mars!
- State TRUE or FALSE.
Think Tank was worried about his 'Great and Mighty Balloon Brain' and thought that the earthlings would catch him because of this. This thought matches none of the options given below.
 - It was a hypothesis.
 - Think tank's thought was based on an assumption.
 - Think Tank's premise was incorrect.
 - This is not a valid theory.
- Elaborate in about 40 words the irony in the statement.
"Had a great fail".... That means they plan to capture Mars Central Control and me!' with reference to the extract.
- Which rhyme would correctly substitute 'signs' in the given sentence from the extract?
No signs of Jewish worship have been found at Ostia, but at Portus a considerable number of Jewish inscriptions in Greek have come to light.

Ans :

2018

- The speaker, Think Tank, the epitome of self-importance is overreacting and exaggerating as usual.
- False (The thought matches with option (c))
- Think Tank is a self-obsessed Martian who takes a phrase from a book of nursery rhymes as a clue of the earthlings' plan to attack and colonise Mars. Nothing could be further from the truth. The irony is that the Martians have such plans because they consider the earthlings to be less intelligent owing to their small heads.
- Traces

4. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

Omega : Well, Oop?

Iota : Well, Oop? (Oop coughs. Omega and Iota pound him on the back.)

Think-Tank : Was it not delicious, sergeant

Oop : (saluting) That is correct, sir. It was not delicious. I don't know how the Earthlings can get those sandwiches down without water. They're dry as Martian dust.

He misinterpreted the rhymes in a complete verbal manner. The rhyme mistress Mar made him ponder over the discovery of the earth. From the poem diddle-diddle he got alarmed and from the poem Humpty-Dumpty, he was so frightened that he decided to leave his kingdom and run away to Alpha Centauri. Thus his great wisdom was defeated and had a great fall.

10. Attempt a character-sketch of Noodle highlighting the values projected by him.

Ans :

2002

Noodle is one of the crew members of the invasion team that came to invade earth. He is known as Apprentice Noodle. He is the co-coordinator between Think-Tank and the invasion team. He echoes Think-Tank in every manner. He is a very clever creature. He knows that Think-Tank being the commander-in-chief has to be obeyed. So he keeps on praising Think-Tank and also passing sarcastic remarks. It is only Noodles who think practically and differently about the books which were considered as sandwiches to eat. But Think-Tank took over the idea as his own. But Noodle is not sad at all. He is a blind and true follower of Think-Tank.

Extract Based Questions

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow :

THINK-TANK: Mirror, mirror, in my hand. Who is the most fantastically intellectually gifted being in the land?

OFFSTAGE VOICE : (after a pause) You, sir.

THINK -TANK : (smacking mirror) Quicker. Answer quicker next time. I hate a slow mirror. (He admires himself in the mirror.) Ah, there I am. Are we Martians not a handsome race? So much more attractive than those ugly Earthlings with their tiny heads. Noodle, you keep on exercising your mind, and someday you'll have a balloon brain just like mine.

NOODLE : Oh, I hope so, Mighty Think-Tank. I hope so.

THINK -TANK : Now, contact the space probe. I want to invade that primitive ball of mud called Earth before lunch.

NOODLE : It shall be done, sir. (He adjusts levers on switchboard. Electronic buzzes and beeps are heard as the curtains open.)

- i. What does Think-Tank's interaction with the mirror reveal about his attitude towards intelligence and appearance? Answer in 30-40 words.

- ii. State whether TRUE or FALSE.

Noodle's hopeful response to Think-Tank's comment lends an insight into the rich heritage and culture of the Martian society.

- iii. Select the appropriate option to fill the blank. The desire to conquer a "primitive ball of mud" reflects a _____ mindset.

- (a) diplomatic (b) colonial
(c) conciliatory (d) democratic

- iv. The playwright's decision to put certain content in brackets serves the purpose of _____.

Ans :

2023

- i. Think-Tank's interaction with the mirror reflects his extreme arrogance. He seeks confirmation of his intellectual superiority and places high value on physical appearance. His contempt for Earthlings and admiration for Martian aesthetics show a superiority complex rooted in intelligence and appearance.

- ii. False

- iii. (b) colonial

- iv. guiding the performance and production aspects of the play/providing stage directions.

FOR 30 FREE SAMPLE PAPERS SET FOR ALL SUBJECTS

DOWNLOAD NODIA APP

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows :

OOP : I haven't a clue. I've been to seven galaxies, but I've never seen anything like this. Maybe they're hats. (He opens a book and puts it on his head.) Say, maybe this is a haberdashery! OMEGA: (bowing low) Perhaps the Great and Mighty Think-Tank will give us the benefit of his thought on the matter.

THINK-TANK : Elementary, my dear Omega. Hold one of the items up so that I may view it closely. (Omega holds a book on the palm of herr hand.) Yes, yes, I understand now. Since Earth creatures are always eating, the place in which you find yourselves is undoubtedly a crude refreshment stand. OMEGA: (to Iota and Oop) He says we're in a refreshment stand.

OOP : Well, the Earthlings certainly have a strange diet.

- i. State any one inference about Oop and his crewmates from the given context. I've been to seven galaxies, but I've never seen anything like this. Maybe they're hats.

Visit :

www.pdf.tube

Download PDFs For :

- ✓ **Chapterwise Question Bank**
- ✓ **JEE NEET Foundation**
- ✓ **Primary Classes Worksheets**
- ✓ **Olympiad Guide**
- ✓ **Sample Papers**
- ✓ **Previous Year Papers**
- ✓ **Previous JEE Papers**
- ✓ **Previous NEET Papers**

NODIA

Nodia Editions LLP

125, Sector 6, Vidhyadhar Nagar, Jaipur 302039

MRP ₹ 600.00